Polygraphs

From Rewriting to Higher Categories

Dimitri Ara, Albert Burroni, Yves Guiraud,
Philippe Malbos, François Métayer, Samuel Mimram
Contents

0 Introduction ................................................. page 9

PART ONE   FUNDAMENTALS OF REWRITING .......................... 19

1 Abstract rewriting and one-dimensional polygraphs .................. 21
  1.1 The category of 1-polygraphs ................................ 21
  1.2 Presenting sets ................................................. 22
  1.3 Abstract rewriting systems .................................... 27
  1.4 Decreasing diagrams ............................................ 36

2 Two-dimensional polygraphs ........................................ 40
  2.1 Generating categories and groupoids .......................... 41
  2.2 The category of 2-polygraphs .................................. 43
  2.3 Presenting categories ............................................ 45
  2.4 Generating 2-categories ......................................... 50
  2.5 Coherent confluence of 1-polygraphs ......................... 57

3 Operations on presentations ......................................... 63
  3.1 Limits and colimits of presented categories .................. 63
  3.2 Localizations of presented categories ........................ 65
  3.3 Distributive laws ................................................. 66

4 String rewriting and 2-polygraphs ................................... 81
  4.1 String rewriting systems ........................................ 82
  4.2 Deciding equality ................................................. 87
  4.3 Critical branchings .............................................. 90
  4.4 Reduction orders ............................................... 96
  4.5 Constructing presentations of categories ..................... 102
  4.6 Residuation ..................................................... 109
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5  Tietze transformations and completion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1 Tietze transformations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2 The Knuth-Bendix completion procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3 Universality of finite convergent rewriting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6  Linear rewriting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.1 Linear rewriting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.2 Rewriting properties of linear polygraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.3 Linear bases induced by monomial orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.4 Historical account of linear rewriting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART TWO  COHERENT PRESENTATIONS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7  Coherence by convergence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.1 Acyclic extensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.2 Coherent presentations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.3 Coherent confluence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.4 Tietze transformations of (3, 1)-polygraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.5 Coherent completion and reduction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.6 Coherent presentations of associative algebras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8  Categories of finite derivation type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.1 Finite derivation type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.2 Convergence and finite derivation type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.3 Identities among relations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9  Homological syzygies and confluence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.1 Monoids of finite homological type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.2 Monoids having homological type left-FP₂</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.3 Homological type left-FP₃ and confluence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART THREE  DIAGRAM REWRITING</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 Three-dimensional polygraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.1 Three-dimensional polygraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.2 Rewriting properties of 3-polygraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.3 Constructing presentations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.4 Indexed critical branchings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.5 Distributive laws</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 Termination of 3-polygraphs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.1 Reduction and termination orders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Contents

17.2 Tensorsing polygraphs by $\bigodot_1$ 368
17.3 Families of polygraphs 371
17.4 Construction of polygraphs via Steiner’s theory 374

18 **Generalized polygraphs** 385
18.1 $T$-polygraphs 385
18.2 Polygraphs for weak $n$-categories 393
18.3 Linear polygraphs 394

**PART FIVE  HOMOTOPY THEORY OF POLYGRAPHS** 397

19 Polygraphic resolutions 399
19.1 Weak factorization systems 400
19.2 Cofibrations and trivial fibrations 405
19.3 Polygraphic resolutions 407
19.4 Uniqueness of polygraphic resolutions 408

20 **Towards the folk model structure** 410
20.1 $\omega$-equivalences 411
20.2 The $\omega$-category of cylinders 419
20.3 The $\omega$-category of reversible cylinders 426
20.4 Coherent reversible cells and fibrations 432
20.5 Immersions 439

21 **The folk model structure** 444
21.1 The folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_\omega$ 445
21.2 The path objects of cylinders 448
21.3 The folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_n$ and $\text{Cat}_{n,p}$ 451

22 **Homology of $\omega$-categories** 458
22.1 The abelianization functor 459
22.2 Deriving the abelianization functor 460
22.3 Comparison with homology of monoids 463
22.4 Examples 467

23 **Resolutions by $(\omega, 1)$-polygraphs** 470
23.1 Polygraphic resolutions and contractions 471
23.2 Polygraphic resolutions from convergence 474
23.3 Abelianization of polygraphic resolutions 477
23.4 Categories of finite homological type 487
23.5 Homological syzygies and identities among relations 488
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Appendix</th>
<th>Model categories</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H.1</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.2</td>
<td>The homotopy category</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.3</td>
<td>Derived functors</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

References 635

Index of notations 654

Index of terminology 657
Introduction

Presentations of higher categories. A group is generally defined by characteristic properties of its elements, as for instance the group $\Sigma_n$ of all permutations of the set $\{1, \ldots, n\}$, or the group of all isometries of a cube. However, to perform actual computations in a group, we usually pick a subset of generators among its elements and write down certain relations satisfied by these generators, in such a way that each element of the group is a product of some generators or their inverses, and each equality between two elements is derivable from the relations. This leads to a purely syntactic way of defining a group, called a group presentation by generators and relations, which describes the group as a free group over a set of generators quotiented by some relations. Presentations are not limited to groups, and have been adapted to many other algebraic structures: monoids, categories, Lawvere theories (this is the subject of universal algebra), commutative (or not) algebras (where the relations are usually specified by an ideal), or higher algebras such as operads, product categories, linear monoidal categories, to name a few.

The subject of this monograph is the concept of polygraph, which is the notion of presentation adapted to higher categories, and encompasses the previously mentioned settings as particular cases. Polygraphs were first introduced by Street [333] under the name of computads in their 2-dimensional version, in order to study 2-categorical limits, and then generalized in arbitrary dimension: this was first published in [304], but the generalization was already known and implicitly used in [334]. The terminology we adopt here comes from Burroni [72, 73] who independently developed the concept in order to study generalizations of the word problem and provide an equational presentation of cartesian categories. The name polygraph is meant to suggest an higher-dimensional analogue of oriented graph. It should be mentioned that these ideas were developed on both sides, and informally circulated long before publication.
The word problem. Given a presentation of a group, the completeness of a set of relations means that for any two sequences $a_1, \ldots, a_n$ and $b_1, \ldots, b_m$ of generators, also called words, their respective products $a_1 \ldots a_n$ and $b_1 \ldots b_m$ are equal in the presented group if and only if one can transform the first into the second by using the relations. This very naturally led, early on, to the following algorithmic question, known as the word problem: given a finite (or recursive) presentation and two words as above, can we decide whether they are equal or not in the presented group? From a computational theory point of view: can we implement a computer program which automatically determines the equality of words in a presented group? However, this question predates by many years the invention of computers. It was first raised as an important one by Dehn in 1911 [106], who subsequently managed to provide an algorithm for a certain class of groups (the fundamental groups of closed orientable surfaces of genus greater than or equal to 2) [107]. For some time it was hoped that the problem could be solved for all groups, but it was in fact shown to be undecidable around 1955 by Novikov [293] and Boone [51].

The word problem has also been considered in other settings where presentations exist. For monoids, it was first studied by Thue in 1914 [344], leading to the emergence of the notion of string rewriting system, also called semi-Thue systems. It was much later, in 1947, that the word problem was shown to be undecidable by Post [301] and Markov [271]. In the case of universal algebra, the undecidability of the word problem follows from the undecidability of conversion in combinatory logic [103] which is closely related to the undecidability of $\beta$-conversion in $\lambda$-calculus [87].

Rewriting theory. In most cases where the general word problem is undecidable, we can nevertheless find many specific presentations with algorithmically decidable equality. For instance, if we ask a small child whether $2 + 3 + 4$ is equal to $2 + 2 + 5$, he will progressively compute both sums and observe that the results are the same:

$$2 + 3 + 4 \equiv 2 + 2 + 5$$

The starting point of rewriting theory is to provide each relation of a given presentation with an orientation taking one side of the equality to a simpler expression on the other side. The resulting structure is called a rewriting system and the oriented rules are called rewriting rules. Fundamental examples of
rewriting systems are string rewriting systems for presentations of monoids [50] and term rewriting systems for presentations of Lawvere theories [342, 20].

Each rewriting system now comes with a notion of normal form, that is, an expression which cannot be further simplified by applying rewriting rules. This immediately suggests the normal form algorithm, consisting, given two expressions, in applying the two following steps:

1. simplify the two expressions in order to obtain normal forms,
2. compare the normal forms.

The normal form algorithm only decides the word problem if the rewriting system satisfies the two following properties.

1. Each sequence of rewriting rules eventually reaches a normal form after a finite number of steps, in which case we call the system terminating;
2. If an expression can be reduced in two different ways, we can further reduce two expressions into a common one, in which case we call the system confluent.

A rewriting system is convergent when it is both terminating and confluent. Proofs of termination often rely on embedding the reduction order into a partial well-founded order over the set of expressions. As for confluence, in case the system is already known to be terminating, it suffices to check a simpler condition called local confluence: this is the content of Newman’s lemma [290]. This lemma holds in abstract rewriting systems and therefore does not depend on the particular formalism under consideration (rewriting on strings, terms, etc.). We should also mention that convergent rewriting systems have independently been discovered in the setting of presentations of (commutative) algebras in the 60s by Shirshov [325] and Buchberger [65], where they are known as Gröbner bases. In this context, Newman’s lemma is known as the diamond lemma [39].

Tietze transformations and completion. A presentation of a group – or any other type of algebraic structure – may be thought of as a particular implementation of it, thus allowing for computations. As two presentations of the same object may have very different computational properties, it is worth considering the family of all presentations of a given object. This has first been done in the case of groups by Tietze in 1908 [345] (and later on generalized to other settings): he introduced a family of operations on group presentations, now called Tietze transformations, such that any two presentations of the same group can be transformed into each other by means of those operations. Pre-
Introduction

cisely, Tietze transformations are sequences built from two elementary steps and their converse, namely

1. to add a new generator which is equal to a product of preexisting generators, and
2. to add a relation which is derivable from the already present relations.

Tietze transformations will be used to turn a given rewriting system into a new one presenting the same structure, possibly with better computational properties. In particular, the idea behind completion algorithms is to add rules (or generators) to a rewriting system in order to turn it into a confluent one. These ideas were already present at the beginning of string rewriting systems [344] and gained much popularity when they were developed by Buchberger for Gröbner bases [65] (which eventually lead to very efficient algorithms [125]), by Knuth and Bendix for string rewriting systems [218], and by Nivat for string rewriting systems [292]. The new rules to be added to the rewriting system are determined by computing critical branchings (also called S-polynomials in the linear settings), which are minimal obstructions to confluence.

The universality problem. We have seen that, even though the word problem is undecidable in general, there are many cases where the presentations are convergent and the word problem can be decided with the normal form algorithm. This leads to the following question, first formulated by Jantzen in the context of string rewriting systems [202, 203], and sometimes referred to as the universality problem for convergent rewriting: given a finitely presented monoid with a decidable word problem, does it always admit a presentation by a finite convergent string rewriting system?

A first answer to this question was brought by Kapur and Narendran [213] by considering the Artin presentation of the positive braid group $B_3^+$ (with two generators $a$ and $b$ and one relation $aba = bab$), which has a decidable word problem: they showed that one cannot obtain a convergent presentation from it, by adding or removing relations. However, this does not settle the general question, because we are only using Tietze transformations of type (ii) here, and in fact the same authors also observed that, by using a transformation of type (i), one can indeed obtain a convergent presentation.

Homotopy and homology. A complete solution to the universality problem was eventually found by using ideas coming from algebraic topology, which, in a nutshell, consists in assigning discrete invariants to continuous shapes. Such ideas already appear in the works of Euler, but their systematic development starts with Poincaré [299]. Among the first invariants to be considered are the
fundamental group of a space, that consists of classes of loops up to continuous deformations (or homotopies) and the sequence of homology groups, providing information about the “holes” of various dimensions in a given space.

The fact that homological invariants are not just numbers, but bear a structure of abelian group was first recognized by Emmy Noether (see [349, p. 478] or [181]), and independently by Vietoris, whose paper [351] contains the first definition of homology groups ever published. Homology groups are amenable to effective computations by using classical tools from linear algebra. On the other hand, one may consider a group or a monoid as a geometric object, by defining the corresponding classifying space. Thus, invariants of spaces may be applied to groups and monoids. These notions have been vastly generalized over the years, and now apply to algebraic structures whose geometrical content is much less obvious, such as rings or algebras [186, 258].

Squier’s homological and homotopical conditions. The universality problem was answered negatively by Squier in 1987 [326, 327]. Squier’s argument is based on the homology of monoids and relies on two fundamental observations. First, any presentation of a monoid determines a sequence of homology groups, but these groups are independent of the particular presentation we use: they are invariants of the monoid itself. Second, a finite convergent presentation of a monoid $\mathcal{M}$ always yields a third homology group $H_3(\mathcal{M})$ of finite rank. Now, Squier was able to produce an explicit example of a finitely presented monoid $\mathcal{M}$ with decidable word problem, whose third homology group is not of finite rank, and therefore does not admit a finite convergent presentation.

In more precise terms, the homology of a monoid $\mathcal{M}$ is computed by building a resolution of the trivial $\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}$-module $\mathbb{Z}$, that is, an exact sequence

$$
\cdots \to d_4 \to C_4 \to d_3 \to C_3 \to d_2 \to C_2 \to d_1 \to C_1 \to \mathbb{Z} \to 0
$$

of projective $\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}$-modules. Tensoring the above sequence by $\mathbb{Z}$ over $\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}$ gives a chain complex of abelian groups, which is not exact anymore in the general case; its homology groups only depend on $\mathcal{M}$ and not on the particular resolution we chose. Now, if we start with a convergent presentation of $\mathcal{M}$, we obtain a partial resolution of the form

$$
\cdots \to d_4 \to \mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}[P_3] \to d_3 \to \mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}[P_2] \to d_2 \to \mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}[P_1] \to d_1 \to \mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}[P_0] \to \mathbb{Z} \to 0
$$

where $P_0$ is the set with one element, $P_1$ is the set of generators of the presentation, $P_2$ the set of relations, and $P_3$ the set of critical branchings. For a finite rewriting system, the set $P_3$ of critical branchings is always finite. Hence the abelian group $\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}[P_3] \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}} \mathbb{Z}$ obtained by tensoring by $\mathbb{Z}$ over $\mathbb{Z}\mathcal{M}$ has finite
Introduction

rank, and so has the third homology group $H_3(M)$. Note that the finiteness condition for $H_3$ comes here from the strictly stronger statement that $M$ is of type left-FP$_3$, which means that it admits a partial resolution of length 3 by finitely generated projective left $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules.

The above algebraic constructions can be interpreted in geometric terms [238], at least in the case where the monoid $M$ is a group. The free resolution $(C_i, d_i)$ comes from a cellular decomposition of a contractible space $X$ on which $M$ acts freely and transitively. Tensoring by $\mathbb{Z}$ over $\mathbb{Z}M$ amounts to quotient $X$ by the action of $M$, thus obtaining a cellular decomposition of the classifying space of $M$ itself. Starting with a presentation of $M$, the cellular complex we get is built dimensionwise: in dimension 0 there is a unique point, corresponding to the element of $\ast \in P_0$. In dimension 1, each generator of $P_1$ gives a loop on $\ast$. In dimension 2, each relation in $P_2$ gives a disk attached to the 1-dimensional paths determined by the products of the generators involved. For instance, with the Artin presentation of $B_3^+$ recalled above, we would obtain the space on the left, together with a disk attached between the paths corresponding to the words $aba$ and $bab$, as pictured on the right:

There may be different ways to fill the gap between two expressions representing the same element of $M$ by using disks as above. Geometrically, this corresponds to 3-dimensional holes in the corresponding 2-dimensional complex. These holes have to be filled by appropriate 3-dimensional cells, and it turns out that, in the case of a convergent presentation, a set of 3-cells coming from the critical branchings is sufficient for that. Of course the construction has to be pursued in higher dimensions in order to obtain the correct topology.

About the same time as when Squier studied monoid resolutions, other authors developed similar ideas: Anick constructed a resolution of algebras in order to study Koszulness properties [8], Brown managed to use discrete Morse theory in order to “reduce” the standard resolution to a small one [59, 60], and Kobayashi extended Squier’s partial resolution into a full one [219]. Finally, we should mention that Squier subsequently provided a “homotopical” variant of his condition, which was published after his death [328], see also [233]. A finite presentation is said to be of finite derivation type when the full congruence, which identifies any two witnesses of equality between two given words, is finitely generated. It can be shown that this property is an invariant of the monoid, and is implied by having a finite convergent presentation. Moreover,
one can construct an explicit example of a monoid which has a finite presentation with decidable word problem, but does not have finite derivation type.

**Polygraphs as higher-dimensional presentations.** A monoid is a category with only one object, and it is thus natural to extend the notion of presentation, and associated theorems and techniques, from monoids to small categories. Precisely, a small category $C$ will be presented by a set $P_0 = C_0$ of objects, a set $P_1$ of 1-generators, that is, a subset $P_1 \subseteq C_1$ of morphisms generating all morphisms in $C$ by composition, together with a set $P_2$ of relations between certain pairs of composites of 1-generators. This pattern generalizes to higher categories, resulting in the notion of $n$-polygraph [333, 73], which consists of the following data:

- for each $i \in \{0, \ldots, n\}$, a set $P_i$, freely generating a set $P^*_i$ of $i$-dimensional cells,
- for each $i \in \{1, \ldots, n\}$, a pair of maps associating to each $i$-generator its source and target in $P^*_{i-1}$.

Given an $(n+1)$-polygraph $P$, the source and target maps defined on $P_{n+1}$ generate an equivalence relation on $P^*_n$, whose quotient set $C_n$ is the set of $n$-morphisms of the $n$-category $C$ presented by $P$.

Right from the beginning, a polygraph was thought of as a “higher-dimensional rewriting system” [73, 121, 337, 338] and the associated theory of rewriting was subsequently developed, in particular by some of the authors of this book [235, 158, 161, 164, 283, 165]. It turns out that many of the classical theorems go through but, starting at dimension $n = 3$, there is a major difference with the classical setting: a finite rewriting system might give rise to an infinite number of critical pairs, thus preventing easy generalizations of Squier-type theorems.

The fact that polygraphs are higher-dimensional rewriting systems should be taken in a very strong sense here: they are about rewriting rewriting paths. Namely, an $(n + 1)$-polygraph consists of an $n$-polygraph together with $(n + 1)$-dimensional rewriting rules, which specify how to rewrite rewriting paths in the underlying $n$-polygraph. For instance, consider the abstract rewriting system on the left, which is a 1-polygraph:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\ast & \ast & b \\
\ast & a \\
\ast & \ast & a \\
\ast & b & b
\end{array}
\]

Here, we have one object $\ast$ and two rewriting rules $a$ and $b$ rewriting $\ast$ to
itself. We can obtain a 2-polygraph by adjoining a 2-dimensional rewriting rule which rewrites the path $aba$ into the path $bab$, as pictured on the right, thus providing a polygraphic presentation of the monoid $B^*_3$; in this way, we can see that string rewriting is secretly rewriting rewriting paths in abstract rewriting systems! Similarly, in the next dimension, we can see that term rewriting, and more generally rewriting of diagrams, is an instance of rewriting rewriting paths for string rewriting systems.

Several particular generalizations of the notion of polygraph have also been investigated (for $(n, p)$-categories, linear higher-categories [160], cartesian higher-categories, etc.). Most of them are particular instances of the notion of $T$-polygraph introduced by Batanin [28] in order to define polygraphs adapted to weak higher categories: he defines a notion of polygraph parametrized by a globular monad $T$, whose various instantiations allow recovering the previously mentioned variants of polygraphs.

**Coherence.** Given a presentation of an $n$-category $C$ by an $(n+1)$-polygraph $P$, the elements of $P_{n+1}^*$ witness the equalities between $n$-morphisms of $C$. Now, different $(n+1)$-cells may witness the same equality: this defines a congruence on $P_{n+1}^*$. If we extend $P$ by a set $P_{n+2}^*$ generating this congruence, we get a coherent presentation of $M$ by an $(n+2)$-polygraph. For instance, from a convergent presentation of a monoid, we build a coherent presentation by a 3-polygraph $P$ in which the generators in $P_3$ correspond to the critical branchings.

Coherent presentations provide the “right” generalization (in a homotopical sense detailed below) of a structure in higher dimensions. For instance, the theory of monoids can be described by a 3-polygraph. If we extend this polygraph into a coherent one, we obtain a theory corresponding to pseudo-monoids, which is the expected notion of monoid in a monoidal 2-category.

**Resolutions with polygraphs.** The construction of a coherent presentation of an $n$-category may be infinitely pursued in higher dimensions by introducing, for each $m \geq n$, a set of $(m+1)$-cells generating all desired congruences between $m$-cells. More generally, starting with any $\omega$-category $C$, we may build a polygraph $P$ together with an $\omega$-functor $p : P^* \to C$ satisfying the following properties.

1. For each dimension $n \geq 0$, $P_n$ generates $C_n$, in the sense that $p_n : P_n^* \to C_n$ is surjective.
2. For any two parallel cells $x, y$ in $P_n^*$ such that $p_n x = p_n y = u \in C_n$, there is an $(n+1)$-cell $z \in P_{n+1}^*$ with source $x$ and target $y$ such that $p_{n+1} z = 1_u$.

We call such a map $p : P^* \to C$ a polygraphic resolution of $C$ by the
polygraph $P$ [278]. It turns out that two polygraphic resolutions of the same \( \omega \)-category are equivalent up to a suitable notion of homotopy. Polygraphic resolutions are cofibrant replacements in the “canonical” model structure on the category of small \( \omega \)-categories, as introduced in [237]. As a consequence, there is a well-defined notion of homology for \( \omega \)-categories: to each polygraphic resolution of \( C \) by \( P \) corresponds a chain complex \((\mathbb{Z}P_n, \partial_n)_{n \geq 0}\) of abelian groups, whose homology only depends on \( C \). This illustrates the general principle according to which many constructions are better behaved when performed on free objects. In the particular case where \( C \) is a monoid \( M \) seen as an \( \omega \)-category, this homology coincides with the one computed via free resolutions of \( \mathbb{Z} \) by \( \mathbb{Z}M \)-modules [236, 155]. These constructions transfer to strict \( \omega \)-groupoids, or more generally \((\omega, n)\)-categories [16], where all cells of dimension strictly above \( n \) are invertible, yielding appropriate notions of polygraphic resolutions.

Structure of the book(s). This book informally splits in two books, which, however strongly connected, can be read separately, according to one’s taste and objectives.

Low-dimensional book. The first book explores the theory of polygraphs in low dimensions and its applications. It is meant to be very progressive, with little requirements on the background of the reader, apart from basic category theory, and is illustrated with algorithmic computations on algebraic structures. We namely study polygraphs in dimension 1 (Chapter 1), in dimension 2 (Chapters 2 to 9), and in dimension 3 (Chapters 10 to 13).

In all the cases, we introduce the notion of polygraph as well as the associated notions of generated and presented categories (Sections 1.1, 1.2 and 10.1 and Chapter 2), develop the theory of rewriting (Sections 1.3 and 10.2 and Chapter 4), Tietze transformations and completion procedures (Section 1.2 and Chapter 5), termination techniques (Sections 1.3 and 4.4 and Chapter 11) and coherent presentations (Chapters 7 and 12), this last notion requiring the introduction of higher-dimensional notions of polygraphs. We also present the homotopical and homological invariants (Chapters 8 and 9) they allow to compute, and introduce variants of the notion of polygraph, namely linear (Chapter 6) and cartesian polygraphs (Chapter 13).

Higher-dimensional book. The second book goes at a faster pace, and supposes that the reader is familiar with category theory. Moreover, acquaintance with strict higher categories, as well as the notion of model category, can be helpful, even though these notions are recalled. The beginning of this book introduces
and studies the general notion of $n$-polygraph (Chapters 14 to 18). The remainder of the book deals with the homotopy theory of these polygraphs. We construct the “folk” model structure on the category of $\omega$-categories (Chapters 19 to 21), in which polygraphs are precisely the cofibrant objects. This model structure is used to define a homology theory for $\omega$-categories as a derived functor (Chapter 22). Finally, we study the variant of $(\omega, 1)$-polygraphs (Chapter 23), which allows to formulate a higher-dimensional generalization of the coherence results developed in the “low-dimensional book”.

**Appendix.** The book is followed by a number of chapters containing additional material. Some of them perform a review of classical – or not – examples of polygraphs, in order to illustrate their diversity and applications: 2-polygraphs (Appendix A), coherent 2-polygraphs (Appendix B) and 3-polygraphs (Appendix C). Some other chapters recall elements of classical topics used throughout the second part of the book: free $n$-categories (Appendix D), homology (Appendix E), locally presentable categories (Appendix G) and model categories (Appendix H).

**Acknowledgments.** The writing of this book started in 2015, under the code name of *polybook*, and the present exposition has benefited much from interactions with other researchers and friends. We would like to warmly thank the following people who, voluntarily or not, contributed to its elaboration: Mathieu Anel, Thibaut Benjamin, Pierre Cagne, Cameron Calk, Cyrille Chenavier, Pierre-Louis Curien, Benjamin Dupont, Eric Finster, Simon Forest, Jonas Frey, Andrea Gagna, Léonard Guetta, Amar Hadzihasanovic, Simon Henry, Hugo Herbelin, Eric Hoffbeck, Cédric Ho Thanh, Yves Lafont, Chaitanya Leena-Subramaniam, Maxime Lucas, Georges Maltsiniotis, Paul-André Melliès, Jovana Obradovic, Viktorya Ozornova, Jacques Penon, and all participants of the Higher Category Seminar at IRIF.

String diagrams were first typeset using catex [156], and then satex [285].

The early stages of the book also benefited from fundings provided by the projects Focal IDEX and CATHRE ANR.

Our working sessions took place over the years in various locations, and we especially acknowledge for that the hospitality of the IHP in Paris, the CIRM in Marseille and the Bois-Maréchal in the middle of the Mâconnais vineyard.
PART ONE

FUNDAMENTALS OF REWRITING
Abstract rewriting and one-dimensional polygraphs

We begin by discussing 1-polygraphs, which are simply directed graphs, thought of here as abstract rewriting systems: they consist of vertices, which represent the objects of interest, and arrows, which indicate that we can rewrite one object into another. After formally introducing those in Section 1.1, we will see in Section 1.2 that they provide a notion of presentation for sets, by generators and relations. Of course presentations of sets are of little interest in themselves, but merely used here as a gentle introduction to some of the main concepts discussed in this work: in particular, we introduce the notion of Tietze transformations which generate the equivalence between two presentations of the same set. In this context, an important question consists in deciding when two objects are equivalent, i.e., represent the same element of the presented set. In order to address it, we develop the theory of abstract rewriting systems in Section 1.3. Most notably, we show that when the rewriting system satisfies the two properties of termination and confluence, equivalence classes of objects admit a unique canonical representative, the normal form and equivalence of objects can thus be decided by comparing the associated normal forms. Finally, in Section 1.4, we detail the more advanced method of decreasing diagrams, which can be used to show confluence in absence of termination.

1.1 The category of 1-polygraphs

A 0-polygraph is simply another name for a set. Since there is not much to do with those, we move on to 1-polygraphs.

1.1.1 Definition. A 1-polygraph $P$ consists of a 0-polygraph $P_0$, whose elements are called 0-generators, together with a set $P_1$ of 1-generators and two functions $s^P_0, t^P_0 : P_1 \to P_0$ respectively associating to each 1-generator its...
source and target 0-cell. We often write \( \langle P_0 \mid P_1 \rangle \) for such a polygraph and \( a : x \to y \) for a 1-generator \( a \) in \( P_1 \) such that \( s^P_0(a) = x \) and \( t^P_0(a) = y \). A 1-polygraph \( P \) is finite when both \( P_0 \) and \( P_1 \) are.

The notion of 1-polygraph is simply another name for the notion of graph, by which we always mean a directed multigraph, which we sometimes also call a 1-graph. Indeed, a polygraph \( P \) as above is a graph with \( P_0 \) as set of vertices \( P_1 \) as set of edges, an edge \( a \in P_1 \) having \( s^P_0(a) \) as source and \( t^P_0(a) \) as target. Thus, any terminology pertaining to oriented graphs, such as the notion of path, immediately applies to 1-polygraphs.

1.1.2 Example. The directed graph

\[
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \draw (0,0) -- (1,0) node[midway,above] {$a$} -- (1,1) node[midway,above] {$b$} -- (0,2) node[midway,above] {$c$} -- (1,2) node[midway,above] {$z$} -- (1,0);
  \draw (1,0) -- (0,0);
\end{tikzpicture}
\]

(1.1)

can be encoded as the 1-polygraph \( P \) with \( P_0 = \{x, y, z\} \), \( P_1 = \{a, b, c\} \) and

\[
s_0(a) = s_0(b) = x, \quad t_0(a) = t_0(b) = y, \quad s_0(c) = t_0(c) = y,
\]

which can be more concisely denoted as

\[
P = \langle x, y, z \mid a : x \to y, b : x \to y, c : y \to y \rangle.
\]

1.1.3 The category of 1-polygraphs. A morphism \( f : P \to Q \) between 1-polygraphs \( P \) and \( Q \) consists of a pair of functions \( f_0 : P_0 \to Q_0 \) and \( f_1 : P_1 \to Q_1 \) respectively sending the 0- and 1-cells of \( P \) to those of \( Q \) and preserving sources and targets:

\[
\begin{align*}
s^Q_0 \circ f_1 &= f_0 \circ s^P_0, \\
t^Q_0 \circ f_1 &= f_0 \circ t^P_0.
\end{align*}
\]

We write \( \text{Pol}_1 \) for the category of 1-polygraphs and their morphisms. Again, this is simply another name for the usual category of directed graphs and their morphisms.

1.2 Presenting sets

A 1-polygraph \( P \) can be seen as a presentation of a set \( X \), in the following sense. Each element \( x \) of \( P_0 \) denotes an element \( \overline{x} \) of \( X \), in such a way that each element of \( X \) has at least one “name” in \( P_0 \), and each element \( a : x \to y \) in \( P_1 \) represents the renaming of \( \overline{x} \) by \( \overline{y} \). The elements of \( P_0 \) and \( P_1 \) are often respectively called generators and relations.
1.2 Presenting sets

1.2.1 P-congruence. The $P$-congruence $\approx^P$ associated to a 1-polygraph $P$ is the smallest equivalence relation on $P_0$ such that $x \approx^P y$ for every 1-generator $a : x \rightarrow y$ in $P_1$.

1.2.2 The presented set. The set $\overline{P}$ presented by a 1-polygraph $P$ is the set $P_0/\approx^P$ obtained by quotienting $P_0$ by the $P$-congruence $\approx^P$, what we usually simply write $P_0/P_1$. More generally, a set $X$ is presented by a 1-polygraph $P$ when $X$ is isomorphic to $\overline{P}$, and in this case $P$ is called a presentation of $P$.

Geometrically speaking, $X$ amounts to the set of connected components of the graph $P$.

1.2.3 Example. In Example 1.1.2, the relation $\approx^P$ identifies $x$ and $y$, and the presented set is the set with two elements, corresponding to the equivalence classes $\{x, y\}$ and $\{z\}$.

More abstractly, the set presented by a 1-polygraph $P$ can be characterized by the following universal property:

1.2.4 Lemma. For any set $X$ and function $f : P_0 \rightarrow X$ such that $f(x) = f(y)$ for every 1-generator $a : x \rightarrow y$ in $P_1$, there exists a unique function $\overline{f} : \overline{P} \rightarrow X$ such that $\overline{f} \circ q = f$

where $q : P_0 \rightarrow \overline{P}$ is the function sending an element to its equivalence class.

1.2.5 Tietze transformations. At this point, a natural question to ask is: when do two polygraphs present the same set? For instance, the set with two elements can also be presented by the polygraph

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
x \quad d \rightarrow \quad x' \quad e \\
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

which looks quite different from (1.1), and it is not obvious how the two are related. This question was first studied by Tietze for presentations of groups [345], as we shall see in Chapter 5, but similar results already hold for plain sets as we now explain.

We call elementary Tietze transformations the following operations transforming a 1-polygraph $P$ into a 1-polygraph $Q$:

(T1) adding a definable generator: given $x \in P_0$, $y \notin P_0$ and $a \notin P_1$, we define

$$Q = \langle P_0, y \mid P_1, a : x \rightarrow y \rangle,$$
One-dimensional polygraphs

(T2) adding a derivable relation: given \(x, y \in P_0\) and \(a \notin P_1\) such that \(x \approx^P y\), we define
\[
Q = \langle P_0 \mid P_1, a : x \rightarrow y \rangle.
\]

A Tietze transformation from \(P\) to \(Q\) is a zigzag of elementary Tietze transformations, i.e., a finite sequence of polygraphs \((P_i)_{0 \leq i \leq n}\) with \(P_0 = P\) and \(P_n = Q\), together with, for each index \(0 \leq i < n\), an elementary Tietze transformation either from \(P_i\) to \(P_{i+1}\) or from \(P_{i+1}\) to \(P_i\). The Tietze equivalence is the smallest equivalence relation on 1-polygraphs, identifying any two polygraphs related by an elementary Tietze transformation and closed by isomorphism; otherwise said, two polygraphs are Tietze equivalent when there exists a Tietze transformation between them, up to isomorphism.

1.2.6 Lemma. Two Tietze equivalent 1-polygraphs present isomorphic sets.

Proof. By induction on the length of Tietze transformations, it is enough to show that two polygraphs \(P\) and \(Q\) related by an elementary Tietze transformation present the same set. Using the same notations as above, in the case of the transformation (T1), we have
\[
\overline{Q} = (P_0 \sqcup \{y\})/\approx^Q = ((P_0 \sqcup \{y\})/(x \approx y))/\approx^P = P_0/\approx^P = P,
\]
where \(x \approx y\) denotes the smallest equivalence relation identifying \(x\) and \(y\). In the case of the transformation (T2), the relations generated by \(P_1\) and \(Q_1\) are the same and we have
\[
\overline{Q} = Q_0/\approx^Q = P_0/\approx^P = P.\]

We will see in Theorem 1.2.12 that the converse also holds: these operations exactly axiomatize when two finite 1-polygraphs are presenting the same set.

1.2.7 Example. Using the above lemma, one can deduce that the two polygraphs (1.1) and (1.2) present the same set, by building a series of Tietze transformations relating them:

\[
\xymatrix{ x \ar[r]^a \ar@{<=>}[d]_b & y \ar[r]^c & z \\
 & x \ar[r]^a \ar[d]_b & y \ar[r]^z & z \\
(\text{T1}) & (\text{T2}) & (\text{T2}) & (\text{T2}) \\
 & x' \ar[r]^d \ar[d]_e & y \ar[r]^z & z \\
(\text{T2}) & (\text{T2}) & (\text{T2}) & (\text{T2}) \\
 & x' \ar[r]^d \ar[d]_e & y \ar[r]^z & z.}
\]

In the first step, \(y \approx y\) can be shown without resorting to the relation \(c : y \rightarrow y\).
(this is because, by definition, \( \approx \) is an equivalence relation), and therefore the relation \( h \) can be removed using the Tietze transformation (T2) backward. Other steps can be justified similarly. Of course, in this case, it is very easy to compute the sets presented by the two polygraphs (1.1) and (1.2) and to see that they are isomorphic (both have two elements), but it will not be the case anymore, when generalizing to higher dimensions.

1.2.8 Backward Tietze transformations. A Tietze transformation is a zigzag of elementary Tietze transformations. It can alternatively be seen as a sequence of elementary Tietze transformations or the following transformations, that we call backward elementary Tietze transformations, corresponding to using an elementary Tietze transformation in the “backward direction”:

1.2.9 Remark. Given an elementary Tietze transformation from \( P \) to \( Q \), there is an obvious inclusion of \( P \) into \( Q \) which induces a morphism of 1-polygraphs \( P \to Q \). However, for a backward elementary Tietze transformation from \( P \) to \( Q \) there is no canonical morphism \( P \to Q \). For instance, consider the transformation

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  x & \overset{a}{\longrightarrow} & y \\
  \underset{b}{\longrightarrow} & \overset{c}{\longrightarrow} & z \\
  \underset{\approx}{\longrightarrow} & \overset{\approx}{\longrightarrow} & \underset{\approx}{\longrightarrow}
\end{array}
\]

The only reasonable choice would be to send the 1-generator \( c : y \to y \) to an identity on \( y \), which is not possible with a morphism of 1-polygraph (those send 1-generators to 1-generators). This is one of the reasons why we take the elementary Tietze transformations (as opposed to the backward ones) as more primitive.
1.2.10 Minimal presentations. It can be noted that Tietze transformations consisting only of elementary transformations (T1) and (T2) make the presentations larger (in terms of number of generators and relations), whereas those consisting only of (T1) and (T2) make them smaller. We thus sometimes respectively call Tietze expansions and Tietze reductions these two families of Tietze transformations and say that a polygraph $P$ Tietze expands (resp. Tietze reduces) to a polygraph $Q$ if $Q$ can be obtained from $P$ by applying a series of Tietze expansions (resp. Tietze reductions). One may wonder if, by applying only the second kind of transformations, we eventually always reach a minimal presentation with respect to both generators and relations, and whether two such minimal presentations are necessarily isomorphic. We will see that it is indeed the case for finite polygraphs. First, note that a 1-polygraph $P$ without relations (i.e., $P_1 = \emptyset$) is always minimal.

1.2.11 Lemma. Any finite 1-polygraph $P$ Tietze reduces to a polygraph isomorphic to $\langle P \mid \rangle$.

Proof. By induction on the cardinal of $P_1$, we show that we can remove a 1-generator using Tietze transformations, unless $P_1$ is empty. Suppose that $P$ contains a non-directed cycle, i.e., a non-empty non-directed path from a 0-generator $x$ to itself. We can assume that this path does not use the same edge twice, otherwise we can choose a smaller cycle. Given a 1-generator $a : x \to y$ occurring in this cycle, there exists a non-directed path from $x$ to $y$ which is not using $a$. Therefore, we can apply a Tietze transformation (T2) to remove $a$. Otherwise, there is no cycle, and consider a maximal non-directed path in $P$. Since $P$ is finite and acyclic, this path will end by a 1-generator $a : x \to y$ such that either $x$ or $y$ is incident to no other edge. Therefore, we can use a Tietze transformation (T1) to remove $x$ or $y$, along with $a$. □

In the case of finite 1-polygraphs, the above lemma implies the converse of Lemma 1.2.6:

1.2.12 Theorem. Two finite 1-polygraphs present isomorphic sets if and only if they are Tietze equivalent.

Proof. Suppose given two polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ such that $P \simeq Q$. By the previous lemma, $P$ is Tietze equivalent to $\langle P \mid \rangle$, and similarly $Q$ is Tietze equivalent to $\langle Q \mid \rangle$. Finally, the presentations $\langle P \mid \rangle$ and $\langle Q \mid \rangle$ are easily seen to be Tietze equivalent because $P$ and $Q$ are isomorphic. □

1.2.13 Remark. Note that, given the above definition of Tietze transformations, the previous theorem does not generalize to infinite presentations. For instance, the 1-polygraphs $\langle x \mid \rangle$ and $\langle x_i \mid a_i : x_i \to x_0 \rangle_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ both present the set with
one element but are not Tietze equivalent since we can only add or remove a finite number of relations using Tietze equivalences (the notation on the right means that $i$ ranges over \( \mathbb{N} \) both in generators $x_i$ and relations $a_i$). In order to overcome this counter-example, one might be naively tempted to allow infinite sequences of Tietze transformations between 1-polygraphs, but this does not preserve presented sets. For instance, consider the 1-polygraph

\[
\langle x_i, y \mid a_i : x_{i+1} \to x_i, b_i : x_i \to y \rangle_{i \in \mathbb{N}},
\]

i.e., the graph

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{x}_0 \xrightarrow{a_0} \text{x}_1 \xrightarrow{a_1} \text{x}_2 \xrightarrow{a_2} \cdots \\
\text{b}_0 \xrightarrow{b_1} \text{b}_2 \cdots \\
\text{y}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

presenting the set with one element. Using Tietze transformations, any finite number of relations $b_i$ can be removed from the polygraph, since they are derivable. However, if we remove all of them the resulting polygraph presents the set with two elements.

In order to account for infinite presentations, the notion of Tietze equivalence has to be generalized as follows. Firstly, we say that a 1-polygraph $P$ Tietze expands to $Q$ if there is a transfinite sequence of elementary Tietze expansions from $P$ to $Q$; secondly, we define Tietze equivalence as the smallest equivalence relation containing Tietze expansions. Two (non-necessarily finite) 1-polygraphs are Tietze equivalent in this sense if and only if they present isomorphic sets. We do not dwell further on infinite polygraphs, because we are mostly interested in finite polygraphs in this book; details can be found in [178].

We will see that Lemma 1.2.11 does not generalize in dimensions higher than 1, where arbitrary finite sequences of Tietze transformations, interleaving Tietze reductions and expansions, might be required in order to show that two polygraphs present the same object. However, an analogous of Theorem 1.2.12 will still hold, but its proof has to be carried over differently, as explained in Chapter 5.

### 1.3 Abstract rewriting systems

The orientations of the relations do not really matter in a 1-polygraph, with respect to the presented set: if we reverse an edge, the presented set is the same.
This is easily shown using the following series of Tietze transformations
\[
\langle P_0 \mid P'_0, x \to y \rangle \xrightarrow{(T2)} \langle P_0 \mid P'_1, x \to y, y \to x \rangle \xrightarrow{(T2)} \langle P_0 \mid P'_1, y \to x \rangle
\]
which are based on the fact that \( \approx \) is an equivalence relation, and thus symmetric.

However, the orientations can still be useful to decide equality between generators, i.e., answer the following question:

Given two generators, do they represent the same element of the presented set? Or, equivalently, are they related by \( \approx \)?

We will see that in good cases, one can come up with canonical representatives of equivalence classes under \( \approx \), in such a way that the representative of an arbitrary generator can easily be computed. In those situations, the equivalence of two generators can be tested by checking whether their representatives are equal or not. In order to come up with representatives, we use the orientation of the 1-generators. Given two 0-generators \( x \) and \( y \) such that there is a 1-generator \( a : x \to y \), we have \( x \approx y \), and the orientation of the 1-generator will be interpreted as indicating that \( y \) is a “more canonical” representative than \( x \) in the equivalence class under \( \approx \). With respect to this, the “most canonical” elements, which are called normal forms, are good candidates for being representatives of equivalence classes with good properties: under reasonable assumptions, it can be shown that every class admits exactly one such representative. This point of view is the starting point of rewriting theory [20, 342].

1.3.1 Terminology and notations. We have seen that a 1-polygraph \( P \) is simply another name for a graph. Since people in rewriting theory like to think about it from a different point of view, they give it yet another name and call it an abstract rewriting system. In this context, the elements of \( P_0 \) are called objects and those of \( P_1 \) are called rewriting rules (or rewriting steps). A rewriting path is simply a path, i.e., a sequence

\[
x_0 \xrightarrow{a_1} x_1 \xrightarrow{a_2} x_2 \xrightarrow{a_3} \ldots \xrightarrow{a_n} x_n
\]

of composable rewriting steps. The 0-cells \( x_0 \) and \( x_n \) are respectively called the source and target of the path, and we write \( f : x \to y \) for a path \( f \) from \( x \) to \( y \). One also writes \( x \to y \) (resp. \( x \overset{*}{\to} y \)) when there exists a rewriting step (resp. a rewriting path) from \( x \) to \( y \), and the notation \( x \overset{*}{\leftrightarrow} y \) is often used instead of \( x \approx y \).

1.3.2 Normal forms. A 0-cell \( x \in P_0 \) is a normal form when there is no rule \( a : x \to y \) in \( P_1 \) with \( x \) as source.
We can distinguish the following situations concerning normal forms in equivalence classes under $\approx$ of 0-cells in a polygraph $P$: we say that $P$ has

- the *existing normal form property* when every equivalence class contains at least one normal form, i.e., for every $x \in P_0$ there exists a normal form $y \in P_0$ such that $x \leftrightarrow y$,
- the *unique normal form property* when every equivalence class contains at most one normal form, i.e., for every normal forms $x, y \in P_0$, $x \leftrightarrow y$ implies $x = y$,
- the *canonical form property* when every equivalence class contains exactly one normal form, called the *canonical representative* of the class, i.e., it satisfies both the existing and the unique normal form property.

**1.3.3 Example.** Consider the following 1-polygraphs:

$$
\begin{align*}
(1) & \quad x & \rightarrow & \ y \\
(2) & \quad x & \leftrightarrow & \ y \rightarrow \ z \\
(3) & \quad x & \leftrightarrow & \ y \rightarrow \ z
\end{align*}
$$

(1) and (3) have the unique normal form property, (2) and (3) have the existing normal form property, (3) has the canonical form property.

We are interested here in providing practical conditions on $P$ which ensure that the canonical form property holds, and that we are able to efficiently compute the canonical form associated to the class of a 0-cell. We will see that termination of a 1-polygraph implies the existing normal form, confluence implies the unique normal form property, and moreover that confluence can be checked locally for terminating 1-polygraphs.

**1.3.4 Normalizability.** A polygraph is *normalizing* when every 0-cell $x$ rewrites to a normal form. We sometimes write $\bar{x}$ for an arbitrary choice of such a normal form. From the definition, we deduce the following result.

**1.3.5 Lemma.** A normalizing 1-polygraph has the existing normal form property.

The converse does not hold, as illustrated in Example 1.3.20.

**1.3.6 Termination.** In practice, in order to show that a 1-polygraph is normalizing, one often uses the following property. A 1-polygraph $P$ is terminating (or *well-founded* or *noetherian* or *strongly normalizing*) when there is no infinite sequence of rewriting steps

$$
\begin{align*}
x_0 & \xrightarrow{a_1} x_1 & \xrightarrow{a_2} x_2 & \xrightarrow{a_3} \cdots
\end{align*}
$$
For instance, in Example 1.3.3, (2) and (3) are terminating but not (1).

Starting from a 0-cell $x$ in a terminating 1-polygraph, we can define a sequence of 0-cells by induction by $x_0 = x$ and $x_{i+1}$ is the target of an arbitrary rewriting rule $x_i \rightarrow x_{i+1}$ with $x_i$ as source; we stop if there is no such rewriting rule. Termination ensures that this process will end after a finite number of steps and the last 0-cell $x_n$ is necessarily a normal form. We have just shown the following.

1.3.7 Lemma. A terminating 1-polygraph is normalizing.

The converse does not hold, as illustrated in Example 1.3.20.

In practice, the termination of a 1-polygraph $P$ can be shown using the following lemma. We recall that a poset $(N, \preceq)$ is well-founded when every decreasing sequence $n_1 \succ n_2 \succ \ldots$ is eventually stationary: there exists $k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for every $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$ with $i \geq j \geq k$ one has $n_i = n_j$. Equivalently, the poset is well-founded when there exists no infinite strictly decreasing sequence $n_1 \succ n_2 \succ \ldots$ of elements of $N$. The typical example of such an order is $(\mathbb{N}, \preceq)$, or any ordinal.

1.3.8 Lemma. Given a rewriting system $P$ the following statements are equivalent.

1. The rewriting system $P$ is terminating.
2. There exists a well-founded order on $P_0$ such that $x \succ y$ for every 1-generator $a : x \rightarrow y$ in $P_1$.
3. There exists a function $f : P_0 \rightarrow N$, where $N$ is a well-founded poset, such that $f(x) \succ f(y)$ for every 1-generator $a : x \rightarrow y$ in $P_1$.

Proof. Suppose that $P$ is terminating. Then the preorder relation on $P_0$ defined by $x \succeq y$ whenever $x \rightarrow y$ is a well-founded partial order which shows that 1 implies 2, and taking $f : P_0 \rightarrow P_0$ to be the identity shows that 2 implies 3. Finally, 3 implies 1 for if there was an infinite reduction sequence in $P$, the image of the objects under $f$ would be an infinite strictly decreasing sequence of elements of $N$.

1.3.9 Well-founded induction. Suppose given a predicate $P$ on the 0-cells of a terminating polygraph $P$. In order to show that $P$ for all the elements of $P_0$, it is often useful to use the following well-founded induction principle: if

$$\forall x \in P_0, \quad (\forall y \in P_0, x \rightarrow y \text{ implies } P(y)) \text{ implies } P(x)$$

then $\forall x \in P_0, P(x)$ holds.
1.3 Abstract rewriting systems

1.3.10 Proposition. If $P$ is a terminating 1-polygraph then the well-founded induction principle holds.

Proof. By contradiction, suppose that the well-founded induction principle does not hold: there is a predicate $\mathcal{P}$, such that the hypothesis (1.3) holds but not the conclusion, i.e., $\mathcal{P}(x_0)$ does not hold for some $x_0 \in P_0$. By repeated use of (1.3), we can construct a family $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ of elements of $P_0$ such that $\mathcal{P}(x_i)$ does not hold for any $i \in \mathbb{N}$, and $x_0 \rightarrow x_1 \rightarrow \cdots$. This contradicts the fact that $P$ is terminating. \[\square\]

1.3.11 Quasi-termination. Following [112], we introduce the following variant of the termination condition. We say that a 1-polygraph $P$ is quasi-terminating if every sequence $(x_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}$ of 0-cells, with $x_i \rightarrow x_{i+1}$ for every index $i \in \mathbb{N}$, contains an infinite number of occurrences of the same 0-cell: there exists a 0-cell $x$ such that for every $i \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists $j > i$ such that $x_j = x$.

Let $P$ be a 1-polygraph. A 0-cell $x$ is called a quasi-normal form if for any rewriting step $x \rightarrow y$, there exists a rewriting path from $y$ to $x$. If $P$ is quasi-terminating, any 0-cell $x$ rewrites to a quasi-normal form. Note that, this quasi-normal form is neither irreducible nor unique in general. We say that $P$ is quasi-convergent if it is confluent and it quasi-terminates.

1.3.12 Example. The following 1-polygraph

$$
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\rightarrow \\
y \\
\leftrightarrow \\
z
\end{array}
$$

is quasi-terminating and quasi-convergent. Both $y$ and $z$ are quasi-normal forms.

The above termination and normalizability conditions ensure the existing normal form property. We now investigate conditions implying the unique normal form property.

1.3.13 Joinability. Two 0-cells $x, y \in P_0$ of a polygraph $P$ are joinable when there exists 0-cell $z$ such that there are rewriting paths $f : x \rightarrow z$ and $g : y \rightarrow z$:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\rightarrow \\
y \\
\leftrightarrow \\
z
\end{array}
$$

1.3.14 The Church-Rosser property. A 1-polygraph $P$ has the Church-Rosser property when any two 0-cells $x, y \in P_0$ which are equivalent are joinable:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\leftrightarrow \\
y \\
\rightarrow \\
z
\end{array}
$$
1.3.15 Proposition. A 1-polygraph with the Church-Rosser property has the unique normal form property.

Proof. Suppose given two normal forms $x$ and $y$ such that $x \equiv y$. By the Church-Rosser property, there exists a 0-cell $z$ and rewriting paths $x \to z$ and $y \to z$. Since $x$ and $y$ are normal forms, these two paths are necessarily empty, and thus $x = y$. \qed

The converse property is not true, as illustrated by the 1-polygraph

$$x \leftarrow y \to z$$

where $x$ and $z$ are equivalent, but cannot be rewritten to a common 0-cell, even though there is a unique normal form $x$.

In the following, we present more “local” properties which imply the Church-Rosser property, and thus the unique normal form property.

1.3.16 Branchings. In a 1-polygraph $P$, a pair $(a, a')$ of coinital 1-generators $a : x \to y$ and $a' : x \to y'$ in $P$ is called a local branching; a pair $(f, f')$ of coinital rewriting paths $f : x \to y$ and $f' : x \to y'$ is called a branching. The 0-cell $x$ is called the source of the branching.

1.3.17 Confluence. A branching $(f, f')$ as above is confluent when $y$ and $y'$ are joinable:

$$x \leftrightarrow y \leftrightarrow z$$

In this situation, we say that the branching is confluent. A 1-polygraph is confluent (resp. locally confluent) when every branching (resp. local branching) is confluent. Note that a confluent 1-polygraph is necessarily locally confluent.

The above confluence conditions can be summarized graphically as follows:

- Church-Rosser
- Confluence
- Local confluence

1.3.18 Proposition. A 1-polygraph has the Church-Rosser property if and only if it is confluent.
Proof. The left-to-right direction is immediate. For the right-to-left direction, suppose that \( x \) and \( y \) are two equivalent 0-cells: this means that there exists rewriting paths \( f_i : y_i \xrightarrow{\delta} x_i \) and \( g_i : y_i \xrightarrow{\delta} x_{i+1} \) in \( P \), with \( 0 \leq i < n \), where \( x_0 = x \) and \( x_n = y \) forming a diagram as below (ignoring the dotted arrows, \( z \) and \( z' \)):

By induction on \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), we show that \( x_0 \) and \( x_n \) can be joined. The result is immediate when \( n = 0 \), and otherwise the diagram can be completed as above using the confluence hypothesis for \( c \) and the induction hypothesis for \( \text{IH} \). \( \square \)

As a direct corollary, we deduce:

**1.3.19 Lemma.** A confluent 1-polygraph has the unique normal form property.

Confluence is difficult to show in practice, whereas local confluence is much more tractable. Clearly confluence of a rewriting system implies its local confluence, and one could hope that both properties are equivalent. This is however not the case: local confluence does not imply confluence in general, as illustrated by the following example due to Huet [188].

**1.3.20 Example.** Consider the following 1-polygraph:

\[
\begin{align*}
x' & \xleftarrow{f_0} x \xrightarrow{f_1} y \xrightarrow{g_1} y'.
\end{align*}
\]

It is locally confluent (it is easy to check all the possible cases), but not confluent: we have \( x \xrightarrow{f_0} x' \) and \( x \xrightarrow{g_1} y' \), but there is no 0-cell to which both \( x' \) and \( y' \) rewrite.

In the previous example, it can be noted that the rewriting system is not terminating since there is a directed cycle between the vertices \( x \) and \( y \). It was shown in a famous lemma by Newman [290], also known as the diamond lemma, that local confluence and confluence are equivalent when restricting to terminating rewriting systems, thus providing us with simple ways of checking for their confluence.

**1.3.21 Lemma.** A terminating 1-polygraph is confluent if and only if it is locally confluent.
Proof. We show the right-to-left direction, the other one being immediate. We say that a 1-polygraph is confluent (resp. locally confluent) at a 0-cell $x$ when every branching (resp. local branching) with $x$ as source is joinable. By well-founded induction, whose use is justified by Proposition 1.3.10 based on the hypothesis that the 1-polygraph is terminating, we show that the local confluence property at a vertex $x$ implies the confluence property at $x$. The base cases are immediate. Otherwise, we have a diagram of the form

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow \\
y_1 \\
\downarrow \\
y \\
\downarrow \\
y' \\
\downarrow \\
\downarrow \\
z \\
\downarrow \\
z' \\
\end{array}
\]

which can be closed using the local confluence hypothesis for $\text{LC}$ and the induction hypothesis for $\text{IH}$ which provides confluence at $y_1$ and $y'_1$ respectively.

\[\Box\]

1.3.22 Remark. Showing termination and local confluence is the most usual way of proving that an abstract rewriting system is confluent, but it is not the only one. We refer to standard rewriting textbooks for other properties which imply confluence [20, 342]. For instance, an abstract rewriting system has the diamond property when for every pair of coinitial rewriting steps $a : x \rightarrow y$ and $b : x \rightarrow y'$ there exists a pair of cofinal rewriting steps (i.e., rewriting paths of length one) $a' : y \rightarrow x$ and $b' : y' \rightarrow x$. Graphically,

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow \\
y \\
\downarrow \\
y' \\
\downarrow \\
z \\
\end{array}
\]

In this case, the abstract rewriting system is always confluent (this can be shown using a variant of the proof of Lemma 1.3.21) even if it is not terminating.

1.3.23 Convergence. A 1-polygraph is convergent when it is both terminating and confluent.

1.3.24 Proposition. A convergent 1-polygraph has the canonical form property.
Proof. Suppose given a convergent 1-polygraph. Since it is terminating, it is normalizing by Lemma 1.3.7 and thus has the existing normal form property by Lemma 1.3.5. Since it is confluent, Lemma 1.3.19 ensures that it also has the unique normal form property. □

1.3.25 Remark. A polygraph can have the canonical form property without being convergent:

\[ x \xrightarrow{\text{cycle}} y \xrightarrow{\text{isomorphism}} z. \]

Here, all the 0-cells are equivalent and \( z \) is the only normal form, which shows the canonical form property. The polygraph is not terminating (there is a cycle between \( x \) and \( y \)) and thus not convergent.

1.3.26 Deciding equality. Give a finite 1-polygraph \( P \), the equality decision problem, or the word problem, for \( P \) consists in answering the following question:

Given two 0-cells \( x, y \in P_0 \), do we have \( x \approx y \)?

Since we only consider only finite 1-polygraphs, this problem is decidable, meaning that there is a program which takes \( P, x \) and \( y \) as input and outputs whether \( x \approx y \) holds or not. Namely, we can implement a program which will construct all acyclic paths starting from \( x \), which are in finite number, and check whether one of those paths ends at \( y \). We will see that if we assume additional properties on \( P \), this can be performed much more efficiently.

When the 1-polygraph \( P \) has the canonical form property, the equivalence class of \( x \) (resp. \( y \)) contains a unique normal form denoted \( \bar{x} \) (resp. \( \bar{y} \)), and we have \( x \approx y \) if and only if we have \( \bar{x} = \bar{y} \). In this case, the equality decision problem can be decided by comparing normal forms. In particular, in the case where the 1-polygraph is convergent, we have seen in Proposition 1.3.24 that it has the canonical form property, and moreover the normal form \( \bar{x} \) associated to a 0-cell \( x \) can be computed easily. A maximal path starting from \( x \)

\[ x = x_0 \xrightarrow{a_0} x_1 \xrightarrow{a_1} x_2 \xrightarrow{a_2} \cdots \xrightarrow{a_{n-1}} x_n \]

exists because \( P \) is terminating, and the fact that it is maximal means that its target is a normal form, i.e., \( x_n = \bar{x} \). In order to decide whether \( x \) and \( y \) are equivalent, we can thus use the normal form algorithm which consists in

1. rewrite \( x \) as much as possible in order to obtain a normal form \( \bar{x} \), and similarly compute a normal form \( \bar{y} \) for \( y \),
2. check whether \( \bar{x} = \bar{y} \) holds or not.

Formally, this is justified as follows:
1.3.27 Proposition. In a convergent 1-polygraph, two 0-cells \( x \) and \( y \) are equivalent if and only if they have the same normal form: \( x \approx y \) if and only if \( \bar{x} = \bar{y} \).

Proof. Since the polygraph is terminating, it is normalizing by Lemma 1.3.7: \( x \) rewrites to a normal form \( \bar{x} \), and similarly \( y \) rewrites to a normal form \( \bar{y} \). If \( \bar{x} = \bar{y} \), then clearly \( x \) and \( y \) are equivalent:

\[
x \xrightarrow{*} \bar{x} \quad \bar{y} \xleftarrow{*} y.
\]

Conversely, suppose that \( x \) and \( y \) are equivalent, and thus that \( \bar{x} \) and \( \bar{y} \) are also equivalent:

\[
\bar{x} \xleftarrow{*} x \quad \bar{y} \xrightarrow{*} y
\]

The confluence of the polygraph implies that it has the Church-Rosser property by Proposition 1.3.18, and thus the unique normal form property by Proposition 1.3.15. Since \( \bar{x} \) and \( \bar{y} \) are equivalent normal forms, we deduce that they are equal. \( \square \)

1.3.28 Deciding confluence. As a direct corollary of the above proposition, we also have a practical method for checking whether a terminating 1-polygraph is confluent (and thus convergent):

1.3.29 Proposition. A terminating 1-polygraph is confluent if and only if for every local branching \( x \rightarrow y \) and \( x \rightarrow z \), we have \( \hat{y} = \hat{z} \).

1.4 Decreasing diagrams

The main method we have seen so far in order to show the confluence of a 1-polygraph is provided by Newman’s lemma (Lemma 1.3.21), which requires supposing termination of the polygraph. As a more advanced topic, we explain here the method of decreasing diagrams, introduced by van Oostrom [350], see also [342, Section 14.2], which can be used in order to show the confluence of a 1-polygraph which is non-terminating.

1.4.1 Multisets. Given a set \( A \), a multiset on \( A \) is a function \( \mu : A \rightarrow \mathbb{N} \) which is null almost everywhere, i.e., the set \( \{ a \in A \mid \mu(a) \neq 0 \} \) is finite. The set \( A \) is called the domain of the multiset. Given an element \( a \in A \), the natural number \( \mu(a) \) is called its multiplicity in the multiset: \( \mu \) should be thought of as a collection of elements of \( A \) where each element \( a \) occurs \( \mu(a) \) times. We denote by \( A^\# \) the set of all multisets on \( A \).
1.4 Decreasing diagrams

We write $\emptyset$ for the empty multiset on $A$, i.e., the constant function $\emptyset : A \to \mathbb{N}$ equal to 0. Given two multisets $\mu$ and $\nu$ on $A$, their union or sum is the multiset $\mu \sqcup \nu$ on $A$ such that $(\mu \sqcup \nu)(a) = \mu(a) + \nu(a)$ for every element $a \in A$. The operation $\sqcup$ equips $A^\#$ with a structure of commutative monoid, with $\emptyset$ as neutral element, which characterizes multisets over $A$. Given an element $a \in A$, we often write $\{a\}$ for the multiset with $a$ as only element. Given two multisets $\mu$ and $\nu$, their union or sum is the multiset $\mu \sqcup \nu$ on $A$ such that $(\mu \sqcup \nu)(a) = \mu(a) + \nu(a)$ for every element $a \in A$. This is the case precisely when there is a multiset $\mu'$ such that $\mu \sqcup \mu' = \nu$. This relation makes $A^\#$ into a poset which is well-founded.

A partial order $\leq$ on a set $A$ induces an order $\leq^\#$ on $A^\#$, called its multiset extension, defined by $\mu \leq^\# \nu$ if and only if

$$\forall b \in A, \quad \mu(b) > \nu(b) \implies \exists a \in A, \quad a > b \text{ and } \mu(a) < \nu(a).$$

Let us spell it out: for $\mu$ to be smaller than $\nu$, it is fine to have more $b$'s as long as $\nu$ has more of something greater than $b$. The following result is due to Dershowitz and Manna [113]:

1.4.2 Proposition. Given a well-founded poset $(A, \leq)$, its multiset extension $(A^\#, \leq^\#)$ is also well-founded.

1.4.3 Labeled 1-polygraphs. A labeled 1-polygraph $(P, \mathcal{L}, \leq, \ell)$ consists of

- a 1-polygraph $P$,
- a set $\mathcal{L}$ of labels equipped with a well-founded ordering $\leq$,
- a function $\ell : P_1 \to \mathcal{L}$ associating a label to each rewriting step.

1.4.4 Lexicographic maximum measure. Let $(P, \mathcal{L}, \leq, \ell)$ be a fixed labeled 1-polygraph. We write $\mathcal{L}^*$ for the sets of words over $\mathcal{L}$, i.e., finite sequences of elements of $\mathcal{L}$. The empty word is noted $1$, and the concatenation of two words $w$ and $w'$ is noted $ww'$; these operations equip the sets of words with a structure of monoid. Following [350, Definition 3.1], we define the lexicographic maximum measure $\|w\|$ of a word $w \in \mathcal{L}^*$ as the multiset defined inductively by

$$\|1\| = \emptyset,$$

$$\|lw\| = \{l\} \sqcup \|w\|^\ell.$$

Above, $w^\ell$ is the subword of $w$ whose letters are not strictly below $l$, which is formally defined by induction by

$$1^\ell = 1,$$

$$(aw)^\ell = \begin{cases} w^\ell & \text{if } a < l, \\ aw^\ell & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Informally, the multiset $\|w\|$ thus consists of the letters of $w$ which are not dominated by some letter on their left.
One-dimensional polygraphs

The measure $\| \cdot \|$ is extended to the set of finite rewriting paths of $P$ by setting, for every rewriting path $a_1 \ldots a_n$,

$$\|a_1 \ldots a_n\| = \|\ell(a_1) \ldots \ell(a_n)\|,$$

where $\ell(a_1) \ldots \ell(a_n)$ is the product in the monoid $L^*$. Finally, the measure $\| \cdot \|$ is extended to the set of finite branchings $(a, b)$ of $P$, by setting

$$\|(a, b)\| = \|a\| \sqcup \|b\|.$$

1.4.5 Decreasing diagrams. A diagram of rewriting paths of the form

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  f \\
  \downarrow \\
  f' \quad g' \\
  g \\
\end{array}
\]

is decreasing if

$$\|ff'\| \leq^k \|f\| \sqcup \|g\| \quad \text{and} \quad \|gg'\| \leq^k \|f\| \sqcup \|g\|.$$

In the case where $f = a$ and $g = b$ are both 1-generators, it can be shown that the diagram is decreasing if and only if it is of the form

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  a \\
  \downarrow \\
  a' \quad g' \quad \downarrow \\
  b' \quad b \\
  \downarrow \\
  h_1 \quad h_2
\end{array}
\]

(1.4)

where

- $l < \ell(a)$ for every label $l$ of a rewriting step in $f'$,
- $l < \ell(b)$ for every label $l$ of a rewriting step in $g'$,
- $a'$ is either an identity or a rewriting step labeled by $\ell(a)$,
- $b'$ is either an identity or a rewriting step labeled by $\ell(b)$,
- $l < \ell(a)$ or $l < \ell(b)$ for every label $l$ of a transition in $h_1$ (resp. in $h_2$).

A labeled 1-polygraph is locally decreasing when every local branching $(a, b)$ can be completed as a locally decreasing diagram (1.4). We can now recall van Oostrom’s theorem [350, Theorem 3.7], whose proof follows the one of Newman’s Lemma 1.3.21:
1.4 Decreasing diagrams

1.4.6 Theorem. A locally decreasing 1-polygraph is confluent.

This method is complete, in the sense that given a 1-polygraph with countably many 0-cells which is confluent, there is always a way to chose a well-founded poset \( L \) of labels so that the polygraph is locally decreasing [342, Theorem 14.2.32]. Moreover, we can always choose the set \( L = \{0, 1\} \) with \( 0 < 1 \) as set of labels, see [123].
This chapter is dedicated to the definition of 2-polygraphs, which are a 2-dimensional generalization of the 1-polygraphs presented in the previous chapter. Before introducing this notion of 2-polygraph, we first give in Section 2.1 a refined viewpoint over 1-polygraphs. Instead of merely focusing on the set presented by a 1-polygraph \( P \) as a set of equivalence classes of \( P_0 \) modulo the relations in \( P_1 \), we now consider the free category generated by \( P \), whose set of objects is \( P_0 \) and whose morphisms are all the rewriting paths obtained by composing the elements of \( P_1 \). A variant of this construction is the notion of free groupoid generated by a 1-polygraph \( P \), where all 1-generators are supposed to be invertible.

The notion of 2-polygraph, introduced in Section 2.2, naturally appears as soon as arbitrary, non necessarily free, small categories are considered. In order to present such a category \( C \), one starts as above with a polygraph \( P \) such that the elements of \( P_1 \) generate the morphisms of \( C \), but now we must take account of the relations induced by \( C \) among the morphisms of the free category generated by \( \langle P_0 \mid P_1 \rangle \). These relations will be generated by a set \( P_2 \) of 2-generators, consisting in certain pairs of morphisms we want to equalize in \( C \), as explained in Section 2.3.

Following the same pattern, we finally explain in Section 2.4 that a 2-polygraph can also be seen as a system of generators for a free 2-category, thus preparing the study of 3-polygraphs. We also examine, in Section 2.5, the variant where we freely generate a \((2, 1)\)-category, that is, a 2-category in which every 2-cell is invertible. This framework allows to invoke explicit witnesses for the confluence of rewriting paths, which are used in the proofs of coherence results on abstract rewriting systems.
2.1 Generating categories and groupoids

We now define the free category and the free groupoid generated by a 1-polygraph.

2.1.1 Underlying polygraph of a category. Any small category $C$ has an underlying 1-polygraph $P$ with $P_0$ being the set of objects of $C$, $P_1$ being the set of morphisms of $C$, the source and target of a morphism $f : x \to y$ of $C$ being respectively $x$ and $y$. This construction extends in the expected way into a functor $V : \text{Cat} \to \text{Pol}_1$ which to every category $C$ associates its underlying polygraph $VC$.

2.1.2 Freely generated category. A 1-polygraph $P$ induces a category $P^*$, called the category freely generated by $P$, or the free category on $P$, defined as follows:

- its objects are the 0-cells of $P$,
- its morphisms from $x$ to $y$ are composable sequences of 1-generators
  \[ x = x_0 \overset{a_1}{\to} x_1 \overset{a_2}{\to} x_2 \overset{a_3}{\to} \ldots \overset{a_n}{\to} x_n = y \]
  which, more precisely, consist of a sequence $(x_i)_{0 \leq i \leq n}$ of elements of $P_0$, with $x_0 = x$ and $x_n = y$, together with a sequence $(a_i)_{0 \leq i \leq n}$ of elements of $P_1$, for some $n \geq 0$, such that $s_0(a_{i+1}) = x_i$ and $t_0(a_{i+1}) = x_{i+1}$ for $0 \leq i < n$,
- identities are morphisms as above with $n = 0$,
- the composition of two morphisms
  \[ x = x_0 \overset{a_1}{\to} x_1 \overset{a_2}{\to} x_2 \overset{a_3}{\to} \ldots \overset{a_n}{\to} x_n = y \]
  and
  \[ y = y_0 \overset{b_1}{\to} y_1 \overset{b_2}{\to} y_2 \overset{b_3}{\to} \ldots \overset{b_m}{\to} y_m = z \]
  is
  \[ x = x_0 \overset{a_1}{\to} x_1 \overset{a_2}{\to} \ldots \overset{a_n}{\to} x_n = y_0 \overset{b_1}{\to} y_1 \ldots \overset{b_m}{\to} y_m = z. \]

In the terminology of directed graphs, the morphisms of the category $P^*$ are the directed paths in $P$, the natural number $n$ for a path above being its length, identities are empty paths and composition is given by concatenation of paths. Following the terminology of rewriting systems, we will also call a morphism in $P^*$ a rewriting path.

The category $P^*$ can be characterized, up to isomorphism, as the category satisfying the following universal property:
2.1.3 Lemma. For any category $C$ and morphism of 1-polygraphs $f : P \to VC$, there exists a unique functor $f^* : P^* \to C$ such that the following diagram commutes

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P & \xrightarrow{f} & VC \\
\downarrow{i} & & \downarrow{VF^*} \\
VP^* & \xrightarrow{Vf^*} & C \\
\end{array}
\]

where $i : P \to VP^*$ is the morphism of 1-polygraphs sending a 0-generator to itself and a 1-generator $a : x \to y$ to the corresponding path of length 1.

By classical theorems [261, Section IV.1], this is equivalent to the fact that the operation which to every polygraph $P$ associates the freely generated category $P^*$ extends to a functor $-^* : Pol_1 \to \text{Cat}$ which is left adjoint to the functor $V$.

2.1.4 Freely generated groupoid. The previous construction can be modified in order to describe the groupoid freely generated by a polygraph. We recall that a groupoid $C$ is a category in which every morphism is invertible, i.e., for every morphism $f : x \to y$ of $C$ there exists a morphism $f^{-} : y \to x$ such that $f^{-} \circ f = 1_x$ and $f \circ f^{-} = 1_y$. We write $Gpd$ for the category of groupoids and functors between them.

There is an obvious forgetful functor $Gpd \to \text{Cat}$, which admits a left adjoint [52, Proposition 5.2.2]. Given a 1-polygraph $P$, we write $P^*$ for the free groupoid on the category $P^*$. It can be described as the category whose objects are the elements of $P_0$, and morphisms from $x$ to $y$ are composable sequences

\[ x = x_0 \xrightarrow{f_1} x_1 \xleftarrow{f_2} x_2 \xrightarrow{f_3} \ldots \xleftarrow{f_n} x_n = y, \]

where $f_{i+1}$ is a 1-generator which is either of the form $a_{i+1} : x_i \to x_{i+1}$ or $a_{i+1} : x_{i+1} \to x_i$, quotiented by the equivalence relation identifying

\[ \ldots \xrightarrow{f_{i-1}} x \xleftarrow{a} y \xrightarrow{a} x \xrightarrow{f_{i+1}} \ldots \text{ with } \ldots \xrightarrow{f_{i-1}} x \xleftarrow{f_{i+1}} \ldots \]

and

\[ \ldots \xleftarrow{f_{i-1}} y \xleftarrow{a} x \xrightarrow{a} y \xleftarrow{f_{i+1}} \ldots \text{ with } \ldots \xleftarrow{f_{i-1}} y \xrightarrow{f_{i+1}} \ldots . \]

which means that we can remove two adjacent occurrences of a 1-generator $a$ in different directions. Identities are empty sequences and composition behaves as in §2.1.2. This explicit construction will be presented in more details in §3.2.1. Note that, in the terminology of graphs, a morphism as above is called a non-directed path in $P$. 

Two-dimensional polygraphs
The category of 2-polygraphs

The interest of this construction lies in the fact that the morphisms of $P^T$ are “witnesses” for the $P$-congruence of 0-cells, as defined in §1.2.1:

2.1.5 Lemma. Two 0-cells $x, y \in P_0$ are $P$-congruent if and only if there exists a morphism $f : x \to y$ in $P^T$.

2.1.6 Three functors. To sum up, we have defined the following sequence of functors:

$$\text{Pol}_1 \to \text{Cat} \to \text{Gpd} \to \text{Set},$$

where

- $\text{Pol}_1 \to \text{Cat}$ associates to a 1-polygraph the category it freely generates,
- $\text{Cat} \to \text{Gpd}$ associates to a category the groupoid it freely generates,
- $\text{Gpd} \to \text{Set}$ associates to a groupoid $C$ the corresponding quotient set (obtained from the set of objects of $C$ by identifying any two objects between which there is a morphism).

The composite functor $\text{Pol}_1 \to \text{Set}$ was explicitly described in Section 1.2.

2.2 The category of 2-polygraphs

We are now ready to introduce 2-polygraphs, which consist in a 1-polygraph together with a set of globular 2-generators between parallel 1-cells, that is, 1-cells having same source and target. Those were introduced by Street [333]. They are sometimes also called linear sketches [27, Section 4.6] when seen as a particular class of sketches, see §G.1.

2.2.1 Notations on 1-cells. Given a 1-polygraph $P$, we write $P^+_1$ for the set of 1-cells of the category $P^*$, i.e., the set of paths in $P$. The composite of two 1-cells $u : x \to y$ and $v : y \to z$ is written $uv : x \to z$, or $u * v : x \to z$, and the empty path on a 0-generator $x$ is written $1_x$. We also write $i_1 : P_1 \to P^+_1$ for the canonical inclusion sending a 1-generator to the corresponding path of length 1. Given a 1-generator $a \in P_1$, we generally simply write $a$ instead of $i_1(a)$. The source and target functions $s_0, t_0 : P_1 \to P_0$ canonically extend to functions $s_0^*, t_0^* : P^+_1 \to P_0$ such that

$$s_0^* \circ i_1 = s_0 \quad \text{and} \quad t_0^* \circ i_1 = t_0 \quad (2.1)$$
respectively sending a path $f : x \to y$ to its source $x$ and its target $y$, what we often picture as a “commuting” diagram of form

$$
\begin{array}{c}
P_0 \\
\downarrow s_0 \\
P_1 \\
\downarrow s_1 \\
P_2
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
P_0^* \\
\downarrow s_0^* \\
P_1^* \\
\downarrow s_1^* \\
P_2^*
\end{array}
$$

2.2.2 Definition. A 2-polygraph consists of

– a 1-polygraph $P$, i.e.,

$$
P_0 \xrightarrow{s_0} P_1,
$$

– a set $P_2$ of 2-generators together with two functions

$$
s_1, t_1 : P_2 \to P_1^*,
$$

associating to each relation its source and target, which is such that

$$
s_1^* \circ s_1 = s_0^* \circ t_1 \quad \text{and} \quad t_1^* \circ s_1 = t_0^* \circ t_1.
$$

(2.2)

A 2-polygraph thus consists of a diagram of sets and functions

$$
\begin{array}{c}
P_0 \\
\downarrow s_0 \\
P_1 \\
\downarrow s_1 \\
P_2 \\
\downarrow s_1^* \\
P_1^* \\
\downarrow s_1^* \\
P_2^*
\end{array}
$$

A 2-polygraph thus consists of a diagram of sets and functions

$$
\begin{array}{c}
P_0 \\
\downarrow s_0 \\
P_1 \\
\downarrow s_1 \\
P_2 \\
\downarrow s_1^* \\
P_1^* \\
\downarrow s_1^* \\
P_2^*
\end{array}
$$

A 2-polygraph is finite when the sets $P_0$, $P_1$, and $P_2$ are. The underlying 1-polygraph of a 2-polygraph $P$ is denoted $P_{\leq 1}$.
2.2.3 The category of 2-polygraphs. A morphism \( f : P \to Q \) between two 2-polygraphs \( P \) and \( Q \) consists of a morphism \( f : P_{\leq 1} \to Q_{\leq 1} \) between the underlying 1-polygraphs together with a function \( f_2 : P_2 \to Q_2 \) such that \( s_1^Q \circ f_2 = f_1 \circ s_1^P \) and \( t_1^Q \circ f_2 = f_1 \circ t_1^P \). These compose in the expected way, and we write \( \text{Pol}_2 \) for the category of 2-polygraphs and their morphisms.

2.3 Presenting categories

2.3.1 Quotient categories. Given a category \( C \), a congruence \( \approx \) on \( C \) is an equivalence relation on the morphisms of \( C \) such that
- given \( u : x \to y \) and \( u' : x' \to y' \), \( u \approx u' \) implies \( x = x' \) and \( y = y' \),
- given morphisms \( u : x' \to x \), \( v, v' : x \to y \) and \( w : y \to y' \), if \( v \approx v' \) then \( uvw \approx uw'w' \).

In such a situation, one defines the quotient category \( C/\approx \) as the category with the same objects as \( C \), and equivalence classes of morphisms of \( C \) as morphisms, composition and identities being induced by those of \( C \).

2.3.2 \( P \)-congruence. Given a 2-polygraph \( P \), the \( P \)-congruence \( \approx_P \), also sometimes noted \( \leftrightarrow \), is the smallest congruence on \( P^* \) such that \( u \approx_P v \) for every 2-generator \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P_2 \).

2.3.3 Presented category. The category \( \overline{P} \) presented by a 2-polygraph \( P \) is the category \( \overline{P} = P^*/\approx_P \) obtained by quotienting the category freely generated by the underlying polygraph by the \( P \)-congruence, what we usually write \( P_{\leq 1}/P_2 \).

It can be characterized by the following universal property:

2.3.4 Lemma. Given any category \( C \) and functor \( f : P_{\leq 1} \to C \) such that \( f(u) = f(v) \) for any 2-generator \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P_2 \), there exists a unique functor \( \overline{f} : \overline{P} \to C \) such that \( \overline{f} \circ q = f \)

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P_{\leq 1} & \xrightarrow{f} & C \\
\downarrow q & & \downarrow \overline{f} \\
\overline{P} & & \\
\end{array}
\]

where \( q \) is the quotient functor which is the identity on objects and sends a morphism to its equivalence class under \( \approx_P \).
Two-dimensional polygraphs

Note that, with the notations of the above lemma, two morphisms \( u \) and \( v \) in \( P_1^* \) are such that \( u \approx_P v \) if and only if \( q(u) = q(v) \).

We say that a category \( C \) is presented by a 2-polygraph \( P \), or that \( P \) is a presentation of \( C \), when \( C \) is isomorphic to \( \overline{P} \).

2.3.5 Presenting monoids. Any monoid \( M \) can canonically be seen as a category with only one object \( * \), the morphisms of the category being the elements of \( M \), compositions and identities being given by multiplication and unit of the monoid. This construction extends as a functor \( \text{Mon} \to \text{Cat} \) from the category of monoids to the category of small categories, which is full and faithful. In the following, by a presentation of a monoid, we will always implicitly mean a presentation of the associated category. Those provide a most abundant source of examples of presentations, see Appendix A.

2.3.6 Example. There are exactly two monoids with two elements. They are presented by the following two 2-polygraphs:

\[
\begin{align*}
P &= \langle * \mid \alpha : * \to * \mid \alpha : aa \Rightarrow 1 \rangle, \\
Q &= \langle * \mid \alpha : * \to * \mid \alpha : aa \Rightarrow a \rangle.
\end{align*}
\]

The monoid presented by \( P \) is \( \mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N} \), see Example 4.5.2 for details.

2.3.7 Example. The symmetric group \( S_n \) is the monoid whose elements are bijections on a set with \( n \) elements, sometimes also called permutations, with composition as multiplication and identities as neutral elements. It admits a presentation by a 2-polygraph \( P \) with \( P_0 = \{ * \} \), \( P_1 = \{ a_0, \ldots, a_{n-1} \} \) each 1-generator having \( * \) as source and target, and the relations in \( P_2 \) are

- \( a_i a_i \Rightarrow 1 \), for \( 0 \leq i < n \),
- \( a_i a_{i+1} a_i \Rightarrow a_{i+1} a_i a_{i+1} \), for \( 0 \leq i < n - 1 \),
- \( a_i a_j \Rightarrow a_j a_i \), for \( 0 \leq i < j < n \) with \( i + 1 < j \).

A generator \( a_i \) corresponds here to the transposition exchanging the \( i \)-th and the \( (i+1) \)-th element of the set with \( n \) elements, and the reader is encouraged to check for himself that these relations make sense, see §A.1.19 and §C.1.3 for details.

2.3.8 A characterization of presentations. The following lemma characterizes when a 2-polygraph is a presentation of a category \( C \). In practice, it is quite cumbersome to use and more practical tools will be introduced in Chapter 4, based on rewriting. We recall that the underlying 1-polygraph \( VC \) of a category \( C \) was defined in §2.1.1.
2.3 Presenting categories

2.3.9 Lemma. A 2-polygraph $P$ is a presentation of a category $C$ if and only if there is a morphism of 1-polygraphs $f : P_{<1} \rightarrow VC$ such that the following three conditions hold.

1. The map $f_0 : P_0 \rightarrow C_0$ is a bijection between 0-generators and objects of $C$.
2. For any generator $a : u \Rightarrow v$ in $P_2$, $f(u) = f(v)$.
3. The function $f^* : P_1 \rightarrow C_1$ induces a bijection between $P_1/P_2$ and $C_1$.

Proof. By post-composition with the counit $(VC)^* \rightarrow C$ of the adjunction described in §2.1.2, the functor $f^* : P_{<1} \rightarrow (VC)^*$ induces a functor $P_{<1} \rightarrow C$ that we still write $f^*$. The second condition amounts to require that it induces, by Lemma 2.3.4, a well-defined quotient functor $\overline{f^*} : \overline{P} \rightarrow C$. The first condition amounts to require that this functor is bijective on objects, and the third that it is full and faithful. □

2.3.10 Models. Given categories $C$ and $S$, the category of models of $C$ in $S$ is the category

$$\text{Mod}_S(C) = \text{Cat}(C, S)$$

of functors from $C$ to $S$ and natural transformations between those. We simply write $\text{Mod}(C)$ in the case $S = \text{Set}$.

2.3.11 Lemma. If $P$ is a 2-polygraph and $C$ a category, the category $\text{Mod}_C(P)$ is isomorphic to the category whose objects consist of

- a family $(f_x)_{x \in P_0}$ of objects of $C$ indexed by 0-generators in $P_0$,
- a family $(f_a : f_x \rightarrow f_y)_{a : x \Rightarrow y \in P_1}$ of morphisms in $C$ indexed by 1-generators in $P_1$,

such that for every 2-generator $\alpha : a_1 \ldots a_m \Rightarrow b_1 \ldots b_n$ in $P_2$, we have

$$f_{a_1} \ldots f_{a_m} = f_{b_1} \ldots f_{b_n}$$

and a morphism $\phi$ between two objects $f$ and $g$ consists of a family

$$(\phi_x : f_x \rightarrow g_x)_{x \in P_0}$$

of morphisms of $C$ indexed by the 0-generators of $P$ such that, for every 1-generator $a : x \Rightarrow y \in P_1$, the following diagram commutes

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
   f_x & \xrightarrow{\phi_x} & g_x \\
   f_a \downarrow & & \downarrow g_a \\
   f_y & \xrightarrow{\phi_y} & g_y
\end{array}$$
Two-dimensional polygraphs

2.3.12 Example. Consider the category $C$ with two objects $X$ and $Y$, and a single morphism in each hom-set:

$$
1_X \xrightarrow{F} X \xleftarrow{G} Y \xrightarrow{1_Y}.
$$

This category admits a presentation by the 2-polygraph

$$
P = \{ x, y \mid a : x \to y, b : y \to x \mid a : ab \Rightarrow 1_x, \beta : ba \Rightarrow 1_y \},
$$

which can be shown by using Lemma 2.3.9. We define a morphism of 1-polygraphs $f : P_{\leq 1} \to VC$ by

$$
f(x) = X, \quad f(y) = Y, \quad f(a) = F, \quad f(b) = G
$$

and check the conditions of Lemma 2.3.9.

1. The map $f_0 : \{ x, y \} \to \{ X, Y \}$ is a bijection.
2. The map $f^*$ preserves the 2-generator $\alpha : ab \Rightarrow 1_x$:

$$
f^*(ab) = f^*(a)f^*(b) = FG = 1_X = 1_{f^*(x)} = f^*(1_x)
$$

and similarly for $\beta$,
3. The morphisms of $P_1^*$ are of the form

$$(ab)^n : x \to x, \quad (ab)^n a : x \to y, \quad (ba)^nb : y \to x, \quad (ba)^n : y \to y,
$$

for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and those are respectively equivalent to

$$
1_x : x \to x, \quad a : x \to y, \quad b : y \to x, \quad 1_y : y \to y,
$$

by induction on $n \in \mathbb{N}$, because the presence of $\alpha$ and $\beta$ respectively imply that we have $ab \approx 1_x$ and $ba \approx 1_y$. These are distinct (they have different types) and are in bijection with the morphisms of $C$ (there is one in each hom-set), in a way compatible with source and target.

By Lemma 2.3.11, a model of $C$ in a category $S$ consists of

- two objects $f_x$ and $f_y$ of $S$,
- two morphisms $f_a : f_x \to f_y$ and $f_b : f_y \to f_x$ of $S$,
- such that $f_b \circ f_a = 1_{f_x}$ and $f_a \circ f_b = 1_{f_y}$.

The algebras of $C$ in $S$ are thus precisely the isomorphisms in $S$. Otherwise said, the category $C$ represents the functor $\text{Cat} \to \text{Set}$ sending a category to its set of isomorphisms. For this reason, $C$ is sometimes called the walking isomorphism.
2.3 Presenting categories

2.3.13 Free categories. A category \( C \) is free when it admits a presentation by a 2-polygraph \( P \) which has no relations (i.e., \( P_2 = \emptyset \)): in this case, the category \( C \) can be obtained as the category freely generated by the underlying 1-polygraph of \( P \). Contrary to the case of sets, see Lemma 1.2.11, not every category is free: the relations are really needed in order to have a presentation for every category.

Consider \( \mathbb{Z} \) as the category with one object \( \star \), the morphisms being the integers with composition given by addition and identity by zero. Suppose given a presentation without relations of this category. This presentation necessarily has exactly one 0-generator \( \star \), and at least two generators \( a, b \): if there was zero (resp. one) generator, the presented category would be the terminal one (resp. the one corresponding to the additive monoid \( \mathbb{N} \)). Writing \( P \) for the underlying polygraph of the presentation, there is an isomorphism \( f : P^* \to C \cdot \) Since \( \mathbb{Z} \) is abelian, we have \( f(a)f(b) = f(b)f(a) \) and therefore \( ab = ba \) in \( P^* \), which does not actually hold in \( P^* \). By contradiction, every presentation of \( \mathbb{Z} \) has at least one relation, i.e., \( \mathbb{Z} \) is not free. An actual presentation of \( \mathbb{Z} \) is given in §A.1.14. For similar reasons, the category corresponding to the monoid \( \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} \) (or in fact any abelian monoid, excepting \( \mathbb{N} \) and the trivial monoid) is not free.

2.3.14 Canonical and standard presentations. Any category admits a presentation, in the following way. Suppose given a category \( C \) and write \( P = VC \) for its underlying 1-polygraph, whose 0-generators are the objects of \( C \) and 1-generators are the morphisms of \( C \), see §2.1.1. The identity morphism \( 1_P : P \to VC \) extends, by Lemma 2.1.3, as a functor \( 1_P^* : P^* \to C \), which sends a 1-cell in \( P^* \), i.e., a formal composite of morphisms in \( C \), to the result of its composition. The 2-polygraph with \( P \) as underlying 1-polygraph and whose set of 2-generators is

\[
P_2 = \left\{ (u, v) \in P_1^* \times P_1^* \mid 1_P(u) = 1_P(v) \right\},
\]

with \( s_1(u, v) = u \) and \( t_1(u, v) = v \), is a presentation of \( C \) called its canonical presentation.

If, in the previous presentation, we restrict the set \( P_2 \) to the 2-generators which are either of the form \((ab, c)\) or of the form \((1_x, a)\), with \( a, b, c \in P_1 \), we obtain another presentation of \( C \), which is smaller, called its standard presentation, detailed in §4.5.5.
2.4 Generating 2-categories

In the same way a 1-polygraph generates a category which is a “graph with compositions”, a 2-polygraph also generates a 2-category which is a “2-graph with compositions”. Here, a 2-graph consists of a graph together with “2-cells” which have edges as source and target.

2.4.1 2-graphs. A 2-graph $C$, or 2-globular set, consists in sets

- $C_0$ of 0-cells,
- $C_1$ of 1-cells together with functions $s_0, t_0 : C_1 \to C_0$ respectively associating to each 1-cell its source and target 0-cell,
- $C_2$ of 2-cells together with functions $s_1, t_1 : C_2 \to C_1$ respectively associating to each 2-cell its source and target 1-cell,

such that

$s_0 \circ s_1 = s_0 \circ t_1, \quad t_0 \circ s_1 = t_0 \circ t_1$.

We often write $a : x \to y$ for a 1-cell $a$ with $s_0(a) = x$ and $t_0(a) = y$, and

$\alpha : a \Rightarrow b : x \to y,$

for a 2-cell $\alpha$ with

$s_1(\alpha) = a, \quad t_1(\alpha) = b, \quad s_0(a) = s_0(b) = x \quad \text{and} \quad t_0(a) = t_0(b) = y$.

Any 2-graph has an underlying 1-graph with $C_0$ as vertices and $C_1$ as edges.

2.4.2 Example. The 2-graph $C$ with

$C_0 = \{x, y, z\},$

$C_1 = \{a : x \to y, b_1 : y \to z, b_2 : y \to z, b_3 : y \to z\},$

$C_2 = \{\alpha : b_1 \Rightarrow b_2, \beta : b_2 \Rightarrow b_3\},$

can be depicted as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{ x \ar[r]^-a & y \\
& z \ar[ur]_-b_1 \ar[ur]^-b_2 \ar[ur]_-b_3 }
\end{array}
\]
2.4 Generating 2-categories

2.4.3 2-categories. A 2-category consists in a 2-graph $\mathcal{C}$ together with

- for each 0-cell $x$ an identity 1-cell
  \[ 1_x : x \to x, \]
- for each 1-cells $f : x \to y$ and $g : y \to z$, a horizontal composite 1-cell
  \[ f *_0 g : x \to z, \]
- for each 2-cells $\alpha : f \Rightarrow f' : x \to y$ and $\beta : g \Rightarrow g' : y \to z$, a horizontal composite 2-cell
  \[ \alpha *_0 \beta : (f *_0 g) \Rightarrow (f' *_0 g') : x \to z, \]
- for each 1-cell $f : x \to y$, an identity 2-cell
  \[ 1_f : f \Rightarrow f, \]
- for each 2-cells $\alpha : f \Rightarrow g : x \to y$ and $\beta : g \Rightarrow h : x \to y$, a vertical composite 2-cell
  \[ \alpha *_1 \beta : f \Rightarrow h : x \to y, \]
such that

- the compositions $*_0$ and $*_1$ are associative and admit identities as neutral elements,
- the exchange law holds: given 1-cells $f : x \to y$ and $g : y \to z$, one has
  \[ 1_f *_0 1_g = 1_{f*og}, \tag{2.3} \]
  and given 2-cells
  \[ \alpha : f \Rightarrow f' : x \to y, \quad \alpha' : f' \Rightarrow f'' : x \to y, \]
  \[ \beta : g \Rightarrow g' : y \to z, \quad \beta' : g' \Rightarrow g'' : y \to z, \]
  we have
  \[ (\alpha *_1 \alpha') *_0 (\beta *_1 \beta') = (\alpha *_0 \beta) *_1 (\alpha' *_1 \beta'). \tag{2.4} \]

Graphically, the equations (2.3) and (2.4) can be pictured as the “commutation” of the diagrams
Two-dimensional polygraphs

and

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\alpha \\
\beta
\end{array}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\alpha' \\
\beta'
\end{array}
\]

Note that every 2-category \( C \) has an underlying category, sometimes denoted by \( C_{\leq 1} \), with \( C_0 \) as set of objects and \( C_1 \) as set of morphisms.

**2.4.4 Notation.** In the following, when considering morphisms in 2-categories, we often omit writing identities and horizontal compositions \(*_0\), and write \(*_1\) for vertical composition \(*_1\); for instance, we write \( u\alpha w \ast_1 \beta \) instead of \((1_u \ast_0 \alpha \ast_0 1_w) \ast_1 \beta\).

**2.4.5 2-functors.** A 2-functor \( f : C \to D \) between 2-categories \( C \) and \( D \) consists of functions

\[
\begin{align*}
f_0 &: C_0 \to D_0, \\
f_1 &: C_1 \to D_1, \\
f_2 &: C_2 \to D_2,
\end{align*}
\]

which are

- compatible with sources and targets:

\[
\begin{align*}
s_0 \circ f_1 &= f_0 \circ s_0, \\
s_1 \circ f_2 &= f_1 \circ s_1,
\end{align*}
\]

- compatible with compositions: for every composable pair of 1-cells \((u, v)\) (resp. 2-cells \((\alpha, \beta)\)),

\[
\begin{align*}
f_1(u \ast_0 v) &= f_1(u) \ast_0 f_1(v), \\
f_2(\alpha \ast_0 \beta) &= f_2(\alpha) \ast_0 f_2(\beta),
\end{align*}
\]

- compatible with identities: for every 0-cell \( x \) and 1-cell \( u \),

\[
\begin{align*}
f_1(1_x) &= 1_{f_0(x)}, \\
f_2(1_u) &= 1_{f_1(u)}.
\end{align*}
\]

In the following, we generally omit writing the subscript \( i \) from the components \( f_i \) of a 2-functor \( f \).
2.4 Generating 2-categories

2.4.6 Freely generated 2-categories. The free 2-category \( P^\ast \) generated by a 2-polygraph \( P \) is the 2-category \( C \) with \( P_{\leq 1} \) as underlying category, i.e.,

- \( C_0 = P_0 \),
- \( C_1 = P_1 \) with source and target given by \( s^C_0 = s^P_0 \) and \( t^C_0 = t^P_0 \),

whose 2-cells are freely generated by \( P_2 \), i.e., \( C_2 \) is the smallest set containing \( P_2 \), together with source and target given by the functions \( s_1 \) and \( t_1 \) of \( P \), such that

- for every \( \alpha, \beta \in C_2 \) such that \( t_0 \circ t_1(\alpha) = s_0 \circ s_1(\beta) \), there is an element \( \alpha * \beta \in C_2 \),
- for every \( \alpha, \beta \in C_2 \) such that \( t_1(\alpha) = s_1(\beta) \), there is an element \( \alpha * \beta \in C_2 \),

quotiented by the axioms required to form a 2-category, see §2.4.3. We write \( P_2^\ast \) for the set \( C_2 \) of 2-cells of \( P^\ast \).

Another construction for this 2-category will be presented in §4.1.8. It can be characterized by the following universal property:

2.4.7 Lemma. Suppose given a 2-polygraph \( P \), a 2-category \( C \), and functions

\[
\begin{align*}
f_0 : P_0 &\to C_0, \\
f_1 : P_1 &\to C_1, \\
f_2 : P_2 &\to C_2,
\end{align*}
\]

such that

- for every 1-generator \( a : x \to y \), we have \( f_1(a) : f_0(x) \to f_0(u) \),
- for every 2-generator \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \), we have \( f_2(\alpha) : f_1^\ast(u) \Rightarrow f_1^\ast(v) \),

where \( f_1^\ast(a_1 \ldots a_n) = f_1(a_1) \ldots f_1(a_n) \). Then there exists a 2-functor

\[
f^\ast : P^\ast \to C,
\]

which is unique up to isomorphism, such that

- for every 0-generator \( x \in P_0 \), \( f^\ast(x) = f_0(x) \),
- for every 1-generator \( a \in P_1 \), \( f^\ast(a) = f_1(a) \),
- for every 2-generator \( \alpha \in P_2 \), \( f^\ast(\alpha) = f_2(\alpha) \).

2.4.8 String diagrams. A convenient and intuitive notation for morphisms in free 2-categories is provided by string diagrams. Those were originally introduced by Feynman [127] and Penrose [297] in physics, and formally studied by Joyal and Street [208], see [24] for a detailed historical account and [324] for a panorama of the possible variations.

Suppose fixed a 2-polygraph \( P \). A 2-generator

\[
\alpha : a_1 \ldots a_m \Rightarrow b_1 \ldots b_n,
\]
where the $a_i : x_{i-1} \to x_i$ and $b_i : y_{i-1} \to y_i$ are 1-generators, can be thought of as some kind of device with $m$ inputs, with $a_i$ as types, and $n$ outputs, with $b_i$ as types. This suggests that, instead of using the usual depiction

we can use the alternative graphical notation

This notation, called a *string diagram* because the 1-cells become some kind of strings, is inspired of electric circuits where electronic components are linked with conductive wires. Namely, a 2-cell will more generally be depicted as various gates linked together, for instance:

This notation is “dual” (in the sense of Poincaré duality) to the traditional one: 0-cells are pictured as 2-dimensional region of the plane, 1-cells are pictured as wires and 2-cells are pictured as points (the above rectangles, which are here in order to be able to put labels inside them, should be pictured as points if we were drawing string diagrams by the book).

String diagrams can be composed in the various ways expected in a 2-category, as we now describe. Horizontal composition of 2-cells of $P^*$

$$\phi : a_1 \ldots a_m \Rightarrow a_1' \ldots a_m' \quad \text{and} \quad \psi : b_1 \ldots b_n \Rightarrow b_1' \ldots b_n'$$

amounts to horizontal juxtaposition of the corresponding diagrams, as shown on the left

```plaintext
[Diagram]
```
and vertical composition of
\[ \phi : a_1 \ldots a_m \Rightarrow b_1 \ldots b_k \quad \text{and} \quad \psi : b_1 \ldots b_k \Rightarrow c_1 \ldots c_n \]
is obtained by vertically juxtaposing the corresponding diagrams and linking the wires, as shown on the right above, identities simply being wires. These diagrams are to be considered up to “planar isotopy”, by which we mean continuous deformations, fixing boundaries, preserving direction, and forbidding wires to cross. For instance, the three diagrams below are considered to be equal:

\[ \phi \left[ \begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
\psi
\end{array} \right] = \phi \left[ \begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
\psi
\end{array} \right] = \psi \left[ \begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
\phi
\end{array} \right] \]

This is detailed in [208], where it is proved that the axioms of 2-categories are satisfied and the following universal property is satisfied:

\subsection*{2.4.9 Theorem.} String diagrams (up to planar isotopy) are the 2-cells of a 2-category which is the free 2-category \( \mathcal{P}^* \) on the 2-polygraph \( P \).

Given a 0-cell \( x \), the string diagram corresponding to the 2-cell \( 1_1 \) (the identity on the identity on \( x \)) is the empty one. Since this can be confusing, we generally use the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\emptyset
\end{array}
\]

in order to represent it.

\subsection*{2.4.10 Strict monoidal categories.} We introduce here useful categorical structures, which can be seen as particular cases of 2-categories.

A strict monoidal category \( (\mathcal{C}, \otimes, i) \) consists of a category \( \mathcal{C} \) together with a tensor product functor \( \otimes : \mathcal{C} \times \mathcal{C} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \) and a unit object \( i \in \mathcal{C} \), such that the product is associative and admits \( i \) as unit, which means that for any objects \( x, y, z \in \mathcal{C} \), we should have

\[ (x \otimes y) \otimes z = x \otimes (y \otimes z) \quad \text{and} \quad i \otimes x = x = x \otimes i. \]

Any 2-category with only one 0-cell induces a strict monoidal category with \( C_1 \) as set of objects, \( C_2 \) as set of morphisms, composition being given by \( *_1 \) and tensor product by \( *_0 \), and this extends to an isomorphism between 2-categories with one fixed 0-cell and strict monoidal categories: in this way strict monoidal categories can be seen as particular cases of 2-categories (and we will often implicitly make use of this identification in the following).

Among strict monoidal categories, the following class is a source of particularly useful examples (see Chapter 10 and Appendix C). A \( \text{PRO} \) is a strict
monoidal category whose set of objects is \(\mathbb{N}\) and such that the tensor product of two objects \(m\) and \(n\) is given by addition \(m \otimes n = m + n\). The terminology is an abbreviation of “PROduct category” [262].

2.4.11 Bicategories. The axioms for 2-categories are sometimes too strong for situations encountered in practice: it happens in many situations that composition of 1-cells is not strictly associative, but only associative up to a coherent 2-cell, and similarly identity 1-cells are not strictly neutral elements for composition. This motivates the introduction of the following generalization of the notion of 2-category.

A bicategory \(\mathcal{C}\) consists in a 2-graph \(\mathcal{C}\) together with identity 1-cells and 2-cells, horizontal composition of 1- and 2-cells, vertical composition of 2-cells, as in §2.4.3, and moreover natural families of invertible 2-cells

\[
\alpha_{f,g,h} : (f \ast_0 g) \ast_0 h \Rightarrow f \ast_0 (g \ast_0 h), \quad \lambda_f : 1_x \ast_0 f \Rightarrow f, \quad \rho_g : f \ast_0 1_y \Rightarrow f,
\]

indexed by 1-cells \(f : x \to y, g : y \to z\) and \(h : z \to w\), respectively called associator and left and right unitor, such that

- vertical composition \(\ast_1\) is associative on 2-cells and admit identities as neutral elements,
- the exchange law between horizontal and vertical composition holds,
- the two following coherence axioms hold for every composable 1-cells \(f, g, h, i\):

\[
\begin{align*}
(f \ast_0 g) \ast_0 (h \ast_0 i) & \Rightarrow (f \ast_0 (g \ast_0 h)) \ast_0 i, \\
(f \ast_0 (g \ast_0 h)) \ast_0 i & \Rightarrow f \ast_0 ((g \ast_0 h) \ast_0 i),
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
(f \ast_0 1_y) \ast_0 g & \Rightarrow f \ast_0 (1_y \ast_0 g), \\
(f \ast_0 1_y) \ast_0 g & \Rightarrow f \ast_0 (1_y \ast_0 g).
\end{align*}
\]

Obviously, any 2-category can be seen as a bicategory where \(\alpha_{f,g,h}, \lambda_f\) and \(\rho_g\) are all identity 2-cells. A typical non-trivial example of bicategory, is the bicategory \(\text{Span}(C)\) of spans in a category \(C\) with pullbacks, see §3.3.11.

An important particular case of the previous construction is the following one. We have seen in §2.4.10 that a 2-category with one 0-cell corresponds to a...
2.5 Coherent confluence of 1-polygraphs

strict monoidal category. Similarly, a bicategory with one 2-cell corresponds to
the notion of monoidal category, which generalizes the one of strict monoidal
category. The definition is recalled in §12.4.1, and more details can be found
in [261, Chapter VII].

A fundamental theorem for bicategories is the coherence theorem which
ensures that it can always be “replaced” by a 2-category:

2.4.12 Theorem. Every bicategory is biequivalent to a 2-category.

This result is shown for instance in [303] and a proof of coherence for monoidal
categories, which are equivalent to bicategories with only one 0-cell, is given
in Section 12.4.

2.5 Coherent confluence of 1-polygraphs

In §2.1.4, we have seen that the morphisms in the free groupoid generated by
a 1-polygraph could be seen as representatives of the congruence associated
to the polygraph. A similar construction can be performed for 2-polygraphs as
follows, from which we will be able to define a notion of coherent presentation.

Here, rather than presenting a category (as in Section 2.3) or generating a
2-category (as in Section 2.4), we think of a 2-polygraph as a presentation of
a set by the underlying 1-polygraph (see Section 1.2) together with additional
2-dimensional coherence data provided by the 2-generators.

2.5.1 Freely generated (2,1)-category. A (2,1)-category \( C \) is a 2-category in
which every 2-cell is invertible, that is, for every 2-cell \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \) in \( C \) there
exists a 2-cell \( \alpha^- : v \Rightarrow u \) in \( C \) such that \( \alpha^- *_1 \alpha = 1_u \), and \( \alpha *_1 \alpha^- = 1_v \).

Given a 2-polygraph \( P \), with underlying 1-polygraph \( P_{\leq 1} \), one can generate
the free (2,1)-category \( P^\uparrow \) with \( P^\uparrow_{\leq 1} \) as underlying category and containing the
2-generators in \( P_2 \) as 2-cells. This construction can be performed in a similar
way as in §2.4.6.

– The set of 0-cells is the set \( P_0 \).
– The set of 1-cells is \( P^*_1 \).
– The set of 2-cells \( P^*_2 \) is the set of formal horizontal and vertical composites of
  elements of \( P_2 \) and identities of elements of \( P^*_1 \), and their inverses, quotiented
  by the axioms of (2,1)-categories.

The following lemma motivates why one can think of 2-cells in this 2-cate-
gory as witnesses of equivalence of rewriting paths:
2.5.2 Lemma. Given a 2-polygraph \( P \), two 1-cells \( f, g : x \to y \) are \( P \)-congruent if and only if there exists a 2-cell \( \phi : f \Rightarrow g \) in \( P^\top \).

For any 2-polygraph \( P \), there is thus a canonical 2-functor \( q_P : P^\top \to \overline{P} \) from the generated \((2, 1)\)-category to the presented category, which is the identity on 0-cells, sends every 1-cell to its equivalence class under the \( P \)-congruence and sends every 2-cell to the identity.

Any two presentations of a given category generate equivalent \((2, 1)\)-categories in the following sense:

2.5.3 Lemma. Suppose given two 2-polygraphs \( P \) and \( Q \) both presenting a same category \( C \). There exist two 2-functors 
\[
f : P^\top \to Q^\top, \quad g : Q^\top \to P^\top,
\]
between the free \((2, 1)\)-categories generated by \( P \) and \( Q \) and, for every 1-cells \( u \) of \( P^\top \) and \( v \) of \( Q^\top \), there exist 2-cells
\[
\phi_u : g f(u) \Rightarrow u, \quad \psi_v : f g(v) \Rightarrow v,
\]
in \( P^\top \) and \( Q^\top \), such that the two following conditions are satisfied.

1. The 2-functors \( f \) and \( g \) induce the identity through the canonical projections \( q_P \) and \( q_Q \) onto \( C \):
\[
\begin{array}{ccl}
P^\top & \xrightarrow{f} & Q^\top \\
q_P \downarrow & & \downarrow q_Q \\
C & \xrightarrow{1_C} & C.
\end{array}
\]
\[
\begin{array}{ccl}
Q^\top & \xrightarrow{g} & P^\top \\
q_Q \downarrow & & \downarrow q_P \\
C & \xrightarrow{1_C} & C.
\end{array}
\]

2. The 2-cells \( \phi_u \) and \( \psi_v \) are functorial in \( u \) and \( v \), that is
\[
\phi_{uv'} = \phi_u *_0 \phi_{v'}, \quad \phi_{1_x} = 1_{1_x},
\]
for any 0-composable 1-cells \( u \) and \( u' \) and 0-cell \( x \) and
\[
\psi_{v'v} = \psi_v *_0 \psi_{v'}, \quad \psi_{1_y} = 1_{1_y},
\]
for any 0-composable 1-cells \( v \) and \( v' \) and 0-cell \( y \).

Proof. We construct the 2-functor \( f \), the case of the 2-functor \( g \) being similar. For a 0-cell \( x \), we set \( f(x) = q_Q^{-1} q_P(x) \). If \( a : x \to y \) is a 1-generator of \( P \), we choose, in an arbitrary way, a 1-cell \( f(a) : f(x) \to f(y) \) in \( Q^\top \) such that \( q_Q f(a) = q_P(a) \). Then, we extend \( f \) to every 1-cell of \( P^\top \) by functoriality.

Let \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow u' \) be a 2-generator of \( P \). Since \( P \) is a presentation of \( C \), we have \( q_P(u) = q_P(u') \), so that \( q_Q f(u) = q_Q f(u') \) holds. Using the fact that \( Q \) is a
2.5 Coherent confluence of 1-polygraphs

presentation of $C$, we arbitrarily choose a 2-cell $f(a) : f(u) \Rightarrow f(u')$ in $Q^\top$. Then, we extend $f$ to every 2-cell of $P^\top$ by functoriality.

Now, let us define the 2-cells $\phi_a$, the case of 2-cells $\psi_v$ being similar. Let $a$ be a 1-generator of $P$. By construction of the 2-functors $f$ and $g$, we have:

$$q_p g f (a) = q_Q f (a) = q_P (a).$$

Since $P$ is a presentation of $C$, there exists a 2-cell $\phi_a : g f (a) \Rightarrow a$ in $P^\top$. We extend $\phi$ to every 1-cell $u$ of $P^\top$ by functoriality. \hfill $\square$

2.5.4 Remark. Condition 2 of the lemma exactly expresses that $\phi$ and $\psi$ are icons (which is the acronym for “identity component oplax natural transformations”, i.e., oplax natural transformations with whose 1-cell components are identities) in the sense of [228].

2.5.5 Freely generated 2-groupoid. A 2-groupoid, also called (2, 0)-category, is a 2-category where both 1-cells and 2-cells are invertible. As a variant of the previous construction, a 2-polygraph $P$ freely generates a 2-groupoid, whose set of 0-cells is $P_0$, whose set of 1-cells is $P^\top_1$ (the morphisms of the free 1-groupoid generated by the underlying 1-polygraph, as described in §2.1.4), and whose set of 2-cells is the set of formal horizontal and vertical composites of elements of $P_2$ and identities of elements of $P^\top_1$, and their inverses, quotiented by the axioms of 2-groupoids.

2.5.6 Coherent 2-polygraphs. Given a 2-polygraph $P$, the 1-cells $P^\top_1$ of the freely generated 2-groupoid may be thought of as witnesses for equivalence of 0-cells (see §2.1.4) and the 2-cells $P^\top_2$ as witnesses of “equivalences between equivalences” (as a variant of Lemma 2.5.2). A 2-polygraph is said to be coherent when equivalences do not bring essential information, in the sense that there is at most one equivalence between two given 0-cells, up to equivalence between equivalences. Formally, a 2-polygraph $P$ is coherent when for every pair of 0-cells $x, y \in P_0$ and pair of 1-cells $f, g : x \Rightarrow y$ in $P^\top_1$ there is a 2-cell $\alpha : f \Rightarrow g$ in $P^\top_2$ in the free 2-groupoid generated by $P$.

The notion of coherence can be generalized in the expected way to variants of 2-polygraphs where the source and target of 2-generators are cells in $P^\top_2$ (as opposed to $P^*_2$): those are called (2, 0)-polygraphs and formally defined in Section 15.3. In this context, following the terminology introduced in Section 7.1, we can also say that $P_2$ is a cellular extension of the category $P^\top_1$: the 2-polygraph $P$ is then coherent precisely when this extension is acyclic.

2.5.7 Coherent confluence. Our aim here is to provide techniques to show the coherence of a 2-polygraph by adapting the rewriting concepts presented
Two-dimensional polygraphs

in Chapter 1 in order to take 2-dimensional information into account, as an explicit witness of the commutation of diagrams. This approach first appeared under the terminology of *commuting diagrams* [190, Section 4.3].

A 2-polygraph $P$ is *coherently confluent* when for every pair of coinitial 1-cells $f : x \to y$ and $f' : x \to y'$ in $P_1^*$ there is a pair of cofinal 1-cells $g : y \to z$ and $g' : y' \to z$ in $P_1^*$ and a 2-cell $\alpha : fg \Rightarrow f'g'$ in $P_2^*$ (in the free (2, 1)-category it generates):

![Diagram](image)

In such a situation, we also say that the branching $(f, f')$ is *coherently joinable*. Similarly, $P$ is *locally coherently confluent* when for every pair of coinitial 1-generators $a : x \to y$ and $b : x \to y'$ in $P_1$ there is a pair of cofinal 1-cells $g : y \to z$ and $g' : y' \to z$ in $P_1^*$ and a 2-cell $\alpha : ag \Rightarrow bg'$ in $P_2^*$:

![Diagram](image)

We say that a 2-polygraph is *terminating* when the underlying 1-polygraph is, in the sense of §1.3.6. We can now adapt Newman’s lemma (see Lemma 1.3.21) to this extended notion of confluence as follows:

**2.5.8 Lemma.** A terminating 2-polygraph is coherently confluent if and only if it is locally coherently confluent.

**Proof.** The left-to-right implication is immediate, let us show the right-to-left implication. Supposing that the terminating polygraph $P$ is locally coherently confluent, we show that it is coherently confluent at $x$ (i.e., that every branching at $x$ is coherently joinable) by well-founded induction on $x$. Suppose given two coinitial 1-cells $f : x \to y$ and $f' : x \to y$. If one of them is the identity, say $f'$, we can close the diagram as in (2.5) with $g = 1_y$, $g' = f$ and $\alpha = 1_f$. Otherwise, we have $f = af_1$ and $f' = a'f_1'$ for some 1-generators $a$ and $a'$ and
2.5 Coherent confluence of 1-polygraphs

1-cells $f$ and $f'$:

![Diagram of 1-cells and 2-cells](image)

By local confluence we deduce the existence of 1-cells $f_2$ and $f_2'$ and a 2-cell $\alpha : af_2 \Rightarrow af_2'$ as above. By induction hypothesis, we obtain the existence of 1-cells $g_1$ and $f_2''$ together with a 2-cell $\beta : f_1 g_1 \Rightarrow f_2 f_2''$. By induction hypothesis again, we deduce the existence of 1-cells $g_2$ and $g_2'$ and a 2-cell $\gamma : f_2'' f_2' g_2 \Rightarrow f_1' g'$. We have shown the existence of cofinal 1-cells $g_1 g_2 : y \rightarrow z$ and $g_1' : y' \rightarrow z$, and of a 2-cell

$$a \beta g_2 * a f_2'' g_2 * a' \gamma : a f_1 g_1 g_2 \Rightarrow a' f_1' g'$$

and the branching $(a f_1, a' f_1')$ is thus coherently joinable. \qed

2.5.9 Proposition. A terminating and coherently confluent 2-polygraph $P$ is coherent.

Proof. Since the polygraph is terminating, for every 0-cell $x$ there is a normal form $\tilde{x}$ and a rewriting path $n_x : x \rightarrow \tilde{x}$ in $P_1^1$. Given a 1-cell $f : x \rightarrow y$ in $P_1^1$, since the polygraph is convergent we have $\tilde{x} = \tilde{y}$ and, since the branching $(n_x, fn_y)$ is coherently joinable there is a 2-cell $\alpha_f : fn_y \Rightarrow n_x$, as on the left:

![Diagram of coherence](image)

In the free 2-groupoid generated by $P$, we also define the 2-cell $\alpha_{f^{-1}} = f^{-1} \ast n_1 \alpha_f$, which can be pictured as on the right above. Now consider a 1-cell $f : x \rightarrow y$ in $P_1^1$. It factors as

$$f = f_1 g_1 f_2 g_2 \cdots f_k g_k,$$

for some suitably composable morphisms $f_i$ and $g_i$ in $P_1^1$. We then define
\[ \alpha_f : fn_y \Rightarrow n_x \text{ as the composite} \]

\[ \begin{array}{ccccccccc}
  & x & f_1^{-1} & y_1 & g_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_k & f_k^{-1} & y_k & g_k & y \\
  n_x & \downarrow & \alpha f_1^{-1} & n_{y_1} & \alpha g_1 & n_{x_2} & \downarrow \alpha f_2^{-1} & n_{y_2} & \cdots & n_{x_k} & \alpha f_k^{-1} & n_{y_k} & n_y \\
  \hat{x} & \frac{=} & \hat{y}_1 & \frac{=} & \hat{y}_2 & \frac{=} & \cdots & \frac{=} & \hat{y}_k & \frac{=} & \hat{y} & \frac{=} & \hat{y} \\
\end{array} \]

Finally, for any pair of parallel 1-cells \( f, g : x \to y \) in \( P^T_1 \), the composite 2-cell

has type \( f \Rightarrow g \). We thus conclude that the 2-polygraph \( P \) is coherent. \( \square \)

Composing Lemma 2.5.8 and Proposition 2.5.9, we obtain the coherent Squier theorem for 1-polygraphs [328, Theorem 5.2]:

**2.5.10 Theorem.** Let \( P \) be a terminating 2-polygraph. If, for every pair of coinital 1-generators \( a : x \to y_1 \) and \( b : x \to y_2 \) in \( P_1 \), there is a pair of cofinal 2-cells \( f : y_1 \to z \) and \( g : y_2 \to z \) in \( P_2 \) and a 2-cell \( \phi : af \Rightarrow bg \) in \( P^T \),

then \( P \) is coherent.

This theorem is extended to 2-polygraphs in Chapter 7 and to higher-dimensional polygraphs in Chapter 23: we will see that it provides us with a canonical way of extending a convergent presentation into a coherent one using the homotopical completion procedure, see Section 7.5.
3
Operations on presentations

The usefulness and richness of 2-polygraphs is confirmed by the large number and variety of categories they present. Some examples of presentations were given in Section 2.3 and many more are described in Appendix A. In order to show that a given polygraph is a presentation of a given category, one can either tackle the issue directly, by using the rewriting tools of Chapter 4, or take a modular approach, by combining already known presentations: this is the route taken in the present chapter.

Three significant applications are given. We first address, in Section 3.1, the presentation of limits and colimits by means of given presentations of the base categories, and precisely show how to systematically build presentations of products, coproducts and pushouts. Next, in Section 3.2, we show how to add formal inverses to some morphisms of a category at the level of presentations. Finally, Section 3.3 is about distributive laws, in relation with factorization systems on categories. We introduce a notion of composition along a distributive law between two small categories sharing the same set of objects, and show how to derive a presentation of this composite from presentations of the components.

3.1 Limits and colimits of presented categories

3.1.1 Initial category. The initial category (with no object nor morphism) admits the presentation \( \langle | | \rangle \).

3.1.2 Coproducts of categories. Given two categories \( C \) and \( D \) respectively presented by 2-polygraphs \( P \) and \( Q \), their coproduct \( C \sqcup D \) is presented by the 2-polygraph with \( P_0 \sqcup Q_0 \) as 0-generators, \( P_1 \sqcup Q_1 \) as 1-generators and \( P_2 \sqcup Q_2 \) as 2-generators, with expected source and target maps (this is the coproduct of \( P \) and \( Q \) in the category of 2-polygraphs).
3.1.3 Coproducts with fixed objects. Given a fixed set $O$, consider the subcategory $\text{Cat}_O$ of $\text{Cat}$ whose objects are categories with $O$ as objects, and whose morphisms are functors which are identities on objects. Given two categories $C$ and $D$ in $\text{Cat}_O$, respectively presented by 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$, their coproduct in $\text{Cat}_O$ is presented by the 2-polygraph with $P_0 = Q_0 = O$ as 0-generators, $P_1 \sqcup Q_1$ as 1-generators and $P_2 \sqcup Q_2$ as 2-generators, with expected source and target maps. In particular, when $O = \{\ast\}$, the category $\text{Cat}_O$ is isomorphic to the category of monoids and their coproduct is the free product.

3.1.4 Coequalizers. Suppose given two categories $C$ and $D$ respectively presented by 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ and two functors $f, g : C \to D$.

Reformulating the results of [37], the category obtained as their coequalizer is presented by the following 2-polygraph $R$. We write $\sim$ for the smallest equivalence relation on $Q_0$ such that $f(x) \sim g(x)$ for every 0-generator $x \in P_0$, and $[y]$ for the equivalence class of a 1-cell $y \in Q_0$. The coequalizer of $f$ and $g$ is the category presented by the polygraph $R$ such that

- the 0-generators are the equivalence classes $[x]$ of 0-generators in $Q_0$,
- the 1-generators are of the form $a : [x] \to [y]$ for 1-generators $a : x \to y$ in $Q_1$,
- the 2-generators are either of the form
  - $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ for 2-generators $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ in $Q_2$, or
  - $\alpha_a : u \Rightarrow v$ for 1-generators $a : x \to y$ in $P_1$ such that $f(a) = u$ and $g(a) = v$.

This construction allows to quotient a presented category both on objects and morphisms. Note that the relations in $P_2$ are not used in this construction, we only need a generating graph for $C$.

3.1.5 Pushouts. All finite colimits of presented categories can be constructed from coproducts and coequalizers [261, Section V.2]. For instance, the pushout of the diagram of categories on the left

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xleftarrow{f} & B & \xrightarrow{g} & D, \\
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xrightarrow{i_C \circ f} & C + D,
\end{array}
$$

$\xrightarrow{id \circ g}$

can be computed as the coequalizer of the diagram on the right, where the morphisms $i_C : C \to C + D$ and $i_D : D \to C + D$ are the canonical inclusions. In particular, when both $f$ and $g$ are inclusions of polygraphs, the pushout is simply given by (non-disjoint) union on sets of $n$-generators for $n = 0, 1, 2$. 

3.2 Localizations of presented categories

3.1.6 Terminal category. We now turn to limits. The most simple example is the terminal category which admits the presentation ⟨ ⋆ | ⋆ ⟩.

3.1.7 Products. Suppose given two categories $C$ and $D$ along with respective presentations by 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$. A presentation $R$ of the product category $C \times D$ is given by the 2-polygraph $R$ with

- $R_0 = P_0 \times Q_0$ as set of 0-generators,
- $R_1 = P_1 \times Q_0 \cup P_0 \times Q_1$ as set of 1-generators with
  \[(a, y) : (x, y) \rightarrow (x', y), \quad (x, b) : (x, y) \rightarrow (x, y'),\]
  with $a : x \rightarrow x'$ in $P_1$ and $y \in Q_0$ (resp. $x \in P_0$ and $b : y \rightarrow y'$ in $Q_1$),
- $R_2 = P_2 \times Q_0 + P_1 \times Q_1 + P_0 \times Q_2$ as set of 2-generators: a 2-generator is either
  \[(a, y) : (u, y) \Rightarrow (u', y) : (x, y) \rightarrow (x', y),\]
  with $a : u \Rightarrow u' : x \rightarrow x'$ in $P_2$ and $y \in Q_0$, or
  \[(a, b) : (x, b)(a, y') \Rightarrow (a, y)(x', b) : (x, y) \rightarrow (x', y'),\]
  with $a : x \rightarrow x'$ in $P_1$ and $b : y \rightarrow y'$ in $Q_1$, or
  \[(x, \beta) : (x, v) \Rightarrow (x, v') : (x, y) \rightarrow (x, y'),\]
  with $x \in P_0$ and $\beta : v \Rightarrow v' : y \rightarrow y'$ in $Q_2$.

Above, given $u = a_1a_2\ldots a_n$ in $P_1^*$ (with the $a_i$ being generators in $P_1$) and $y \in Q_0$, the 1-cell $(u, y)$ is a notation for $(u, y) = (a_1, y)(a_2, y)\ldots(a_n, y)$ and the notation $(x, v)$, for $x \in P_0$ and $v \in P_1^*$, is similar.

In particular, when $C$ and $D$ are both monoids (or groups), their product in the above sense is often called their direct product.

3.2 Localizations of presented categories

3.2.1 Free groupoid. The forgetful functor $\text{Gpd} \rightarrow \text{Cat}$ witnessing for the fact that a groupoid is a particular category (with invertible morphisms) admits a left adjoint, constructing the free groupoid $C^\top$ (also called the enveloping groupoid) over a category $C$. Given a 2-polygraph $P$ presenting $C$, the groupoid $C^\top$ admits a presentation (as a category) by the 2-polygraph $Q$ with

- $Q_0 = P_0$ as set of 0-generators,
Operations on presentations

- \( Q_1 = P_1 \sqcup P_1^- \) as set of 1-generators, with
  \[
  P_1^- = \{ a^- : y \to x \mid a : x \to y \in W \},
  \]
- \( Q_2 = P_2 \sqcup I_2 \) as set of 2-generators with
  \[
  I_2 = \{ aa^- \Rightarrow 1_x, a^- a \Rightarrow 1_y \mid a : x \to y \in W \},
  \]
where \( W = P_1 \).

A morphism in \( Q_1^* \) is reduced when it is not of the form \( uaa^- v \) or \( ua^- av \) for some \( u, v \in Q_1^* \) and \( a \in P_1 \). The equivalence classes of elements of \( Q_1^* \) modulo the congruence generated by \( I_2 \) contain exactly one reduced morphism, which is often convenient to choose as canonical representative; this is detailed in Example 4.3.13.

3.2.2 Localization. As a generalization of the previous construction, given a category \( C \) and a class \( W \) of morphisms of \( C \), we can consider the category \( C[W^{-1}] \), called the localization of \( C \) by \( W \), obtained by formally inverting the morphisms of \( W \), see §H.2.1 for a proper definition. Given a category \( C \) presented by a 2-polygraph \( P \) and a set \( W \subseteq P_1 \) of 1-generators, the localization \( C[W^{-1}] \) of \( C \) by equivalence classes of elements of \( W \) is presented by the polygraph \( Q \) defined exactly as in previous section. In particular, we recover the free groupoid on \( C \) as \( C^+ = C[P_1^{-1}] \).

3.3 Distributive laws

In this section, we present a very useful tool in order to build presentations in a modular fashion. The typical situation we want to address here is when the category \( E \) we want to present is “built” from two subcategories \( C \) and \( D \), in the sense that every morphism of \( E \) factors a composite of morphisms in the two subcategories: in this case, we can expect to be able to construct a presentation of \( E \) from presentations of \( C \) and \( D \). The way the category \( E \) can be obtained as a composite of \( C \) and \( D \), can be encoded in a distributive law. This notion was introduced by Beck [36], related to categories and strict factorization systems by Rosebrugh and Wood [316], and applied to presentations of categories by Lack [230]. We begin by recalling this setting, and then presenting the generalizations necessary to handle situations arising in practice.

3.3.1 Strict factorization system. A strict factorization system on a category \( E \), consists of two subcategories \( C \) and \( D \) of \( E \), with the same objects
as $E$, such that every morphism $h$ of $E$ factorizes uniquely as $h = g \circ f$ with $f$ in $C$ and $g$ in $D$:

This structure can equivalently be encoded through operations which help expressing every morphism $E$ as one of $C$ composed with one of $D$, as we now explain.

3.3.2 Distributive law. A distributive law $\ell$ between two categories $C$ and $D$ having the same objects is a function, often noted

$$\ell : D \otimes C \to C \otimes D$$

(the notation as a tensor will be formally justified in §3.3.13), which to every “composable” pair of morphisms

$$g : x \to y \in D, \quad f : y \to z \in C,$$

associates an object $\ell_y f$ of $C$ and $D$, and morphisms

$$f^g : x \to \ell_y f \in C, \quad f_g : \ell_y f \to z \in D,$$

which can be pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
D \ni g & \xrightarrow{y} & f \in C \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
\ell_y f & \xrightarrow{f} & z \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C \ni f & \xrightarrow{x} & y \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
\ell_y f & \xrightarrow{f_g} & z \\
\end{array}
\]

in a way compatible with compositions

\[
(f_2 \circ f_1)^g = (f_2 f_g) \circ f_1^g \quad f_2 f_g = f_2(f_1 g)
\]
3.3.3 Composite category. Given a distributive law \( \ell : D \otimes C \to C \otimes D \), we can compose the categories \( C \) and \( D \) along \( \ell \) and obtain a new category, noted \( C \otimes \ell D \): it has the same objects as \( C \) and \( D \), a morphism from \( x \to z \) is a pair of morphisms \( (f, g) \) with \( f : x \to y \) in \( C \) and \( g : y \to z \) in \( D \) for some object \( y \), identities are pairs of identities and compositions are induced in the expected way by the distributive law:

\[
(f' \circ g') \circ (f, g) = (f'^{\ell} \circ f, g' \circ f^g)
\]

The fact that the axioms of categories are satisfied follows from the axioms of distributive laws.

3.3.4 Proposition. Given categories \( C, D, E \) with the same objects, the following statements are equivalent.

1. The categories \( C \) and \( D \) form a strict factorization system on \( E \).
2. There is a distributive law \( \ell : D \otimes C \to C \otimes D \) such that \( C \otimes \ell D = E \).

Proof. In the case where \( C \) and \( D \) form a strict factorization system on \( E \), we define the distributive law \( \ell \) which maps a composable pair of morphisms \( (g, f) \in D \times C \) to the pair of morphisms obtained by factorizing \( f \circ g \in E \): the
3.3 Distributive laws

Axioms of distributive laws follow from the unique factorization of morphisms in $E$, and the functor $C \otimes \ell D \to E$ which is the identity on objects and sends a composable pair $(f, g)$ to $g \circ f$ is easily seen to be an isomorphism. Conversely, given the distributive law $\ell : D \otimes C \to C \otimes D$, the functor $C \to C \otimes D$ which is the identity on objects and sends a morphism $f : x \to y$ to $(f, 1_y)$ is faithful: the category $C$ can be seen as a subcategory of $C \otimes D$, and similarly for $D$. Moreover, $C$ and $D$ form a strict factorization system for $C \otimes \ell D$: for every morphism $(f, g) : C \otimes \ell D$, we have $(f, g) = (1, g) \circ (f, 1)$, and this is the unique such factorization. □

3.3.5 Presenting composite categories. Because of compatibility with composition, we expect that a distributive law is uniquely determined by the image of pairs of generators for morphisms of the two subcategories. In the case of presented categories, the composite category can thus be presented as follows.

3.3.6 Theorem. Suppose given two 2-polygraphs $P, Q$ and a distributive law $\ell : Q \otimes P \to P \otimes Q$ between the presented categories. Then the category $P \otimes \ell Q$ is presented by the polygraph $R$ with

\[
R_0 = P_0 = Q_0, \quad R_1 = P_1 \cup Q_1, \quad R_2 = P_2 \cup Q_2 \cup R^\ell_2,
\]

where $R^\ell_2$ contains a 2-generator $\alpha_{u', v'} : v' u' \Rightarrow uv$, \quad (3.1)

for every pair of composable 1-cells $v' \in Q_1$ and $u' \in P_1$ such that we have $\ell(v', u') = (u, v)$, for some $u \in P_1$ and $v \in Q_1$.

Moreover, if the rewriting relation on 1-cells induced by $R^\ell_2$ is terminating then one can restrict $R^\ell_2$ to 2-generators of the form

\[
\alpha_{a, b} : ba \Rightarrow uv,
\]

(3.2)

indexed by pairs of 1-generators $a \in P_1$ and $b \in Q_1$.

Proof. We have a functor $f : R \to \overline{P} \otimes \ell \overline{Q}$ which is the identity on objects and sends the class of a 1-generator $a \in P_1$ (resp. $b \in Q_1$) to the morphism $(\overline{a}, 1)$ (resp. $(1, \overline{b})$). This functor is full since every morphism of $\overline{P} \otimes \ell \overline{Q}$ is of the form $(\overline{u}, \overline{w})$, with $u \in P_1$ and $v \in Q_1$, which is the image of $uv$. Moreover, by the rules $\alpha_{u', v'}$ every morphism $w \in R^*_1$ is equivalent to one of the form $uv$ with $u \in P_1$ and $v \in Q_1$, from which the faithfulness of the functor follows easily.

When the rewriting relation generated by $R^\ell_2$ is terminating, a normal form of a morphism $v' u'$, with $v' \in Q_1$ and $u' \in P_1$ is necessarily of the form $uv$.
Operations on presentations

with \( u \in P_i^* \) and \( v \in Q_i^* \) and therefore a relation of the form (3.1) is derivable for every \( u' \in P_i^* \) and \( v' \in Q_i^* \), and we conclude as above. \( \square \)

Note that the first part of the theorem usually gives rise to infinite presentations (because \( R_i^2 \) is infinite), whereas the reduction provided by the second part produces finite presentations from finite presentations (provided that the termination condition is satisfied).

3.3.7 Example. The additive monoids \( C = \mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N} \) and \( D = \mathbb{N}/3\mathbb{N} \) respectively admit the following presentations, see also §A.1.5:

\[
\langle \star \mid a \mid aa = 1 \rangle, \quad \langle \star \mid b \mid bbb = 1 \rangle.
\]

The product monoid \( C \times D \) contains \( C \) and \( D \) as submonoids: an element \( n \in C \) can be seen as \( (m,0) \in C \times D \), and similarly for \( D \). Moreover, every element \( (m,n) \in C \times D \) can be seen, in a unique way, as a product of an element of \( C \) and one of \( D \), namely \( (m,n) = (m,0) + (0,n) \), and therefore \( C \) and \( D \) form a factorization system for \( C \times D \). We deduce that \( C \times D \) admits the presentation

\[
\langle \star \mid a, b \mid aa = 1, bbb = 1, ba = ab \rangle.
\]

The presented monoid is \( \mathbb{N}/6\mathbb{N} \) (the generators \( a \) and \( b \) respectively get interpreted as \( 3 \) and \( 2 \)) and we have embeddings

\[
\begin{align*}
\mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N} & \to \mathbb{N}/6\mathbb{N} \\
p & \mapsto 3p
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\mathbb{N}/3\mathbb{N} & \to \mathbb{N}/6\mathbb{N} \\
q & \mapsto 2q
\end{align*}
\]

which induce the strict factorization system corresponding to the distributive law: one readily verifies that every element \( n \in \mathbb{N}/6\mathbb{N} \) can be written in a unique way as \( n = 3p + 2q \) with \( p \in \mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N} \) and \( q \in \mathbb{N}/3\mathbb{N} \).

We can more generally recover in this way the presentation for products of monoids given in §A.1.12. Note that the distributive law induced between \( C \) and \( D \) is not the only possible one. For instance, the presentation

\[
\langle \star \mid a, b \mid aa = 1, bbb = 1, ba = abb \rangle
\]

induces another one, which is not isomorphic (an argument for this is that it is not commutative since \( ab \neq ba \) can easily be shown, based on the fact that the presentation is convergent, see Section 4.2).

3.3.8 Example. Starting from two 2-polygraphs \( P \) and \( Q \), we can take their union and add relations of the form (3.2) and hope that the resulting 2-polygraph \( R \) will present a composite category. This is not the case in general. For instance, consider the situation with

\[
P = \langle \star \mid a \mid \rangle, \quad Q = \langle \star \mid b \mid bb = 1 \rangle, \quad R = \langle \star \mid a, b \mid bb = 1, ba = 1 \rangle.
\]
The 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ respectively present the monoids $\mathbb{N}$ and $\mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N}$. In the 2-polygraph $R$, the relation $a = bba = b$ is derivable and thus $R$ presents $\mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N}$: the functor $\overline{P} \to \overline{R}$ is not faithful and $\overline{P}$ and $\overline{Q}$ thus do not form a strict factorization system for $\overline{R}$.

### 3.3.9 Example.**

The following (counter-)example illustrates the need for the termination hypothesis in the second part of Theorem 3.3.6. Consider the polygraph $R$ whose underlying graph is shown on the left, together with the relations on the right:

$$
\begin{align*}
x \rightarrow^a x' \rightarrow^b y' \rightarrow^c y & \quad ab \Rightarrow ab', \quad abc \Rightarrow d, \\
& \quad b'c \Rightarrow bc, \quad ab'c \Rightarrow d.
\end{align*}
$$

We write $P$ and $Q$ for the polygraphs, with no relations, whose respective underlying graphs are

$$
\begin{align*}
x & \quad \rightarrow^a x' \rightarrow^b y' \rightarrow^c y, \\
& \quad \rightarrow^a x' \rightarrow^b y' \rightarrow^c y.
\end{align*}
$$

One easily checks that the canonical inclusions $\overline{P} \to \overline{R}$ and $\overline{Q} \to \overline{R}$ are faithful and that every morphism of $\overline{R}$ factorizes uniquely as one from $\overline{P}$ followed by one from $\overline{Q}$. However, if one restricts to relations of the form (3.2), the only relations left are $ab \Rightarrow ab'$ and $b'c \Rightarrow bc$, from which the two relations $abc \Rightarrow d$ and $ab'c \Rightarrow d$ are not derivable. Here, the termination hypothesis of Theorem 3.3.6 is clearly not satisfied since we have the infinite sequence of reductions

$$
abc \Rightarrow ab'c \Rightarrow abc \Rightarrow ab'c \Rightarrow \ldots
$$

### 3.3.10 Example.

There is a strict factorization on the augmented simplicial category $\Delta_+$, presented in details in §4.5.6: every morphism factorizes as an epimorphism followed by a monomorphism. Writing $\Delta_\mu$ (resp. $\Delta_\eta$) for the subcategory of $\Delta_+$, with the same objects, whose morphisms are surjective (resp. injective) functions, we thus have $\Delta_+ = \Delta_\mu \otimes \Delta_\eta$ for some distributive law $\ell$. The categories $\Delta_\mu$ and $\Delta_\eta$ respectively admit the presentations

$$
\begin{align*}
\left\{ \begin{array}{l}
\ast \quad s_i^n : n + 1 \to n \\
\ast \quad d_i^n : n \to n + 1
\end{array} \right.
\begin{array}{l}
s_i^{n+1}s_j^n = s_j^{n+1}s_i^n, \\
d_j^nd_i^{n+1} = d_i^n d_j^{n+1}
\end{array}
\right\}_{n \in \mathbb{N}, 0 \leq i \leq j < n}
$$
and by applying Theorem 3.3.6, we recover the presentation of $\Delta_+$ given in §4.5.6, see also §C.2 for a 2-dimensional analysis of the situation.

3.3.11 Spans. We now briefly recall the construction of span bicategories, which will turn out to be useful in order to explain the axioms for distributive laws, as well as provide a rich source of examples for distributive laws between a category and its opposite. We refer the reader to [316, 230] for details.

Suppose given a category $C$ with pullbacks. A span $(f, g)$ from $x$ to $y$ is a pair of coinitial morphisms

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
& y \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
& g \\
\Uparrow & & \Uparrow \\
x & u & y
\end{array}$$

in $C$. Given a span $(f, g)$ from $x$ to $y$ and $(h, i)$ from $y$ to $z$, one can define a composite span from $x$ to $z$ by taking the pullback of the two arrows in the middle

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
& y \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
& g \\
\Uparrow & & \Uparrow \\
x & u & y \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
& h \\
\Uparrow & & \Uparrow \\
x & i & z
\end{array}$$

and given an object $x$ one defines the identity span on $x$ as

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
& x \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
& 1_x \\
\Uparrow & & \Uparrow \\
x & 1_x & x
\end{array}$$

A morphism $h$ between two spans $(f, g)$ and $(f', g')$ from $x$ to $y$ is a morphism of $C$ making the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
& y \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
& g \\
\Uparrow & & \Uparrow \\
x & h & y \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
& f' \\
\Uparrow & & \Uparrow \\
x & 1_x & x
\end{array}$$

Because of the way composition was defined, it is generally not strictly associative, but rather associative up to isomorphism: we can form a bicategory $\text{Span}(C)$ whose 0-cells are the objects of $C$, 1-cells are spans and 2-cells are morphisms of spans.
3.3 Distributive laws

Of course, when the category $C$ has pushouts, one can dually define a bicategory $\text{Cospan}(C)$ of cospans in $C$, i.e., diagrams of the form

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\text{f} \\
\downarrow v \\
\text{x} \\
\text{g} \\
\downarrow \text{y}
\end{array}
$$

in the category $C$.

3.3.12 Distributive laws between monads. Given a bicategory $B$, one can consider a monad $(t, \mu, \eta)$ in $B$ (also called a monoid in $B$), which consists of an endomorphism $t : x \to x$ together two 2-cells $\mu : tt \Rightarrow t$ and $\eta : 1 \Rightarrow t$, respectively called multiplication and unit, which are associative and unital:

$$
(t)t \sim t(tt) \xrightarrow{\mu} t \\
\mu \downarrow \quad \mu \downarrow

1t \sim t \sim t\eta \\
\mu \downarrow \quad \mu \downarrow
$$

In particular, a monad in the 2-category $\text{Cat}$ is a monad in the usual sense. We write $\text{Mon}(B)$ for the category of monads in $B$, with the expected notion of morphism.

Given two monads $s : x \to x$ and $t : x \to x$ the composite $tu$ is not in general a monad. The missing piece of data in order to properly compose those was introduced by Beck [36]: a distributive law between two monads $t$ and $u$ is a 2-cell $\lambda : ut \Rightarrow tu$ making the diagrams

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\text{u(tt)} \sim (ut)t \xrightarrow{\mu} t(ut) \sim t(tu) \sim (tt)u \\
\mu \downarrow \quad \mu \downarrow

\sim \quad \sim

\text{u(tu)} \sim u(ut) \xrightarrow{\mu} u(tu) \sim (tu)u \sim t(uu) \\
\mu \downarrow \quad \mu \downarrow

\sim \quad \sim

\text{1u} \sim u \xrightarrow{\eta} ut \\
\eta \downarrow \quad \eta \downarrow

\sim \quad \sim

\text{1t} \sim t \xrightarrow{\eta} tu \\
\eta \downarrow \quad \eta \downarrow

\sim \quad \sim
\end{array}
$$

commute. When equipped with a distributive law, one can define a monad
structure on \(tu\), called the composite monad of \(t\) and \(u\), with multiplication and unit being respectively

\[
ttuu \xrightarrow{\eta u} tuu \xrightarrow{\mu^u} tu \quad \text{and} \quad 1 \xrightarrow{\eta} tu
\]

(omitting coherence isomorphisms). A more detailed description is given in §C.3.

### 3.3.13 Monads in spans.

Interestingly, a monad in \(\text{Span}(\text{Set})\) precisely corresponds to a small category: \(x\) is the set of objects of the category, the endomorphism \(t : x \to x\) is a span of the form

\[
x \xleftarrow{f} u \xrightarrow{g} x
\]

providing the underlying graph of the category (where \(x\) and \(u\) are respectively the sets of objects and morphisms of the category and \(f\) and \(g\) are respectively the source and target functions), and \(\mu\) and \(\eta\) respectively describe compositions and identities of the category.

A distributive law between two categories seen as spans in this way corresponds precisely to the notion of distributive law defined in §3.3.2, and the notation \(C \otimes D\) corresponds to the composite of the underlying 1-cells (i.e., graphs) of the monads corresponding to categories \(C\) and \(D\): concretely, \(C \otimes D\) is the graph with the objects of \(C\) (or equivalently \(D\)) as vertices, and pairs \((f, g)\) with \(f : x \to y\) in \(C\) and \(g : y \to z\) in \(D\) as edges \(x \to z\).

### 3.3.14 Categories of spans.

Given a category \(C\) with pullbacks, a category \(\text{Span}(C)\) can be defined from the bicategory \(\text{Span}(C)\) by quotienting 1-cells under isomorphisms and discarding 2-cells. This provides a rich source of examples of distributive laws between a category and its opposite, as we now illustrate. A category \(\text{Cospan}(C)\) of cospans can be defined similarly, and of course satisfies dual results.

There are canonical functors

\[
C^{\text{op}} \to \text{Span}(C) \quad \text{and} \quad C \to \text{Span}(C)
\]

respectively sending a morphism \(f : x \to y\) to the class of the span \((f, 1_x)\) and \((1_x, f)\), which are both faithful: the categories \(C^{\text{op}}\) and \(C\) can be considered as subcategories of \(\text{Span}(C)\). Moreover, in the category of spans, we have \((f, g) = (1, g) \circ (f, 1)\) so that every morphism is the composite of a morphism in \(C^{\text{op}}\) followed by one in \(C\). When this factorization is unique, we have a strict factorization system; in particular, this is always the case when the category \(C\) has no non-trivial isomorphism, because in this case the quotient constructing \(\text{Span}(C)\) from \(\text{Span}(C)\) will be trivial. In such a situation, when we have a
presentation for $C$, we clearly also have one for $C^{\text{op}}$, and thus also for $\text{Span}(C)$ by Theorem 3.3.6. The general case corresponds to a generalized notion of distributive law, presented in §3.3.17.

### 3.3.15 Example

As a simple example, consider the monoid $\mathbb{N}$. The pullback of two morphisms $m$ and $n$

\[
\begin{aligned}
m' &\twoheadrightarrow m \\
* &\twoheadrightarrow * \\
n' &\twoheadrightarrow n
\end{aligned}
\]

is given by $m' = \max(m, n) - m$ and $n' = \max(m, n) - n$, and the only isomorphism is the identity $0$. From the presentation of $\mathbb{N}$ as the free monoid on one generator, see §A.1.4, we deduce that a presentation of $\text{Span}(\mathbb{N})$ is \langle $a, b \mid ba = 1$ \rangle, i.e., this is the bicyclic monoid, see §A.1.13, where the relation is deduced from the fact that the pullback of $1$ with $1$ is given by $0$ and $0$.

Other examples are presented in Section 4.6, in the slightly different language of residuals (which provide techniques in order to show on the presentation that the presented category actually has pushouts) and in Section 10.5 using 3-polygraphs.

### 3.3.16 Iterated distributive laws

Composing more than two monads in a bicategory can be achieved if one assumes that there are distributive laws between any pair of monads and every triple of distributive laws is compatible in the following sense, see [83] for details.

Suppose given three monads $t, u, v : x \to x$ in a bicategory and distributive laws

\[
\ell_{tu} : ut \Rightarrow tu, \quad \ell_{tv} : vt \Rightarrow tv, \quad \ell_{uv} : vu \Rightarrow uv,
\]

which are compatible in the sense that the following diagram commutes:

\[
\begin{aligned}
& wtu &\xrightarrow{\ell_{tu}} & utv &\xrightarrow{\ell_{tv}} & tvu \\
& vtu &\xrightarrow{\ell_{uv}} & tuv.
\end{aligned}
\]

In this situation, there are distributive laws

\[
\begin{aligned}
vtu &\xrightarrow{\ell_{tv}} tvu &\xrightarrow{\ell_{uv}} tvu \\
&\Rightarrow tvu &\Rightarrow tvu
\end{aligned}
\]

and

\[
\begin{aligned}
vtu &\xrightarrow{\ell_{tu}} utv &\xrightarrow{\ell_{uv}} tvu &\Rightarrow tvu \\
&\Rightarrow tvu &\Rightarrow tvu
\end{aligned}
\]
respectively between $tu$ and $v$, and $t$ and $uv$, which both induce the same structure of monad on $(tu)v = t(uv)$.

3.3.17 More general compositions. The notion of strict factorization system (or equivalently of distributive law) is sometimes too restrictive: in many situations, the desirable factorization is not strictly unique, but only unique up to an isomorphism (or even up to some subclass of morphisms). For instance, consider the category $E$ which is the full subcategory of sets, with finite sets $\{0, \ldots, n-1\}$ as objects for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ (this category will be denoted $F$ in §C.2).

Generalizing the situation of Example 3.3.10, consider the categories $C$ and $D$ which are the subcategories of $E$ whose morphisms are respectively surjective and injective functions: the categories $C$ and $D$ “almost” form a factorization system for $E$. Namely, every function $h$ factorizes as $h = g \circ f$ where $f$ is surjective and $g$ is injective, and this factorization is “almost” unique in the sense that for every other factorization $h = g' \circ f'$ there exists an isomorphism $w$ making the following diagram commute:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  f & \Downarrow w & g \\
  f' & \Downarrow w' & g'
\end{array}
\]

Writing $W$ for subcategory $W$ of isomorphisms of $E$, we notice that both the categories $C$ and $D$ contain $W$ as subcategory. Thus, if we know presentations for both $C$ and $D$, we can expect to deduce a presentation for $E$ by taking the union of the presentations of $C$ and $D$ and adding distributivity relations as before (Theorem 3.3.6), but we should moreover identify the presentation of bijections (i.e., the subcategories $W$) in $C$ and in $D$. In the above situation, note that the category $W$ “acts” on the left (resp. on the right) on $C$: for any morphism $w : x' \to x$ (resp. $w : y \to y'$) of $W$ and $f : x \to y$ of $C$ one can obtain a new morphism $w f$ (resp. $fw$) of $C$ and the situation is the same for $D$.

The distributive law corresponding to the above situation should now have the form

\[ \ell : D \otimes_W C \to C \otimes_W D \]

where $C \otimes_W D$ is defined as the quotient of $C \otimes D$ above where the right action of $W$ on $C$ is identified with the left action of $W$ on $D$.

Other typical situations where we would like to identify subcategories $W$ of $C$ and $D$ is when those are symmetric monoidal categories (in which $W$ is the actions of symmetric groups) or Lawvere theories (in which case $W = F^{op}$, see Chapter 13). Proper generalizations of distributive laws techniques in or-
3.3 Distributive laws

der to encompass such situations were given by Lack [230] and detailed and
generalized by Cheng [85]; we briefly present those below.

3.3.18 A (non-strict) factorization system on a category $E$ consists of subcate-
gories $W$, $C$ and $D$ with the same objects as $E$ such that

- $W$ is a subcategory of both $C$ and $D$,
- every morphism of $E$ factorizes as $g \circ f$ with $f \in C$ and $g \in D$,
- any two factorizations $g \circ f$ and $g' \circ f'$ of a given morphism in $E$ are
  $W$-equivalent: there is a morphism $w \in W$ making the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  f & \Rightarrow & g \\
  \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
  f' & \Rightarrow & g'
\end{array}
\]

commute.

Above, the $W$-equivalence is the smallest equivalence relation on composable
pairs of morphisms in $C \otimes D$ such that for every morphisms $f : x \to y$ in $C$,
$w : y \to y'$ in $W$ and $g : y' \to z$ in $D$ the pairs $(fw,g)$ and $(f,wg)$ are
$W$-equivalent.

3.3.19 Given a bicategory $B$ with coequalizers, we write $\text{Mod}(B)$ for the
bicategory of bimodules in $B$ where

- a 0-cell is a monad in $B$,
- given monads $t : x \to x$ and $u : y \to y$, a 1-cell $f : t \to u$ is a bimodule
  in $B$, i.e., a 1-cell $f : x \to y$ of $B$ together with two 2-cells of $B$

\[
\lambda : tf \Rightarrow f \quad \text{and} \quad \rho : fu \Rightarrow u
\]

respectively called left and right action making the following diagrams com-
mute:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  tf & \xRightarrow{\mu f} & tf' \\
  \downarrow & \downarrow \mu & \downarrow \\
  t'f & \xRightarrow{\eta f} & f
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  tfu & \xRightarrow{\lambda u} & fu \\
  \downarrow & \downarrow \lambda & \downarrow \\
  tfu & \xRightarrow{\eta u} & fu
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  f & \xRightarrow{f} & fu \\
  \downarrow & \downarrow \mu & \downarrow \\
  f & \xRightarrow{f} & fu
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  f & \xRightarrow{\eta u} & fu \\
  \downarrow & \downarrow \lambda & \downarrow \\
  f & \xRightarrow{\eta u} & fu
\end{array}
\]

- a 2-cell $\phi : f \Rightarrow g : t \to u$ is a 2-cell $\phi : f \Rightarrow g$ in $B$ making the following
Operations on presentations

diagram commute:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{tf} \quad \text{pu} \\
\text{phi} \quad \phi \\
\text{tg} \quad \text{gu}
\end{array}
\]

- the composite \( f \otimes u g \) of 1-cells \( f : t \to u \) and \( g : u \to v \) is given by the following coequalizer in \( B \):

\[
fug \xrightarrow{\rho g} fg \xLongrightarrow{\rho} f \otimes u g
\]

other compositions and identities are the expected ones.

In particular, \( \text{Mod}(\text{Set}) \) is biequivalent to the usual bicategory of profunctors, where a 0-cell is a category and a 1-cell \( f : C \to D \) is a functor \( f : C^{\text{op}} \times D \to \text{Set} \) (called a profunctor from \( C \) and \( D \)). More interestingly for our matters, consider the bicategory \( \text{Mod}(\text{Span}(\text{Set})) \). By the correspondence given in §3.3.13, the 0-cells are categories (\( V, W, \ldots \)), and a 1-cell \( C : V \to W \) is a span

\[
V_0 \xleftarrow{s} C \xrightarrow{t} W_0
\]

can be seen as a set \( C \) of “arrows” with source (resp. target) being an object of \( V \) (resp. \( W \)) on which \( V \) (resp. \( W \)) act by precomposition (resp. postcomposition).

The horizontal composite \( C \otimes_W D \) thus consists of the set of pairs \( (f, g) \) of composable arrows in \( C \times D \) quotiented by the equivalence relation identifying \( (fw, g) \) and \( (f, wg) \) for composable \( f \in C, w \in W \) and \( g \in D \).

3.3.20 Fix a category \( W \). A category under \( W \) consists of a category \( C \), with the same objects as \( W \), together with a functor \( f : W \to C \) which is the identity on objects. We can think of \( C \) as having \( W \) as distinguished subcategory, at least when the functor \( f \) is faithful.

Given a monad \( t : x \to x \) in a bicategory \( B \) with colimits, there is always an equivalence of categories

\[
\text{Mon}(\text{Mod}(B)(t, t)) \cong t/\text{Mon}(B(x, x)).
\]

Instantiated to the case where \( B = \text{Span}(\text{Set}) \) and \( t \) is a category \( W \), this says that we have a correspondence between monads in \( W \)-bimodules and categories under \( W \).

Given two categories \( C \) and \( D \) under \( W \), we can now define a distributive
3.3 Distributive laws

law

$$\ell : D \otimes_W C \to C \otimes_W D$$

as being a distributive law between $C$ and $D$, seen as monads in $W$-bimodules. Explicitly, it consists of a function which maps a $W$-equivalence class of a composable pair $(g, f)$ of morphisms $g \in D$ and $f \in C$ to a $W$-equivalence class of a composable pair $(f^g, f^g)$ with $f^g \in C$ and $f^g \in D$ in a way compatible with compositions and identities, in a similar fashion as for distributive laws, see §3.3.12 and §C.3. As before, we write $C \otimes_\ell D$ for the resulting composite category.

Every factorization system (in the sense of §3.3.18) induces a distributive law in the above sense, and conversely a distributive law induces a factorization system when the functors $W \to C$ and $W \to D$ are faithful.

3.3.21 A generalization of Theorem 3.3.6 can be also be given as follows. Suppose given two 2-polygraph $P$ and $Q$ with the same 0-cells, and write $W = P \cap Q$ for the 2-polygraph such that

$$W_0 = P_0 = Q_0, \quad W_1 = P_1 \cap Q_1, \quad W_2 = P_2 \cap Q_2.$$

Above, we suppose that source and target maps agree in $P$ and $Q$ for elements of $W_1$ and of $W_2$, and that they induce those of $W$. The inclusion $W \to P$ induces a functor $\bar{W} \to \bar{P}$ making $\bar{P}$ a category under $\bar{W}$, and similarly for $\bar{Q}$.

Suppose given a distributive law

$$\ell : \bar{Q} \otimes_W \bar{P} \to \bar{P} \otimes_W \bar{Q}$$

between the presented categories. Then the category $\bar{P} \otimes_\ell \bar{Q}$ is presented by the polygraph $R$ with

$$R_0 = P_0 = Q_0, \quad R_1 = P_1 \cup Q_1, \quad R_2 = (P_2 \cup Q_2) \sqcup R_2^\ell,$$

(note that some unions are not disjoint) where $R_2^\ell$ contains a 2-generator

$$\alpha_{u', v'} : v' u' \Rightarrow u v,$$

for every composable 1-cells $v' \in Q_1^1$ and $u' \in P_1^1$ such that $\ell(\bar{b}, \bar{a}) = (\bar{a}, \bar{v})$, for some $u \in P_1^2$ and $v \in Q_1^2$. When the rewriting relation induced by $R_2^\ell$ is moreover terminating, this set can be further reduced as in Theorem 3.3.6.

3.3.22 Example. Suppose given a category $C$ and write $W$ for the subcategory of $C$, with the same objects and the isomorphisms of $C$ as morphisms. When $C$ has pullbacks, there is a distributive law

$$\ell : C \otimes_W C^{\text{op}} \to C^{\text{op}} \otimes_W C,$$
which to a pair of morphism \((g', f'^\text{op})\) associates the pullback \((f'^\text{op}, g)\):

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(f\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(y\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(s\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(x\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(z\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(g\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(y'\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(f'\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(g'\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(x'\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(z'\)}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\(f'^\text{op}\)}
\end{array}
\]

and the composite category is \(C'^\text{op} \otimes_C C = \text{Span}(C)\), the category of isomorphism classes spans described in §3.3.14, see [316, 230, 357]. Dually, when \(C\) has pushouts, the category \(\text{Cospan}(C)\) can be obtained as \(C \otimes_C C'^\text{op}\) where \(\ell\) is given by pushout.

Other examples and applications are given in Section 10.5.
4

String rewriting and 2-polygraphs

We recast the notion of string rewriting system into the language of polygraphs. This notion, which consists of a set of pairs of words called relations or rewriting rules over a fixed alphabet, can be traced back to Thue. In his 1914 paper [344], he introduces the notion of word problem: this is the question of deciding whenever two words are equivalent with respect to the congruence generated by the relations. He also shows that the word problem is decidable when the associated rewriting system is terminating and confluent, and even introduces a completion algorithm in order to make a system confluent (an accessible presentation of the paper, along with an English translation can be found in [302]). For this reason, string rewriting systems are also sometimes called semi-Thue systems (the “semi” here is to distinguish with Thue systems which are defined in the same way, but where the relations are not oriented). Unexpectedly at the time, the word problem was shown to be undecidable for those systems in 1947 by Post [301] and Markov [271]. Of course, this does not preclude us from deciding the word problem for subclasses of monoids, and this is precisely what rewriting is about. The notion of string rewriting system is a variant of the notion of presentation for groups, which is adapted to monoids and where the relations are oriented. Group presentations have been introduced by Dehn [106] in 1911 along with the corresponding word problem for finitely presented groups and Dehn’s algorithm for solving the word problem in favorable cases. However, the general word problem for groups has been shown undecidable by Novikov [293] and Boone [51]. We do not intend to give a complete presentation of those early works, nor of the recent developments, and we refer the reader to the standard textbooks [204, 50, 20, 342] for an in-depth treatment. We rather explain here how string rewriting systems can be seen as a particular case of 2-polygraphs, and how the polygraphic rewriting techniques generalize traditional ones.

The notion of string rewriting system – and the more general variant adapted
to categories – is introduced in Section 4.1, where we show that the rewriting paths form the morphisms of a sesquicategory, in which we can instantiate the concepts for abstract rewriting systems developed in Chapter 1. In Section 4.2, we introduce the word problem and show that it can be efficiently solved for convergent, i.e., confluent and terminating rewriting systems. In practice, confluence can be checked by inspecting the critical branchings of the rewriting system, presented in §4.3.6, and termination by introducing a suitable reduction order, as defined in Section 4.4. The convergence of a rewriting system is also useful to show that it forms a presentation of a given category, as illustrated in Section 4.5. Finally, in Section 4.6, we introduce residuation techniques which allow proving useful properties of categories (such as the existence of pushouts) by performing computations on their presentations.

4.1 String rewriting systems

We have seen in Section 2.3 that a 2-polygraph $P$ can be considered as a notion of presentation for the category $\overline{P}$, obtained from the category freely generated by the underlying 1-polygraph $P_{\leq 1}$, by quotienting the 1-cells under the congruence $\approx$ generated by $P_2$. By Lemma 2.5.2, this congruence is the smallest equivalence relation identifying two 1-cells $u$ and $v$ whenever there is a 2-cell $\phi : u \Rightarrow v$ in $P_2^\ast$. In such a situation, $u$ and $v$ are thus two representatives of the same 1-cell in $\overline{P}$, and if we adopt the point of view developed in Chapter 1, we can think of $\phi : u \Rightarrow v$ as indicating that $v$ is a “more canonical representative” of the equivalence class than $u$. All this suggests that a 2-polygraph can be considered as a form of rewriting system, where the objects of interest are the 1-cells in $P_1^\ast$, and where the generators $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ in $P_2$ are rewriting rules indicating that $u$ can be rewritten to $v$.

If we consider the particular case of a 2-polygraph $P$ with only one 0-generator, say $P_0 = \{\ast\}$, the presented category $\overline{P}$ has only 0-cell and can thus be considered as a monoid, as explained in §2.3.5. We will see that, if we restrict to such polygraphs, the associated notion of rewriting system corresponds precisely to string rewriting systems, thus establishing 2-polygraphs as a mild generalization of those, in which letters are “typed” and only well-typed words are considered: in practice, this extra generality does not bring any major complication and we develop here the traditional theory of rewriting in full generality.

4.1.1 Terminology. A 2-polygraph $P$, when considered as a rewriting system, is sometimes called a categorical string rewriting system, or a 1-dimensional...
4.1 String rewriting systems

The terminology string rewriting system is reserved to the particular case where $P_0 = \{\ast\}$. The underlying 1-polygraph $P_{<1}$ is called the signature and is composed of sorts (the elements of $P_0$) and letters (the elements of $P_1$). The 1-cells in $P_{<1}$ freely generated by this signature are called words or strings, and an identity is sometimes referred to as an empty word.

The 2-generators are the rewriting rules of the rewriting system.

4.1.2 Rewriting step. Suppose fixed a 2-polygraph $P$. A rewriting step of $P$

$$
\begin{array}{c}
x \xrightarrow{u} x' \\
\alpha \\
y' \xrightarrow{w} y
\end{array}
$$

consists in a 2-generator $\alpha : v \Rightarrow v'$ in $P_2$, together with two 1-cells $u : x \rightarrow x'$ and $w : y' \rightarrow y$ in $P_{<1}$. Such a rewriting step will be denoted

$$
uaw : uvw \Rightarrow u'vw : x \rightarrow y
$$

and pictured as

$$
\begin{array}{c}
x
\begin{array}{c}
uaw \\
u'aw
\end{array}
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
y
\begin{array}{c}
uaw \\
u'aw
\end{array}
\end{array}
$$

The 1-cell $uvw$ (resp. $u'w$) in $P_{<1}$ is called its source (resp. target). In this situation, we say that $uvw$ is reducible by $\alpha$. The pair $(u, w)$ of 1-cells in $P_{<1}$ is sometimes called the context or whisker in which the rule $\alpha$ applies to the 1-cell $uvw$. We sometimes write $u \Rightarrow v$ to indicate that there exists a rewriting step of $P$ from $u$ to $v$.

4.1.3 Rewriting path. A rewriting path of $P$ is a sequence $\phi$

$$
u_1\alpha_1w_1, u_2\alpha_2w_2, \ldots, u_n\alpha_nw_n
$$

of rewriting steps of $P$

$$
u_i\alpha_iw_i : u_iv_iw_i \Rightarrow u_i'v_i'w_i : x \rightarrow y
$$

which is composable, in the sense that $u_i'v_i'w_i = u_{i+1}v_{i+1}w_i$ for $1 \leq i < n$. The natural number $n$ is called the length of the rewriting path $\phi$ and is denoted by $|\phi|$. The 1-cells $u_1v_1w_1$ (resp. $u_nv_nw_n$) are called the source (resp. target) of the rewriting path, what we write

$$
\phi : u_1v_1w_1 \Rightarrow u_nv_nw_n : x \rightarrow y.
$$
By convention, an empty path has a determined source (which is the same as its target). We sometimes write \( u \Rightarrow v \) when there exists a rewriting path from \( u \) to \( v \), in which case we say that \( u \) \textit{rewrites to} \( v \). Given two rewriting paths \( \phi : u \Rightarrow v \) and \( \psi : v \Rightarrow w \), we write \( \phi \ast \psi \) for their concatenation. The rewriting path (4.3) can therefore be written as a composition of rewriting steps:

\[
\phi = (u_1\alpha_1w_1) \ast (u_2\alpha_2w_2) \ast \ldots \ast (u_n\alpha_nw_n). \tag{4.4}
\]

Given two 1-cells \( u : x' \to x \) and \( w : y \to y' \) in \( P^*_1 \), we extend the notation (4.1) and write \( u\phi w \) for the rewriting path

\[
u\phi w = (((uu_1)\alpha_1(w_1w)) \ast ((uu_2)\alpha_2(w_2w)) \ast \ldots \ast ((uu_n)\alpha_n(w_nw))). \tag{4.5}
\]

These operations equip the 0-cells, 1-cells and rewriting paths in a polygraph with the structure of a sesquicategory, see §4.1.5.

\section*{4.1.4 Support.} Any 2-cell \( \phi \) in \( P^*_2 \) can be written as a 1-composite of finitely many rewriting steps, of the form (4.4). We define the support of the 2-cell \( \phi \) as the multiset, denoted by \( \text{supp}^2(\phi) \), consisting of the 2-cells \( \alpha_i \) occurring in this decomposition. The support is well-defined because any two decompositions of \( \phi \) into a 1-composite of rewriting steps involve the same rewriting steps. We have seen in §1.4.1 that multiset inclusion is a well-founded order on supports, allowing us to prove some properties by induction on the support of 2-cells.

\section*{4.1.5 Sesquicategory.} A \textit{sesquicategory} \( C \) consists of

- a 2-graph \( C \) (see §2.4.1),
- a structure of category \( C' \) on the underlying 1-graph of \( C \),
- a functor \( C(-, -) : C' \text{op} \times C' \to \text{Cat} \),

such that the composite of the functor \( C(-, -) \) with the forgetful functor \( \text{Cat} \to \text{Set} \), which to a category associates its set of objects, coincides with the hom functor \( C'(-, -) : C' \text{op} \times C' \to \text{Set} \).

The notion of sesquicategory was introduced by Street [338]. Let us detail the operations available in such a structure. Given 0-cells \( x, y \) (i.e., objects of \( C' \)), we have a category \( C(x, y) \) whose objects are the morphisms \( f : x \to y \) of \( C' \), called \textit{1-cells}, morphisms \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow g : x \to y \) are called the 2-cells, and composition is denoted \( \ast \) and called (vertical) composition. Given a 2-cell \( \alpha : g \Rightarrow g' : x \to y \) and 1-cells \( f : x' \to x \) and \( h : y \to y' \), we have a 2-cell \( C(f, h)(\alpha) \) that will be denoted

\[
fah : fg'h : x' \to y'.
\]
4.1 String rewriting systems

and pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  x' \xrightarrow{f} x \xrightarrow{\underbrace{g}_{\alpha}} y \xrightarrow{h} y'.
\end{array}
\]

The functoriality of \( C(\cdot, \cdot) \) ensures that this is a proper left and right action of 1-cells on 2-cells: in a situation such as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  x'' \xrightarrow{f'} x' \xrightarrow{f} x \xrightarrow{\underbrace{g}_{\alpha}} y \xrightarrow{h} y' \xrightarrow{g'} y'' \quad \text{or} \quad x \xrightarrow{1_x} x \xrightarrow{\underbrace{g}_{\alpha}} y \xrightarrow{1_y} y,
\end{array}
\]

we have

\[
f'(f \alpha h)h' = (f' f)\alpha (h h') \quad \text{and} \quad 1_x \alpha 1_y = \alpha.
\]

The following observation is a reformulation in the language of polygraphs of observations originating in [332, 338]:

4.1.6 Lemma. Any 2-polygraph \( P \), induces a sesquicategory with \( P_{\leq 1} \) as underlying category, rewriting paths of \( P \) as 2-cells and left and right actions defined as in (4.5).

Any 2-category \( C \) induces a sesquicategory in the expected way, where \( C' \) is the category underlying \( C \) (with \( C_0 \) as objects and \( C_1 \) as morphisms) and for every \( x, y \in C_0 \), \( C(x, y) \) is the hom-category whose objects are 1-cells \( f : x \to y \) in \( C_1 \) and morphisms are 2-cells \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow g : x \to y \) in \( C_2 \), vertical composition \( \ast \) is \( \ast_1 \), and the action of 1-cells on 2-cells is given by \( fag = 1_f \ast_0 \alpha \ast_0 g \). Moreover, the horizontal composition \( \ast_0 \) of the original 2-category can be recovered from the vertical composition and the action since, given \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow f' : x \to y \) and \( \beta : g \Rightarrow g' : y \to z \), we have

\[
(1_x \alpha g) \ast (f' \beta 1_z) = (f' \beta 1_z) \ast (1_x \alpha g')
\]

In a general sesquicategory, the left and right members of the above equality are not necessarily equal, and sesquicategories in which this is always the case are precisely 2-categories:

4.1.7 Proposition. A 2-category is a sesquicategory such that for every 2-cells \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow f' : x \to y \) and \( \beta : g \Rightarrow g' : y \to y' \) we have

\[
(\alpha g) \ast (f' \beta) = (f' \beta) \ast (\alpha g').
\]
This explains the name *sesquicategory*, meaning a 1½-category: a sesquicategory is almost a 2-category excepting that the exchange law is not required to hold.

**4.1.8 Freely generated 2-category.** From the alternative description of a 2-category provided by Proposition 4.1.7, one can come up with an alternative construction of the 2-category $P^*$ generated by a 2-polygraph $P$ (see §2.4.6): $P^*$ is the 2-category, with $P^*_{\leq 1}$ as underlying category, whose 2-cells are rewriting paths of $P$ considered up to the congruence generated by (4.6). This means that we do not take in account the order of rewriting steps operating at disjoint positions and consider them up to the congruence identifying two rewriting paths of length two of the form

$$x \xrightarrow{u} x' \xrightarrow{v} y \xrightarrow{m} z \xrightarrow{\delta} z' = x \xrightarrow{u} x' \xrightarrow{v} y \xrightarrow{m} z \xrightarrow{\delta} z' = x \xrightarrow{u} x' \xrightarrow{v} y \xrightarrow{m} z \xrightarrow{\delta} z' = (4.7)$$

It can be shown that the sesquicategory constructed in Lemma 4.1.6 is free on the polygraph in the expected sense, akin to §2.4.6. One of the main advantages of considering sesquicategories instead of 2-categories here is that the 2-cells are much easier to represent by data structures, thus making those amenable to mechanized computations: the presence of the quotient (4.7) makes everything more difficult.

**4.1.9 Rewriting properties of 2-polygraphs.** Given a 2-polygraph $P$, we write here $P^{rs}$ for its set of rewriting steps and $s_1, t_1 : P^{rs} \to P_1^*$ for the functions which to a rewriting step respectively associates its source and target. Any 2-polygraph $P$ thus induces an abstract rewriting system

$$P^* \overset{s_1}{\leftarrow} P^{rs} \overset{t_1}{\rightarrow} P_1^*,$$

with 1-cells as vertices and rewriting steps

$$uaw : uwv \Rightarrow uw'w,$$

as in (4.1), as edges from $uwv$ to $uw'w$. We always use double arrows to denote the edges of this rewriting system. Note that, with this point of view, the two rewriting paths shown in (4.7) are not considered to be equivalent.

This construction allows us to extend the properties of Section 1.3 to 2-polygraphs. In particular, a 2-polygraph is

*terminating / quasi-terminating / Church-Rosser /
4.2 Deciding equality

\textit{confluent / locally confluent / decreasing}

\textit{convergent / quasi-convergent}

when the associated abstract rewriting system is. Moreover, the properties of Section 1.3 immediately extend to our case. We list below such constructions and properties, reformulated in the framework of 2-polygraphs.

4.1.10 Branching. A \textit{branching} in a 2-polygraph $P$ is a pair $(\phi_1, \phi_2)$ of coinitial rewriting paths $\phi_1 : u \Rightarrow v_1$ and $\phi_2 : u \Rightarrow v_2$ in $P^*_2$, which we sometimes write $(\phi_1, \phi_2) : u \Rightarrow (v_1, v_2)$.

Such a branching is \textit{local} when both $\phi_1$ and $\phi_2$ are rewriting steps. It is \textit{confluent} when there exist cofinal rewriting paths $\psi_1 : v_1 \Rightarrow w$ and $\psi_2 : v_2 \Rightarrow w$ which “close” the diagram:

\begin{center}
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (v1) at (0,0) {$v_1$};
  \node (v2) at (1,0) {$v_2$};
  \node (w) at (0.5,1) {$w$};
  \node (u) at (0.5,0) {$u$};
  \draw [->] (v1) -- (u);
  \draw [->] (u) -- (v2);
  \draw [->] (u) -- (w);
  \draw [->] (v1) -- (w);
  \node at (0.25,0.5) {$\phi_1$};
  \node at (0.75,0.5) {$\phi_2$};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{center}

We sometimes write $(\psi_1, \psi_2) : (v_1, v_2) \Rightarrow w$ for such a pair.

The goal of this chapter is to provide conditions which are sufficient to ensure that a 2-polygraph is locally confluent (Section 4.3) and terminating (Section 4.4). When both properties are satisfied, we can apply Newman’s Lemma 1.3.21 to conclude that it is confluent.

4.2 Deciding equality

One of the main applications of showing that a 2-polygraph $P$ is convergent is to show that the \textit{equality decision problem}, or \textit{word problem}, for $P$ is decidable for those. We have already handled this situation in the case of 1-polygraphs in §1.3.26.

4.2.1 The word problem. In the context of 2-polygraphs, the equality decision problem for a 2-polygraph $P$ is often called the \textit{word problem} for $P$, and consists in answering the following question:

Given two 1-cells $u, v \in P^*_1$, do we have $u \approx v$?

Above, we recall that $\approx$ denotes the congruence generated by $P_2$, see §2.3.2. The problem was originally introduced by Thue [344], as well as Dehn [105] in the closely related context of group presentations.
A 2-polygraph has *decidable word problem* if there is an algorithm answering the above question: this algorithm consists in a procedure, taking the 1-cells $u$ and $v$ as arguments, and answering *true* or *false* depending on whether $u \approx v$ holds or not. We should insist on the fact that we require that the procedure terminates on every input, i.e., provides an answer after some finite amount of time. When there is no such procedure, the problem is said to be *undecidable*.

### 4.2.2 Undecidability

We always restrict to finite polygraphs $P$ (since the algorithm needs to use this polygraph, the latter must be encoded in a finite way, although we could consider the more general case of recursively enumerable presentations). Contrarily to the case of dimension 1, the set $P_1^*$ of 1-cells is generally infinite, even though the polygraph $P$ is supposed to be finite. Therefore, the argument used in §1.3.26 for showing that the problem is decidable cannot be used anymore: the naive procedure, consisting in computing the equivalence class of $u$ and checking whether $v$ belongs to it or not, is not guaranteed to terminate since the class might not be finite. In fact, the word problem was shown by Post [301] and Markov [271] to be undecidable in general: there exists a finite 2-polygraph $P$ for which there is no algorithm deciding the word problem. A concrete example of such a polygraph is given in §A.1.32.

Having a decidable word problem is however a property of the monoid, not of a particular presentation:

### 4.2.3 Proposition

Let $P$ and $Q$ be two finite Tietze equivalent 2-polygraphs. Then the word problem for $P$ is decidable if and only if the word problem for $Q$ is decidable.

*Proof.* Suppose given two finite Tietze equivalent 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ such that the word problem is decidable for $Q$. Given two parallel 1-cells $u$ and $v$ in $P_1^*$, the Tietze equivalence allows the effective construction for every 1-generator $a \in P_1$ of a 1-cell $[a] \in Q_1^*$ such that $\overline{a} = [\overline{a}]$. Extending the operation $[-]$ as a functor $P_1^* \to Q_1^*$, we have that $u \approx v$ in $P$ if and only if $[u] \approx [v]$ in $Q$, thus allowing us to conclude. \qed

### 4.2.4 The normal form algorithm

When the 2-polygraph $P$ of interest is finite and convergent, the word problem can be decided as in the case of dimension 1 presented in §1.3.26. Namely, the normal form $\overline{u}$ of a 1-cell $u$ can be computed by maximally rewriting $u$, and two 1-cells $u$ and $v$ are equivalent if and only if their normal forms $\overline{u}$ and $\overline{v}$ are equal.

We shall now present this algorithm in practice. A 1-cell $u \in P_1^*$ can be encoded as being either

- a non-empty sequence of elements of $P_1$, or
4.2 Deciding equality

– an element \( x \) of \( P_0 \), which we write \( \text{id}(x) \), representing the identity over \( x \).

In the following, we will not insist on the handling of identities and assimilate those to empty lists in order to simplify the writing of algorithms. We denote by \( \text{len}(u) \) the length of \( u \), with \( \text{len}(\text{id}(x)) = 0 \) by convention. A natural number \( i \in \mathbb{N} \) is a position in \( u \) when \( 0 \leq i < \text{len}(u) \), and in this case we write \( u[i] \) for the \( i \)-th letter of \( u \). Given \( i, k \in \mathbb{N} \) such that \( i \) and \( i + k - 1 \) are positions in \( u \), we write \( \text{sub}(u, i, k) \) for the subword of \( u \) of length \( k \) starting at position \( i \), i.e., the word

\[
\text{sub}(u, i, k) = u[i]u[i+1]\ldots u[i+k-1].
\]

We say that a word \( v \) matches \( u \) at position \( i \) whenever \( v \) is a subword of \( u \) starting at position \( i \). This can be tested with the following first procedure:

```python
def matches(u, i, v):
    return (sub(u, i, len(v)) == v)
```

Given 1-cells \( u, v \in P_1^* \) such that \( \text{tgt}(u) \) and \( \text{src}(v) \) are the same, we write \( \text{concat}(u, v) \) for their composition, which is simply the concatenation of the two sequences. More generally, we allow ourselves to consider the composition \( \text{concat}(u_1, \ldots, u_k) \) of \( k \) composable 1-cells \( u_1, \ldots, u_k \).

Given a rule \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P_2 \), we write \( \text{src}(\alpha) \) for its source \( u \) and \( \text{tgt}(\alpha) \) for its target \( v \). The normal form of a word \( u \) can be computed with the following recursive procedure, expressed in a language which should look familiar to anyone accustomed to imperative programming languages:

```python
def rec_normalize(P, u):
    for \( \alpha \in P_2 \) do
        \( v = \text{src}(\alpha) \)
        for \( i = 0 \) to \( \text{len}(u) - \text{len}(v) \) do
            if matches(u, i, v) then
                \( w_1 = \text{sub}(u, 0, i) \)
                \( w_2 = \text{tgt}(\alpha) \)
                \( w_3 = \text{sub}(u, i+\text{len}(v), \text{len}(u) - \text{len}(v) - i) \)
                return rec_normalize(P, \text{concat}(w_1, w_2, w_3))
        return u
```

Finally, equality can be decided by the normal form algorithm which can be implemented as

```python
def equal(P, u, v):
    return (normalize(P, u) == normalize(P, v))
```
4.2.5 Complexity of the word problem. Let us mention the following result obtained by Avenhaus and Madlener [18, 19] for presentations of groups, but the proof can be applied to presentation of monoids.

4.2.6 Theorem. Let \( P \) and \( Q \) be two Tietze equivalent finite 2-polygraphs. If the word problem can be decided for \( P \) in time \( O(f(n)) \), then the word problem for \( Q \) can be solved in time \( O(f(cn)) \) for some constant natural number \( c > 0 \).

For a finite convergent 2-polygraph \( P \), consider a function \( f : \mathbb{N} \to \mathbb{N} \) such that for any 1-cell \( u \) of length \( n = |u| \) in \( P \), the leftmost reduction sequence from \( u \) to its normal form contains at most \( f(n) \) many steps (here, the leftmost reduction means that we always reduce words with a reduction which rewrites a subword as much on the left as possible). In [49], Book proves that for a finite convergent and reduced 2-polygraph \( P \), the normal form for \( u \) in \( P \) can be computed in time \( O(n + f(n)) \). We say that a polygraph \( P \) is length-reducing when for every rewriting rule \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P \) we have \( |u| > |v| \).

As a consequence of previous result, if a 2-polygraph \( P \) is length-reducing and confluent, then its word problem is decidable in linear time.

4.2.7 Other undecidable problems. The word problem is far from being the only difficult one for 2-polygraphs [281, 50]. It is undecidable, given a finite 2-polygraph \( P \), to determine whether

- it is terminating, locally confluent or confluent,
- there is a finite convergent polygraph presenting the same category,
- it is presenting the terminal category, a finite category, a free category, a cancellative category, or a commutative monoid.

4.3 Critical branchings

In order to show that a 2-polygraph is confluent using the standard techniques developed in §1.3.17 (by using Newman’s lemma, as stated in Lemma 1.3.21), one has to check that all its local branchings are confluent. Contrarily to the case of 1-polygraphs, a finite 2-polygraph usually has an infinite number of local branchings. We however show here that it is enough to check for the confluence of a finite subset of those, the critical branchings.

4.3.1 Example. Consider the 2-polygraph

\[
P = \langle x \mid a \mid \alpha : aa \Rightarrow a \rangle.
\]
4.3 Critical branchings

In order to verify that it is confluent, one can check that all the local branchings can be closed, for \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( 0 \leq i < j \leq n + 1 \), where \( a^n \) denotes the composite \( aa \ldots a \) of \( n \) instances of \( a \).

In order to ease those checks, people are often interested in critical branchings, which are minimal possible obstructions of confluence, which will index a finite subset of the above confluence diagrams, enough to ensure the confluence of the 2-polygraph. In the next sections, we introduce a classification of local branchings in order to define the critical ones. Such a classification in view of the critical branching lemma first appeared in [218] for terms rewriting systems and [292] for string rewriting systems.

4.3.2 Trivial branchings. A branching \((\phi_1, \phi_2) : u \Rightarrow (v_1, v_2)\) is trivial when \( \phi_1 = \phi_2 \). Such a branching is always confluent since we can take \( w = v_1 = v_2 \) and \( \phi'_1 = \phi'_2 = 1_u \) to close the diagram:

![Diagram](image)

4.3.3 Orthogonal branchings. A local branching \((\phi_1, \phi_2) : u \Rightarrow (v_1, v_2)\) is orthogonal when it is of the form

\[
u = u_1v_2w_3, \quad \phi_1 = u_1\alpha v_2w_3, \quad \phi_2 = u_1v_2\beta w_3,\]

for some words \( u_1, v, u_2, w, w_3 \) and rules \( \alpha : v \Rightarrow v' \) and \( \beta : w \Rightarrow w' \) (or of the symmetric form, obtained by exchanging the roles of \( \phi_1 \) and \( \phi_2 \)). Such a branching is always confluent:

![Diagram](image)
Informally, it corresponds to rewriting two independent parts of the word $u$. Note that the above diagram corresponds precisely to the equality (4.7). Orthogonal branchings are also sometimes called Peiffer branchings in reference to the corresponding notions for spherical diagrams in Cayley complexes associated to presentations of groups [257].

### 4.3.4 Overlapping branchings

A local branching is *overlapping* when it is not trivial nor independent.

### 4.3.5 Minimal branchings

We define a partial order on branchings by setting $(\phi_1, \phi_2) \sqsubseteq (\phi'_1, \phi'_2)$ whenever the second branching can be obtained by putting the first one in context. Formally, writing $v : x \to y$ for the source of the branching $(\phi_1, \phi_2)$, we have $(\phi_1, \phi_2) \sqsubseteq (\phi'_1, \phi'_2)$ whenever there are words $u : x' \to x$ and $w : y \to y'$ such that $\phi'_1 = u\phi_1w$ and $\phi'_2 = u\phi_2w$. In such a situation, the confluence of the first branching $(\phi_1, \phi_2) : v \Rightarrow (v_1, v_2)$, say by $(\psi_1, \psi_2) : (v_1, v_2) \Rightarrow v'$, implies the confluence of $(\phi'_1, \phi'_2)$, since we have

A branching is *minimal* when it is minimal with respect to this order.

### 4.3.6 Critical branchings

A local branching is *critical* when it is overlapping and minimal. The following lemma is sometimes called the *critical branching lemma*:

#### 4.3.7 Lemma

A 2-polygraph is locally confluent if and only if all its critical branchings are confluent.

*Proof.* Suppose given a local branching $(\phi_1, \phi_2)$. If this branching is critical, then it is confluent by hypothesis. Otherwise, it is either trivial, or orthogonal, or non-minimal. In the first two cases, we have seen that the branching is always confluent (§4.3.2 and §4.3.3). When the branching is non-minimal, it is greater (with respect to $\sqsubseteq$) than a critical branching (since those are the minimal ones), which is confluent by hypothesis, and we have seen that this implies the confluence of the branching (§4.3.5). □

### 4.3.8 Remark

Note that the confluence of a branching $(\phi_1, \phi_2)$ also implies the confluence of the branching $(\phi_2, \phi_1)$. We could thus further reduce the number of critical branchings by considering them up to symmetry. We will
4.3 Critical branchings

refrain from doing so in the following, because it obfuscates the formulation of the algorithms without bringing significant improvements (it “only” divides by two the number of critical branchings).

4.3.9 Classification of critical branchings. Suppose given two rewriting steps

\[ u_1 \alpha u_2 : u_1 u u_2 \Rightarrow u_1 u' u_2, \quad v_1 \beta v_2 : v_1 v v_2 \Rightarrow v_1 v' v_2, \]

with \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow u' \) and \( \beta : v \Rightarrow v' \), forming a local branching, i.e., such that \( u_1 u u_2 = v_1 v v_2 \). We now study when such a branching is critical.

If the 1-cells \( u_1 \) and \( v_1 \) are both non-identities, they are necessarily of the form \( u_1 = w u_1' \) and \( v_2 = w u_2' \) for some non-identity 1-cell \( w \) and the branching is thus not minimal. We deduce that either \( u_1 \) or \( v_1 \) must be an identity, and similarly either \( u_2 \) or \( v_2 \) must be an identity. Since moreover, the branching should be overlapping, the situation must be of one of the four forms given in Figure 4.1, for some 1-cells \( w_1, w_2 \) and \( w_3 \). In the two first cases, we suppose that \( w_2 \) is not an identity (otherwise the branching is independent). We also suppose that the branching is not trivial, i.e., that we are not in a situation where \( w_1 \) and \( w_3 \) are identities and \( \alpha = \beta \). The last two cases are called inclusion branchings because of the relative positions of the rewriting rules as shown in the above figures.

From the above classification, it should be clear that there is a simple algorithm, which is detailed below, to compute critical branchings: for any two rules \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow u' \) and \( \beta : v \Rightarrow v' \), we try to overlap \( u \) and \( v \) at various offsets which are small enough to deduce the possible \( w_1, w_2 \) and \( w_3 \) for the decompositions of the above form, and remove those which are trivial. In particular, we have as a consequence:

4.3.10 Lemma. Given a 2-polygraph \( P \) with a finite set \( P_2 \) of rewriting rules, the number of critical branchings is finite.

4.3.11 Example. Consider the 2-polygraph

\[ P = \langle \star \mid a, b, c \mid \alpha : abc \Rightarrow a, \beta : ca \Rightarrow a \rangle. \]

In order to compute the critical branchings, we consider pairs of rules and examine how they can overlap. Suppose that we choose \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \). The relative positions of the source \( abc \) of \( \alpha \) and the source \( ca \) of \( \beta \) can be

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
abc & abc & abc & abc & abc \\
ca & ca & ca & ca & ca & ca & ca
\end{array}
\]

Among those, only the first and the last one are valid overlappings, which means
that the vertically aligned letters are the same, giving rise to the two following critical branchings:

\[(ca, \beta bc), \quad (\alpha a, ab\beta),\]

which can also be pictured as

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{ccc}
\alpha & a & \beta \\
\alpha & b & \beta
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

It can be checked that these are the only critical branchings (there is no critical branching involving \(\alpha\) with \(\alpha\) or \(\beta\) with \(\beta\)). The first branching is confluent, but
4.3 Critical branchings

not the second one:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\beta bc \quad cabc \\
abc \quad ca, \\
\alpha \quad \beta
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
abca \quad ab\beta \\
\alpha a \quad \alpha a, \\
\alpha \quad \alpha
\end{array}
\]

4.3.12 Example. Consider the 2-polygraph of Example 4.3.1 again:

\[ P = \langle \star \mid a : aa \Rightarrow a \rangle. \]

The only critical branching

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\alpha a \\
\alpha \\
\alpha
\end{array}
\]

is confluent, therefore the 2-polygraph is locally confluent (by Lemma 4.3.7). Each rewriting step \( uav : uaa \Rightarrow uav \) has a source whose length is one less than the length of the source and therefore the system is terminating. Finally, we deduce that the 2-polygraph is convergent (by Lemma 1.3.21 and §4.1.9).

4.3.13 Example. Given a set \( X \), the free group on this set can be presented, as a monoid, by the polygraph

\[ P = \langle \star \mid a, \alpha, \lambda : \alpha a \Rightarrow 1, \rho : a\alpha \Rightarrow 1 \rangle_{a \in X}. \]

This polygraph is always locally confluent since the two critical branchings

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\rho a \quad a\alpha a \\
\alpha \quad \alpha
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\lambda a \quad \alpha a\alpha \\
\alpha \quad \alpha
\end{array}
\]

indexed by \( a \in X \) are confluent. The rules decrease length and the polygraph is also terminating. Normal forms, also sometimes called reduced words, are words which do not contain factors of the form \( \alpha a \) or \( a\alpha \) for some \( a \in X \). This construction easily extends to present the free groupoid on a graph.

4.3.14 Algorithm. The critical branchings of a 2-polygraph \( P \) can be computed thanks to the following algorithm, which tries to unify the sources of all pairs of rules \( (\alpha, \beta) \) in \( P_2 \). For simplicity, we suppose here that \( P \) is a presentation of a monoid, i.e., there is only one possible identity 1-cell denoted empty. The
output is a set of pairs \((u_1, \alpha, u_2), (v_1, \beta, v_2)\), with \(\alpha : u' \Rightarrow u''\) and \(\beta : v' \Rightarrow v''\)

forming a critical branching

\[
u_1 u'' u_2 \xleftarrow{u_1 \alpha u_2} u_1 u' u_2 = v_1 v' v_2 \xrightarrow{v_1 \beta v_2} v_1 v'' v_2.
\]

The procedure in pseudo-code is

```python
def critical_branchings(P) =
  cp = ∅
  for (α, β) ∈ \(P_2 × P_2\) do
    u = src(α)
    v = src(β)
    for i = 1 \(-\) len(v) to len(u) \(-\) 1 do
      if α ≠ β or i > 0 then
        j = len(v) + i \(-\) len(u)
        i' = max(0, i)
        j' = max(0, j)
        l = len(v) + i \(-\) i' \(-\) j'
        u' = sub(u, i', l)
        v' = sub(v, i' \(-\) i, l)
      if u' = v' then
        u_1 = if i ≥ 0 then empty else sub(v, 0, \(-\)i)
        v_1 = if i ≥ 0 then sub(u, 0, i) else empty
        u_2 = if j ≥ 0 then sub(v, len(v) \(-\) j, i) else empty
        v_2 = if j ≥ 0 then empty else sub(u, len(u) \(+\) j, \(-\)i)
        cp = cp \∪\ \{((u_1, α, u_2), (v_1, β, v_2))\}
  return cp
```

### 4.4 Reduction orders

In order to show that a 2-polygraph \(P\) is terminating, one has to consider a well-founded order on 1-cells which is compatible with composition.

#### 4.4.1 Definition. A reduction order on a category \(C\) is a partial order \(\prec\) relating pairs of parallel morphisms in \(C\) which is

- well-founded: every weakly decreasing sequence of morphisms is eventually stationary,
- compatible with composition: for every morphisms \(u : x' \rightarrow x, v, v' : x \rightarrow y\)
  and \(w : y \rightarrow y'\), we have that \(v \succ v'\) implies \(uvw \succ uv'w\).
Given a 2-polygraph $P$, a reduction order $\prec$ on $P_1^*$ is said to be compatible with the rules of $P$ when $u > v$ for every rule $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ in $P_2$. In this case, the order $\prec$ is called a termination order for $P$.

4.4.2 Proposition. A 2-polygraph $P$ is terminating if and only if it admits a termination order.

Proof. Suppose that $P$ is terminating. Then the following relation $\prec$ is a reduction order compatible with $P$, where given 1-cells $u, v \in P_1^*$ we have $u \succ v$ if and only if $u$ rewrites to $v$. Conversely, in a 2-polygraph equipped with a reduction order compatible with $P$, every rewriting step is of the form $uvw \Rightarrow uv'w$ for some rule $\alpha : v \Rightarrow v'$. In such a situation, we have $v > v'$ because the order is compatible with the rules, and thus $uvw > uv'w$ because the order is compatible with composition. Therefore, the existence of an infinite sequence of reductions in $P$ would imply the existence of an infinite decreasing sequence in the order, contradicting its well-foundedness. □

4.4.3 Remark. In a terminating 2-polygraph, an identity is necessarily a normal form. Namely, suppose that we have $1_x \Rightarrow u$ for some $x \in P_0$ and $u \neq 1_x$ in $P_1$. Then we would have the infinite sequence of rewriting steps

$$1_x \Rightarrow u = 1_xu \Rightarrow uu = 1_xuu \Rightarrow \ldots$$

4.4.4 Constructing reduction orders. There is no general rule to construct a reduction order witnessing that a 2-polygraph is terminating: in fact, deciding termination is an undecidable problem [50, Section 2.5]. Fortunately, there is however a “standard toolbox”, which we now introduce, from which one is able to construct orders in many useful cases.

4.4.5 Reduction function. The most usual method to show the termination of a 2-polygraph $P$ is to provide a function $f : P_1^* \rightarrow N$, called a reduction function, where $(N, \leq)$ is a well-founded poset, which is compatible with composition: for every 1-cells $u : x' \rightarrow x$, $v, v' : x \rightarrow y$, and $w : y \rightarrow y'$, we have that $f(v) > f(v')$ implies $f(uvw) > f(uw'w)$. Such a reduction function induces a reduction order $\prec$ on $P_1^*$ defined by $u \leq v$ if and only if $f(u) \leq f(v)$.

A reduction function is monotone when $f(u) > f(v)$ for every rule $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$. With such a reduction function, the associated reduction order is a termination order and thus, by Proposition 4.4.2:

4.4.6 Lemma. A polygraph equipped with a monotone reduction function is terminating.

4.4.7 Example. The function which to every word $u$ associates its length $|u|$
in \( \mathbb{N} \), also called its degree in this context, is a reduction function. If a polygraph is length-decreasing, in the sense that for every rule \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \) we have \( |u| > |v| \), we can thus conclude that it is terminating by Lemma 4.4.6. This is for instance the argument we have been using to show termination in Example 4.3.12.

**4.4.8 Example.** Functions other than length can also be useful. For instance, consider the presentation

\[
P = \langle \ast | a, b | \alpha : ba \Rightarrow aaa \rangle.
\]

The 2-polygraph intuitively terminates because each application of a rules decreases the number of occurrences of \( b \) in a word. In order to formalize this, consider the function \( f : P_1^* \to \mathbb{N} \) defined by \( f(a) = 0 \), \( f(b) = 1 \), and extended as a morphism of monoids, i.e., \( f(1) = 0 \) and \( f(uv) = f(u) + f(v) \). We have \( f(ba) = 1 > 0 = f(a) \) and the function is compatible with composition since it is a morphism of monoids. Therefore the 2-polygraph is terminating. Note that there are no critical branchings, therefore all of them are trivially confluent and the 2-polygraph is convergent.

**4.4.9 Remark.** Instead of reduction functions, one could more generally consider the notion of a reduction 2-functor which is a 2-functor \( f : P_1^* \to \mathbb{N} \) where

- \( \mathbb{N} \) is a 2-category such that for each pair of objects \( x, y \in \mathbb{N} \) the category \( \mathbb{N}(x, y) \) is a well-founded poset: there is at most one morphisms between two objects and every decreasing sequence is eventually stationary,
- \( f \) is injective on parallel 1-cells: for every 1-cells \( u, v : x \to y \) in \( P_1^* \), \( f(u) = f(v) \) implies \( u = v \).

**4.4.10 Lexicographic product.** Given two posets \( (M, \leq_M) \) and \( (N, \leq_N) \), one can equip their product \( M \times N \) with an order \( \leq_{M \times N} \), called the lexicographic product of the two orders, such that \( (m, n) \leq_{M \times N} (m', n') \) whenever

- \( m \leq_M m' \), or
- \( m = m' \) and \( n \leq_N n' \).

When the two original orders are well-founded, their lexicographic product is always well-founded. Namely, from every decreasing sequence

\[
(m_0, n_0) \geq_{M \times N} (m_1, n_1) \geq_{M \times N} (m_2, n_2) \geq_{M \times N} \ldots
\]

the sequence of \( (m_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \) is decreasing with respect to \( \leq_M \) and thus eventually stationary, and similarly for the sequence \( (n_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \), and thus the sequence of \( (m_i, n_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}} \) is also eventually stationary. As a consequence, the lexicographic product of two reduction orders is a reduction order.
Given a well-founded poset \((N, \leq)\) and \(n \in \mathbb{N}\), a partial order \(\leq_n\) can thus be defined on \(N^n\) (the product of \(n\) copies of \(N\)) by induction on \(n\):

- \(N^0\) is equipped with the trivial order,
- \(N^1 = N\) is equipped with the order \(\leq\), and
- \(N^{n+1} = N \times N^n\) is equipped with the lexicographic product of \(\leq\) and \(\leq_n\).

Finally, one can define a well-founded partial order \(\leq_{\text{lex}}\) on \(\bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} N^n\), called the lexicographic order induced by \(\leq\), by \(u \leq_{\text{lex}} v\) whenever both \(u\) and \(v\) belong to \(N^n\) for some \(n \in \mathbb{N}\) and \(u \leq_n v\). For instance, given \(N = \{a, b\}\) with \(a \leq b\), one has \(abb \leq_{\text{lex}} bbaa\). This is easily adapted to the setting of polygraphs: given a 2-polygraph \(P\) and a well-founded partial order \(\leq\) on \(P_1\), one can define its lexicographic extension as above, where \(P^n_1\) is now the set of composable sequences of length \(n\) of elements of \(P_1\). The resulting order \(\leq_{\text{lex}}\) on \(P^*\) is always a reduction order.

The variant of the lexicographic order where letters are compared from right to left (instead of from left to right) is also useful and called the colexicographic order.

Note that, in the above definition of the lexicographic order, two words of different lengths are always incomparable. One can define a variant of the lexicographic order, sometimes called the dictionary order, which is such that \(u \leq v\) whenever \(u\) is a prefix of \(v\), or \(u\) and \(v\) admit respective prefixes \(u'\) and \(v'\), of the same length, such that \(u' <_{\text{lex}} v'\). This order is not in general well-founded, even if the order on the letters is. For instance, with \(a < b\), one has

\[
\begin{align*}
  b & > ab > aab > aaab > \ldots
\end{align*}
\]

Another variant of the lexicographic order, not suffering from this problem, is presented in next section.

4.4.11 Deglex order. Suppose given a polygraph \(P\) equipped with a well-founded partial order \(\preceq_1\) on \(P_1\). We have seen in Example 4.4.7 that the length on words is a reduction function and thus induces a reduction order on \(P^*_1\), as explained in §4.4.5. Moreover, the lexicographic order induced by \(\preceq_1\) is also a reduction order on \(P^*_1\). By taking the lexicographic product of these two reduction orders, we obtain a new reduction order \(\prec\) on \(P^*_1\) called the deglex order associated to \(\preceq_1\). Explicitly, given two words \(u = a_1 \ldots a_m\) and \(v = b_1 \ldots b_n\), we have \(u \prec v\) whenever

- \(m < n\), or
- \(m = n\), and there exists \(i\) with \(1 \leq i \leq n\) such that \(a_i \prec_1 b_i\) and \(a_j = b_j\) for every \(j < i\).
4.4.12 Example. Consider the 2-polygraph

\[ P = ( \ast | a, b | \alpha : ab \Rightarrow ba ). \]

If we order the letters by \( a > b \), the induced deglex order is a reduction order such that \( ab > ba \). We can therefore apply Proposition 4.4.2 and deduce that the 2-polygraph is terminating. Since there is no critical branching, the 2-polygraph is convergent.

4.4.13 Derivation. In order to construct a reduction function or a reduction order, one sometimes needs to propagate information from the left or the right of the word. This idea is nicely captured by the classical notion of derivation. For instance, consider the 2-polygraph

\[ P = ( \ast | a, b, c | \alpha : cba \Rightarrow aabc ). \]

Most of the simple techniques above (considering the length, the number of letters, or a deglex order) do not apply here to show the termination of the rewriting system: for instance, with any deglex order we have \( cba < aabc \) because the second word is longer than the first one. However, one can justify the termination of the rewriting system by noticing that a rewriting step always decreases the number of \textit{occurrences of } \( c \text{ on the left of an occurrence of } b \). The purpose of derivation is precisely to formulate such definitions obtained by propagating information (here, the number of occurrences of \( c \)) and summing over each letter a quantity obtained from the propagated information (here, the number of occurrence of \( c \) on the left for each \( b \) and 0 for each \( a \) or \( c \)). For simplicity, we consider only the case of presentations of monoids here, but it extends seamlessly to presentations of categories.

Given a monoid \( (M, \cdot, 1) \), an \( M \)-bimodule \( N \) consists of a commutative monoid \( (N, +, 0) \) together with a function \( M \times N \times M \to N \), called an \textit{action} of \( M \) on \( N \), the image of a triple \((u, n, v)\) being written \( u \cdot n \cdot v \), which is

- linear: for every \( u, v \in M \) and \( n, n' \in N \),
  \[ u \cdot (n + n') \cdot v = u \cdot n \cdot v + u \cdot n' \cdot v, \quad u \cdot 0 \cdot v = 0, \]
- associative: for every \( u', u, v, v' \in M \) and \( n \in N \),
  \[ u' \cdot (u \cdot n \cdot v) \cdot v' = (u' \cdot u) \cdot n \cdot (v \cdot v'), \quad 1 \cdot n \cdot 1 = n. \]

A \textit{derivation} of \( M \) with values in \( N \) is a function \( d : M \to N \) such that, for \( u, v \in M \), one has

\[ d(u \cdot v) = 1 \cdot d(u) \cdot v + u \cdot d(v) \cdot 1 \quad \text{and} \quad d(1) = 1. \]

When \( N \) is equipped with a partial order, the derivation is \textit{monotone} when
– the addition is monotone: \( n > n' \) implies \( m_1 + n + m_2 > m_1 + n' + m_2 \) for every \( m_1, n, n', m_2 \in \mathbb{N} \),

– the action is monotone: \( n > n' \) implies \( u \cdot n \cdot v > u \cdot n' \cdot v \) for every \( u, v \in M \) and \( n, n' \in \mathbb{N} \).

In the following, we will be mostly interested in derivations in the case where \( M \) is the monoid \( P_1^* \) for some fixed 2-polygraph \( P \) with one 0-generator. In such a situation, we say that a derivation \( d \) is adapted to \( P \) when \( d(u) > d(v) \) for every 2-generator \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P_2 \).

### 4.4.14 Lemma
Suppose given a monoid \( N \) equipped with a well-founded partial order, together with a structure of \( P_1^* \)-bimodule. A derivation \( d : P_1^* \to N \) of \( P_1^* \) with values in \( N \) which is monotone and adapted to \( P \), is a reduction function.

**Proof.** Suppose given words \( u, v, v', w \) such that \( d(v) > d(v') \), we have
\[
d(uvw) = 1 \cdot d(u) \cdot vw + u \cdot d(v) \cdot w + uw \cdot d(w) \cdot 1 \\
> 1 \cdot d(u) \cdot vw + u \cdot d(v') \cdot w + uw \cdot d(w) \cdot 1 = d(uv'w). \quad \Box
\]
Since \( P_1^* \) is free, an action onto a monoid \( N \) is specified by its effect on generators. Namely, any \( P_1^* \)-bimodule \( N \) induces, by restriction of the action, two functions
\[
l : P_1 \times N \to N \quad r : N \times P_1 \to N
\]
\[
(a, n) \mapsto a \cdot n \cdot 1 \\
(n, b) \mapsto 1 \cdot n \cdot b
\]
which satisfy for \( a, b \in P_1 \) and \( n \in \mathbb{N} \),
\[
r(l(a, n), b) = l(a, r(n, b)), \quad (4.10)
\]
both members of the equality being equal to \( a \cdot n \cdot b \). Conversely, any such pair of functions \( l : P_1 \times N \to N \) and \( r : N \times P_1 \to N \) satisfying the above equality extend uniquely as an action. Similarly, a derivation \( d : P_1 \to N \) is uniquely determined by the function \( d : P_1 \to N \) obtained as its restriction, and any such function extends uniquely as a derivation.

The purpose of the action is intuitively to specify which information is propagated sideways and the derivation determines how the propagated information is used.

### 4.4.15 Example
The termination of the rewriting system (4.9) can be shown as follows. Consider the monoid \((\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}, +, (0, 0))\) equipped with the componentwise addition, i.e., \((m, n) + (m', n') = (m + m', n + n')\), and the partial order is the lexicographic of the standard order on \( \mathbb{N} \) by itself. The first component
of $d(u)$ will count the number of $b$ in a word $u$ and the second component the number of $c$ before a $b$. The action is given, for $(m, n) \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}$, by

\[
\begin{align*}
    a \cdot (m, n) \cdot 1 &= (m, n), & 1 \cdot (m, n) \cdot a &= (m, n), \\
    b \cdot (m, n) \cdot 1 &= (m, n), & 1 \cdot (m, n) \cdot b &= (m, n), \\
    c \cdot (m, n) \cdot 1 &= (m, n + m), & 1 \cdot (m, n) \cdot c &= (m, n).
\end{align*}
\]

The first column specifies the function $l$ and the second one specifies $r$, and those two functions are easily checked to be compatible in the sense that (4.10) holds. The left equation on the last line can be read as: given a word $u$ with $m$ letters $b$ and $n$ occurrences of $c$ before a $b$, the word $au$ has $m$ letters $b$ and $n + m$ occurrences of $c$ before a $b$; other equations are similar. The derivation $d : P_1^* \to \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}$ is defined on generators by

\[
d(a) = (0, 0), \quad d(b) = (1, 0), \quad d(c) = (0, 0).
\]

The rule $\alpha$ is decreasing with respect to the derivation as above: we have

\[
\begin{align*}
    d(cba) &= 1 \cdot d(c) \cdot ba + c \cdot d(b) \cdot a + cb \cdot d(a) \cdot 1 \\
    &= (0, 0) + (1, 1) + (0, 0) = (1, 1)
\end{align*}
\]

and

\[
\begin{align*}
    d(aabc) &= 1 \cdot d(a) \cdot abc + a \cdot d(a) \cdot bc + aa \cdot d(b) \cdot c + aab \cdot d(c) \cdot 1 \\
    &= (0, 0) + (0, 0) + (0, 0) + (0, 0) = (0, 0).
\end{align*}
\]

Therefore, the rewriting system is terminating (and convergent since it has no critical branching).

### 4.5 Constructing presentations of categories

In order to show that a given category $C$ is presented by a given 2-polygraph $P$, one must show that the 1-cells of $C$ are in bijection with equivalence classes of 1-cells in $P_1^*$ under the congruence generated by relations in $P_2$, see Lemma 2.3.9 for a formal statement. Without further hypothesis on the polygraph this is usually difficult because one has little control over the equivalence classes. However, in the case where the polygraph $P$ is convergent, equivalence classes of 1-cells have normal forms as canonical representatives, which greatly simplifies the situation. We explore this here by providing a method in order to show that a given convergent polygraph is a presentation of a given category, based on the observation that, in this case, Lemma 2.3.9 can be reformulated as
4.5 Constructing presentations of categories

follows. We recall that $VC$ denotes the underlying 1-polygraph of a category $C$, as defined in §2.1.1.

4.5.1 Lemma. A convergent 2-polygraph $P$ is a presentation of a category $C$ if and only if there is a morphism of 1-polygraphs $f : P_{<1} \to VC$ such that

1. $f_0 : P_0 \to C_0$ is a bijection between the 0-generators and the objects of $C$;
2. for any 2-generator $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ in $P_2$, $f(u) = f(v)$;
3. the function $f^*_1 : P^*_1 \to C_1$ restricts to a bijection between normal forms in $P^*_1$ and $C_1$.

In the following, we sometimes write $[x]$ instead of $f(x)$ for the image of a generator in $P_0$ or $P_1$ and call it the interpretation of $x$ in $C$.

4.5.2 Example. Let us show that the 2-polygraph

$$P = ( \star | a | \alpha : aa \Rightarrow 1 )$$

of Example 2.3.6 is presenting the monoid $\mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N}$. The polygraph is terminating since the only rule decreases the length of the words and confluent since the only critical branching is confluent:

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{aaa} \\
\text{aa} \\
\text{a}
\end{array}$$

We can thus apply Lemma 4.5.1. There is an obvious bijection between $P_0 = \{ \star \}$ and the only object of the monoid (recall that a monoid is considered as a category with only one object), and we define a morphism $f : P_{<1} \to \mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N}$ by interpreting the generator $a$ as $f(a) = 1$. This morphism is compatible with the relation, since $f(aa) = 1 + 1 = 0 = f(1)$. Finally, the words of $P^*_1$ in normal form are 1 and $a$, and those are in bijection with the elements of $\mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N}$, allowing us to conclude.

4.5.3 Example. Let us use Lemma 4.5.1 in order to give a simpler construction of the presentation of the category of Example 2.3.12. We want to show that the posetal category

$$C = 1_x \xleftarrow{F} X \xrightarrow{G} Y \xrightleftharpoons{1_G} 1_y$$

is presented by the 2-polygraph

$$P = ( x, y | a : x \to y, b : y \to x | \alpha : ab \Rightarrow 1_x, \beta : ba \Rightarrow 1_y ) .$$
The polygraph is convergent since the rules decrease the length and the two critical branchings are confluent:

We define a morphism of 1-polygraphs \( P' \to VC \) by

\[
[x] = X, \quad [y] = Y, \quad [a] = F, \quad [b] = G,
\]

which obviously induces a bijection between \( P_0 = \{x, y\} \) and \( C_0 = \{X, Y\} \). Finally, the 1-cells in \( P'_1 \) which are in normal form are the words over the alphabet \( \{a, b\} \) which do not contain \( aa \) nor \( bb \) (because \( a \) cannot be composed with \( a \), and similarly for \( b \)) nor \( ab \) nor \( ba \) (because the word would not be in normal form since the rule \( \alpha \) or \( \beta \) would apply) as a factor. Thus, there are four normal forms in \( P'_1 \): \( 1x, 1y, a \) and \( b \). They are respectively sent by \( f \) to \( 1X, 1Y, F \) and \( G \), and thus we have a bijection between normal forms and 1-cells of \( C \).

We conclude that \( P \) is a presentation of \( C \), i.e., \( C \simeq P \).

4.5.4 Remark. Note that the method given by Lemma 4.5.1 would work with any notion of “canonical form” for the elements of \( P'_1 \) modulo \( \approx \), not necessarily corresponding to the normal forms for a rewriting system. Namely, for a 2-polygraph \( P \) and a category \( C \), suppose given a morphism of 1-polygraphs \( f : P_{\leq 1} \to VC \) satisfying the two first conditions of Lemma 4.5.1 and a set \( N \subseteq P'_1 \), whose elements are called canonical forms, such that

- every element of \( P'_1 \) is equivalent to an element of \( N \),
- \( f \) induces a bijection between \( N \) and \( C_1 \),

then \( P \) is a presentation of \( C \). Note that the second condition ensures that every element of \( P'_1 \) is equivalent to a unique canonical form.

4.5.5 The standard presentation. Any category \( C \) admits a convergent presentation \( P \), called the standard presentation, introduced in §2.3.14, which is defined by

- \( P_0 \) is the set of 0-cells of \( C \),
- \( P_1 \) contains a 1-generator \( \widetilde{f} : x \to y \) for every 1-cell \( f : x \to y \) in \( C \),
- \( P_2 \) contains 2-cells of the form

\[
\eta : 1_x \Rightarrow 1_x : x \to x \quad \text{and} \quad \mu_{f,g} : \widetilde{fg} \Rightarrow \widetilde{fg} : x \to z,
\]
which can be represented as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{for every 0-cell } x \ \text{of } C \ \text{and pair of composable 1-cells } f : x \to y \ \text{and} \\
g : y \to z \ \text{in } C.
\end{array}
\]

Above, note the subtle distinction between \( \eta_x \) and \( \mu_{f,g} \): the source of the 2-cell \( \mu_{f,g} \) is a path of length 2 (consisting of the edges \( \hat{f} \) and \( \hat{g} \)), whereas its target is a path of length 1 (consisting of the edge \( c_f g \), the generator associated to the composite 1-cell \( fg \)). Similarly, a 2-cell \( \eta_x \) has a path of length 1 (resp. 0) as source (resp. target).

The proof that \( P \) presents \( C \) can be performed using the above method. The 2-polygraph \( P \) is terminating because the rules decrease the length of the 1-cells. It is also convergent: its critical branchings are of the form

\[
\begin{align*}
\mu_{f,h} & \quad f \quad \mu_{g,h} \\
\mu_{f,s} & \quad f \quad \mu_{g,h} \\
\mu_{f,s} & \quad f \quad \mu_{g,h} \\
\mu_{f,s} & \quad f \quad \mu_{g,h}
\end{align*}
\]

for some composable 1-cells \( f : x \to y, g : y \to z \) and \( h : z \to t \) of \( C \), and are thus confluent. The normal forms are either empty paths (identities) or paths of length 1 consisting of a 1-cell \( a \) which is not an identity. Finally, we define a morphism of 1-polygraphs \( P_0 \to VC \) such that the function on objects \( P_0 \to C_0 \) is the identity and the function on morphisms \( P_1 \to C_1 \) is the identity, which is obviously compatible with the relations in \( P_2 \). This functor clearly induces a bijection between normal forms and 1-cells of \( C \).

A variant where the orientation of the 2-generators \( \eta_x \) is reversed, i.e., \( \eta_x : 1_x \Rightarrow 1_x \), is more commonly found in the literature. It is Tietze equivalent to the above one, and thus also a presentation of the category \( C \), although not a convergent one since identities are not normal forms (see Remark 4.4.3).

4.5.6 The simplicial category. As a concrete, non-trivial, and useful example, we recall here the well-known presentation of the augmented simplicial category \( \Delta_+ \), as given in [261, Proposition VII.5.2]. Its objects are natural numbers \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) and a morphism \( f : m \to n \) is a weakly increasing function
String rewriting and 2-polygraphs

\( f : [m] \to [n] \), where \([n]\) denotes the finite ordinal \(\{0, \ldots, n - 1\}\). We claim that this category admits a presentation by the 2-polygraph with

- 0-generators: natural numbers \(n \in \mathbb{N}\),
- 1-generators: for \(n \in \mathbb{N}\),
  \[ s^n_i : n + 1 \to n, \]
  with \(0 \leq i < n\), and
  \[ d^n_i : n \to n + 1, \]
  with \(0 \leq i \leq n\).
- 2-generators:
  \[
  \begin{align*}
  \sigma : & \quad s^{n+1}_i s^n_j \Rightarrow s^{n+1}_{j+1} s^n_i \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i < j < n, \\
  \delta : & \quad d^n_j d^{n+1}_i \Rightarrow d^n_i d^{n+1}_{j+1} \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i < j \leq n, \\
  \gamma : & \quad d^{n+1}_i s^{n+1}_j \Rightarrow s^{n+1}_{j+1} d^n_i \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i < j \leq n, \\
  & \quad \Rightarrow 1_n \quad \text{for } i = j \text{ or } i = j + 1, \\
  & \quad \Rightarrow s^n_i d^n_{i+1} \quad \text{for } 0 \leq j + 1 < i \leq n + 1.
  \end{align*}
  \]

We consider the order on generators such that, for \(i, j, m, n \in \mathbb{N}\), we have

- \(s^n_i \succeq s^n_j\) for \(i < j\),
- \(d^n_j \succeq d^n_i\) for \(j \geq i\),
- \(d^n_i \succeq s^n_j\).

This order is easily shown to be well-founded, and all the rules are strictly decreasing according to the associated deglex order. By Proposition 4.4.2, the polygraph is thus terminating. For simplicity, from now on, we omit the superscripts from generators.

The critical branchings of the rewriting system are

\[
\begin{align*}
& \quad s_i s_j s_k \\
\downarrow & \quad s_{j+1} s_i s_k \\
& \quad s_{j+1} s_k s_i \\
& \quad s_{j+1} s_k+1 s_i \\
& \quad s_{k+2} s_i s_j \\
& \quad s_{k+2} s_{j+1} s_i \\
& \quad s_k+2 s_{j+1} s_i \\
& \quad \text{for } i \leq j \leq k \\
\quad d_k d_j d_i \\
\downarrow & \quad d_{j+1} d_k d_i \\
& \quad d_{j+1} d_i d_k+1 \\
& \quad d_{j+1} d_i d_{j+1} \\
& \quad d_{j+1} d_{j+2} d_i \\
& \quad d_{j+1} d_{j+2} d_{j+1} \\
& \quad d_{j+1} d_{j+2} d_{j+2} \\
& \quad \text{for } i \leq j \leq k
\end{align*}
\]
4.5 Constructing presentations of categories

The 1-generators

\[ s^n_i : n + 1 \to n \quad \text{and} \quad d^n_i : n \to n + 1 \]

of \( P_1 \) are respectively interpreted as the morphisms

\[ \left[ s^n_i \right] : n + 1 \to n \quad \text{and} \quad \left[ d^n_i \right] : n \to n + 1 \]

of \( \Delta_+ \), which are the functions defined by

\[
\left[ s^n_i \right] (k) = \begin{cases} 
  k & \text{if } 0 \leq k \leq i, \\
  k - 1 & \text{if } i < k \leq n,
\end{cases} \quad \text{and} \quad
\left[ d^n_i \right] (k) = \begin{cases} 
  k & \text{if } 0 \leq k < i, \\
  k + 1 & \text{if } i \leq k < n.
\end{cases}
\]
String rewriting and 2-polygraphs

For instance, the graphs of \( s_2^4 \) and \( d_2^2 \) are respectively

\[
\begin{array}{c}
1 & 1 \\
2 & 2 \\
3 & 3 \\
4 & 4 \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
0 & 0 \\
1 & 1 \\
2 & 2 \\
3 & 3 \\
\end{array}
\]

It can be checked that the interpretation is compatible with the relations in \( P_2 \).

For instance, for the rule \( d_j d_i \Rightarrow d_i d_j + 1 \), with \( 0 \leq i \leq j \), we have

\[
\left[ d_j d_i \right](k) = \left[ d_i \right] \circ \left[ d_j \right](k) = \begin{cases} 
  \left[ d_i \right](k) & \text{if } k < j, \\
  \left[ d_i \right](k + 1) & \text{if } j \leq k,
\end{cases}
\]

\[
= \begin{cases} 
  k & \text{if } k < i \leq j, \\
  k + 1 & \text{if } i \leq k < j, \\
  k + 2 & \text{if } i \leq j \leq k,
\end{cases}
\]

\[
= \left[ d_{j+1} \right] \circ \left[ d_i \right](k) = \left[ d_i d_{j+1} \right](k).
\]

The normal forms are of the form

\[
s_{i_0}^{n+p} s_{i_1}^{n+p-1} \ldots s_{i_p}^{n} a_{j_0}^{n+q} d_{j_1}^{n+q+1} \ldots d_{j_q}^{n+q}, \quad (4.11)
\]

for \( n, p, q \in \mathbb{N} \), and

\[
n + p > i_0 > i_1 > \ldots > i_p \geq 0, \quad 0 \leq j_0 < j_1 < \ldots < j_q \leq n + q.
\]

Namely, the rule \( \gamma \) imposes that there is no \( d_j \) before a \( s_i \), \( \sigma \) (resp. \( \delta \)) imposes that the indices of successive \( s_i \) (resp. \( d_i \)) are increasing (resp. decreasing).

Every morphism \( f : m \to m' \) of \( \Delta_+ \) is the interpretation of exactly one such a normal form. We can namely observe that, \( f \) being a weakly increasing function, it is uniquely determined by

- the set of “merged” elements, i.e., the set
  \[
  \{i_0, i_1, \ldots, i_p\} \subseteq [m]
  \]
  of elements such that \( f(i_k) = f(i_k + 1) \), and
- its image, or equivalently its complement, i.e., the set
  \[
  \{j_0, j_1, \ldots, j_q\} \subseteq [m']
  \]
  of elements \( j_k \) which are not in the image of \( f \).

Finally, with the above notations, and writing \( n = m - p = m' - q \), it is easily checked that \( f \) is precisely the interpretation of the normal form (4.11).
4.6 Residuation

The notion of residual, which intuitively specifies what “remains” of a morphism after another one, provides a powerful tool in order to derive properties of a presented category, from combinatorial properties of its presentation. Namely, by studying the properties of residuals, through rewriting systems, one is often able to show interesting properties of the presented category such as the existence of pushouts, the fact that morphisms are mono, or that it embeds into its enveloping groupoid. The exposition provided here is adapted from classical techniques in rewriting theory originating in Lévy’s thesis [249, 191], see [342, Section 8.7] in the context of term rewriting systems, [276] for a modern presentation, [110, Section II.4] in the context of presentations of groups, and [88] of which the current presentation is inspired.

4.6.1 Residuation structure. A residuation structure on a category is a function which to every pair of coinitial morphisms $f : x \to y_1$ and $g : x \to y_2$ associates a morphism

$$f/g : y_2 \to z,$$

called the residual of $f$ after $g$, satisfying the three following conditions.

1. The morphisms $f/g$ and $g/f$ are cofinal and satisfy

$$f(g/f) = g(f/g),$$

i.e.,

![Diagram](image)

2. Residuation is compatible with composition: given a morphism $f : x \to y$ and morphisms $g : x \to z$ and $h : z \to z'$,

$$f/1_x = f, \quad f/(gh) = (f/g)/h, \quad 1_x/f = 1_y, \quad (gh)/f = (g/f)(h/(f/g)),$$

i.e.,

![Diagram](image)
3. Self-residuation is trivial: for every morphism \( f : x \to y \),

\[
f / f = 1_y
\]

i.e.,

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{f} \\
\downarrow \\
\text{y} \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{f} \\
\downarrow \\
\text{y} \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{x} \\
\downarrow \\
\text{y} \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{f} \\
\downarrow \\
\text{y} \\
\end{array}
\]

A residuation structure thus provides a witness of confluence for branchings, which is compatible with the categorical structure.

4.6.2 Remark. A residuation structure is precisely a distributive law

\[
\ell : \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}} \otimes \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{C} \otimes \mathcal{C}^{\text{op}}
\]
as developed §3.3.2, such that for every morphism \( f : x \to y \) in \( \mathcal{C} \) we have \( \ell(f^{\text{op}}, f) = (1_y, 1_y) \), see also §3.3.14.

4.6.3 Proposition. In a category equipped with a residuation structure, every morphism is epi.

Proof. We show that a morphism \( f : x \to y \) is necessarily epi. Suppose given morphisms \( g, h : y \to z \) such that \( fg = fh \). We have

\[
(fg)/f = (f/f)(g/(f/f)) = 1_y(g/1_y) = g.
\]

Thus,

\[
g = (fg)/f = (fh)/f = h
\]

and the morphism \( f \) is epi. \( \square \)

4.6.4 Proposition. In a category equipped with a residuation structure, every pair of coinital morphisms admits a pushout.

Proof. Given coinital morphisms \( f : x \to y_1 \) and \( g : x \to y_2 \), we claim that the morphisms \( g/f : y_1 \to z \) and \( f/g : y_2 \to z \) form a pushout cocone.
Suppose given morphisms $f' : y_1 \to z'$ and $g' : y_2 \to z'$ such that $ff' = gg'$:

The morphism $h = f'/(g/f)$ makes the two triangles commute. Namely, we have

$$(g/f)/f' = g/(ff') = g/(gg') = 1_{y_2}/g' = 1_{z'}$$

from which follows the commutation of the left triangle:

$$(g/f)h = (g/f)(f'/((g/f)) = f'((g/f)/f') = f'1_{z'} = f'.$$

Moreover, we have

$$h = f'/(g/f) = (f/ff')/(f/(g/f)) = (gg')/(g(f/g)) = g'/(f/g)$$

from which we deduce that the right triangle commutes as above, by exchanging the roles of $f$ and $g$:

$$(f/g)h = (f/g)(g'/(f/g)) = g'((f/g)/g') = g'.$$

Conversely, given a morphism $h : z \to z'$ such that $(g/f)h = f'$ and $(f/g)h = g'$, we necessarily have

$$h = ((g/f)h)/(g/f) = f'/(g/f).$$

4.6.5 Proposition. Suppose given a category $C$ such that both $C$ and $C^{op}$ are equipped with a residuation structure. Then the canonical functor $C \to C^\top$, from $C$ to its enveloping groupoid, is faithful.

Proof. Because $C$ admits a residuation structure, the collection $W$ of all morphisms of $C$ forms a calculus of left fractions in the sense of [143]:

- this collection contains identities and is closed under composition,
- for any pair of cointial morphisms $f$ and $g$ there exists morphisms $f'$ and $g'$ such that $ff' = gg'$ (namely, we can take $f' = g/f$ and $g' = f/g$),
- for any morphisms $h : x \to y$ and $f, g : y \to z$ such that $hf = hg$, there exists a morphism $h' : z \to z'$ such that $fh' = gh'$:
String rewriting and 2-polygraphs

(namely, by Proposition 4.6.3 every morphism of $C$ is epi and we can take $h' = 1_z$).

The enveloping groupoid $C^T$ can thus be described as the category of left fractions $C[W^{-1}]$. Since $C^\text{op}$ admits a residuation structure, by Proposition 4.6.3, every morphism of $C$ (and thus of $W$) is mono, and in this case, the canonical functor $C \to C[W^{-1}]$ is easily shown to be faithful. \hfill \Box

4.6.6 Residuated presentation. In practice, it is difficult to directly exhibit a residuation structure on a category $C$ and show that it satisfies the required axioms. We provide here a general methodology in order to show that $C$ admits a residuation structure in the case where it is equipped with a presentation by a 2-polygraph. Namely, in this case, we can specify the residuation structure on generators and extend it to other morphisms by functoriality.

A residuated presentation $P$ is a 2-polygraph together with, for every pair of cointial generators $a : x \to y_1$ and $b : x \to y_2$ in $P_1$, a morphism

$$a/b : y_1 \to z$$

in $P_1$, in such a way that

- $a/b$ and $b/a$ have the same target,
- the morphisms $a(b/a)$ and $b(a/b)$ are $P$-congruent:

\begin{equation}
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{
& x \\
\bullet \ar[ur]_{a} & \ar[dr]^{b} \ar[ul]_{y_1} & \ar[dl]_{b/a} \\
\bullet \ar[ur]_{y_2} & & \ar[dl]_{a/b} \\
\bullet & & \ar[ul]_{z}
}
\end{array}
\end{equation}

- for every 1-generator $a \in P_1$, we have $a/a = 1$,
- for every generators $a : x \to x'$ and $a : u \Rightarrow v : x \to y$, respectively in $P_1$ and $P_2$, we have

$$a/u = a/v$$

and there is a 2-generator

$$a/a : u/a \Rightarrow v/a : x' \to y'$$
4.6 Residuation

in $P_2$:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\ast \overset{a}{\underset{u}{\rightarrow}} \ast \overset{v}{\underset{u/a}{\rightarrow}} \ast \overset{a/u=a/v}{\underset{v/a}{\rightarrow}} \ast \overset{u/a}{\underset{v/a}{\rightarrow}} \ast
\end{array}
\]

(4.13)

4.6.7 Residuation of morphisms. Suppose fixed a residuated presentation $P$.

We can extend the residuation operation in order to define the residual $u/v \in P_1^*$
of a morphism $u \in P_1^*$ after another morphism $v \in P_1^*$. The definition is performed by induction on $u$ and $v$ by

\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{u}{1} &= u, & \frac{u}{(vv')} &= \left(\frac{u}{v}\right)/v', \\
1/\frac{u}{1} &= 1, & (uu')/v &= \left(\frac{u}{v}\right)/(v'/u).
\end{align*}
\]

(4.14)

We will eventually see in Theorem 4.6.15 that, under suitable hypothesis, this induces a residuation structure on the presented category $\bar{P}$.

4.6.8 Example. Consider the presentation

\[
\langle * \mid a, b \mid ab = baa \rangle.
\]

The relation can be pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
b \overset{a}{\underset{a}{\rightarrow}} b
\end{array}
\]

and the only possible residuation structure is defined by

\[
a/b = aa \quad \text{and} \quad b/a = b.
\]

For instance, we have

\[
ab/bb = (ab/b)/b = ((a/b)(b/(b/a)))/b = (aa(b/b))/b = aa1/b = aa/b = (a/b)(a/(b/a)) = aa(a/b) = aaaa.
\]
Graphically,

and similarly, we have $bb/ab = b$.

It remains to check that the above definition is sound in the sense that we can always compute a value for the residual using the relations of §4.6.7, and that residual is uniquely defined, i.e., the computed value for $u/v$ does not depend on the way we bracket $u$ and $v$ or the order in which we use the equalities (4.14). Compatibility with bracketing is easily handled:

4.6.9 Lemma. Residuation of morphisms is compatible with the axioms of categories.

Proof. Residuation is compatible with associativity since

$$(uu')u''/v = ((uu')/v)(u''/(v/(uu'))) = (u/v)(u'/(v/u))(u''/((v/u)/u')) = (u/v)((u'u'')/(v/u)) = (u(u'u''))/v$$

and

$$u/(vv')v'' = (u/(v'v))v'' = ((u/v)/v')(v'' = (u/v)/(v'v'') = u/(v'v'')).$$

Similarly, it is compatible with left and right-unitality since

$$(1u)/v = (1/v)(u/(v/1)) = u/v = (u/v)(1/(v/u)) = (u1)/v$$

and

$$u/(1v) = (u/1)/v = u/v = (u/v)/1 = u/(v1).$$

However, the definition given in §4.6.7 is not sound in general, because it can be vacuous, as illustrated by the following example.

4.6.10 Example. Consider the presentation

$$\langle *, a, b, c, d | ba = ab, ca = ac, da = abd, cb = bac, db = bd, dc = cd \rangle,$$
whose relations can be pictured as

and consider the residuation structure defined by

\[\frac{a}{b} = a, \quad \frac{a}{c} = a, \quad \frac{a}{d} = a, \quad \frac{b}{a} = b, \quad \frac{b}{c} = b, \quad \frac{b}{d} = b, \quad \frac{c}{a} = c, \quad \frac{c}{b} = ac, \quad \frac{c}{d} = c, \quad \frac{d}{a} = bd, \quad \frac{d}{b} = d, \quad \frac{d}{c} = d.\]

The process of computing the residual \(\frac{ac}{bd}\) by applying, from left to right, the relations of §4.6.7 defining residuation of morphisms does not terminate. Namely, the first two steps of this computation are

\[\frac{ac}{bd} = \frac{a}{d} = \frac{ac}{bd},\]

which clearly leads to a loop since the left and the right member are the same. This can be illustrated as follows:

4.6.11 Termination of residuation. Let \(P\) be a fixed residuated presentation. In order to ensure that the process of computing the residual is well-defined, we follow the technique of considering “reversed words” introduced by Dehornoy [109], and consider the following polygraph \(Q\) defined from \(P\) by

\[Q_0 = P_0,\]

\[Q_1 = \{a : x \to y, a^- : y \to x \mid a : x \to y \in P_1\},\]

\[Q_2 = \{a^- b \Rightarrow vu^- \mid a, b \in P_1, u = a/b, v = b/a\},\]

where \((a_1 \ldots a_n)^-\) is a notation for \(a_n^- \ldots a_1^-\), and \(a^-\) should be thought of as a formal inverse for the generator \(a\). A morphism in \(Q_1^1\) is a composite of
String rewriting and 2-polygraphs

generators in $P_1$, some of which might be formally inverted, and rewriting step corresponds to taking residuals in $P$:

We say that a residuated presentation $P$ is terminating when the associated 2-polygraph $Q$ is terminating in the usual sense.

**4.6.12 Lemma.** Given a terminating residuated presentation $P$, the associated 2-polygraph $Q$ is convergent and the residuation operation is well-defined on morphisms of $P_1$. Moreover, for morphisms $u : x \rightarrow y$ and $v : x \rightarrow y'$, the morphisms $u(v/u)$ and $v(u/v)$ are $P$-congruent:

Proof. The polygraph $Q$ has no critical pair, it is thus locally confluent by Lemma 4.3.7 and confluent by Lemma 1.3.21 since it is assumed to be terminating. By well-founded induction, we can show that the normal form of a word $u^{-}v$ is a word of the form $v'u'$ with $v' = v/u$ and $u' = u/v$, and that any word of this form is a normal form. The last part of the lemma follows by induction from the assumption (4.12).

In practice, various practical conditions are sufficient to ensure the termination of the polygraph $Q$, see [110, 88]. For instance,

**4.6.13 Lemma.** Suppose given a function $\omega : P_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, which we extend as a function $\omega : P_1^* \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ by $\omega(1) = 0$ and $\omega(uv) = \omega(u) + \omega(v)$. Suppose moreover that we have $\omega(a/b) < \omega(a)$ for every pair of generators $a, b \in P_1$. Then the 2-polygraph $Q$ is terminating.

Proof. We define a function $\omega' : Q_1^* \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$ by $\omega'(a) = \omega(a)$ and $\omega'(a^{-}) = 0$ for $a \in P_1$, $\omega'(uv) = \omega'(u) + \omega'(v)$, $\omega(1) = 0$. This function is a reduction order on the 2-polygraph $Q$ and we conclude by Lemma 4.4.6.

Finally, we can check that residuation is well defined on morphisms of the presented category $\mathcal{P}$, i.e., that it is compatible with $P$-congruence on morphisms.
4.6 Residuation

4.6.14 Lemma. Given a terminating residuated presentation $P$, for every morphisms $u, v : x \to y$ and $w : x \to x'$ in $P^*_1$, we have that

$$ u \cong v \quad \text{implies} \quad u/w \cong v/w \quad \text{and} \quad w/u = w/v. $$

Graphically,

![Diagram](attachment:diagram.png)

Proof. The assumption that $u$ and $v$ are $P$-congruent means that there exists a sequence of 2-cells of the form

$$ x \xrightarrow{u_i'} x_i \xrightarrow{u_i} y_i \xrightarrow{u_i''} y $$

with $1 \leq i \leq n$, $u_i, u_i', u_i'', v_i \in P^*_1$ and $\alpha_i \in P_2$, with either $\alpha_i : u_i \Rightarrow v_i$ or $\alpha_i : v_i \Rightarrow u_i$, such that $u_i'u_iu_i'' = u, u_i'+1u_i'' = u_i'v_iu_i''$ and $u_i''v_iu_i'' = v$. We have

$$ w/(u_i'u_i'') = ((w/u'_i)/u_i)/u_i'' = ((w/u'_i)/v_i)/u_i'' = w/(u_i'v_i'') $$

where the equality $(w/u'_i)/u_i = (w/u'_i)/v_i$ can be shown by recurrence on the length of $w/u'_i$ using axioms (4.13). Also, by recurrence on $w/u'_i$ and using axioms (4.13), we have the existence of a 2-generator between $u_i/(w/u'_i)$ and $v_i/(w/u'_i)$:

$$ x \xrightarrow{u_i'} x_i \xrightarrow{u_i} y_i \xrightarrow{u_i''} y_i $$

We conclude, by performing a recurrence on $n$. \hfill \Box

4.6.15 Theorem. Given a terminating residuated presentation $P$, the presented category $\overline{P}$ admits a residuation structure.

Proof. The residuation operation is well-defined on morphisms in $P^*_1$ modulo $P$-congruence by previous lemmas and immediately satisfies the axioms of a residuation structure. \hfill \Box
The axiomatization presented in this section has the advantage of being relatively simple to state and prove, but more advanced generalizations are often required in practice. For instance, in many situations, not every pair of coinital morphisms \( f \) and \( g \) admit a residual, but only those which are bounded, i.e., for which there exists \( f' \) and \( g' \) with \( ff' \Leftrightarrow gg' \). Also, it is useful to weaken axiom (4.13) and require that for every 1-generator \( a : x \to x' \) and 2-generator \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v : x \to y \), we have an 2-cell

\[
\frac{a}{\alpha} : a/u \Rightarrow a/v : y \to y'
\]

and a 2-cell

\[
\frac{\alpha}{a} : u/a \Rightarrow v/a : x' \to y'
\]

in \( P_2^* \) (or even in \( P_2^T \)):

![Diagram](4.15)

axiom (4.13) being the particular case where we further impose that \( a/\alpha \) is an identity and \( \alpha/a \) is a whiskered 2-generator. In this case, in order for Lemma 4.6.14 to hold, one has to impose further termination conditions. Given two cofinal morphisms \( f \) and \( g \), we write \( g|f \) whenever there exists \( h \) with \( hg = f \), and in this case we say that \( g \) divides \( f \) on the right. A category is right noetherian when every infinite sequence \((f_i)\) of cofinal morphisms \( f_{i+1}|f_i \) is eventually stationary. In particular, a category presented by a 2-polygraph whose relations are homogeneous (i.e., preserve the length of words) necessarily has this property. The following theorem is due to Dehornoy: see [110, Section II.4] for detailed statement and proof.

**4.6.16 Theorem.** Given a residuated presentation with generalized axiom (4.15), whose presented category is right Noetherian, every bounded pair of morphisms \( u \) and \( v \) in \( P^*_1 \) admits a residual.

**4.6.17 Example.** Consider the positive braid monoid \( B_4^+ \), see §A.1.21, which admits a presentation by a 2-polygraph with three generators \( a_0, a_1, a_2 \) and three relations

\[
a_{01} : a_0a_1a_0 \Rightarrow a_1a_0a_1, \quad a_{12} : a_1a_2a_1 \Rightarrow a_2a_1a_2, \quad a_{02} : a_0a_2 \Rightarrow a_2a_0,
\]
which can respectively be pictured as

We define residuation on generators by

\[ a_0/a_0 = 1, \quad a_1/a_0 = a_1a_0, \quad a_2/a_0 = a_2, \]
\[ a_0/a_1 = a_0a_1, \quad a_1/a_1 = 1, \quad a_2/a_1 = a_2a_1, \]
\[ a_0/a_2 = a_0, \quad a_1/a_2 = a_1a_2, \quad a_2/a_2 = 1. \]

We can check axiom (4.13), i.e., that residuation of 1-generators is compatible with 2-generators. For instance, for the relation \( a_{01} \), the residuals of \( a_0 \) (\( a_1 \) is similar) and \( a_2 \) after the source and the target are respectively

and we can thus take \( a_0/a_{01} = 1_1, \quad a_2/a_{01} = 1_{a_2a_1a_0}, \quad a_{01}/a_0 = 1_{a_1a_0} \) and \( a_{01}/a_2 \) to be the 2-cell
Other cases are left to the reader. Being homogeneous, this presentation is right Noetherian and residuation is always terminating [108]. The category $B_4^+$ is thus residuated. The argument generalize to all positive braid monoids $B_n^+$.

4.6.18 Deciding equality. As a last remark, note that for residuated presentations $P$ the word problem can be solved in the following way. Given two morphisms $u, v : x \to y$ in $P^*$, we have $u \leftrightarrow v$ if and only if

$$u/v \leftrightarrow 1_y \quad \text{and} \quad v/u \leftrightarrow 1_y.$$ 

This follows easily from the fact that residuals corresponds to pushouts cocones by Proposition 4.6.4. In particular, when $P$ has no 2-generator with an identity as source or as target, we have $u \leftrightarrow v$ if and only if

$$u/v = 1_y \quad \text{and} \quad v/u = 1_y.$$
In this chapter, we introduce a notion of Tietze transformation for 2-polygraphs, generalizing the one introduced in Section 1.2 for 1-polygraphs. The Tietze transformations are elementary operations on 2-polygraphs, which preserve the presented category, and such that any two finite 2-polygraphs presenting the same category can be transformed into one another by applying a series of such transformations. Our notion, introduced in Section 5.1, is very close to the one first introduced by Tietze for presentations of groups [345]. We refer to [257, 263] for more details on the notion of Tietze transformation in combinatorial group theory, see also [81] for a historical account. The notion of Tietze transformation was developed in the polygraphic language in [145].

By using Tietze transformations, one seeks to turn a given presentation of a category into another one, possessing better computational properties. In particular, the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure described in Section 5.2 applies those transformations to turn a presentation into a confluent one.

We have seen in §1.3.26 how convergent presentations lead to a solution of the word problem: for those, the equivalence between two words is immediately decided by comparing their normal forms. In order to tackle the word problem for an arbitrary presentation, a good strategy thus consists in trying to transform it into a convergent one by using Tietze transformations. From this point of view, we naturally ask ourselves whether a finite presentation of a category with decidable word problem can always be turned into a convergent one by applying Tietze transformations. This problem, called universality of convergent presentations, is introduced in Section 5.3. We will see in Chapters 8 and 9 that the answer to this question is negative.
Tietze transformations and completion

5.1 Tietze transformations

5.1.1 Definition. The elementary Tietze transformations are the following transformations of a 2-polygraph $P$ into a 2-polygraph $Q$:

(T1) adding a definable 1-generator: given $a \notin P_1$, $u : x \rightarrow y \in P_1^*$, and $\alpha \notin P_2$ we define
$$Q = \langle P_0 \mid P_1, a : x \rightarrow y \mid P_2, \alpha : a \Rightarrow u \rangle,$$

(T2) adding a derivable relation: given $u, v \in P_1^*$ such that $u \approx v$ and $\alpha \notin P_2$, we define
$$Q = \langle P_0 \mid P_1 \mid P_2 \mid \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \rangle.$$

The Tietze equivalence is the smallest equivalence relation on 2-polygraphs which is stable under isomorphisms and Tietze transformations. We respectively write (T1) and (T2) for operations (T1) and (T2) performed backward.

These local transformations completely axiomatize the property of presenting the same categories. This was first shown by Tietze [345] for presentations of groups, and the proof extends to the case of 2-polygraphs.

5.1.2 Theorem. Two finite 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ present the same category, i.e., $P \cong Q$, if and only if they are Tietze equivalent.

Proof. Let $P$ be a 2-polygraph. If the 2-polygraph $Q$ is either isomorphic to $P$ or obtained by performing transformations (T1) or (T2) on $P$, then $Q$ is isomorphic to $P$. Therefore, any two Tietze equivalent 2-polygraphs present the same category.

Conversely, suppose that $P$ and $Q$ present the same category $C$. Up to isomorphism, that is, renaming of generators, we may suppose that $P_0 = Q_0$, $P_1 \cap Q_1 = \emptyset$ and $P_2 \cap Q_2 = \emptyset$. We write $q^P : P_1^* \rightarrow (P_1^* / \approx_P) = C$ for the quotient functor (see Section 2.3): this functor is full and such that $u \approx_P v$ precisely when $q^P(u) = q^P(v)$. Similarly, we also consider the quotient functor $q^Q : Q_1^* \rightarrow C$. Starting from the presentation $P$, we apply the following series of Tietze equivalences.

1. Given a 1-generator $a \in Q_1$, its image $q^Q(b)$ is a morphism of $C$ and therefore has a representative in $P_1^*$: since $q^P$ is full, there exists $u_a \in P_1^*$ satisfying $q^P(u_a) = q^Q(b)$. By a transformation (T1), we add to $P$ the 1-generator $a$ and the relation $u_a \Rightarrow a$. Performing this for every generator $a \in Q_1$, we obtain the 2-polygraph
$$P' = \langle C_0 \mid P_1 \cup Q_1 \mid P_2 \cup \{ u_a \Rightarrow a \mid a \in Q_1 \} \rangle.$$
Given a 1-cell $u = a_1 \ldots a_n \in Q_1^*$, by construction of $P'$, we have that $q^{P'}(u_a) = q^{Q}(a)$, which implies
\[
q^{P'}(u) = q^{P'}(a_1) \ldots q^{P'}(a_n) \\
= q^{Q}(a_1) \ldots q^{Q}(a_n) \\
= q^{Q}(u).
\]

For each relation $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ in $Q_2$, we have $q^{Q}(u) = q^{Q}(v)$, which implies $q^{P'}(u) = q^{P'}(v)$ by the above, and therefore $u \equiv^{P'} v$. By a transformation (T2), we can thus add to the previous 2-polygraph the derivable relation $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$. Performing this for every relation $\alpha \in Q_2$, we obtain the 2-polygraph
\[
P'' = \langle C_0 \mid P_1 \cup Q_1 \mid P_2 \cup Q_2 \cup \{u_a \Rightarrow a \mid a \in Q_1\} \rangle.
\]

Suppose given a 1-generator $a \in P_1$. For similar reasons as in first step, there exists $v_a \in Q_1^*$ such that $q^{Q}(v_a) = q^{P}(a)$, which implies $q^{P''}(v_a) = q^{P''}(a)$, i.e., $v_a \equiv^{P''} a$. By a transformation (T2), we can therefore add the derivable relation $v_a \Rightarrow a$. Performing this for every generator $a \in P_1$, we obtain the 2-polygraph $P'''$ which is
\[
\langle C_0 \mid P_1 \cup Q_1 \mid P_2 \cup Q_2 \cup \{v_a \Rightarrow a \mid a \in P_1\} \cup \{u_a \Rightarrow a \mid a \in Q_1\} \rangle.
\]

By exchanging the roles of $P$ and $Q$, one shows that $Q$ is also Tietze equivalent to the same polygraph $P'''$. Therefore, the 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ are Tietze equivalent.

**5.1.3 Remark.** Similarly to the case of 1-polygraphs (Remark 1.2.13), Tietze transformations can be extended to account for infinite 2-polygraphs. The notion of Tietze transformation has to be refined in the following way: we say that a polygraph $P$ Tietze expands to a polygraph $Q$ when there is a transfinite sequence of Tietze transformations from $P$ to $Q$, and we define Tietze equivalence as the smallest equivalence relation containing Tietze expansion. The above proof can be adapted in order to show that two polygraphs (of arbitrary cardinality) present the isomorphic categories if and only if they are Tietze equivalent.

**5.1.4 Example.** Consider the symmetric group $S_3$ on 3 elements. We consider it here as a monoid (in which elements happen to have inverses). It can be described as the category with only one object, whose morphisms are bijections $f : [3] \rightarrow [3]$, where $[3]$ denotes the set $\{0, 1, 2\}$ with three elements, equipped with usual composition and identity. This group is generated by the
two transpositions \( s \) and \( t \) whose graphs are respectively

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 1 & 2 \\
\cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\
0 & 1 & 2
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 1 & 2 \\
\cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\
0 & 1 & 2
\end{array}
\]

and working out the relations which are satisfied by those generators, one can come up with the following presentation of \( S_3 \):

\[
P = \langle \star \mid s, t \mid ss = 1, tt = 1, ssts = tst \rangle
\]

see §5.2.7 and §A.1.19 for details.

The group \( S_3 \) can also be considered as the group of symmetries of an equilateral triangle.

Namely, any bijection between the set of vertices determines a unique symmetry. As such, it can be generated by a symmetry \( s \) about a vertical axis and a rotation \( r \) of angle \( 2\pi/3 \): those respectively correspond to the bijections between vertices whose graphs are

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 1 & 2 \\
\cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\
0 & 1 & 2
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
0 & 1 & 2 \\
\cdot & \cdot & \cdot \\
0 & 1 & 2
\end{array}
\]

Note that the interpretation of \( s \) is the same as previously, and that \( r \) can be expressed in terms of the previous generators as \( r = ts \). Working out the relations satisfied by those generators, one obtains the following presentation:

\[
Q = \langle \star \mid s, r \mid rrr = 1, ss = 1, rsrs = 1 \rangle,
\]

which is the usual presentation of the dihedral group \( D_3 \), see §A.1.24.

Since the two above 2-polygraphs \( P \) and \( Q \) present the same group, Theorem 5.1.2 asserts that they are Tietze equivalent. For instance, the presentation \( P \)
can be transformed into $Q$ by the following series of Tietze transformations. Starting from the 2-polygraph $P$,

(T1) add the definable generator $r = ts$:

$$\langle \star | r, s, t | ss = 1, tt = 1, sts = tst, r = ts \rangle,$$

(T2) add the relation $rrr = 1$ (derivable since $rrr = tststs = ttsts = ss = 1$):

$$\langle \star | r, s, t | rrr = 1, ss = 1, tt = 1, sts = tst, r = ts \rangle,$$

(T2) add the relation $rsrs = 1$ (derivable since $rsrs = tsssts = tt = 1$):

$$\langle \star | r, s, t | rrr = 1, ss = 1, tt = 1, rsrs = 1, sts = tst, r = ts \rangle,$$

(T2) add the relation $t = rs$ (derivable since $t = tss = rs$):

$$\langle \star | r, s, t | rrr = 1, ss = 1, tt = 1, rsrs = 1, sts = tst, r = ts, t = rs \rangle,$$

(T2) remove the relation $r = t$ (derivable since $r = rrs = t$):

$$\langle \star | r, s, t | rrr = 1, ss = 1, tt = 1, rrsrs = 1, sts = tst, t = rs \rangle,$$

(T2) remove the relation $tt = 1$ (derivable since $tt = rrsrs = 1$):

$$\langle \star | r, s, t | rrr = 1, ss = 1, tt = 1, rrsrs = 1, sts = tst, t = rs \rangle,$$

(T2) remove the relation $sts = tst$, which is derivable since $sts = srsrs = sr = rrsrsrs = rrs = rrsrs = tst$

$$\langle \star | r, s, t | rrr = 1, ss = 1, rrsrs = 1, t = rs \rangle.$$

(T1) finally, remove the definable generator $t$ (which does not occur in any relation other than $t = rs$) to obtain $Q$.

### 5.1.5 Example

The monoid $\langle \mathbb{N}/3\mathbb{N} \rangle \times \langle \mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N} \rangle$ admits the presentation

$$\langle \star | s, t | s^3 = 1, t^2 = 1, ts = st \rangle$$

but it also admits the presentation

$$\langle \star | r | r^6 = 1 \rangle$$

(hint: define $r$ by $r = ts$). This shows that we have an isomorphism

$$\langle \mathbb{N}/3\mathbb{N} \rangle \times \langle \mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N} \rangle \cong \mathbb{N}/6\mathbb{N}$$
as already noted in Example 3.3.7. More generally, one can show that the monoids
\[(\mathbb{N}/p\mathbb{N}) \times (\mathbb{N}/q\mathbb{N}) \simeq \mathbb{N}/pq\mathbb{N}\]
are isomorphic when \(p\) and \(q\) are relatively prime natural numbers.

### 5.1.6 Reduced 2-polygraphs

Tietze equivalences allow one to simplify presentations without changing the presented category. In particular, one can, without loss of generality, restrict to the following class of 2-polygraphs, which are often easier to handle than general 2-polygraphs. Those were studied by Metivier [280] for term rewriting systems, and Squier [326, Theorem 2.4] for string rewriting systems.

A 2-polygraph \(P\) is

- **left reduced** when, for every rule \(\alpha : u \Rightarrow v\) in \(P_2\), \(u\) is not reducible by any rule other than \(\alpha\),
- **right reduced** when, for every rule \(\alpha : u \Rightarrow v\) in \(P_2\), \(v\) is not reducible by any rule,
- **reduced** when it is both left and right reduced.

Note that a left reduced 2-polygraph never has inclusion critical branchings, as defined in §4.3.9, which often simplifies the study of branchings.

### 5.1.7 Theorem ([326, Theorem 2.4])

Every convergent 2-polygraph \(P\) is Tietze equivalent to a reduced convergent 2-polygraph.

**Proof.** Starting from the 2-polygraph \(P\), we successively apply the following Tietze transformations.

1. Replace every 2-cell \(\alpha : u \Rightarrow v\) by \(\alpha : u \Rightarrow \tilde{u}\), where \(\tilde{u}\) is the normal form of \(u\):

   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   u \xrightarrow{\alpha} v \\
   \downarrow \sim \Downarrow \sim \\
   \tilde{u}
   \end{array}
   \]

2. If the resulting 2-polygraph contains parallel 2-cells, remove all but one:

   \[
   \begin{array}{c}
   u \xrightarrow{\alpha_1} \tilde{u} \\
   \bigcirc \sim \bigcirc \sim \\
   \begin{array}{c}
   u \xrightarrow{\alpha_n} \tilde{u}
   \end{array}
   \end{array}
   \]

3. Finally, remove, in the resulting 2-polygraph, every 2-cell whose source is
5.1 Tietze transformations

reducible by another 2-cell:

\[ uvw \xrightarrow{\alpha} u\bar{w}w \quad \text{and} \quad uvw \xrightarrow{(T2)} u\bar{w}w. \]

These steps all correspond to Tietze transformations of type (T2) and the resulting polygraph is clearly reduced.

5.1.8 Example. Consider the following presentation of the symmetric group \( S_3 \):

\[
\left\{ \star \mid r, s, t \mid \sigma : ss \Rightarrow 1, \, \gamma : stst \Rightarrow tst, \, \rho : ts \Rightarrow r \right\}.
\]

It is not reduced because the target of \( \gamma' \) is not reduced (its normal form is \( tsts \)) and the sources of \( \gamma \) and \( \gamma' \) are reducible by \( \rho \). Applying the procedure described in the proof of Theorem 5.1.7, we obtain the following reduced, Tietze equivalent, presentation:

\[
\left\{ \star \mid r, s, t \mid \sigma : ss \Rightarrow 1, \tau : tt \Rightarrow 1, \, \gamma : stst \Rightarrow r \right\}.
\]

5.1.9 The reduced standard presentation. In §4.5.5, we have seen that every category \( C \) admits a canonical presentation, the standard presentation. One can actually achieve a smaller presentation by not adding identities as 1-generators. The reduced standard polygraphic presentation of \( C \) is the 2-polygraph \( R \) where

\begin{itemize}
  \item \( R_0 \) is the set of objects of \( C \),
  \item \( R_1 \) is the set of morphisms of \( C \) which are not identities,
  \item \( R_2 \) contains 2-cells of the form \( \mu_{a,b} : ab \Rightarrow (b \circ a) : x \to z \), for every object \( x \) of \( C \) and pair of composable morphisms \( a : x \to y \) and \( b : y \to z \) in \( C \) such that \( b \circ a \) is not an identity, and 2-cells of the form \( \mu'_{a,b} : ab \Rightarrow x : x \to x \), for every object \( x \) of \( C \) and pair of composable morphisms \( a : x \to y \) and \( b : y \to x \) in \( C \) such that \( b \circ a = 1_x \).
\end{itemize}

The proof that this is indeed a presentation of \( C \) can be performed by adapting the rewriting argument provided in §4.5.5. Another way to show this, since we know that the standard presentation \( P \) of \( C \) is a presentation of \( C \), is to show that \( R \) is Tietze equivalent to \( C \). Starting from \( P \), this can be done by using the following series of Tietze transformations.
Tietze transformations and completion

- For each 2-cell $\mu_{a,b} : ab \Rightarrow (b \circ a) : x \Rightarrow x$ such that $b \circ a = 1_x$ is an identity one can add the derivable 2-cell $\mu'_{a,b} : ab \Rightarrow x$ and remove the 2-cell $\mu_{a,b}$ by using transformations (T2):

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
a & \Rightarrow & b \\
\mu_{a,b} & \Rightarrow & x \\
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{ccc}
a & \Rightarrow & b \\
\mu'_{a,b} & \Rightarrow & x \\
\end{array}
$$

---

Note the subtle difference between $\mu_{f,g}$ and $\mu'_{f,g}$; in the first case the target is the path of length one consisting of the 1-generator $1_x$, whereas in the second case it is the path of length zero at $x$.

- For each $x \in P_0$, remove the 1-generator $1_x$ along with the 2-cell $\eta_x$ by using transformation (T1); this can be done because this 1-generator does not occur in the source or target of any 2-cell other than $\eta_x$.

The resulting 2-polygraph is the reduced standard presentation. In fact, this presentation is precisely the one that one would obtain by applying the procedure described in the proof of Theorem 5.1.7.

5.1.10 Tietze reductions. There are two kinds of Tietze transformations: (T1) adding a definable generator and (T2) adding a derivable relation. During a Tietze equivalence, those can also be performed backward: (T1) removing a definable generator and (T2) removing a derivable relation. A Tietze equivalence using only the two backward transformations is called a Tietze reduction, and consists in making the presentation smaller by suitable removing generators and relations. It would be nice if two 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ where Tietze equivalent if and only if they reduce to a common 2-polygraph: this would mean that we do not have to come up with new generators or relations in order to study Tietze equivalence. We have seen in §1.2.10 that this holds in the case of 1-polygraphs, but we show here that this is not the case for 2-polygraphs. This explains why the proof of Theorem 5.1.2 proceeds by transforming two polygraphs into a bigger one, which contains both, and not a smaller one.

Consider the presentation

$$
P = \langle \ast \mid a, b \mid \alpha : aa \Rightarrow a, \beta : bb \Rightarrow b, \gamma : aa \Rightarrow bb \rangle.
$$

One can apply to it the following Tietze transformations:

(T2) add the derivable relation $a = b$:

$$
\langle \ast \mid a, b \mid aa = a, bb = b, aa = bb, a = b \rangle
$$

(the relation is derivable by $a = aa = bb = b$).
5.1 Tietze transformations

(T2) remove the derivable relation $bb = b$:

\[ \langle \star \mid a, b \mid aa = a, aa = bb, a = b \rangle \]

(the relation is derivable by $bb = aa = a = b$),

(T2) remove the derivable relation $aa = bb$:

\[ \langle \star \mid a, b \mid aa = a, a = b \rangle \]

(respectively derivable since $a = b$),

(T1) remove the definable generator $b$:

\[ P' = \langle \star \mid a \mid aa = a \rangle. \]

The polygraphs $P$ and $P'$ are thus Tietze equivalent and $P$ presents the free monoid with an idempotent element: this monoid has two elements 1 and $a$, with multiplication given by $1a = a1 = aa = a$.

The polygraph $P$ is Tietze minimal, in the sense that no non-trivial Tietze reduction can be applied to it; otherwise said, in order to prove a non-trivial Tietze equivalence, one has to begin by adding definable generators or derivable relations. Namely, the 1-generator $a$ cannot be removed along the relation $\alpha$ because $a$ occurs in the source of $\gamma$, and similarly for $\beta$. Finally, we can show that no relation is derivable by contradiction as follows.

- Suppose that $\alpha$ is derivable. This means that the 2-polygraph $P$ is Tietze equivalent to the 2-polygraph

\[ Q = \langle \star \mid a, b \mid \beta : bb \Rightarrow b, \gamma : aa \Rightarrow bb \rangle \]

and we have $P \simeq Q$. The 2-polygraph $Q$ is not convergent, but it is Tietze equivalent to the convergent 2-polygraph

\[ Q' = \langle \star \mid a, b \mid \beta : bb \Rightarrow b, \gamma' : aa \Rightarrow b, \delta : ba \Rightarrow ab \rangle \]

(the relation $\delta$ is derivable by $ba = bba = aaa = ab$, see also Example 5.2.3). The termination of $Q'$ can be shown using the deglex order generated by $b > a$, and the critical branchings are confluent:
The normal forms are 1, \(a\), \(b\) and \(ab\), i.e., there are four morphisms in \(\overline{Q}\) whereas there are only two in \(\overline{P}\), contradicting the isomorphism \(\overline{P} \simeq \overline{Q}\).

- By exchanging the role of \(a\) and \(b\) in previous case, and reversing the orientation of \(\gamma\) (which does not change the presented category), the relation \(\beta\) is not derivable either.

- Suppose that \(\gamma\) is derivable. This means that \(P\) is Tietze equivalent to the 2-polygraph

\[
Q = \langle x \mid a, b \mid \alpha : aa \Rightarrow a, \beta : bb \Rightarrow b \rangle.
\]

Again, \(Q\) is convergent (rules decrease the length of morphisms and there is no critical pair) and every word of the form \(abab\ldots\) as normal form, whereas \(\overline{P}\) has only two elements.

Since the presentation \(P'\) is also (obviously) minimal, we see that there is no way to show that \(P\) and \(P'\) are Tietze equivalent by Tietze reducing both to a common 2-polygraph.

### 5.1.11 Tietze transformations up to equivalence.

We have seen in Theorem 5.1.2 that Tietze transformations generate the following equivalence relation on polygraphs: two polygraphs are equivalent when they present isomorphic categories. We consider here the following variant of the notion of equivalence: two polygraphs are equivalent when they present equivalent categories. A corresponding notion of Tietze transformation can be obtained as a variant of those presented in §5.1.1, by adding the following kind of transformation:

(T0) adding an isomorphic 0-generator: given \(x \in P_0, y \notin P_0, a, b \notin P_1, \alpha, \beta \notin P_2\), we define

\[
Q = \langle P_1, y \mid P_1, a : x \Rightarrow y, b : y \Rightarrow x \mid P_2, \alpha : ab \Rightarrow 1_x, \beta : ba \Rightarrow 1_y \rangle.
\]
We have seen that convergent 2-polygraphs are very convenient to work with. When given a polygraph which does not have this property, one can in many cases use Tietze transformations to turn it into one which does, preserving the presented category. We present here a procedure due to Knuth and Bendix [218] (in the setting of term rewriting systems) whose purpose is to perform this transformation in an automated way: starting from a 2-polygraph with a reduction order, it adds definable 2-generators until possibly reaching a convergent 2-polygraph, which is Tietze equivalent to the original one. We use the terminology of "procedure" and not an "algorithm", because there is no guarantee that it will eventually stop, although it very often does in practice.

This procedure is based on two observations. The first one is that, in a terminating 2-polygraph, the completion of any confluent critical branching can always be chosen to be convergent towards a normal form. In fact, suppose that a critical pair \((\phi_1, \phi_2)\) is closed by \((\phi'_1, \phi'_2)\) as shown on the left diagram below:

\[
\begin{align*}
\phi_1 & \quad \phi_2 \\
v_1 & \quad v_2 \\
\phi'_1 & \quad \phi'_2
\end{align*}
\]

The termination property yields a normalization path \(\psi\) from \(w\) to a normal form \(\tilde{w}\) of \(w\), so that we may close the diagram by the new pair \((\psi \circ \phi'_1, \psi \circ \phi'_2)\) as shown above on the right.

The second observation is that, given a non-confluent critical pair as on the left below,

\[
\begin{align*}
\phi_1 & \quad \phi_2 \\
v_1 & \quad v_2 \\
\phi'_1 & \quad \phi'_2
\end{align*}
\]

we have \(v_1 \approx v_2\) and it is therefore possible to add the definable relation \(v_1 \Rightarrow v_2\) or \(v_2 \Rightarrow v_1\) to the polygraph without changing the presented category since this is a Tietze transformation of type (T2). The new presentation is "more confluent" in the sense that the above critical pair is now confluent. We are thus tempted to add new rules in this way for every critical branching. However, newly added rules can create new non-confluent branchings and we want therefore to add as few of them as possible. For instance, in the above
situation, suppose that we have added a rule \( v_1 \Rightarrow v_2 \) and that there was already another reduction \( v_1 \Rightarrow v'_1 \), making a non-confluent branching, as shown on the left below:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi_1 \xrightarrow{u} v_1 \\
\phi_2 \xrightarrow{} v_2
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi_1 \xrightarrow{u} v_1 \\
\phi_2 \xrightarrow{} v_2
\end{array}
\]

In order to make the polygraph confluent, we are now forced to add a new rule between \( v'_1 \) and \( v_2 \), say \( v'_1 \Rightarrow v_2 \), making the former rule \( v_1 \Rightarrow v_2 \) useless: it would have been preferable to directly add the rule \( v'_1 \Rightarrow v_2 \) instead of \( v_1 \Rightarrow v_2 \). For this reason, given a critical branching as above, we only add new rules \( \tilde{v}_1 \Rightarrow \tilde{v}_2 \) (or \( \tilde{v}_2 \Rightarrow \tilde{v}_1 \)), between normal forms \( \tilde{v}_1 \) (resp. \( \tilde{v}_2 \)) of \( v_1 \) (resp. \( v_2 \)). Finally the newly added rules must be oriented without breaking the termination of the original polygraph. This is usually done by orienting rules according to a reduction order.

5.2.1 The completion procedure. Suppose given a finite 2-polygraph \( P \), equipped with a total reduction order \( \ll \) which is compatible with \( P \), i.e., \( u \gg v \) for every 2-generator \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P^2 \). By Proposition 4.4.2, the polygraph \( P \) is necessarily terminating.

The Knuth-Bendix completion procedure starts with the 2-polygraph \( P \) and iteratively transforms it by adding definable relations, as follows.

1. For every critical branching

\[
v \xleftarrow{\phi} u \xrightarrow{\psi} w
\]

we compute reduction paths \( \phi' : v \Rightarrow \tilde{v} \) and \( \psi : w \Rightarrow \tilde{w} \) to some normal forms \( \tilde{v} \) and \( \tilde{w} \) of \( v \) and \( w \) respectively, until finding one with \( \tilde{v} \neq \tilde{w} \). If there is none the procedure halts and returns the computed polygraph.

2. With the normal forms computed in previous step, we either have \( \tilde{v} \gg \tilde{w} \), in which case we add a 2-generator \( \alpha : \tilde{v} \Rightarrow \tilde{w} \) to \( P \), or \( \tilde{v} \ll \tilde{w} \), in which case we add a 2-generator \( \alpha : \tilde{w} \Rightarrow \tilde{v} \) to \( P \):

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \xrightarrow{u} v \\
\psi \xrightarrow{} w
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \xrightarrow{u} v \\
\psi \xrightarrow{} w
\end{array}
\]

3. Go back to step 1.
5.2 The Knuth-Bendix completion procedure

If the procedure stops, it returns a 2-polygraph, which we denote as KB(P) and call a Knuth-Bendix completion of P. In the case where the procedure does not terminate, it constructs an infinite sequence P = P^0, P^1, P^2, ... of 2-polygraphs, where P^{i+1} is obtained from P^i by adding a derivable relation. This sequence is thus increasing, in the sense that we have P^i ⊆ P^j for i ≤ j, and thus admits an inductive limit ∪_i P^i, which we still denote as KB(P).

5.2.2 Theorem ([218, 189]). The Knuth-Bendix completion KB(P) of a 2-polygraph P is a convergent presentation of the category P.

Proof. Since all the rules respect the termination order by construction, the reduction order ≼ is a termination order, and the polygraph KB(P) is thus terminating by Proposition 4.4.2. Moreover, step 1 ensures that all the critical branchings are confluent, and the polygraph KB(P) is thus locally confluent by Lemma 4.3.7 and confluent by Lemma 1.3.21. Finally, the procedure proceeds by adding derivable transformations at step 2, i.e., by performing Tietze transformations of type (T2). By Theorem 5.1.2, the polygraph KB(P) thus presents the same category as P. □

Note that the above theorem applies in both the cases where the procedure terminates and where it does not. It can moreover be noted that the 2-polygraph KB(P) is finite if and only if the 2-polygraph P is finite and the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure halts. For implementation purposes, we are thus mostly interested in the cases where the procedures computes a result after a finite amount of time, but for theoretical purposes it is still useful when it runs indefinitely. It is also interesting to remark that if the starting 2-polygraph P is already convergent, we immediately have KB(P) = P.

5.2.3 Example. Consider the 2-polygraph

P = ( * | a, b | bb ⇒ b, aa ⇒ bb )

already encountered in §5.1.10, equipped with the deglex order generated by b > a, which is compatible with P. The two critical branchings are

```
  bbb    aaa
 / \    / \  
|   |  /   |  
bb  bb  bba  abbb
|  |  |   |   
|  |  |  b  ba
|  |  |  b  ab
```

and the dotted arrows are chosen normalization 1-cells. In the first case, the two normal forms are equal, but not in the second one. Since ba > ab, the
Knuth-Bendix procedure adds a rule $ba \Rightarrow ab$, thus obtaining the 2-polygraph

$$P = \langle * \mid a, b \mid bb \Rightarrow b, aa \Rightarrow ba, ba \Rightarrow ab \rangle .$$

Once this new rule added, all the critical pairs are confluent (see §5.1.10), so that the procedure halts on the above convergent 2-polygraph.

**5.2.4 Example.** Consider the following 2-polygraph from [238]

$$P = \langle * \mid a, b, c, d \mid \alpha_0 : ab \Rightarrow a, \beta : da \Rightarrow ac \rangle ,$$

equipped with the deglex order associated to the reverse alphabetic order. The Knuth-Bendix completion does not terminate and gives rise to the infinite convergent presentation

$$P = \langle * \mid a, b, c, d \mid \alpha_n : ac^nb \Rightarrow ac^n, \beta : da \Rightarrow ac \rangle_{n \in \mathbb{N}} .$$

Namely, at the $n$-th step of the procedure the rule $\alpha_{n+1}$ is added by closing the critical branching

It can be remarked that if we take the converse orientation for rule $\beta$

$$P = \langle * \mid a, b, c, d \mid \alpha_0 : ab \Rightarrow a, \beta : ac \Rightarrow da \rangle$$

and equip the polygraph with the deglex order associated to the reverse alphabetic order, the procedure halts immediately since there is no critical branching.

As illustrated in the above example, the procedure depends on many parameters, each of which can have a strong influence on the output of the procedure, i.e., how small the completed polygraph will be, or even the termination of the procedure: the termination order, the order in which critical pairs are studied in step 1, the normal forms $b^v$ and $b^w$ chosen for each critical pair in step 1.

**5.2.5 Detailed description of the procedure.** The procedure can be improved so that it produces reduced polygraphs, by combining it with the procedure presented in §5.1.6. It can also be more efficiently implemented by observing that if a pair is confluent at some stage, then it is still confluent if new rules are added, therefore one can restrict step 1 to consider only critical branchings formed by newly added rules. In a more operational way, close to the presentation given by Huet [189], the resulting improved procedure can be described as follows.
We generalize here slightly the situation of the previous section and suppose given a 2-polygraph $P$ together with a reduction order which is not necessarily compatible with $P$ (the procedure will reorient the rules anyway) and may be partial. The procedure will modify the following variables:

- a set $E$ of equations, i.e., pairs $u = v$ with $u, v \in P_1$, whose initial value is
  \[ E = \{ u = v \mid \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \in P_2 \} \]
- a polygraph $Q$, which is initially the polygraph $P$ where the set of rules has been replaced by the empty set:
  \[ Q_0 = P_0 \quad Q_1 = P_1 \quad Q_2 = \emptyset. \]

The procedure repeats the following steps until we have $E = \emptyset$:

1. pick an equation $u = v$ in $E$ and remove it from $E$,
2. compute normal forms $\hat{u}$ and $\hat{v}$ of $u$ and $v$,
3. if $\hat{u} = \hat{v}$ then go back to step 1,
4. if neither $\hat{u} < \hat{v}$ or $\hat{v} < \hat{u}$ then fail,
5. for each rule $\alpha_i : u_i \Rightarrow v_i$ in $Q_2$ such that $u_i$ rewrites to $u_i'$ by the rule $u \Rightarrow v$
   a. remove $\alpha_i$ from $Q_2$,
   b. add $u_i' = v_i$ to $E$,
7. add $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ to $Q_2$,
8. replace each rule $\alpha_i : u_i \Rightarrow v_i$ of $Q_2$ by $\alpha_i : u_i \Rightarrow \hat{v}_i$, where $\hat{v}_i$ is a normal form of $v_i$ with respect to $Q$ as computed in previous step,
9. in the polygraph $Q$, for each critical branching

\[ \phi \xleftrightarrow{w} \psi \]

where $\phi$ consists of the rule $\alpha$ in context, add $u' = v'$ to $E$.

In the end, i.e., when $E = \emptyset$ is reached after a finite number of steps, the procedure returns the polygraph $Q$. This polygraph is reduced and Tietze equivalent to the original polygraph $P$. It is also possible to reasonably define a notion of outcome of the procedure when it does not terminate, see [189] for details.

### 5.2.6 Example.

Consider the presentation

\[ \langle \ast \mid a, b, c \mid aba \Rightarrow bab, ba \Rightarrow c \rangle \]

obtained from the usual presentation of $B_3^+$, see §A.1.21, by adding a generator $c$. 
Tietze transformations and completion

along with its definition $ba = c$. We consider the deglex order induced by $a > b > c$, which is compatible with the rules. The procedure will

– replace $aba \Rightarrow bab$ by $ac \Rightarrow cb$,
– add the rule $bcb \Rightarrow cc$ coming from the non-confluent critical branching

\[
\begin{array}{c}
bac \\\\
cc \Leftarrow \Rightarrow bcb,
\end{array}
\]

– add the rule $bcc \Rightarrow cca$ coming from the non-confluent critical branching

\[
\begin{array}{c}
bcba \\
cca \Leftarrow \Rightarrow bcc.
\end{array}
\]

We finally obtain the convergent Tietze equivalent presentation

\[
\langle * \mid a, b, c \mid ba \Rightarrow c, ac \Rightarrow cb, bcb \Rightarrow cc, bcc \Rightarrow cca \rangle.
\]

5.2.7 The symmetric group. Let us work out a fundamental and non-trivial example of a presentation of a monoid. Given $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we consider the symmetric group $S_{n+1}$ of bijections on a set with $n + 1$ elements. We claim that it admits a presentation by the 2-polygraph

\[
P = \langle * \mid a_0, \ldots, a_{n-1} \mid \alpha_i, \beta_i, \gamma_{i,j} \rangle
\]

where the 2-generators are

\[
\begin{align*}
\alpha_i & : a_i a_i \Rightarrow 1 \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i < n, \\
\beta_i & : a_{i+1} a_i a_{i+1} \Rightarrow a_i a_{i+1} a_i \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i < n - 1, \\
\gamma_{i,j} & : a_j a_i \Rightarrow a_i a_j \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i < i + 1 < j < n,
\end{align*}
\]

see §A.1.19 for details. Our strategy to show this result is based on the following two steps.

1. We use the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure to compute a convergent 2-polygraph $Q$ presenting the same category as $P$.
2. We use the techniques presented in Section 4.5 to show that $Q$ is a presentation of $S_{n+1}$, by showing that elements of $Q_1^+$ in normal form are in bijection with the elements of $S_{n+1}$.

In order to apply the Knuth-Bendix procedure, we equip the polygraph $P$ with the deglex reduction order $\prec$ induced induced by $a_j > a_i$ whenever $j > i$. 
5.2 The Knuth-Bendix completion procedure

which is compatible with the rules. After a finite amount of steps, the Knuth-Bendix procedure terminates, producing the convergent 2-polygraph $Q$ with the same 0- and 1-generators, and with rules

\[ \alpha_i : a_i a_i \Rightarrow 1 \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i < n, \]
\[ \beta^k_i : a_{i+k} \ldots a_i a_{i+k+1} \Rightarrow a_{i+k}a_{i+k+1} \ldots a_i \quad \text{for } 0 \leq k < n, \]
\[ \gamma_{i,j} : a_j a_i \Rightarrow a_i a_j \quad \text{for } 0 \leq i < i+1 < j < n, \]

where $a_{i+k+1} \ldots a_i$ denotes the sequence of $a_j$, with indices $j$ decreasing one by one between $i+k+1$ and $i$. The reader is advised to compute this by himself or refer to [247] for details.

In an element of $Q^*_1$ in normal form, because of the rules $\alpha_i$ and $\gamma_{i,j}$, if we have a factor $a_i a_j$, then we have $i < j$ or $i = j + 1$. Taking the rules $\beta^k_{i,j}$ in account too, we see that the normal forms are the words of the form

\[ w_0 w_1 w_2 \ldots w_{n-1} \quad \text{with} \quad w_i = a_i a_{i-1} a_{i-2} \ldots a_{i-k_i}. \]

Now, let us show that those normal forms are in bijective correspondence with the elements of $S_{n+1}$, i.e., bijections $f : [n+1] \rightarrow [n+1]$. First, we interpret the generator $a_i$ as the bijection $J_{a_i}K : [n+1] \rightarrow [n+1]$ which exchanges $i$ and $i+1$, and can be depicted as

\[
\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|cccc|cccc|c}
0 & \cdots & i & i+1 & \cdots & \cdots & n \\
\hline
0 & \cdots & i & i+1 & \cdots & \cdots & n \\
\end{array}
\]

To any bijection $f : [n+1] \rightarrow [n+1]$, we associate a 1-cell $u_f \in P^*_1$ defined by induction on $n$. We set $u_f = 1$ whenever $n = 0$. Otherwise, we write $f' : [n] \rightarrow [n]$ for the function obtained from $f$ by “removing” $n$ from the source of $f$ and $f(n)$ from its image, i.e.,

\[ f'(i) = \begin{cases} 
 f(i) & \text{if } f(i) < f(n) \\
 f(i) - 1 & \text{if } f(i) > f(n) 
\end{cases} \]

and define

\[ u_f = u_{f'} a_{n-1} a_{n-2} \ldots a_{f(n)}. \]

For instance, consider the bijection $f : [6] \rightarrow [6]$ such that the images of 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 are respectively 4, 1, 0, 5, 2 and 3. Its associated word $u_f$ is
Finally, using the above description of normal forms, it can be shown that \( u_f \) is a normal form for any bijection \( f \), and that this provides a bijection between normal forms and elements of \( S_{n+1} \). Other examples of such completions for finite groups can be found in [247, 166, 145].

**5.2.8 Generated subcategories.** As an application of the previously developed techniques, consider the following situation. We suppose given a category \( C \) presented by a 2-polygraph \( P \) and a set \( G \) of morphisms of \( C \), whose elements are called *generators*. The category generated by \( G \), denoted \( \langle G \rangle \) is the smallest subcategory of \( C \) which contains the elements of \( G \) as morphisms (and is closed under identities and composition, source and target of morphisms in \( C \)). Our goal here is to compute a presentation of it: we will provide a method to perform this it in the case where \( C \) admits a suitable convergent presentation. Before addressing the general case, we look at the following example: let \( C \) be the monoid \( \mathbb{N}/6\mathbb{N} \), presented by \( \langle \star, a \mid a^6 \Rightarrow 1 \rangle \) and let us compute the category generated by \( G=\{b\} \).

First, note that we can always suppose that each morphism \( f \in G \) admits a 1-generator \( b \in P_1 \) as a representative. Otherwise, given a representative \( u \in P_1 \) of \( f \), we can apply to \( P \) the Tietze transformation which consists in adding a new generator \( b \) together with the rule \( u \Rightarrow b \). In our example, this amounts to considering the presentation \( \langle \star, a, b \mid a^6 \Rightarrow 1, a^2 \Rightarrow b \rangle \).

For this reason, we will suppose in the following that the set \( G \) of generating morphisms is a subset of the 1-generators, i.e., \( G \subseteq P_1 \) (in the above example, we have \( G = \{b\} \)). Moreover, we can suppose that the presentation is convergent and reduced: if it is not the case, we can apply the Knuth-Bendix procedure,
and hope that it succeeds. For instance, with the previous presentation, consider the deglex order with \( a < b \). The critical branchings

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
ba & \overset{aaa}{\longrightarrow} & ab \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
bb & \overset{ba}{\longrightarrow} & ab \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
bb & \overset{baa}{\longrightarrow} & bbb \\
\end{array}
\]

are not confluent, and it can be checked that adding the induced relations \( ba \Rightarrow ab \) and \( b^3 \Rightarrow 1 \) makes the presentation convergent and the rule \( a^3 \Rightarrow 1 \) superfluous. We thus consider the alternative, convergent, presentation \( \star \langle a, b \rangle \)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\star \\
\downarrow \\
\star
\end{array}
\]

of \( \mathbb{N}/3\mathbb{N} \). Using Proposition 5.2.9 below, we can finally deduce that the category \( \langle a^2 \rangle \) admits the presentation

\[
\langle \star \mid a, b \mid a^2 \Rightarrow b, ba \Rightarrow ab, b^3 \Rightarrow 1 \rangle
\]

of \( \mathbb{N}/6\mathbb{N} \). It is thus the monoid \( \mathbb{N}/3\mathbb{N} \), as expected.

**5.2.9 Proposition.** Suppose given a convergent 2-polygraph \( P \) together with a set \( G \subseteq P_1 \) of generators, such that for every rule \( u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P_2 \) with \( u \in G^* \) we have \( v \in G^* \). Then the category generated by \( G \) admits a presentation by the polygraph \( Q \) where

1. \( Q_0 \subseteq P_0 \) consists of the sources and targets of elements of \( G \),
2. \( Q_1 = G \subseteq P_1 \),
3. \( Q_2 \subseteq P_2 \) consists of the rules \( u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P_2 \) such that \( u \in G^* \) and \( v \in G^* \).

**Proof.** Since \( \langle G \rangle \) has to be closed under taking the source and target of morphisms in \( G \), it contains at least \( Q_0 \) as objects, and conversely, any composite of morphisms in \( G \) will have elements of \( Q_0 \) as source and target; \( Q_0 \) is thus precisely the set of 0-cells of \( \langle G \rangle \). The morphisms in \( \langle G \rangle \) contain the equivalence classes \( \overline{a} \) of 1-generators \( a \in G \), and since it is closed under composition and identities, its morphisms are precisely the equivalence classes of morphisms in \( G^* \subseteq P_1^* \). Finally, given \( u, v \in G^* \) such that \( \overline{u} = \overline{v} \), since \( P \) is convergent both \( u \) and \( v \) rewrite to a common element \( w \in P_1^* \), i.e., \( u \Rightarrow w \) and \( v \Rightarrow w \). By induction, the two rewriting paths contain only rules in \( P_1 \) and \( w \in G^* \), thus \( Q_2 \) is sufficient to generate the required equivalence on elements of \( G^* \). \( \square \)
As a bonus, note that the 2-polygraph $Q$ in the previous proposition is necessarily convergent, because $P$ is supposed to be so.

5.2.10 Remark. Suppose that we start with a 2-polygraph $P$ together with a set $G \subseteq P_1$, such that the following property is satisfied: for every rule $u \Rightarrow v$ in $P_2$, $u \in G^*$ implies $v \in G^*$. In order to be able to apply previous proposition, we need to ensure that $P$ is convergent and, if this is not the case, we can apply the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure in order to obtain a convergent polygraph. However, in general, the completed polygraph will not satisfy the property anymore. In order to improve this, the Knuth-Bendix procedure can be modified in order not to produce “bad rules”, i.e., rules of the form $u \Rightarrow v$ with $u \in G^*$ and $v \in P_1^* \setminus G^*$, which prevent the resulting polygraph from satisfying the required property. Namely, the completion procedure adds new rules of the form $u \Rightarrow v$ where both $u$ and $v$ are normal forms. In the case such a rule is “bad”, it can be useful to add instead a rule $u' \Rightarrow v$ where $u' \Rightarrow u$ and $u' \in P_1^* \setminus G^*$.

5.2.11 Exercise. A presentation for the symmetric groups $S_n$ was constructed in §5.2.7. Deduce from it a presentation for the alternating groups $A_3$ and $A_4$, see §A.1.20.

5.3 Universality of finite convergent rewriting

We have seen in Section 4.2 that a finite convergent rewriting system always has decidable word problem. The question of universality of convergent rewriting is the converse question, first asked by Jantzen [202], see also [32, 203, 204, 114]:

Given a category $C$ admitting a finite presentation with decidable word problem, does it always admit a finite convergent presentation?

The answer to this question is negative, but showing this requires more tools than we have at our disposal for now, and will be handled in Chapters 8 and 9. We however study here restricted forms of the question.

5.3.1 Universality of Knuth-Bendix completion. A more restricted variant of the above question consists in wondering whether it is always possible to add or remove relations to a 2-polygraph so that it becomes convergent. Kapur and Narendran [213] have shown that this is not the case, by considering the usual presentation of the braid monoid $B_3^+$, detailed in §A.1.21:

$$P = (\star | a, b | aba \Rightarrow bab).$$ (5.1)
5.3 Universality of finite convergent rewriting

They show that there is no finite convergent presentation of this monoid on the same generators, see Proposition 5.3.3 below. As a consequence, for such a presentation, the Knuth-Bendix procedure will never end whichever reduction order or strategy for considering rules is adopted.

5.3.2 Lemma. The polygraph $P$ has decidable word problem.

Proof. Since the only relation preserves the length of 1-cells, equivalence classes contain 1-cells of the same length and are therefore finite. □

5.3.3 Proposition. There is no finite convergent rewriting system which is Tietze equivalent to the polygraph $P$ by a sequence of Tietze transformations consisting only in adding or removing derivable relations.

Proof. First notice that $abab \not\Rightarrow babba$ is derivable in $P$ since we have

$$abab \Leftarrow ababa \Rightarrow abab.$$ 

More generally, by induction, it can be shown that

$$a^{i+1}b^{j+2}ab \not\Rightarrow bab^{i+2}a^{j+1}$$

for every $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$. Namely, the base case where $i = j = 0$ is handled above, and if we suppose that (5.2) holds for some $i$ and $j$, we have

$$a^{i+2}b^{j+2}ab \not\Rightarrow abab^{i+2}a^{j+1} \Rightarrow bab^{i+3}a^{j+1}$$

and

$$a^{i+1}b^{j+2}ab \Leftarrow a^{i+1}b^{j+1}aba \not\Rightarrow bab^{i+2}a^{j+2},$$

which constitute the induction step on $i$ and $j$ respectively. Another easy remark is that, for $n \in \mathbb{N}$, any word $u$ such that the relation $u \not\Rightarrow b^nab$ (resp. $u \not\Rightarrow bab^n$) is derivable is of the form $u = b^{n-i}aba'$ (resp. $u = a'bab^{n-i}$) for some $i$ with $0 \leq i \leq n$. Writing $\bar{u}$ for the equivalence class of a word $u$ under $\not\Rightarrow$, we thus have

$$b^nab = \{b^{n-i}aba' \mid 0 \leq i \leq n\} \quad bab^n = \{a'bab^{n-i} \mid 0 \leq i \leq n\}.$$ 

We now proceed by contradiction. Suppose given a finite 2-polygraph $Q$ convergent and Tietze equivalent to $P$ by a sequence of Tietze transformations consisting only in adding or removing derivable relations. By Theorem 5.1.7, we can suppose that $Q$ is reduced. Since, $\{aba, bab\}$ is an equivalence class, $Q$ should contain either $aba \Rightarrow bab$ or $bab \Rightarrow aba$. We suppose that we are in the former case, the other one being similar. Writing $l$ for the length of the
longest left-hand side of a rule in $Q$, and
\[ u = a^{t+1}b^{t+2}ab \quad v = bab^{t+2}a^{t+1} \]
we have $u \leftrightarrow v$ and therefore both $u$ and $v$ should reduce to a common word. The only factors in those words whose equivalence class is not a singleton are of the form $b^nab$ or $bab^n$. Therefore, we must have rules of the form $b^nab \Rightarrow w$ or $bab^n \Rightarrow w$. By the preceding remark, the word $w$ has to be of the form $b^{n-i}aba^i$ (resp. $a^ibab^{n-i}$) with $0 < i \leq n$ and therefore is reducible by the rule $aba \Rightarrow bab$, which contradicts the assumption that the rewriting system is reduced.

As an alternative example, it is shown in [203] that the monoid (in fact, group) presented by
\[ \langle *, a, b | abba = 1 \rangle \]
admits no finite convergent presentation on the same generators.

5.3.4 Other Tietze transformations. The result of Proposition 5.3.3 can be restated as follows: there is a finite 2-polygraph $P$ which cannot be transformed into a finite convergent one by using Tietze transformations (T2) only. However, this does not bring a definitive answer to the original question of universality of rewriting raised at the beginning of this section, since it does not rule out the possibility of turning a presentation into a convergent one by using both transformations (T1) and (T2). In fact, this is the case for the presentation (5.1) of $B_3$. Namely, if we use a transformation (T1) to introduce a generator $c$ and a relation $ba = c$, the resulting presentation can be completed into a convergent one, this was already detailed in Example 5.2.6: adding a superfluous generator allows the Knuth-Bendix procedure to produce a convergent presentation of $B_3^n$. Finding a counter-example to the problem of universality in full generality is much more difficult and will be addressed in Chapters 8 and 9.

The situation encountered for $B_3$, where the introduction of a definable generator improves the properties of the presentation is not an “isolated case”. For instance for every natural number $n > 3$, the plactic monoid $P_n$ of type $A$ does not have a finite presentation on the usual generators [226]. However, if we add the column generators, we get a finite presentation [46, 74, 172], see Section B.2 for details on convergent presentations of plactic monoids. Modified Knuth-Bendix completion procedures have been proposed in order to exploit this and allow for adding generators to handle such situations [166].

5.3.5 Conditions for convergence. Since not every monoid admits a presentation by a finite convergent rewriting system, a natural question is whether
there are natural conditions on monoids which ensure that this is the case. Diekert [114] has addressed this question in the case of abelian groups: he derived a whole class of finite string rewriting systems presenting abelian groups with decidable word problem, which are not Tietze equivalent to a finite convergent string rewriting system on the same alphabet. Moreover, he constructed necessary and sufficient conditions for the existence of a convergent presentation for finitely generated abelian groups. However, the question for general monoids was still open at this time and new methods had to be introduced to solve this problem, which concerns intrinsic properties of the presented monoid. In this direction, Squier introduced in [326, 328] homotopical and homological approaches to formulate necessary conditions for a finitely presented monoid to have a finite convergent presentation. The homotopical construction is presented in Chapter 8 and the homological one in Chapter 9.
This chapter presents rewriting techniques for associative algebras. We look here for algorithms turning a given presentation by generators and relations into a rewriting system by orienting the latter, thereby producing linear bases of the presented algebra. In particular, this approach applies to various fundamental decision problems, such as the word problem, ideal membership, or to compute quadratic bases, e.g., Poincaré-Birkhoff-Witt bases, Hilbert series, syzygies of presentations, homology groups and Poincaré series. However, if we require rewriting rules to be compatible with the linear structure, we immediately face the following problem: for any rule $u \rightarrow v$, we also have $-u \rightarrow -v$ and thus

$$v = -u + (u + v) \rightarrow -v + (u + v) = u.$$ 

Therefore, $u \rightarrow v$ implies $v \rightarrow u$ and thus no rewriting system can be terminating. In order to fix this problem, one can either restrict rewriting to be decreasing with respect to a monomial order, as in the non-commutative Gröbner basis approach [39, 44, 289], or consider the structure of linear polygraph introduced in [160] with an appropriate notion of reduction. It is the latter notion that we present in this chapter.

We first introduce linear polygraphs as a framework for linear rewriting in Section 6.1. We then study the confluence properties of linear polygraphs in Section 6.2. Finally, in Section 6.3, we express Gröbner bases and Poincaré-Birkhoff-Witt bases in the setting of linear polygraphs. The polygraphic approach presented in this chapter subsumes many linear rewriting models developed throughout the 20th century. We present a brief historical overview of these works in Section 6.4.

The way to define rewriting in associative algebras depends on the definition considered for the associative algebra structure, either as an internal monoid in the category of vector spaces, or a linear category with a single object [287]. In this chapter, we consider the first point of view, as introduced in [160].
# 6.1 Linear rewriting

In this section, we introduce the notion of rewriting in associative algebras.

## 6.1.1 Associative algebras

Suppose fixed a ground field $k$. An (associative) algebra $(A, m, e)$ consists of a $k$-vector space $A$ together with an operation $m: A \otimes A \rightarrow A$ and an element $e \in A$ such that the operation $m$ is associative and admits $e$ as neutral element. Otherwise said, an algebra is a monoid object (see Example 10.1.5) in the category $\textbf{Vect}$ of vector spaces and linear maps. A morphism of algebras $\phi: (A, m, e) \rightarrow (B, m', e')$ is a linear map $\phi: A \rightarrow B$ which is compatible with operations $m$ and $m'$ and the neutral elements:

$$\phi(m(x, y)) = m'(\phi(x), \phi(y)),$$

for all $x, y$ in $A$. We denote by $\textbf{Alg}$ the category of algebras and their morphisms.

## 6.1.2 Free algebras

Given a set $P_0$, we will denote by $P^f_0$ the free algebra over $P_0$. A monomial of $P^f_0$ is an element of the free monoid $P^*_0$ over $P_0$. The monomials of $P^f_0$ form a linear basis of the algebra $P^f_0$, thus every 0-cell $p$ of $P^f_0$ can be uniquely written as a linear combination

$$p = \sum_{i=1}^{k} \lambda_i u_i$$

of pairwise distinct monomials $u_1, \ldots, u_k$ of $P^f_0$, with $\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_k$ non-zero scalars, called the canonical decomposition of $p$. We define the support of $p$ as the set $\text{supp}(p) = \{u_1, \ldots, u_k\}$.

## 6.1.3 Linear 1-polygraphs

A linear 1-polygraph consists of a set $P_0$, together with a set $P_1$ equipped with two functions $s_0, i_0: P_1 \rightarrow P^f_0$. Such a polygraph is thus characterized by a diagram of sets and functions

$$
\begin{array}{c}
P_0 \\
i_0 \\
\downarrow s_0 \\
P^f_0 \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
P_1 \\
i_0 \\
\downarrow s_0 \\
P^f_0 \\
\end{array}
$$

(6.1)

where $P^f_0$ is the free algebra over a set $P_0$ and $i_0 : P_0 \rightarrow P^f_0$ is the canonical inclusion. We often write

$$\langle x_i | \alpha_i : u_i \rightarrow v_i \rangle$$

for a 1-polygraph with the $x_i$ as elements of $P_0$ and the $\alpha_i$ as elements of $P_1$ with $s_0(\alpha_i) = u_i$ and $i_0(\alpha_i) = v_i$. 
6.1.4 One-dimensional algebras. A 1-algebra is a category internal to \( \text{Alg} \). It thus consists of a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
A_0 & \xleftarrow{s_0} & A_1 \\
\xrightarrow{t_0} & \\
\end{array}
\]

comprising two algebras \( A_0 \) and \( A_1 \), whose elements are respectively called 0- and 1-cells, and two algebra morphisms \( s_0, t_0 : A_1 \to A_0 \) respectively providing the source and target of a 1-cell, together with an algebra morphism \( i : A_0 \to A_1 \) which to every 0-cell \( p \) associates the identity \( i(p) \) on \( p \), and an algebra morphism \( m : A_1 \times_{A_0} A_1 \to A_1 \) which to every pair of composable 1-cells associates their composite, in such a way that composition is associative and admits identities as neutral elements. According to our notations for categories, we set \( m(\phi, \phi') = \phi \ast_0 \phi' \) for any pair \( \phi, \phi' \) of composable 1-cells.

6.1.5 Lemma. Let \( A \) be 1-algebra, then

- for all composable 1-cells \( \phi \) and \( \phi' \) in \( A \),
  \[
  \phi \ast_0 \phi' = \phi - t_0(\phi) + \phi',
  \]
  (6.2)

- every 1-cell \( \phi \) in \( A \) is invertible with inverse
  \[
  \phi^{-1} = s_0(\phi) - \phi + t_0(\phi),
  \]

- the product of two 1-cells \( \phi, \phi' \) in \( A \) decomposes into
  \[
  \phi\phi' = \phi s_0(\phi') + t_0(\phi)\phi' - t_0(\phi)s_0(\phi')
  = s_0(\phi)\phi' + \phi t_0(\phi') - s_0(\phi)t_0(\phi').
  \]
  (6.3)

Proof. For any composable 1-cells \( \phi \) and \( \phi' \) in \( A \), we have
\[
\phi \ast_0 \phi' = (\phi - s_0(\phi') + s_0(\phi')) \ast_0 (t_0(\phi) - t_0(\phi) + \phi').
\]

By linearity of the 0-composition, this implies
\[
\phi \ast_0 \phi' = \phi \ast_0 t_0(\phi) - s_0(\phi') \ast_0 t_0(\phi) + s_0(\phi') \ast_0 \phi'
\]
and by neutrality of identities we get (6.2).

The second condition is deduced from the first one. Let \( \phi \) be a 1-cell in \( A \), we set \( \phi^{-1} = s_0(\phi) - \phi + t_0(\phi) \). We have \( s_0(\phi^{-1}) = t_0(\phi) \) and \( t_0(\phi^{-1}) = s_0(\phi) \). Moreover, from (6.2), we have \( \phi \ast_0 \phi^{-1} = s_0(\phi) \) and \( \phi^{-1} \ast_0 \phi = t_0(\phi) \). We have thus proved that \( \phi^{-1} \) is 0-inverse of \( \phi \).

Let us prove the third condition. Let \( \phi, \phi' \) be 1-cells in \( A \). The product of these two 1-cells in \( A_1 \) decomposes into
\[
\phi \phi' = (\phi \ast_0 t_0(\phi))(s_0(\phi') \ast_0 \phi').
\]
The 0-composition being an algebra morphism, we deduce that
\[ \phi \phi' = \phi s_0(\phi') *_0 t_0(\phi) \phi'. \]
From (6.2), we deduce the first equality in (6.3). The second equality is proved symmetrically. □

6.1.6 Free 1-algebras. A linear 1-polygraph \( P \) generates a free 1-algebra, denoted by \( P^e \), with \( P^e_0 \) as algebra of 0-cells and an algebra \( P^e_1 \) of 1-cells that we now describe. A 1-monomial of \( P^e \) is a triple
\[ uav \]
with \( u, v \in P^e_0 \) monomials and \( \alpha \in P_1 \). We respectively define the source and target of such a monomial by
\[ s_0^e(uav) = us_0(\alpha)v, \quad t_0^e(uav) = ut_0(\alpha)v. \]
We consider \((P^e_0 \otimes kP_1 \otimes P^e_0) \oplus P^e_0\) the free \( P^e_0 \)-bimodule on 1-monomials, and we form the \( P^e_0 \)-bimodule
\[ P^e_1 = (P^e_0 \otimes kP_1 \otimes P^e_0) \oplus P^e_0 / \sim, \]
whose elements are linear combinations of the form
\[ \phi = \sum_i \lambda_i \phi_i + 1_p, \quad (6.5) \]
where the \( \phi_i \) are distinct monomials and \( 1_p \) is a formal identity on a 0-cell \( p \in P^e_0 \), quotiented by the relation \( \sim \) generated by the relations
\[ \phi s_0^e(\psi) + t_0^e(\phi) \psi - t_0^e(\phi) s_0^e(\psi) = s_0^e(\phi) \psi + \phi t_0^e(\psi) - s_0^e(\phi) t_0^e(\psi), \quad (6.6) \]
where \( \phi \) and \( \psi \) range over 1-monomials. The relation (6.6) encodes a linear version of the exchange law. The multiplication of the algebra structure in \( P^e_1 \) precisely associates to two 1-cells \( \phi \) and \( \psi \) the cell defined by either member of (6.6). The source and target maps are the above functions \( s_0^e \) and \( t_0^e \) on monomials, extended by linearity. Given a 1-cell \( \phi \) in \( P^e \), its size is the minimum number of 1-monomials \( \phi_i \) occurring in a decomposition of the form (6.5) of \( \phi \). In particular, a monomial is of size 1.

If we write \( i_1 : P_1 \to P^e_1 \) for the canonical inclusion, sending \( \alpha \in P_1 \) to the monomial (6.4) where \( u \) and \( v \) are the empty words, we obtain a diagram
which “commutes” in the sense that we have $s_0^f \circ i_1 = s_0$ and $i_0^f \circ i_1 = t_0$. In the following, we often simply write respectively $s(\phi)$ and $t(\phi)$ instead of $s_0^f(\phi)$ and $i_0^f(\phi)$ for the source and target of a 1-cell $\phi$.

The free 1-algebra $P^f$ is characterized by the following universal property:

**6.1.7 Lemma.** Suppose given a linear 1-polygraph $P$, a 1-algebra $A$ with $P^f_0$ as underlying algebra of 0-cells and a function $f : P_1 \to A_1$ such that for every 1-generator $\alpha : u \to v$ in $P_1$, we have $f(\alpha) : u \to v$. Then there exists a unique morphism of 1-algebras

$$f^* : P^f \to A$$

such that $f^*(\alpha) = f(\alpha)$ for every $\alpha$ in $P_1$, seen as a 1-cell in $P^f$.

In the sequel, we will use the following decomposition result:

**6.1.8 Lemma.** Let $P$ be a linear 1-polygraph. Then, every non-identity 1-cell $\phi$ of $P^f$ admits a decomposition $\phi = \phi_1 \ast_0 \cdots \ast_k \phi_k$, for some $k \in \mathbb{N}$, where the $\phi_i$ are 1-cells of size 1 in $P^f$.

**Proof.** The 1-cell $\phi$ decomposes into $\phi = \lambda_1 \psi_1 + \ldots + \lambda_k \psi_k + 1_p$. When $k = 1$, the 1-cell $\phi$ is of size 1. Otherwise, for any $i \in \{1, \ldots, k\}$, we set

$$\alpha_i = \lambda_i t(\psi_i) + \ldots + \lambda_1 t(\psi_1), \quad \beta_i = \lambda_i s(\psi_i) + \ldots + \lambda_k s(\psi_k)$$

and $\alpha_0 = \beta_{p+1} = 0$. For each $i \in \{1, \ldots, k\}$, we define the 1-cell of size 1

$$\phi_i = \lambda_i \psi_i + 1_p + 1_{\alpha_i^{-1}} + 1_{\beta_i^{-1}}.$$  

We have $s(\phi_i) = p + \alpha_i^{-1} + \beta_i$ and $t(\phi_i) = p + \alpha_i + \beta_i^{-1}$, so that $\phi_1 \ast_0 \cdots \ast_0 \phi_k$ is a well-defined 1-cell of $P^f$. Following relation (6.2), we deduce

$$\phi_1 \ast_0 \cdots \ast_0 \phi_p = \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i \psi_i + \sum_{i=1}^k (1_p + 1_{\alpha_i^{-1}} + 1_{\beta_i}) - \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} (\lambda_i 1_t(\psi_i) + 1_p + 1_{\alpha_i^{-1}} + 1_{\beta_i}).$$

We conclude thanks to $\alpha_{k-1} = \lambda_{k-1} t(\psi_{k-1}) + \ldots + \lambda_1 t(\psi_1)$, and $\beta_{k+1} = 0$. □

**6.1.9 Presentations and ideals of linear polygraphs.** Let $P$ be a linear 1-polygraph. The algebra presented by $P$ is the quotient algebra $\overline{P} = P^f_0 / P_1$ of the algebra $P^f_0$ by the congruence generated by the 1-generators in $P_1$. We will denote by $\overline{P}$ the image of a 0-cell $p$ of $P^f_0$ through the canonical projection. We say that an algebra $A$ is presented by $P$, or that $P$ is a presentation of $A$, if $A$ is isomorphic to $\overline{P}$. Two linear 1-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ are Tietze equivalent when they present isomorphic algebras: $\overline{P} \cong \overline{Q}$.

We define the boundary of a 1-cell $\phi$ in the free 1-algebra $P^f$, as the 0-cell

$$d(\phi) = t_0(\phi) - s_0(\phi).$$
We denote by $I(P)$ the ideal of the algebra $P_0^0$ generated by the boundaries of the 1-cells in $P_1$. Since the algebra $P_0^0$ is free, the ideal $I(P)$ is consists of all the linear combinations

$$\sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i u_i d(\alpha_i)v_i,$$

where the $u_i, \alpha_i, v_i$ are pairwise distinct 1-monomials of $P^\ell$, and the $\lambda_i$ are non-zero scalars, so that the algebra $P$ is isomorphic to the quotient of $P_0^0$ by $I(P)$.

6.1.10 Example. The Weyl algebra of dimension $n$ over a field $k$ of characteristic zero is the algebra presented by the linear 1-polygraph whose 0-cells are

$$x_1, \ldots, x_n, \partial_1, \ldots, \partial_n$$

and with the following 1-cells:

$$x_i x_j \rightarrow x_j x_i \quad \partial_i \partial_j \rightarrow \partial_j \partial_i \quad \partial_i x_j \rightarrow x_j \partial_i \quad \text{for any } 1 \leq i < j \leq n,$$

$$\partial_i x_i \rightarrow x_i \partial_i + 1 \quad \text{for any } 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

6.1.11 Lemma. Let $P$ be a linear 1-polygraph. For all 0-cells $p$ and $q$ of $P_0^0$, the following two conditions are equivalent:

1. The 0-cell $q - p$ belongs to the ideal $I(P)$.
2. There exists a 1-cell $\phi : p \rightarrow q$ in the free 1-algebra $P^\ell$.

As a consequence, $I(P)$ exactly contains the 0-cells $p$ of $P^\ell$ such that $p = 0$ holds in $P$.

Proof. Suppose that $q - p \in I(P)$, that is,

$$q - p = \sum_{i=0}^k \lambda_i u_i d(\alpha_i)v_i.$$

Then the following 1-cell $\phi$ of $P^\ell$ has source $p$ and target $q$:

$$\phi = \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i u_i \alpha_i v_i + (p - \sum_{i=1}^k \lambda_i u_i s(\alpha_i)v_i).$$

Conversely, let $\phi : p \rightarrow q$ be a 1-cell of $P^\ell$. Using Lemma 6.1.8, we decompose $\phi$ into 1-cells of size 1:

$$\phi = \phi_1 * \cdots * \phi_k \quad \text{with} \quad \phi_i = \lambda_i u_i \alpha_i v_i + h_i.$$
6.1.12 Left-monomiality. A linear 1-polygraph $P$ is left-monomial if, for every 1-generator $\alpha$ of $P_1$, the source of $\alpha$ is a monomial of $P_0^\ell$ that does not belong to $\text{supp}(t(\alpha))$. Note that, from any linear 1-polygraph $P$, one obtains a Tietze equivalent left-monomial linear 1-polygraph as follows. For every 1-generator $\alpha$ in $P_1$, if the boundary $d(\alpha)$ is 0, discard $\alpha$, otherwise, replace $\alpha$ with $\alpha' : u \rightarrow u - \frac{1}{\lambda}d(\alpha)$, where $u$ is any chosen monomial in $\text{supp}(d(\alpha))$ and $\lambda$ is the coefficient of $u$ in $d(\alpha)$.

6.2 Rewriting properties of linear polygraphs

In the linear setting, the definition of a rewriting step is more difficult than in the set-theoretic case, which can be explained as follows. In the set-theoretic case developed in previous chapters, a 1-polygraph $P$ generates two different objects: a free 1-category $P^\ast$ and a free 1-groupoid $P^\top$. In this situation, we define a rewriting step as a size-one 1-cell of $P^\ast$, and their compositions generate all the 1-cells of $P^\ast$. But, in the case of associative algebras, there is no difference between the free 1-category and the free 1-groupoid (see also Theorem 18.3.3), which is the cause of the problem mentioned in the introduction of the present chapter. For this reason, we need adopt a different point of view to define rewriting steps and positive 1-cells. Here, we identify, among the 1-cells of $P^\ell$, a set of positive 1-cells that will play the same role as the 1-cells of $P^\ast$ with respect to $P^\top$ in the case of set-theoretic rewriting. When defining this set, we need to ensure that two conditions are satisfied. Firstly, the set of positive 1-cells should be big enough for every 1-cell of $P^\ell$ to factor into a composite of positive 1-cells and opposites of positive 1-cells, as given by Lemma 6.1.8 and Lemma 6.2.2. Secondly, the set of positive 1-cells should be small enough for preventing a non-trivial 1-cell and its inverse to be positive at the same time, so that the polygraph has a chance to be terminating.

In this section, $P$ denotes a left-monomial linear 1-polygraph.

6.2.1 Rewriting steps and normal forms. A rewriting step of $P$ is a 1-cell $\lambda\phi + 1_p$ of size 1 of the free 1-algebra $P^\ell$ that satisfies the condition
\[ \text{supp}(\lambda s(\phi) + p) = \{s(\phi)\} \sqcup \text{supp}(a), \]
6.2 Rewriting properties of linear polygraphs

that is, such that \( \lambda \neq 0 \) and \( s(\phi) \notin \text{supp}(p) \). A 1-cell of the free 1-algebra \( P_0^\ell \) is called positive if it is a (possibly empty) 0-composite \( \phi_1 \ast_0 \cdots \ast_0 \phi_k \) of rewriting steps of \( P \).

6.2.2 Lemma. Let \( P \) be a left-monomial linear 1-polygraph. Every 1-cell \( \phi \) of size 1 of \( P_0^\ell \) can be decomposed into \( \phi = \psi \ast_0 \chi^- \), where each of \( \psi \) and \( \chi \) is either an identity or a rewriting step of \( P \).

Proof. Write \( \phi = \lambda \phi' + 1_q \), where \( \phi' : u \rightarrow p \) is a 1-monomial of \( P_0^\ell \). Let \( \mu \) be the coefficient of \( u \) in \( q \), possibly zero, so that \( q = \mu u + r \) with \( r \) such that \( \text{supp}(r) \) does not contain \( u \). Put

\[
\psi = (\lambda + \mu)\phi' + 1_r, \quad \text{and} \quad \chi = \lambda 1_p + \mu \phi' + 1_r.
\]

The linearity of the 0-composition of \( P_0^\ell \) gives \( \phi = \psi \ast_0 \chi^- \). Moreover, by hypothesis, \( u \) does not belong to any of \( \text{supp}(p) \) or \( \text{supp}(r) \). As a consequence, each of the 1-cells \( \psi \) and \( \chi \) is either an identity (if \( \lambda + \mu = 0 \) for \( \psi \), if \( \mu = 0 \) for \( \chi \)) or a rewriting step. \( \square \)

6.2.3 Reduced cells and normal forms. A 0-cell \( p \) of \( P_0^\ell \) is called reduced if there is no rewriting step of \( P \) of source \( p \). The reduced 0-cells of \( P_0^\ell \) form a linear subspace of the free algebra \( P_0^\ell \) which we denote by \( \text{Red}(P) \). Because \( P \) is left-monomial, the set of reduced monomials of \( P_0^\ell \), denoted by \( \text{Red}_m(P) \), forms a basis of \( \text{Red}(P) \).

If \( p \) is a 0-cell of \( P_0^\ell \), a normal form of \( p \) is a reduced 0-cell \( q \) of \( P_0^\ell \) such that there exists a positive 1-cell of source \( p \) and target \( q \) in the free 1-algebra \( P_0^\ell \).

6.2.4 Binary relations on free algebras. Assume that \( \vdash \) is a binary relation on the free monoid \( P_0^\ell \) generated by the set \( P_0 \). We say that \( \vdash \) is stable by context if \( u \vdash u' \) implies \( uvw \vdash vu'w \) for all \( u, u', v \) and \( w \) in \( P_0^\ell \). We say that \( \vdash \) is compatible with \( P_0 \) if \( u \vdash v \) holds for every 1-cell \( \alpha : u \rightarrow p \) in \( P_0 \) and every monomial \( v \) in \( \text{supp}(p) \).

The relation \( \vdash \) is extended to the 0-cells of the free algebra \( P_0^\ell \) by setting \( p \vdash q \) when the following two conditions hold:

1. \( \text{supp}(p) \setminus \text{supp}(q) \neq \emptyset \),
2. for every \( v \) in \( \text{supp}(q) \setminus \text{supp}(p) \), there exists \( u \in \text{supp}(p) \setminus \text{supp}(q) \), such that \( u \vdash v \).

As a consequence, if \( u \) is a monomial and \( p \) is a 0-cell of \( P_0^\ell \), then \( u \vdash p \) holds if and only if \( u \vdash v \) holds for every \( v \) in \( \text{supp}(p) \). Hence, we use the same notation for the relation on \( P_0^\ell \) and for its extension to the 0-cells of \( P_0^\ell \).

The relation \( \vdash \) on the 0-cells of \( P_0^\ell \) corresponds to the restriction to finite
subsets of $P^*_0$ of the so-called multiset relation generated by $\triangleright$. We refer to [20, Section 2.5] for the general definition and the main properties of multiset relations, and, in particular, the fact that $\triangleright$ is well-founded on the 0-cells if and only if it is well-founded on the monomials, see also §1.4.1.

6.2.5 The termination order. Define $\succ_P$ as the smallest transitive binary relation on $P^*_0$ that is stable by context and compatible with $P_1$. We say that the polygraph $P$ terminates if the relation $\succ_P$ is well-founded. In that case, the reflexive closure $\succsim_P$ of the relation $\succ_P$ is a well-founded order, called the termination order of $P$ (this relation is also sometimes written $\rightarrow_P$). This notion of termination order on linear polygraphs corresponds to that defined for 2-polygraphs in Section 4.4.

Assume that the polygraph $P$ terminates. Then the minimal 0-cells for the termination order of $P$ are the reduced ones. Moreover, for every non-identity positive 1-cell $p$ of $P^*_1$, we have $s(p) \succ_P t(p)$. This implies that the 1-algebra $P^\ell$ contains no infinite sequence of 0-composable rewriting steps

$$
p_0 \xrightarrow{\phi_1} p_1 \xrightarrow{\phi_2} \cdots \xrightarrow{\phi_{n-1}} a_{n-1} \xrightarrow{\phi_n} a_n \xrightarrow{\phi_{n+1}} \cdots
$$

As a consequence, every 0-cell of $P^*_0$ admits at least one normal form. If $P$ terminates, induction on the well-founded order $\succ_P$ is called noetherian induction.

6.2.6 Monomial orders. A well-founded total order $\preceq$ on the free monoid $P^*_0$ such that the relation $\prec$ is stable by context, is called a monomial order. A classical example of a monomial order is given, for any well-founded total order relation $\succ$ on $P_0$, by the deglex order generated by $\succ$, as already introduced in §4.4.11, which is defined by

1. $u \succ_{\text{deglex}} v$ for all monomials $u$ and $v$ of $P^*_0$ such that $u$ has greater length than $v$, and
2. $uvw \succ_{\text{deglex}} uyw$ for all $x \succ y$ of $P_0$, and monomials $u$, $v$ and $w$ of $P^*_0$ such that $v$ and $w$ have the same length.

Given a monomial order $\preceq$ on $P^*_0$, if $p$ is a non-zero 1-cell of $P^*_0$, the leading monomial of $p$ is the maximum element of $\text{supp}(p)$ with respect to $\preceq$ (or 0 if $\text{supp}(p)$ is empty), it is denoted by $\text{lm}_\preceq(p)$. The leading coefficient of $p$ is the coefficient $\text{lc}_\preceq(p)$ of $\text{lm}_\preceq(p)$ in $p$, and the leading term of $p$ is the element $\text{lt}_\preceq(p) = \text{lc}_\preceq(p)\text{lm}_\preceq(p)$ of $P^\ell_0$. Observe that, for $p$ and $q$ in $P^*_0$, we have $p \prec q$ if and only if either $\text{lm}_\preceq(p) < \text{lm}_\preceq(q)$ or $(\text{lt}_\preceq(p) = \text{lt}_\preceq(q)$ and $p - \text{lt}_\preceq(p) < q - \text{lt}_\preceq(q)$).

If there exists a monomial order $\succ$ on $P^*_0$ that is compatible with $P_1$, then the
polygraph \( P \) terminates: the order \( > \) is well-founded, and \( p >_P q \) implies \( p > q \) for all 0-cells \( p \) and \( q \). However, the converse implication does not hold, as illustrated by the following example.

### 6.2.7 Example.

The following linear 1-polygraph terminates:

\[
P = \langle x, y, z \mid \gamma : xyz \rightarrow x^3 + y^3 + z^3 \rangle.
\]

Indeed, for every monomial \( u \) of \( P^1 \), denote by \( A(u) \) the number of factors \( xyz \) that occur in \( u \), by \( B(u) \) the number of \( y \) that \( u \) contains, and we consider the function \( C(u) = 3A(u) + B(u) \). It is sufficient to check that \( C(uxyzv) \) is strictly greater than each of \( C(ux^3v) \), \( C(uy^3v) \) and \( C(uz^3v) \), for all monomials \( u \) and \( v \) of \( P^1 \), see [160, Example 3.2.4] for details. However, no monomial order on \( P^0 \) is compatible with \( P^1 \), because, for such an order \( > \), one of the monomials \( x^3 \), \( y^3 \), \( z^3 \) is always greater than \( xyz \).

### 6.2.8 Lemma.

If \( P \) is a terminating left-monomial linear 1-polygraph, then, as a vector space, \( P^0 \) admits the decomposition

\[
P^0 = \text{Red}(P) + I(P).
\]

**Proof.** Since the polygraph \( P \) terminates, every 0-cell \( p \) of \( P^0 \) admits at least a normal form \( q \). Let us write \( p = q + (p - q) \), and note that \( q \) belongs to \( \text{Red}(P) \), by hypothesis, and that \( p - q \) is in \( I(P) \), by Lemma 6.1.11. \( \square \)

### 6.2.9 Branchings.

A branching of the polygraph \( P \) is a pair \( (\phi, \psi) \) of positive 1-cells of the free 1-algebra \( P^f \) with the same source, called the source of \( (\phi, \psi) \). We do not distinguish the branchings \( (\phi, \psi) \) and \( (\psi, \phi) \). A branching \( (\phi, \psi) \) of \( P \) is called local if both \( \phi \) and \( \psi \) are rewriting steps of \( P^f \). For a branching \( (\phi, \psi) \) of \( P \) of source \( p \), define the branching

\[
\lambda u(\phi, \psi)v + q = (\lambda u\phi v + q, \lambda u\psi v + q),
\]

of \( P \) of source \( \lambda u\psi v + q \), for all scalar \( \lambda \), monomials \( u \) and \( v \) and 0-cell \( q \) of \( P^f \). Note that, if \( (\phi, \psi) \) is local and \( \lambda \neq 0 \), then \( \lambda u(\phi, \psi) + q \) is also local.

### 6.2.10 Classification of local branchings.

Consider a local branching

\[
(\lambda u_1a_1u_2 + p, \mu v_1b_1v_2 + q)
\]

of \( P \). We have two main possibilities, depending on whether

\[
u_1s(a)u_2 = v_1s(b)v_2
\]

holds or not. Moreover, in the case of equality, there are three different situations, depending on the respective positions of \( s(a) \) and \( s(b) \) in this common
monomial. This analysis leads to a partition of the local branchings of $P$ into the following four families.

1. **Trivial** branchings: $\lambda(\phi, \phi) + q$, for all 1-monomial $\phi : u \rightarrow p$ of $P^\ell$, non-zero scalar $\lambda$, and 0-cell $q$ of $P^\ell$, with $u \notin \text{supp}(q)$.

2. **Additive** branchings: $(\lambda \phi + \mu v + r, \lambda u + \mu \psi + r)$, for all 1-monomials $\phi : u \rightarrow p$ and $\psi : v \rightarrow q$ of $P^\ell$, non-zero scalars $\lambda$ and $\mu$, and 0-cell $r$ of $P^\ell$, with $u \neq v$ and $u, v \notin \text{supp}(r)$.

3. **Multiplicative** branchings: $\lambda(\phi v, u \psi) + r$, for all 1-monomial $\phi : u \rightarrow p$ and $\psi : v \rightarrow q$ of $P^\ell$, non-zero scalar $\lambda$, and 0-cell $r$ of $P^\ell$, with $u, v \neq q$ and $u, v \notin \text{supp}(r)$.

4. **Overlapping** branchings: $\lambda(\phi, \psi) + r$, for all 1-monomial $\phi : u \rightarrow p$ and $\psi : v \rightarrow q$ of $P^\ell$ such that $(\phi, \psi)$ is neither trivial nor multiplicative, every non-zero scalar $\lambda$, and every 0-cell $r$ of $P^\ell$, with $u \neq v$ and $u, v \notin \text{supp}(r)$.

The **critical branchings** of $P$ are the overlapping branchings of $P$ such that $\lambda = 1$ and $r = 0$, and that cannot be factored $(\phi, \psi) = u(\phi', \psi')v$ in a non-trivial way. Note that an overlapping branching has a unique decomposition $\lambda u(\phi, \psi)v + r$, with $(\phi, \psi)$ critical.

### 6.2.11 Confluence.

Assume that $P$ is a left-monomial linear 1-polygraph. A branching $(\phi, \psi)$ of $P$ is called confluent if there exist positive 1-cells $\phi'$ and $\psi'$ of $P^\ell_1$ as in

![Diagram](image)

If $p$ is a 0-cell of $P^\ell_0$, we say that $P$ is confluent at $p$ (resp. locally confluent at $p$, resp. critically confluent) if every branching (resp. local branching, resp. critical branching) of $P$ of source $p$ is confluent. We say that $P$ is confluent (resp. locally confluent, resp. critically confluent) if it is so at every 0-cell of $P^\ell$. We say that $P$ is convergent when it is both terminating and confluent.

When the polygraph $P$ is confluent, then every 0-cell of $P^\ell_0$ admits at most one normal form, and when it is convergent then every 0-cell $p$ of $P^\ell_0$ has a unique normal form, denoted by $\overline{p}$, such that $\overline{p} = \overline{q}$ holds in $P$ if and only if $\overline{p} = \overline{q}$ holds in $P^\ell_0$. As a consequence, if $P$ is a convergent presentation of an algebra $A$, the assignment of each element $p$ of $A$ to the normal form of any representative of $p$ in $P^\ell$, written $\overline{p}$ by extension, defines a section $A \rightarrow P^\ell$ of the canonical projection, where $A$ is seen as a 1-algebra with identity 1-cells.
only. Note that the section is linear, that is \( \lambda p + \mu q = \lambda \tilde{p} + \mu \tilde{q} \), and it preserves the unit, that is \( \tilde{1} = 1 \). However, in general the equality \( \tilde{p} \tilde{q} = \tilde{p} \tilde{q} \) does not hold.

6.2.12 Proposition. Let \( P \) be a terminating left-monomial linear 1-polygraph. The following assertions are equivalent:

1. The polygraph \( P \) is confluent.
2. Every 0-cell of \( I(P) \) admits 0 as a normal form.
3. As a vector space, \( P_0^* \) admits the direct decomposition \( P_0^* = \text{Red}(P) \oplus I(P) \).

Proof. 1 \( \Rightarrow \) 2. By Lemma 6.1.11, if \( p \) is in \( I(P) \), then there exists a 1-cell \( \phi : p \to 0 \) in \( P_1^* \). Since \( P \) is confluent, this implies that \( p \) and 0 have the same normal form, if any. And, since 0 is reduced, this implies that 0 is a normal form of \( p \).

2 \( \Rightarrow \) 3. By Lemma 6.2.8, it is sufficient to prove that \( \text{Red}(P) \cap I(P) \) is reduced to 0. On the one hand, if \( p \) is in \( \text{Red}(P) \), then \( p \) is reduced and, thus, admits itself as only normal form. On the other hand, if \( p \) is in \( I(P) \), then \( p \) admits 0 as a normal form by hypothesis.

3 \( \Rightarrow \) 1. Consider a branching \( (\phi, \psi) \) of \( P \), with \( \phi : p \to q \) and \( \psi : p \to r \). Since \( P \) terminates, each of \( q \) and \( r \) admits at least one normal form, say \( q' \) and \( r' \) respectively. Hence, there exist positive 1-cells \( \phi' : q \to q' \) and \( \psi' : r \to r' \) in \( P_1^* \). Note that the difference \( q'-r' \) is also reduced. Moreover, the 1-cell \( (\phi \cdot_0 \phi')^{-1} \cdot_0 (\psi \cdot_0 \psi') \) has \( q' \) as source and \( r' \) as target. This implies, by Lemma 6.1.11, that \( q'-r' \) also belongs to \( I(P) \). The hypothesis gives \( q'-r' = 0 \), so that \( (\phi, \psi) \) is confluent. \( \square \)

6.2.13 Theorem. Let \( A \) be an algebra and \( P \) a convergent presentation of \( A \). Then the set \( \text{Red}_m(P) \) of reduced monomials of \( P_1^* \) is a linear basis of \( A \). As a consequence, the vector space \( \text{Red}(P) \), equipped with the product defined by \( p \cdot q = \tilde{p} \tilde{q} \), is an algebra that is isomorphic to \( A \).

Proof. If \( P \) is convergent, Proposition 6.2.12 implies that the following sequence of vector spaces is exact:

\[
0 \longrightarrow I(P) \longrightarrow P_0^* \longrightarrow \text{Red}(P) \longrightarrow 0.
\]

Thus, since the algebra \( P_0^*/I(P) \) is isomorphic to \( \tilde{P} \), convergence implies that the set \( \text{Red}_m(P) \) is a linear basis of \( \tilde{P} \). We deduce that \( \text{Red}(P) \) and \( \tilde{P} \) are isomorphic as vector spaces. There remains to transport the product of \( \tilde{P} \) to \( \text{Red}(P) \) to get the result. \( \square \)

6.2.14 Proving confluence. The techniques developed in previous chapters for proving confluence in practical cases can be adapted to the setting of linear
polygraphs. Namely, by a direct adaptation of the proof in the set-theoretic case, see Lemma 2.5.8, one can show an analogous of Newman’s lemma: a terminating left-monomial linear 1-polygraph \( P \) which is locally confluent is confluent. The critical branching lemma, see Lemma 4.3.7, also generalizes to our setting. However, compared to the set-theoretic case, one has to add an extra termination assumption in order to accommodate with the linearity of contexts. The reason is explained in Remark 6.2.18 below, and we defer the proof to next chapter where it will be proved in the more general setting of coherent presentations, see Lemma 7.6.5.

6.2.15 Lemma. Suppose given a terminating left-monomial linear 1-polygraph \( P \). If \( P \) is critically confluent, then \( P \) is locally confluent.

A terminating left-monomial linear 1-polygraph \( P \) in which all critical branchings are confluent is thus necessarily confluent.

6.2.16 Example. Let \( A \) be the algebra presented by the linear 1-polygraph

\[
P = \langle x, y \mid \alpha : xy \rightarrow x^2 \rangle.
\]

This polygraph terminates, because \( xy > x^2 \) holds for the deglex order generated by \( y > x \). This presentation is also confluent, because it has no critical branching, see Lemma 6.2.15. Hence, the set

\[
\text{Red}_m(P) = \{ y^i x^j \mid i, j \in \mathbb{N} \}
\]

is a linear basis of the algebra \( A \). Moreover, the product defined by

\[
y^i x^j \cdot y^k x^l = \begin{cases} y^i x^{i+k+l} & \text{if } j \geq k, \\ y^i x^{i+j+k+l} & \text{if } j \leq k, \end{cases}
\]

turns \( \text{Red}(P) \) into an algebra that is isomorphic to \( A \).

Now, consider the presentation \( Q = \langle x, y \mid \beta : x^2 \rightarrow xy \rangle \) of \( A \). Termination of \( Q \) follows from the deglex order generated by \( x > y \), but \( Q \) is not confluent, since it has a non-confluent critical branching:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\beta x \\
\xi \\
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
x^3 \\
xyx \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \beta \\
\xi \\
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
x^2 y \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\beta y \\
\xi \\
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
xy^2 \\
\end{array}
\]

Thus the 0-cell \( xyx - xy^2 \) is both in \( \text{Red}(Q) \) and \( I(Q) \), proving that the sum \( \text{Red}(Q) + I(Q) \) is not direct. As a consequence, \( \text{Red}_m(Q) \) is not a linear basis of \( A \).
6.2.17 Example. The polygraph of Example 6.1.10 that presents the Weyl algebra of dimension \( n \) is convergent with the following six families of confluent critical branchings:

\[
\begin{align*}
&x_i x_j x_k \rightarrow x_j x_k x_i \quad x_k x_j x_i \rightarrow x_k x_i x_j \\
&\partial_i \partial_j \partial_k \rightarrow \partial_j \partial_k \partial_i \quad \partial_k \partial_j \partial_i \rightarrow \partial_i \partial_k \partial_j \\
&\partial_i x_k x_j \rightarrow x_j x_k \partial_i \quad x_k x_j \partial_i \rightarrow \partial_k x_j \partial_i \\
&\partial_i x_k x_j \rightarrow x_k \partial_i x_j \quad \partial_k x_j \partial_i \rightarrow x_k \partial_j \partial_i \\
&\partial_i x_j x_k + x_j \rightarrow x_i x_j \partial_i + x_j \\
&\partial_i x_j x_i \rightarrow x_j x_i \partial_i \\
&\partial_i \partial_j x_j \rightarrow \partial_j x_j \partial_i \\
&\partial_i x_j \partial_j + \partial_i \rightarrow x_j \partial_i \partial_j + \partial_i
\end{align*}
\]

where \( 1 \leq i < j \leq n \).

6.2.18 Remark. The critical branching lemma for linear 1-polygraphs given in Lemma 6.2.15 differs from its set-theoretic counterpart because it requires the polygraph to be terminating, as noted in [160, Section 4.2]. Indeed, in the set-theoretic case, the termination hypothesis is not required, and non-overlapping branchings are always confluent, independently of critical confluence. The following two counterexamples show that the linear case is different. The termination assumption comes from the fact that the rewriting steps are modulo the vector space structure. We refer the reader to [82] for an explanation of the linear critical pair lemma in terms of modulo rewriting.

6.2.19 Example. On the one hand, some local branchings can be non-confluent without termination, even if critical confluence holds. Indeed, the linear 1-polygraph

\[
\langle x, y, z, t \mid \alpha : xy \rightarrow xz, \beta : zt \rightarrow 2yt \rangle
\]
Linear rewriting

has no critical branching, but it has a non-confluent additive branching:

\[
\begin{align*}
2x\beta & \xrightarrow{4}\ 4at \\
\alpha t + xzt & \xrightarrow{2}\ xzt + x\beta \\
xyt + xzt & = xzt + 2xyt \\
xyt + x\beta & \xrightarrow{3}\ 3yt \\
3at & \xrightarrow{3}\ 6yt \\
\end{align*}
\]

The only positive 1-cells of source \(2xzt\) are alternating 0-compositions of \(2^k x\beta\) and \(2^{k+1} at\), whose targets are all the 0-cells \(2^k xzt\) and \(2^{k+1} xyt\), for \(k \geq 1\). Similarly, the only positive 1-cells of source \(3xyt\) have the 0-cells \(3.2^k xyt\) and \(3.2^k xzt\) as targets, for \(k \geq 0\). The other possible 1-cells of source \(2xzt\) and \(3xyt\) are not positive, like the dotted ones. Here, it is the termination hypothesis that fails, as testified by the infinite sequences of rewriting steps in the previous diagram.

6.2.20 Example. On the other hand, the lack of critical confluence may imply that some non-overlapping local branchings are not confluent, even under the hypothesis of termination. For example, the linear 1-polygraph

\[
\langle x, y, z \mid \alpha : xy \rightarrow 2x, \beta : yz \rightarrow z \rangle
\]

terminates, but it has a non-confluent orthogonal branching:

\[
\begin{align*}
6xz & \xrightarrow{3}\ 3xz \\
\alpha yz + xyz & \xrightarrow{3}\ 3xyz \\
xyz + xyz & = 2xz + xyz \\
xy\beta + xyz & \xrightarrow{2}\ 2xz \\
4xz & \xrightarrow{2}\ 2xz \\
\end{align*}
\]

Here, it is the hypothesis on confluence of critical branchings that is not satisfied, since the critical branching \((\alpha z, x\beta)\) of source \(xyz\) is not confluent. As a consequence, the only 1-cells that would close the confluence diagram of the Peiffer branching are the dotted ones, which are not positive.
6.2.21 Reduced convergent presentations. As with 2-polygraphs in §5.1.6, without loss of generality, we can restrict to the class of reduced linear polygraphs. We say that a left-monomial linear polygraph $P$ is left-reduced if, for every 1-cell $\alpha$ of $P$, the only rewriting step of $P$ of source $s(\alpha)$ is $\alpha$ itself. We say that $P$ is right-reduced if, for every 1-cell $\alpha$ of $P$, the 0-cell $t(\alpha)$ is reduced. We say that $P$ is reduced if it is both left-reduced and right-reduced.

Using the same proof as for 2-polygraphs, Theorem 5.1.7, we prove that every convergent left-monomial linear 1-polygraph is Tietze equivalent to a reduced convergent one.

6.2.22 Completion of presentations. The completion procedure, developed by Buchberger for commutative algebras [65] and by Knuth and Bendix for term rewriting systems [218], see Section 5.2, adapts to terminating left-monomial linear 1-polygraphs as follows, to transform them into convergent ones.

Fix a left-monomial linear 1-polygraph $P$, and a well-founded strict order that is stable by context and compatible with $P_1$. For each non-confluent critical branching $(\phi, \psi)$ of $P$, consider $p = r - s$, where $r$ and $s$ are arbitrary normal forms of $t(\phi)$ and $t(\psi)$, respectively. If $\text{supp}(p)$ contains a maximal element $u$, add the 1-cell $u \to q$ to $P$, where $q$ is defined by $p = \lambda u + q$ and $u \notin \text{supp}(q)$; otherwise, the procedure fails. After the exploration of all the critical branchings of $P$, the procedure, if it has not failed, yields a terminating left-monomial linear 1-polygraph $Q$ such that $P \simeq Q$. If $Q$ is not confluent, restart with $Q$.

The procedure either stops when it reaches a convergent left-monomial linear 1-polygraph, or runs forever.

6.3 Linear bases induced by monomial orders

In this section, we consider linear rewriting systems whose rewriting rules are oriented with respect to a fixed monomial order. Suppose fixed a monomial order on polynomials (a well-founded order suitably compatible with multiplication) and an ideal $I$. A polynomial $p = \sum_i A_i u_i$ in the ideal $I$, can of course be interpreted as a relation

$$\sum_i A_i u_i = 0$$

However, supposing that $u_0$ is the monomial which is the greatest with respect to the fixed order, called the leading monomial, it can also be interpreted as a relation

$$u_0 = \frac{1}{A_0} \sum_{i \neq 0} u_i$$
which, in turn, can be seen as a rewriting rule transforming the left member \( u_0 \) into the right member. A Gröbner basis is then a generating set for the ideal such that the associated rewriting rules forms a confluent rewriting system, and Buchberger’s algorithm to compute a basis can be seen as a form of Knuth-Bendix completion [67].

6.3.1 Gröbner bases. Let \( P_0 \) be a set, and let \( I \) be an ideal of the free algebra \( P^\ell_0 \). A Gröbner basis for \( I \) with respect to a monomial order \( \preceq \) on \( P^*_0 \) is a subset \( G \) of \( I \) such that the ideals of \( P^\ell_0 \) generated by \( \text{lcm}(I) \) and by \( \text{lcm}(G) \) coincide.

6.3.2 Proposition. If \( P \) is a convergent left-monomial linear 1-polygraph, and \( \preceq \) is a monomial order on \( P^*_0 \) that is compatible with \( P^1_1 \), then the set \( d(P_1) = \{ d(\alpha) \mid \alpha \in P_1 \} \) of boundaries of 1-generators of \( P \) is a Gröbner basis for \( (I(P), \preceq) \).

Conversely, let \( P_0 \) be a set, let \( \preceq \) be a monomial order on \( P^\ell_0 \), let \( I \) be an ideal of \( P^\ell_0 \) and \( G \) be a subset of \( I \). Define \( P(G) \) the linear 1-polygraph whose set of 0-cells is \( P_0 \) and having one 1-cell

\[
\alpha_p : \text{lcm}(p) \rightarrow \text{lcm}(p) - \frac{1}{\text{lcm}(p)} p,
\]

for each \( p \) in \( G \). If \( G \) is a Gröbner basis for \( (I, \preceq) \), then \( P(G) \) is a convergent left-monomial presentation of the algebra \( P^\ell \) such that \( I(P(G)) = I \), and \( \preceq \) is compatible with \( P(G)_1 \).

Proof. If the polygraph \( P \) is convergent, then \( d(\alpha) \) is in \( I(P) \) for every 1-cell \( \alpha \) of \( P \). Since \( \preceq \) is compatible with \( P_1 \), we have \( \text{lcm}(d(\alpha)) = s(\alpha) \) for every 1-cell \( \alpha \) of \( P \). Now, if \( p \) is in \( I(P) \), it is a linear combination

\[
p = \sum_i \lambda_i u_i d(\alpha_i) v_i
\]

of 1-cells \( u_i d(\alpha_i) v_i \), where \( \alpha_i \) is a 1-cell of \( P \), and \( u_i \) and \( v_i \) are monomials of \( P^\ell_0 \). This implies that

\[
\text{lcm}(p) = u_i s(\alpha_i) v_i = u_i \text{lcm}(d(\alpha_i)) v_i
\]

hold for some \( i \). Thus \( d(P_1) \) is a Gröbner basis for \( (I(P), \preceq) \).

Conversely, assume that \( G \) is a Gröbner basis for \( (I, \preceq) \). By definition, \( \preceq \) is compatible with \( P(G)_1 \), hence \( P(G) \) terminates, and \( I(P(G)) = I \) holds, so that the algebra presented by \( P(G) \) is indeed isomorphic to \( P^\ell \) mod \( I \). Moreover, the reduced monomials of \( P(G)^\ell \) are the monomials of \( P^\ell \) that cannot be decomposed as \( u \text{lcm}(a)v \) with \( a \) in \( G \), and \( u \) and \( v \) monomials of \( P^\ell \). Thus, if a
6.3 Linear bases induced by monomial orders

reduced 0-cell \( p \) of \( P(G) \) is in \( I \), its leading monomial must be 0, because \( G \) is a Gröbner basis of \((I, \prec)\). As a consequence of Proposition 6.2.12, we get that \( P(G) \) is confluent. □

By previous proposition and the critical branching lemma (Lemma 6.2.15), the notion of Gröbner basis can be related to confluence as follows. This is sometimes called Buchberger’s criterion for determining whether a set of polynomials forms a Gröbner basis with respect to a fixed monomial order.

6.3.3 Proposition. Let \( P_0 \) be a set, \( \prec \) be a monomial order on \( P^*_0 \), and \( I \) be an ideal of the free algebra \( P^*_0 \). A subset \( G \) of \( I \) is a Gröbner basis for \((I, \prec)\) if and only if the linear 1-polygraph \( \text{lm}(G) \) of Proposition 6.3.2 is critically confluent.

6.3.4 Polygraphs for graded associative algebras. Let denote by \( \text{gVect} \) the category of (non-negatively) graded vector spaces over \( k \) and graded linear maps of degree 0. Recall that a graded vector space \( V \) admits a decomposition \( V = \bigoplus_{i \in \mathbb{N}} V^{(i)} \), and the elements of \( V^{(i)} \) are said to be homogeneous of degree \( i \). A graded associative algebra is an internal monoid in the category \( \text{gVect} \). Following [160, Section 2.2] we can define a notion of polygraph, called graded linear polygraphs, for presentation of graded algebras. Let us expand this notion in low dimensions.

A graded linear 1-polygraph is a data \((P_0, P_1)\) made of

– a graded linear 0-polygraph \( P_0 \), that is a graded set \( P_0 = \bigsqcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} P_0^{(i)} \),
– a graded cellular extension \( P_1 \) of the free graded algebra \( P^*_0 \) generated by \( P_0 \), meaning that \( P_1 = \bigsqcup_{i \in \mathbb{N}} P_1^{(i)} \) and that the source and target of each 1-generator in \( P_1^{(i)} \) are homogeneous of degree \( i \).

If \( N \geq 2 \), a 1-polygraph \( P \) is called \( N \)-homogeneous if \( P_0 \) is concentrated in degree 1 and \( P_1 \) is concentrated in degree \( N \). We say quadratic and cubical instead of 2-homogeneous and 3-homogeneous, respectively.

An algebra \( A \) is called \( N \)-homogeneous if it admits a presentation by an \( N \)-homogeneous graded linear 1-polygraph.

6.3.5 Poincaré-Birkhoff-Witt bases. Let \( A \) be an \( N \)-homogeneous algebra, for \( N \geq 2 \), let \( P_0 \) be a generating set of \( A \), concentrated in degree 1, and let \( \prec \) be a monomial order on \( P^*_0 \). A Poincaré-Birkhoff-Witt (PBW) basis for \((A, P_0, \prec)\) is a subset \( B \) of \( P^*_0 \) satisfying the following conditions:

1. \( B \) is a linear basis of \( A \), with \( [u]_B \) denoting the decomposition of an element \( u \) of \( P^*_0 \) in the basis \( B \).
2. For all $u$ and $v$ in $\mathcal{B}$, we have $uv \succ [uv]_{\mathcal{B}}$.

3. An element $u$ of $P_0'$ belongs to $\mathcal{B}$ if and only if for every decomposition $u = vu'w$ of $u$ in $P_0'$ such that $u'$ has degree $N$, then $u'$ is in $\mathcal{B}$.

### 6.3.6 Proposition

If $P$ is a convergent left-monomial $N$-homogeneous presentation of an algebra $A$, and $\prec$ is a monomial order on $P_0'$ that is compatible with $P_1$, then the set $\text{Red}_m(P)$ of reduced monomials of $P_0'$ is a PBW basis for $(A, P_0, \prec)$.

Conversely, let $A$ be an $N$-homogeneous algebra, let $P_0$ be a generating set of $A$ that is concentrated in degree 1, let $\prec$ a monomial order on $P_0'$, and $\mathcal{B}$ be a PBW basis of $(A, P_0, \prec)$. Define $P(\mathcal{B})$ as the linear 1-polygraph with 0-cells $P_0$ and with one 1-cell

$$\alpha_{u,v} : uv \rightarrow [uv]_{\mathcal{B}}$$

for all $u$ and $v$ in $\mathcal{B}$ such that $uv$ has degree $N$ and $uv \notin [uv]_{\mathcal{B}}$. Then $P(\mathcal{B})$ is a convergent left-monomial $N$-homogeneous presentation of $A$, such that $\text{Red}_m(P(\mathcal{B})) = \mathcal{B}$, and $\prec$ is compatible with $P(\mathcal{B})_1$.

**Proof.** If $P$ is a convergent left-monomial presentation of $A$, Theorem 6.2.13 implies that the set $\text{Red}_m(P)$ of reduced monomials of $P_0'$ is a linear basis of $A$. The fact that $\prec$ is compatible with $P_1$ implies Axiom 2 of a PBW basis, and Axiom 3 comes from the definition of a reduced monomial for an $N$-homogeneous left-monomial linear 1-polygraph.

Conversely, assume that $\mathcal{B}$ is a PBW basis for $(A, P_0, \prec)$. By definition, $P(\mathcal{B})$ is $N$-homogeneous and left-monomial, and Axiom 2 of a PBW basis implies $\text{Red}_m(P(\mathcal{B})) = \mathcal{B}$. Termination of $P(\mathcal{B})$ is given by Axiom 2 of a PBW basis, because $\prec$ is well-founded. By Proposition 6.2.12, it is sufficient to prove that $\text{Red}(P(\mathcal{B})) \cap I(P(\mathcal{B})) = 0$ to get confluence: on the one hand, a reduced 0-cell $a$ of $\text{Red}(P(\mathcal{B}))$ is a linear combination of 0-cells of $\mathcal{B}$, so that $a$ is its only normal form; and, on the other hand, if $a$ belongs to $I(P(\mathcal{B}))$, then $a$ admits 0 as a normal form by Lemma 6.1.11. Finally, the algebra presented by $P(\mathcal{B})$ is isomorphic to $\text{Red}(P(\mathcal{B}))$, that is to $\mathcal{B}$, hence to $A$, by Theorem 6.2.13 and because $\mathcal{B}$ is a linear basis of $A$. \□

### 6.4 Historical account of linear rewriting

Gröbner basis theory for ideals in commutative polynomial rings was introduced by Buchberger in [65]. He defined the notion of $S$-polynomial to describe the obstructions to local confluence and gave an algorithm for computation of Gröbner bases, [65, 66, 69], see also [67] for an historical account. In the
6.4 Historical account of linear rewriting

commutative setting, any ideal of a polynomial ring has a finite Gröbner basis. Indeed, the Buchberger algorithm on a finite family of generators of an ideal always terminates and returns a Gröbner basis of the ideal. More recently, refined efficient algorithms have been proposed to achieve this task, such as Faugère’s $F_4$ and $F_5$ algorithms [125, 126].

Shirshov introduced in [325] an algorithm to compute a linear basis of a Lie algebra defined by generators and relations. He used the notion of composition of elements in a free Lie algebra, that corresponds to the notion of $S$-polynomial in the work of Buchberger. He gave an algorithm to compute bases in free algebras having the computational properties of the Gröbner bases. He proved that irreducible elements for such a basis forms a linear basis of the Lie algebra. This result is called now the Composition Lemma for Lie algebras [45].

The Gröbner basis theory has been developed for other types of algebras, such as associative algebras by Bokut in [44] and by Bergman in [39]. They prove Newman’s Lemma for rewriting systems in free associative algebras compatible with a monomial order stating that local confluence and confluence are equivalent properties. This result was called Composition Lemma by Bokut and Diamond Lemma for ring theory by Bergman, see also [289, 347]. In general, the Buchberger algorithm does not terminate for ideals in a non-commutative multivariate polynomial ring. Indeed, its termination would give a decision procedure of the undecidable word problem. Even if the ideal is finitely generated it may not have a finite Gröbner basis. However, an infinite Gröbner basis can be computed over a ground field, [289, 348]. The Buchberger algorithm is the analogue of the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure in a linear setting. Several frameworks unify Buchberger and Knuth-Bendix algorithms, in particular a Gröbner basis corresponds to a confluent and terminating presentation of an algebra, see [68].

Finally, note that ideas in the style of Gröbner’s basis approach appear in many independent works throughout the 20th century. Günter has defined a similar notion in 1913 [311]. Janet [199, 200, 201] and Thomas [343] developed the notion of involutive bases that are particular cases of Gröbner bases in the context of partial differential algebra. We refer to [197, 198] for an historical account on involutive bases and their applications to algebraic analysis of linear partial differential systems. Hironaka in [183] and Grauert in [150] compute bases of ideals in rings of power series having analogous properties to Gröbner bases but without a constructive method for computing such bases. In [94], Cohn gave a method to decide the word problem by a normal form algorithm based on a confluence property. Much more recently, Gröbner basis theory was developed in various non-commutative contexts such as Weyl algebras, see [318], or operads [116, 269].
PART TWO

COHERENT PRESENTATIONS
Coherence by convergence

To any presentation of a category $C$ by a 2-polygraph $P$ corresponds a free $(2, 1)$-category $P^\top_2$, as defined in §2.5.1. An extended presentation then consists in a choice of a family $P_3$ of 3-generators between some pairs of parallel 2-cells in $P^\top_2$. Since the category $C$ is already entirely determined by the presentation \((P_0 \mid P_1 \mid P_2)\), we are mostly interested in the case where the congruence generated by $P_3$ is the full relation among pairs of parallel 2-cells in $P^\top_2$, that is, when each 2-sphere is filled with a 3-cell generated by $P_3$. An extended presentation satisfying this property is said to be coherent.

Any given presentation $P$ of a category can be extended into a coherent one by taking all parallel pairs of 2-cells as 3-generators, but we are mainly interested in “small” coherent presentations, which are amenable to computations. The key result in building small coherent presentations is Theorem 7.3.5, a refined version of Newman’s lemma, called here Squier’s homotopical theorem. It states that a convergent presentation $P$ can be extended to a coherent one by taking for $P_3$ a family of confluence diagrams of critical branchings. As a consequence, if $P$ is finite convergent, then $P_3$ can be chosen finite.

We then introduce a notion of Tietze transformation preserving the coherence property and the presented category. This, combined with Squier’s homotopical theorem, suggests the following general procedure to build a coherent extension of a given – not necessarily convergent – presentation $P$:

1. Use the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure to compute a convergent 2-polygraph $Q$ presenting the same category as $P$.
2. Use Squier’s homotopical theorem to extend $Q$ into a coherent presentation $\tilde{Q}$.
3. Use Tietze transformations to reduce $\tilde{Q}$ into a smaller coherent presentation $\tilde{P}$, which extends $P$.

The first two steps can be performed at once, using what we call a coherent
Coherence by convergence

completion procedure, and a transfer theorem (Theorem 7.1.6), providing an immediate description of the coherent extension of $P$ from the one of $Q$.

Coherent presentations will prove essential for computing, in low dimensions, homotopical and homological invariants of presented categories introduced in Chapter 8 and Chapter 9. Moreover, we shall see in Chapter 23 how they extend in any dimension to polygraphic resolutions (Chapter 19) of the presented category. In the language of homotopy theory, these resolutions are cofibrant replacements of a category by a free $(\omega, 1)$-category. Note also that the rewriting method for calculating coherent presentations can be applied in many algebraic contexts, as illustrated in Appendix B.

This chapter is organized as follows. In Section 7.1, we introduce the notion of acyclic extension of a 2-category, which consists of the additional data of 3-generators “filling all the spheres”. This leads in Section 7.2 to the notion of coherent presentation of a category $C$, that is, a 2-polygraph $P$ presenting $C$ together with an acyclic extension of the free $(2, 1)$-category on $P$. Coherent presentations are then constructed from convergent ones in Section 7.3. The appropriate notion of Tietze transformation between coherent presentations is studied in Section 7.4: this allows us in Section 7.5 to formulate a coherent variant of the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure, but also a reduction procedure, which can be used to obtain smaller coherent presentations. Finally, in Section 7.6, we study coherent presentations of algebras, thereby defining the proper notion of coherent extension for the linear polygraphs of Chapter 6.

7.1 Acyclic extensions

7.1.1 Cellular extension of a 2-category. A 2-sphere in a 2-category $C$ is a pair $(\alpha, \beta)$ of parallel 2-cells in $C$, i.e., satisfying $s_1(\alpha) = s_1(\beta)$ and $t_1(\alpha) = t_1(\beta)$. A cellular extension of $C$ is a set $X$ equipped with two maps $s_2, t_2 : X \to C_2$ such that, for every $A$ in $X$, the pair $(s_2(A), t_2(A))$ is a 2-sphere of $C$. More generally, we also call any such element $A$ in $X$ a 2-sphere of $C$.

Every 2-category $C$ has two canonical cellular extensions:

- the empty extension,
- the full one that contains all the 2-spheres of $C$, denoted by $\text{Sph}(C)$.

7.1.2 Quotient 2-category. A congruence on a 2-category $C$ is an equivalence relation $\equiv$ on the 2-cells of $C$ such that

- given $\phi : u \Rightarrow v$ and $\phi' : u' \Rightarrow v'$ in $C_2$, $\phi \equiv \phi'$ implies $u = u'$ and $v = v'$,
7.1 Acyclic extensions

- given 1-cells and 2-cells of $C$ as in the following diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \xrightarrow{u} x' \xleftarrow{\phi} y' \xrightarrow{v} y \\
\end{array}
\]

if $\psi \approx \psi'$, then

\[
u \ast_0 (\phi_1 \ast_1 \psi \ast_1 \phi_2) \ast_0 v \approx u \ast_0 (\phi_1 \ast_1 \psi' \ast_1 \phi_2) \ast_0 v.
\]

We define the quotient 2-category of a 2-category $C$ by a congruence $\approx$ on $C$ as the 2-category, denoted by $C/\approx$, whose 0-cells and 1-cells are those of $C$, and whose 2-cells are the equivalence classes of 2-cells of $C$ modulo the congruence $\approx$, composition and identities being induced by those of $C$.

Given a cellular extension $X$ of $C$, the congruence generated by $X$, denoted by $\approx_X$, is defined as the smallest congruence on $C$ such that $\phi \approx_X \psi$, for every 2-sphere $(\phi, \psi)$ in $X$. That is, $\approx_X$ is the smallest equivalence relation on the parallel 2-cells compatible with all the compositions of $C$ and relating $\phi$ and $\psi$, for every $(\phi, \psi)$ in $X$.

7.1.3 Acyclic extension. We say that a cellular extension $X$ of a 2-category $C$ is acyclic, or equivalently that $C$ is $X$-acyclic, if $\phi \approx_X \psi$ holds for every 2-sphere $(\phi, \psi)$ of $C$. This is equivalent to say that the equality $\bar{\phi} = \bar{\psi}$ holds in the quotient 2-category $C/\approx_X$, where $\bar{\phi}$ and $\bar{\psi}$ denote the images of the 2-cells under the canonical projection $C \to C/\approx_X$. For instance, any 2-category $C$ is $\text{Sph}(C)$-acyclic.

7.1.4 Remark. A congruence on a free $(2, 1)$-category is called a homotopy relation by Squier in [328]. He noticed that these relations are not really the same as usual homotopies in the sense of algebraic topology and justified the terminology by saying that, for a homotopy relation generated by a set of 2-spheres, two “homotopic” paths can be transformed into one another by a finite sequence of elementary transformation steps. In [328], the relation $\approx_X$ is called an homotopy relation generated by $X$. The terminology homotopy basis for an acyclic cellular extension was introduced in [220, 147] and since then has been widely used by various authors. Note also that Squier did not formulate his results on the properties of homotopy relations in the categorical language we use in the present chapter. Instead of $(2, 1)$-categories, he considered 2-dimensional cellular complexes defined by directed graphs with inverses and whose 2-cells correspond to the exchange relation between compositions with respect to 0- and 1-composition. The categorical formulation of Squier’s constructions
presented here was introduced in [161, 165]. Another formulation, using the structure of monoidal category, is given in [233].

7.1.5 Transfer theorem for acyclic extensions. Given two presentations $P$ and $Q$ of a 1-category $C$, by Lemma 2.5.3, there exist two 2-functors

$$f : P^\top \to Q^\top \quad \text{and} \quad g : Q^\top \to P^\top$$

and, for every 1-cell $v$ in $Q^\top$, there exists a 2-cell $\psi_v : fg(v) \Rightarrow v$ in $Q^\top$ that satisfy the conditions given in Lemma 2.5.3. Let us define a cellular extension $X_Q$ of the $(2, 1)$-category $Q^\top$ that contains one 3-generator

$$\begin{array}{c}
fg(u) \downarrow \downarrow A\alpha \\
fg(u) \quad f\alpha \\
v \quad u
\end{array}$$

(7.1)

for every 2-generator $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ of $Q$. Furthermore, given a cellular extension $X$ of the $(2, 1)$-category $P^\top$, we will denote by $f(X)$ the cellular extension of $Q^\top$ that contains one 3-generator

$$\begin{array}{c}
f(u) \downarrow \downarrow f(A) \\
\quad f(A) \\
f(v)
\end{array}$$

for every 3-generator $A : \phi \Rightarrow \phi'$ of $X$. Using these notations, we can formulate the following transfer result among acyclic extensions of presentations of a given category.

7.1.6 Theorem. Let $P$ and $Q$ be two presentations of the same category. If $X$ is an acyclic cellular extension of the $(2, 1)$-category $P^\top$, then the cellular extension $f(X) \cup X_Q$ is an acyclic cellular extension of the $(2, 1)$-category $Q^\top$.

The proof consists in extending the notation on 3-generators $A_\alpha$ of (7.1), where $\alpha$ is a 2-generator of $Q$, in a functorial way, to define a 3-cell of the shape

$$\begin{array}{c}
fg(\phi) \downarrow \downarrow f(A) \\
fg(u) \quad f(\phi) \\
v \quad f(\phi')
\end{array}$$

for any 2-cell $\phi$ in $Q^\top$. Then, given two parallel 2-cells $\phi, \phi' : u \Rightarrow v$ of $Q^\top$, one
proves that $\phi \approx f(X) : X \rightarrow \phi'$ by constructing a 3-cell with source $\phi$ and target $\phi'$ obtained by compositions along 0-cells, 1-cells and 2-cells of the 3-cells $A_\alpha$.

This construction is based on the notion of free $(3, 1)$-category generated by a cellular extension, which is the aim of the following section. The full proof of Theorem 7.1.6 will be given in Section 7.2.5.

7.2 Coherent presentations

7.2.1 $(3, 1)$-polygraphs. A $(3, 1)$-polygraph is a pair $(P, P_3)$ consisting of a 2-polygraph $P$ and a cellular extension $P_3$ of the free $(2, 1)$-category $P^\uparrow$. It thus consists of a diagram of sets and functions

![Diagram of sets and functions](image)

together with the compositions and identities of the underlying $(2, 1)$-category

whose source and target maps $s_i$ and $t_i$ satisfy the globular relations

$s_i^* \circ s_{i+1} = s_i^* \circ t_{i+1}$ and $t_i^* \circ s_{i+1} = t_i^* \circ t_{i+1}$

for every $i \in \{0, 1\}$. The elements of the cellular extension $P_3$ are called the 3-generators of the $(3, 1)$-polygraph $(P, P_3)$. We write $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ for a 3-generator $A$ in $P_3$ such that $s_2(A) = \phi$ and $t_2(A) = \psi$, often pictured as

![Diagram of 3-generator](image)

and, more generally, we will call $A$ a 3-generator of the cellular extension. A $(3, 1)$-polygraph $P$ will be also denoted by

$( P_0 \mid P_1 \mid P_2 \mid P_3 )$

and we will write $P_{\leq k}$ for its underlying $k$-polygraph for $0 \leq k \leq 2$. Morphisms of $(3, 1)$-polygraphs are defined as for 3-polygraphs (§10.1.8) and we denote by $\text{Pol}_{3, 1}$ the resulting category.
7.2.2 Example. As a simple example, consider the $(3, 1)$-polygraph with only one generator in each dimension:

\[
\langle \star | a | \alpha : aa \Rightarrow a | A : aa * \alpha \Rightarrow aa * \alpha \rangle.
\]

The 3-generator $A$ can be represented by the diagram

In Section 7.3, Example 7.3.6, we use a rewriting argument to show that the 3-generator $A$ forms an acyclic extension of the free $(2, 1)$-category generated by $\langle \star | a | \alpha \rangle$.

7.2.3 Free $(3, 1)$-category. The definition of 3-category is adapted from the one of 2-category by replacing the hom-categories and the composition functors by hom-2-categories and composition 2-functors. We refer the reader to Chapter 14 for the complete definition of strict $n$-categories for all $n \geq 0$. In a 3-category, the 3-cells can be composed in three different ways:

- by $\ast_0$, along their 0-dimensional boundary:

- by $\ast_1$, along their 1-dimensional boundary:
7.2 Coherent presentations

– by \( *_2 \), along their 2-dimensional boundary:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{& A \ar@{=>}[rd]_B \ar@{=>}[ld] & \\
X & & Y}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{equation}

A \((3, 1)\)-category is a 3-category whose 2-cells are invertible with respect to the composition \( *_1 \) and whose 3-cells are invertible with respect to the composition \( *_2 \) (which implies their invertibility with respect to \( *_1 \)).

The free \((3, 1)\)-category over a \((3, 1)\)-polygraph \( P \) is the \((3, 1)\)-category, denoted by \( P^* \), or \( P^* \subseteq (P) \) in some contexts, whose

– underlying 2-category is the free \((2, 1)\)-category \( P^* \subseteq 2 \),

– set \( P^*_3 \) of 3-cells consists of all formal compositions with respect to \( *_0, *_1 \) and \( *_2 \) of 3-generators of \( P \), of their inverses, and of identities of 2-cells, considered up to associativity, identity, exchange and inverse relations.

This construction will be detailed in arbitrary dimension \( n \geq 1 \) in Section 15.3.

We denote by \( A^- \) the inverse with respect to \( *_2 \) of a 3-cell \( A \); it satisfies

\[
A^- *_2 A = 1_{s_2(A)}
\]

and \( A^- *_2 A = 1_{t_2(A)} \). Note that if a 3-cell \( A \) is invertible with respect to the composition \( *_2 \), and its 2-source and 2-target are invertible, then it is invertible with respect the composition \( *_1 \), with inverse given by

\[
t_2(A)^- *_1 A^- *_1 s_2(A)^-.
\]

Every 3-cell \( A \) of the \((3, 1)\)-category \( P^* \) of size \( k \geq 1 \) has a decomposition

\[
A = c_1[A^1_0] *_2 \cdots *_2 c_k[A^k_0],
\]

with \( \epsilon_1, \ldots, \epsilon_k \in \{ -, + \} \), and \( A_1, \ldots, A_k \) are 3-generators of \( P \), where for every \( 1 \leq i \leq k \), \( c_i[A^i_0] \) denotes a composition of the form

\[
f_j *_2 (f_1 *_0 A^j_0 *_0 g_1) *_2 g_2,
\]

where \( f_j, g_j \) are \( j \)-cells for \( j = 1, 2 \), and where \( A^+_i \) is equal to \( A_i \)

7.2.4 Coherent presentations. A \((3, 1)\)-polygraph \( P \) is coherent when \( P^*_3 \) is an acyclic extension of the free \((2, 1)\)-category \( P^*_\subseteq 2 \). This amounts to requiring that for every pair of parallel 2-cells \( \phi \) and \( \psi \) in \( P^*_3 \), there is a 3-cell \( F : \phi \Rightarrow \psi \) in \( P^*_3 \).

An extended presentation of a 1-category \( C \) is a \((3, 1)\)-polygraph \( P \) whose underlying 2-polygraph \( P^*_\subseteq 2 \) is a presentation of \( C \). A coherent presentation of \( C \) is an extended presentation \( P \) of \( C \) which is coherent.
7.2.5 Proof of Theorem 7.1.6. Let us denote by $Y$ the cellular extension $f(X) \sqcup X_Q$. We construct, for every 2-cell $\phi : u \Rightarrow v$ of $Q^\top$, a 3-cell $A_\phi$ of the free $(3, 1)$-category $Q^\top(Y)$ with the following shape:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{
& fg(v) \ar[dl]_{\phi} \ar[dr]^{A_\phi} & \\
fg(u) \ar[rr]_{\phi_u} & & v
}
\end{array}
$$

by extending the notation $A_\alpha$, where $\alpha$ is a 2-generator of $Q$, in a functorial way, according to the following formulas:

$$
A_{1_\nu} = 1_{\phi_\nu}, \quad A_{\phi \circ \phi'} = A_\phi \circ A_{\phi'}, \quad A_{\phi \circ \phi'} = f(g(\phi)) \circ A_\phi \circ A_{\phi'}
$$

$$
A_{\phi \circ \phi'} = (f(g(\phi)) \circ A_\phi \circ A_{\phi'})
$$

We prove that the 3-cells $A_\phi$ are well-defined, i.e., their definition is compatible with the relations on 2-cells, such as the exchange relation. Indeed, whenever the composition of the 2-cells $\phi_1, \phi_2, \phi'_1$ and $\phi'_2$ are defined in $Q^\top$, we have

$$
A_{\phi_1 \circ \phi_2 \circ \phi'_1 \circ \phi'_2} = ((f(g(\phi_1)) \circ A_\phi_1 \circ A_{\phi'_1}) \circ (A_{\phi_2} \circ A_{\phi'_2}))
$$

$$
= ((f(g(\phi_1)) \circ A_{\phi_1} \circ A_{\phi'_1}) \circ (A_{\phi_2} \circ A_{\phi'_2}))
$$

$$
= ((f(g(\phi_1)) \circ A_{\phi_1} \circ A_{\phi'_1}) \circ (A_{\phi_2} \circ A_{\phi'_2}))
$$

Now, let us consider two parallel 2-cells $\phi, \phi' : u \Rightarrow v$ of $Q^\top$. The 2-cells $g(\phi)$ and $g(\phi')$ are parallel in $P^\top$ so that, by $X$-acyclicity of $P^\top$, there exists a 3-cell

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{
g(\phi) \ar[dl]_{A} \ar[dr]^{g(\phi')} & \\
g(u) \ar[rr]_{A} & & g(v)
}
\end{array}
$$

in the $(3, 1)$-category $P^\top(X)$. By definition of $Y$ and functoriality of $f$, there
exists a 3-cell

![Diagram](attachment:diagram.png)

in the free \((3, 1)\)-category \(P^Y\). Using the 3-cells \(f(A), A_\phi\) and \(A_{\phi'}\), we get the following 3-cell from \(\phi\) to \(\phi'\) in \(P^Y\):

![Diagram](attachment:diagram.png)

This concludes the proof that the \((2, 1)\)-category \(Q^Y\) is \(Y\)-acyclic.

### 7.2.6 Cofibrant replacements and coherent presentation.

The notion of coherent presentation of a category corresponds to the notion of cofibrant replacement for the model structure for 2-categories introduced by Lack in [229, 231]. This will be detailed and generalized in Chapter 21, and we only give here a brief overview. In this model structure a 2-category is cofibrant if its underlying 1-category is free, and a 2-functor \(F : C \rightarrow D\) is a weak equivalence if it satisfies the following two conditions.

1. Every 0-cell \(y\) of \(D\) is equivalent to a 0-cell \(F(x)\) for \(x\) in \(C\), i.e., there exist 1-cells \(u : F(x) \rightarrow y\) and \(v : y \rightarrow F(x)\) and invertible 2-cells \(f : u \ast_1 v \Rightarrow 1_{F(x)}\) and \(g : v \ast_1 u \Rightarrow 1_y\) in \(D\).
2. For every 0-cells \(x\) and \(x'\) in \(C\), the induced functor

\[
F(x, x') : C(x, x') \rightarrow D(F(x), F(x'))
\]

is an equivalence of categories.

In particular, an equivalence of 2-categories is a weak equivalence. A cofibrant replacement of a 2-category \(C\) is a cofibrant 2-category \(\bar{C}\) that is weakly equivalent to \(C\). The following theorem is proved in [145, Theorem 1.3.1]:
7.2.7 Theorem. Let \( P \) be an extended presentation of a category \( C \). Then the \((3,1)\)-polygraph \( P \) is a coherent presentation of \( C \) if and only if the \((2,1)\)-category \( \widehat{P} \) is a cofibrant replacement of \( C \).

Note that a given category \( C \) may admit other cofibrant replacements than the 2-categories presented by coherent presentations of \( C \). For instance, consider the terminal category \( 1_{\text{cat}} \): it contains one 0-cell and the corresponding identity 1-cell only. This category \( 1_{\text{cat}} \) is cofibrant and, as a consequence, is a cofibrant replacement of itself: this cofibrant replacement corresponds to the coherent presentation of the terminal category given by the \((3,1)\)-polygraph with one 0-generator and no higher-dimensional generators. But the terminal category also admits, as a cofibrant replacement, the 2-category with two 0-cells \( x, y \), two 1-cells \( u, v \) as follows

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \overset{u}{\longrightarrow} & Y \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\quad & \phi & \quad \\
\quad & \phi' & \quad \\
\quad & \psi & \quad \\
\quad & \psi' & \quad \\
\quad & A & \quad \\
\quad & \downarrow & \quad \\
\quad & \downarrow & \quad \\
\quad & \downarrow & \quad \\
\quad & \phi & \quad \\
\quad & \phi' & \quad \\
\quad & \phi'' & \quad \\
\quad & \psi & \quad \\
\quad & \psi' & \quad \\
\quad & \psi'' & \quad \\
\end{array}
\]

and two invertible 2-cells \( f : uv \Rightarrow 1_x \) and \( g : vu \Rightarrow 1_y \). However, this 2-category is not presented by a coherent presentation of the terminal category, since it has two 0-cells.

7.3 Coherent confluence

In this section, we extend to \((3,1)\)-polygraphs the results on coherent confluence given in Section 2.5 for \((2,0)\)-polygraphs.

7.3.1 Coherent confluence. Let \( P \) be a \((3,1)\)-polygraph. A branching \((\phi, \psi)\) of \( P \) is coherently confluent if there exist 2-cells \( \phi' \) and \( \psi' \) in \( P_2 \) and a 3-cell \( F \) in \( P_3 \) of the form

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\phi & \overset{u}{\longrightarrow} & \psi \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\phi' & \overset{A}{\longrightarrow} & \psi' \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\phi'' & \overset{w}{\longrightarrow} & \psi'' \\
\end{array}
\]

We say that \( P \) is coherently confluent (resp. locally coherently confluent, resp. critically coherently confluent) when every branching (resp. local branching, resp. critical branching) of \( P \) is coherently confluent. We say that \( P \) is coherently convergent if it terminates and is coherently confluent. Note that, given a 2-polygraph \( P \), by taking \( P_3 = \text{Sph}(P^*) \) to be the set of all 2-spheres of \( P^* \) (see
7.3 Coherent confluence

§7.1.1), the notions of coherent confluence and coherent convergence in the
(3, 1)-polygraph \((P, P_3)\) boil down to the ones of confluence and convergence
of the 2-polygraph defined in §4.1.9.

The following result essentially amounts to a coherent version of Newman’s
lemma for 2-polygraphs (Lemma 1.3.21). Its proof is essentially the same as in
the case of 1-polygraphs (Lemma 2.5.8).

7.3.2 Proposition. Let \(P\) be a terminating \((3, 1)\)-polygraph. If \(P\) is locally
coherently confluent, then \(P\) is coherently confluent.

As above, we recover the Newman’s lemma for 2-polygraphs, by taking \(P_3\) to
be the set of all 2-spheres. Similarly, the following result is a coherent version
of the critical branching lemma (Lemma 4.3.7).

7.3.3 Lemma. Let \(P\) be a \((3, 1)\)-polygraph. If \(P\) is critically coherently conflu-
ent, then \(P\) is locally coherently confluent.

Proof. We proceed by case analysis on the type of the local branchings of \(P\).
First, non-overlapping (i.e., trivial and orthogonal) branchings are always co-
herently confluent. Indeed, if \(\phi : u \Rightarrow v\) is a rewriting step of \(P\), then the trivial
branching \((\phi, \phi)\) is coherently confluent because of

And, if \(\phi : u \Rightarrow u’\) and \(\psi : v \Rightarrow v’\) are rewriting steps of \(P\), then the orthogonal
branching \((\phi v, u\psi)\) is coherently confluent thanks to the following equality

Now, assume that \((\phi, \psi)\) is an overlapping branching, where \(\phi : u \Rightarrow v\) and
\(\psi : u \Rightarrow w\) are rewriting steps of \(P\). Then we have \(u = u_1 u’ u_2\), \(\phi = u_1 \phi’ u_2\)
and \(\psi = u_1 \psi’ u_2\), where \(u_1\), \(u’\) and \(u_2\) are 1-cells of \(P_1’\), and \(\phi’\) and \(\psi’\) are
rewriting steps of \(P\) such that \((\phi’, \psi’\)) is a critical branching of \(P\). By hypothesis,
\((\phi’, \psi’\)) is critically coherently confluent, from which we deduce the existence
of 2-cells $\phi''$ and $\psi''$ of $P_2^*$, and of a 3-cell $F$ of $P_3^T$ proving that $(\phi, \psi)$ is coherently confluent.

Again, the critical branching lemma (Lemma 4.3.7) can be recovered by taking $P_3$ to be the set of 2-spheres in a 2-polygraph.

7.3.4 Proposition. Let $P$ be a $(3, 1)$-polygraph. If $P$ is coherently convergent then $P$ is coherent.

As for 1-polygraphs we prove the following coherence result, called Squier's homotopical theorem [328, Theorem 5.2] (see also [161, 233]).

7.3.5 Theorem. Let $P$ be a convergent 2-polygraph, and $P_3$ be a cellular extension of the free $(2, 1)$-category $P^T$. If $P_3$ contains, for every critical branching $(\phi, \psi)$ of $P$, one 3-generator of the form

$$(7.2)$$

where $\phi'$ and $\psi'$ are 2-cells in $P_2^*$, then the $(3, 1)$-polygraph $(P, P_3)$ is coherent.

A 3-generator of the form (7.2), indexed by a critical branching of $P$, is called a generating confluence of the polygraph $P$. Theorem 7.3.5 states that the set of generating conflences of a convergent 2-polygraph $P$, indexed by all its critical branchings, forms an acyclic extension of the $(2, 1)$-category $P^T$.

7.3.6 Example. Consider the monoid $M$ with the convergent presentation

$$\langle * \mid a \mid \alpha : aa \Rightarrow a \rangle.$$ 

This 2-polygraph has exactly one critical branching, whose corresponding gen-
erating confluence has the form:

```
    aαa
   /     \
aa    Δ∧aa
 /     \
αa    aa
```

By Theorem 7.3.5, the \((3,1)\)-polygraph \(\{ \ast | a | α | A \}\) defined in Example 7.2.2 is thus a coherent presentation of the monoid \(M\).

### 7.3.7 The standard coherent presentation.

Recall from §2.3.14 and §4.5.5 that the standard presentation of a category \(C\) is the \(2\)-polygraph \(\text{Std}\_2(C)\) such that

- the 0-generators are the 0-cells of \(C\),
- there is a 1-generator \(\tilde{f} : x \to y\) for every 1-cell \(f : x \to y\) of \(C\),
- there is a 2-generator \(\mu_{f,g} : \tilde{fg} \Rightarrow \tilde{f} \tilde{g}\) for all composable 1-cells \(f\) and \(g\) of \(C\),
- there is a 2-generator \(\eta_x : 1_x \Rightarrow \tilde{1}_x\) for every 0-cell \(x\) of \(C\).

The standard coherent presentation \(\text{Std}_3(C)\) of \(C\) is the presentation \(\text{Std}_2(C)\) extended with the following 3-generators

\[
\begin{align*}
\mu_{f,g,h} & : \tilde{fgh} \Rightarrow \mu_{fgh}, \\
\eta_x & : \tilde{1}_x \Rightarrow \tilde{1}_x \\
\mu_{1,x} & : \tilde{f} \Rightarrow \tilde{1}_x f, \\
\mu_{f,1,y} & : \tilde{f} \Rightarrow \tilde{f} 1_y, \\
\mu_{1,y} & : \tilde{f} \Rightarrow \tilde{f} 1_y, \\
\mu_{f,1,y} & : \tilde{f} \Rightarrow \tilde{f} 1_y
\end{align*}
\]

for all 1-cells \(f : x \to y\), \(g : y \to z\) and \(h : z \to t\) of \(C\). Those 3-generators can be shown to form an acyclic cellular extension of the free \((2,1)\)-category \(\text{Std}_2(C)\)\(^\top\) (by first reversing the orientation of the generators \(\eta_x\), as explained in §4.5.5, and then applying Theorem 7.3.5).

### 7.4 Tietze transformations of \((3,1)\)-polygraphs

We extend here the notion of Tietze transformation presented in §1.2.5 for 1-polygraphs and in Section 5.1 for 2-polygraphs to \((3,1)\)-polygraphs.
7.4.1 Tietze transformations. If $P$ is a $(3, 1)$-polygraph, an *elementary Tietze transformation* on $P$ is one of the following operations transforming $P$ into a $(3, 1)$-polygraph $Q$:

(T1) *adding a definable 1-cell:* $Q$ is obtained from $P$ by adding a 1-generator $a : x \to y$ together with a 2-generator $\alpha : u \Rightarrow a$ for some 1-cell $u : x \to y \in P^1_1$:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \\ \uparrow \alpha \\
\downarrow u \\
y
\end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \begin{array}{c}
x \\ \uparrow \alpha \\
\downarrow u \\
y, \downarrow a
\end{array}
\]

(T2) *adding a derivable 2-cell:* $Q$ is obtained from $P$ by adding a 2-generator $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ together with a 3-generator $A : \phi \Rightarrow \alpha$ for some 3-cell $\phi : u \Rightarrow v \in P^1_2$:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \\ \uparrow \phi \\
\downarrow u \\
v
\end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \begin{array}{c}
x \\ \uparrow \phi \\
\downarrow u \\
v, \downarrow \alpha
\end{array}
\]

(T3) *adding a derivable 3-cell:* $Q$ is obtained from $P$ by adding a 3-generator $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ for some 3-cell $F : \phi \Rightarrow \psi \in P^1_3$:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \\ \uparrow \phi \\
\downarrow u \\
v
\end{array} \quad \Rightarrow \quad \begin{array}{c}
x \\ \uparrow \phi \\
\downarrow u \\
v, \downarrow \psi
\end{array}
\]

A Tietze transformation between $(3, 1)$-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ is a finite sequence of polygraphs $P = P_1, P_2, \ldots, P_n = Q$ such that, for $1 \leq i < n$, either $P_{i+1}$ is obtained from $P_i$ by an elementary Tietze transformation, or $P_i$ is obtained from $P_{i+1}$ by an elementary Tietze transformation. Two $(3, 1)$-polygraphs are *Tietze equivalent* when there is a Tietze transformation between them. As in §1.2.5 and Section 5.1, the notion of Tietze equivalence is supposed to be closed by isomorphism.

7.4.2 Functors induced by Tietze transformations. For any of the above elementary Tietze transformations from a $(3, 1)$-polygraph $P$ to a $(3, 1)$-polygraph $Q$, there is a canonical morphism of polygraphs $P \to Q$, witnessing the inclusion of $P$ into $Q$, which induces a 3-functor $F : P^\tau \to Q^\tau$ between the freely generated $(3, 1)$-categories. This functor always admits a retraction, i.e., a 3-functor $G : Q^\tau \to P^\tau$ such that $G \circ F = 1_{P^\tau}$. For instance, in the case of (T1), with the same notations as above, the functor $G$ is such that $Ga = u$, $Ga = 1_u$ and $G$ leaves the other generators of $Q$ unchanged.
7.4 Tietze transformations of (3, 1)-polygraphs

We recall the following result from [145, Theorem 2.1.3]:

**7.4.3 Theorem.** Two finite (3, 1)-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ are Tietze equivalent if and only if there is an equivalence between the presented 2-categories $\overline{P}$ and $\overline{Q}$ which induces a bijection between the respective sets of 0-cells.

As a consequence, if a (3, 1)-polygraph $P$ is a coherent presentation of a category $C$ and if there exists a Tietze transformation from $P$ to a (3, 1)-polygraph $Q$, then $Q$ is also a coherent presentation of $C$.

**7.4.4 Higher Nielsen transformations.** As a particular subset of Tietze transformation, we identify the following family of transformations, which will prove useful in the following. The **elementary Nielsen transformations** on a (3, 1)-polygraph $P$ are the following transformations:

- (N1) the replacement of a 2-cell by a formal inverse (including in the source and target of every 3-cell),
- (N2) the replacement of a 3-cell by a formal inverse,
- (N3) the replacement of a 3-cell $F : \psi \Rightarrow \psi'$ by a 3-cell

\[ \tilde{F} : \phi \ast_1 \psi \ast_1 \chi \Rightarrow \phi \ast_1 \psi' \ast_1 \chi \]

where $\phi$ and $\chi$ are 2-cells of $P^T$.

The **Nielsen equivalence** on (3, 1)-polygraphs is the smallest equivalence relation identifying any two polygraphs between which there is an elementary Nielsen transformation. The following is shown in [145, Section 2.1.4]:

**7.4.5 Lemma.** The elementary Nielsen transformations are Tietze transformations.

**7.4.6 Collapsible generators.** Given a (3, 1)-polygraph $P$, we identify the following families of redundant generators in the polygraph. Following the terminology introduced by Brown [60], we say that a 2-generator $\alpha$ of $P$ is **collapsible** if

- the target of $\alpha$ is a 1-generator $a \in P_1$, and
- the source of $\alpha$ is a 1-cell in which $a$ does not occur.

Similarly, a 3-generator $A$ of $P$ is **collapsible** if

- the target of $A$ is a 2-generator $\alpha \in P_2$, and
- the source of $A$ is a 2-cell in which $\alpha$ does not occur.

A 3-sphere $\Phi$ is a pair $(F, G)$ of 3-cells in $P^T_3$ with the same source and with the same target, where $F$ and $G$ are respectively the source and target of the
Coherence by convergence

3-sphere. Note that a 3-sphere can be seen as a 4-generator in a (4, 1)-polygraph, which consists of a (3, 1)-polygraph $P$ equipped with a cellular extension $P_4$ of the freely generated (3, 1)-category $P^\triangleright$, see Section 15.3. We thus denote by $\Phi : F \triangleright G$ a 3-sphere from $F$ to $G$. A 3-sphere $\Phi : F \triangleright A$ whose target $A$ is a 3-generator is said to be collapsible.

Given a collapsible 2-generator $\alpha : u \Rightarrow a$, we write $P/\alpha$ for the (3, 1)-polygraph with

- $P_0$ as 0-generators,
- $P_1 \setminus \{a\}$ as 1-generators,
- $P_2 \setminus \{\alpha\}$ as 2-generators, where every occurrence of $a$ in the source or target of a 2-generator has been replaced by $u$,
- $P_3$ as 3-generators, where every occurrence of $\alpha$ in the source or target of a 3-generator has been replaced by $1_u$.

Similarly, given a collapsible 3-generator $A : \phi \Rightarrow \alpha$, we write $P/A$ for the (3, 1)-polygraph with

- $P_0$ as 0-generators,
- $P_1$ as 1-generators,
- $P_2 \setminus \{\alpha\}$ as 2-generators,
- $P_3 \setminus \{A\}$ as 3-generators, where every occurrence of $\alpha$ in the source or target of a 3-generator has been replaced by $\phi$.

Similarly, given a collapsible 3-sphere $\Phi : F \triangleright A$, we write $P/\Phi$ for the (3, 1)-polygraph $P_0, P_1, P_2$ and $P_3 \setminus \{A\}$ as sets of 0-, 1-, 2- and 3-generators respectively.

In the above situation, the target generator of the collapsible cell is said to be redundant, and the polygraph $P/\alpha$ (resp. $P/A$, resp. $P/\Phi$) is said to be obtained from $P$ by collapsing $\alpha$ (resp. $A$, resp. $\Phi$).

7.4.7 Example. In the polygraph

$$P = \langle \star | a, b, c | \alpha : ab \Rightarrow c, \beta : ac \Rightarrow bc, \gamma : ab \Rightarrow c | A : \alpha \Rightarrow \gamma \rangle$$

the 2-generator $\alpha$ is collapsible and the polygraph resulting from its collapse is

$$P/\alpha = \langle \star | a, b | \beta : aab \Rightarrow bab, \gamma : ab \Rightarrow ab | A : 1_{ab} \Rightarrow \gamma \rangle$$

The following is shown in [145, Section 2.3]:

7.4.8 Proposition. Let $P$ be a (3, 1)-polygraph. Given a collapsible 2-generator $\alpha$ (resp. 3-generator $A$, resp. 3-sphere $\Phi$) of $P$, the (3, 1)-polygraphs $P$ and $P/\alpha$ (resp. $P/A$, resp. $P/\Phi$) are Tietze equivalent.
7.4.9 Remark. The class of collapsible generators can be made larger, and thus lead to more collapses, by working “up to Nielsen equivalence”. By this, we mean that one can consider that a generator is collapsible in a \((3, 1)\)-polygraph \(P\), when \(P\) is Nielsen equivalent to a polygraph \(Q\) in which the corresponding generator is collapsible. Namely, one can generalize the above notion of collapse to those generators.

7.5 Coherent completion and reduction

Given a convergent 2-polygraph \(P\), Squier’s homotopical theorem (Theorem 7.3.5) provides a way to extend it into a coherent presentation of the category \(\overline{P}\). When the 2-polygraph \(P\) is not convergent, we can use the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure (Section 5.2) in order to obtain a convergent presentation of the category \(\overline{P}\) and then apply Squier’s theorem on it in order to finally obtain a coherent presentation of \(\overline{P}\). We present the coherent completion procedure from \([166, 145]\) which combines the two steps at once: it adds both 2- and 3-generators to the polygraph, in order to obtain a coherent convergent presentation.

Often, the resulting coherent presentation of \(\overline{P}\) is not minimal, in the sense that some of its generators are collapsible. In such a situation, it is desirable to remove those superfluous generators in order to obtain a smaller presentation. We also present here techniques to perform this, which, when combined with the procedure described above, give rise to a coherent completion-reduction procedure.

7.5.1 Family of generating confluences. Given a 2-polygraph \(P\), a cellular extension \(X\) of the free \((2, 1)\)-category \(P^\top\) containing a 3-generator

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\downarrow \psi \\
\phi' \downarrow \psi' \\
\end{array}
\]

for every critical branching \((\phi, \psi)\) of \(P\) is called a family of generating confluences for \(P\).

A Squier completion of the polygraph \(P\) is a \((3, 1)\)-polygraph, denoted by \(\text{Sq}(P)\), obtained from \(P\) by adding a 3-generator of the form (7.3) for every critical branching \((\phi, \psi)\). By Theorem 7.3.5, such a \((3, 1)\)-polygraph is a coherent presentation of the category \(\overline{P}\). Note that the notation is slightly abusive since
a polygraph $\text{Sq}(P)$ is not entirely determined by $P$. In particular, it depends on a choice of confluences for the critical branchings, and the orientation of the 3-generator $A_{\phi, \psi}$. We will see in Chapter 23 that this choice can be encoded as a $t$-contraction and can be extended in all higher dimensions.

7.5.2 **Coherent completion of terminating 2-polygraphs.** By extending the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure, see Section 5.2, we define a procedure that computes a coherent presentation of a category $C$ starting with a terminating, but not necessarily confluent, presentation of $C$, by suitably adding 2- and 3-generators obtained from computing critical branchings. The procedure is defined as follows.

Given a terminating 2-polygraph $P$, equipped with a total termination order, the coherent completion of $P$ is the $(3, 1)$-polygraph obtained from $P$ by successive applications of Knuth-Bendix and Squier completion steps, as follows. In this procedure, one considers each critical branching $(\phi, \psi)$ of $P$ and performs the following operations:

- if the branching is confluent, the procedure adds a 3-generator

\[
A : \phi \ast_1 \phi' \Rightarrow \psi \ast_1 \psi'
\]

to the polygraph (if such a generator is not already present):

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \Rightarrow u \\
\downarrow \Phi \\
\phi' \Rightarrow v
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\psi \Rightarrow w \\
\downarrow \Psi \\
\psi' \Rightarrow u
\end{array}
\]

\[
v = \hat{u},
\]

- if the branching is not confluent, the procedure coherently adds a 2-generator

\[
\alpha : \hat{v} \Rightarrow \hat{w} \quad \text{if} \quad \hat{v} \succ \hat{w} \quad \text{or} \quad \alpha : \hat{w} \Rightarrow \hat{v} \quad \text{if} \quad \hat{w} \succ \hat{v}
\]

and a 3-generator

\[
A : \phi \ast_1 \phi' \Rightarrow \psi \ast_1 \psi'
\]

to the polygraph:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \Rightarrow u \\
\downarrow \Phi \\
\phi' \Rightarrow v
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\psi \Rightarrow w \\
\downarrow \Psi \\
\psi' \Rightarrow u
\end{array}
\]

\[
v = \hat{u},
\]
In the second case, the procedure adds a new 2-generator \( \alpha \), which can in turn create new critical branchings, which have to be inspected by the procedure. For this reason, like in the usual Knuth-Bendix procedure, the process is not guaranteed to terminate. In this situation, this defines an increasing sequence of \((3, 1)\)-polygraphs, whose inductive limit is a potentially infinite \((3, 1)\)-polygraph.

As a consequence of Theorem 7.3.5, the \((3, 1)\)-polygraph constructed using this procedure satisfies the following property [145, Theorem 2.2.5]:

**7.5.3 Theorem.** Let \( P \) be a terminating \( 2 \)-polygraph. Any coherent completion of \( P \) is a coherent convergent presentation of the category \( \overline{P} \).

**7.5.4 Generic homotopical reduction.** In order to reduce the size of the \((3, 1)\)-polygraph obtained by a coherent completion of a terminating \( 2 \)-polygraph, one can identify generators which can be collapsed, and thus be removed without changing the presented category nor the coherence of the category (see Proposition 7.4.8). We formalize here the process of collapsing multiple such generators at once.

A **collapsible part** of a \((3, 1)\)-polygraph \( P \) is a family \( X \) of its generators that we can collapse together, in the sense introduced in §7.4.6. Explicitly, it consists in a triple \( X = (X_2, X_3, X_4) \) made of a family \( X_2 \) of 2-generators of \( P \), a family \( X_3 \) of 3-generators of \( P \) and a family \( X_4 \) of 3-spheres of the free \((2, 1)\)-category \( P^\top \), such that the following conditions are satisfied:

- the elements of \( X_2 \), \( X_3 \) and \( X_4 \) are collapsible, potentially up to a Nielsen transformation (see Remark 7.4.9),
- no 2-generator of \( X_2 \) is the target of a 3-generator in \( X_3 \),
- no 3-generator of \( X_3 \) is the target of a 3-sphere in \( X_4 \),
- the following relations are well-founded:
  - the relation \( <_1 \) on \( P_1 \) such that \( b <_1 a \) when there exists a 1-generator \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow a \) in \( X_2 \) such that \( b \) occurs in \( u \),
  - the relation \( <_2 \) on \( P_2 \) such that \( \beta <_2 \alpha \) when there exists a 2-generator \( A : \phi \Rightarrow \alpha \) in \( X_2 \) such that \( \beta \) occurs in \( \phi \),
  - the relation \( <_3 \) on \( P_3 \) such that \( B <_3 A \) when there exists a 3-sphere \( \Phi : F \Rightarrow A \) in \( X_3 \) such that \( B \) occurs in \( F \).

Given such a collapsible part \( X \), one can define a \((3, 1)\)-polygraph \( P/X \), obtained by successively collapsing all the elements of \( X \), which is called the *homotopical reduction of \( P \) with respect to \( X \). By construction, the polygraph \( P/X \) is Tietze equivalent to \( P \).
7.5.5 Generating triple confluences. The coherent elimination of 3-generators of a \((3, 1)\)-polygraph \(P\) by homotopical reduction requires a collapsible set of 3-spheres of \(P^T\). When \(P\) is convergent and coherent, its triple critical branchings provide a convenient way to build such a set.

A local triple branching is a triple \((\phi, \chi, \psi)\) of 2-cells which are rewriting steps with a common source. Similarly to local branchings, local triple branchings are classified into three families:

- trivial triple branchings have two of the 2-cells equal,
- orthogonal triple branchings have at least one of their 2-cells that form an orthogonal branching with the other two,
- overlapping triple branchings are the remaining local triple branchings.

Local triple branchings are ordered by inclusion of their sources, similarly to branchings. A critical triple branching is an overlapping triple branching that is minimal for this inclusion. For a reduced 2-polygraph, such a triple branching can have two different shapes, where \(\phi, \psi\) and \(\chi\) are 2-generators:

\[
\begin{align*}
\phi \quad & \xrightarrow{u_1} \quad \chi \quad & \xrightarrow{u_1} \quad \psi
\end{align*}
\]

or

\[
\begin{align*}
\phi \quad & \xrightarrow{u_1} \quad \chi \quad & \xrightarrow{u_1} \quad \psi
\end{align*}
\]

When the polygraph is not reduced, the other possible type of critical branchings, with an inclusion of one source into the other one, generates several other possibilities.

If \(P\) is a coherent and convergent \((3, 1)\)-polygraph, a generating triple confluence of \(P\) is a 3-sphere

\[
\begin{align*}
\phi \quad & \xrightarrow{u_1} \quad \chi \quad & \xrightarrow{u_1} \quad \psi
\end{align*}
\]

where \((\phi, \chi, \psi)\) is a triple critical branching of \(P\) and the 3-cells are generated by the generating confluence induced by the critical branchings.

7.5.6 Coherent completion-reduction. In practice, we apply homotopical reduction to a coherent completion \(Q\) of a terminating 2-polygraph \(P\). In such a situation, one can define a collapsible part \(X\) of \(Q\) whose elements are
7.5 Coherent completion and reduction

– some of the generating triple confluences of \( Q \),

– the 3-generators coherently adjoined with a 2-generator by coherent completion to reach confluence,

– some collapsible 2-generators or 3-generators already present in the initial presentation \( P \).

In practice, the collapsible triple confluences are chosen among those in which some 3-generator \( A \) occurs in the source or the target without 1-dimensional whiskers, and occurs exactly once. Similarly, the collapsible 3-generators are chosen among those where a 2-generator \( a \) occurs in the source or the target without whiskers, and occurs exactly once. Finally, the collapsible 2-generators are chosen among those of the form \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow a \) or \( \alpha : a \Rightarrow u \) where \( a \) is a generator which does not occur in \( u \). Moreover, one should check that the conditions of §7.5.5 are satisfied. In particular, one should be careful not to select too many such generators in order for the well-foundedness conditions to be satisfied. An illustration is given in Example 7.5.8 below.

If \( P \) is a terminating 2-polygraph, the coherent completion-reduction of \( P \) with respect to a collapsible part \( X \) of its completion \( Q \) is the \( (3, 1) \)-polygraph the homotopical reduction \( Q/X \) of \( Q \) with respect to \( X \).

7.5.7 Theorem. Let \( P \) be a terminating 2-polygraph. A coherent completion-reduction of \( P \) is a coherent presentation of the category \( \overline{P} \).

We refer to Appendix B for examples of coherent completion-reduction calculations in the algebraic situations of Artin, plactic and Chinese monoids.

We end this section with a simple example to illustrate the method.

7.5.8 Example. Consider the following presentation of the braid monoid \( B_3^+ \), already encountered in Example 5.2.6 and §5.3.1, see also §A.1.21:

\[
P = \langle \star | a, b, c | aba \Rightarrow bab, ba \Rightarrow c \rangle
\]

and equipped with the deglex order induced by \( a > b > c \). The 2-polygraph \( P \) is terminating and its coherent completion is the \( (3, 1) \)-polygraph:

\[
Q = \langle \star | a, b, c | a, \beta, \gamma, \delta | A, B, C, D \rangle,
\]

where \( \alpha : ac \Rightarrow cb, \beta : ba \Rightarrow c, \gamma : aca \Rightarrow cc, \delta : bcc \Rightarrow cca \) and \( A, B, C, D \) are the following 3-generators, induced by completion of the critical
Coherence by convergence

branchings:

The coherent presentation $Q$ of $B_3^1$ can be reduced using the collapsible part consisting of the following two generating triple conflueses

and

together with the 3-generators $A$ and $B$ coherently adjoined with the 2-generators $\gamma$ and $\delta$ during coherent completion and the 2-generator $\beta : ba \Rightarrow c$ that defines the redundant generator $c$. The generators $\beta$, $A$, $B$, $\Phi$ and $\Psi$ are collapsible up to a Nielsen transformation, with respective redundant generators $c$, $\gamma$, $\delta$, $C$, and $D$. We conclude that $X$ is collapsible since the relations $<_1$, $<_2$ and $<_3$ are respectively included in the following well-founded total orders, and are thus
7.6 Coherent presentations of associative algebras

well-founded:
\[ c > b > a \quad \delta > \gamma > \beta > \alpha \quad D > C > B > A. \]

It follows that the homotopical reduction of the coherent presentation \( Q \) with respect to this collapsible part is the following coherent \((3, 1)\)-polygraph:

\[ R = \langle \star \mid b, a \mid aba \Rightarrow bab \mid \rangle. \]

By Theorem 7.5.7, we recover that the monoid \( B^+_3 \) admits a coherent presentation made of Artin’s presentation and no 3-generator. This example is generalized in [145] where coherent presentations of Artin monoids are constructed, see also Appendix B.

7.6 Coherent presentations of associative algebras

In this section, we define the notion of coherent presentation of an associative algebra, by extending the notion of presentation of an algebra introduced in Chapter 6.

7.6.1 Extended presentations. A cellular extension of a 1-algebra \( A \), with the notations of §6.1.4, is a set \( X \) equipped with functions \( s_1, t_1 : X \to A_1 \) such that \( s_0 \circ s_1 = s_0 \circ t_1 \). A linear 2-polygraph \( (P, P_2) \) consists of a linear 1-polygraph together with a cellular extension \( P_2 \) of the free 1-algebra \( P^c \) generated by \( P \). An extended presentation of an algebra \( A \) is a linear 2-polygraph whose underlying linear 1-polygraph presents \( A \). A linear 2-polygraph is left-monomial when the underlying linear 1-polygraph is, in the sense of §6.1.12.

A 2-algebra is an internal 2-category in the category \( \text{Alg} \) of algebras. Note that contrarily to the set-theoretic case, we will not bother about distinguishing whether we take cells to be invertible or not: it can be shown that the notion of 2-algebra coincides with the notion of internal 2-groupoid in the category of algebras, see [160]. Any linear 2-polygraph \( P \) freely generates a linear 2-algebra that we denote as \( P^c \), and whose algebra of 2-cells is in particular written \( P^c_2 \).

7.6.2 Coherent confluence and convergence. Let \( P \) be a left-monomial linear 2-polygraph. A branching \((\phi, \psi)\) of \( P \) is coherently confluent if there exist
positive 1-cells $\phi'$ and $\psi'$ in $P_1^\ell$ and a 2-cell $F$ in $P_2^\ell$ as in

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
q_1 \Rightarrow \ A \Rightarrow \ q_2.
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\phi' \quad r \quad \psi
\end{array}
$$

If $p$ is a 0-cell of $P_0^\ell$, say that $P$ is **coherently confluent** (resp. **locally coherently confluent**, resp. **critically coherently confluent**) at $p$ if every branching (resp. local branching, resp. critical branching) of $P$ of source $p$ is coherently confluent. Say that $P$ is **coherently confluent** (resp. **locally coherently confluent**, resp. **critically coherently confluent**) if it is so at every 0-cell of $P_0^\ell$, and that $P$ is **coherently convergent** if it is terminating and coherently confluent.

**7.6.3 Lemma.** Let $P$ be a left-monomial linear 2-polygraph with a fixed 0-cell $p$, and suppose that $P$ is coherently confluent at every 0-cell $q$ such that $p \rightarrow q$. Let $\phi$ be a 1-cell of $P_1^\ell$ which admits a decomposition

$$
p_0 \phi \phi_1 \phi_2 \cdots \phi_k = p_k \phi'
$$

into 1-cells $\phi_i$ of size 1. If $p \rightarrow p_i$ holds for every $0 \leq i < k$, then there exist positive 1-cells $\phi'$ and $\psi$ in $P_1^\ell$ and a 2-cell $F$ in $P_2^\ell$ as in

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
p_0 \Rightarrow \ F \Rightarrow \ p'
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\phi' \quad \psi
\end{array}
$$

Proof. Proceed by induction on $k$. If $k = 0$, then $\phi$ is an identity, so taking $\phi' = \psi = 1_{p_0}$ and $F = 1_\phi$ proves the result. Otherwise, we construct

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\phi_1 \\
p_0 \Rightarrow \ P_k \Rightarrow \ p_i \phi_2 \cdots \phi_k \Rightarrow \ p' \phi_i
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\phi' \quad \psi \quad q_1 \quad \psi_2 \\
\downarrow G
\end{array}
$$

Apply Lemma 6.2.2 to the 1-cell $\phi_1$ of size 1 to get the positive 1-cells $\phi'_1$ and $\psi_1$ such that $\phi_i = \phi'_1 \ast_0 \psi_1$. We have $p \rightarrow p_i$ for every $1 \leq i < k$, so the induction hypothesis applies to $\phi_2 \ast_0 \cdots \ast_0 \phi_k$, providing the positive 1-cells $\phi'_2$ and $\psi_2$, and the 2-cell $F$. Then, consider the branching $(\phi'_1, \psi_2)$,
whose source \( p_1 \) satisfies \( p \to^* p_1 \); by hypothesis, this branching is coherently confluent, giving the positive 1-cells \( \phi'_2 \) and \( \psi'_2 \), and the 2-cell \( G \). \[ \square \]

The following result is a formulation of coherent Newman’s lemma for linear polygraphs. The proof is the same as in the set-theoretical case given by Proposition 7.3.2.

**7.6.4 Proposition.** Let \( P \) be a terminating left-monomial linear 2-polygraph. If \( P \) is locally coherently confluent then it is coherently confluent.

The following result is a formulation of the coherent critical branchings lemma, Lemma 7.3.3, for linear polygraphs. Due to the linearity of contexts, the termination is necessary and the proof differs from the set-theoretical case, as already explained in Remark 6.2.18.

**7.6.5 Lemma.** Suppose given a terminating left-monomial linear 2-polygraph \( P \). If \( P \) is critically coherently confluent, then \( P \) is locally coherently confluent.

**Proof.** We proceed by noetherian induction on the sources of the local branchings to prove that \( P \) is locally coherently confluent at every 0-cell of \( P^0_0 \). We note that a reduced 0-cell cannot be the source of a local branching, so \( P \) is locally coherently confluent at reduced 0-cells. Now, fix a non-reduced 0-cell \( p \) of \( P^0_0 \), and assume that \( P \) is locally coherently confluent at every 0-cell \( q \) with \( p \to q \). With a termination-based argument similar to that of Proposition 7.3.2, we deduce that \( P \) is coherently confluent at every \( q \). Then we proceed by case analysis on the type of the local branchings, noting that an aspherical branching \( \lambda(\phi, \phi) + b \) is always coherently confluent.

For an additive branching, we construct

\[
\begin{align*}
\lambda \phi + \mu v + r & \xrightarrow{\phi'_1} \lambda p + \mu v + r \xrightarrow{\phi'_1} p' \\
\lambda u + \mu v + r & \xrightarrow{\omega} \lambda p + \mu v + r = \lambda p + \mu v + r \\
\lambda u + \mu v + r & \xrightarrow{\phi'_2} \lambda p + \mu q + r \\
\lambda \phi + \mu q + r & \xrightarrow{\psi'_2} \lambda u + \mu q + r \\
\lambda \phi + \mu q + r & \xrightarrow{\psi'_2} \lambda u + \mu q + r = \lambda u + \mu q + r
\end{align*}
\]

By linearity of the 0-composition, we have

\[(\lambda \phi + \mu v + r) *_0 (\lambda p + \mu v + r) = \lambda \phi + \mu \psi + r = (\lambda u + \mu \psi + r) *_0 (\lambda \phi + \mu q + r).\]
Note that the dotted 1-cells $\lambda p + \mu \psi + r$ and $\lambda \phi + \mu q + r$ are not positive in general, since $u$ can be in $\text{supp}(q)$ or $v$ in $\text{supp}(p)$. However, those 1-cells are of size 1, and Lemma 6.2.2 applies to both of them, to give positive 1-cells $\phi'_1$, $\psi'_1$, $\phi'$ and $\psi'$ that satisfy

$$
\phi'_1 = (\lambda p + \mu \psi + r) *_0 \phi' \quad \psi'_1 = (\lambda \phi + \mu q + r) *_0 \psi'.
$$

Now, $u \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow} p$, $v \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow} q$, $\lambda \neq 0$ and $\mu \neq 0$ imply $\lambda u + \mu v + r \stackrel{*}{\rightarrow} \lambda p + \mu q + r$. Thus, the branching $(\phi', \psi')$ is coherently confluent by hypothesis, yielding the positive 1-cells $\phi'_2$ and $\psi'_2$ and the 2-cell $F$.

Next, in the case of an orthogonal branching, we construct

Use the linearity of the 0-composition to obtain

$$(\lambda \phi v + r) *_0 (\lambda p \psi + r) = \lambda \phi \psi + r = (\lambda u \psi + r) *_0 (\lambda \phi q + r).$$

Again, the dotted 1-cells $\lambda \phi q + r$ and $\lambda p \psi + r$ are not positive in general: this is the case, for example, if either $\text{supp}(uq) \cap \text{supp}(r)$ or $\text{supp}(pv) \cap \text{supp}(r)$ is not empty. Let $p = \sum_{i=1}^k \mu_i u_i$ be the canonical decomposition of $p$. By linearity of the 0-composition, the 1-cell $\lambda p \psi + r$ admits the following decomposition in 1-cells of size 1:

$$\lambda p \psi + r = \psi_1 *_0 \cdots *_0 \psi_k$$

with

$$\psi_j = \sum_{i < j} \mu_i u_i q + \mu_j u_j \psi + \sum_{j < k} \mu_i u_i v + r.$$
Finally, for an overlapping branching \((\lambda \phi + r, \lambda \psi + r)\), we construct

\[
\begin{align*}
\lambda \phi + r & \xrightarrow{\phi_1'} \lambda p + r \xrightarrow{G} p' \xrightarrow{\phi_2'} \lambda \psi' + r \xrightarrow{\phi''} p' \xrightarrow{\phi_1} \lambda \phi + r \\
\lambda u + r & \xrightarrow{F} \lambda s + r \xrightarrow{I} t.
\end{align*}
\]

Consider the unique decomposition \((\phi, \psi) = v(\phi_0, \psi_0)w\), with \((\phi_0, \psi_0)\) critical. Since \((\phi_0, \psi_0)\) is coherently confluent by hypothesis, one obtains

\[
\begin{align*}
u_0 & \xrightarrow{F_0} p_0 \xrightarrow{\phi_0'} \psi_0' \xrightarrow{\phi_0} q_0 \xrightarrow{r_0}.
\end{align*}
\]

Define the positive 1-cells \(\phi' = v\phi_0'w\) and \(\psi' = v\psi_0'w\), and the 2-cell \(F = vF_0w\). As previously, the dotted 1-cells are not positive in general, if \(\text{supp}(c)\) intersects \(\text{supp}(p)\) or \(\text{supp}(q)\) for example. However, the 1-cell \(\phi'\) is positive, so that it is a 0-composite \(\phi' = \chi_1 \star_0 \cdots \star_0 \chi_k\) of rewriting steps. As a consequence, we have the chain of reductions

\[
u \xrightarrow{\ast} p = s(\chi_1) \xrightarrow{\ast} \cdots \xrightarrow{\ast} s(\chi_k) \xrightarrow{\ast} s.
\]

Since we have \(\lambda \neq 0\) and \(u \notin \text{supp}(r)\) by hypothesis, the inequality

\[
\lambda u + r \xrightarrow{\ast} \lambda s(\chi_i) + r
\]

holds for every \(i\), so that the following decomposition of the 1-cell \(\lambda \phi' + r\) satisfies the hypotheses of Lemma 7.6.3:

\[
\lambda \phi' + r = (\lambda \chi_1 + r) \star_1 \cdots \star_1 (\lambda \chi_k + r).
\]

This gives \(\phi_1', \phi''\) and \(G\). Proceed similarly with the 1-cell \(\lambda \psi' + r\) to obtain \(\psi_1', \psi''\) and \(H\). Finally, apply the induction hypothesis on \((\phi'', \psi'')\), since \(\lambda u + r \xrightarrow{\ast} \lambda s + r\), to get \(\phi_2', \psi_2'\) and \(I\).

Given a terminating left-monomial linear 1-polygraph \(P\), taking \(P_2\) to be the set of all 2-spheres, critical coherent confluence (resp. local coherent confluence) in the linear 2-polygraph \((P, P_2)\) is the same as critical confluence (resp. local
confluence) in \( P \). We thus deduce the critical branching lemma for linear \( 1 \)-polygraphs, already announced in Lemma 6.2.15, as a particular case.

With a proof similar to the one in the set-theoretical case, see Theorem 7.3.5, we have the coherent Squier theorem for linear polygraphs:

**7.6.6 Theorem.** Let \( P \) be a convergent left-monomial linear \( 1 \)-polygraph and \( P_2 \) be a cellular extension of \( P_1 \) that contains a \( 2 \)-cell for every critical branching \((\phi, \psi)\) of \( P \), with \( \phi' \) and \( \psi' \) positive \( 1 \)-cells of \( P_1 \).

Then the \( 2 \)-polygraph \((P, P_2)\) is coherent.

**7.6.7 Example.** We consider the quadratic algebra \( A \) presented by

\[
\langle x, y, z \mid x^2 + yz = 0, x^2 + \lambda zy = 0 \rangle
\]

where \( \lambda \) is a fixed scalar different from 0 and 1, from [300, Section 4.3]. Put \( \mu = \lambda^{-1} \). The algebra \( A \) admits the presentation

\[
P = \langle x, y, z \mid \alpha : yz \rightarrow -x^2, \beta : zy \rightarrow -\mu x^2 \rangle.
\]

The deglex order generated by \( z > y > x \) satisfies \( yz > x^2 \) and \( zy > x^2 \), proving that \( P \) terminates. However, \( P \) is not confluent. Indeed, it has two critical branchings:

\[
\begin{align*}
\alpha y & : yz \rightarrow -x^2 y \\
\gamma & : zx^2 \rightarrow \lambda x^2 y \\
\beta z & : zy \rightarrow -\mu x^2 z \\
\delta & : z x^2 \rightarrow \mu x^2 z
\end{align*}
\]

and neither of them is confluent, because the monomials \( x^2 y, yx^2, x^2 z \) and \( zx^2 \) are reduced. The adjunction of the 1-cells

\[
\gamma : yx^2 \rightarrow \lambda x^2 y \quad \text{and} \quad \delta : z x^2 \rightarrow \mu x^2 z
\]

gives a left-monomial linear \( 1 \)-polygraph

\[
Q = \langle x, y, z \mid \alpha : yz \rightarrow -x^2, \quad \gamma : yx^2 \rightarrow \lambda x^2 y, \quad \beta : zy \rightarrow -\mu x^2, \quad \delta : z x^2 \rightarrow \mu x^2 z \rangle
\]

that also presents \( A \), since \( \gamma \) and \( \delta \) induce relations that already hold in \( P \), and
that also terminates, because of $yx^2 > x^2y$ and $zx^2 > x^2z$. Moreover, each one of the four critical branchings of $Q$ is confluent:

$$\begin{align*}
&\begin{array}{c}
\text{Theorem 7.6.6 implies that the 2-polygraph}\\
\langle x, y, z \mid \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta \mid A, B, C, D \rangle
\end{array}\\
\text{is a coherent presentation of } A.
\end{align*}$$

This coherent presentation can be reduced to a smaller one by a collapsing mechanism, similar to the one developed in §7.5.6 in the set-theoretic case, and hinted at on this example. First, some 2-cells may be removed without breaking acyclicity, because their boundary can also be filled by a composite of other 2-cells. Here, the “critical 3-branchings”, where three rewriting steps overlap, reveal two relations between 2-cells:
Coherence by convergence

Since the boundaries of $C$ and $D$ can also be filled using $A$ and $B$ only, the 2-polygraph $\langle x, y, z \mid \alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta \mid A, B \rangle$ is also a coherent presentation of $A$. Next, the 1-cells $\gamma$ and $\delta$ are redundant, because the corresponding relations can be derived from $\alpha$ and $\beta$, as testified by the 2-cells $A$ and $B$: removing $\gamma$ with $A$, and $\delta$ with $B$, proves that $P_P^1$ admits an empty acyclic cellular extension, so that $\langle x, y, z \mid \alpha, \beta \rangle$ is actually a coherent presentation of $A$.

### 7.6.8 Example (The standard coherent presentation)

Assume that $A = k \oplus A_+$ is an augmented algebra, and fix a linear basis $B$ of $A_+$. For $u$ and $v$ in $B$, write $u \otimes v$ for the product of $u$ and $v$ in the free algebra over $B$, and $uv$ for their product in $A$. Consider the linear 1-polygraph $\text{Std}(B)_1$ whose 0-cells are the elements of $B$, and with a 1-cell

$$u \otimes v \rightarrow uv,$$

for all $u$ and $v$ in $B$. Note that $uv$ belongs to the free algebra over $B$ because $A$ is augmented. By definition, $\text{Std}(B)_1$ is a presentation of $A$. Moreover, $\text{Std}(B)_1$ terminates by a length argument: for all $u$ and $v$ in $B$, the monomial $u \otimes v$ is a word of length 2 in the free monoid over $B$, while $uv$ is a word of length 1. Finally, $\text{Std}(B)_1$ has one critical branching $(u \otimes v \otimes w, u \otimes v \otimes w)$ for each triple $(u, v, w)$ of elements of $B$, and this critical branching is confluent. Thus, extending $\text{Std}(B)_1$ with a 2-cell

for each triple $(u, v, w)$ of elements of $B$ produces, by Theorem 7.6.6, a coherent presentation of $A$, denoted by $\text{Std}(B)_2$. Note that the free 2-algebra over $\text{Std}(B)_2$ does not depend (up to isomorphism) on the choice of the basis $B$.

This coherent presentation of $A$ is extended in every dimension in §23.3.8 to obtain a polygraphic version of the standard resolution of an algebra. As in the previous example, the next dimension contains the 3-cells generated by the “critical 3-branchings” of $\text{Std}_1(B)$: there is one such 3-cell $u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x$ for each
quadruple \((u, v, w, x)\) of elements of \(B\), with source

\[
\begin{align*}
&u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \\
&u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \rightarrow u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \\
&u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \rightarrow u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \\
&u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \rightarrow u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x
\end{align*}
\]

and target

\[
\begin{align*}
&u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \\
&u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \rightarrow u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \\
&u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \rightarrow u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \\
&u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x \rightarrow u \otimes v \otimes w \otimes x
\end{align*}
\]
In Chapter 7, we have seen a canonical and efficient way to extend a convergent presentation of a category $C$ by a 2-polygraph $P$ into a coherent one. Precisely, the 3-cells used in this extension procedure are in one-to-one correspondence with the confluence diagrams of critical branchings in $P$ (Theorem 7.3.5). Now if $P$ is finite, so is the set of its critical branchings and therefore the set of 3-cells generating coherence can be taken to be finite. In such a situation, we say that the polygraph $P$ has finite derivation type, or FDT. The relevance of this concept lies in the following invariance property: if a category $C$ admits a finite presentation $P$ having finite derivation type, then all finite presentations of $C$ also have FDT (Theorem 8.1.2). This invariance will prove essential to show that some finitely presented categories do not admit convergent presentations.

This finiteness condition, introduced by Squier [328] is of homotopical nature, and is in some sense a refinement of the homological condition introduced earlier in [326]. The latter will be discussed in the next chapter. Using these conditions, Squier managed to produce an explicit example of a finitely presented monoid, with decidable word problem, but having no finite convergent presentation. This provides a negative answer to the question of universality of finite convergent rewriting we raised in Section 5.3. Let us finally emphasize the power of the FDT invariant: by performing computations on one presentation of a monoid, we are able to deduce properties of any finite presentation of it!

The finiteness condition is introduced in Section 8.1 and studied in the case of convergent 2-polygraphs in Section 8.2. In Section 8.3, we define the notion of identities among relations for 2-polygraphs, generalizing those already known for presentations of groups: such identities are described by 2-spheres of the free $(2, 1)$-category on the 2-polygraph.
8.1 Finite derivation type

A 2-polygraph $P$ has finite derivation type, or FDT for short, if it is finite and if the $(2, 1)$-category $P^\uparrow$ admits a finite acyclic cellular extension. Otherwise said, there is a finite coherent $(3, 1)$-polygraph $Q$ of which $P$ is the underlying 2-polygraph. A category $C$ has finite derivation type if it admits a finite coherent presentation.

8.1.1 Tietze invariance of the FDT property. Recall from Section 5.1 that two 2-polygraphs are Tietze equivalent when they present isomorphic categories. We say that a property $P$ on 2-polygraphs is Tietze invariant when for every Tietze equivalent 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$, the polygraph $P$ satisfies the property $P$ if and only if the polygraph $Q$ does.

Given two Tietze equivalent 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ whose sets $P_2$ and $Q_2$ of 2-generators are finite, consider a finite acyclic cellular extension $X$ of the free $(2, 1)$-category $P^\uparrow$. By Theorem 7.1.6, the cellular extension $X$ transfers to a finite cellular extension of the free $(2, 1)$-category $Q^\uparrow$. We may therefore state the following invariance result, first proved by Squier for monoids [328, Theorem 4.3] and revisited in [165, Theorem 4.2.3] in polygraphic terms.

8.1.2 Theorem. Let $P$ and $Q$ be two Tietze equivalent 2-polygraphs such that $P_2$ and $Q_2$ are finite. Then $P$ has finite derivation type if and only if $Q$ has finite derivation type.

This result shows that the property for a category $C$ of having finite derivation type does not depend on the presentation, provided that it is finite.

The following result will help prove that a presentation admits no finite acyclic cellular extension, i.e., that the presented category does not have finite derivation type.

8.1.3 Proposition. Let $P$ be a 2-polygraph and let $X$ be an acyclic extension of the free $(2, 1)$-category $P^\uparrow$. If $P^\uparrow$ admits a finite acyclic cellular extension, then there exists a finite subset of $X$ that is an acyclic cellular extension of $P^\uparrow$.

Proof. Suppose that $P^\uparrow$ admits a finite acyclic cellular extension $Y$ and let $A$ be a 3-generator of $Y$. Since $X$ is an acyclic extension of $P^\uparrow$, there exists a 3-cell $F_A : s_2(A) \Rightarrow t_2(A)$ in the free $(3, 1)$-category $P^\uparrow(X)$. This induces a 3-functor between free $(3, 1)$-categories $f : P^\uparrow(Y) \rightarrow P^\uparrow(X)$, which is the identity on $P$ and such that $f(A) = F_A$ for every 3-generator $A$ of $Y$. Let $X_Y$ be the subset of $X$ containing all the 3-generators occurring in some 3-cell $F_A$, for $A$ in $Y$. Since $Y$ is finite and each 3-cell $F_A$ can be written as a composition of finitely many 3-generators of $X$, we deduce that $X_Y$ is finite.
Finally, consider a 2-sphere \((\phi, \psi)\) of \(P^T\). By hypothesis, there exists a 3-cell \(A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi\) in \(P^T(Y)\). By application of \(f\), one obtains a 3-cell \(f(A) : \phi \Rightarrow \psi\) in \(P^T(X)\). Moreover, the 3-cell \(f(A)\) is a composite of cells \(F_A\), and the 3-cell \(f(A)\) is thus in \(X^Y\). As a consequence, one has \(\phi \approx^{X^Y} \psi\), so that \(X^Y\) is a finite acyclic cellular extension of \(P^T\).

\[\square\]

## 8.2 Convergence and finite derivation type

Theorem 7.3.5 states that any family of generating confluences of a convergent 2-polygraph \(P\) forms an acyclic extension of the free \((2, 1)\)-category \(P^T\). The set of critical branchings of a finite 2-polygraph being finite, we deduce that a finite convergent 2-polygraph has finite derivation type. Moreover, from Theorem 8.1.2, the property of having finite derivation type is Tietze invariant for finite 2-polygraphs. We thus obtain a finiteness condition for finitely presented categories to have a presentation by a finite convergent 2-polygraph.

### 8.2.1 Theorem. If a category admits a finite convergent presentation, then it has finite derivation type.

This result was first proved by Squier for finitely presented monoids [328, Theorem 5.3]. Several others proofs can be found in the literature: we refer to [233] for a reformulation of Squier’s arguments and to [165] for a proof in the polygraphic language presented in this book.

Now suppose we want to show that some category does not admit a finite convergent presentation: by Theorem 8.2.1 it is sufficient to prove that it has no finite derivation type. The first example based on this argument, due to Squier [328], is presented in §8.2.3. Before that, we turn to a simplified version introduced by Lafont and Prouté in [238, 233].

### 8.2.2 Example. Consider the monoid \(M\) presented by the following 2-polygraph:

\[
P = \langle \ast | a, b, c, d, d' | a_0 : ab \Rightarrow a, \beta : da \Rightarrow ac, \beta' : d'a \Rightarrow ac \rangle.
\]

This is a variant of the monoid already encountered in Example 5.2.4. It admits a finite presentation and has a decidable word problem, yet it does not have finite derivation type and, as a consequence, it does not admit a finite convergent presentation. To prove these facts, the 2-polygraph \(P\) is completed, by Knuth-Bendix procedure (see Section 5.2), into the following infinite convergent 2-polygraph

\[
P = \langle \ast | a, b, c, d, d' | a_n, \beta, \beta' \rangle_{n \in \mathbb{N}}.
\]
8.2 Convergence and finite derivation type

with

\[ \alpha_n : ac^n b \Rightarrow ac^n, \quad \beta : da \Rightarrow ac, \quad \beta' : d'a \Rightarrow ac. \]

Event though the polygraph \( \tilde{P} \) is infinite, we can implement an algorithm to normalize 1-cells in \( \tilde{P} \) by iteratively rewriting those, and therefore decide the word problem in \( \tilde{P} \), and thus in \( P \), by comparing normal forms. The 2-polygraph \( \tilde{P} \) has two infinite families of critical branchings from which we deduce two infinite families of 3-generators:

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\beta c^n b \quad ac^{n+1} b \\
dac^n b \quad ac^n \\
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\beta' c^n b \quad ac^{n+1} b \\
d'ac^n b \quad ac^n \\
\end{array} \]

The 3-generators \( A'_n \) induce a projection functor \( f : \tilde{P}^\top \to P^\top \) which is the identity on 0- and 1-generators, sends the 2-generators \( \alpha_0, \beta \) and \( \beta' \) to themselves and the image of \( \alpha_n \), for \( n > 0 \), is defined by induction by

\[ f(\alpha_{n+1}) = \beta'^{-1} c^n b \ast_1 d' f(\alpha_n) \ast_1 \beta'^n. \]

This functor is a retract of the canonical inclusion functor \( g : P^\top \to \tilde{P}^\top \). By the transfer theorem (Theorem 7.1.6), the family

\[ X = \{ f(A_n) \mid n \in \mathbb{N} \} \]

is thus an infinite acyclic cellular extension of the (2, 1)-category \( P^\top \): in this case, the generators of the form (7.1) are superfluous because \( f \circ g \) is the identity on \( P^\top \).

By Proposition 8.1.3, in order to conclude that the polygraph \( P \) does not have FDT, it is enough to show that no finite subset of \( X \) forms an acyclic cellular extension of \( P^\top \). A fully explicit direct proof of this fact is rather tedious. A complete proof is given in [233, Section 5] using an abelianized form of the category \( P^\top \) in terms of monoidal groupoids. Note also that this can be shown indirectly by a homological argument outlined in the next chapter. Indeed, in Example 9.3.11 we show that the third integral homology group of the monoid \( M \) is not of finite type. This shows by Theorem 9.3.4 that the monoid \( M \) does not have FDT, and so in particular, we cannot extract a finite acyclic cellular extension of \( P^\top \) from \( X \).

8.2.3 Squier’s monoids. We now recall Squier’s original example of a finitely presented monoid that does not admit a finite convergent presentation and studied in [328] and [326] using homotopical and homological arguments.
respectively. Consider, for \( k \geq 1 \), the monoid \( S_k \) defined in [328, Example 4.5] and presented by

\[
\langle \star \mid a, b, c, d_i, e_i \mid \alpha_n, \beta_i, \gamma_i, \delta_i, \epsilon_i \rangle_{n \in \mathbb{N}, 1 \leq i \leq k},
\]

where the rules are

\[
\alpha_n : ac^n b \Rightarrow 1 \quad \text{for} \quad n \in \mathbb{N}, \quad \beta_i : d_ia \Rightarrow acd_i, \quad \gamma_i : d_ic \Rightarrow cd_i, \quad \epsilon_i : d_ie_i \Rightarrow 1, \quad \delta_i : d_ib \Rightarrow bd_i.
\]

Squier proves the following properties for the monoid \( S_1 \) in [328, Theorem 6.7, Corollary 6.8]. The proof is reworked in [233, Section 6] and in [165, Section 6] using polygraphs.

\textbf{8.2.4 Theorem.} The monoid \( S_1 \) is a finitely presented monoid that has the following properties.

1. It has a decidable word problem.
2. It does not have finite derivation type.
3. It does not have a finite convergent presentation.

\textbf{Proof.} The monoid \( S_1 \) has the following infinite presentation:

\[ P = \langle \star \mid a, b, c, d, e \mid \alpha_n, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \epsilon \rangle_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \]

with

\[ \alpha_n : ac^n b \Rightarrow 1, \quad \beta : da \Rightarrow acd, \quad \gamma : dc \Rightarrow cd, \quad \epsilon : de \Rightarrow 1, \quad \delta : db \Rightarrow bd. \]

This presentation is infinite, so that the normal-form algorithm of §4.2.4 cannot be applied to decide the word problem in the monoid \( S_1 \). However, the sources of the 2-generators \( \alpha_n \) are the elements of the regular language \( ac^n b \). This implies that the sources of the 2-generators of the polygraph \( P \) form a regular language over the finite set \( \{a, b, c, d, e\} \). Following [294, Proposition 3.6], this implies that the word problem for \( S_1 \) is decidable, which proves Condition 1.

The Condition 3 is a consequence of Condition 2 and Theorem 8.2.1.

We sketch the main arguments of the proof of Condition 2, and we refer to [328] for the original proof and to [165, Section 6] for the proof presented here. We denote by \( \gamma_n : dc^n \Rightarrow e^n d \) the 2-cell of \( P_2^* \) defined by induction on \( n \) as follows:

\[ \gamma_0 = 1_x \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_{n+1} = \gamma e^n \star_1 c \gamma_n. \]

For every \( n \), we write \( \phi_n : dac^n b \Rightarrow ac^{n+1} bd \) the following composite in \( P_1^* \):

\[ dac^n b \xrightarrow{\beta c^n b} acdc^n b \xrightarrow{ac \gamma_n b} ac^{n+1} db \xrightarrow{ac^{n+1} \delta} ac^{n+1} bd. \]
Considering for every natural number \( n \geq 0 \), the following 2-sphere of \( P_2^T \):

\[
\phi_n e \xrightarrow{ac^{n+1}bde} ac^{n+1}b \xrightarrow{\alpha \gamma_1} \alpha \gamma_1 \xrightarrow{de} 1
\]

we prove that the monoid \( S_1 \) admits the following finite presentation

\[
Q = \langle \ast \mid a, b, c, d, e \mid \alpha_0, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \varepsilon \rangle.
\]

We also prove that the 2-polygraph \( P \) is convergent and the Squier completion of \( P \) contains a 3-generator \( A_n \) with shape

\[
dac^n b \xrightarrow{\alpha \gamma_1} \alpha \gamma_1 \xrightarrow{d} \tilde{A}_n
\]

for every natural number \( n \). In order to show that the monoid \( S_1 \) does not have FDT, by Theorem 8.1.2, it is sufficient to check that the polygraph \( Q \) admits no finite acyclic cellular extension. We denote by \( g : P^T \to Q^T \) the projection that sends the 2-cells \( \beta, \gamma, \delta \) and \( \varepsilon \) to themselves and whose value on \( \alpha_n \) is given by induction on \( n \), thanks to (8.1), i.e.,

\[
g(\alpha_0) = \alpha \quad \text{and} \quad g(\alpha_{n+1}) = (\phi_n e \ast ac^{n+1}be)^{-1} \ast d f(\alpha_n) e \ast \varepsilon.
\]

By application of Theorem 7.1.6 to the canonical inclusion \( f : Q^T \to P^T \) and \( g \) defined above, we deduce that the monoid \( S_1 \) admits the coherent presentation

\[
\tilde{Q} = \langle \ast \mid a, b, c, d, e \mid \alpha_0, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \varepsilon \mid \tilde{A}_n \rangle_{n \in \mathbb{N}}
\]

where \( \tilde{A}_n \) is the 3-generator

\[
dac^n b \xrightarrow{\alpha \gamma_1} \alpha \gamma_1 \xrightarrow{d g(\alpha_n)} \tilde{A}_n
\]

By studying the relations among 3-cells in the 3-category generated by the coherent presentation \( \tilde{Q} \) in terms of generating critical, see §7.5.5, we show that the polygraph \( Q \) is not Tietze equivalent to a polygraph having FDT.
Following Theorem 8.1.2, this shows that the monoid $S_1$ does not have FDT. We refer to [165] for more details on this proof. □

8.2.5 Higher-dimensional finite derivation type. With the aim of characterizing the class of finite presented decidable monoids admitting a finite convergent presentation, some refinements of the FDT condition were introduced, such as the 2-dimensional FDT property [274], and the infinite-dimensional FDT property [163], see also §23.4.1. Note that the characterization of this class by finiteness conditions is still an open problem.

8.3 Identities among relations

The 3-generators in a coherent presentation are closely related to the notion of identity among relations, which originates in the work of Peiffer and Reidemeister in combinatorial group theory [295, 310]. This notion is based on the one of crossed module, introduced by Whitehead, in algebraic topology, for the classification of homotopy 2-types [354, 355]. There exist several formulations of identities for presentations of groups: as homological 2-syzygies [64], as homotopical 2-syzygies [252], or as Igusa’s pictures [252, 212]. One can also interpret identities as the critical pairs of a presentation of a group by a convergent string rewriting system [100]. The latter approach yields an algorithm based on Knuth-Bendix’s completion procedure that computes a family of generators of the module of identities among relations [179].

In this section, we introduce the notion of identity among relations for a 2-polygraph. We relate the property for a polygraph of having a finite generating set of identities among relations to the property of having abelian finite derivation type. First, let us recall the notion of natural system used in this section.

8.3.1 Natural system. The category of factorizations of a small category $C$ is the category, denoted by FC, whose 0-cells are the 1-cells of $C$ and whose 1-cells from $w$ to $w'$ are pairs $(u, v)$ of 1-cells of $C$ such that the following diagram commutes in $C$:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\text{w} \\
\downarrow^u \\
\text{w'} \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
\text{v} \\
\end{array}
$$

The triple $(u, v, w)$ is called a factorization of $w'$. A natural system on $C$ is a functor $D : FC \to \text{Ab}$ with values in the category $\text{Ab}$ of abelian groups.
8.3 Identities among relations

We will denote by $D_w$ the abelian group which is the image of $w$ by $D$. The category of natural systems is denoted $\text{Nat}(C, \text{Ab})$. We refer to §F.2.2 for more details on this notion.

8.3.2 Identities among relations. Let $P$ be a 2-polygraph. We define the natural system $\Pi(P)$ on the presented category $\overline{P}$ of identities among relations of $P$ as follows.

- If $u$ is a 1-cell of $\overline{P}$, the abelian group $\Pi(P)_u$ is generated by one element $\lfloor \phi \rfloor$, for each 2-cell $\phi : v \Rightarrow \nu$ of the $(2, 1)$-category $P^\top$ such that $\overline{v} = u$, and subject to the relation
  \[ \lfloor \phi \ast_1 \psi \rfloor = \lfloor \phi \rfloor + \lfloor \psi \rfloor, \]  
  \[ (8.2) \]
  for every 2-cells $\phi : v \Rightarrow \nu$ and $\psi : \nu \Rightarrow \nu$ of $P^\top$, with $\overline{\nu} = u$, and
  \[ \lfloor \phi \ast_1 \psi \rfloor = \lfloor \psi \ast_1 \phi \rfloor, \]
  \[ (8.3) \]
  for every 2-cells $\phi : v \Rightarrow \nu$ and $\psi : \nu \Rightarrow \nu$ of $P^\top$, with $\overline{\nu} = \overline{\nu} = u$.

- If $w' = uuv$ is a factorization in $\overline{P}$, then the homomorphism of groups $\Pi(P)_{(u,v)} : \Pi(P)_w \rightarrow \Pi(P)_{w'}$ is defined by
  \[ \Pi(P)_{(u,v)}(\lfloor \phi \rfloor) = [\overline{\phi} \overline{v}], \]
  where $\overline{u}$ and $\overline{v}$ are any representative 1-cells of $u$ and $v$ in $P_1^*$ respectively.

Note that the value of $\Pi(P)_{(u,v)}$ does not depend on the choice of the representative 1-cells $\overline{u}$ and $\overline{v}$. This proves that $\Pi(P)$ is a natural system on $\overline{P}$. We will often write $[u\phi v]$ instead of $[\overline{u}\phi \overline{v}]$.

As consequence of the defining relations of each group $\Pi(P)_u$, the relations
\[ 1_u = 0, \quad \lfloor \phi^- \rfloor = -\lfloor \phi \rfloor, \quad \text{and} \quad \lfloor \psi \ast_1 \phi \ast_1 \psi^- \rfloor = \lfloor \phi \rfloor \]
hold for every 1-cell $u$ and every 2-cells $\phi : u \Rightarrow u$ and $\psi : v \Rightarrow u$ of the free $(2, 1)$-category $P^\top$.

8.3.3 Loops and cellular extensions. In some situations, it is helpful to consider cellular extensions by the means of 2-loops in a 2-category $C$, i.e., 2-cells $\phi$ such that $s_1(\phi) = t_1(\phi)$. The following result will be useful in the sequel.

8.3.4 Lemma. Let $C$ be a $(2, 1)$-category and let $Y$ be a family of 2-loops in $C$. The following assertions are equivalent.

1. The cellular extension $\overline{Y} := \{ \overline{\beta} : \beta \Rightarrow 1_{s_1(\beta)}, \beta \in Y \}$ of $C$ is acyclic.

2. Every 2-loop $\phi$ in $C$ has a decomposition
  \[ \phi = (\psi_1 \ast_1 u \beta^\top_1 v_1 \ast_1 \psi_1^{-1}) \ast_1 \cdots \ast_1 \left( \psi_\rho \ast_1 u_\rho \beta^\rho_\rho v_\rho \ast_1 \psi_\rho^{-1} \right) \]
  \[ (8.4) \]
Categories of finite derivation type

with, for every $1 \leq i \leq p$, $\beta_i$ in $Y$, $\epsilon_i$ in $\{-,\}$. $u_i, v_i$ 1-cells of $C$ and $\psi_i$ a 2-cell of $C$.

Proof. Suppose that $C$ is $\bar{Y}$-acyclic. Given a closed 2-cell $\phi : w \Rightarrow w$ in $C$, by hypothesis there exists a 3-cell $A : \phi \Rightarrow 1_w$ in $C(\bar{Y})$. In the $(3, 1)$-category $C(\bar{Y})$ the 3-cell $A$ can be decomposed into

$$A = A_1 + A_2 \ldots + A_k,$$

where each $A_i$ is a 3-cell of $C(\bar{Y})$ that contains exactly one generating 3-cell of $Y$. Thus each 3-cell $A_i$ has the shape

$$\psi_i \ast u_i \beta_i v_i \ast 1 \ast \psi_i'$$

with $\beta_i \in Y$, $\epsilon_i \in \{-,\}$, $u_i, v_i$ 1-cells of $C$ and $\psi_i, \psi_i'$, 2-cells of $C$. By hypothesis on $A$, we have $\phi = s_2(A)$, hence $\phi = \psi_1 \ast u_1 s_2(\beta_1 v_1) v_1 \ast 1 \ast \psi_1'$. For $\epsilon_1 = +$, we have:

$$\phi = \psi_1 \ast u_1 \beta_1 v_1 \ast 1 \ast \psi_1' = (\psi_1 \ast u_1 \beta_1 v_1 \ast 1 \ast \psi_1') \ast 1 \ast (\psi_1 \ast 1 \ast \psi_1') = (\psi_1 \ast u_1 \beta_1 v_1 \ast 1 \ast \psi_1') \ast 1 \ast s_2(A_2).$$

And, for $\epsilon_1 = -$, we have:

$$\phi = \psi_1 \ast 1 \ast \psi_1' = (\psi_1 \ast 1 \ast \psi_1') \ast 1 \ast (\psi_1 \ast u_1 \beta_1 v_1 \ast 1 \ast \psi_1') = (\psi_1 \ast 1 \ast \psi_1') \ast 1 \ast s_2(A_2).$$

We proceed by induction on $k$ to prove that $\phi$ has a decomposition as in (8.4).

Conversely, we assume that every closed 2-cell $\phi$ in $C$ has a decomposition as in (8.4). Then we have $\phi \simeq \bar{Y} 1_{s(\phi)}(\phi)$ for every closed 2-cell $\phi$ in $C$. Let us consider two parallel 2-cells $\phi$ and $\psi$ in $C$. Then $\phi \ast \psi$ is a closed 2-cell, yielding $\phi \ast \psi \simeq \bar{Y} 1_{s(\phi)}(\phi)$. We compose both members by $\psi$ on the right hand to get $\phi \simeq \bar{Y} \psi$. Thus $\bar{Y}$ is a homotopy basis of $C$. 

\[8.3.5\] Abelian finite derivation type. A $(2, 1)$-category $C$ is called abelian if, for every 1-cell $u$ of $C$, the group $\text{Aut}_{\text{ab}}^u$ of 2-loops of $C$ with source $u$ is abelian. For $C$ a $(2, 1)$-category, its abelianization $C_{\text{ab}}$ is the quotient of $C$ by the cellular extension that contains one 2-sphere $\phi \ast 1 \psi \Rightarrow \psi \ast 1 \phi$ for every 2-loops $\phi$ and $\psi$ of $C$ with the same source.

One says that a 2-polygraph $P$ has abelian finite derivation type, or $\text{FDT}_{\text{ab}}$ for short, when the abelian $(2, 1)$-category $P_{\text{ab}}^\tau$ admits a finite acyclic extension.
8.3 Identities among relations

8.3.6 Proposition. Given a 2-polygraph \( P \), there exists an isomorphism of natural systems on the free category \( P_1^* \):

\[
\Pi(P)_\pi(\cdot) \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Aut}_{\pi(\cdot)}^{P_1^*},
\]

(8.5)

Proof. For a 1-cell \( u \) of \( P_{ab}^* \), we define the morphism of groups

\[
\Phi_u : \Pi(P)_\pi \to \text{Aut}_{\pi(\cdot)}^{P_1^*}
\]

given on generators by \( \Phi_u([\phi]) = \phi^\psi \), where \( \phi \) is a 2-loop of \( P_1^* \) on a 1-cell \( v \) such that \( \overline{v} = \overline{u} \) and \( \psi : v \Rightarrow u \) is any 2-cell of \( P_{ab}^* \). The morphism \( \Phi_u \) is well-defined. Indeed, it is independent of the choice of \( \psi \), and its definition is compatible with the relations (8.2) and (8.3) defining \( \Pi(P)_\pi \).

For the relation (8.2), let \( \phi_1 \) and \( \phi_2 \) be 2-loops of \( P_{ab}^* \) on a 1-cell \( v \) such that \( \overline{v} = \overline{u} \) and let \( \psi : v \Rightarrow u \) be an 2-cell of \( P_{ab}^* \). Then,

\[
\Phi_u([\phi_1 *_1 \phi_2]) = (\phi_1 *_1 \phi_2)^\psi
= \phi_1^\psi *_1 \phi_2^\psi
= \Phi_u([\phi_1]) *_1 \Phi_u([\phi_2])
= \Phi_u([\phi_1] + [\phi_2]).
\]

For the relation (8.3), we fix 2-cells \( \phi_1 : v_1 \Rightarrow v_2, \phi_2 : v_2 \Rightarrow v_1 \) and \( \psi : v_1 \Rightarrow u \), with \( \overline{\psi} = \overline{\phi_1} = \overline{\phi_2} = \overline{u} \). Then,

\[
\Phi_u([\phi_1 *_1 \phi_2]) = (\phi_1 *_1 \phi_2)^\psi
= (\phi_1^- *_1 \phi_1) *_1 (\phi_2 *_1 \phi_1) *_1 (\phi_1^- *_1 \psi)
= (\phi_2 *_1 \phi_1)^{\psi^- *_1 \phi_1}
= \Phi_u([\phi_2 *_1 \phi_1]).
\]

Thus \( \Phi_u \) is a morphism of groups from \( \Pi(P)_\pi \) to \( \text{Aut}_{\pi(\cdot)}^{P_1^*} \). Moreover, it admits \( \phi \mapsto [\phi] \) as inverse and, as a consequence, is an isomorphism.

Let us prove that \( \Phi_u \) is natural in \( u \). Let \( K \) be a context of \( P_1^* \) such that \( v = K[u] \), and prove the equality of the two morphisms \( \Phi_v \circ \Pi(P)_\pi \overline{u} \) and \( \text{Aut}_{\pi(\cdot)}^{K} \circ \Phi_u \). Let \( \phi \) be a 2-loop of \( P_{ab}^* \) with source \( u' \) such that \( \overline{u'} = \overline{u} \). We fix a 2-cell \( \psi : u' \Rightarrow u \) in \( P_{ab}^* \) and consider the 2-cell \( K[\psi] : K[u'] \Rightarrow v \) of \( P_{ab}^* \).
Then, we have

\[
\Phi_u \circ \Pi(P)_{\overline{\mathcal{P}}}([\phi]) = (K[\phi])^K[\psi]
\]

\[
= K[\psi^{-1}] *_1 K[\phi] *_1 K[\psi]
\]

\[
= K[\psi^{-1} \phi *_1 \psi]
\]

\[
= K[\phi^\psi]
\]

\[
= \text{Aut}_{K^\psi}^P \circ \Phi_u([\phi]). \quad \Box
\]

Proposition 8.3.6 characterizes the natural system \(\Pi(P)\) on the category \(\overline{P}\) up to isomorphism. Using this characterization, we deduce the following result.

8.3.7 Proposition. A 2-polygraph \(P\) has FDT\(_{ab}\) if and only if the natural system \(\Pi(P)\) is finitely generated.

Proof. Suppose that the 2-polygraph \(P\) has FDT\(_{ab}\). Then the abelian (2, 1)-category \(P_{ab}^T\) admits a finite acyclic extension \(X\). Given a 3-generator \(A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi\) in \(X\), we write \(\partial A = \phi *_2 \psi^{-1}\) and \(\partial X = \{\partial A \mid A \in X\}\) for the set of 2-loops of \(P_{ab}^T\) associated to 3-generators in \(X\).

By Lemma 8.3.4, any 2-loop \(\phi\) can be written in \(P_{ab}^T\) as

\[
\phi = (\psi_1 *_1 u_{11} \partial A_{i_1} \epsilon_{i_1} v_{11} *_1 \psi_i^{-1}) *_1 \ldots *_1 (\psi_p *_1 u_{1p} \partial A_{i_p} \epsilon_{i_p} v_{1p} *_1 \psi_i^{-1}),
\]

with, for every \(1 \leq i \leq p\), \(A_i\) in \(X\), \(\epsilon_i\) in \([-1, +1]\), \(u_i, v_i\) 1-cells of \(P_{ab}^T\) and \(\psi_i\) a 2-cell of the free (2, 1)-category \(P^T\). As a consequence, for any \([\phi]\) in \(\Pi(P)\), we have the following decomposition:

\[
[\phi] = \sum_{i=1}^k (-1)^i \left[ \psi_i *_1 u_i \partial A_i \epsilon_i v_i *_1 \psi_i^{-1} \right] = \sum_{i=1}^k (-1)^i \mu_i \left[ \partial A_i \right] \tilde{v}_i.
\]

Thus, the elements of \([\partial X]\) form a finite generating set for the natural system of abelian groups \(\Pi(P)\).

Conversely, suppose that the natural system \(\Pi(P)\) is finitely generated. There exists a finite set \(X\) of 2-loops of the abelian (2, 1)-category \(P_{ab}^T\) such that, for every 1-cell \(\overline{u}\) of \(\overline{P}\) and every 2-loop \(\phi\) with source \(w\) of \(P_{ab}^T\) such that \(\overline{w} = \overline{u}\), one can write

\[
[\phi] = \sum_{i=1}^p e_i \mu_i \left[ \alpha_i \right] \tilde{v}_i,
\]

with, for every \(1 \leq i \leq p\), \(\alpha_i\) in \(X\), \(e_i\) an integer and \(u_i, v_i\) 1-cells of \(\overline{P}\) such that, for every representative \(\tilde{u}_i\) of \(\overline{u}_i\) and \(\tilde{v}_i\) of \(\overline{v}_i\) in \(P_{ab}^T\), \(u_i \alpha_i \tilde{u}_i\) is a 2-loop of \(P_{ab}^T\) whose source \(w\) that satisfies \(\overline{w} = \overline{u}\). We fix, for every \(i\), a 2-cell \(\psi_i : w \Rightarrow w_i\)
8.3 Identities among relations

in $P^\top$. Then, the properties of $\Pi(P)$ imply:

$$\lfloor \phi \rfloor = \sum_{i=1}^{p} \lfloor \psi_i * 1 \tilde{u}_i \alpha_i^f \tilde{v}_i * 1 \psi_i^- \rfloor$$

$$= \left[ \lfloor \psi_1 * 1 \tilde{u}_1 \alpha_1^f \tilde{v}_1 * 1 \psi_1^- \rfloor \cdot \ldots \cdot 1 \lfloor \psi_p * 1 \tilde{u}_p \alpha_p^f \tilde{v}_p * 1 \psi_p^- \rfloor \right].$$

We use the isomorphism (8.5) and Lemma 8.3.4 to deduce that the cellular extension $\{ A_\alpha : \alpha \Rightarrow 1_{s(\alpha)} \mid \alpha \in X \}$ of $P^\top_{ab}$ is acyclic, proving that the 2-polygraph $P$ has FDT$_{ab}$.

The following result states that the property of being finitely generated for $\Pi(P)$ is Tietze invariant for polygraphs $P$ having a finite set of 2-generators [164, Proposition 2.3.5].

8.3.8 Proposition. Let $P$ and $Q$ be two Tietze equivalent 2-polygraphs such that $P_2$ and $Q_2$ are finite. Then the natural system $\Pi(P)$ is finitely generated if and only if the natural system $\Pi(Q)$ is finitely generated.

From this result and Proposition 8.3.7, we deduce that the property FDT$_{ab}$ is Tietze invariant for finite polygraphs. As a consequence, we can define a category FDT$_{ab}$ if it admits a presentation by a finite 2-polygraph having FDT$_{ab}$.

We conclude this chapter with a remarkable properties of the natural system of identities among relations from [164, Proposition 2.4.2], which is a consequence of Squier’s homotopical theorem. By Theorem 7.3.5, the set of generating confluences of a convergent 2-polygraph $P$ forms an acyclic extension of the (2,1)-category $P^\top$. Following the proof of Proposition 8.3.7, we transform this extension into a generating set for the natural system $\Pi(P)$, proving the following result.

8.3.9 Theorem. Let $P$ be a convergent 2-polygraph. The natural system $\Pi(P)$ is generated by the generating confluences of $P$.
The main purpose of algebraic topology is the classification of topological spaces and continuous maps by means of discrete algebraic invariants preserving homotopy equivalence. Among those invariants, a particularly important one is homology, which assigns to each space a sequence of abelian groups. Starting from very geometric insights, homology has developed into a whole body of concepts and methods known as homological algebra, and has been applied to the study of various algebraic structures, including groups and monoids [260]. For instance, the homology of a monoid is defined by first building a resolution of it, that is, an exact sequence of left-modules over the ring generated by the monoid, ending at the trivial module. Of course the soundness of this definition is based on the fact that the homology does not depend on the choice of the resolution.

Squier showed in his 1987 article [326] that a convergent presentation $P$ of a monoid $M$ yields a partial resolution generated by the set $P_1$ of generators in dimension 1, by the set $P_2$ of rules in dimension 2 and by the critical branchings in dimension 3. If moreover the presentation $P$ is finite, the Squier resolution is finitely generated up to dimension 3. In this case, we say that the monoid $M$ is of homological type left-$\text{FP}_3$. This property readily implies that the third integral homology group $H_3(M, \mathbb{Z})$ of the monoid is finitely generated. Therefore, a monoid whose third homology group is not finitely generated does not admit a finite convergent presentation. By explicitly exhibiting an example of this type, Squier first provided a negative answer to the question of universality of convergent rewriting.

The homological finiteness condition is of course linked to the homotopical one discussed in the previous chapter. Indeed, we will prove that for a monoid, the property of having FDT implies the property of having left-$\text{FP}_3$ (Theorem 9.3.4). In this sense, the homological finiteness condition is weaker than
9.1 Monoids of finite homological type

9.1.1 Monoid ring. Let $M$ be a monoid. The ring generated by $M$ is the free abelian group over $M$, denoted by $\mathbb{Z}M$. Its elements are formal sums $\sum_{u \in M} n_u u$ of elements $u$ of $M$ with coefficients $n_u \in \mathbb{Z}$, finitely many of which are non-zero, and it is equipped with the canonical extension of the product of $M$:

$$\left( \sum_{u \in M} n_u u \right) \left( \sum_{v \in M} n_v v \right) = \sum_{u, v \in M} n_u n_v u v = \sum_{w \in M} \left( \sum_{u v = w} n_u n_v \right) w.$$

This construction coincides with the one of the free $\mathbb{Z}$-module, thus the notation.

9.1.2 Free modules. Given a monoid $M$ and a set $X$, we write $\mathbb{Z}M[X]$ for the free left $\mathbb{Z}M$-module generated by $X$: its elements are formal sums of the form

$$\sum_{u \in M, x \in X} n_{u,x} u[x]$$

with $n_{u,x} \in \mathbb{Z}$, finitely many of which are non-zero, and other operations are defined in the expected way. Any function $f : X \to C$, where $C$ is a $\mathbb{Z}M$-module extends uniquely as a morphism of $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules $f : \mathbb{Z}M[X] \to C$. Note that any $\mathbb{Z}M$-module is also canonically a $\mathbb{Z}$-module.
9.1.3 Resolutions. If $M$ is a monoid, the trivial $\mathbb{Z}M$-module is the abelian group $\mathbb{Z}$ equipped with the trivial action $an = n$, for every $a$ in $M$ and $n$ in $\mathbb{Z}$. A partial resolution of length $n$ of this trivial module consists of a chain complex

$$C_n \xrightarrow{d_n} C_{n-1} \xrightarrow{d_{n-1}} \cdots \xrightarrow{d_2} C_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} C_0 \xrightarrow{d_0} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0 \quad (9.1)$$

where, for $0 \leq k \leq n$, the $C_k$ are left $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules, and the $d_k$ are $\mathbb{Z}M$-linear maps making the complex exact. By convention, $C_{-1} = \mathbb{Z}$ and $d_{-1} : \mathbb{Z} \to 0$ is the terminal map. The main properties on resolutions that we use in this chapter are recalled in §E.3.

A contracting homotopy of a chain complex of the form (9.1) is a sequence

$$C_n \xleftarrow{i_n} C_{n-1} \xleftarrow{i_{n-1}} \cdots \xleftarrow{i_2} C_1 \xleftarrow{i_1} C_0 \xleftarrow{i_0} \mathbb{Z}$$

where the $i_k$ are $\mathbb{Z}$-linear maps for $0 \leq k \leq n$, and such that

$$d_k \circ i_k + i_{k-1} \circ d_{k-1} = 1_{C_{k-1}}$$

holds for $0 \leq k \leq n$, see §E.2.6 for details. By convention, $i_{-1} : 0 \to \mathbb{Z}$ is the initial map. Any chain complex of the form (9.1) equipped with a contracting homotopy is necessarily a partial resolution, see Proposition E.2.7.

9.1.4 Homological type left-$FP_n$. A monoid $M$ has homological type left-$FP_n$ (where $FP_n$ stands for “finitely $n$-presented”), for a natural number $n$, if there exists a partial resolution of length $n$ of the trivial $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}$ of the form (9.1), where the $C_i$ are projective modules which are finitely generated. A monoid $M$ has homological type left-$FP_\infty$ if it has homological type left-$FP_n$ for all $n \geq 0$.

We will use the following characterization given by Proposition F.3.6: a monoid $M$ has homological type left-$FP_n$ if and only if there exists a free, finitely generated partial resolution of the trivial $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}$ of length $n$:

$$F_n \longrightarrow F_{n-1} \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow F_0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}. \quad (9.2)$$

9.1.5 Finiteness homological type and homology. For a monoid $M$, having homological type left-$FP_n$ implies a finiteness property on its homology modules. First, we recall the definition of homology of a monoid and we refer to §E.4 for more details. Given a free resolution

$$\cdots \longrightarrow F_{n+1} \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}} F_n \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow F_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} F_0 \xrightarrow{e} \mathbb{Z}$$
of the trivial $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}$ by left $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules, the operation of tensoring by the trivial right $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}$ gives the following complex of $\mathbb{Z}$-modules:

$$
\cdots \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} F_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\tilde{d}_{n+1}} \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} F_n \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} F_1 \xrightarrow{\tilde{d}_1} \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} F_0
$$

where $\tilde{d}_k$ denotes the map $1_{\mathbb{Z}M} \otimes d_k$, for all $k \geq 1$. The $n$-th homology group of $M$ with integral coefficient $\mathbb{Z}$ is defined as the following $\mathbb{Z}$-module:

$$
H_n(M, \mathbb{Z}) = \ker \tilde{d}_n / \text{im} \tilde{d}_{n+1},
$$

with the convention that $\tilde{d}_0 = 0$. By definition, for any monoid $M$, we have $H_0(M, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}$.

Now, suppose that the monoid $M$ has homological type left-FP$_n$ and consider a resolution of $M$ of the form (9.2). Then the $\mathbb{Z}$-modules $\mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} F_i$ are finitely generated for $0 \leq i \leq n$. This proves the following result.

**9.1.6 Proposition.** If a monoid $M$ has homological type left-FP$_n$ for some $n \in \mathbb{N}$, then the groups $H_k(M, \mathbb{Z})$ are finitely generated for $0 \leq k \leq n$.

**9.1.7 Homological type left-FP$_0$.** Let $M$ be a monoid. We write $P_0 = \{\star\}$ for a set with one element. We have that $\mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \cong \mathbb{Z}M$ and sometimes implicitly identify the elements of these two modules. The **augmentation map** of $\mathbb{Z}M$ is the morphism of $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules

$$
\varepsilon : \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}
$$

defined by $\varepsilon(u) = 1$ for any $u$ in $\mathbb{Z}M$. The augmentation map is clearly surjective and thus the sequence

$$
\mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{} 0
$$

is exact. It follows that every monoid has homological type left-FP$_0$.

**9.1.8 Homological type left-FP$_1$.** Let $P$ be a presentation of a monoid $M$. We define a free partial resolution of length 1 of the trivial $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}$ by $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules

$$
\mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \xrightarrow{d_1} \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{} 0
$$

where the morphism $\varepsilon$ is the augmentation map and the morphism $d_1$ is defined, on any generator $[a]$, by

$$
d_1([a]) = a - 1.
$$

A section of the canonical projection $\pi : P_1^+ \rightarrow M$ is a map $M \rightarrow P_1^+$ sending every $u$ in $M$ to a 1-cell $\tilde{a}$ of $P_1^+$ such that $\pi(\tilde{a}) = u$. In general, we do not assume
homological syzygies and confluence

that the chosen section is functorial, i.e., that $\widehat{uv} = \widehat{u} \widehat{v}$ holds in $P^*$. However, we assume that $\widehat{1} = 1$. For a 1-cell $u$ of $P^*_1$, we simply write $\widehat{u}$ for $\widehat{u}$.

**9.1.9 Proposition.** If a monoid $M$ is finitely generated, then it has homological type left-$\text{FP}_1$, and thus the group $H_1(M, \mathbb{Z})$ is finitely generated.

**Proof.** We first note that the sequence is a chain complex. Indeed, exactness at $\mathbb{Z}$ was already observed in §9.1.7. Moreover, we have

$$εd_1[a] = ε(\widehat{a}) - ε(1) = 1 - 1 = 0$$

for every 1-generator $a$ of $P$. In order to prove exactness at $\mathbb{Z}M[P_0]$, as explained in §9.1.3, we construct contracting homotopies

$$i_0 : \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \quad \text{and} \quad i_1 : \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_1]$$

as follows. The morphism $i_0$ is simply defined by $i_0(1) = 1$ and extended by linearity. As for $i_1$, we first need to extend the bracket map $[-] : P_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_1]$ to a map $[-] : P^*_1 \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_1]$. This is done by induction on the length of the words in $P^*_1$ by setting

$$[1] = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad [aw] = [a] + \overline{a}[w].$$

for $a \in P_1$ and $w \in P^*_1$ (technically, we extend the map as a derivation, see §4.4.13). It follows that the equation

$$d_1([w]) = \overline{w} - 1$$

holds for all elements $w$ of $P^*_1$, not just for generators. We reason by induction on the length of the words in $P^*_1$. One first has $d_1([1]) = 0 = 1 - 1$. Let now $a \in P_1$ and $w \in P^*_1$ such that the equation (9.3) holds for $w$. Then

$$d_1([aw]) = d_1([a]) + \overline{a}d_1([w]) = \overline{a} - 1 + \overline{a} (\overline{w} - 1) = \overline{aw} - 1.$$

Now, we choose a section and define the morphism $i_1$ by setting

$$i_1(u) = [\widehat{u}]$$

and extending it by linearity. Finally, for any $u \in M$, we have $i_0ε(u) = 1$ and

$$d_1i_1(u) = d_1[\widehat{u}] = \overline{u} - 1 = u - 1.$$

Thus, $d_1i_1 + i_0ε = 1_{\mathbb{Z}M}$ and $i_0, i_1$ are a contracting homotopies. □
9.2 Monoids having homological type left-FP₂

9.2.1 Presentations and partial resolutions of length 2. Let $P$ be a presentation of a monoid $M$. We define a partial resolution of length 2 of the trivial $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}$ by free $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules

$$\mathbb{Z}[P_2] \xrightarrow{d_2} \mathbb{Z}[P_1] \xrightarrow{d_1} \mathbb{Z}[P_0] \xrightarrow{\epsilon} \mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{} 0.$$ 

The morphisms $\epsilon$ and $d_1$ are those defined in the previous section. The morphism $d_2$ is defined, on generators of $\mathbb{Z}[P_2]$, by

$$d_2([\alpha]) = [s(\alpha)] - [t(\alpha)],$$

for every $\alpha$ in $P_2$, and called the Reidemeister-Fox Jacobian of the presentation $P$.

9.2.2 Normalization strategies. Let $P$ be a 2-polygraph with a given section. A normalization strategy $\sigma$ for $P$ is a map

$$\sigma : P^*_1 \rightarrow P^T_2$$

that sends every 1-cell $w$ of $P^*_1$ to a 2-cell

$$\sigma(w) : w \Rightarrow \tilde{w}$$

in $P^T_2$, such that $\sigma(\tilde{w}) = 1_{\tilde{w}}$ holds for every 1-cell $w$ of $P^*_1$. A normalisation strategy $\sigma$ is a left (resp. right) one if it also satisfies

$$\sigma(\tilde{w}v) = \sigma(w)v \star_1 \sigma(\tilde{w}v) \quad \text{(resp. } \sigma(wv) = w\sigma(v) \star_1 \sigma(w\tilde{v}) \text{)}$$

that is

$$\sigma(\tilde{w}v) = \begin{cases} w \xrightarrow{\sigma(\tilde{w})} \tilde{w} \xrightarrow{\sigma(v)} v \quad \text{(resp. } \sigma(wv) = \begin{cases} w \xrightarrow{\sigma(w\tilde{v})} \tilde{w} \xrightarrow{\sigma(v)} v \end{cases} \text{)}\end{cases}.$$

A 2-polygraph $P$ always admits left and right normalisation strategies. Let us prove this in the left case, the right case being treated in the same way. Let us arbitrarily choose a 2-cell $\sigma(wa) : wa \Rightarrow \tilde{w}a$ in $P^T_2$, for every 1-cell $w$ of $P^*_1$ and every 1-generator $a$ of $P$, such that $\tilde{w} = w$ and $\tilde{a} \neq wa$. Then we extend $\sigma$ into a left normalisation strategy by setting $\sigma(w) = 1_w$ if $\tilde{w} = w$ (which implies $\sigma(1) = 1$), and

$$\sigma(w) = \sigma(v)a \star_1 \sigma(\tilde{w}a)$$

if $\tilde{w} \neq w$ and $w = va$ with $v$ in $P^*_1$ and $a$ in $P_1$. 
9.2.3 Proposition. Let $M$ be a monoid and let $P$ be a presentation of $M$. The sequence of $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules

$$\mathbb{Z}M[P_2] \xrightarrow{d_1} \mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \xrightarrow{d_1} \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow 0$$

is a partial free resolution of length 2 of $\mathbb{Z}$.

Proof. In Proposition 9.1.9, we have proved the exactness at $\mathbb{Z}$ and $\mathbb{Z}M[P_0]$, and exactness at $\mathbb{Z}M[P_1]$ remains to be shown. The equation $d_1d_2 = 0$ is a consequence of (9.3). Indeed, we have

$$d_1d_2[\alpha] = d_1[s(\alpha)] - d_1[t(\alpha)] = \overline{s(\alpha)} - \overline{i(\alpha)} = 0,$$

for every 2-generator $\alpha$ of $P$, where the last equality comes from the equality $\overline{s(\alpha)} = \overline{i(\alpha)}$, which holds because $P$ is a presentation of $M$.

In order to prove the exactness at $\mathbb{Z}M[P_1]$, we construct a contracting homotopy of the complex. The morphisms of $\mathbb{Z}$-modules $i_0$ and $i_1$ are defined in the proof of Proposition 9.1.9, and the morphism of $\mathbb{Z}$-modules

$$i_2 : \mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_2]$$

is defined by fixing a left normalization strategy $\sigma$ for the 2-polygraph $P$. Namely, we define the morphism of $\mathbb{Z}$-modules $i_2$ by its value on generic elements

$$i_2(u[a]) = [\sigma(\bar{u}a)],$$

where the bracket $[\cdot]$ is extended to every 2-cell of the free (2, 1)-category $P^\tau$ by the following relations

$$[1_u] = 0, \quad [u\psi v] = \overline{\psi(u\phi)} \overline{v}, \quad [\phi \ast_1 \psi] = [\phi] + [\psi],$$

for all 1-cells $u$ and $v$ and 2-cells $\phi$ and $\psi$ of $P^\tau$ such that the composite $\phi \ast_1 \psi$ are defined.

We have, on the one hand,

$$i_1d_1(u[a]) = i_1(u\bar{a} - u) = [\bar{u}a] - [\bar{u}],$$

and, on the other hand,

$$d_2i_2(u[a]) = d_2[\sigma(\bar{u}a)] = [\bar{u}a] - [\bar{u}a] = u[a] + [\bar{u}] - [\bar{u}a].$$

For the equality in the middle, one proves that $d_2[\phi] = [s(\phi)] - [t(\phi)]$ holds for every 2-cell $\phi$ of $P^\tau$ by induction on the size of $\phi$. Hence we have

$$d_2i_2 + i_1d_1 = 1_{\mathbb{Z}M[P_1]},$$

thus concluding the proof. □
The previous proposition allows us to deduce:

9.2.4 Proposition. If a monoid $M$ admits a finite presentation, then it has homological type left-$\text{FP}_2$, and thus the group $H_2(M, \mathbb{Z})$ is finitely generated.

9.2.5 Homological 2-syzygies. The kernel of the morphism $d_2$ defined in §9.2.1 is called the $\mathbb{Z}M$-module of homological 2-syzygies of the 2-polygraph $P$. Using natural systems as modules, we will establish in Section 23.5 an isomorphism between the homological 2-syzygies and the identities among relations for a 1-category presented by a 2-polygraph.

9.3 Homological type left-$\text{FP}_3$ and confluence

9.3.1 Coherent presentations and partial resolutions of length 3. Let $P$ be a coherent presentation of a monoid $M$. Let us extend the partial resolution of Proposition 9.2.3 into the resolution of length 3

$$
\mathbb{Z}M[P_3] \xrightarrow{d_3} \mathbb{Z}M[P_2] \xrightarrow{d_2} \mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \xrightarrow{d_1} \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \xrightarrow{e} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0.
$$

The boundary map $d_3$ is defined, for every 3-cell $A$ of $P$, by

$$
d_3[A] = [s_2(A)] - [t_2(A)].
$$

The bracket notation $[\cdot]$ is extended to 3-cells of $P^\uparrow$ by setting

$$
[u F v] = r[F] \quad [F *_1 G] = [F] + [G] \quad [F *_2 G] = [F] + [G]
$$

for all 1-cells $u$ and $v$ and 3-cells $F$ and $G$ of $P^\uparrow$ such that the composites are defined. In particular, the latter relation implies $[1_\phi] = 0$ for every 2-cell $\phi$ of $P^\uparrow$. We check, by induction on the size, that $d_3[F] = [s_2(F)] - [t_2(F)]$ holds for every 3-cell $F$ of $P^\uparrow$.

9.3.2 Proposition. Let $P$ be a coherent presentation of a monoid $M$. The sequence of $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules

$$
\mathbb{Z}M[P_3] \xrightarrow{d_3} \mathbb{Z}M[P_2] \xrightarrow{d_2} \mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \xrightarrow{d_1} \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \xrightarrow{e} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0
$$

is a partial free resolution of length 3 of $\mathbb{Z}$.

Proof. We proceed with the same notations as in the proof of Proposition 9.2.3, with the extra hypothesis that $\sigma$ is a left normalization strategy for $P$. This implies that $i_2(u[v]) = [\sigma(\hat{u}v)]$ holds for all $u$ in $M$ and $v$ in $P'_{1}$, by induction on the length of $v$. We have $d_2d_3 = 0$ because $s_1s_2 = s_1t_2$ and $t_1s_2 = t_1t_2$. Then,
we define the following morphism of \( \mathbb{Z} \)-modules \( i_3: \mathbb{Z} M[P_2] \to \mathbb{Z} M[P_3] \) by setting, for \( u \in M \) and \( \alpha \in P_3 \),

\[
i_3(u[\alpha]) = [\sigma(\ddot{u} \alpha)]
\]

where \( \sigma(\ddot{u} \alpha) \) is a 3-cell of \( P^T \) with the following shape, with \( v = s(\alpha) \) and \( w = t(\alpha) \):

Let us note that such a 3-cell necessarily exists in \( P^T \) because \( P_3 \) is an acyclic cellular extension of \( P^T \). Then we have, on the one hand,

\[
i_2 d_2 (u[\alpha]) = i_2 (u[v] - u[w]) = [\sigma(\ddot{w})] - [\sigma(\ddot{u})]
\]

and, on the other hand,

\[
d_3 i_3 (u[\alpha]) = [\ddot{u} \alpha + \sigma(\ddot{w})] - [\sigma(\ddot{w})] = u[\alpha] + [\sigma(\ddot{w})] - [\sigma(\ddot{w})].
\]

Hence \( d_3 i_3 + i_2 d_2 = 1_{\mathbb{Z} M[P_2]} \), concluding the proof.

\[\Box\]

9.3.3 Remark. The proof of Proposition 9.3.2 uses the fact that \( P_3 \) is an acyclic cellular extension to produce, for every 2-cell \( \alpha \) of \( P_2 \) and every \( u \) in \( M \), a 3-cell \( \sigma(\ddot{u} \alpha) \) with the required shape. The hypothesis on \( P_3 \) could thus be modified to only require the existence of such a 3-cell in \( P^T \): however, it is proved in [163] that this implies that \( P_3 \) is an acyclic cellular extension.

The previous proposition has the following consequence, already noted in [306], [99, Theorem 3.2], and [233, Theorem 3]:

9.3.4 Theorem. Let \( M \) be a finitely presented monoid. If \( M \) has finite derivation type, then it has homological type left-\( \text{FP}_3 \), and thus the group \( H_3(M, \mathbb{Z}) \) is finitely generated.

By Theorem 8.2.1 and Proposition 9.1.6, this implies the following homological finiteness condition for finite convergence [326, Theorem 4.1]:

9.3.5 Theorem. If a monoid \( M \) admits a finite convergent presentation, then it has homological type left-\( \text{FP}_3 \), and thus the group \( H_3(M, \mathbb{Z}) \) is finitely generated.

The construction of this chapter will be generalized in Chapter 23 to produce a
free resolution of infinite length, involving \(n\)-fold critical branchings for every natural number \(n\) (Theorem 23.3.3).

9.3.6 Example. Consider the monoid \(M\) with the convergent presentation

\[
P = \langle * \mid a \mid \mu : aa \Rightarrow a \rangle.
\]

Writing \(\hat{w}\) for the normal form of a word \(w\), we have \(\hat{w} = a\) for every non-identity 1-cell \(w \in P^1\). With the leftmost normalization strategy \(\sigma\), we get, writing the 2-cell \(\mu\) as a string diagram \(\sigma\):

\[
\sigma(a) = 1_a \quad \sigma(aa) = \sigma(aaa) = \mu a *_1 \mu = \frac{\mu}{\mu}.
\]

The presentation has exactly one critical branching, whose corresponding generating confluence can be written in the two equivalent ways

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\sigma(a) \\
\sigma(aa) \\
\sigma(aaa)
\end{array}
\quad \text{or} \quad
\begin{array}{c}
\sigma(a) \\
\sigma(aa) \\
\sigma(aaa)
\end{array}
\]

The \(\mathbb{Z}M\)-module \(\ker d_2\) is generated by

\[
d_3 \left[ \begin{array}{c}
\sigma(a) \\
\sigma(aa) \\
\sigma(aaa)
\end{array} \right] = \left[ \begin{array}{c}
\sigma(a) \\
\sigma(aa) \\
\sigma(aaa)
\end{array} \right] - \left[ \begin{array}{c}
\sigma(a) \\
\sigma(aa) \\
\sigma(aaa)
\end{array} \right] = a \left[ \begin{array}{c}
\sigma(a) \\
\sigma(aa) \\
\sigma(aaa)
\end{array} \right] = a \left[ \begin{array}{c}
\sigma(a) \\
\sigma(aa) \\
\sigma(aaa)
\end{array} \right].
\]

We will see in Chapter 23 that the construction of the partial resolution in Proposition 9.3.2 can be extended in arbitrary length. We only provide here a small generalization [326, Theorem 3.2], which is enough to imply a negative answer to the universality of finite convergent rewriting, see Example 9.3.11.

9.3.7 A short exact sequence. Theorem 7.3.5 states that any set \(P^1\) of generating confluenes of a convergent 2-polygraph \(P\), indexed by all its critical branchings, forms an acyclic extension of the \((2,1)\)-category \(P^\top\). Following Proposition 9.3.2, this induces a partial free resolution of length 3 of \(\mathbb{Z}\) by \(\mathbb{Z}M\)-modules

\[
\mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \xrightarrow{d_1} \mathbb{Z}M[P_2] \xrightarrow{d_2} \mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \xrightarrow{d_1} \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \xrightarrow{\epsilon} \mathbb{Z} \xrightarrow{} 0.
\]
Homological syzygies and confluence

We have also shown in §7.5.5 that the triple generating confluences of \( P \) generate the relations among the 3-cells of the free (3, 1)-category \((P, P_3)\). We will show in Sections 23.2 and 23.3 that this allows us to extend the previous resolution with a boundary map \( d_4 : \mathbb{Z}M[P_4] \to \mathbb{Z}M[P_3] \) defined on the free module generated by a set of 4-chains \( P_4 \) indexed by generating triple confluences. In particular, when there are no critical triples, we recover the following result shown by Squier in [326, Theorem 3.2], see also Corollary 23.3.6.

9.3.8 Proposition. Suppose given a convergent 2-polygraph \( P \) without critical 3-branching, and write \( P_3 \) for a set of 2-spheres containing a confluence diagram for every critical branching of \( P \). Then the sequence of \( \mathbb{Z}M \)-modules

\[
0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_3] \overset{d_3}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z}M[P_2] \overset{d_2}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \overset{d_1}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \overset{e}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0
\]

is a partial resolution of length 4 of \( \mathbb{Z} \).

In the rest of this section, we show that this result turns out to be very useful for constructing examples of finitely presented monoids having an infinite third integral homology group while having a decidable word problem.

9.3.9 Example. Consider the monoid \( M \) presented by the 2-polygraph

\[
P = \langle*, a, b, c | a^n b \Rightarrow 1 \rangle_{n \in \mathbb{N}}.
\]

The polygraph \( P \) is convergent without critical branchings. Hence, by Squier’s Theorem 7.3.5 it can be extended into a coherent presentation with an empty set of 3-generators. Following Proposition 9.3.2, we have a partial free resolution of length 3 of \( \mathbb{Z} \) by free \( \mathbb{Z}M \)-modules:

\[
0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_3] \overset{d_3}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z}M[P_2] \overset{d_2}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \overset{d_1}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \overset{e}{\longrightarrow} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0.
\]

We have

\[
\tilde{d}_1(a) = \tilde{d}_1(b) = \tilde{d}_1(c) = 0
\]

and

\[
\tilde{d}_2([\alpha_n]) = [a] + n[c] + [b]
\]

for all \( n \geq 0 \). As a consequence \( H_1(M, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z} \) and \( H_2(M, \mathbb{Z}) = \ker \tilde{d}_2 \) is the free \( \mathbb{Z} \)-module generated by \( [\alpha_n] - n[\alpha_1] + (n - 1)[\alpha_0] \) for \( n \geq 2 \). Since \( H_2(M) \) is not finitely generated, this shows that the finitely generated monoid \( M \) cannot be finitely presented, by Propositions 9.1.6 and 9.2.4.
9.3.10 Example. Consider the monoid $M$ presented by the following 2-polygraph considered in [238]:

$$P = \langle \star \mid a, b, c, d \mid \alpha_0 : ab \Rightarrow a, \beta : da \Rightarrow ac \rangle.$$ 

We have seen in Example 5.2.4 that using the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure, this polygraph can be completed into the following convergent polygraph with infinitely many 2-generators:

$$\tilde{P} = \langle a, b, c, d \mid \alpha_n : ac^n b \Rightarrow ac^n, \beta : da \Rightarrow ac \rangle_{n \in \mathbb{N}}.$$ 

There are infinitely many critical branchings, indexed by $n \in \mathbb{N}$:

$$\text{critical branching} = \langle ac^n b \Rightarrow ac^n, \beta : da \Rightarrow ac \rangle_{n \in \mathbb{N}}.$$ 

Denoting by $\tilde{P}_3$ the set of 3-generators $\{A_n \mid n \in \mathbb{N}\}$, by Theorem 7.3.5, $\tilde{P}_3$ extends $\tilde{P}$ into a coherent presentation. This system has no critical 3-branching, thus by Proposition 9.3.8, we have an exact sequence

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}[\tilde{P}] \xrightarrow{d_3} \mathbb{Z}[\tilde{P}_2] \xrightarrow{d_2} \mathbb{Z}[\tilde{P}_1] \xrightarrow{d_1} \mathbb{Z}[\tilde{P}_0] \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0.$$ 

To calculate homology groups of $M$, we consider the maps $\tilde{d}_k := 1_{\mathbb{Z}} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} d_k$ defined on $\mathbb{Z}[\tilde{P}_k]$ and with values in $\mathbb{Z}[\tilde{P}_{k-1}]$. We have

$$\tilde{d}_1(a) = \tilde{d}_1(b) = \tilde{d}_1(c) = \tilde{d}_1(d) = 0,$$

$$\tilde{d}_2([\alpha_n]) = [a] + [c] + [b] - ([a] - [c]) = [b],$$

$$\tilde{d}_3([\beta]) = [d] + [a] - ([a] + [c]) = [d] - [c],$$

$$\tilde{d}_3([A_n]) = [\beta] + [\alpha_{n+1}] - ([\alpha_n] + [\beta]) = [\alpha_{n+1}] - [\alpha_n].$$

Thus

$$H_0(M, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}, \quad H_1(M, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}^2, \quad H_i(M, \mathbb{Z}) = 0, \quad \text{for } i = 2, 3.$$ 

At this stage, therefore, we cannot use the finiteness condition of Theorem 9.3.5 to conclude the existence of a convergent presentation for the monoid $M$. As noted in [238, Section 3.5], we can nevertheless construct a finite convergent presentation of $M$ with another orientation of the rule $\beta$. Indeed, the following polygraph presents the monoid $M$ and has no critical branching:

$$\langle \star \mid a, b, c, d \mid \alpha_0 : ab \Rightarrow a, \gamma : ac \Rightarrow da \rangle.$$
It is therefore trivially convergent.

9.3.11 Example. Consider the monoid $M$ of Example 8.2.2 presented by the following 2-polygraph:

$$P = \langle * | a, b, c, d, d' | \alpha_0 : ab \Rightarrow a, \beta : da \Rightarrow ac, \beta' : d'a \Rightarrow ac \rangle.$$ 

We have seen that, by using the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure it can be completed into an infinite convergent polygraph, from which we deduce the following coherent presentation

$$\tilde{P} = \langle * | a, b, c, d, d' | \alpha_n, \beta, \beta' | A_n, A'_n \rangle_{n \in \mathbb{N}},$$

with

$$\alpha_n : ac^n b \Rightarrow ac^n, \quad \beta : da \Rightarrow ac, \quad \beta' : d'a \Rightarrow ac,$$

and

$$A_n : \beta c^n b *_1 \alpha_{n+1} \Rightarrow d \alpha_n *_1 \beta c^n, \quad A'_n : \beta' c^n b *_1 \alpha_{n+1} \Rightarrow d' \alpha_n *_1 \beta' c^n.$$

There are no critical 3-branching and thus by Proposition 9.3.8 we have a partial resolution of length 4

$$0 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}M[\tilde{P}_3] \xrightarrow{\tilde{d}_3} \mathbb{Z}M[\tilde{P}_2] \xrightarrow{\tilde{d}_2} \mathbb{Z}M[\tilde{P}_1] \xrightarrow{\tilde{d}_1} \mathbb{Z}M[\tilde{P}_0] \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0.$$

The computations are similar to those of Example 9.3.10. The map $\tilde{d}_1$ is zero on the $\mathbb{Z}$-module $\mathbb{Z}[P_1]$, and we have

$$\tilde{d}_2([\alpha_n]) = [b], \quad \tilde{d}_2([\beta]) = [d] - [c], \quad \tilde{d}_2([\beta']) = [d'] - [c],$$

$$\tilde{d}_3([A_n]) = [\alpha_{n+1}] - [\alpha_n], \quad \tilde{d}_3([A'_n]) = [\alpha_{n+1}] - [\alpha_n].$$

We deduce that

$$H_0(M, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}, \quad H_1(M, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}^2, \quad H_2(M, \mathbb{Z}) = 0,$$

and the $\mathbb{Z}$-module $H_3(M, \mathbb{Z})$ is freely generated by the infinite family

$$( [A_n] - [A'_n] )_{n \geq 0}.$$

Following Theorem 9.3.5, we deduce that the monoid $M$ does not have a finite convergent presentation. This example thus exhibits a finitely presented monoid, with a decidable word problem, which does not admit a finite convergent presentation. It therefore illustrates the fact that string rewriting theory is not universal for deciding the word problem in monoids, see Section 5.3.
9.3 Homological type left-FP$_3$ and confluence

9.3.12 Example. Consider the coherent presentation of the monoid $B^+_3$ given in Example 7.5.8. By Proposition 9.3.2, it induces a resolution of the trivial $\mathbb{Z}B^+_3$-module $\mathbb{Z}$, from which we can compute the following homology groups:

$$H_0(B^+_3, \mathbb{Z}) = H_1(B^+_3, \mathbb{Z}) = H_2(B^+_3, \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z}, \quad H_3(B^+_3, \mathbb{Z}) = 0.$$

9.3.13 Remark. Note that in combinatorial group theory several examples of finitely presented groups with a decidable word problem that do not have homological type left-FP$_3$ were discovered before Squier’s work on homology of monoids. In particular, Stallings constructed in [329] a finitely presented group whose its 3-dimensional homology group with integer coefficients is not finitely generated and thus it does not have homological type left-FP$_3$. The group is presented by

$$\langle *, a, b, c, d, e | [d, a], [e, a], [d, b], [e, b], [a^{-1} d, c], [a^{-1} e, c], [b^{-1} a, c] \rangle$$

where $[u, v]$ denotes the relation $uv = vu$. Bieri proved that this group has a decidable word problem [40]. It was not yet known that its word problem cannot be solved by the normal form algorithm.

9.3.14 Remarks on other homological finiteness conditions. In the definition of homological type left-FP$_n$ for a monoid $M$ (§9.1.4), changing left modules to right modules, bimodules or natural systems gives the definitions of the homological types right-FP$_n$, bi-FP$_n$ and FP$_n$. We refer the reader to [163, Section 5.2] for the relations between these different finiteness conditions, see also §F.3.3. In particular, for $n = 3$, all of these homotopical conditions are consequences of the finite derivation type property defined in Section 8.1. Moreover, all these homological finiteness properties are necessary conditions for finite convergence. The proof are similar to the one for the left-FP$_3$ property given in Section 9.3. In particular, for the right-FP$_3$ property, we consider right modules and, to get the contracting homotopy, we construct a right normalization strategy $\sigma$ by defining a 3-cell $\sigma(\alpha u)$ with shape

![Diagram](image)

for any 2-generator $\alpha : v \Rightarrow w$ and element $u$ in the monoid $M$.

To conclude this chapter, we summarize in the following theorem the properties of the family of monoids $S_k$, for $k \geq 0$, defined in §8.2.3, which is Squier’s original example [326, 328]. This family illustrates the homological
and homotopical finiteness conditions for the convergence of string rewriting systems studied in this and the previous chapter, see Theorems 8.2.1 and 9.3.5.

9.3.15 Theorem. For \( k \geq 1 \), the monoid \( S_k \) is a finitely presented monoid that has the following properties.

1. It has a decidable word problem [326, Example 4.5].
2. For \( k = 1 \), it does not have finite derivation type [328, Theorem 6.7].
3. For \( k = 1 \), it has homological type left-FP_\( \infty \) [326, Example 4.5].
4. For \( k \geq 2 \), it does not have homological type left-FP_3 [326, Example 4.5].
5. It does not have a finite convergent presentation.

Conditions 1, 2, and 5 are seen in Theorem 8.2.4 for \( k = 1 \). Theorem 9.3.4 proves that finite derivation type implies homological type left-FP_3. The conditions 2 and 3 on monoid \( S_1 \) prove that the converse implication is false in general. Note, however, that in the special case of groups, the property of having finite derivation type is equivalent to the homological finiteness condition left-FP_3 [100]. The latter result is based on the Brown-Huebschmann isomorphism between identities among relations and homological syzygies [64], see also Theorem 23.5.3.
PART THREE

DIAGRAM REWRITING
We have seen in Chapter 1 that 1-polygraphs provide a notion of presentation for sets and in Chapter 2 that 2-polygraphs provide a notion of presentation for categories. We go on climbing the dimensional ladder and establish 3-polygraphs as a notion of presentation for 2-categories, see Section 10.1. As expected, those consist in generators for 0-, 1- and 2-dimensional cells, together with relations between freely generated 2-cells, which are represented by generating 3-cells. As particular cases, let us mention the notions of presentation of monoidal category (when there is only one 0-generator) and of PRO (when there is only one 0-generator and one 1-generator). This includes 2-categories encoding theories for fundamental algebraic structures such as monoids, groups, etc. Note that in the point of view on (3, 1)-polygraphs we adopt here, the 3-cells encode relations, as opposed to Chapter 7 where they encode coherences between relations.

Any 3-polygraph induces an abstract rewriting system, so that all general rewriting concepts still make sense in this setting: confluence, termination, etc. However, more specific tools have to be adapted to this context: the notion of critical branching is defined for 3-polygraphs in Section 10.2, along with the proof that confluence of critical branchings implies the local confluence of the polygraph (Lemma 10.2.8). In the case where the polygraph is terminating (techniques to show this will be presented in Chapter 11), local confluence implies confluence, and we thus have a systematic method to show the convergence of a 3-polygraph. When this is the case, normal forms give canonical representatives for 2-cells modulo the congruence generated by 3-cells, and we explain how to exploit this to show that a given 3-polygraph is a presentation of a given 2-category in Section 10.3. There is however a major difference with the case of 2-dimensional polygraphs: a finite convergent polygraph might give rise to an infinite number of critical branchings (Section 10.4). This prevents us from making direct generalizations of homotopical or homological finiteness.
conditions (Chapters 8 and 9) from 2- to 3-polygraphs. Finally, in Section 10.5, we provide some techniques for combining presentations of 2-categories and for building presentations of 2-categories in a modular way.

### 10.1 Three-dimensional polygraphs

#### 10.1.1 Definition.

A **3-polygraph** \((P, P_3)\) consists of a 2-polygraph \(P\) together with a cellular extension \(P_3\) of the 2-category \(P^*\) freely generated by \(P\), the elements of \(P_3\) being referred to as **3-generators**. Explicitly, a 3-polygraph consists of a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
P_0 & \overset{s_0}{\rightarrow} & P_1 & \overset{s_1}{\rightarrow} & P_2 & \overset{s_2}{\rightarrow} & P_3 \\
\downarrow t_0 && \downarrow t_1 && \downarrow t_2 && \\
P_0^* & \overset{s_0^*}{\leftarrow} & P_1^* & \overset{s_1^*}{\leftarrow} & P_2^* & \overset{s_2^*}{\leftarrow} & P_3^* \\
\end{array}
\]

in \(\text{Set}\), together with a structure of 2-category on the 2-graph

\[
P_0 \overset{s_0^*}{\rightarrow} P_1^* \leftrightarrow P_2^* \leftarrow P_3^*
\]

such that, for \(n \in \{0, 1, 2\}\),

- \(P_n^*\) is the set of \(n\)-cells of the \(n\)-category freely generated by the underlying \(n\)-polygraph,
- \(i_n : P_n \rightarrow P_n^*\) is the canonical inclusion,
- \(s_n^*\) and \(t_n^*\) are the respective canonical extensions of \(s_n\) and \(t_n\), satisfying
  \[
s_n^* \circ i_n = s_n \quad \text{and} \quad t_n^* \circ i_n = t_n,
\]
- the globular identities are satisfied:
  \[
s_n^* \circ s_{n+1} = s_n^* \circ t_{n+1} \quad \text{and} \quad t_n^* \circ s_{n+1} = t_n^* \circ t_{n+1}.
\]

We write \(A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi\) for a 3-generator \(A \in P_3\) with \(s_2(A) = \phi\) and \(t_2(A) = \psi\).

A 3-polygraph \(P\) is often concisely denoted

\[
\langle P_0 \mid P_1 \mid P_2 \mid P_3 \rangle.
\]

We write \(P_{<2}\) for the **underlying 2-polygraph** of a 3-polygraph \(P\). Contrarily to previous chapters, we always respectively denote by \(*_0\) and \(*_1\) the horizontal and vertical compositions of a 2-category.
10.1 Three-dimensional polygraphs

10.1.2 Example. The 3-polygraph Mon is

\[ \text{Mon} = (\star | a | \mu : a \ast_0 a \Rightarrow a, \eta : 1 \ast \Rightarrow a | A, L, R) \]

where the sources and targets of the 3-generators are given by

\[ A : (\mu \ast_0 a) \ast_1 \mu \Rightarrow (a \ast_0 \mu) \ast_1 \mu \]
\[ L : (\eta \ast_0 a) \ast_1 \mu \Rightarrow a \]
\[ R : (a \ast_0 \eta) \ast_1 \mu \Rightarrow a \]

Using string diagrams (see §2.4.8), the 2-generators of Mon are pictured as

\[ \mu = \triangleleft \quad \eta = \triangleright \]

and its 3-generators A, L and R respectively as

\[ \text{Diagram for } A, L, R \]

Many other examples of 3-polygraphs are given in Appendix C.

10.1.3 Presented 2-category. Let \( P \) be a 3-polygraph. The 2-category presented by \( P \) is the 2-category, denoted by \( \overline{P} \), obtained by quotienting the free 2-category over \( P_{\leq 2} \) by the congruence \( \approx^P \) generated by \( P_3 \) on 2-cells, as described in §7.1.2:

\[ \overline{P} = P_{\leq 2}/P_3 \]

If \( C \) is a 2-category, we say that \( P \) presents \( C \) if \( C \) is isomorphic to \( \overline{P} \).

In particular, when the set \( P_0 \) is reduced to one element, the category presented by \( P \) has one 0-cell and is thus a strict monoidal category (see §2.4.10). Moreover, when both \( P_0 \) and \( P_1 \) are reduced to one element, the set \( P_1^* \) of 1-cells is the free monoid on one generator, i.e., \( \mathbb{N} \), and the presented category is a PRO (see §2.4.10). This is for instance the case in Example 10.1.2.

Two 3-polygraphs \( P \) and \( Q \) are said Tietze equivalent when the presented 2-categories are isomorphic: \( \overline{P} \cong \overline{Q} \).

10.1.4 Models. Given a 2-category \( C \), the category of models (or algebras) of \( C \) in a 2-category \( S \) is the category \( \text{Cat}_2(C, S) \) of 2-functors \( C \rightarrow S \) and op lax 2-natural transformations between those (see §20.2.13 for a general definition). More explicitly, given a 3-polygraph \( P \), a model of \( \overline{P} \) in a 2-category \( C \) consists of

- a family

\[ (f_x)_{x \in P_0} \]

of 0-cells of \( C \) indexed by the 0-generators of \( P \).
Three-dimensional polygraphs

– a family

\[(f_u : f_x \rightarrow f_y)_{u, x \rightarrow y \in P} \]

of 1-cells of \(C\) indexed by the 1-generators of \(P\); if \(u = a_1 \ldots a_n\) is a 1-cell of \(P^*\), we write \(f_u\) for the 1-cell \(f_{a_1} \ldots f_{a_n}\).

– a family

\[(f_a : f_u \Rightarrow f_v)_{\alpha, u \Rightarrow v \in P} \]

of 2-cells of \(C\) indexed by the 2-generators of \(P\); the notation \(f_\phi\) is extended to any 2-cell of \(P^*\) by \(f_\phi \circ \phi = f_\phi \circ_0 f_\phi, f_\phi \circ_1 \phi = f_\phi \circ_1 f_\phi\) and \(f_{1_u} = 1_{f_u}\), such that, for every 3-generator \(A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi\) of \(P\), we have

\[f_\phi = f_\psi.\]

10.1.5 Example. Let \(C\) be a monoidal category. The models of the 3-polygraph \(\text{Mon}\) of Example 10.1.2 in \(C\) (considered as a 2-category with only one 0-cell) are precisely monoids in \(C\) in the following sense. A monoid in a monoidal category \(C\) consists of an object \(x\) of \(C\) and two morphisms

\[m : x \otimes x \rightarrow x \quad e : i \rightarrow x\]

such that the diagrams

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \otimes x \otimes x \\
\downarrow x \otimes m \\
x \otimes x
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \otimes x \\
\downarrow m \\
x
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \otimes x \\
\downarrow x \otimes e \\
x \otimes x
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \otimes m \\
\downarrow m \\
x
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow 1_x \\
x
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \otimes x \\
\downarrow m \\
x \otimes x
\end{array}
\]

commute. A morphism \(f : (x, m, e) \rightarrow (x', m', e')\) between monoids is a morphism \(f : x \rightarrow x\) of \(C\) such that the diagrams

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \otimes x \\
\downarrow m \\
x
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x' \otimes x' \\
\downarrow m' \\
x'
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x' \otimes x' \\
\downarrow m' \\
x'
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow f \\
x'
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow f \\
x'
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow 1_x \\
x
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow 1_x \\
x
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow e \\
x
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow e \\
x
\end{array}
\]

commute. In particular, a monoid in \(\text{Set}\) equipped with cartesian product as tensor product and terminal set as unit is precisely a monoid in the usual sense (by Mac Lane’s coherence theorem, Theorem 12.4.4, we can always consider that it forms a strict monoidal category).

As another application, the algebras of \(\text{Mon}\) in the 2-category \(\text{Cat}\) (of categories, functors and natural transformations) are precisely monads.
10.1.6 2-categories admitting a presentation. We should first note that, contrary to the case of 1-categories (§2.3.14), not every 2-category admits a presentation by a 3-polygraph. Namely, any 2-category $C$ is presented by a 3-polygraph $P$ is a quotient of the free 2-category $P^*_{≤2}$ by the congruence generated by $P_3$. Since there is no quotient on 1-cells, the underlying 1-category of $C$ is always free (on the underlying 1-polygraph of $P$). Therefore, only 2-categories whose underlying 1-category is free may have a presentation.

For instance, consider the category $Z$ corresponding to the additive monoid of integers is not free, by §2.3.13. Therefore the 2-category with $Z$ as underlying category and only identity 2-cells admits no presentation by a 3-polygraph. Extensions of the notion of polygraph aimed at addressing this problem have been proposed in [101, 119, 286].

10.1.7 The canonical and standard presentations. Any 2-category $C$ whose underlying category is freely generated by a 1-polygraph $Q$ admits a presentation by a 3-polygraph. The canonical presentation of $C$ is the 3-polygraph $P$ with

- $Q$ as underlying 1-polygraph,
- the set $P_2 = C_2$ of all 2-cells of $C$ as 2-generators,
- the subset $P_3$ of $P^*_{≤2} \times P^*_{≤2}$ of pairs of parallel 2-cells whose evaluation as 2-cells of $C$ are equal.

An analogous of the standard presentation (§2.3.14) can also be defined for 2-categories, giving rise to slightly smaller presentations.

10.1.8 The category of 3-polygraphs. A morphism $f : P \to Q$ between 3-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$ consists of a morphism $f : P_{≤2} \to Q_{≤2}$ between the underlying 2-polygraphs (see §2.2.3) together with a function $f_3 : P_3 \to Q_3$ such that $s_2 \circ f_3 = f_2 \circ s_2$ and $t_2 \circ f_3 = f_2 \circ t_2$. These compose in the expected way, and we write $\Pol_3$ for the category of 3-polygraphs and their morphisms.

10.2 Rewriting properties of 3-polygraphs

A 3-polygraph $P$ can be seen as a 3-dimensional rewriting system: its underlying 2-polygraph generates a 2-category, whose 2-cells are the “terms” which get rewritten by the 3-generators. For this reason, the elements of $P_3$ are sometimes called rewriting rules. We now formalize this point of view.
10.2.1 Occurrences of 2-generators. Let \( P \) be a 2-polygraph. Given a 2-cell \( \phi \) in \( P^*_2 \) and a 2-generator \( \alpha \in P_2 \), we write \( |\phi|_\alpha \) for the number of occurrences of \( \alpha \) in \( \phi \). It can be formally defined as follows.

We write \( N \) for the 2-category with one 0-cell \( \star \), one 1-cell \( 1_\star \), \( N \) as set of 2-cells, horizontal and vertical compositions being given by addition and the identity 2-cell by 0. Given a 2-generator \( \alpha \in P_2 \), there exists a unique 2-functor \( |-|_\alpha : P^*_2 \to N \) such that \( |-|_\alpha \alpha = 1 \) and \( |-|_\alpha \beta = 0 \) for every 2-generator \( \beta \in P_2 \) with \( \beta \neq \alpha \). Given a 2-cell \( \phi \) in \( P^*_2 \), the natural number \( |\phi|_\alpha \) is called the number of occurrences of the generator \( \alpha \) in \( \phi \). We also write \( |-| : P^*_2 \to N \) for the 2-functor such that \( |-|_\alpha = 1 \) for every generator \( \alpha \in P_2 \). Given a morphism \( \phi \), we have

\[
|\phi| = \sum_{\alpha \in P_2} |\phi|_\alpha
\]

and this quantity is called the number of generators in \( \phi \) or the size of \( \phi \).

10.2.2 Contexts. Let \( P \) be a 2-polygraph and \( u,v : x \to y \) be two parallel 1-cells in \( P^*_1 \). We write \( P[X] \) for the 2-polygraph with the same 0- and 1-cells as \( P \) and with \( P_2 \sqcup \{X\} \) as 2-cells, with \( s_1(X) = u \) and \( t_1(X) = v \). A context \( K \) of type \( (u,v) \) in \( P \) is a cell \( K \) in \( P[X]^*_2 \) in which the generator \( X \) occurs exactly once, i.e., such that \( |K|_X = 1 \).

10.2.3 Lemma. Any context \( K \) of type \( (u,v) \) can be written in the form

\[
K = \psi *_1 (w *_0 x *_0 w') *_1 \psi'
\]

for some 1-cells \( w : x' \to x \) and \( w' : y \to y' \) and 2-cells \( \phi : u' \Rightarrow wu' \) and \( \phi' : wu' \Rightarrow v' \). Graphically, \( K \) can be depicted as

\[
\begin{align*}
\xymatrix{
X \ar[r]^u \ar[d]_v & y \ar[r]^{u'} & y' \\
x' \ar[r]_w \ar@/^2pc/[rru]^{\psi} & x \ar@/_2pc/[rru]_{\psi'} \ar@/^2pc/[ru]^{\phi} \ar@/_2pc/[ru]_{\phi'} & \ar[l]_{w'}
}
\end{align*}
\]
10.2 Rewriting properties of 3-polygraphs

10.2.4 Rewriting steps. Let \( P \) be a 3-polygraph. Given a context \( K \) in \( P_2 \) of type \((u, v)\) as in Lemma 10.2.3 and a 3-cell

\[
F : \phi \Rightarrow \phi' : u \Rightarrow v : x \rightarrow y
\]

in \( P_3 \), we extend the previous notation and write

\[
K[F] = \psi *_1 (w *_0 F *_0 w') *_1 \psi'.
\]

Graphically,

A rewriting step is a 3-cell of the form \( K[A] \) for some context \( K \) and 3-generator \( A : \phi \Rightarrow \phi' \). The 2-cells \( K[\phi] \) and \( K[\phi'] \) are respectively called the source and target of the rewriting step. Using the axioms of 3-categories, one shows that every 3-cell of \( P^* \) is a composite of rewriting steps:

10.2.5 Lemma. Any 3-cell \( F \) of \( P^* \) can be decomposed as

\[
F = F_1 *_2 F_2 *_2 \ldots *_2 F_k
\]

where the \( F_i \)'s are rewriting steps. Moreover, the number \( k \in \mathbb{N} \) is the same for all such decompositions.

The number \( k \) in the previous lemma is called the length of \( F \).

10.2.6 Termination and confluence. Given a 3-polygraph \( P \), we write here \( P^{rs} \) for its set of rewriting steps and \( s_2, t_2 : P^{rs} \rightarrow P_2^* \) for the functions respectively taking a rewriting step to its source and target. Any 3-polygraph \( P \) induces an abstract rewriting system

\[
\begin{array}{c}
P_2^* \\
\downarrow \quad s_2 \\
\downarrow \quad t_2 \\
P^{rs}
\end{array}
\]
Three-dimensional polygraphs

with 2-cells as vertices and rewriting steps as edges. A 3-polygraph is said to be terminating, Church-Rosser, confluent, locally confluent, convergent when the associated abstract rewriting system is, see Section 1.3.

The termination of a 3-polygraph can be shown in a similar way as for 2-polygraphs (Section 4.4) by considering suitable reduction orders: this will be detailed in Chapter 11. In the next section, we study local confluence through critical branchings, generalizing the techniques introduced for 2-polygraphs.

10.2.7 Branchings. Let $P$ be a 3-polygraph. A branching is a branching of the underlying abstract rewriting system. It consists of a pair $(F_1, F_2)$ of 3-cells $F_1 : \phi \Rightarrow \psi_1$ and $F_2 : \phi \Rightarrow \psi_2$ in $P^*$ with the same source. We say that the 2-cell $\phi$ is the source of $(F_1, F_2)$. A branching $(F_1, F_2)$ of $P$ is local if both $F_1$ and $F_2$ are rewriting steps; it is confluent if there exist cofinal 3-cells $F'_1 : \psi_1 \Rightarrow \chi$ and $F'_2 : \psi_2 \Rightarrow \chi$ in $P^*$.

We say that a local branching $(F_1, F_2)$ of $P$ is trivial if $F_1 = F_2$. We say that the branching $(F_1, F_2)$ (resp. $(F_2, F_1)$) is orthogonal if $F_1$ and $F_2$ are of the form

\[
F_1 = \psi \ast_1 (w_1 \ast_0 A_1 \ast_0 w'_1) \ast_1 \psi' \ast_1 (w_1 \ast_0 A_2 \ast_0 w'_2) \ast_1 \psi''
\]

\[
F_2 = \psi \ast_1 (w_1 \ast_0 \phi_1 \ast_0 w'_1) \ast_1 \psi' \ast_1 (w_1 \ast_0 \phi_2 \ast_0 w'_2) \ast_1 \psi''
\]

where $A_1 : \phi_1 \Rightarrow \psi'_1$ and $A_2 : \phi_2 \Rightarrow \psi'_2$ are 3-generators, $w_1$, $w'_1$, $w_2$ and $w'_2$ are 1-cells of $P^*$, and $\psi$, $\psi'$ and $\psi''$ are 2-cells of $P^*$. The orthogonal situation can be pictured as

Local branchings are ordered by the relation $\sqsubseteq$ generated by

\[(F_1, F_2) \sqsubseteq (\phi \ast_1 F_1, \phi \ast_1 F_2)\quad \text{and} \quad (F_1, F_2) \sqsubseteq (F_1 \ast_1 \phi, F_2 \ast_1 \phi),\]

where $\phi$ ranges over the 2-cells of $P^*$ and $i$ over $\{0, 1\}$ such that the involved
composites are defined. A branching of $P$ is called critical if it is local, orthogonal and minimal for $\sqsubseteq$. We say that $P$ is critically confluent if all its critical branchings are confluent.

As in the case of 2-polygraphs, Lemma 4.3.7, the critical branching lemma holds for 3-polygraphs:

**10.2.8 Lemma.** A 3-polygraph is locally confluent if and only if all its critical branchings are confluent.

As a direct corollary of this lemma and Newman’s lemma (Lemma 1.3.21), we may state the following proposition, which is used to show the convergence of polygraphs in the vast majority of cases.

**10.2.9 Proposition.** A 3-polygraph which is terminating and has all its critical branchings confluent is convergent.

**10.2.10 Example.** The 3-polygraph $\text{Mon}$ of Example 10.1.2 has five critical branchings. All of them are confluent, as shown by the string diagrams below:
Three-dimensional polygraphs

For instance, the source of the first critical branching is

\[(\mu \ast_0 a \ast_0 a) \ast_1 (\mu \ast_0 a) \ast_1 \mu\]

which can be rewritten by using the 3-generator

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\small \text{↑}} \\
\text{\small \text{↓}} \\
\text{\small \text{→}} \\
\end{array}
\]

in two ways, yielding the two rewriting steps:

\[(A \ast_0 a) \ast_1 \mu \quad (\mu \ast_0 a \ast_0 a) \ast_1 A.\]

We will see in Example 11.2.4 that this polygraph is terminating, based on the observation that rewriting either removes 2-generators or moves subtrees to the right. By Proposition 10.2.9, it is thus convergent.

\subsection{10.2.11 The Knuth-Bendix completion procedure.} A Knuth-Bendix completion procedure can be defined for 3-polygraphs. We do not detail it much, because it is very similar to the one for 2-polygraphs given in Section 5.2:
10.3 Constructing presentations

When a 3-polygraph $P$ is convergent, the normal forms provide canonical representatives of equivalence classes of 2-cells in $P_2^*$ modulo the congruence generated by $P_3$. We explain here that this can be exploited to show that $P$ presents a given 2-category $C$, by showing that the 2-cells of $C$ are in bijection with the normal forms of the polygraph. The following proposition thus generalizes the method proposed in Section 4.5 to construct presentations of categories.

10.3.1 Proposition. Let $P$ be a convergent 3-polygraph and $C$ a 2-category whose underlying category is isomorphic to the category freely generated by the underlying 1-polygraph of $P$, i.e., we have isomorphisms $f_0 : P_0 \to C_0$ and $f_1 : P_1^* \to C_1$. Let moreover $f_2 : P_2 \to C_2$ be a function compatible with source and target, i.e., $f_2$ sends a 2-generator $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ in $P_2$ to a 2-cell $f_2(\alpha) : f_1(u) \Rightarrow f_1(v)$. We extend $f_2$ to the 2-cells in $P_2^*$ by functoriality by

$$f_2(\phi *_0 \psi) = f_2(\phi) *_0 f_2(\psi),$$
$$f_2(\phi *_1 \psi) = f_2(\phi) *_1 f_2(\psi),$$
$$f_2(1_u) = 1_{f_1(u)}.$$

Suppose finally that

- for any 3-generator $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ in $P_3$, we have $f_2(\phi) = f_2(\psi),$
- the function $f_2^* : P_2^* \to C_2$ restricts to a bijection between normal forms in $P_2^*$ and $C_2$.

Then $P$ is a presentation of $C$.

Proof. Let us write $VC$ for the 2-polygraph with $P$ as underlying 1-polygraph and whose set of 2-generators is the set $C_2$ of 2-cells of $C$. The triple of
Three-dimensional polygraphs

morphisms \((f_0, f_1, f_2)\) precisely corresponds to a morphism of 2-polygraphs \(f : P_{\leq 2} \to VC\). This morphism induces a functor \(f^* : P^*_{\leq 2} \to C\) from the freely generated 2-category. The first condition ensures that it induces a quotient functor \(\overline{f} : \overline{P} \to C\), and the second condition ensures that \(\overline{f}\) is a bijection. Namely, \(\overline{f}\) is a bijection in dimensions 0 and 1 by hypothesis. Moreover, the 2-cells of \(\overline{P}\) are in bijection with 2-cells of \(P^*_2\) in normal form because the polygraph is convergent (Proposition 1.3.24), and those are in bijection with the 2-cells of \(C\) by hypothesis. □

10.3.2 A presentation of \(\Delta^+_\). As a detailed example of the above method, we show here that the 3-polygraph Mon of Example 10.1.2 presents the augmented simplicial category \(\Delta^+_\). This category was introduced in §4.5.6: its objects are natural numbers and morphisms are non-decreasing functions. It is moreover monoidal, with tensor product given on objects by addition (such a monoidal category is called a PRO, see §2.4.10). As such, it can be considered as a 2-category (see §2.4.10), of which we now make an explicit description.

The 2-category \(\Delta^+_\) has one 0-cell \(*\), the 1-cells are natural numbers and the 2-cells \(f : m \to n\) are non-decreasing maps from \([m]\) to \([n]\), where \([n]\) = \(\{0, \ldots, n - 1\}\) for \(n \geq 0\). The vertical composition of 2-cells is the usual composition of functions, with identities as neutral elements. The horizontal composition of 1-cells is given by addition, with 0 as neutral element, and the horizontal composition of 2-cells \(f : m \to n\) and \(f' : m' \to n'\) is given by

\[
(f *_0 f')(i) = \begin{cases} 
  f(i) & \text{if } 0 \leq i < m, \\
  f(i - m) + n & \text{if } m \leq i < m + m'.
\end{cases}
\] (10.1)

We have seen in Example 10.2.10 that the polygraph Mon is convergent. The normal forms in \(P^*_2\) can be characterized as follows. Given \(n \in \mathbb{N}\), we define the right comb \(\mu_n : n \Rightarrow 1\) in \(P^*_2\) by induction:

\[
\mu_0 = \eta = \varnothing \quad \mu_1 = a = \quad \mu_{n+2} = (a *_0 \mu_{n+1}) *_1 \mu = \begin{array}{c}
\mu_n \\
\mu_{n+1}
\end{array}
\]

A right forest is a horizontal composite of right combs, i.e., a morphism of the form

\[
\mu_{n_1} *_0 \mu_{n_2} *_0 \ldots *_0 \mu_{n_k} = \begin{array}{c}
\mu_{n_1} \\
\mu_{n_2} \\
\vdots \\
\mu_{n_k}
\end{array}
\]

for some \(k \in \mathbb{N}\) called the width of the right forest, and \((n_1, \ldots, n_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k\).

10.3.3 Lemma. Given \(n, n' \in \mathbb{N}\), \(\mu_n *_0 \mu_{n'} *_1 \mu\) rewrites to \(\mu_{n+n'}\).

Proof. By induction on \(n\). For \(n = 0\), we have \((\mu_0 *_0 \mu_{n'}) *_1 \mu = \mu_{n'+1}\).
Otherwise, \((\mu_{n+1} \ast_0 \mu_{n'}) \ast_1 \mu\) rewrites in one step to \((\mu_n \ast_0 \mu_{n+1}) \ast_1 \mu\) and we conclude using the induction hypothesis. \(\square\)

**10.3.4 Lemma.** The 2-cells of \(P_2^*\) in normal forms are precisely the right forests.

**Proof.** The right forests are easily checked to be normal forms. We now show that, conversely, every normal form is a right forest, by showing that every 2-cell \(\phi\) in \(P_2^*\) rewrites to a right forest. The proof is done by induction on the size of \(\phi\). If the size of \(\phi\) is 0 then it is an identity, which is a right forest. Otherwise it can be decomposed as

\[
\phi = \psi \ast_1 (a^i \ast_0 \mu \ast_0 a^j)
\]

\((a^i)\) denoting the horizontal composition of \(i\) instances of \(a\)\) where, by induction, \(\psi\) is a right forest

\[
\psi = \mu_n \ast_0 \mu_{n-1} \ast_0 \ldots \ast_0 \mu_{n_{i+1}+1}.
\]

By Lemma 10.3.3, \(\phi\) rewrites to the right forest

\[
\mu_n \ast_0 \ldots \ast_0 \mu_{n_{i-1}} \ast_0 \mu_{n_{i+1}} \ast_0 \ldots \ast_0 \mu_{n_{i+1}+1},
\]

which can be graphically depicted as

\[
\phi = \mu_n \ast_0 \ldots \ast_0 \mu_{n_{i+1}} \ast_0 \ldots \ast_0 \mu_{n_{i+1}+1}
\]

and concludes the proof. \(\square\)

The underlying 1-category of \(\Delta_+\) is the additive monoid \(\mathbb{N}\), seen as a category. It is thus the free category on the 1-polygraph \((\star \mid a)\), which is the underlying 1-polygraph of Mon. We define a function \(f_2 : \text{Mon}_2 \rightarrow (\Delta_+)\) where \(f_2(\mu) : 2 \Rightarrow 1\) and \(f_2(\eta) : 0 \Rightarrow 1\) are both terminal arrows. Consider the 3-generator

\[
A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi : a^3 \Rightarrow a : \ast \rightarrow \ast
\]

with \(\phi = (\mu \ast_0 a) \ast_1 \mu\) and \(\psi = (a \ast_0 \mu) \ast_1 \mu\). We necessarily have \(f_2(\phi) = f_2(\psi)\) (where \(f_2\) is extended by functoriality, as in Proposition 10.3.1) because both
Three-dimensional polygraphs

2-cells are of type $3 \Rightarrow 1$ in $\Delta_+$, and the object 1 is terminal in this category. A similar reasoning can be held for the two other 3-generators $L$ and $R$.

10.3.5 Lemma. The function $f_2$ induces a bijection between the normal forms in $P_2^+$ and the 2-cells of $\Delta_+$.

Proof. Given a 2-cell $g : n \to k$ in $\Delta_+$, i.e., a non-decreasing function $g : [n] \to [k]$, and $j \in [k]$, we write $n_j$ for the cardinal of the set $f^{-1}(j)$. Note that the function $g$ is entirely determined by the tuple $(n_1, \ldots, n_k) \in \mathbb{N}^k$ since, for $i \in [n]$, $g(i)$ is the unique element of $[k]$ satisfying

$$\sum_{0 \leq j < g(i)} n_j \leq i < \sum_{0 \leq j \leq g(i)} n_j$$

and conversely any $k$-tuple of natural numbers $(n_1, \ldots, n_k)$ determines an increasing function from $\sum_j n_j$ to $k$ in this way. Given a right forest $\mu_1 \ast_0 \ldots \ast_0 \mu_n$, one easily checks that its image under $f$ is the non-decreasing function with associated $k$-uple $(n_1, \ldots, n_k)$, thus establishing a bijection between forests of width $k$ and non-decreasing functions with codomain $k$. □

In order to illustrate the above proof, consider the function $g : 5 \to 3$ whose graph is depicted on the left below:

The associated sequence in $\mathbb{N}^3$ is $(3, 0, 2)$ and the associated normal form is the right forest $\mu_3 \ast_0 \mu_0 \ast_0 \mu_2$ as pictured on the right. Note the clear correspondence between the two figures.

Let us sum up the results we have obtained in this section for the augmented simplicial category $\Delta_+$. We have

1. Constructed two 1-cells $\mu : 2 \to 1$ and $\eta : 0 \to 1$ in the 2-category $\Delta_+$; both are terminal 2-cells,
2. Shown that they generate the 2-category: every morphism of $\Delta_+$ can be written as a (horizontal or vertical) composite of those 2-cells,
3. Shown that those two 2-cells satisfy the axioms $A$, $L$ and $R$ of Example 10.1.2 (reading 3-cells are equalities), expressing that $\mu$ is associative and admits $\eta$ as left and right unit,
4. Shown that this set of axioms is complete: if two composites of $\mu$ and $\eta$ give rise to the same 2-cell in $\Delta_+$ then one can show that they are equal using axioms $A$, $L$, $R$, and axioms for 2-categories.
Since the generators and the relations are precisely those of monoids, we can deduce that $\Delta_+ \to C$ impersonates the notion of monoid, in the sense that a 2-functor $\Delta_+ \to C$ to some 2-category $C$ determines a monoid, as explained in Example 10.1.5.

### 10.3.6 Presentations from polygraphs with canonical forms.

The observation made for 2-polygraphs in Remark 4.5.4 generalizes to 3-polygraphs. Namely, in the proof of Proposition 10.3.1, we did not fully use the convergence of the polygraph, only the existence of canonical representatives of equivalence classes provided by normal forms. This suggests the following generalization of the above method, which applies in cases where, even though it is difficult to construct a convergent presentation, one can still directly come up with a notion of canonical form. Many applications of this methodology were studied by Lafont [235].

### 10.3.7 Proposition.

Suppose given

- a 3-polygraph $P$,
- a 2-category $C$ whose underlying category is isomorphic to the free category on the underlying 1-polygraph of $P$,
- a function $f_2 : P_2 \to C_2$ which is compatible with source and target,
- a set $P^*_2 \subseteq P^*_2$ of 2-cells called canonical forms,

such that

1. for any 2-generator $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ in $P_3$, we have $f_2(\phi) = f_2(\psi)$,
2. every 2-cell in $P^*_2$ is equivalent, with respect to the congruence $\approx_P$ generated by $P_3$, to a canonical form,
3. $f_2$ restricts to a bijection between canonical forms $\alpha \Rightarrow \beta$ in $P^*_2$ and 2-cells $f(\alpha) \Rightarrow f(\beta)$ in $C$, where $f_2$ is implicitly extended to 2-cells in $P^*_2$ by functoriality.

Then $P$ is a presentation of the 2-category $C$.

**Proof.** As in the proof of Proposition 10.3.1, by the first condition, $f_2$ induces a 2-functor $f : \overline{P} \to C$, which is bijective on 0- and 1-cells. By surjectivity of $f_2$ in the third condition, for every 2-cell $\phi$ in $C_2$, there is a canonical form $\overline{\phi}$ such that $f_2(\overline{\phi}) = \phi$. We have $f(\overline{\phi}) = f_2(\overline{\phi}) = \phi$ and $f$ is thus surjective on 2-cells. Moreover, consider two parallel 2-cells $\phi$ and $\psi$ of $\overline{P}_2$, such that $f(\phi) = f(\psi)$. The second condition ensures that there are canonical forms $\overline{\phi}$ and $\overline{\psi}$ such that $\phi = \overline{\phi}$ and $\psi = \overline{\psi}$. We have

$$f_2(\overline{\phi}) = f(\overline{\phi}) = f(\phi) = f(\psi) = f(\overline{\psi}) = f_2(\overline{\psi}).$$
By injectivity of $f_2$ in the third condition, we have $\tilde{\phi} = \tilde{\psi}$. Thus, $\phi = \tilde{\phi} = \tilde{\psi} = \psi$ and $f$ is injective on 2-cells.

In particular, when $P$ is a convergent 3-polygraph, we can take $P^*_2$ to be the set of 2-cells in normal form, thus recovering Proposition 10.3.1 as a particular case of previous proposition.

**10.3.8 Example.** In order to show that Mon presents $\Delta_+$, we could have chosen the following alternative definition of right combs:

$$
\mu_0 = \eta \\
\mu_{n+1} = (a *_0 \mu_n) *_1 \mu
$$

Right forests are obtained as horizontal composites of such right combs, and we consider those as canonical forms. The definition is mostly the same as before except that we have

$$
\mu_1 = (a *_0 \eta) *_1 \mu = \text{canonical form}.
$$

It can be shown that every 2-cell is equivalent to a canonical form using a variant of the proof of Lemma 10.3.4, and one can construct a bijection between canonical forms and 2-cells in $\Delta_+$ using a variant of the proof of Lemma 10.3.5. We can thus conclude that Mon is a presentation of $\Delta_+$ by Proposition 10.3.7.

Note that the canonical form associated to $1_+$ is $\mu_1$, so there is no hope to obtain canonical forms as normal forms for some convergent 3-polygraph, because no terminating polygraph can rewrite identities.

**10.3.9 Remark.** As a variant of the previous example, consider the category $\Delta_+^2 = \Delta_+ \times \Delta_+$. The monoidal structure on $\Delta_+$ induces one on $\Delta_+^2$ given on objects by

$$(m_1, n_1) \otimes (m_2, n_2) = (m_1 \otimes m_2, n_1 \otimes n_2)$$

and similarly on morphisms. The underlying monoid of objects of this category is $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}$ which is abelian and thus not free (see §2.3.13). Therefore, by §10.1.6, there is no presentation of it (seen as a 2-category induced by the monoidal structure, see §2.4.10) by a 2-polygraph. This situation is detailed in [101]. The same argument applies to most products of 2-categories, but for degenerated cases.

**10.3.10 Presenting categories.** Let $P$ be a 3-polygraph presenting a monoidal category $C$, seen as a 2-category: this presentation is of the form

$$P = \{ * \mid P_1 \mid P_2 \mid P_3 \}.$$
The monoidal category $C$ has an underlying category, obtained by forgetting the tensor product and unit object. This category admits, as a category, a presentation by the following 2-polygraph $Q$ constructed from $P$:

- $Q_0 = P_1^*$ is the set of 1-cells $u : * \to *$ in $P_1^*$
- $Q_1 = P_1^*P_2P_2^*$ contains a 1-generator
  
  \[ uaw : uw \to uw'w \]
  
  for every 1-cells $u, w \in P_1^*$ and 2-generator $\alpha : v \Rightarrow v'$ in $P_2$
- $Q_2$ contains a 2-generator
  
  \[ uAw : u\psi w \Rightarrow u\psi w \]
  
  for every 1-cells $u, w \in P_1^*$ and 3-generator $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$, where $u\phi w$ and $u\psi w$ are seen as elements of $Q_2^*$ in the expected functorial way, it also contains a 2-generator
  
  \[ X_{u, a, w', \beta, u''} : uaw'w'' \cdot u'w' \beta u'' \Rightarrow uaw' \beta u'' \cdot uaw'w'u'' \]
  
  for every 1-cells $u, u', u'' \in P_1^*$ and 2-generators $\alpha : v \Rightarrow v'$ and $\beta : w \Rightarrow w'$ in $P_2$ (which encodes the exchange law).

10.3.11 Example. We have seen above the augmented simplicial category $\Delta_+$ was presented, as a monoidal category, by the 3-polygraph Mon defined in Example 10.1.2. We deduce the presentation of $\Delta_+$, as a category, by the 2-polygraph $P$ with

- 0-generators: for $i \in \mathbb{N}$, a generator $a_i^d$
- 1-generators: for $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$,
  
  \[ a_i^d \mu a_j^l : a_i^{d+2+j} \to a_i^{d+1+j} \]
  
  \[ d^i \eta a_j^l : a_i^{d+j} \to a_i^{d+1+j} \]
- 2-generators: for $i, j \in \mathbb{N}$,

  \[ a_i^d \Lambda a_j^l : a_i^{d+1} \mu a_j^l \Rightarrow a_i^{d+1} a_i^d \mu a_j^l \]
  
  \[ a_i^d \Lambda a_j^l : a_i^{d+1} a_i^d \mu a_j^l \Rightarrow a_i^{d+1} a_i^d \mu a_j^l \]
  
  \[ a_i^d \Lambda a_j^l : a_i^{d+1} a_i^d \mu a_j^l \Rightarrow a_i^{d+1} a_i^d \mu a_j^l \]

  It can be checked that we precisely recover the presentation for the simplicial category given in §4.5.6, up to renaming the 1-generators $a_i^d \mu a_j^l$ to $s_i^d s_j^{i+j+k}$ and $a_i^d \eta a_j^l$ to $d_i^{i+j}$. 


10.4 Indexed critical branchings

There is a major difference between rewriting in 3-polygraphs compared to the case of 2-polygraphs studied in previous chapters: contrarily to presentations of categories (see Lemma 4.3.10), the number of critical branchings of a finite 3-polygraph can be infinite. We begin with an example of this phenomenon, originally observed by Lafont [235].

10.4.1 Presenting the theory for symmetries. The category $S$ is the category whose objects are natural numbers and a morphism $f : m \to n$ is a bijection (also called a permutation) from $[m]$ to $[n]$, the ordinals with $m$ and $n$ elements respectively, with usual compositions and identities. Here, all morphisms are in fact endomorphisms. This category is monoidal with tensor product given by addition on objects (this is a PRO) and as for $\Delta_+$ on morphisms, see (10.1) in §10.3.2.

Starting from the fact that any bijection can be decomposed as a composite of transpositions, we expect that this monoidal category, seen as a 2-category, admits a presentation by the following 3-polygraph $P$:

$$\langle \star \mid a \mid \gamma : a \ast_0 a \to a \ast_0 a \mid I, Y \rangle$$

Here, the 2-generator $\gamma$ corresponds to the transposition on a set with two elements and is usually pictured as

$\begin{array}{c}
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc \\
\end{array}$

The two 3-generators express

– the involutivity of the transposition:

$$I : \gamma \ast_1 \gamma \Rightarrow 1_a \ast_0 1_a$$

which can be represented as

$\begin{array}{c}
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc \\
\end{array}$

– the Yang-Baxter relation $Y$ of type

$$(\gamma \ast_0 1_a) \ast_1 (1_a \ast_0 \gamma) \ast_1 (\gamma \ast_0 1_a) \Rightarrow (1_a \ast_0 \gamma) \ast_1 (\gamma \ast_0 1_a) \ast_1 (1_a \ast_0 \gamma)$$

which can be represented as

$\begin{array}{c}
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc \\
\end{array}$
In this polygraph, it can be noted that, for any 2-cell $\phi : a^m \Rightarrow a^n$, the 2-cell

$$(\gamma *_0 a^m) *_1 (a *_0 \gamma *_0 a^m) *_1 (\gamma *_0 \phi) *_1 (a *_0 \gamma *_0 a^n) *_1 (\gamma *_0 a^{n+1})$$

of $P_2^*$ can be rewritten in two ways using the rule $Y$:

\[ \equiv \Rightarrow \]

This gives rise to a critical branching when $\phi$ is either $1_a$ or of the form $\gamma^{n+1}$ (the vertical composite of $n + 1$ instances of $\gamma$). The critical branchings of the rewriting system are thus

\[ \equiv \Rightarrow \]

In the first case, the 2-cell can be rewritten by $I$ in two different ways, in the second and third case, the 2-cells can be rewritten both by $I$ and $Y$. The fourth and fifth case can be rewritten by $Y$ in two ways, as described above. A finite 3-polygraph can thus give rise to an infinite number of critical branchings. Still, they can be checked to be confluent. In the first four cases, this can be checked directly:
In the fifth case, we have, depending on whether \( n \) is odd or even:

\[
\gamma^{n+1} \Rightarrow 1_{a^2} \quad \text{or} \quad \gamma^{n+1} \Rightarrow \gamma
\]

and in the two cases the local branching is confluent:

- if \( \gamma^{n+1} \Rightarrow 1_{a^2} \):

- if \( \gamma^{n+1} \Rightarrow \gamma \):
10.4 Indexed critical branchings

Finally, the rewriting system can be shown to be terminating (Examples 11.2.9 and 11.3.9) and thus convergent.

The normal forms can be characterized as follows. We first define, for every \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), a 2-cell

\[
\gamma_n : a^{n+1} \rightarrow a^{n+1}
\]

by

\[
\gamma_0 = 1_a \quad \gamma_{n+1} = (\gamma_n *_0 a) *_1 (a^n *_0 \gamma).
\]

This cell can be seen as a generalization of \( \gamma \) since \( \gamma_1 = \gamma \), and \( \gamma_n \) is most naturally pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
\gamma_0 \\
\gamma_1 \\
\gamma_2 \\
\gamma_3 \\
\vdots
\end{array}
\]

i.e., for low values of \( n \),

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\gamma_0 \\
\gamma_1 \\
\gamma_2 \\
\gamma_3 \\
\gamma_3
\end{array}
\]

The normal forms of the rewriting system can be characterized as follows, from which we can conclude that this is indeed a presentation of \( S \).

10.4.2 Proposition. A 2-cell \( \phi \) is a normal form if and only if it is either

- \( \phi = 1_\cdot \phi \), or
- there exists a normal form \( \psi : n \rightarrow n \) and \( m \in \mathbb{N} \) with \( 0 \leq m \leq n \) such that \( \phi \) is

\[
(a *_0 \psi) *_1 (\gamma_m *_0 a^{n-m}) : m + 1 \rightarrow m + 1
\]

what we write

\[
\phi = \Gamma_m \psi
\]

i.e., graphically,

\[
\phi = \begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
\phi
\end{array}
\]

Proof. We call canonical forms the 2-cells of the above form. Those are in normal form: this can be checked directly. Conversely, we show that any 2-cell \( \phi \) rewrites to a canonical form, by induction on its size. If the size of \( \phi \) is 0 then \( \phi \) is of the form \( 1_\cdot a^n \) and we have \( \phi = \Gamma_0 \ldots \Gamma_0 \Gamma_0 1_\cdot a^n \) (with \( n \) occurrences of \( \Gamma_0 \)). Otherwise, \( \phi \) is of the form

\[
\phi = \phi' *_1 (a^l *_0 \gamma *_0 a^l) = \begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
\phi'
\end{array}
\]


where $\phi'$ rewrites to a canonical form $\Gamma_m \psi$. Then depending on the respective values of $m$ and $i$, four generic situations are possible, and in all of them $\phi$ rewrites to a canonical form (by using the induction hypothesis in the first and in the last case):

This concludes the proof. □

Given a bijection $f : [n] \to [n]$ its Lehmer code is a sequence of $n$ natural numbers $(k_0, k_1, \ldots, k_{n-1})$ such that $0 \leq k_i < n - i$ for every index $i$, where $k_i$ is the cardinal of the set $\{ j > i \mid f(j) < f(i) \}$. It can be shown that this induces a bijection between permutations of $[n]$ and such sequences, see [240, 248]. For instance, consider the permutation of $[4]$ whose images are $(2 \ 0 \ 4 \ 3 \ 1)$, pictured on the left:

The associated Lehmer code is $(2, 0, 2, 1, 0)$. We can finally conclude that the polygraph $P$ defined in 10.4.1 is a presentation of the PRO of symmetries, see [235] for details.

10.4.3 Theorem. The polygraph $P$ is a presentation of $S$.

Proof. Following the method described in Proposition 10.3.1, we interpret the morphism $\gamma : 2 \to 2$ as the transposition $[2] \to [2]$, and this interpretation is
compatible with the two rules. It is easy to see that the interpretation of a normal form $\Gamma k_0 \ldots \Gamma k_{n-1} \Gamma_0$ is the bijection whose Lehmer code $(k_0, k_1, \ldots, k_n)$. For instance, the normal form associated to the bijection (10.2) is $\Gamma_2 \Gamma_0 \Gamma_2 \Gamma_1 \Gamma_0 \Gamma_1 u^\nu$, which is pictured on the right of (10.2). This clearly establishes a bijection between 2-cells in normal form in $P^*_{\leq 2}$ and 2-cells of S.

10.4.4 Classification of critical branchings. Critical branchings in 3-polygraphs are classified in [161]. This case is more difficult than in dimension 2 mainly because, as initially noted in [235] and observed in previous section, a finite 3-polygraph may have an infinite number of critical branchings. However, an analysis of the possible shapes of these critical branchings yields a sufficient condition for confluence that only requires to consider a finite subset of them.

Assume that $P$ is a 3-polygraph. By examination of the different possibilities, the critical branchings of $P$ are classified as follows [161, Section 5.1.1].

1. Inclusion critical branchings, with the following source, if $\chi$ is the source of a 3-generator of $P$, and $\phi \ast_1 u \chi v \ast_1 \psi$ is the source of another one:

2. Regular critical branchings, with the following source, if $\phi \ast_1 u \chi$ and $\chi v \ast_1 \psi$ (or $\phi \ast_1 \chi v$ and $u \chi \ast_1 \psi$) are the sources of two 3-generators of $P$:

3. Instances of left-indexed critical branchings, with the following source, if $\phi \ast_1 u \chi$ and $v \chi \ast_1 \psi$ are the sources of two 3-generators of $P$, and $\zeta : wu \Rightarrow xv$ is a 2-cell of $P^*$:

4. Instances of right-indexed critical branchings, with the following source, if $\phi \ast_1 \chi u$ and $\chi v \ast_1 \psi$ are the sources of 3-generators of $P$, and $\zeta : uw \Rightarrow vx$
is a 2-cell of $P^*$:

5. Instances of multi-indexed critical branchings, in all the other cases: one has
a 3-generator with a source of the form

$$\phi *_1 (u_0 *_0 \chi_1 *_0 u_1 *_0 \chi_2 *_0 \cdots *_0 u_{n-1} *_0 \chi_n *_0 u_n)$$

and another 3-generator with a source of the form

$$(v_0 *_0 \chi_1 *_0 v_1 *_0 \chi_2 *_0 \cdots *_0 v_{n-1} *_0 \chi_n *_0 v_n) *_1 \psi$$

so that the source of the branching is of the form

For example, in the presentation of §10.4.1, the four first branchings are regular whereas the generic family of branchings is right-indexed (by $\gamma^{n+1}$).

An instance of a left- or right-indexed branching, is a left- or right-indexed branching as above, with a particular value for the 2-cell $\zeta$. It is a normal instance when $\zeta$ is in normal form.

10.4.5 Indexed polygraphs. We say that a 3-polygraph $P$ is non-indexed if it has inclusion or regular critical branchings only, left-indexed (resp. right-indexed) if it has inclusion, regular or left-indexed (resp. right-indexed) critical branchings only, and finitely indexed if each of its indexed critical branchings has a finite number of reduced instances. Then we have the following results, which apply to the presentation of permutations in §10.4.1.

10.4.6 Proposition ([161, Proposition 5.1.3]). If $P$ has a finite number of 3-cells, then it has a finite number of inclusion and regular critical branchings.

10.4.7 Proposition ([161, Proposition 5.3.1]). If $P$ is terminating and left-indexed (resp. right-indexed), then $P$ is confluent if and only if all its inclusion and regular critical branchings, and all the reduced instances of its left-indexed (resp. right-indexed) critical branchings are confluent.
### 10.5 Distributive laws

The notions introduced in Section 3.3 for combining presentations using distributive laws generalize easily to presentations of monoidal categories as we now briefly explain, following [230].

#### 10.5.1 Monoidal categories as monads.

We have seen in §3.3.13 that a category corresponds precisely to a monad in \( \text{Span}(\text{Set}) \), and our aim is to generalize this situation to strict monoidal categories. The main starting point is that, in a strict monoidal category, the set of objects forms a monoid, with tensor as product.

The category \( \text{Mon} \) of monoids and their morphisms has small limits and it therefore makes sense to consider the bicategory \( \text{Span}(\text{Mon}) \) of spans internals to \( \text{Mon} \) as explained in §3.3.11: a 0-cell of this bicategory is a monoid, a 1-cell from \( A \) to \( B \) is a diagram of the form

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & C & B \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
& \downarrow & \\
& B & \\
\end{array}
\]

in \( \text{Mon} \) and composition is given by pullback. It can then be observed that a monad in this bicategory (see §3.3.12) is precisely a monoidal category. In particular, a PRO corresponds to a monad on the monoid \( (\mathbb{N}, +, 0) \). This point of view allows us to compose monoidal categories through distributive laws between the corresponding monads. We briefly present it below.

#### 10.5.2 Distributive laws.

Given two monoidal categories \( C \) and \( D \) with the same monoid of objects, a distributive law between them is a distributive law between the corresponding monads in \( \text{Span}(\text{Mon}) \), in the sense of §3.3.12. It consists of a distributive law

\[
\ell : D \otimes C \to C \otimes D
\]

in the sense of §3.3.2, between the underlying categories, which is compatible with tensor product in the sense that, for \( f_1, f_2, f'_1, f'_2 \) and \( g_1, g_2, g'_1, g'_2 \) morphisms of \( C \) and \( D \) respectively,

\[
\ell(g'_1, f'_1) = (f_1 \cdot g_1) \\
\ell(g'_2, f'_2) = (f_2 \cdot g_2)
\]

implies

\[
\ell(g'_1 \otimes g'_2, f'_1 \otimes f'_2) = (f_1 \otimes f_2, g_1 \otimes g_2).
\]

#### 10.5.3 Factorization systems.

Given monoidal categories \( C, D \) and \( E \), with the same monoid of objects, we have \( C \otimes_\ell D = E \) precisely when \( C \) and \( D \) form a monoidal factorization system for \( E \), i.e., \( C \) and \( D \) are monoidal subcategories of \( E \) such that every morphism of \( E \) factorizes uniquely a morphism of \( C \) followed by a morphism of \( D \).
In the case where \( C \) (resp. \( D \)) admits a presentation by a 3-polygraph \( P \) (resp. \( Q \)), with \( P_0 = Q_0 = \{ \star \} \) and \( P_1 = Q_1 \), the category \( E \) admits a presentation by the 3-polygraph \( R \) with

\[
R_0 = \{ \star \} \quad R_1 = P_1 = Q_1 \quad R_2 = P_2 \sqcup Q_2 \quad R_3 = P_3 \sqcup Q_3 \sqcup R_3^\ell
\]

where \( R_3^\ell \) presents the distributive law similarly to Theorem 3.3.6.

10.5.4 Composing PROPs. Generalized composition of categories, as described in §3.3.17, also extends to this setting. A typical situation where this is useful is the case of PROPs: those are strict symmetric monoidal categories, with \((\mathbb{N}, +, 0)\) as monoid of objects. When composing two PROPs, one would like to identify the symmetric structures already present in both of them.

The category \( S \) of finite cardinals and bijections is the free PROP (this follows from the presentation constructed in §10.4.1, see also §C.1.4), and a PROP \( C \) can thus be seen as a monad on the additive monoid \( \mathbb{N} \) in \( \text{Span}(\text{Mon}) \) equipped with a functor \( S \to C \), i.e., an object on the category on the left of (10.3) below. As explained in §3.3.20, we have an isomorphism

\[
S/\text{Mon}(\text{Span}(\text{Mon})(\mathbb{N}, \mathbb{N})) \cong \text{Mon}(\text{Mod}(\text{Span}(\text{Mon}))(S, S)) \tag{10.3}
\]

which thus allows one to consider a PROP as a monad on bimodules of spans of monoids over \( S \), and two PROPs \( C \) and \( D \) can be composed along a distributive law

\[
\ell : D \otimes_S C \to C \otimes_S D
\]

between the corresponding monads: the composite defined in this way always gives rise to a PROP, and identifies the symmetry structure in the composed PROPs as expected [230, 357]. When the two PROPs \( C \) and \( D \) are presented, one can obtain a presentation of their composite using by a direct generalization of §3.3.21.

Similarly, Lawvere theories can be seen as monads in bimodules of spans of monoids over \( F \) and can be composed along distributive laws [85], see also §13.1.18.

10.5.5 Example. We write \( F \) (resp. \( F_\mu \), resp. \( F_\eta \)) for the PROP of finite cardinals and functions (resp. surjective functions, resp. injective functions), see §C.2. The PROPs \( F_\mu \) and \( F_\eta \) are subcategories of \( F \), any morphism \( h \in F \) factorizes as \( h = g \circ f \) with \( f \in F_\mu \) and \( g \in F_\eta \), and for any other factorization \( h = g' \circ f' \) there exists a permutation \( w \in S \) making the following diagram
10.5 Distributive laws

Distributive laws commute:

\[
\begin{align*}
    f & \quad y \\
    x & \quad w \\
    z & \quad g \\
    f' & \quad y' \\
    g' &
\end{align*}
\]

i.e., we have \( F = F_\mu \otimes F_\eta \). The categories \( F_\mu \) and \( F_\eta \) respectively admit presentations by the polygraphs \( P \) and \( Q \) with generators

\[
P_0 = Q_0 = \{*\} \quad P_1 = Q_1 = \{a\} \quad P_2 = \{\begin{array}{c}
    \text{symmetry relation}
\end{array}\} \quad Q_2 = \{\begin{array}{c}
    \text{symmetry relation}
\end{array}\}
\]

where the relations in \( P_3 \) are

\[
\begin{align*}
    & \Rightarrow \\
    & \Rightarrow \\
    & \Rightarrow \\
    & \Rightarrow \\
\end{align*}
\]

and the relations in \( Q_3 \) are

\[
\begin{align*}
    & \Rightarrow \\
    & \Rightarrow \\
    & \Rightarrow \\
    & \Rightarrow \\
\end{align*}
\]

From those, we deduce the presentation of \( F \) by the polygraph \( R \) with

\[
R_0 = \{*\} \quad R_1 = \{a\} \quad R_2 = P_2 \cup Q_2 = \{\begin{array}{c}
    \text{symmetry relation}
\end{array}\}
\]

and the relations are

- the common relation for symmetry:
Three-dimensional polygraphs

- the relations of $P$:

- the relations of $Q$:

- the relations generated by the distributive law:
This chapter presents techniques for proving the termination of 3-polygraphs, generalizing those already introduced for 2-polygraphs in Section 4.4. A first method, described in Section 11.1, is based on a certain type of well-founded orders called reduction orders. We then turn in Section 11.2 to functorial interpretations: these amount to construct a functor from the underlying category to another category which already bears a reduction order. This covers quite a few useful examples. To address more complex cases, we present in Section 11.3 a powerful technique, due to Guiraud [158, 161], based on the construction of a derivation from the polygraph. Here, termination is obtained by specifying quantities on 2-cells which decrease during rewriting, based on information propagated by the 2-cells themselves.

11.1 Reduction and termination orders

We begin by extending the notion of reduction order introduced in Section 4.4, from 2-polygraphs to 3-polygraphs.

11.1.1 Definition. Given a 2-category $C$, a reduction order is a partial order $\succ$ on pairs of parallel 2-cells which is

- well-founded: every weakly decreasing sequence of 2-cells is eventually stationary,
- compatible with 0-composition: for every 2-cells

\[
\phi : u \Rightarrow u' : x' \to x \quad \psi_1, \psi_2 : v \Rightarrow v' : x \to y \quad \phi' : w \Rightarrow w' : y \to y'
\]
which can be represented as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{ x' \ar[rr]^u \ar[dd]_{u'} & \& x \ar[rr]_v \ar@{.>}[dd]_{v'} & \& y \ar[rr]_w \ar[dd]_{w'} & \& y' \\
\phi & \phi_1 \phi_2 & \phi' & \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi'
\end{array}
\]

we have that

\[
\psi_1 > \psi_2 \ \text{implies} \ \phi \ast_0 \psi_1 \ast_0 \phi' > \phi \ast_0 \psi_2 \ast_0 \phi',
\]

– compatible with 1-composition: for every 2-cells

\[
\phi : u' \Rightarrow u : x \rightarrow y \quad \psi_1, \psi_2 : u \Rightarrow v : x \rightarrow y \quad \phi' : v \Rightarrow v' : x \rightarrow y
\]

which can be represented as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{ x \ar[rr]^u \ar[dd]_{u'} & \& x \ar[rr]_v \ar@{.>}[dd]_{v'} & \& y \ar[rr]_w \ar[dd]_{w'} & \& y' \\
\phi & \psi_1 & \psi_2 & \phi' & \psi_1 \psi_2 \phi'
\end{array}
\]

we have that

\[
\psi_1 > \psi_2 \ \text{implies} \ \phi \ast_1 \psi_1 \ast_1 \phi' > \phi \ast_1 \psi_2 \ast_1 \phi'.
\]

Given a 3-polygraph \( P \), a reduction order \( \succ \) on the 2-category \( P^*_2 \) is said to be compatible with the rules of \( P \) when \( \phi \succ \phi' \) for every rule \( A : \phi \Rightarrow \phi' \) in \( P_3 \). In this case, the order \( \succ \) is called a termination order for \( P \).

In an arbitrary 3-polygraph \( P \), we write \( \Rightarrow^* \) for the relation on parallel 2-cells of \( P^*_2 \) such that \( \phi \Rightarrow^* \psi \) whenever \( \phi \) rewrites to \( \psi \), or equivalently whenever there is a 3-cell \( F : \phi \Rightarrow \psi \) in \( P^*_3 \).

**11.1.2 Proposition.** Given a 3-polygraph \( P \), the following statements are equivalent.

1. The polygraph \( P \) is terminating.
2. The relation \( \Rightarrow^* \) is a termination order.
3. The polygraph \( P \) admits a termination order.

**Proof.** Similar to the proof of Proposition 4.4.2. □
11.2 Functorial interpretations

The main criterion for showing the termination of a 3-polygraph is given by constructing a suitable interpretation of its 2-cells in 2-categories for which a reduction order is known. This generalizes the technique of reduction functions introduced in §4.4.5.

11.2.1 Proposition. Let $P$ be a 3-polygraph. The following statements are equivalent.

1. The 3-polygraph $P$ terminates.
2. There exists a 2-category $C$, equipped with a reduction order $\succ$, and a 2-functor $[-]: P_2^* \to C$, such that $[\phi] \succ [\psi]$ for every 3-generator $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ in $P_3$.

Proof. $1 \Rightarrow 2.$ If the polygraph $P$ terminates, we can take $C = P_2^*$ and $[-] = 1_{P_2^*}$. By Proposition 11.1.2, taking $\Rightarrow^*$ for $\succ$ gives a termination order for $P$, hence a reduction order on $C$ such that $[\phi] \succ [\psi]$ for every 3-generator $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ in $P_3$.

$2 \Rightarrow 1.$ Conversely, $[-]$ being a functor, and $\succ$ being compatible with the compositions of $C$ imply that, for every rewriting step $F : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$, we have $[f] \succ [g]$ in $C$. Now, assume that $P$ does not terminate. Then there exists an infinite sequence of composable rewriting steps in $P$, yielding an infinite decreasing sequence for $\succ$, which is excluded by well-foundedness of $\succ$. □

11.2.2 The number of generators. A first very simple situation in which a 3-polygraph terminates is when each rewriting rule (and thus each rewriting step) decreases the number of 2-generators in 2-cells (we recall that the number $|\phi|$ of 2-generators in a 2-cell $\phi$ was formally defined in §10.2.1). Namely, the usual order $\geq$ on natural numbers is a reduction order because it is well-founded and addition is strictly increasing. Thus, the following statement is a direct application of Proposition 11.2.1.

11.2.3 Proposition. A 3-polygraph $P$ such that $|\phi| > |\phi'|$ for every rewriting rule $A : \phi \Rightarrow \phi'$ in $P_3$, is terminating.

11.2.4 Example. Consider the 3-polygraph Mon of monoids described in Examples 10.1.2 and 10.2.10, and write $Mon'$ for the polygraph obtained from Mon by removing the rewriting rule $A$ corresponding to associativity. For both rewriting rules $L$ and $R$, the number of generators of the source is 2 and the number of generators of the target is 0. By Proposition 11.2.3, the polygraph Mon’ is thus terminating.

However, in the rule $A$, the number of generators in the source and in the
Termination of 3-polygraphs

target are both 2. Therefore the above proposition does not apply to Mon. We see below a more general method which is able to handle this case, see Example 11.2.8.

11.2.5 A 2-category of posets. We define a 2-category $\text{Ord}$ with one 0-cell $\star$, 1-cells are posets, and 2-cells are weakly increasing functions. The composition of two 1-cells $(X, \leq_X)$ and $(Y, \leq_Y)$ is given by their cartesian product $(X \times Y, \leq_{X \times Y})$, where the product order is such that $(x, y) \leq_{X \times Y} (x', y')$ if and only if $x \leq_X x'$ and $y \leq_Y y'$. Likewise, the horizontal composition of 2-cells is given by their cartesian product, and their vertical composition is the usual composition of functions.

We write $\succ$ for the pointwise order on 2-cells: given $f, g : X \Rightarrow Y$, we have $f \succ g$ if and only if $f(x) > g(x)$ for every $x \in X$. This order is always compatible with horizontal and vertical composition of 2-cells.

11.2.6 Lemma. Given posets $X$ and $Y$ such that $X$ is non-empty and $Y$ is well-founded, the order $\succ$ on functions $X \Rightarrow Y$ is well-founded.

Proof. Fix an arbitrary element $x$ in $X$, which is supposed to be non-empty. An infinite strictly decreasing sequence of functions $f_0 > f_1 > \ldots$ would induce an infinite strictly decreasing sequence $f_0(x) > f_1(x) > \ldots$ of elements of $Y$. This is excluded by well-foundedness of $Y$. □

This provides us with the following technique for showing termination of polygraphs, first considered in [235]:

11.2.7 Proposition. Let $P$ be a 3-polygraph and $(X, \leq)$ a non-empty well-founded poset. Suppose that to each 2-generator $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ in $P_2$ whose source has length $m = |u|$ and target has length $n = |v|$ is assigned a strictly increasing function $[\alpha] : X^m \rightarrow X^n$, and write $[-] : P_2 \rightarrow \text{Ord}$ for the induced 2-functor. If, for every rewriting rule $\Lambda : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ in $P_3$, we have $[\phi] \succ [\psi]$ then the polygraph $P$ terminates.

Proof. Write $C$ for the full sub-2-category of $\text{Ord}$ whose 1-cells are the powers $X^n$ of the poset $X$. The order on $X^n$ is well-founded as a product of well-founded orders, and therefore the induced order $\succ$ on 2-cells $X^m \Rightarrow X^n$ is also well-founded by Lemma 11.2.6. For every 2-cell $\phi$, we have that $[\phi]$ is a strictly increasing function and thus the order is compatible with composition of 2-cells in the sense of Definition 11.1.1, it is thus a reduction order on $C$. We conclude with Proposition 11.2.1. □

11.2.8 Example. Consider the 3-polygraph $\text{Mon}$ of monoids introduced in Ex-
ample 10.1.5. Graphically, its rules are

\[ \begin{align*}
A & : \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \quad \downarrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array} & L & : \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \quad \uparrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array} & R & : \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \quad \uparrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array}.
\end{align*} \]

Writing \( X = \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\} \) equipped with the usual order, we define

\[ (i, j) = 2i + j \quad \text{and} \quad q() = 1. \]

We can then conclude to the termination of the polygraph by Proposition 11.2.7, after checking the following strict inequalities:

\[ (i, j, k) = 4i + 2j + k > 2i + 2j + k = (i, j, k) \]

\[ (i) = 2i > i = (i) \]

\[ (i) = 2i + 1 > i = (i). \]

11.2.9 Example. Consider the 2-polygraph of permutations introduced in \S 10.4.1. It has one 0-generator \( \star \), one 1-generator \( a \), one 2-generator

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array} \]

and its rules are

\[ \begin{align*}
N & : \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array} & Y & : \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\uparrow 
\end{array}.
\end{align*} \]

We consider the well-founded poset \( X = \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\} \) equipped with the usual order, and consider the interpretation

\[ (i, j) = (i + j, i). \]

By Proposition 11.2.7, we ensure that the polygraph is terminating by showing that the rewriting rules are strictly decreasing:

\[ (i, j) = (2i + j + j) > (i, j) = (i, j) \]

\[ (i, j, k) = (2i + j + k, i + j, i) > (i + j + k, i + j, i) = (i, j, k). \]
11.2.10 Example. By combining the two previous examples, one can construct a convergent rewriting system corresponding to the theory of commutative monoids (see §C.2.5) which is terminating [235].

11.2.11 Remark. Consider a 3-polygraph $P$ containing a 3-generator

$$A : \phi \leadsto \psi : u \Rightarrow v : x \rightarrow y$$

such that $|v| = 0$, i.e., $x = y$ and $v = 1_x$. Then $X^0$ is reduced to one element and we cannot have $[\phi] > [\psi]$. Therefore, in this case, we cannot use Proposition 11.2.7 to show the termination of the polygraph.

11.2.12 Remark. Proposition 11.2.7 can be generalized by taking a possibly different well-founded poset $X(a)$ for each 1-generator $a$ of the 3-polygraph $P$. In that case, the interpretation of each 2-generator $a : u \rightarrow v$ is replaced by an increasing map $[a] : X(u) \rightarrow X(v)$, where $X$ is extended to a 1-functor from the free 1-category $P^*_1$ to the underlying 1-category of $\text{Ord}$.

11.3 Termination by derivations

The above technique is often not applicable for rewriting systems such that some 2-generators have multiple outputs (with the notable exception of Example 11.2.9). We present here another technique for showing the termination of 3-polygraphs, which is due to Guiraud [158, 161], and is based on the following intuition. As suggested by the string diagrammatic representation, we can think of a 2-cell in a polygraph as some kind of electric circuit, built from basic components, the 2-generators. For each of those components, we are going to specify how the current is transmitted from inputs to outputs (in both directions, from top to bottom and from bottom to top), as well as how much heat it emits when the current flows through. Finally, if the rewriting rules are such that rewriting a circuit strictly decreases its heat, and the heats are taken in a well-founded order, then we will be able to conclude that the rewriting system is terminating.

11.3.1 The category of contexts. Given a 2-polygraph $P$, we write $\mathcal{K}_P$ for the category of contexts of $P$. The objects of this category are the 2-cells of $P^*_2$ and a morphism from a 2-cell $\phi : u \Rightarrow v : x \rightarrow y$ to a 2-cell $\phi' : u' \Rightarrow v' : x' \rightarrow y'$ is a context $K$ of type $(u, v)$, as defined in §10.2.2, such that $K[\phi] = \phi'$.

11.3.2 Natural system. A natural system on a 2-polygraph $P$ is a functor $N : \mathcal{K}_P \rightarrow \text{Ab}$, associating an abelian group $N_\phi$ to every 2-cell $\phi \in P^*_2$ and a
11.3 Termination by derivations

261

morphism of groups \(N_K : N_\alpha \to N_{\alpha'}\) to every context \(K\) such that \(K[\phi] = \phi'\). This notion is a 2-categorical variant of the one already encountered in §8.3.1.

By abuse of notation, given an element \(n \in N_\alpha\) and a context \(K\) of suitable type, we sometimes write \(K[n]\) instead of \(N_K(n)\). Moreover, given \(i\)-composable morphisms \(\phi\) and \(\phi'\), for \(i \in \{0, 1\}\), and elements \(n \in N_\alpha\) and \(n' \in N_{\alpha'}\), we often write \(n \ast_i \phi\) (resp. \(n \ast_i \phi'\)) instead of \(N_K(n\phi)\) (resp. \(N_K(n'\phi')\)) where \(K'\) is the context \(\ast_i \phi\) (resp. \(K\) is the context \(\ast_i X\)).

11.3.3 Derivation. Given a natural system \(N\) on a 2-polygraph \(P\), a derivation \(d\) of \(P\) into \(N\) is a function which to every 2-cell \(\phi\) in \(P^2_\ast\) associates an element of the group \(N_\phi\), in such a way that

\[
d(\phi \ast_i \psi) = d(\phi) + d(\ast_i \psi) + d(\psi)
\]

for suitably \(i\)-composable 2-cells \(\phi\) and \(\psi\) in \(P^2_\ast\), with \(i \in \{0, 1\}\). Note that such a derivation \(d\) is uniquely determined by the images \(d(\alpha) \in N_\alpha\) of the 2-generators \(\alpha \in P_2\).

11.3.4 Lemma. Given a derivation \(d\) as above and a 1-cell \(u \in P^1_\ast\), we have \(d(1_u) = 0\).

Proof. We have

\[
d(1_u) = d(1_u) = d(1_u) + 1_u = d(1_u) + d(1_u) + d(1_u)
\]

from which we conclude. \(\square\)

11.3.5 Example. We write \(Z : \mathcal{K}_P \to \mathbb{Z}\) for the trivial natural system which sends every object to \(\mathbb{Z}\) and every morphism to the identity on \(\mathbb{Z}\). Fix a 2-generator \(\alpha\) in \(P_2\). The operation introduced in §10.2.1, which to a 2-cell \(\phi\) in \(P^2_\ast\) associates the number \(|\phi|_\alpha\) of occurrences of \(\alpha\) in \(\phi\), is the derivation of \(P\) into the trivial natural system such that \(|\alpha|_\alpha = 1\) and \(|\beta|_\alpha = 0\) for \(\beta \in P_2\) such that \(\beta \neq \alpha\).

11.3.6 A natural system of interest. Suppose fixed

- a 2-functor \(X : P^2_\ast \to \text{Ord}\),
- a 2-functor \(Y : (P^2_\ast)^{\text{op}} \to \text{Ord}\), where \((P^2_\ast)^{\text{op}}\) is the 2-category obtained from \(P^2_\ast\) by formally changing the direction of all 2-cells,
- a commutative monoid \((M, +, 0)\) whose addition is strictly increasing.

We define a natural system \(N : \mathcal{K}_P \to \text{Ab}\) as follows.

- To every 2-cell \(u \Rightarrow v\) in \(P^2_\ast\), \(N\) associates the monoid \(N_{\phi}\) of functions \(X_u \times Y_u \to M\) with addition being induced pointwise by the one in \(M\).
Termination of 3-polygraphs

– For every 2-cell \( \phi : u \Rightarrow v : x \rightarrow y \) in \( P^*_2 \), and every pair of 1-cells \( w : x' \rightarrow x, w' : y \rightarrow y' \) as in

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x' \\
\downarrow w \\
x \\
\phi \\
\downarrow u \\
y \\
\downarrow v \\
y' \\
\downarrow w' \\
\end{array}
\]

the image of the context \( K = w *_0 *_0 u *_0 v \) is the group morphism \( N_K : N_\phi \rightarrow N_{w *_0 *_0 u *_0 v} \)

which sends a function \( f : X_u \times Y_v \rightarrow M \) to the function \( N_K(f) : X_{w'} \times X_u \times X_{w'} \times Y_w \times Y_v \times Y_{w'} \rightarrow M \)

obtained by precomposing \( f \) with the canonical projection \( X_{w'} \times X_u \times X_{w'} \times Y_w \times Y_v \times Y_{w'} \rightarrow X_u \times Y_v \).

– For every 2-cell \( \phi : u \Rightarrow v \) and 2-cells \( \psi : u' \Rightarrow u \) and \( \psi' : v \Rightarrow v' \) as in

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \\
\downarrow \phi \\
\downarrow u \\
\psi \\
\downarrow u' \\
\end{array}
\]

the image of the context \( K = \psi *_1 *_1 \psi' \) is the group morphism \( N_K : N_\phi \rightarrow N_{\psi *_1 *_1 \psi'} \)

which sends a function \( f : X_u \times X_v \rightarrow M \) to the function \( N_K(f) : X_{u'} \times Y_{v'} \rightarrow M \)

defined by \( N_K(f) = f \circ (X_\psi \times Y_{v'}). \)
11.3 Termination by derivations

The above conditions entirely determine the derivation \( N \), which we often denote by \( O(X, Y, M) \) to make clear the dependency on \( X, Y \) and \( M \). Note that such a natural system is entirely determined by the data of

- the posets \( X_a \) and \( Y_a \) for every \( a \) in \( P_2 \),
- the functions \( X_\alpha : X_a \to X_e \) and \( Y_\alpha : Y_0 \to Y_0 \) for every 2-generator \( \alpha : u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P_2 \),

where \( X_{a_1 \ldots a_n} = X_{a_1} \times \ldots \times X_{a_n} \).

11.3.7 Remark. We could generalize the definition to the case where \( X \) and \( Y \) are objects in an arbitrary cartesian category and \( M \) is a commutative monoid internal to this category.

Given a 2-cell \( \phi : u \Rightarrow v \) in \( P_2^* \), the monoid \( N_\phi \) is canonically equipped with the order such that, for elements \( f, g : X_u \times Y_v \to M \) of \( N_\phi \) we have

\[ f > g \quad \text{if and only if} \quad f(x, y) > g(x, y) \quad \text{for every} \quad (x, y) \in X_u \times Y_v. \]

The above construction was introduced by Guiraud [158, 161, 159]. It is the basis of the following useful termination criterion.

11.3.8 Theorem. Consider a 3-polygraph \( P \). Suppose given

- two 2-functors \( X : P_2^* \to \textbf{Ord} \) and \( Y : (P_2^*)^{co} \to \textbf{Ord} \) such that for every 1-generator \( a \) in \( P_1 \) the posets \( X_a \) and \( Y_a \) are non-empty, and \( X_\phi \succeq X_\psi \) and \( Y_\phi \succeq Y_\psi \) for every 3-generator \( A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi \) in \( P_3 \),
- a well-founded partially ordered commutative monoid \( (M, +, 0) \) such that addition is strictly increasing,
- a derivation \( d \) from the underlying 2-polygraph of \( P \) to \( O(X, Y, M) \) such that

\[ d(\phi) > d(\psi) \quad \text{for every} \quad 3 \text{-generator} \quad A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi \quad \text{in} \quad P_3. \]

Then the polygraph \( P \) is terminating.

Proof. Let \( K[\alpha] : \chi \Rightarrow \chi' \) be a rewriting step, for some 2-generator \( \alpha : \phi \Rightarrow \phi' \) in \( P_2 \) and context \( K \in \mathcal{K}_P \). By Lemma 10.2.3, the context \( K \) can be written in the form

\[ K = \psi \ast_1 (w \ast_0 w') \ast_1 \psi' \]

for suitably typed 1-cells \( w \) and \( w' \) in \( P_1^* \) and 2-cells \( \psi \) and \( \psi' \) in \( P_2^* \). Using the definition of derivations, see §4.4.13, and Lemma 11.3.4, we have that \( d(K[\chi]) \) is equal to

\[ d(\psi) \ast_1 (w \ast_0 \chi \ast_0 w') \ast_1 \psi' + \psi \ast_1 (w \ast_0 d(\chi) \ast_0 w') \ast_1 \psi' + \psi \ast_1 (w \ast_0 \chi \ast_0 w') \ast_1 d(\psi') \]
and similarly for \( d(K[\chi']) \). By hypothesis, we have \( d(\chi) > d(\chi') \), and therefore
\[
\psi \ast_1 (w \ast_0 d(\chi) \ast_0 w') \ast_1 \psi' > \psi \ast_1 (w \ast_0 d(\chi) \ast_0 w') \ast_1 \psi'.
\]
Moreover, since \( X \) and \( Y \) are decreasing on generators, by functoriality of \( X \) and \( Y \) we have \( X_{\chi'} \succeq X_{\chi} \), and thus
\[
d(\psi) \ast_1 (w \ast_0 \chi \ast_0 w') \ast_1 \psi' \geq d(\psi) \ast_1 (w \ast_0 \chi' \ast_0 w') \ast_1 \psi'
\]
and similarly
\[
\psi \ast_1 (w \ast_0 \chi \ast_0 w') \ast_1 d(\psi') \geq \psi \ast_1 (w \ast_0 \chi' \ast_0 w') \ast_1 d(\psi').
\]
Finally, since addition is strictly increasing, we deduce
\[
d(K[\chi]) > d(K[\chi']):
\]
An infinite sequence of rewriting steps starting from a 2-cell \( \phi : u \Rightarrow v \), would thus induce a strictly decreasing sequence
\[
f_0 > f_1 > f_2 > \ldots
\]
of elements of \( d(\phi) \), i.e., functions \( X_u \times Y_v \rightarrow M \). Since \( X_u \) and \( Y_v \) are supposed to be non-empty, we can pick an element \((x, y) \in X_u \times Y_v\), and we would have a strictly decreasing sequence
\[
f_0(x, y) > f_1(x, y) > f_2(x, y) > \ldots
\]
of elements of \( M \), which is excluded by hypothesis. The polygraph \( P \) is thus terminating. \( \square \)

In order to give some intuition, let us consider a 3-polygraph \( P \). A 2-generator
\[
\alpha : a_1 a_2 \ldots a_m \Rightarrow b_1 b_2 \ldots b_n
\]
in \( P_2 \), where the \( a_i \) and \( b_i \) are 1-generators in \( P_1 \), can be seen as an operation with \( m \) inputs and \( n \) outputs

which, as the figure suggests, can be thought of as a building piece of some electrical circuit. The poset \( X_{a_i} \) (resp. \( Y_{a_i}, X_{b_i}, Y_{b_i} \)) is the set of possible values for the currents flowing into \( a_i \) (resp. out from \( a_i \), out from \( b_i \), into \( b_i \)). The function
\[
X_{\alpha} : X_{a_1} \times \ldots \times X_{a_m} \rightarrow X_{b_1} \times \ldots \times X_{b_n}
\]
then indicates, given currents flowing into the inputs $a_i$, what currents we get from the outputs $b_i$. Similarly, the function 

$$Y_\alpha : Y_{b_1} \times \cdots \times Y_{b_n} \to Y_{a_1} \times \cdots \times Y_{a_m}$$

indicate the current we obtain from the $a_i$ if we use the device “upside down” and flow currents into the $b_i$. Finally, the monoid $M$ can be thought of as the possible values for “heat” emitted by our electrical circuit and the function 

$$d(\alpha) : X_{a_1} \times \cdots \times X_{a_m} \times Y_{b_1} \times \cdots \times Y_{b_n} \to M$$

indicates, given currents flowing into the $a_i$ and into the $b_i$, the heat that our circuit produces. The fact that it is a derivation amounts to impose that the heat produced by a circuit is the sum of the heat emitted by its components. Finally, the hypotheses of Theorem 11.3.8 ensure that rewriting a circuit will always transform it into a “colder” (i.e., less heat-emitting) circuit.

**11.3.9 Example.** Following [161, Section 5.4], let us apply the above technique to show that the rewriting system for permutations, already considered in Example 11.2.9, is terminating. We suppose here that

- the poset $X_a$ associated to the 1-generator $a$ is $\mathbb{N}$ equipped with the usual order, and $X$ is defined on the 2-generator by

$$X \left( \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right) (i, j) = (j + 1, i),$$

- $Y_a = \{\ast\}$ is the terminal poset (reduced to one element $\ast$), and $Y$ is defined on the 2-generator by

$$Y \left( \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right) (\ast, \ast) = (\ast, \ast),$$

- the monoid $M$ is the additive monoid $\mathbb{N}$,

- the derivation $d$ is defined on the 2-generator by

$$d \left( \begin{array}{c} 1 \\ \downarrow \end{array} \right) (i, j) = i$$

(more precisely, the derivation takes four arguments $(i, j, k, l)$, but the two last arguments are necessarily equal to $\ast$, the only element of $Y_\alpha$, and are thus omitted).
The rewriting rules make $X$ weakly decrease

\[ X(i, j) = (i + 1, j + 1) \geq (i, j) = X(i, j) \]

\[ X(i, j, k) = (k + 2, j + 1, i) = X(i, j, k) \]

as well as obviously $Y$, and make the derivation strictly decrease

\[ d(i, j) = i + j + 1 > 0 = d(i, j) \]

\[ d(i, j, k) = 2i + j + 1 > 2i + j = d(i, j, k). \]

By Theorem 11.3.8, the 3-polygraph is thus terminating.

A presentation which cannot be handled with the techniques of Section 11.2, see Remark 11.2.11, but can be handled with derivations, is given in §12.2.8.
In this chapter, we generalize the definitions and results of Chapter 7 from categories to 2-categories, following [161, 162]. In Section 12.1, we introduce the notion of coherent presentation of a 2-category by a \((4,2)\)-polygraph, where the 4-generators encode the relations among relations. We explain in Section 12.2 that, in the case of convergent polygraphs, we can construct the Squier completion, which is a coherent completion whose 4-generators come from confluence diagrams for the critical branchings. We show in §12.2.8 that, contrarily to the case of categories, a 2-category presented by a finite convergent 3-polygraph is not necessarily of finite derivation type. In Section 12.3, we develop a 3-dimensional generalization of the notion of PRO, for which coherent presentations can be given by \((4,2)\)-polygraphs. This allows us, in Section 12.4, to use the constructions of coherent presentations to obtain coherence results such as Mac Lane’s coherence theorem for monoidal categories, as well as generalizations to symmetric and braided monoidal categories in Section 12.5.

12.1 Coherent presentation of 2-categories

12.1.1 \((4,2)\)-polygraphs. A \((4,2)\)-polygraph is a pair \((P, P_4)\) consisting of a 3-polygraph \(P\), and a cellular extension \(P_4\) of the free 3-category \(P^\top\) over \(P\). It thus consists of a diagram of sets and functions:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
P_0 & \xrightarrow{s_0} & P_1 & \xrightarrow{s_1} & P_2 & \xrightarrow{s_2} & P_3 & \xrightarrow{s_3} & P_4 \\
 & \xleftarrow{t_0} & P_0 & \xleftarrow{t_1} & P_1 & \xleftarrow{t_2} & P_2 & \xleftarrow{t_3} & P_3 \\
\end{array}
\]
Coherent presentations of 2-categories

Together with the compositions and identities of the underlying (3, 2)-category

$$\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{
P_0 & P_1^+ & P_2^+ & P_3^+ \\
S_0^i & S_1^i & S_2^i & S_3^i}
\end{array}$$

whose source and target maps $s_i$ and $t_i$ satisfy the globular relations

$$s_i^i \circ s_{i+1} = s_{i+1} \circ t_{i+1} \quad \text{and} \quad t_i^j \circ s_{i+1} = t_{i+1} \circ t_{i+1},$$

for every $0 \leq i \leq 2$. The elements of the cellular extension $P_4$ are called the 4-generators of the polygraph $P$. We write $\Lambda: F \Rightarrow G$ for a 4-generator $\Lambda$ in $P_4$ such that $s_2(\Lambda) = F$ and $t_2(\Lambda) = G$. Given a 4-polygraph $P$, we write $P_{\leq 3}$ for its underlying 3-polygraph.

12.1.2 Coherence. A $(4, 2)$-polygraph $P$ is coherent when for any parallel 3-cells $F, G: \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ of $P_{\leq 3}$, the free (3, 2)-category generated by the underlying 3-polygraph of $P$, we have $F \cong^P G$, i.e., $F$ and $G$ are related by the congruence generated by the cells in $P_4$.

Given a $(3, 2)$-category $C$ a cellular extension $X$ of $C$ is acyclic when $F \cong^X G$ holds for every pair of parallel 3-cells $F$ and $G$ of $C$. Here $\cong^X$ is the congruence generated by $X$ (which is defined in the expected way, generalizing the definition of §7.1.2). Given a $(3, 2)$-polygraph $P$, a $(4, 2)$-polygraph $(P, P_4)$ is thus coherent precisely when $P_4$ is an acyclic extension of $P^T$.

12.1.3 Polygraphs of finite derivation type. The property of finite derivation type defined in Chapter 8 for 2-polygraphs is extended to 3-polygraphs as follows. One says that a 3-polygraph $P$ has finite derivation type when it is finite and when the free (3, 2)-category $P^T$ admits a finite acyclic cellular extension. As in the case of presentation of 1-categories, given two presentations of the same 2-category by finite 3-polygraphs, the following result proves that both have finite derivation type or none at all.

12.1.4 Theorem. Let $P$ and $Q$ be two Tietze equivalent 3-polygraphs such that $P_2$ and $Q_2$ are finite. Then $P$ has finite derivation type if and only if $Q$ has finite derivation type.

Proof. The proof is similar to the one given in the case of 1-categories by Theorem 8.1.2. □

As a consequence of Theorem 12.1.4, one can say that a 2-category has finite derivation type when it admits a presentation by a 3-polygraph having finite derivation type. The property of having finite derivation type is invariant by Tietze equivalence for finite 3-polygraphs. This is not the case for infinite ones as shown by the following example [161, Section 4.3.10].
12.1 Coherent presentation of 2-categories

12.1.5 Example. Consider the 3-polygraph $P$ with one 0-generator, one 1-generator, three 2-generators $\downarrow, \downarrow, \uparrow$ and the following two 3-generators:

$$
A : \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array}, \\
B : \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array}.
$$

We prove that the $(3, 2)$-category $P^\uplus$ admits an empty acyclic extension and thus has finite derivation type.

The 3-polygraph $P$ is Tietze equivalent to the 3-polygraph $Q$ defined the same way as $P$ except for the orientation of the 3-cell $A$:

$$
A : \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array}, \\
B : \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array}.
$$

In this polygraph, we introduce the notation $\begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array}^{\vdash k}$ for the 2-cell defined by induction on the natural number $k$ by

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array}^{\vdash 0} = \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array}, \\
\begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array}^{\vdash k+1} = \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array}^{\vdash k}.
$$

The polygraph $Q$ is not convergent, but we can complete it into the infinite 3-polygraph $Q_\infty = Q \sqcup \{B_k | k \geq 1\}$, where $B_0$ is $B$ and $B_k$ is the following 3-cell:

$$
B_k : \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array} \vdash k \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\downarrow
\end{array} \vdash k.
$$

It can be shown that the 3-polygraph $Q_\infty$ does not have finite derivation type. In particular the $(3, 2)$-category $Q_\infty^\uplus$ has an infinite acyclic extension $\{\Lambda_k | k \in \mathbb{N}\}$.
Coherent presentations of 2-categories

which cannot be reduced to a finite one.

12.1.6 Generating confluenes. Theorems 2.5.10 and 7.3.5 state that the set of critical branchings of a convergent \( n \)-polygraph \( P \) generates an acyclic extension of the \((n,n-1)\)-category \( P^\top \) when \( n \leq 2 \). The proof of this result can be extended to 3-polygraphs as follows. Given a convergent 3-polygraph \( P \), a family of generating confluenes of \( P \) is a cellular extension of the free \((3,2)\)-category \( P^\top \) that contains exactly one 4-cell \( \Lambda \) of the form

\[
\phi \quad \chi \quad \Lambda \quad \phi',
\]

for every critical branching \((F, G)\) of \( P \). We define the Squier completion of the 3-polygraph \( P \) as the \((4,2)\)-polygraph denoted by \( \text{Sq}(P) \) and defined by \( \text{Sq}(P) = (P, P_4) \), where \( P_4 \) is a chosen family of generating confluenes of \( P \). As in the case were \( n = 2 \), see Theorem 7.3.5, we have [161, Proposition 4.3.4]:

12.1.7 Theorem. Given a convergent presentation of a 2-category \( C \) by a 3-polygraph \( P \), any Squier completion of \( P \) is coherent presentation of \( C \).

As a consequence of Theorem 12.1.7, a finite convergent 3-polygraph with a finite set of critical branchings has finite derivation type. In particular, a terminating polygraph with no critical branching has finite derivation type.
However, this result fails to generalize to \( n \)-categories when \( n \geq 2 \), see Section 16.8 and [161]. A counterexample to show this for \( n = 3 \) is developed in §12.2.8.

### 12.2 Squier’s completion of 3-polygraphs

#### 12.2.1 Non-indexed 3-polygraphs. Recall from §10.4.5, that a 3-polygraph is non-indexed when each of its critical branchings is an inclusion one or a regular one. It can be proved that a 3-polygraph with a finite set of 3-cells has a finite number of inclusion and regular critical branchings [161, Proposition 5.1.3]. As a consequence, we have the following finiteness condition in the non-indexed case [161, Theorem 5.1.4]:

**12.2.2 Theorem.** A finite, convergent and non-indexed 3-polygraph has finite derivation type.

#### 12.2.3 Confluence in indexed 3-polygraphs. Now let us consider the problem of finite-convergence for finitely indexed 3-polygraphs (those for which each indexed critical branching has a finite number of normal instances). The situation is more complicated than in the non-indexed case. However, we have the following confluence result [161, Proposition 5.3.1]:

**12.2.4 Proposition.** Let \( P \) be a terminating right-indexed (resp. left-indexed) 3-polygraph. Then \( P \) is confluent if and only if every inclusion critical branching, every regular critical branching and every instance of every right-indexed (resp. left-indexed) critical branching is confluent.

**Proof.** Suppose that \( P \) is a terminating right-indexed 3-polygraph (the left-indexed case is similar) such that all its inclusion critical branchings, regular critical branchings, and all the normal instances of its right-indexed critical branchings are confluent. It is sufficient to prove that every non-normal instance of its right-indexed critical branchings is confluent. Let us consider an instance of right-indexed critical branching. With the notations of §10.4.4, it is of the
for some 2-cell $\zeta$ in $P^*_2$. If $\zeta$ is not a normal form, it admits a normal form $\widehat{\zeta}$, because $P$ terminates. There is another instance of the above critical branching with $\widehat{\zeta}$ in place of $\zeta$. Since $\widehat{\zeta}$ is a normal form, this is a normal instance, so that, by hypothesis, it is confluent. This ensures the confluence of the original branching as follows:

In this way, we prove that the polygraph $P$ is confluent. □

12.2.5 Acyclic extensions of indexed 3-polygraphs. Let $P$ be a locally confluent and right-indexed (resp. left-indexed) 3-polygraph. Suppose that a confluence has been chosen for each inclusion and regular critical branching and each normal instance of each right-indexed (resp. left-indexed) critical branching. Let $P_4$ be the cellular extension of the $(3, 2)$-category $P^+$ corresponding to these confluence diagrams. We can prove that if $P$ is convergent and right-indexed...
12.2 Squier’s completion of 3-polygraphs

(resp. left-indexed), then $P_4$ forms an acyclic extension of the $(3, 2)$-category $P^\triangleright$, i.e., the $(4, 2)$-polygraph $(P, P_4)$ is coherent [161, Proposition 5.3.3]. The proof follows the same scheme as the proof given for Theorems 7.3.5 and 12.1.7. It is the same for trivial, inclusion and regular critical branchings. For right-indexed (resp. left-indexed) critical branchings, we follow a reasoning similar to the proof of Proposition 12.2.4. We thus have the following result [161, Theorem 5.3.4]:

**12.2.6 Theorem.** A finite, convergent and finitely indexed 3-polygraph has finite derivation type.

In the next section, we present an illustration of this result with a 3-polygraph which is finite, convergent, right-indexed, and thus has an infinite number of critical branchings. Yet, the polygraph has finite derivation type thanks to finite indexation.

**12.2.7 Example: the 3-polygraph of permutations.** Consider the 3-polygraph $P$ presenting the PRO $S$ of whose morphisms are permutations, which is introduced in §10.4.1. This polygraph has one 0-cell, one 1-cell, one 2-cell and the following two 3-cells:

$I : \begin{array}{c} \xymatrix{ & \bullet \\ \& \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \xymatrix{ \bullet \\ \& \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \end{array}$, $Y : \begin{array}{c} \xymatrix{ \& \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \end{array} \Rightarrow \begin{array}{c} \xymatrix{ \& \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \end{array}$.

This polygraph was shown to be terminating in Examples 11.2.9 and 11.3.9. We have seen in §10.4.1 that it has three regular and one right-indexed critical branchings, with the following sources:

$\begin{array}{c} \xymatrix{ & \bullet \\ \& \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \\ \xymatrix{ \bullet \\ \& \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \\ \xymatrix{ \& \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \\ \xymatrix{ \& \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} \xymatrix{ \& \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} \xymatrix{ \& \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} \xymatrix{ \& \bullet \\ \bullet \\ \& \bullet } \end{array}$, $\ldots$.

From Proposition 12.2.4, we know that, to show the confluence of the polygraph, it is sufficient to prove that the three regular critical branchings are confluent and that each normal instance of the right-indexed one is. This is in fact, what we have been doing in §10.4.1: we only briefly recall here those confluence
Coherent presentations of 2-categories

diagrams. First, the three regular critical branchings are confluent:

From the characterization of the set of normal forms given in §10.4.1, we deduce that there are two normal instances of the right-indexed critical branching: for \( k = \downarrow \) and \( k = \searrow \). We check that both are confluent. For \( k = \downarrow \), we have:
For $k = \infty$, we have:

The 3-polygraph $P$ is finite, convergent and finitely indexed, by Theorem 12.2.6, it follows that it has finite derivation type. More precisely, the five 4-cells $\Gamma, \Delta, \Theta, \Lambda$ and $\Lambda'$ form an acyclic extension of the $(3, 2)$-category $P^\top$.

**12.2.8 Main counterexample: the polygraph of pearls.** Let us mention a 3-polygraph, studied in [161], which illustrates the fact that, without finite indexation, finiteness and convergence are not sufficient to ensure finiteness of derivation type. We consider the 3-polygraph $P$ of pearls with one 0-cell $\ast$, one 1-cell $a$, three 2-cells $\triangledown, \curlywedge$ and $\wedge$ and the following four 3-cells:

$A : \triangledown \Rightarrow \bigcirc \bigcirc, \quad B : \bigcirc \bigcirc \Rightarrow \bigcirc, \quad C : \curlywedge \Rightarrow, \quad D : \wedge \Rightarrow$.

We define by induction on the natural number $k$ the 2-cell $\downarrow^k$ as follows:

$\downarrow^0 = \bigcirc, \quad \downarrow^{k+1} = \bigcirc$.

Let us show that the polygraph is terminating. The rules $C$ and $D$ make the number of 2-generators strictly decrease, while this number is invariant by the rules $A$ and $B$, so that we only have to show that the rules $A$ and $B$ are terminating. In order to show this, we apply Theorem 11.3.8, and use the notations of this theorem in the following. The posets associated to the 1-generators are $X_a = Y_a = \mathbb{N}$ equipped with the usual order. The interpretations of the 2-generators are

$X(\triangledown)(i) = i + 1, \quad X(\wedge)(() = (0, 0), \quad X(\bigcirc)(i, j) = ()$.

$Y(\triangledown)(i) = i + 1, \quad X(\curlywedge)(() = (0, 0), \quad X(\bigcirc)(i, j) = ()$.
Coherent presentations of $2$-categories

We take $M$ to be the monoid $(\mathbb{N}, +, 0)$ and define the derivation $d$ by

$$d(\emptyset)(i, j) = 0, \quad d(\cdot)(i, j) = i, \quad d(\cdot\cdot)(i, j) = i.$$ 

For the rule $A$, we have, using the properties of derivation,

$$d(s_2^*(A))(i, j) = d(\cdot\cdot\cdot) = d(\cdot\cdot\cdot) + d(\emptyset)(0, i)$$

$$= (i + 1) + 0$$

$$> i + 0$$

$$= d(\cdot\cdot\cdot)(i, j + 1) + d(\emptyset)(0, j)$$

$$= d(t_2^*(A))(i, j)$$

and therefore $d(s_2^*(A)) > d(t_2^*(A))$. Similarly, $d(s_2^*(B)) > d(t_2^*(B))$. By Theorem 11.3.8, we thus deduce that the polygraph is terminating.

The $3$-polygraph $P$ has four regular critical branchings, whose sources are

$$\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad$$

It also has one right-indexed critical branching, generated by the $3$-cells $A$ and $B$, with source

$$\quad \quad \quad \quad \quad$$

Thus $P$ is a terminating and right-indexed $3$-polygraph. By application of Proposition 12.2.4, the confluence of $P$ can be shown by proving that its four regular critical branchings and all normal instances of its right-indexed critical branchings are confluent. For the regular ones, we have the following confluence
12.2 Squier's completion of 3-polygraphs

From the characterization of normal forms of the polygraph given in [161, Section 5.5.2], the normal instances of the right-indexed critical branching $AB \ (\cdots)$ are the instances corresponding to the following 2-cells

\[
\begin{split}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (a) at (0,0) {$A$};
\node (b) at (1,0) {$B$};
\node (c) at (2,0) {$C$};
\node (d) at (3,0) {$D$};
\draw (a) to (b);
\draw (b) to (c);
\draw (c) to (d);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\end{split}
\]

\[
\begin{split}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (a) at (0,0) {$A$};
\node (b) at (1,0) {$B$};
\node (c) at (2,0) {$C$};
\node (d) at (3,0) {$D$};
\draw (a) to (b);
\draw (b) to (c);
\draw (c) to (d);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\end{split}
\]

\[
\begin{split}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (a) at (0,0) {$A$};
\node (b) at (1,0) {$B$};
\node (c) at (2,0) {$C$};
\node (d) at (3,0) {$D$};
\draw (a) to (b);
\draw (b) to (c);
\draw (c) to (d);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\end{split}
\]

\[
\begin{split}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (a) at (0,0) {$A$};
\node (b) at (1,0) {$B$};
\node (c) at (2,0) {$C$};
\node (d) at (3,0) {$D$};
\draw (a) to (b);
\draw (b) to (c);
\draw (c) to (d);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\end{split}
\]

where, in the latter, $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $\bullet$ ranges over the set $N_0$, the subset of $P^*_2$ consisting of normal forms of $P$ with degenerate source and target, which are characterized by the following two construction rules:

\[
\begin{split}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (a) at (0,0) {$\bullet$};
\node (b) at (1,0) {$\bullet$};
\node (c) at (2,0) {$\bullet$};
\node (d) at (3,0) {$\bullet$};
\draw (a) to (b);
\draw (b) to (c);
\draw (c) to (d);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\end{split}
\]

(on the left, this is the empty diagram). Now we check that, for each one of these 2-cells, the corresponding critical branching $AB \ (\cdots)$ is confluent. Let us note that, for the first three cases, there are several possible confluence diagrams, because they also contain regular critical branchings of $P$. 
Coherent presentations of 2-categories

For \( \xymatrix{&&&\circlearrowleft } = \xymatrix{&
\circlearrowleft&\circlearrowright }, \) we choose the following one:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{&A
\ar[r] &D \\
&\ar[r] &B \\
&\ar[r] &C \\
&\ar[r] &A }
\end{array}
\]

- For \( \xymatrix{&\circlearrowleft } = \xymatrix{&\circlearrowright }, \) we choose the following one:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{&D
\ar[r] &A \\
&\ar[r] &B \\
&\ar[r] &C \\
&\ar[r] &D }
\end{array}
\]

- For \( \xymatrix{&\circlearrowleft } = \xymatrix{&
\circlearrowright }, \) we choose the following one:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{&A
\ar[r] &D \\
&\ar[r] &B \\
&\ar[r] &C \\
&\ar[r] &A }
\end{array}
\]
– Finally, for \( \bullet \) = \( \bigoplus_n \) :

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
A \\
\bigoplus_n \\
B
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\bigcirc \\
\bigcirc
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

It follows that the 3-polygraph \( P \) is convergent and right-indexed, and the following 4-cells form an acyclic extension of \( P^\top \):

\[ CD, DC, AC, BD, AB \left( \bigoplus_n \right), AB \left( \biguplus_n \right), AB \left( \bigcap_n \right), AB \left( \bigtriangleup_n \right), \]

where \( \bigoplus \) is in \( N_0 \) and \( n \) is in \( \mathbb{N} \). It can be observed that the 4-cells \( AB \left( \bigoplus \right), AB \left( \biguplus \right) \) and \( AB \left( \bigcap \right) \) are superfluous. Namely, the 3-spheres forming their boundaries are also the boundaries of 4-cells of \( Q^\top \) where \( Q \) is the \((4, 2)\)-polygraph obtained from the 3-polygraph \( P \) by adding the 4-generators \( AC \) and \( BD \).

Let us denote by \( X_0 \) the family made of the 4-cells \( CD, DC, AC \) and \( BD \). Then, for every natural number \( n \), one defines:

\[ X_{n+1} = X_n \cup \left\{ AB \left( \bigoplus_n \right) \mid \bigoplus \in N_0 \right\}. \]

Thus, the following set of 4-cells forms an acyclic extension of the \((3, 2)\)-category \( P^\top \):

\[ X = \bigcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} X_n. \]

It can be shown that this infinite number of confluence diagrams cannot be filled by a finite cellular extension and thus that the 3-polygraph \( P \) does not have finite derivation type [161, Theorem 5.5.7]:

**12.2.9 Theorem.** The above 3-polygraph \( P \) does not have finite derivation type.

We will see in §16.8.4 a generalization of this result to \( n \)-polygraphs with \( n \geq 3 \).

### 12.3 \((3, 2)\)-PROs

We generalize, in dimension 3, the notion of PRO introduced in §2.4.10, as well as introduce symmetric and coherent variants. This will be used in subsequent sections to show coherence theorems such as Mac Lane’s coherence theorem for monoidal categories.
12.3.1 3-PROs. A 3-monoid is a 3-category $C$ where there is exactly one 0-cell $\ast$. In such a 3-category, the set $C_1$ is canonically a monoid when equipped with 0-composition as multiplication and $1_\ast$ as unit. A 3-PRO is a 3-monoid whose monoid of 1-cells is the additive monoid $\mathbb{N}$. Note that the underlying 2-category of a 3-PRO is always a PRO, as defined in §2.4.10, thus the name. A 3-PRO which is also a $(3, 2)$-category is called a $(3, 2)$-PRO: this is a 3-PRO in which every 3-cell is invertible with respect to composition $\ast_2$.

12.3.2 3-PROPs. A symmetry on a 3-monoid $C$ is an invertible transformation $\gamma_{a, b} : a \ast_0 b \to b \ast_0 a$, indexed by 1-cells $a, b \in C_1$, which is natural in both components, and makes the following diagrams commute:

\[ a \ast_0 1_\ast \xrightarrow{\gamma_{a, 1_\ast}} 1_\ast \ast_0 a \]

\[ a \ast_0 b \ast_0 c \xrightarrow{\gamma_{a, b \ast_0 c}} c \ast_0 a \ast_0 b \xrightarrow{\gamma_{c \ast_0 b, a}} c \ast_0 b \ast_0 a. \]

A 3-PROP (resp. $(3, 2)$-PROP) is a 3-PRO (resp. $(3, 2)$-PROP) equipped with a symmetry.

12.3.3 Algebras over 3-PRO(PS). The 2-category $\text{Cat}$ of of categories, functors and natural transformations is monoidal when equipped with the cartesian product as tensor product. By Mac Lane’s coherence theorem, it can be considered as a strict monoidal category or, equivalently, as a 3-PRO with categories as 1-cells, functors as 2-cells, natural transformations as 3-cells, cartesian product as 0-composition, composition of functors as 1-composition, vertical composition of natural transformations as 2-composition.

If $C$ is a 3-PRO, a $C$-algebra is a 3-functor from $C$ to $\text{Cat}$. If $C$ is a 3-PROP, we moreover require that this 3-functor preserves the symmetry. Given a $C$-algebra $A$, we often write $A_\ast$ instead of $A(\ast)$. If $A$ and $B$ are $C$-algebras, a morphism of $C$-algebras from $A$ to $B$ is a natural transformation from $A$ to $B$, i.e., a pair $(F, \phi)$ where $F : A_\ast \to B_\ast$ is a functor and $\phi$ is a map sending every 2-cell $f : m \Rightarrow n$ in $C$ to a natural isomorphism with the following shape:
such that the following relations hold:

– for every 2-cells \( f : m \Rightarrow n \) and \( g : p \Rightarrow q \) of \( C \), we have
  \[
  \phi_{f \circ g} = \phi_f \times \phi_g,
  \]
  i.e., graphically,

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A^{m+p}_{f \circ g} & \xrightarrow{\phi_{f \circ g}} & B^{m+p}_{f \circ g} \\
F^{m+p} & \xrightarrow{\phi_f \times \phi_g} & F^{m+p} \\
A^{n+q}_g & \xrightarrow{\phi_g} & B^{n+q}_g
\end{array}
\]

– for every 2-cells \( f : m \Rightarrow n \) and \( g : n \Rightarrow p \) in \( C \), we have
  \[
  \phi_{f \circ g} = (\phi_f \ast B(g)) \ast_2 (A(f) \ast_1 \phi_g),
  \]
  i.e., graphically,

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A^{m+1}_{f \circ g} & \xrightarrow{\phi_{f \circ g}} & B^{m+1}_{f \circ g} \\
F^{m+1} & \xrightarrow{\phi_f} & F^{m+1} \\
A^{n+1}_g & \xrightarrow{\phi_g} & B^{n+1}_g
\end{array}
\]

– for every 3-cell \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow g : m \Rightarrow n \) in \( C \), we have
  \[
  \phi_f \ast_2 (A(\alpha) \ast_1 F^n) = (F^{m+1} \ast B(\alpha)) \ast_2 \phi_g,
  \]
  i.e., graphically,

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A^{m+1}_{\alpha \ast f} & \xrightarrow{\phi_{\alpha \ast f}} & B^{m+1}_{\alpha \ast f} \\
F^{m+1} & \xrightarrow{\phi_f} & F^{m+1} \\
A^{n+1}_g & \xrightarrow{\phi_g} & B^{n+1}_g
\end{array}
\]

The \( C \)-algebras and their morphisms form a category, denoted by \( \text{Alg}(C) \).
The coherence problem for algebras over a 3-PRO(P). Let $C$ be a 3-PRO(P) and $A$ be a $C$-algebra. A $C$-diagram in $A$ is the image $A(\Delta)$ of a 3-sphere $\Delta$ in $C$, i.e., a pair $(\alpha, \beta)$ of 3-cells with the same source, and with the same target, where $\alpha$ (resp. $\beta$) is the source (resp. target) of the 3-sphere and is denoted by $s(\Delta)$ (resp. $t(\Delta)$). A $C$-diagram $A(\Delta)$ in $A$ commutes if the relation

$$A(s(\Delta)) = A(t(\Delta))$$

is satisfied in $\text{Cat}$.

The coherence problem for algebras over a 3-PRO(P) is the following question:

Given a 3-PRO(P) $C$, does every $C$-diagram commute in every $C$-algebra?

A 3-PRO is aspherical when there is at most one 3-cell between two given 2-cells, i.e., any two parallel 3-cells are equal. As a consequence of this definition, we have the following sufficient condition for giving a positive answer to the coherence problem:

12.3.5 Proposition. If $C$ is an aspherical 3-PRO(P), then every $C$-diagram commutes in every $C$-algebra.

12.3.6 Presentations of (3, 2)-PROs. A presentation of a (3, 2)-PRO $C$ is a (4, 2)-polygraph $P$ such that $C \simeq P_{\leq 3}/P_4$, i.e., $C$ is isomorphic to the (3, 2)-category generated by the underlying 3-polygraph $P_{\leq 3}$, quotiented by the congruence generated by the 4-generators. By definition of a (3, 2)-PRO, in the case where we have a presentation as above, the 3-polygraph $P$ necessarily has exactly one 0-cell and one 1-cell. A presentation $P$ of $C$ is called coherently convergent rather than convergent when $P$ is a convergent 3-polygraph and $P_4$ is a cellular extension of generating confluences of $P$, see [162, Section 2.1.1].

12.3.7 Example. Consider the (4, 2)-polygraph

$$P = \langle * \mid a \mid \mu : aa \Rightarrow a \mid A : (\mu *_0 a) *_1 \mu \Rightarrow (a *_0 \mu) *_1 \mu \mid \Gamma \rangle.$$
Similarly, the 4-generator $\Gamma$ is pictured as \[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\includegraphics{image}}
\end{array}
\] and its boundary is given by

Consider the category $\Delta_\mu$ whose objects are natural numbers and morphisms from $m$ to $n$ are surjective increasing functions $[m] \to [n]$ where $[n]$ denotes the set $\{0, \ldots, n - 1\}$. This is a monoidal subcategory of the augmented simplicial category $\Delta_+$ (see §4.5.6 and §10.3.2), already encountered in Example 3.3.10. As a variant of the presentation of $\Delta_+$, see §10.3.2, the underlying 3-polygraph of $P$ can be shown to present the monoidal category $\Delta_\mu$. Moreover, the rewriting system is convergent and the boundary of the 4-generator $\Gamma$ shown above is a confluence diagram for the only critical branching of the rewriting system so that, by Theorem 12.1.7, $P_4$ forms an acyclic extension of the $(3, 2)$-category $P_{<3}^+$, i.e., $P$ is a coherent presentation of $\Delta_\mu$.

We write $\text{AsCat}$ for the $(3, 2)$-PRO presented by $P$, i.e., $\text{AsCat} = P_{<3}^+/P_4$. The category of its algebras $\text{Alg}(\text{AsCat})$ is isomorphic to the category of associative categories: we recall that an associative category is a category $C$ equipped with a bifunctor $\otimes : C \times C \to C$ and a natural transformation $\alpha_{a,b,c} : (a \otimes b) \otimes c \to a \otimes (b \otimes c)$ satisfying the usual coherence law (see §12.4.1). Namely, the correspondence between an associative category $(C, \otimes, \alpha)$ and a 3-functor $A : \text{AsCat} \to \text{Cat}$ is given by

$$A \left( \begin{array}{c}
\text{\includegraphics{image}}
\end{array} \right) = C,$$

$$A \left( \begin{array}{c}
\text{\includegraphics{image}}
\end{array} \right) = \otimes,$$

$$A \left( \begin{array}{c}
\text{\includegraphics{image}}
\end{array} \right) = \alpha.$$

This correspondence is well-defined since the coherence diagram satisfied by associative categories corresponds to the 4-cell $\includegraphics{image}$.

Since $P_4$ is an acyclic extension of $\text{AsCat}_{<3}$, we have that $\text{AsCat}$ is an aspherical $(3, 2)$-PRO. As a consequence, in every associative category $C$, every $\text{AsCat}$-diagram is commutative. This fact can be informally restated as: every diagram built in $C$ from the functor $\otimes$ and the natural transformation $\alpha$ is commutative.

**12.3.8 Coherence in algebras over (3, 2)-PROs.** By definition, a 3-PRO $C$ is aspherical if, for every presentation $P$ of $C$, the cellular extension $P_4$ of $P_{<3}^+$
Coherent presentations of 2-categories is acyclic. The latter condition is satisfied by any convergent presentation of \( C \) yielding the following sufficient condition for giving a positive answer to the coherence problem for \( C \)-algebras [162, Theorem 2.1.2]:

**12.3.9 Theorem.** If a \((3,2)\)-PRO \( C \) admits a convergent presentation then every \( C \)-diagram commutes in every \( C \)-algebra.

### 12.4 Coherence in monoidal categories

The coherence problems in monoidal categories can be formulated in terms of asphericity problems for \((3,2)\)-categories. This section briefly reviews this approach in the case of monoidal categories. Symmetric and braided monoidal categories and handled in the next section.

#### 12.4.1 Monoidal categories

A monoidal category is a category \( C \), equipped with two functors

\[
\otimes : C \times C \to C, \quad e : 1 \to C,
\]

and three natural isomorphisms

\[
\alpha_{x,y,z} : (x \otimes y) \otimes z \to x \otimes (y \otimes z), \quad \lambda_x : e \otimes x \to x, \quad \rho_x : x \otimes e \to x,
\]

such that the following two diagrams commute in \( C \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\alpha_{x,y,z} \circ (\alpha_{x,y,z}) &\to (\alpha_{x,y,z}) \circ \alpha_{x,y,z} \\
\lambda_x \otimes \rho_y &\to \rho_x \otimes \lambda_y \\
\rho_x &\to \rho_x \otimes \lambda_y \\
\eta &\to \alpha_{e,e,e} \\
\lambda &\to \lambda x \otimes \rho_y
\end{align*}
\]

#### 12.4.2 The 3-PRO of monoidal categories

Consider the \((4,2)\)-polygraph

\[
P = \langle \star \ | \ a \ | \ mu : aa \Rightarrow a, \eta : 1_* \to a \ | \ A, L, R \ | \ \Gamma, \Delta \rangle,
\]
whose 2-generators $\mu$ and $\eta$ are respectively pictured as $\triangledown$ and $\triangledown$, whose 3-generators $A$, $L$ and $R$ are respectively pictured as

![Diagram of 3-generators](image)

whose 4-generators $\Gamma$ and $\Delta$ are respectively

![Diagram of 4-generators](image)

We denote by $\text{MonCat}$ the $(3, 2)$-PRO presented by this polygraph. It is easily seen that the category of small monoidal categories and monoidal functors is isomorphic to the category $\text{Alg} (\text{MonCat})$ [162, Lemma 2.3.2].

Note that the underlying 3-polygraph $P_{c3}$ of $P$ is the polygraph of monoids defined in Example 10.1.2, which was shown to be terminating in Example 11.2.4. Its five critical branchings are computed in Example 10.2.10 and shown to be confluent. Consider the cellular extension $X$ of $P_{c3}^T$ with five
4-cells: the 4-generators $\Gamma$ and $\Delta$, as well as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\Lambda_1 \\
\Lambda_2 \\
\Lambda_3
\end{array}
\]

By Theorem 12.1.7, $X$ forms an acyclic extension of $P^T_{\leq 3}$ since its elements are a choice of confluence diagrams for the five critical branchings. It can be shown that $\Lambda_1$, $\Lambda_2$ and $\Lambda_3$ are superfluous in this cellular extension, i.e., for each 4-cell $\Lambda_i$, we have $s(\Lambda_i) = t(\Lambda_i)$ in $\text{MonCat}$ [162, Section 2.3.3]. Therefore $\{\Gamma, \Delta\}$ is still an acyclic extension, i.e., the polygraph $P$ is coherent. We have thus proved [161, Theorem 5.2.2], [162, Proposition 2.3.3]:

12.4.3 **Proposition.** The above $(4, 2)$-polygraph $P$ is coherent.

Mac Lane’s coherence theorem [261, Theorem VII.2.1] states that, in a monoidal category, every diagram whose arrows are built up from instances of $\otimes$, $\alpha$, $\lambda$ and $\rho$ commute. From Proposition 12.4.3, we can deduce this theorem, which can be reformulated as follows:

12.4.4 **Theorem.** The $3$-PRO $\text{MonCat}$ is aspherical.

### 12.5 Coherence in symmetric and braided monoidal categories

12.5.1 **Symmetric monoidal categories.** A symmetric monoidal category is a monoidal category $(C, \otimes, e, \alpha, \lambda, \rho)$ equipped with a natural isomorphism

$$
\gamma_{x,y} : x \otimes y \longrightarrow y \otimes x,
$$

called the *symmetry* and such the following two diagrams commute in $C$:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
y \otimes x \\
\gamma_{y,x} \\
x \otimes y
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \otimes y \\
\gamma_{x,y} \\
x \otimes y
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \otimes y \\
\gamma_{x,y} \\
x \otimes y
\end{array}
\]
12.5.2 PROPs. Recall from §2.4.10 that a PRO is a strict monoidal category whose monoid of objects is \((\mathbb{N}, +, 0)\). We now introduce the following symmetric variant. A \textit{PROP} is a strict symmetric monoidal category whose monoid of objects is \((\mathbb{N}, +, 0)\). In the following, we consider PROs and PROPs as 2-categories with one 0-cell. In particular, the underlying 2-category of a 3-PROP, as defined in §12.3.2, is a PROP.

12.5.3 PROPs as PROs. PROPs can be characterized among PROs as follows, see §C.1.4 and [157, Proposition A.3 and Corollary A4]. A PRO \(C\) is a PROP if and only if it contains a 2-cell \(\gamma : 2 \Rightarrow 2\), represented by \(\gamma\), such that the following relations hold:

- \textit{involutivity} of the symmetry

\[
(\gamma^{-1})^* \gamma = 1_2,
\]

which can be pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\gamma^{-1} & \simeq & \gamma \\
\end{array}
\]

- \textit{the Yang-Baxter relation}

\[
(\gamma *_0 1) *_1 (1 *_0 \gamma) *_1 (\gamma *_0 1) = (1 *_0 \gamma) *_1 (\gamma *_0 1) *_1 (1 *_0 \gamma),
\]

which can be pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\gamma & = & \gamma^{-1} \\
\end{array}
\]

- for every 2-cell \(\phi : m \Rightarrow n\) of \(C\), the \textit{left and right naturality relations} for \(\phi\)

\[
(\phi *_0 1) *_1 \gamma_{n,1} = \gamma_{m,1} *_1 (1 *_0 \phi),
\]

\[
(1 *_0 \phi) *_1 \gamma_{1,m} = \gamma_{1,m} *_1 (\phi *_0 1).
\]
Coherent presentations of 2-categories

with the inductively defined notations:
\[ \gamma_{0,1} = \gamma_{1,0} = 1, \quad \gamma_{n+1,1} = (n *_0 \gamma) *_1 (\gamma_{n,1} *_0 1), \]
\[ \gamma_{1,n+1} = (\gamma *_0 n) *_1 (1 *_0 \gamma_{1,n}). \]

If we represent \( \phi \) by \( \frac{\phi}{\phi} \), any \( \gamma_{n,1} \) by \( \frac{\gamma_{n,1}}{\gamma_{n,1}} \), and any \( \gamma_{1,n} \) by \( \frac{\gamma_{1,n}}{\gamma_{1,n}} \), the naturality relations for \( \phi \) are

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\frac{\phi}{\phi} = \frac{\phi}{\phi} \\
\frac{\phi}{\phi} = \frac{\phi}{\phi}
\end{array} \]

12.5.4 The PROP of permutations. The initial PROP is the PROP of permutations, denoted by \( S \) and introduced in §10.4.1, whose 2-cells from \( n \) to \( n \) are the permutations of \( \{0, \ldots, n-1\} \) and with no 2-cell from \( m \) to \( n \) if \( m \neq n \). The 2-PROP \( S \) is presented by the 3-polygraph \( P \) of permutations defined in §10.4.1 whose 3-cells correspond to the involutivity and Yang-Baxter relations:

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\frac{\phi}{\phi} = \frac{\phi}{\phi} \\
\frac{\phi}{\phi} = \frac{\phi}{\phi}
\end{array} \] (12.1)

There is an isomorphism between the category of small categories and functors and the category \( \text{Alg}(\text{Sym}) \).

12.5.5 Presentations of PROPs. Let \( P \) be a 2-polygraph with one 0-cell and one 1-cell. We denote by \( SP \) the 3-polygraph obtained from \( P \) by adjoining a 2-cell \( \phi : 2 \Rightarrow 2 \) and the following 3-cells:

– the symmetry 3-cell and the Yang-Baxter 3-cell (12.1),
– two 3-cells for every 2-cell \( \phi = \frac{\phi}{\phi} \) of \( P \), corresponding to the naturality relations for \( f \):

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\frac{\phi}{\phi} = \frac{\phi}{\phi} \\
\frac{\phi}{\phi} = \frac{\phi}{\phi}
\end{array} \]

The free PROP generated by \( P \) is the 2-category, denoted by \( P^S \), presented by the 3-polygraph \( SP \), see also §C.1.3. We define a presentation of a PROP \( C \) as a pair \( (P, P_3) \) made of a 2-polygraph \( P \) with one 0-cell and one 1-cell and a cellular extension \( P_3 \) of the free 2-PROP \( P^S \), such that \( C \simeq P^S_2 / P_3 \).
12.5.6 Presentations of \((3, 2)\)-PROPs. Let \((P, P_2)\) be a presentation of a\nPROP. We denote by \(Q\) the \((4, 2)\)-polygraph obtained from the \(3\)-polygraph \(SP\)\nby adjoining the \(3\)-cells of \(P_3\) and a cellular extension made of the following two\n4-cells for each \(3\)-generator \(A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi\) in \(P_3\), corresponding to the naturality\nrelations for \(A:\)

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\downarrow
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
\psi \\
\downarrow
\end{array}
\]
\end{align*}
\]

The free \((3, 2)\)-PROP generated by \(P\) is the \((3, 2)\)-category, denoted by \(P^S\),\npresented by the \((4, 2)\)-polygraph \(Q\) defined above: \(P^S = Q^S_{2,3}/Q_4\).

We define a presentation of a \((3, 2)\)-PROP \(C\) as a pair \((P, P_4)\), where \(P\) is a\npresentation of a PROP and \(P_4\) is a cellular extension of the free \((3, 2)\)-PROP \(P^S\) generated by \(P\), such that \(C \simeq P^S/P_4\). A presentation \(P\) of a \((3, 2)\)-PROP\nis called convergent when the \(3\)-polygraph \(SP\) is convergent.

12.5.7 Application to symmetric monoidal categories. Let \(SCat\) be the\n\((3, 2)\)-PROP presented by the polygraph \(P\) given as follows.

- \(P_0 = \{\ast\}\), \(P_1 = \{a\}\),
- \(P_2\) is the \(2\)-polygraph, containing two \(2\)-cells \(\triangledown\) and \(\rhd\),
- \(P_3\) is the cellular extension of the free \(2\)-PROP \(P^S_2\) generated by \(P_2\) containing\nthe three \(3\)-cells

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\triangledown \\
\downarrow
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
\triangledown \\
\downarrow
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

plus the following extra \(3\)-cell:

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\triangledown \\
\downarrow
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
\triangledown \\
\downarrow
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

$P_4$ is the cellular extension of the free $(3,2)$-PROP $P_3^S$ generated by $P_3$ containing the two 4-cells

plus the following two extra 4-cells:

The category of small symmetric monoidal categories and symmetric monoidal functors is isomorphic to the category $\text{Alg}(\text{SCat})$. A convergent presentation of the $(3,2)$-PROP $\text{SCat}$ is constructed in [162, Section 3.2]. The coherence theorem for symmetric monoidal categories [259] can be deduced from this construction: the $(3,2)$-PROP $\text{SCat}$ is aspherical [162, Corollary 3.3.6].
12.5.8 Braided monoidal categories. A braided monoidal category is a monoidal category $(C, \otimes, e, \alpha, \lambda, \rho)$ equipped with a natural isomorphism

$$\beta_{x,y} : x \otimes y \longrightarrow y \otimes x,$$

called the braiding and such that the following diagrams commute in $C$:

\begin{align*}
& x \otimes (y \otimes z) \xrightarrow{\beta_{x,y,z}} (y \otimes z) \otimes x \\
& (x \otimes y) \otimes z \xrightarrow{\beta_{x,y,z}} (y \otimes z) \otimes x, \\
& (y \otimes x) \otimes z \xrightarrow{\beta_{y,x,z}} y \otimes (x \otimes z),
\end{align*}

\begin{align*}
& x \otimes (y \otimes z) \xrightarrow{\beta_{x,y,z}^{-1}} (y \otimes z) \otimes x \\
& (x \otimes y) \otimes z \xrightarrow{\beta_{x,y,z}^{-1}} (y \otimes z) \otimes x, \\
& (y \otimes x) \otimes z \xrightarrow{\beta_{y,x,z}^{-1}} y \otimes (x \otimes z).
\end{align*}

12.5.9 Generalized coherence theorems. Contrarily to the case of monoidal and symmetric monoidal categories, we do not have that every diagram commutes in a braided monoidal category. For instance, the morphisms $\beta_{x,y}$ and $\beta_{y,x}^{-1}$ from $x \otimes y$ to $y \otimes x$, have no reason to be equal. In fact, they are equal if and only if $\beta$ is a symmetry, hence if and only if all diagrams commute. As a consequence, the coherence problem for braided monoidal categories requires a generalized version of the coherence problem we have considered so far. The generalized coherence problem is the following one:

Given a $(3,2)$-PROP $C$, decide, for any 3-sphere $\alpha$ of $C$, whether or not the diagram $A(\alpha)$ commutes in every $C$-algebra $A$.

A solution for the generalized coherence problem is a decision procedure for the equality of 3-cells of $C$. For the coherence problems considered so far, this decision procedure answers yes for every 3-sphere. A method to study the generalized coherence theorem of 3-PROPs is given in [162, Section 4], and illustrated on the $(3,2)$-PROP of braided monoidal categories. In this way, we
recover the coherence result of Joyal and Street [209]: a diagram $\Delta$ commutes if and only if both $s(\Delta)$ and $t(\Delta)$ have the same associated braid.
The study of *universal algebra*, that is, the description of algebraic structures by means of symbolic expressions subject to equations, dates back to the end of the 19th century [353]. It was motivated by the large number of fundamental mathematical structures fitting into this framework: groups, rings, lattices, and so on. From the 1970s on, the algorithmic aspect became prominent and led to the notion of term rewriting system. This chapter briefly revisits these ideas from a polygraphic viewpoint, introducing only what is strictly necessary for understanding. We refer the reader to standard textbooks such as [20, 342] for a proper study of this vast topic.

In Section 13.1, we begin by introducing term rewriting systems as presentations of Lawvere theories, which are particular cartesian categories. Some classical results on Lawvere theories are recalled in Section 13.2. The theory of rewriting in this context is explored in Section 13.3 by defining rewriting steps, critical branchings and the original Knuth-Bendix completion procedure [218]. In Section 13.4, we show that a term rewriting system can also be described by a 3-polygraph in which variables are handled explicitly, i.e., by taking into account their duplication and erasure. Finally, in Section 13.5, we give a precise meaning to the statement that term rewriting systems are "cartesian polygraphs".

13.1 Presentations of Lawvere theories

13.1.1 Signatures. In the context of term rewriting systems, a *signature P* consists of

- a set $P_0$ of sorts,
- a set $P_1$ of operations together with functions $s_0 : P_1 \to P_0^*$ and $t_0 : P_1 \to P_0$
Term rewriting systems

respectively associating to each operation the sorts of its inputs and of its output, where \( P_0^* \) denotes the free monoid over \( P_0 \).

A morphism \( f : P \rightarrow Q \) between signatures \( P \) and \( Q \) consists of two functions \( f_0 : P_0 \rightarrow Q_0 \) and \( f_1 : P_1 \rightarrow Q_1 \) such that \( s_0 \circ f_1 = f_0' \circ s_0 \) and \( t_0 \circ f_1 = f_0 \circ t_0 \) (where \( f_0' : P_0^* \rightarrow Q_0^* \) is the extension of \( f_0 \) as a morphism of monoids).

We write \( \text{Pol}^\bullet \) for the resulting category (this notation will be justified in Section 13.5 below).

Given an operation \( \alpha \), we write \( \alpha : a_1 \ldots a_n \rightarrow a \) to indicate that its source is \( s_0(\alpha) = a_1 \ldots a_n \) and target is \( t_0(\alpha) = a \). The natural number \( n \) is called the \textit{arity} of \( \alpha \). A signature is \textit{mono-sorted} when \( P_0 \) is reduced to one element: in this case, \( P_0^* = \mathbb{N} \) and \( t_0 \) is the terminal function.

13.1.2 Terms. Given a signature \( P \), a \textit{variable} is a symbol of the form \( x^u_i \) with \( u \in P_0^* \) and \( i \in \mathbb{N} \). A \textit{term} on a signature \( P \) is a “well-typed” tree whose nodes are decorated in operations and leaves are decorated in variables. Formally, the family of sets \( P_1^*(u, a) \) of terms from \( u \in P_0^* \) to \( a \in P_0 \) is the smallest family, indexed by \( u \) and \( a \), such that

- given \( a_1, \ldots, a_n \in P_0 \) and \( 1 \leq i \leq n \), we have a variable term
  \[ x_i^{a_1 \ldots a_n} \in P_1^*(a_1 \ldots a_n, a_i), \]

- given an operation \( \alpha : a_1 \ldots a_n \rightarrow a \) in \( P_1 \), \( u \in P_0^* \), and terms \( \phi_i \in P_1^*(u, a_i) \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq n \), we have a composite term
  \[ \alpha(\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_n) \in P_1^*(u, a). \]

We write \( \phi : u \rightarrow a \) to indicate that \( \phi \) is a term in \( P_1^*(u, a) \). In the following, we sometimes omit writing the superscripts from variables.

13.1.3 Substitutions. Given sorts \( u \in P_0^* \) and \( a_1, \ldots, a_n \in P_0 \), a \textit{substitution} \( \sigma : u \rightarrow a_1 \ldots a_n \) is an \( n \)-uple of terms \( \sigma = (\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n) \), where the \( \sigma_i : u \rightarrow a_i \) are terms with \( 1 \leq i \leq n \). Given a term \( \phi : a_1 \ldots a_n \rightarrow a \), we write

\[ \phi \cdot \sigma : u \rightarrow a \]

for the term obtained from \( \phi \) by replacing each variable \( x_i \) by \( \sigma_i \); this term is defined inductively by

\[ x_i \cdot \sigma = \sigma_i, \quad \alpha(\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_m) \cdot \sigma = \alpha(\phi_1 \cdot \sigma, \ldots, \phi_m \cdot \sigma). \]
13.1.4 The generated category. Given a signature \( P \), we write \( P^* \) for the category with \( P^*_0 \) as objects and substitutions \( \sigma : u \to v \) as morphisms. Given two substitutions \( \sigma : u \to v \) and \( \tau : v \to w \) with \( \tau = (\tau_1, \ldots, \tau_n) \), their composite is the substitution
\[
\tau \circ \sigma = (\tau_1 \cdot \sigma, \ldots, \tau_n \cdot \sigma),
\]
and given an object \( u = a_1 \ldots a_n \) the identity on \( u \) is \( \langle x^u_1, \ldots, x^u_n \rangle \). Note that, given a term \( \phi : w \to a \), we have
\[
\phi \cdot (\tau \circ \sigma) = (\phi \cdot \tau) \cdot \sigma, \quad \phi \cdot \langle x^u_1, \ldots, x^u_n \rangle = \phi.
\]
We write \( P^*_1 \) for the set of all morphisms of \( P^* \) and \( s^*_0, t^*_0 : P^*_1 \to P^*_0 \) for the source and target functions.

13.1.5 Cartesian categories. In a category \( C \), a cartesian product of two objects \( u \) and \( v \) is an object, usually noted \( u \times v \), together with morphisms \( \pi_1 : u \times v \to u \) and \( \pi_2 : u \times v \to v \), called projections, such that for every object \( w \) and morphisms \( \phi : w \to u \) and \( \psi : w \to v \), there exists a unique morphism \( \langle \phi, \psi \rangle : w \to u \times v \) satisfying \( \pi_1 \circ \langle \phi, \psi \rangle = \phi \) and \( \pi_2 \circ \langle \phi, \psi \rangle = \psi \):

\[
\begin{tikzcd}
& w \arrow[swap]{d}[description]{\langle \phi, \psi \rangle} \\
& u \times v \arrow{d}[swap]{\pi_1} \arrow{d}{\pi_2} \\
u \arrow{r}[swap]{\phi} & u \arrow{r}{\psi} & v.
\end{tikzcd}
\]

An object \( 1 \) is terminal in a category when for every object \( u \) there exists a unique morphism \( u \to 1 \). A category is cartesian when it has a terminal object and every pair of objects admits a cartesian product. In the following, for simplicity, we suppose fixed a choice of a product for any pair of objects in \( C \), which we suppose to be strictly associative and unital by Mac Lane’s coherence theorem (Theorem 12.4.4).

A morphism \( f : C \to D \) of cartesian categories, also called a cartesian functor, is a functor which preserves cartesian products and the terminal object. Here, we only consider functors for which this preservation is strict, by which we mean that \( f(u \times v) = f(u) \times f(v) \) and \( f(1) = 1 \). We write \( \text{Cart} \), or \( \text{Cart}_1 \), for the category of cartesian categories.

13.1.6 Lemma. The category \( P^* \) is cartesian.

Proof. The product of two objects \( u = a_1 \ldots a_p \) and \( v = b_1 \ldots b_q \) is given by
their concatenation \( uv \), and the canonical projections are

\[
\langle x_1^{uv}, \ldots, x_p^{uv} \rangle : uv \rightarrow u, \\
\langle x_{p+1}^{uv}, \ldots, x_{p+q}^{uv} \rangle : uv \rightarrow v.
\]

Finally, given two morphisms

\[
\sigma = \langle \sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_p \rangle : w \rightarrow u,
\tau = \langle \tau_1, \ldots, \tau_q \rangle : w \rightarrow v,
\]

the associated universal morphism is

\[
\langle \sigma, \tau \rangle = \langle \sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_p, \tau_1, \ldots, \tau_q \rangle : w \rightarrow uv.
\]

Let us describe an important case of the above construction. We write \( F \) for the category whose objects are natural numbers and morphisms \( m \rightarrow n \) are functions \([m] \rightarrow [n] \) where \([n] = \{0, \ldots, n-1\} \) is a set with \( n \) elements, see also §C.2. We write \( I : F \rightarrow \text{Set} \) for the canonical inclusion functor. Given a set \( P_0 \), we (abusively) write \( F/ P_0 \) for the comma category \( I \downarrow P_0 \) of \( I \) over the set \( P_0 \).

13.1.7 Lemma. Given a signature \( P \) such that \( P_1 = \emptyset \), we have \( P^* \cong (F/ P_0)^{\text{op}} \). In particular, if \( P_0 = \{ \star \} \) then \( P^* \cong F^{\text{op}} \).

We now describe the universal property satisfied by the construction \( P^* \).

13.1.8 Lawvere theories. Suppose fixed a set \( P_0 \) of sorts. A \( P_0 \)-sorted Lawvere theory (or algebraic theory) is a cartesian category \( C \) equipped with functor

\[
(F/ P_0)^{\text{op}} \rightarrow C,
\]

which preserves finite products and is the identity on objects. A morphism between two Lawvere theories \( C \) and \( D \) is a functor \( f : C \rightarrow D \) making the following diagram commute:

\[
\begin{tikzcd}
C \arrow{dr}{f} & D \\
(F/P_0)^{\text{op}} \arrow{ur}
\end{tikzcd}
\]

We write \( \text{Law}_{P_0} \) for the resulting category.

13.1.9 The free Lawvere theory. Consider the subcategory \( S_{P_0} \) of the category \( \text{Pol}_{1}^{\star} \) of signatures, where objects are the signatures having \( P_0 \) as sorts, and morphisms are those which are identity on sorts. There is a forgetful functor

\[
W_0 : \text{Law}_{P_0} \rightarrow S_{P_0}
\]
sending a Lawvere theory \( C \) to the signature \( P \) with
\[
P_1 = \bigsqcup_{u P_0, a \in P_0} C(u, a)
\]
as operations, with source and target being respectively given by the indices \( u \) and \( a \) of the coproduct. The cartesian category generated by a signature introduced in §13.1.4 can be shown to be freely generated in the following sense.

13.1.10 Proposition. The functor \( W_0 \) admits a left adjoint
\[
L_0 : S P_0 \to \text{Law} P_0,
\]
such that the image of a signature \( P \) is the Lawvere theory \( P^* \).

13.1.11 Congruence. A congruence on a Lawvere theory \( C \) is a relation \( \approx \) on parallel morphisms, such that
- given morphisms \( f : u' \to u, h : v \to v' \) and \( g, g' : u \to v \),
  \[ g \approx g' \quad \text{implies} \quad f \circ g \circ h \approx f \circ g' \circ h, \]
- given morphisms \( f, f' : w \to u \) and \( g, g' : w \to v \),
  \[ f \approx f' \quad \text{and} \quad g \approx g' \quad \text{implies} \quad \langle f, g \rangle \approx \langle f', g' \rangle. \]

Given such a congruence, we write \( C/\approx \) for the associated quotient Lawvere theory, obtained from \( C \) by quotienting morphisms under \( \approx \).

13.1.12 Term rewriting systems. A term rewriting system \( P \) consists of a signature \( (P_0, s_0, t_0, P_1) \) together with a set \( P_2 \) of rewriting rules (or relations) equipped with source and target functions \( s_1, t_1 : P_2 \to P_1^* \) such that the associated morphisms are parallel, i.e., \( s_0^* \circ s_1 = s_0^* \circ t_1 \) and \( t_0^* \circ s_1 = t_0^* \circ t_1 \). A rewriting rule \( A \) with source (resp. target) \( \psi : u \to a \) (resp. \( \psi : u \to a \)) is often denoted
\[
A : \psi \Rightarrow \psi : u \to a.
\]
The Lawvere theory presented by a term rewriting system \( P \) is \( \overline{P} = P^*/P_2 \), i.e., the category obtained from \( P^* \) by quotienting morphisms under the congruence \( \approx^P \) generated by \( P_2 \), and we say that \( P \) is a presentation of \( \overline{P} \).

A morphism \( P \to Q \) between term rewriting systems consists of a morphism between the underlying signatures together with a function \( P_2 \to Q_2 \) which is compatible with source and target. We write \( \text{Pol}_\ast \) for the category of term rewriting systems.
13.1.13 Models. A model of a Lawvere theory $C$ is a functor $C \to \text{Set}$ which preserves finite products. In the case where $C$ admits a presentation $P$, a model amounts to the data of

- a set $[a]$ for every sort $a \in P_0$,
- a function $[\alpha] : [a_1] \times \ldots \times [a_n] \to [a]$ for every operation $\alpha : a_1 \ldots a_n \to a$ in $P_1$.

such that $[\phi] = [\psi]$ for every relation $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$, where $[-]$ is extended to terms by

$$[\alpha(\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_n)] = [\alpha] \circ ([\phi_1], \ldots, [\phi_n])$$

and $[\mu^{a_1, \ldots, a_n}] : [a_1] \times \ldots \times [a_n] \to [a_i]$ is the canonical projection. We sometimes abusively speak of a model of a signature (resp. term rewriting system) to mean a model of the generated (resp. presented) Lawvere theory.

13.1.14 Example. The theory of groups is presented by $P$ with

$$P_0 = \{a\}, \quad P_1 = \{\mu : 2 \to 1, \eta : 0 \to 1, \iota : 1 \to 1\},$$

and rewriting rules

$$\mu(\eta, x_1) \Rightarrow x_1, \quad \mu(x_1, \eta) \Rightarrow x_1, \quad \mu(\mu(x_1, x_2), x_3) \Rightarrow \mu(x_1, \mu(x_2, x_3)), \quad \mu(\iota(x_1), x_1) \Rightarrow \eta, \quad \mu(x_1, \iota(x_1)) \Rightarrow \eta,$$

where, given $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we write $n$ instead of $a^n$ for an element of $P_0^*$. A model for this theory is a group.

Of course, as a variation of the previous example, usual algebraic structures have an associated Lawvere theory: groups, rings, modules, vector spaces, algebras, lattices, etc. Most are mono-sorted, apart from the theory for modules (as well as the one of vector spaces) which has two sorts: one corresponding to the ring of scalars and one to the abelian group. As a notable exception, there is no Lawvere theory corresponding to fields: intuitively, this is because the inverse operation is only partially defined ($0$ is not invertible). Below, we give an example of a Lawvere theory of more computational nature.

13.1.15 Example. Combinatory logic was introduced by Schönfinkel [321] and Curry [102] as an algebraic way of capturing binding and substitution. It can be presented by the mono-sorted term rewriting system $P$ with operations

$$\alpha : 2 \to 1, \quad \sigma : 0 \to 1, \quad \kappa : 0 \to 1, \quad \iota : 0 \to 1$$

($\alpha$ should be read as an “application” and the constants $\sigma, \kappa$ and $\iota$ are usually...
13.1 Presentations of Lawvere theories

respectively denoted \( S, K \) and \( I \) and relations

\[
\alpha(\alpha(\sigma, x_1), x_2), x_3) \Rightarrow \alpha(\alpha(x_1, x_2), \alpha(x_1, x_3)), \\
\alpha(\alpha(\kappa, x_1), x_2) \Rightarrow x_1, \\
\alpha(\iota, x_1) \Rightarrow x_1.
\]

A combinatory term \( \phi \) in \( P^* \) can be interpreted as a \( \lambda \)-term \( [\phi] \) by

\[
[\alpha(\phi, \psi)] = [\phi][\psi], \quad [\sigma] = \lambda xy(z)(yz), \quad [\kappa] = \lambda xy.x, \quad [\iota] = \lambda x.x,
\]

and conversely every \( \lambda \)-term can be interpreted as a combinatory logic term, giving rise to a correspondence between the morphisms in the presented category and \( \lambda \)-terms modulo \( \beta \)-reduction, although the details are subtle, see [322] for a survey on the subject. A model of this Lawvere theory is called a combinatory algebra.

13.1.16 Tietze transformations. The elementary Tietze transformations consist, starting from a presentation \( P \), in

(T1) adding a superfluous operation: given a term \( \phi : u \to a \) in \( P^* \), we construct the presentation \( P' \) such that

\[
P'_0 = P_0, \quad P'_1 = P_1 \uplus \{ \alpha : u \Rightarrow a \}, \quad P'_2 = P_2 \uplus \{ A : \phi \Rightarrow \alpha \}.
\]

(T2) adding a superfluous relation: given two terms \( \phi \) and \( \psi \) such that \( \phi \approx^P \psi \), we construct the presentation \( P' \) such that

\[
P'_0 = P_0, \quad P'_1 = P_1, \quad P'_2 = P_2 \uplus \{ A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi \}.
\]

The Tietze equivalence is the smallest equivalence relation on presentations such that \( P \) is Tietze equivalent to \( P' \) whenever there exists a Tietze transformation from \( P \) to \( P' \). The proof of the following theorem carries over as in the case of polygraphs (see Theorem 5.1.2).

13.1.17 Theorem. Two presentations with finite sets of operations and relations present isomorphic categories if and only if they are Tietze equivalent.

13.1.18 Composing presentations. In Section 3.3, we have seen that we could compose presented categories, when given a distributive law between them, and this was extended to presentations of monoidal categories in Section 10.5. We mention here that this also generalizes to Lawvere theories: the corresponding notion of distributive law is studied in [85].
13.2 More on models

In this section, we briefly recall some of the classical theory of Lawvere theories, as initiated by Lawvere in his PhD thesis [245], see [2, 3] for an in-depth presentation. For the sake of simplicity, we only handle here the mono-sorted case.

13.2.1 Models. Given a Lawvere theory $C$, we have seen in §13.1.13 that a model is a functor $C \to \text{Set}$ which preserves finite limits. A morphism between models is a natural transformation and we write $\text{Mod}(C)$ for the category of models.

13.2.2 Free models. Given a Lawvere theory $C$, there is a forgetful functor

$$U : \text{Mod}(C) \to \text{Set}$$

which to a model $M : C \to \text{Set}$ associates $M(1)$.

13.2.3 Theorem. The functor $U$ is monadic: it admits a left adjoint and the category $\text{Mod}(C)$ is equivalent to the category of $T$-algebras, where $T$ is the monad associated to the adjunction.

13.2.4 Monads. By the above theorem, every Lawvere theory $C$ canonically induces a monad $T$ on $\text{Set}$. An explicit description of this monad can be given by the following coend formula:

$$TX = \int^n C(n, 1) \times X^n.$$  

Not every monad arises in this way, and those which do can be characterized as being finitary, i.e., preserving filtered colimits. Writing $\text{Mnd}$ for the category of monads on $\text{Set}$, we have the following equivalence of categories.

13.2.5 Theorem. The category $\text{Law}$ of Lawvere theories is equivalent to the full subcategory of $\text{Mnd}$ whose objects are finitary monads.

We have already explained above how to associate a finitary monad to a Lawvere theory. Conversely, given such a monad $T$, the opposite category of the Kleisli category is always a Lawvere theory. These constructions give rise to the equivalence stated in the theorem.

13.2.6 The Birkhoff theorem. We now turn to a different approach to models of a Lawvere theory. Fix a signature $P$. In the context of model theory, its models are sometimes called structures. Given a presentation $Q$ on this signature (i.e.,
$Q_0 = P_0$ and $Q_1 = P_1$, we have a quotient functor
\[ P^* \to Q = P^*/Q_2, \]
which induces, by precomposition, a functor
\[ \text{Mod}(Q) \to \text{Mod}(P) \]
between the categories of models. The functor $P \to Q$ being surjective on objects and full, the induced functor between models is full and faithful, and we can thus consider $\text{Mod}(Q)$ as a full subcategory of $\text{Mod}(P)$. Conversely, given a full subcategory $C$ of $\text{Mod}(P)$, one may wonder whether there is a set $P_2$ of relations such that $C$ is precisely the category of models of the Lawvere theory presented by $(P, P_2)$. The following theorem, due to Birkhoff [43], see [3], and sometimes called the HSP theorem, gives a characterization of those situations.

**13.2.7 Theorem.** Given a signature $P$ and a full subcategory $C$ of $\text{Mod}(P)$, $C$ is the category of models of a term rewriting system $Q$ on the signature $P$ if and only if it is closed under

(H) homomorphic images: given a regular epimorphism $f : M \to N$ in $\text{Mod}(P)$ (i.e., $f$ is an epi which can be obtained as a coequalizer) with $M \in C$, the object $N$ also belongs to $C$,

(S) subalgebras: given a monomorphism $f : M \to N$ in $\text{Mod}(P)$ with $N \in C$, the object $M$ also belong to $C$, and

(P) products: given $M, N \in C$, their product $M \times N$ in $\text{Mod}(P)$ also belongs to $C$.

**13.3 Term rewriting**

Up to now, we have been using term rewriting systems as a notion of presentation, for which the orientation of the rules does not really matter. We now introduce the rewriting structure, following what we have done for 1-polygraphs (Section 1.3), 2-polygraphs (Chapter 4) and 3-polygraphs (Section 10.2).

**13.3.1 Occurrences.** Given a term $t : a_1 \ldots a_n \to a$ and an index $i$, with $1 \leq i \leq n$, the number $o_i(t)$ of occurrences of the $i$-th variable $x_i$ into $t$ is defined by induction on $t$ by
\[ o_i(x_i) = 1, \quad o_i(x_j) = 0, \quad o_i(\alpha(\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_k)) = \sum_{i=1}^k o_i(\phi_i), \]
A variable \( x_i \) is linear in a term \( t \) when it occurs exactly once, i.e., \( a_i(t) = 1 \).

**13.3.2 Contexts.** A context \( \kappa : a_1 \ldots a_n \rightarrow b \) is a term such that the variable \( x_{n+1} \) (of type \( a \)) is linear in \( C \). Given a term \( \phi : a_1 \ldots a_n \rightarrow a \), we write

\[
\kappa \cdot \phi : a_1 \ldots a_n \rightarrow b
\]

for the term obtained from \( \kappa \) by substituting \( \phi \) for \( x_{n+1} \), i.e.,

\[
\kappa \cdot \phi = \kappa \cdot \langle x_1, \ldots, x_n, \phi \rangle,
\]

with the notations of §13.1.3.

Given two contexts \( \kappa : a_1 \ldots a_n a \rightarrow b \) and \( \rho : a_1 \ldots a_n b \rightarrow c \), their **composite** is the context

\[
\rho \circ \kappa : a_1 \ldots a_n a \rightarrow c,
\]

obtained from \( \rho \) by replacing the variable \( x_{n+1} \) (of type \( b \)) by \( \kappa \), i.e.,

\[
\rho \circ \kappa = \rho \cdot \kappa = \rho \cdot \langle x_1, \ldots, x_n, \kappa \rangle
\]

and the **identity context** is

\[
x_{n+1}^{a_1 \ldots a_n a} : a_1 \ldots a_n a \rightarrow a.
\]

Note that given a term \( \phi : a_1 \ldots a_n \rightarrow a \), we have

\[
(\rho \circ \kappa) \cdot \phi = \rho \cdot (\kappa \cdot \phi),
\]

\[
x_{n+1}^{a_1 \ldots a_n a} \cdot \phi = \phi.
\]

Given a fixed \( u \in P_0^* \), we can thus build a category with \( P_0 \) as set of objects, a morphism \( \kappa : a \rightarrow b \) being a context \( \kappa : u a \rightarrow b \).

It is also useful to introduce a base change operation on contexts. Given a context \( \kappa : a_1 \ldots a_n a \rightarrow b \) and a substitution \( \sigma \) of appropriate type, an expression of the form \( \kappa \cdot \phi \cdot \sigma \) is always implicitly bracketed as \( \kappa \cdot (\phi \cdot \sigma) \). These operations are compatible with the categorical structures in the sense that, for suitably typed contexts and substitutions, we have

\[
\rho \circ (\kappa \cdot \phi \cdot \tau) \cdot \sigma = (\rho \circ \sigma^* (\kappa)) \cdot (\phi \cdot (\tau \circ \sigma)),
\]

\[
1 \cdot \phi \cdot 1 = \phi.
\]
Graphically, it is sometimes convenient to depict the term $\kappa \cdot \phi \cdot \sigma$ as

![Diagram](image)

### 13.3.4 $k$-ary contexts

Generalizing the construction of §13.3.2, a *$k$-ary context*, for $k \in \mathbb{N}$, is a term

$$\kappa : a_1 \ldots a_n a'_1 \ldots a'_k \rightarrow a,$$

such that the variables $x_{n+1}, \ldots, x_{n+k}$ are linear in $\kappa$. Given terms

$$\phi_i : a_1 \ldots a_n \rightarrow a'_i,$$

with $1 \leq i \leq k$, we write

$$\kappa \cdot (\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_k) = \kappa(x_1, \ldots, x_n, \phi_1, \ldots, \phi_k).$$

In the following, we will only use binary contexts, i.e., the case where $k = 2$.

### 13.3.5 Rewriting steps

A *rewriting step*

$$\kappa \cdot A \cdot \sigma : \kappa \cdot \phi \cdot \sigma \Rightarrow \kappa \cdot \psi \cdot \sigma : u' \rightarrow a'$$

consists of a rewriting rule

$$A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi : u \rightarrow a,$$

together with a substitution and a context

$$\sigma : u' \rightarrow u \quad \text{and} \quad \kappa : u'a \rightarrow a'.$$

In this case, we say that the term $\kappa \cdot \phi \cdot \sigma$ *rewrites* in one step to the term $\kappa \cdot \psi \cdot \sigma$. A *rewriting path* is a sequence of composable rewriting steps.

### 13.3.6 Rewriting

A term rewriting system $P$ induces an abstract rewriting system with the terms in $P_+^*$ as vertices and rewriting steps as edges. The rewriting system is *terminating*, (locally) *confluent*, etc. when the associated abstract rewriting system is.

### 13.3.7 Critical branchings

A *branching* is a pair

$$\kappa_1 \cdot \psi_1 \cdot \sigma_1 \xrightarrow{\kappa_2 \cdot A_1 \cdot \sigma_2} \kappa_1 \cdot \phi_1 \cdot \sigma_3 = \kappa_2 \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \sigma_2 \xrightarrow{\kappa_2 \cdot A_2 \cdot \sigma_2} \kappa_2 \cdot \phi_2 \cdot \sigma_2 \quad (13.1)$$

of coinitial rewriting steps. We can identify the following families of branchings.
1. A branching is **trivial** when it is of the form

\[ \psi \xrightarrow[\kappa \cdot \sigma_1 \cdot \sigma_2]{} \phi \xrightarrow[\kappa \cdot \sigma_1 \cdot \sigma_2]{} \psi. \]

Such a branching is clearly confluent.

2. A branching is **parallel orthogonal** when it is of the form

\[
\begin{align*}
\phi_1 & \xrightarrow[\kappa \cdot (\sigma_1 \cdot \sigma_2)]{} \phi \xrightarrow[\kappa \cdot (\sigma_1 \cdot \sigma_2)]{} \phi_2,
\end{align*}
\]

for some suitably-typed binary context \( \kappa \), rewriting rules \( A_1 : \psi_1 \Rightarrow \psi_1' \) and \( A_2 : \psi_2 \Rightarrow \psi_2' \), and substitutions \( \sigma_1 \) and \( \sigma_2 \).

3. A branching is **inclusion orthogonal** when it is of the form

\[
\begin{align*}
\phi_1 & \xleftarrow[\kappa \cdot A_1 \cdot (\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n)]{} \phi \xrightarrow[\kappa \cdot A_1 \cdot (\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n)]{} \phi_2,
\end{align*}
\]

for some suitably-typed contexts \( \kappa \) and \( \kappa' \), rewriting rules \( A_1 : \psi_1 \Rightarrow \psi_1' \) and \( A_2 : \psi_2 \Rightarrow \psi_2' \), and substitutions \( \sigma = (\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n) \) and \( \sigma' \), such that \( \sigma_i = \kappa' \cdot \psi_2 \cdot \sigma' \) for some index \( i \) with \( 1 \leq i \leq n \).

4. A branching is **non-minimal** when it is of the form

\[
\begin{align*}
\phi_1 & \xleftarrow[\kappa \cdot A_1 \cdot (\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n)]{} \phi \xrightarrow[\kappa \cdot A_1 \cdot (\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_n)]{} \phi_2,
\end{align*}
\]

for some suitably-typed context \( \kappa \) and substitution \( \sigma \), not both identities, and of suitable types.

5. A branching is **critical** when it is not of any of the above forms.

The above definition of critical branching makes it easy to show the critical branchings lemma, stated below. Moreover, those can be efficiently computed, see [20, Section 6.2] for a presentation of the classical algorithms.

**13.3.8 Lemma.** A term rewriting system is locally confluent if and only if all its critical branchings are.

**13.3.9 Example.** The theory of monoids, with 0-generators \( P_0 = \{ a \} \), 1-generators \( P_1 = \{ \mu : 2 \rightarrow 1, \eta : 0 \rightarrow 1 \} \) and 2-generators

\[
\begin{align*}
\mu(\eta, x_1) & \Rightarrow x_1, \quad \mu(x_1, \eta) \Rightarrow x_1, \\
\mu(\mu(x_1, x_2), x_3) & \Rightarrow \mu(x_1, \mu(x_2, x_3)),
\end{align*}
\]

is locally confluent since its five critical branchings, whose source is shown below, are confluent:

\[
\begin{align*}
\mu(\mu(x_1, x_2), x_3), & \quad \mu(\mu(\mu(x_1, x_2), x_3), x_4), \\
\mu(\mu(x_1, \eta), x_2), & \quad \mu(\mu(x_1, \eta), x_2), \\
\mu(\mu(x_1, x_2), \eta), & \quad \mu(\eta, \eta).
\end{align*}
\]

The rewriting system can be shown to be terminating and is thus convergent.
13.3 Term rewriting

13.3.10 Reduction orders. Given a signature $P$, a reduction order $\succ$ is an order on $P_1^*$ which is
- well-founded,
- closed under application: for every $\alpha \in P_1$ of arity $n$ and every terms $\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_n \in P_1^*$ and $\phi'_i \in P_1^*$, we have that $\phi_i \succ \phi'_i$ implies
  $\alpha(\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_{i-1}, \phi_i, \phi_{i+1}, \ldots, \phi_n) \succ \alpha(\phi_1, \ldots, \phi_{i-1}, \phi'_i, \phi_{i+1}, \ldots, \phi_n)$.
- closed under substitution: given terms $\phi, \phi' \in P_1^*$ and substitution $\sigma$, we have $\phi \succ \phi'$ implies $\phi \cdot \sigma \succ \phi' \cdot \sigma$.

Given a rewriting system $(P, P_2)$ on a signature $P$, a termination order $\succ$ is a reduction order on $P$ such that $\phi \succ \psi$ for every rewriting rule $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ in $P$. As in the case of 2-polygraphs (Proposition 4.4.2), we have [20, Theorem 5.2.3]:

13.3.11 Proposition. A rewriting system is terminating if and only if it admits a termination order.

13.3.12 Completion. Given a rewriting system $P$ equipped with a termination order $\succ$, we can turn it into a convergent rewriting system by the following Knuth-Bendix completion procedure [218]. It is very similar to the one already given in Section 5.2 and consist in iteratively applying the following steps.
- For every critical branching $\phi_1 \Leftarrow \phi \Rightarrow \phi_2$, compute normal forms $\tilde{\phi}_1$ and $\tilde{\phi}_2$ for $\phi_1$ and $\phi_2$ respectively.
- If $\tilde{\phi}_1 = \tilde{\phi}_2$ for every possible branching, the procedure halts.
- Otherwise, there is a critical branching with $\tilde{\phi}_1 \neq \tilde{\phi}_2$:
  - if $\tilde{\phi}_1 > \tilde{\phi}_2$, we add the rule $\tilde{\phi}_1 \Rightarrow \tilde{\phi}_2$ to $P$,
  - if $\tilde{\phi}_2 > \tilde{\phi}_1$, we add the rule $\tilde{\phi}_2 \Rightarrow \tilde{\phi}_1$ to $P$.

As in the case of 2-polygraphs, the procedure is not guaranteed to stop. In the case it does, the resulting rewriting system is a convergent presentation of the Lawvere theory $\overline{P}$. When the procedure does not terminate, the above steps produce an infinite sequence of rewriting systems $P'$ with $P^0 = P$, by iteratively adding rules, and the inductive limit $\bigcup_j P_j$ is always a convergent presentation of $\overline{P}$.

13.3.13 Example. The presentation of groups given in Example 13.1.14 is not locally confluent. By applying the Knuth-Bendix completion procedure, one can arrive at the following convergent presentation, with the same 0- and
1-generators and whose relations are those of Example 13.1.14 together with
\[ \mu(x_1, \mu(x_1, x_2)) \Rightarrow x_2, \quad \iota(\eta) \Rightarrow \eta, \quad \iota(\mu(x_1, x_2)) \Rightarrow \mu(\iota(x_2), \iota(x_1)), \]
\[ \mu(x_1, \mu(x_1, x_2)) \Rightarrow x_2, \quad \iota(\iota(x_1)) \Rightarrow x_1, \]
see [218, Example 1].

13.3.14 Non-linearity and confluence. Because of the presence of variables which can potentially duplicate terms when substituted, one should be careful when the rewriting system is not terminating. For instance, contrarily to the case of polygraphs studied in previous chapters, it is not true that a rewriting system without critical branchings is always confluent. Namely, consider the mono-sorted rewriting system due to Huet [188], with generators
\[ \tau : 0 \rightarrow 1, \quad \phi : 0 \rightarrow 1, \quad \omega : 0 \rightarrow 1, \quad \sigma : 1 \rightarrow 1, \quad \varepsilon : 2 \rightarrow 1, \]
(which should respectively be read as “true”, “false”, “infinity”, “successor” and “equality”) and relations
\[ \omega \Rightarrow \sigma(\omega), \quad \varepsilon(x_1, x_1) \Rightarrow \tau, \quad \varepsilon(x_1, \sigma(x_1)) \Rightarrow \phi. \]
The first rule clearly makes the rewriting system non-terminating. There is no critical branching, yet the system is not confluent:
\[ \tau \Leftarrow \varepsilon(\omega, \omega) \Rightarrow \varepsilon(\omega, \sigma(\omega)) \Rightarrow \phi. \]
It can however be shown that a rewriting system which is left-linear (i.e., where no variable occurs twice in the left member of a rewriting rule) and without critical branchings is always confluent [20, Section 6.4].

13.4 Term rewriting systems and 3-polygraphs

We now explain that presentations of Lawvere theories can be seen as particular 3-polygraphs [136, 73]. This is based on the idea, familiar to people working on linear logic, that a cartesian category is a monoidal category in which every object can be duplicated and erased, see for instance [277, Section 6]. For the sake of simplicity, we consider only strict monoidal categories here, as justified by Mac Lane’s coherence theorem (Theorem 12.4.4) although many results extend seamlessly to the general case.

13.4.1 Underlying monoidal category. Suppose given a cartesian category \( C \). It can be equipped with a structure of symmetric monoidal category. The unit object is the terminal object. The tensor product of two objects is their cartesian
13.4 Term rewriting systems and 3-polygraphs

product, and the tensor product of two morphisms $\phi : u \to u'$ and $\psi : v \to v'$ is the morphism

$$\phi \times \psi : u \times v \to u' \times v',$$

obtained by the universal property of the product:

$$\pi_1 \downarrow \quad \pi_2 \downarrow \quad \pi_1' \downarrow \quad \pi_2' \downarrow$$

$$\phi \quad \phi \times \psi \quad \psi \quad \psi$$

$$\pi_1 \downarrow \quad \pi_2 \downarrow \quad \pi_1' \downarrow \quad \pi_2' \downarrow$$

where the morphisms $\pi_1, \pi_2, \pi_1', \pi_2'$ are the projections. Finally, the symmetry

$$\gamma_{u,v} : v \times u \to u \times v$$

is defined by

$$\pi_2 \downarrow \quad \pi_1 \downarrow \quad \pi_1' \downarrow \quad \pi_2' \downarrow$$

$$\gamma_{u,v} \quad \gamma_{u,v}$$

$$\pi_2 \downarrow \quad \pi_1 \downarrow \quad \pi_1' \downarrow \quad \pi_2' \downarrow$$

In general, this monoidal structure is not strict, but Mac Lane's coherence theorem ensures that there is no harm in considering it to be strict up to monoidal equivalence of categories.

A cartesian monoidal category is a symmetric monoidal category which is induced by a cartesian category as above. We now show that those can be characterized among symmetric monoidal categories as being those in which every object is equipped with a structure of commutative comonoid in a natural way.

### 13.4.2 Comonoids.

Suppose given a strict monoidal category $(C, \otimes, i)$. A comonoid $(u, \delta, \varepsilon)$ in $C$ consists of an object $u$ together with morphisms

$$\delta : u \to u \otimes u, \quad \varepsilon : i \to u,$$

satisfying the usual associativity and unitality axioms

$$(\delta \otimes 1_u) \circ \delta = (1_u \otimes \delta) \circ \delta, \quad (\varepsilon \otimes 1_u) \circ \delta = 1_u, \quad (1_u \otimes \varepsilon) \circ \delta = 1_u.$$ 

This structure is dual to the one of monoid (see Example 10.1.5). In the case where the monoidal category is equipped with a symmetry gamma, the
comonoid is commutative when it satisfies

\[ \gamma_{u,u} \circ \delta = \delta. \]

The following theorem is detailed in various places, e.g. [277]:

**13.4.3 Theorem.** In a symmetric monoidal category \((C, \otimes, i)\), the tensor product is a cartesian product if and only if there are natural transformations of components

\[ \delta_u : u \to u \otimes u, \quad \epsilon_u : u \to i, \]

which are monoidal, i.e., for every objects \(u, v \in C\) we have

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
 u \otimes v & \xrightarrow{\delta_{u\otimes v}} & u \otimes v \otimes u \otimes v \\
 \delta_u \otimes \delta_v & \xrightarrow{\delta_{u\otimes v}} & u \otimes u \otimes v \otimes v \\
 \end{array}
\]

and such that \((u, \delta_u, \epsilon_u)\) is a commutative comonoid for every object \(u\).

**Proof.** Suppose that \(C\) is a cartesian category. Given an object \(u\), the comonoid morphisms \(\delta_u\) are induced by the universal property of the product:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
 u & \xrightarrow{1_u} & u \\
 \delta_u & \xrightarrow{\pi_1} & u \times u \\
 \pi_2 & \xrightarrow{l_u} & u \\
\end{array}
\]

and \(\epsilon_u : u \to 1\) is the terminal morphism. The verification of axioms of commutative comonoids and naturality is left to the reader.

Conversely, suppose that \(C\) is a symmetric monoidal category equipped with natural transformations \(\delta\) and \(\epsilon\) as in the statement of the theorem. For any pair of objects \(u\) and \(v\), we claim that their cartesian product is \(u \otimes v\) equipped with projections

\[ 1_u \otimes \epsilon_v : u \otimes v \to u, \quad \epsilon_v \otimes 1_v : u \otimes v \to v. \]

Given morphisms \(\phi : w \to u\) and \(\psi : w \to v\), we claim that the universal
morphism is $\chi = (\phi \otimes \psi) \circ \delta_w$:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\delta_w \\
\downarrow \\
\phi \otimes \psi \\
\phi \otimes \psi \\
\downarrow \\
u \\
\end{array}
\]

Namely, we have

\[(1_u \otimes \varepsilon_v) \circ (\phi \otimes \psi) \circ \delta_w = (1_u \circ \phi) \otimes (\varepsilon_u \circ \psi) \circ \delta_w, \quad \text{(interchange law)}\]

\[= (\phi \otimes \varepsilon_w) \circ \delta_w, \quad \text{(naturality of } \varepsilon)\]

\[= \phi \circ (1_u \otimes \varepsilon_w) \circ \delta_w, \quad \text{( interchange law)}\]

\[= \phi, \quad \text{(axiom of comonoids)}\]

so that the triangle on the left commutes, and similarly for the one on the right. Conversely, given a morphism $\chi : w \rightarrow u \otimes v$ such that $\pi_1 \circ \chi = \phi$ and $\pi_2 \circ \chi = \psi$, we have

\[\chi = (((1_u \otimes \varepsilon_u) \circ \delta_u) \otimes ((\varepsilon_v \circ 1_v) \circ \delta_v)) \circ \chi, \quad \text{(axiom of comonoids)}\]

\[= (1_u \otimes \varepsilon_u \otimes \varepsilon_v \otimes 1_v) \circ (\delta_u \otimes \delta_v) \circ \chi, \quad \text{(interchange)}\]

\[= (1_u \otimes \varepsilon_u \otimes \varepsilon_v \otimes 1_v) \circ (1_u \otimes \gamma_{u,v} \otimes 1_v) \circ \delta_{u \otimes v} \circ \chi, \quad \text{(} \delta \text{ is monoidal)}\]

\[= (1_u \otimes \varepsilon_u \otimes \varepsilon_v \otimes 1_v) \circ \delta_{u \otimes v} \circ \chi, \quad \text{(} \gamma \text{ natural)}\]

This concludes the proof. \(\square\)

13.4.4 Remark. In a more general way, it can be shown that the forgetful functor $\text{Cart} \rightarrow \text{MonCat}$ from cartesian categories to monoidal categories admits a right adjoint

$\text{Comon} : \text{Cart} \rightarrow \text{MonCat}$

which associates, to a monoidal category $C$, the category of comonoids in $C$. This has been rediscovered many times and can be traced back to Fox [136].

As a consequence of this theorem, the free cartesian category on a presented symmetric monoidal category can be presented as follows [73]:

13.4.5 Theorem. Let $P$ be a 3-polygraph presenting a symmetric monoidal category $\mathcal{P}$ (in particular, $P_0 = \{*\}$ is reduced to one element). The free
Term rewriting systems

cartesian category on $\overline{P}$ is presented by the 3-polygraph $Q$ such that

\[
\begin{align*}
Q_0 &= P_0, \\
Q_1 &= P_1, \\
Q_2 &= P_2 \sqcup \{ \delta_a : a \rightarrow aa, \varepsilon_a : a \rightarrow 1 \mid a \in P_1 \}, \\
Q_3 &= P_3 \sqcup Q'_3,
\end{align*}
\]

where $Q'_3$ consists of the generators

\[
\begin{align*}
A_a : \delta_a * \delta_a a &\Rightarrow \delta_a * a \delta_a, & L_a : \delta_a * \varepsilon_a a &\Rightarrow 1_a, & D_\alpha : \alpha * \delta_u &\Rightarrow \delta_u * \alpha \alpha, \\
R_\alpha : \delta_u * a \varepsilon_a &\Rightarrow 1_a, & E_\alpha : \alpha * \varepsilon_v &\Rightarrow \varepsilon_u.
\end{align*}
\]

indexed by 1-generators $a$ in $P_1$ and 2-generators $\alpha : u \Rightarrow v$ in $P_2$. Here, given $u \in P_1^*$, the 2-cells $\delta_u$ and $\varepsilon_u$ are defined by induction on $u$ by

\[
\delta_\varepsilon = 1_\varepsilon, \quad \delta_{au} = \delta_u \delta_a * a \gamma_{u,a} * u, \quad \varepsilon_\varepsilon = 1_\varepsilon, \quad \varepsilon_{au} = \varepsilon_a \varepsilon_u.
\]

Graphically, the morphisms $\delta_u$ and $\varepsilon_u$ can be respectively depicted as

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{tikzpicture}[baseline=-0.5ex]
    \node (u) at (0,0) {$u$};
    \node (a) at (0,-1) {$a$};
    \node (b) at (-1,-2) {$b$};
    \draw (u) to (b);
    \draw (a) to (b);
\end{tikzpicture}

\quad \quad \quad \\
\begin{tikzpicture}[baseline=-0.5ex]
    \node (u) at (0,0) {$u$};
    \node (a) at (0,-1) {$a$};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{align*}
\]

and satisfy

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{tikzpicture}[baseline=-0.5ex]
    \node (u) at (0,0) {$u$};
    \node (a) at (0,-1) {$a$};
\end{tikzpicture}
\quad \quad \quad \\
\begin{tikzpicture}[baseline=-0.5ex]
    \node (u) at (0,0) {$u$};
    \node (a) at (0,-1) {$a$};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{align*}
\]

The relations are

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{tikzpicture}[baseline=-0.5ex]
    \node (u) at (0,0) {$u$};
    \node (a) at (0,-1) {$a$};
\end{tikzpicture}
\quad \quad \quad \\
\begin{tikzpicture}[baseline=-0.5ex]
    \node (u) at (0,0) {$u$};
    \node (a) at (0,-1) {$a$};
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{align*}
\]

More generally, the free cartesian category on a presented monoidal category $C$, can be obtained by first presenting the free symmetric monoidal category on $C$, see §12.5.5, and then applying the above construction.
13.4 Term rewriting systems and 3-polygraphs

13.4.6 Presentations of Lawvere theories by polygraphs. The above construction can be used to translate a term rewriting system presenting a Lawvere theory \( C \) to a polygraph presenting the underlying monoidal category of \( C \). First, we can define a functor

\[
U : \text{Pol}_1^\times \to \text{Pol}_2,
\]

which to every signature \( P \) associates the 2-polygraph \( UP \) defined by

\[
(UP)_0 = \{\star\}, \quad (UP)_1 = P_0, \quad (UP)_2 = P_1.
\]

This functor induces an isomorphism between \( \text{Pol}_1^\times \) and the full subcategory of \( \text{Pol}_2 \) whose objects are polygraphs with \( \star \) as only 0-generator. However note that, given a signature \( P \), the categories \( P^\times \) and \( (UP)^\times \) are generally not isomorphic: the former is cartesian whereas the latter is generally only monoidal. In order to address this discrepancy, Theorem 13.4.3 suggests that we consider the 2-polygraph obtained from \( UP \) by formally adding a symmetry, see §12.5.5 and Theorem C.1.5, and a natural structure of commutative comonoid for every object, see Theorem 13.4.5. We thus define a functor

\[
L : \text{Pol}_1^\times \to \text{Pol}_3,
\]

where \( LP \) is the polygraph obtained from \( UP \) (seen as a 3-polygraph by the canonical inclusion \( \text{Pol}_2 \to \text{Pol}_1 \), adding an empty set of 3-generators) by performing those constructions.

13.4.7 Proposition. Given a signature \( P \in \text{Pol}_1^\times \), the monoidal category \( LP \) presented 3-polygraph \( LP \) is the cartesian category \( P^\times \) generated by \( P \).

As a variant of the above construction, one can show [73]:

13.4.8 Theorem. For every term rewriting system \( P \), there is a 3-polygraph \( Q \) such that \( LP \) is isomorphic to \( Q \) (as monoidal categories). Moreover, when \( P \) is finite, the polygraph \( Q \) can also be chosen finite.

13.4.9 Example. We have described, in Example 13.1.14, a term rewriting system corresponding to the theory of groups. By applying the above construction, we obtain the following 3-polygraph \( P \) which presents the same Lawvere theory, considered as a monoidal category. We have \( P_0 = \{\star\}, P_1 = \{a\} \) (thus \( P_1^\times \cong \mathbb{N} \)), the 2-generators are those coming from the original term rewriting system

\[
\mu : 2 \to 1, \quad \eta : 0 \to 1, \quad \iota : 1 \to 1,
\]

respectively pictured as

\[
\begin{align*}
\star, \\
\circ, \\
\downarrow,
\end{align*}
\]
Term rewriting systems

as well as those corresponding to the cartesian structure

\[ \delta : 1 \rightarrow 2, \quad \varepsilon : 1 \rightarrow 0, \quad \gamma : 2 \rightarrow 2, \]

respectively pictured as

\[ \text{\includegraphics{triangle.png}}, \quad \text{\includegraphics{square.png}}, \quad \text{\includegraphics{rectangle.png}}, \]

and the relations are those coming from the term rewriting system

\[ \mu a \ast \mu \ \Rightarrow \ 1, \quad a \mu \ast \mu \ \Rightarrow \ 1, \quad \mu a \ast \mu \ \Rightarrow \ a \mu \ast \mu, \]

\[ \delta \ast a \ast \mu \ \Rightarrow \ \varepsilon, \quad \delta \ast a \ast \mu \ \Rightarrow \ \varepsilon, \]

in addition to those corresponding to the cartesian structure (omitted here). Note that the use of \( \delta \) in the two last relation is due to the fact that the variable \( x_1 \) is used twice in the corresponding relation on terms. It turns out that this is the polygraph for cocommutative Hopf algebras, see §C.4.6.

**13.4.10 Example.** The 3-polygraph \( P \) corresponding to the Lawvere theory of commutative monoids is the polygraph of bicommutative bialgebras, see §C.4.3.

### 13.5 Cartesian polygraphs

As the notations used in Section 13.1 are meant to suggest, term rewriting systems can be seen as particular instances of a notion of *cartesian polygraph*, adapted to presenting cartesian categories [268]. We briefly review this notion here.

**13.5.1 Cartesian 0-polygraphs.** The category \( \mathbf{Pol}_0^\times \) of cartesian 0-polygraphs is the category of sets (as for regular polygraphs, see Section 1.1).

**13.5.2 Cartesian 1-polygraphs.** The category \( \mathbf{Pol}_1^\times \) of cartesian 1-polygraphs is the category of signatures, see §13.1.1.
13.5 Cartesian polygraphs

13.5.3 Cartesian 2-polygraphs. The category $\text{Pol}_2$ of cartesian 2-polygraphs is the category of term rewriting systems, see §13.1.12. Given a 2-polygraph $P$, we write $P_{\leq 1}$ for the underlying 1-polygraph.

13.5.4 Cartesian 2-categories. In order to define cartesian 3-polygraphs, we first need to introduce the following notion. A 2-category $C$ is cartesian if its underlying category is cartesian and for every pair of 2-cells $F : \phi \Rightarrow \phi' : w \to u$, $G : \psi \Rightarrow \psi' : w \to v$, with same 0-source (resp. 0-target), there exists a unique morphism $\langle F, G \rangle : \langle \phi, \phi' \rangle : w \to u \times v$, such that $\langle F, G \rangle _0 \pi_1 = F$ and $\langle F, G \rangle _0 \pi_2 = G$. Graphically,

We write $\text{Cart}_2$ for the category of cartesian 2-categories, morphisms being 2-functors whose underlying functor is cartesian.

13.5.5 Lawvere 2-theories. Given a set $P_0$, the cartesian category $(F/P_0)^{op}$ can canonically be seen as cartesian 2-category with only identity 2-cells. A Lawvere 2-theory is a cartesian 2-category equipped with a cartesian 2-functor $(F/P_0)^{op} \to C$, which preserves finite products and is the identity on objects [356].

13.5.6 The generated cartesian (2, 1)-category. Given a cartesian 2-polygraph $P$, we write $P^\tau$ for the cartesian (2, 1)-category it generates. It has the category $P_{\leq 1}$ freely generated by the underlying signature (i.e., 1-polygraph) as underlying category and its 2-cells are generated under composition and inverses by the elements of $P_2$, with source and target indicated by $s_1$ and $t_1$. We write $P_2^\tau$ for the set of 2-cells of $P^\tau$. The cartesian (2, 1)-category $P^\tau$ is canonically a Lawvere 2-theory, with $P_0$ as sorts.

13.5.7 Cartesian (3, 1)-polygraphs. A cartesian (3, 1)-polygraph consists of

- a 2-polygraph $P$,
a set $P_3$ of 3-generators together with functions $s_2, t_2 : P_3 \rightarrow P_2^\top$ such that $s_1^r \circ s_2 = t_1^r \circ s_2$ and $s_1^r \circ t_2 = t_1^r \circ t_2$.

A morphism $f : P \rightarrow Q$ of cartesian $(3, 1)$-polygraphs consists of a morphism $P_{c2} \rightarrow Q_{c2}$ between the underlying 2-polygraphs together with a function $P_3 \rightarrow Q_3$ which commutes with source and with target.

13.5.8 Congruence. A congruence $\approx$ on a cartesian 2-category $C$ is a congruence on the underlying 2-category such that, for every 1-cells

$$F, F' : \phi \Rightarrow \phi' : w \rightarrow u, \quad G, G' : \psi \Rightarrow \psi' : w \rightarrow v,$$

we have that

$$F \approx F' \quad \text{and} \quad G \approx G' \quad \text{implies} \quad \langle F, G \rangle \approx \langle F', G' \rangle.$$

Given a 3-polygraph $P$, the $P$-congruence $\approx^P$ is the smallest congruence such that $F \approx^P G$, for every 3-generator $\Lambda : F \Rightarrow G$.

13.5.9 Coherent presentation. A $(3, 1)$-polygraph $P$ is a coherent presentation of a cartesian category $C$ when $C$ is the cartesian category presented by the underlying 2-polygraph, i.e., $\overline{P_{c2}} = C$, and for every parallel 2-cells $F, G : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ in $P_2^\top$ one has $F \approx^P G$.

13.5.10 Cartesian Squier homotopical theorem. An analogous of Squier’s homotopical theorem (Theorems 7.3.5 and 12.1.7) can be formulated in this context: the cartesian category presented by a convergent term rewriting system $P$ admits a coherent presentation by the $(3, 1)$-polygraph $(P, P_3)$, where $P_3$ consists of a confluence diagram for every critical branching of $P$. This can be used to recover various coherence results (such as Mac Lane’s coherence theorem for monoidal categories) through term rewriting systems [356, 93, 38, 286].

13.5.11 Homological invariants. Finally, we shall briefly mention that the homological tools developed for 2-polygraphs in Chapter 9 can be adapted to term rewriting systems [266, 267]. In particular, the homology of a Lawvere theory can be used in order to obtain lower bounds on generators and relations that any presentation should have [267, 195, 196].
PART FOUR

POLYGRAPHS
Higher categories

The remaining chapters of this book present a general theoretical background underlying all constructions encountered so far. Thus, from this point on, we shall assume that the reader is well acquainted with the basics of category theory, as developed in [261].

Among the many existing notions of higher categories, the notion of strict globular $n$-category that we shall describe is in some sense the most basic one. The earliest published reference to the concept appears to be [63], where it is motivated by the study of higher homotopies. Precisely, one looks here for higher dimensional analogues of the fundamental groupoid of a space. Grothendieck soon afterwards realized the need for a weak version of infinity-groupoids to fulfill this purpose, see [153, 270]. The theory has been further developed in the highly influential paper [334], advocating the use of strict higher categories as coefficients for non-abelian cohomology. The same paper introduces the notion of freely generated $\omega$-category over a computad — here called a polygraph — which is central in the present work, together with the definition of oriented simplices or orientals. Orientals yield a nerve functor from strict $\omega$-categories to simplicial sets, turning the former into models of homotopy types, as developed in [13, 144].

The present work stresses yet another aspect of strict $\omega$-categories, especially the free ones, as higher dimensional rewriting “spaces”, in the spirit of [163].

In this chapter, we set the essential definitions and notations. Starting with a description of the basic “shapes”, that is, the presheaf category $\text{Glob}_\omega$ of globular sets, we define a family of operations endowing a globular set with a structure of $\omega$-category. We then prove that the category $\text{Cat}_\omega$ of strict $\omega$-categories is exactly the category of algebras of the monad induced by the forgetful functor from $\text{Cat}_\omega$ to $\text{Glob}_\omega$. We finally define important subcategories of $\text{Cat}_\omega$ obtained by requiring cells to be invertible above a given dimension.
Higher categories

14.1 Globular sets

14.1.1 Globes. We first define the small category $O$ of globes: its objects are the integers $0, 1, \ldots$ and its morphisms are generated by a double sequence

$$\sigma_n, \tau_n : n \to n + 1,$$

where $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$0 \overset{\sigma_0}{\underset{\tau_0}{\to}} 1 \overset{\sigma_1}{\underset{\tau_1}{\to}} \cdots \overset{\sigma_{n-1}}{\underset{\tau_{n-1}}{\to}} n \overset{\sigma_n}{\underset{\tau_n}{\to}} n + 1 \overset{\sigma_{n+1}}{\underset{\tau_{n+1}}{\to}} \cdots,$$

quotiented by the equations

$$\sigma_{n+1} \circ \sigma_n = \tau_{n+1} \circ \sigma_n, \quad (14.1)$$

$$\sigma_{n+1} \circ \tau_n = \tau_{n+1} \circ \tau_n. \quad (14.2)$$

As a consequence of these equations, whenever $0 \leq m < n$, the hom-set $O(m, n)$ contains exactly two morphisms:

$$\sigma_m^n = \sigma_{n-1} \circ \cdots \circ \sigma_m,$$

$$\tau_m^n = \tau_{n-1} \circ \cdots \circ \tau_m.$$

A globular set is then a presheaf on $O$, that is, a functor $X : O^{\text{op}} \to \text{Set}$. Thus, a globular set $X$ amounts to a sequence of sets $X(n)$ of $n$-dimensional globes, for each $n \geq 0$, together with source and target maps

$$X(\sigma_n), X(\tau_n) : X(n + 1) \to X(n)$$

satisfying the globular relations, dual to (14.1) and (14.2). Let us denote $X(\sigma_n)$ by $s_n$ and $X(\tau_n)$ by $t_n$. Whenever $m \leq n$, we set

$$s^n_m = s_m \circ \cdots \circ s_{n-1},$$

$$t^n_m = t_m \circ \cdots \circ t_{n-1},$$

thus $s^n_m, t^n_m : X(n) \to X(m)$.

Globular sets and natural transformations between them define a category denoted by $\text{Glob}_\omega$. For any globular set $X$ and integer $n$, we shall denote $X(n)$ by $X_n$. The elements of $X_n$ are called $n$-cells. For any $n$-cell $x$ and $m \leq n$, the notations $s_m(x)$ and $t_m(x)$ will stand for $s^n_m(x)$ and $t^n_m(x)$ respectively. The $m$-cell $s_m(x)$ will be called the $m$-source of $x$ (or simply the source if $m = n-1$) and the $m$-cell $t_m(x)$ the $m$-target of $x$ (or simply the target if $m = n-1$). Two $n$-cells $x, y$ are called parallel if either $n = 0$ or $s_{n-1}(x) = s_{n-1}(y)$ and $t_{n-1}(x) = t_{n-1}(y)$ otherwise.

Let us denote $O^{(n)}$ the full subcategory of $O$ whose objects are $0, \ldots, n$. 

Then the category $\mathbf{Glob}_n$ of $n$-globular sets is by definition the category of presheaves on $\mathcal{O}^{(n)}$. If $0 \leq m < n$, the canonical inclusion $\mathcal{O}^{(m)} \to \mathcal{O}^{(n)}$


gives rise, by precomposition, to a truncation functor $U^m_n : \mathbf{Glob}_n \to \mathbf{Glob}_m$.

Also, for each $n \geq 0$, the canonical inclusion $\mathcal{O}^{(n)} \to \mathcal{O}$ gives rise to a truncation functor $U^n_n : \mathbf{Glob}_\omega \to \mathbf{Glob}_n$

making all the following triangles commute:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbf{Glob}_\omega & \xrightarrow{U_n} & \mathbf{Glob}_n \\
\downarrow{U_m} & & \downarrow{U_m'} \\
\mathbf{Glob}_n & \xrightarrow{U_m} & \mathbf{Glob}_m
\end{array}
\]

For any $n$-globular set $X$, and $m < n$, the notation $U^m_n(X)$ will stand for $U^m_n(\mathcal{O}^{(n)})$.

Remark that $\mathbf{Glob}_\omega$ is the projective limit of the diagram

\[
\mathbf{Glob}_0 \leftarrow U_0^1 \mathbf{Glob}_1 \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow U_{n-1}^n \mathbf{Glob}_{n-1} \leftarrow \mathbf{Glob}_n \leftarrow \cdots
\]

14.1.2 Globes and spheres. As for any presheaf category, we get a Yoneda embedding

\[Y : \mathcal{O} \to \mathbf{Glob}_\omega\]

defined on objects by $Y(m)(n) = \mathcal{O}(m, n)$. For each $n \geq 0$, we call $n$-globe and denote by $\mathcal{O}_n$ the representable globular set $Y(n)$. The $n$-globe has exactly two $i$-cells in dimensions $0 \leq i < n$, one $n$-cell, and no $i$-cell for $i > n$. The sub-globular set of $\mathcal{O}_n$ having the same cells as $\mathcal{O}_n$ in all dimensions $i \neq n$ and no $n$-cell will be called the $n$-sphere, and denoted by $\partial \mathcal{O}_n$. Remark that $\partial \mathcal{O}_0$ is the initial globular set with no cells at all. Globes and spheres come with a family of canonical inclusion morphisms

\[i_n : \partial \mathcal{O}_n \to \mathcal{O}_n\]

which we shall encounter in numerous occasions. For example, the case $n = 2$ may be pictured as

\[
\{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \}, \quad \rightarrow \{\bullet \rightarrow \bullet \}.
\]
14.2 Strict \( n \)-categories

14.2.1 Definition. A strict \( \omega \)-category is given by a globular set \( C \) together with a family of partial binary composition operations \((*_i)_{i \in \mathbb{N}}\) and identity operations \((1^i)_i \in \mathbb{N}_{\geq 0}\) subject to the following conditions:

- if \( 0 \leq i < k \) and \( x, y \) are \( k \)-cells such that \( t_i(x) = s_i(y) \) (in which case we say that \( x \) and \( y \) are \( i \)-composable) there is a \( k \)-cell \( x *_i y \),
- if \( k > 0 \) and \( x \) is a \((k-1)\)-cell, there is a \( k \)-cell \( 1^k_x \), and more generally, if \( i \geq 0 \) and \( x \) is an \( i \)-cell, we may define recursively on \( k > i \) a \( k \)-cell \( 1^k_x \) by \( 1^k_x = 1^k_{x_{k-1}} \).

Compositions and units are subject to:

1. positional conditions prescribing the source and target of composites and units, namely
   - if \( 0 \leq i < j \), then \( s_j(x *_i y) = s_j(x) *_i s_j(y) \) and \( t_j(x *_i y) = t_j(x) *_i t_j(y) \),
     \[ s_j(x *_i y) = s_j(x) *_i s_j(y) \quad \text{and} \quad t_j(x *_i y) = t_j(x) *_i t_j(y), \]
   - if \( 0 \leq j < i \), then
     \[ s_j(x *_i y) = s_j(x) \quad \text{and} \quad t_j(x *_i y) = t_j(y), \]
   - if \( 0 \leq i < k \) and \( x \) is an \( i \)-cell, then
     \[ s_i(1^k_x) = x = t_i(1^k_x), \]

2. computational conditions of
   - associativity: if \( i < k \) and \( x, y, z \) are \( k \)-cells such that \( t_i(x) = s_i(y) \) and \( t_i(y) = s_i(z) \), then
     \[(x *_i y) *_i z = x *_i \left( (y *_i z) \right), \]
   - neutrality of units: if \( 0 \leq i < k \) and \( x \) is a \( k \)-cell, then
     \[ 1^k_{s_i(x)} *_i x = x = 1^k_{t_i(x)} *_i x, \]
   - exchange: if \( i < j < k \) and \( x, y, z, v \) are \( k \)-cells such that \( t_j(x) = s_j(y) \), \( t_j(z) = s_j(v) \) and \( t_i(x) = s_i(z) \), then also \( t_j(y) = s_j(v) \), and
     \[ (x *_j y) *_i \left( (z *_j v) \right) = (x *_i z) *_j \left( (y *_i v) \right), \]
   - compatibility of units: if \( 0 \leq i < j < k \) and \( x, y \) are \( i \)-composable \( j \)-cells, then
     \[ 1^k_{s_i s_j x} = 1^k_x *_i 1^k_y. \]
Let $C$, $D$ be two strict $\omega$-categories. An $\omega$-functor $f : C \to D$ is a morphism of the underlying globular sets which preserves the compositions and units. Strict $\omega$-categories and strict $\omega$-functors build a (large) category we denote by $\text{Cat}_\omega$. If we restrict the above construction to cells of dimension at most $n$, we get the category of strict $n$-categories, denoted by $\text{Cat}_n$.

From now on we will drop the adjective “strict” and we will speak of “$\omega$-categories” and “$n$-categories” when we mean “strict $\omega$-categories” and “strict $n$-categories”.

14.2.2 Remark. The structure of $n$-category is sometimes presented by the alternative set of operations and axioms described in Appendix D.

14.2.3 $\omega$-categories as models of a projective sketch. The above axioms for $\omega$-categories can be presented in diagrammatic form as follows.

For any globular set $X$ and $0 \leq i < n$, there is a pullback square in $\text{Set}$:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n \times X_i & \xrightarrow{s^n_i} & X_n \\
\downarrow{v^n_i} & & \downarrow{s^n_i} \\
X_n & \xrightarrow{t^n_i} & X_i \\
\end{array}
\]

The operations of compositions and units become maps:

\[s^n_i : X_n \times X_n \to X_n\]

and

\[1^n : X_i \to X_n\]

for $0 \leq i < n$.

The positional conditions for compositions amount to the commutation of the following diagrams:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n \times X_n & \xrightarrow{s^n_i} & X_n \\
\downarrow{s^n_j \times s^n_j} & & \downarrow{s^n_i} \\
X_j \times X_i & \xrightarrow{s^n_j} & X_j \\
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n \times X_n & \xrightarrow{s^n_i} & X_n \\
\downarrow{t^n_j \times s^n_j} & & \downarrow{t^n_i} \\
X_j \times X_i & \xrightarrow{t^n_j} & X_j \\
\end{array}
\]
for $0 \leq i < j < n$ and

\[
\begin{align*}
X_n \times X_n &\xrightarrow{s_i} X_n \\
X_n &\xrightarrow{\alpha} X_j \\
X_n &\xrightarrow{\beta} X_i \\

X_n \times X_n &\xrightarrow{s_i} X_n \\
X_n &\xrightarrow{\alpha} X_j \\
X_n &\xrightarrow{\beta} X_i
\end{align*}
\]

for $0 \leq j \leq i < n$.

As for units, if $0 \leq i < n$, the positional conditions amount to the commutations of

\[
\begin{align*}
X_n &\xleftarrow{1^n} X_i \\
1 &\xrightarrow{1} X_j \\
X_i &\xleftarrow{1^n} X_n \\
X_n &\xrightarrow{1^n} X_i
\end{align*}
\]

Now, each axiom is expressed by the commutation of a diagram in $\textbf{Set}$ involving arrows derived from the source, target, compositions and unit arrows by means of universal constructions.

– Associativity of compositions amounts to the commutation of

\[
\begin{align*}
X_n \times (X_n \times X_n) &\xrightarrow{s_i \times (s_i)} X_n \times X_n \\
(X_n \times X_n) \times X_n &\xrightarrow{(s_i \times X_n)} X_n \times X_n \\
X_n \times X_n &\xrightarrow{s_i} X_n
\end{align*}
\]

where $\alpha$ is the canonical bijection between both pullbacks.
Let $0 \leq i < j < n$. We build the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
(X_n \times X_n) \times (X_n \times X_n) \\
\downarrow \lambda \\
X_n \times X_n \\
\downarrow \nu_j \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\rho} 
\begin{array}{c}
X_n \\
\downarrow \nu_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\iota} 
\begin{array}{c}
X_n \\
\downarrow \iota_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\]

where both solid squares are pullbacks. There is a unique universal arrow $\lambda$ making the whole diagram commute. Similarly, by replacing the left projection $\nu_j$ by the right projection $\iota_i$, we get a universal arrow

\[
\rho : (X_n \times X_n) \times (X_n \times X_n) \to X_n \times X_n.
\]

Consider now the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
(X_n \times X_n) \times (X_n \times X_n) \\
\downarrow \lambda \\
X_n \times X_n \\
\downarrow \nu_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\rho} 
\begin{array}{c}
X_n \\
\downarrow \nu_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\iota} 
\begin{array}{c}
X_n \\
\downarrow \iota_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\]

The positional conditions on compositions and the globular relations ensure that the outer square commutes, whereas the small solid square is a pullback by definition. Therefore, we get a unique universal arrow $\theta$ as shown in the diagram.

Now the exchange rule amounts to the commutation of

\[
\begin{array}{c}
(X_n \times X_n) \times (X_n \times X_n) \\
\downarrow \lambda \\
X_n \\
\downarrow \nu_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\theta} 
\begin{array}{c}
X_n \\
\downarrow \nu_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\iota} 
\begin{array}{c}
X_n \\
\downarrow \iota_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
(X_n \times X_n) \\
\downarrow \nu_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\iota} 
\begin{array}{c}
X_n \\
\downarrow \iota_i \\
X_i \\
\end{array}
\]
– Let $0 \leq i < n$. The positional conditions on units imply that the following diagram of solid arrows commutes:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
X_n \\
\downarrow_{s^n} \\
X_i \\
\downarrow_{t^n} \\
X_i \\
\end{array} \xrightarrow{\iota} \begin{array}{c}
X_n \times X_n \\
\downarrow_{t^n} \times \downarrow_{t^n} \\
X_i \times X_i \\
\downarrow_{t^n} \\
X_i \\
\end{array} \xrightarrow{\pi_i} X_n
\]

Therefore, there is a unique universal arrow $\iota$ making the whole diagram commute. Now the first axiom for left units amounts to the fact that $\iota$ equalizes the pair $(r^n, s_i)$, that is, the commutation of

\[
X_n \xrightarrow{\iota} X_n \times X_n \xrightarrow{\pi_i} X_n.
\]

The first axiom for right units is treated similarly.

– Finally, the compatibility of compositions with units amounts to the commutation of the following diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
X_m \times X_m \\
\downarrow_{X_i} \times \downarrow_{X_i} \\
X_n \times X_n \\
\downarrow_{X_i} \\
X_n \\
\end{array} \xrightarrow{s_i} \begin{array}{c}
X_m \\
\downarrow_{X_i} \\
X_n \\
\downarrow_{X_i} \\
X_n \\
\end{array}
\]

whenever $0 \leq i < m < n$.

**14.2.4 Proposition.** The category $\text{Cat}_\omega$ is a category of models of a projective sketch.

**Proof.** The above diagrammatic presentation of the axioms of $\omega$-categories defines a sketch whose models are actual $\omega$-categories. $\square$

**14.2.5 Corollary.** The category $\text{Cat}_\omega$ is complete and cocomplete.

**Proof.** This follows from the previous result by using Proposition G.1.10. $\square$

**14.2.6 Truncation functors.** As for globular sets, whenever $0 \leq m < n$, we get truncation functors

\[
U_m^n : \text{Cat}_n \to \text{Cat}_m
\]
14.2 Strict \( n \)-categories

and

\[ U_n : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_n \]

making all triangles

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Cat}_\omega & \xrightarrow{U_n} & \text{Cat}_n \\
\downarrow{U_m} & & \downarrow{U_m} \\
\text{Cat}_n & \xleftarrow{U_n} & \text{Cat}_m \\
\end{array}
\]

commute.

Here again, \( \text{Cat}_\omega \) appears as the projective limit of the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Cat}_0 & \xleftarrow{U_1^0} & \text{Cat}_1 \\
& \cdots & \\
& \xleftarrow{U_n^m} & \text{Cat}_n \\
& \cdots & \\
\end{array}
\]

Remark that, by abuse of language, we use the same notation for truncation functors among \( n \)-categories and among \( n \)-globular sets.

By construction, \( \omega \)-categories are globular sets with structure, whence a forgetful functor

\[ V : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Glob}_\omega \]

which restricts for each \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) to

\[ V_n : \text{Cat}_n \to \text{Glob}_n. \]

These forgetful functors commute with the above truncation functors, that is, the following diagram commutes whenever \( 0 \leq m < n \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Cat}_n & \xrightarrow{U_n^m} & \text{Cat}_m \\
\downarrow{V_n} & & \downarrow{V_m} \\
\text{Glob}_n & \xleftarrow{U_n^m} & \text{Glob}_m \\
\end{array}
\]

(14.3)

14.2.7 Proposition. The forgetful functor \( V : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Glob}_\omega \) admits a left adjoint \( F : \text{Glob}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_\omega \). Likewise, for each \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), \( V_n : \text{Cat}_n \to \text{Glob}_n \) admits a left adjoint \( F_n : \text{Glob}_n \to \text{Cat}_n \).

Proof. The categories \( \text{Glob}_\omega \) and \( \text{Cat}_\omega \) are categories of models of projective sketches \( S \) and \( S' \), respectively, whereas the functor \( V \) is the one induced on models by the inclusion morphism \( S \hookrightarrow S' \). Therefore \( V \) admits a left adjoint (see Theorem G.1.8). The same arguments hold for \( \text{Glob}_n \) and \( \text{Cat}_n \), where \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). \( \square \)
14.2.8 Proposition. The forgetful functor $V : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Glob}_\omega$ preserves filtered colimits.

Proof. This is a general property of functors induced by a morphism of projective sketches involving only finite cones (see [26, Chapter 4, Theorem 4.4]). Concretely, the colimit $C$ of a filtered diagram in $\text{Cat}_\omega$ is obtained by taking the colimit $X$ of the underlying diagram in $\text{Glob}_\omega$ and defining a structure of $\omega$-category on $X$ in the obvious way, so that $V(C) = X$. Thus, the stronger statement that $V$ creates filtered colimits holds. □

14.2.9 Globes and spheres. By abuse of notation, the free $\omega$-category $F(\mathbb{O}_n)$ generated by $\mathbb{O}_n$ will still be denoted by $\mathbb{O}_n$ and called the $n$-globe. Likewise we denote by $\partial \mathbb{O}_n$ the free $\omega$-category $F(\partial \mathbb{O}_n)$, and call it the $n$-sphere. Remark that, in the case of globes and spheres, the free functor only adds new identity cells to the ones already present in the globular globes and spheres.

For any $\omega$-category $C$, the set of $n$-globes of $C$ is the hom-set $\text{Cat}_\omega(\mathbb{O}_n, C)$, which amounts to the set $C_n$ of $n$-cells in $C$. Likewise, the set of $n$-spheres of $C$ is the hom-set $\text{Cat}_\omega(\partial \mathbb{O}_{n+1}, C)$, which amounts to the set of pairs of parallel $n$-cells in $C$, that is, parallel in the underlying globular set.

14.3 Basic examples

Let us first mention a few immediate examples of $\omega$-categories.

– Sets: as $\text{Cat}_0 = \text{Glob}_0 = \text{Set}$ and $\text{Cat}_n$ naturally embeds in $\text{Cat}_\omega$ (see §14.4.6 below), any set $S$ can be viewed as an $\omega$-category, precisely the $\omega$-category $C$ whose 0-cells are the elements of $S$ and whose $n$-cells, $n > 0$, are all of the form $1^n_x$ for $x \in S$.

– Monoids: any monoid $M$, being a 1-category with a unique object, can be seen as an $\omega$-category whose $n$-cells are identities for all $n \geq 2$.

– Commutative monoids: to any commutative monoid $(A, +)$ we may associate the $\omega$-category $C$ defined by $C_0 = \{\ast\}$, $C_1 = \{1^1_1\}$, $C_2 = A$ and having only identity cells in higher dimensions. The source and target maps are uniquely determined, whereas compositions are defined for any pair $(u, v)$ of 2-cells by $u \ast_0 v = u \ast_1 v = u + v$. The axioms of $\omega$-categories are easily checked. Conversely, for any $\omega$-category $C$ such that $C_0 = \{\ast\}$, $C_1 = \{1^1_1\}$ and $C_n$ has only identity cells for $n > 2$, the $\ast_0$ and $\ast_1$ compositions on $C_2$ coincide and are commutative operations, so that $(C_2, \ast_0)$ (or $(C_2, \ast_1)$) becomes an abelian monoid.
14.4 More properties of Cat\(_\omega\)

14.4.1 Local presentability. By definition, the category Glob\(_\omega\) of globular sets is a category of presheaves, so that limits and colimits are computed pointwise. On the other hand, we already noticed that Cat\(_\omega\) is the category of models of a projective sketch and is hence complete and cocomplete (see Corollary 14.2.5). The forgetful functor V : Cat\(_\omega\) → Glob\(_\omega\), being a right adjoint, preserves limits. Thus limits in Cat\(_\omega\) are computed as in Glob\(_\omega\). Colimits however are hard to compute, even in Cat\(_1\).

14.4.2 Enrichment. For each \(n \geq 0\), the category Cat\(_n\) has a monoidal structure defined by its cartesian product and terminal object. Thus, the notion of Cat\(_n\)-enriched category makes sense: in fact, Cat\(_n\)-enriched categories are just \((n+1)\)-categories. As for \(n = \omega\), it turns out that Cat\(_\omega\) is enriched over itself.

14.4.3 Proposition. The forgetful functor V : Cat\(_\omega\) → Glob\(_\omega\) is monadic.

Proof. First remark that, for any \(0 \leq i < n\), the correspondence

\[ X \mapsto X_n \times X_i \]

is functorial from Glob\(_\omega\) to Set. Indeed, the Yoneda embedding yields a pushout

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\mathcal{O}_i \ar[r]^{Y(\tau^n_i)} & \mathcal{O}_n \\
\mathcal{O}_n \ar[u]^{Y(\sigma^n_i)} \ar[r] & \mathcal{O}_n + \mathcal{O}_n \ar[u]
\end{array}
\]

in Glob\(_\omega\), and we get a natural bijection

\[ X_n \times X_n \simeq \text{Glob}_\omega(\mathcal{O}_n + \mathcal{O}_n, X) \]

so that our correspondence is the object part of the (representable) functor

\[ \text{Glob}_\omega(\mathcal{O}_n + \mathcal{O}_n, -) : \text{Glob}_\omega \to \text{Set}. \]

Now, by Proposition 14.2.7, the functor V admits a left adjoint F. By Beck’s monadicity theorem [261], it is sufficient to prove that V creates absolute coequalizers. Thus, let C, D be \(\omega\)-categories, \(f, g : C \to D\) a pair of morphisms, \(X = VC, Y = VD\) the underlying globular sets. Suppose \(w : Y \to Z\) is an absolute coequalizer of the pair \(u = Vf, v = Vg\). We must prove the existence of a unique \(\omega\)-category \(E\), and a unique morphism \(h : D \to E\) such that

- \(VE = Z\).
and check that $h$ is the coequalizer of the pair $(f, g)$ in $\text{Cat}_\omega$.

Let us first define a structure of $\omega$-category on the globular set $Z$. By hypothesis, the diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{u} & Y & \xrightarrow{w} & Z \\
\downarrow{v} & & \downarrow{v'} & & \\
\end{array}
$$

is an absolute coequalizer. Thus, by applying the functor $\text{Glob}_\omega(O_n, O_n, -)$ defined in the preliminary remark, we still get a coequalizer, now in $\text{Set}$:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n \times X_n & \xrightarrow{u'} & Y_n \times Y_n & \xrightarrow{w'} & Z_n \times Z_n, \\
\end{array}
$$

Likewise by applying the functor $\text{Glob}_\omega(O_n, -)$, we get another coequalizer diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n & \xrightarrow{u_n} & Y_n & \xrightarrow{w_n} & Z_n. \\
\end{array}
$$

Consider now the following diagram:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n \times X_n & \xrightarrow{u' \circ v'} & Y_n \times Y_n & \xrightarrow{w' \circ v'} & Z_n \times Z_n \\
\downarrow{u_n} & & \downarrow{u_n} & & \downarrow{w_n} \circ (\ast_i) \\
X_n & \xrightarrow{u_n \circ v_n} & Y_n & \xrightarrow{w_n} & Z_n. \\
\end{array}
$$

As $u$ and $v$ come from morphisms in $\text{Cat}_\omega$, the squares on $u'$, $u_n$ and $v'$, $v_n$ commute. Therefore, $w_n \circ (\ast_i)$ coequalizes the pair $(u', v')$ and there exists a unique map from $Z_n \times Z_n$ to $Z_n$ making the right-hand square commute. This map defines the $i$-composition among $n$-cells in $Z$, still denoted by $\ast_i$. By a similar argument we may define the unit map $1^n : Z_{n-1} \rightarrow Z_n$.

It remains to check that the compositions and units just defined on $Z$ satisfy the axioms of $\omega$-categories. This amounts to check the commutation of all diagrams expressing these axioms. We shall treat the axiom of associativity in detail, and leave the remaining axioms as exercises. By applying appropriate
functors to the coequalizer diagram (14.4), we get the following diagram in \( \text{Set} \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
\quad & (X_n \times X_i) \times X_n & \overset{w''}{\to} (Y_n \times Y_i) \times Y_n & \overset{w''}{\to} (Z_n \times Z_i) \times Z_n \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
X_n \times (X_n \times X_i) & \overset{u''}{\to} Y_n \times (Y_n \times Y_i) & \overset{v''}{\to} (Z_n \times Z_i) \times (Z_n \times Z_i) & \overset{c'}{\to} \\
\quad & X_n \times X_i & \overset{u'}{\to} Y_n \times Y_i & \overset{v'}{\to} (Z_n \times Z_i) \times Z_n \\
\quad & X_n \times X_i & \overset{u_n}{\to} Y_n \times Y_i & \overset{v_n}{\to} (Z_n \times Z_i) \times Z_n \\
\end{array}
\]

where \( a = X_n \times (\ast_i) \), \( a' = (\ast_i) \times X_n \) and \( b, b', c, c' \) are defined accordingly.

Because the coequalizer (14.4) is absolute, all horizontal lines are also coequalizer diagrams. Now \( w_n \circ (\ast_i) \circ b \) coequalizes the pair \((u'', v'')\), therefore

\[
(\ast_i) \circ c \circ u'' = w_n \circ (\ast_i) \circ b . \tag{14.5}
\]

On the other hand, by naturality of \( \alpha \),

\[
(\ast_i) \circ c' \circ \alpha_Z \circ u''' = (\ast_i) \circ c' \circ u''' \circ \alpha_Y = (\ast_i) \circ u' \circ b' \circ \alpha_Y = w_n \circ (\ast_i) \circ b' \circ \alpha_Y .
\]

and by the associativity of \( \ast_i \) on \( Y \), the latter expression is equal to \( w_n \circ (\ast_i) \circ b \) so that we get

\[
(\ast_i) \circ c' \circ \alpha_Z \circ u''' = w_n \circ (\ast_i) \circ b . \tag{14.6}
\]

Now as \( u''' \) is a coequalizer, (14.5) and (14.6) imply

\[
(\ast_i) \circ c' \circ \alpha_Z = (\ast_i) \circ c .
\]

This is the commutation of the rightmost pentagon and \( \ast_i \) is associative on \( Z \). The other axioms are proved in a similar way. Thus we have defined an \( \omega \)-category \( E \) with underlying globular set \( Z = VE \).

Now the commutation of the square involving \( w_n \) and \( w' \) in the above diagram expresses the preservation of the composition \( \ast_i \) by \( w \). The preservation of units holds by a similar argument. Therefore, we get a unique morphism \( h : D \to E \) in \( \text{Cat}_\omega \) such that \( Vh = w \).
Finally, we must show that the diagram

\[
C \xrightarrow{f} D \xrightarrow{g} \frac{h}{E}
\]

is itself a coequalizer in \( \text{Cat}_{\omega} \). Thus, let \( K \) be an \( \omega \)-category and \( k : D \to K \) a morphism such that \( kf = kg \). We have to prove the existence of a unique morphism \( \ell : E \to K \) such that \( \ell h = k \). Now, if \( T = VF \) and \( t = Vk \), there is a unique morphism \( s : Z \to T \) such that \( sw = t \):

\[
\begin{array}{c}
X \xrightarrow{u} Y \xrightarrow{w} Z \\
\downarrow t \quad \downarrow s \\
\downarrow \quad \downarrow \\
T 
\end{array}
\]

We look for an \( \ell \) such that \( V\ell = s \). Uniqueness is obvious, and existence reduces to the observation that \( s \) preserves compositions and units. As for compositions, consider the following diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
Y_n \times_{Y_i} Y_n & \xrightarrow{w'} & Z_n \times_{Z_i} Z_n & \xrightarrow{s'} & T_n \times_{T_i} T_n \\
\downarrow s_i & & \downarrow s_i & & \downarrow s_i \\
Y_n & \xrightarrow{w_n} & Z_n & \xrightarrow{s_n} & T_n.
\end{array}
\]

The left-hand square commutes because \( w = Vh \), and the outer square commutes because \( sw = t \) and \( t = Vk \). But \( w' \) is a coequalizer map, whence the right-hand square also commutes: this shows that \( s \) preserves compositions, as required. A similar argument proves the preservation of units, and we get the unique morphism \( \ell : E \to K \) such that \( s = V\ell \). □

14.4.4 Remark. Instead of using Beck’s criterion to prove the monadicity of \( \text{Cat}_{\omega} \) over \( \text{Glob}_{\omega} \), we could have used a less known criterion in terms of sketches due to Lair. Precisely, globular sets are models of a projective sketch \( S \) with underlying category \( \mathcal{C}^{op} \) and no cones, whereas \( \omega \)-categories are models of a projective sketch \( S' \), with an obvious sketch inclusion \( S \hookrightarrow S' \), inducing the forgetful functor \( V : \text{Cat}_{\omega} \to \text{Glob}_{\omega} \) between the corresponding categories of models. Now (i) the base of each cone of \( S' \) already belongs to \( S \) and (ii) each object of \( S' \) not in \( S \) is the tip of at least one cone of \( S' \). By Theorem G.1.11, these two conditions ensure the monadicity of \( V \).

14.4.5 Remark. Recall that monadicity is not transitive. For example, the forgetful functor \( \text{Cat} \to \text{Graph} \) is monadic, as well as the forgetful functor \( \text{Graph} \to \text{Set}^2 \) taking the graph \( X_0 \xrightarrow{f} X_1 \) to the pair \( (X_0, X_1) \). However
the composite $\text{Cat} \to \text{Set}^2$ is not monadic. Consider in fact the following categories:

- the category $C$, freely generated on the graph having a set of five vertices $V_C = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and a set of two edges $E_C = \{a : 0 \to 1; b : 3 \to 4\}$,
- the subcategory $D$ of $C$ obtained by removing the isolated vertex 2.

Define two morphisms $u, v : C \to D$ such that $u$ and $v$ are both retractions of the inclusion $D \to C$, $u(2) = 1$ and $v(2) = 3$. We leave it as an exercise to check that the forgetful functor $\text{Cat} \to \text{Set}^2$ takes the pair $(u, v)$ to a pair $(f, g)$ whose coequalizer $e$ in $\text{Set}^2$ is split, but the coequalizer $w$ of $(u, v)$ in $\text{Cat}$ is not sent to $e$. The generating graphs for $C, D$ and of the coequalizer $E$ of the pair $(u, v)$ are represented in the picture below:

14.4.6 Adjunctions. If $0 \leq m < n$, there is a canonical inclusion functor

$I^m_n : \text{Cat}_m \to \text{Cat}_n$

taking an $m$-category $C$ to the $n$-category $D = I^m_n(C)$ such that $U^m_m(D) = C$ and all $i$-cells of $D$ are units for $m < i \leq n$. Likewise, we get a canonical inclusion

$I^m : \text{Cat}_m \to \text{Cat}_\omega$.

Therefore, each $m$-category may be naturally identified with an $n$-category for any $m < n \leq \omega$.

The functor $I^m_n$ (resp. $I^m$) has a right adjoint, namely the truncation functor $U^m_m$ (resp. $U_m$).

Now $I^m_n$ also admits a left adjoint

$\overline{U}^m_n : \text{Cat}_n \to \text{Cat}_m$.

Let $C$ be an $n$-category and $D = \overline{U}^m_n(C)$. Up to dimension $m - 1$, $D$ coincides with $U^{m-1}_m(C)$, whereas $D_m$ is the quotient of $C_m$ modulo the congruence generated by $C_{m+1}$. Precisely, two parallel $m$-cells $x, y$ in $C_m$ are congruent modulo $C_{m+1}$ if and only if there is a sequence $x_0 = x, x_1, \ldots, x_p = y$ of $m$-cells of $C_m$ and a sequence $z_1, \ldots, z_p$ of $(m + 1)$-cells in $C_{m+1}$ such that, for each $i = 1, \ldots, p$, either $z_i = x_{i-1} \to x_i$ or $z_i : x_i \to x_{i-1}$. Note that the
source and target maps, as well as compositions on \( C_m \) are compatible with the congruence relation. Therefore, \( D \) is a well-defined \( m \)-category, as expected. Also, the action of \( U^m \) on morphisms is immediate, and clearly functorial.

Likewise, \( I^m \) admits a left adjoint \( \overline{U}_m : \text{Cat}_{\omega} \to \text{Cat}_m \).

Let us finally remark that the truncation functor \( U^m \) (resp. \( U_n \)) also admits a right adjoint \( I^m : \text{Cat}_m \to \text{Cat}_n \) (resp. \( I^n : \text{Cat}_m \to \text{Cat}_n \)): let \( C \) be an \( m \)-category, \( D = I^m(C) \) is the \( n \)-category such that (i) \( U^m(D) = C \), (ii) for each pair \( x, y \) of parallel \( m \)-cells in \( D_m \), there is exactly one \((m + 1)\)-cell \( z : x \to y \) in \( D_{m+1} \) and (iii) all \( i \)-cells of \( D \) are units whenever \( i > m + 1 \). The \( \omega \)-category \( I^m(C) \) is defined accordingly. To sum up, omitting the indices, we get a series of adjunctions between inclusions and truncation functors:

\[
\overline{U} \dashv I \dashv U \dashv L.
\]

### 14.5 \((n, p)\)-categories

#### 14.5.1 Invertible cells

Let \( 0 \leq i < k \leq n \leq \omega \). Let \( C \) be an \( n \)-category and \( u \) a \( k \)-cell of \( C \). A \( k \)-cell \( v \) of \( C \) is a \(*_i\)-inverse to \( u \) if \( v \) is left and right \( i \)-composable with \( u \) and \( u *_1 v = 1^k_{s_1(u)} \) and \( v *_1 u = 1^k_{t_1(u)} \). If such a \( k \)-cell \( v \) exists, it is necessarily unique. In that case, we call \( u \) an \(*_i\)-invertible \( k \)-cell. A \( k \)-cell \( u \) is called simply invertible if it is \(*_{k-1}\)-invertible.

#### 14.5.2 Lemma. If a 2-cell is \(*_0\)-invertible, then it is also \(*_1\)-invertible.

**Proof.** Let \( u \) be a \(*_0\)-invertible 2-cell and \( v \) its \(*_0\)-inverse, so that \( u *_0 v = 1^2_{s_0(u)} \) and \( v *_0 u = 1^2_{t_0(u)} \). This implies that the 1-cells \( s_1(u) \) and \( t_1(u) \) are \(*_0\)-invertible, with \( s_1(v) \) and \( t_1(v) \) as respective \(*_0\)-inverses. Let

\[
v' = 1^2_{t_1(u)} *_0 v *_0 1^2_{s_1(u)}.
\]

We claim that \( v' \) is a \(*_1\)-inverse to \( u \). In fact,

\[
s_1(v') = t_1(u) *_0 s_1(v) *_0 s_1(u) = t_1(u)
\]

so that \( u \) and \( v' \) are \(*_1\)-composable. Moreover, by using the exchange rule

\[
\begin{align*}
\nonumber u *_1 v' &= (u *_0 1^2_{s_1(v)} *_0 1^2_{s_1(u)} ) *_1 (1^2_{t_1(u)} *_0 v *_0 1^2_{s_1(u)}) \\
&= (u *_1 1^2_{t_1(u)} ) *_0 (1^2_{s_1(v)} *_1 v) *_0 1^2_{s_1(u)} \\
&= u *_0 v *_0 1^2_{s_1(u)} \\
&= 1^2_{s_1(u)}.
\end{align*}
\]

Likewise, one checks that \( v' *_1 u = 1^2_{t_1(u)} \). \( \square \)
14.5.3 Corollary. Let \( i \leq j < k \). Each \( *_i \)-invertible \( k \)-cell is also \( *_j \)-invertible.

Proof. Let \( i \leq j < k \leq n \), and let \( C \) be an \( n \)-category. We define a 2-category \( D \) by \( D_0 = C_i, D_1 = C_j, D_2 = C_k \) with the obvious source and target maps, units and compositions induced by \( C \). The statement then immediately follows by applying Lemma 14.5.2 to the 2-cells of \( D \). \( \square \)

14.5.4 Definition. Let \( 0 \leq p \leq n \leq \omega \). The category \( \text{Cat}_{n,p} \) is the full subcategory of \( \text{Cat}_n \) having as objects the \( n \)-categories whose \( k \)-cells are invertible for all \( k > p \). These objects are called \( (n, p) \)-categories. In particular, the objects of \( \text{Cat}_{n,0} \) are the \( n \)-groupoids, where \( k \)-cells are invertible for all \( k > 0 \). We also denote \( \text{Cat}_{n,0} \) by \( \text{Gpd}_n \).

14.5.5 Proposition. Let \( p \leq i < k \leq n \) and let \( C \) be an \( (n, p) \)-category. Each \( k \)-cell of \( C \) is \( *_i \)-invertible.

Proof. As in the proof of Corollary 14.5.3, the statement reduces to the fact that, in each 2-category \( C \) all whose 1-cells are \( *_0 \)-invertible, any 2-cell \( u \) is \( *_1 \)-invertible if and only if is is \( *_0 \)-invertible. The “if” direction follows from Lemma 14.5.2. Conversely, suppose that all 1-cells are invertible, and let \( u \) be a \( *_1 \)-inverted 2-cell, with \( *_1 \)-inverse \( v \). By hypothesis, \( s_1(u) \) and \( t_1(u) \) have \( *_0 \)-inverses \( v_0^r \) and \( v_0^l \) respectively. One easily checks that the required \( *_0 \)-inverse to \( u \) is given by

\[
{u}' \circ 1_{v_0^r} \circ *_0 \circ 1_{v_0^l} = 1_{v_0} \circ *_0 \circ 1_{v_0}.
\]

(see also [16, §1.3.]). \( \square \)

14.5.6 Proposition. For each \( n \) and \( p \) such that \( 0 \leq p \leq n \leq \omega \), the category \( \text{Cat}_{n,p} \) is complete, cocomplete and monadic over \( \text{Glob}_n \). Moreover, the inclusion functor \( \text{Cat}_{n,p} \to \text{Cat}_n \) admits a left adjoint.

Proof. Like \( \text{Cat}_n \), the category \( \text{Cat}_{n,p} \) is the category of models of a projective sketch \( S_{n,p} \), hence it is complete and cocomplete. The inclusion functor \( \text{Cat}_{n,p} \to \text{Cat}_n \) is induced by the morphism of corresponding sketches \( S_n \to S_{n,p} \), hence admits a left adjoint. Finally the monadicity of \( \text{Cat}_{n,p} \) over \( \text{Glob}_n \) is proved as in Proposition 14.4.3. \( \square \)
The notion of 2-polygraph, already introduced in Chapter 2, first appears in [333] under the name of *computad*, as an essential tool in proving the existence of limits in 2-categories. Although its relevance to rewriting theory was recognized by Eilenberg and Street from the very beginning [121], this point of view is not explicitly mentioned in the literature until early 1990s. The general notion of *n*-computad explicitly appears in [304], and independently in [72] and [73], under the name of polygraph. We adopt here Burroni’s presentation and terminology. The source of Burroni’s approach can be traced back in his work on graphical algebras [71], where he presents a “concept of dimension in formal languages”. Let us mention that [28] introduces a wide generalization of the notion of *n*-computad attached to a finitary monad $T$ on globular sets, presented in more details in Chapter 18. We deal in this chapter with the particular case where the monad $T$ comes from the adjunction between $\text{Cat}_\omega$ and $\text{Glob}_\infty$.

### 15.1 Main definitions

Throughout this section, we denote by $n$ a natural number.

**15.1.1 Cellular extensions.** Given an *n*-category $C$, a **cellular extension of $C$** is a family

$$ (X_i : \partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1} \rightarrow C)_{i \in I} $$

of *n*-spheres in $C$ indexed by a set $I$. This amounts to a family of pairs of parallel $n$-cells in $C$. Equivalently, it can also be seen as an $\omega$-functor

$$ X : \bigsqcup_{i \in I} \partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1} \rightarrow C. $$
15.1 Main definitions

Note that, in order for $X$ to make sense, we identify the $n$-category $C$ with its image in $\text{Cat}_n$ by the inclusion functor defined in §14.4.6. A morphism

$$f : (C, (X_i)_{i \in I}) \to (D, (Y_j)_{j \in J})$$

between two cellular extensions of $n$-categories consists of a pair $(g, h)$, where $g : C \to D$ is a morphism in $\text{Cat}_n$ and $h : I \to J$ is a map such that, for each $i \in I$, $g \circ X_i = Y_{h(i)}$. We write $\text{Cat}_n^+$ for the resulting category. More abstractly, the category $\text{Cat}_n^+$ is the pullback of $\text{Cat}_n$ and $\text{Glob}_{n+1}$ over $\text{Glob}_n$ in $\text{CAT}$ (which denotes the category of possibly large categories and functors):

$\text{Cat}_n^+ \longleftarrow \text{Glob}_{n+1}$

$\downarrow$  $\downarrow$

$\text{Cat}_n \longrightarrow \text{Glob}_n$.

In the above diagram, the forgetful functor $V_n$ and the truncation functor $U_{n+1}^n$ are those defined in Chapter 14, and the forgetful functor from $\text{Cat}_n^+$ to $\text{Cat}_n$ takes a cellular extension $(C, X)$ to the $n$-category $C$. Finally, the horizontal dotted arrow takes a cellular extension $(C, X)$ to the $(n+1)$-globular set extending $V_n(C)$ with the set of $(n+1)$-cells determined by $X$.

15.1.2 Freely generated category. Consider now the forgetful functor

$$W_n : \text{Cat}_{n+1} \to \text{Cat}_n^+$$

which to an $(n+1)$-category $C$ associates the pair $(U_{n+1}^n(C), (X_x)_{x \in C_{n+1}})$ where for each cell $x \in C_{n+1}$, $X_x$ is the $n$-sphere $(s_n(x), t_n(x))$. This functor $W_n$ is in fact the universal arrow from $\text{Cat}_{n+1}$ to $\text{Cat}_n^+$ resulting from the commutation of the diagram

$\text{Cat}_{n+1} \longleftarrow \text{Glob}_{n+1}$

$\downarrow \quad \downarrow$

$\text{Cat}_n \longrightarrow \text{Glob}_n$.

and the pullback property of (15.1).
15.1.3 Proposition. The functor $W_n$ admits a left adjoint $L_n$:

Proof. Let $C$ be an $n$-category and $(X_i : \partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1} \to C)_{i \in I}$ a cellular extension, so that $(C, X)$ is an object of $\mathbf{Cat}_n$. By considering $C$, $\partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1}$ and $\mathcal{O}_{n+1}$ as $(n+1)$-categories, and remembering that $\mathbf{Cat}_{n+1}$ is cocomplete, we define $L_n(C, X)$ as the pushout given by the following diagram in $\mathbf{Cat}_{n+1}$:

This construction yields a functor $L_n : \mathbf{Cat}_n^+ \to \mathbf{Cat}_{n+1}$. We claim that $L_n$ is left adjoint to $W_n$. Consider in fact $(C, X)$ an object of $\mathbf{Cat}_n^+$, $D$ an $(n+1)$-category, and $f : (C, X) \to W_n(D)$ a morphism in $\mathbf{Cat}_n^+$. Recall that $f$ is a pair $(g, h)$ where $g : C \to U_n(D)$ is an $n$-functor and $h : X \to D_{n+1}$ is a map preserving the globular structure. This amounts to a commutative diagram in $\mathbf{Cat}_{n+1}$ of the form

where $\check{g}$ and $\check{h}$ are the $(n+1)$-functors built from $g$ and $h$ respectively. The pushout property then gives a unique morphism $f^* : L_n(C, X) \to D$ making
15.1 Main definitions

the following diagram commutative:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\coprod_{i \in I} \partial \triangledown_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{X} & C \\
\coprod_{i \in I} \triangledown_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{L_n(C, X)} & D \\
\end{array}
\]

The correspondence \( f \mapsto f^{*} \) is then a natural isomorphism

\[
\text{Cat}^{n}_{\mathbf{L}}((C, X), W_{n}(D)) \xrightarrow{\cong} \text{Cat}^{n+1}(L_{n}(C, X), D),
\]

which ends the proof. \( \square \)

15.1.4 Remark. There are several approaches to the construction of the above functor \( L_{n} \). On the abstract side, its existence comes from the fact that \( W_{n} \) is a limit and filtered colimit preserving functor between locally presentable categories, see [142, 14.6], [26, Theorem 4.1] or [2, 1.66]. More concretely, a purely syntactic construction of \( L_{n} \) based on a type system is given in [279]. An alternative construction is given in Appendix D.

Given a cellular extension \((C, X)\) of an \( n \)-category \( C \), we call \( L_{n}(C, X) \) the freely generated \((n+1)\)-category on this extension, and denote it by \( C[X] \). In practice, the universal property of \( C[X] \) will be used by applying the following lemma.

15.1.5 Lemma. Let \((C, (X_{i}))_{i \in I}\) be a cellular extension of an \( n \)-category \( C \). For every \((n+1)\)-category \( D \), every morphism \( g : C \to U_{n+1}^{n+1}(D) \) of \( \text{Cat}_{\mathbf{n}} \) and every map \( h : I \to D_{n+1} \) making \((g, h)\) a morphism of cellular extensions, there exists a unique morphism \( \overline{g} : C[X] \to D \) in \( \text{Cat}_{n+1} \) such that \( W_{n}(\overline{g}) = (g, h) \).

Proof. The statement of the lemma is a mere rephrasing of the fact that \( L_{n} \) is left adjoint to \( W_{n} \). \( \square \)

15.1.6 Quotient category. For any cellular extension \((C, X)\) of an \( n \)-category \( C \), the quotient \( n \)-category \( C/X \) is the \( n \)-category obtained from \( C \) by identifying \( n \)-cells under the smallest congruence (with respect to compositions and identities) containing all spheres \((x, y)\) in \( X \). More precisely, \( C/X \) is nothing but \( \overline{U}_{n+1}(C[X]) \) were \( \overline{U} \) is the truncation functor already described in §14.4.6.

15.1.7 \( n \)-polygraphs. We already gave an explicit description of \( n \)-polygraphs for \( 0 \leq n \leq 3 \) in previous chapters. We now turn to the general definition. Thus,
the category $\text{Pol}_n$ of $n$-polygraphs is defined by induction on $n$, together with a functor $F_n : \text{Pol}_n \to \text{Cat}_n$.

- The category $\text{Pol}_0$ is $\text{Set} = \text{Cat}_0$ and $F_0 = 1$.
- Given $\text{Pol}_n$ and $F_n : \text{Pol}_n \to \text{Cat}_n$, the category $\text{Pol}_{n+1}$ is defined by the following pullback in $\text{CAT}$

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Pol}_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{J_n} & \text{Cat}_n \\
U_{n+1} & \downarrow & \\
\text{Pol}_n & \xrightarrow{F_n} & \text{Cat}_n,
\end{array}
\]

whereas $F_{n+1}$ is $L_n J_n$:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Pol}_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{J_n} & \text{Cat}_n^+ \\
U_{n+1} & \downarrow & \\
\text{Cat}_n & \xrightarrow{F_{n+1}} & \text{Cat}_{n+1}.
\end{array}
\]

More explicitly, an $(n+1)$-polygraph $P^{(n+1)}$ is a pair $(P^{(n)}, X)$ where $P^{(n)}$ is an $n$-polygraph and $X$ is a cellular extension of the $n$-category $F_n(P^{(n)})$. The first projection of the pullback yields a truncation functor $\text{Pol}_{n+1} \to \text{Pol}_n$ we still denote by $U_{n+1}$ as in the case of $n$-globular sets and $n$-categories. Note also that the following square commutes:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Pol}_n & \xrightarrow{U_{n+1}} & \text{Pol}_{n+1} \\
\xrightarrow{F_n} & & \xrightarrow{F_{n+1}} \\
\text{Cat}_n & \xrightarrow{U_{n+1}} & \text{Cat}_{n+1}.
\end{array}
\]

For each $n$-polygraph $P$ and $k < n$, the polygraph $U_{k}^{*} \circ \cdots \circ U_{n-1}^{*} (P)$ will be denoted by $P_{<k}$. Thus, the data defining an $n$-polygraph $P$ may be displayed in the following diagram in $\text{Set}$:

\[
\begin{array}{cccccccc}
P_0 & P_1 & P_2 & \cdots & P_{n-2} & P_{n-1} & P_n \\
\downarrow s_0 & \downarrow s_1 & \downarrow s_2 & \cdots & \downarrow s_{n-2} & \downarrow s_{n-1} & \downarrow s_n \\
P_0' & P_1' & P_2' & \cdots & P_{n-2}' & P_{n-1}' & P_n'
\end{array}
\]

where, for each $0 \leq k < n-1$, $s_k^* \circ i_{k+1} = s_k$ and $t_k^* \circ i_{k+1} = t_k$. Also, at each level $k \leq n$, $k > 0$, we add a new set $P_k$ of $k$-generators together with source and target maps

$s_{k-1}, t_{k-1} : P_k \to P_{k-1}$.
15.1 Main definitions

such that
\[ s'_{k-2} \circ s_{k-1} = s'_{k-2} \circ t_{k-1} = t'_{k-2} \circ t_{k-1} \quad (15.2) \]

for \( k > 2 \), thus defining a \( k \)-cellular extension of the \((k-1)\)-category \( P^*_k \) already defined at the previous level. The vertical map \( i_k \) is the natural inclusion of the set \( P_k \) of \( k \)-generators into the set \( P^*_k \) of \( k \)-cells of the free \( k \)-category on the cellular extension of \( P^*_k \) by \( s_{k-1}, t_{k-1} : P_k \to P^*_k \). Formally, \( i_k \) is the \( k \)-dimensional component of the unit of the monad \( W_{k-1}L_{k-1} \) on this cellular extension. Concretely, the cells in \( P^*_k \) are all formal compositions of \( k \)-generators in \( P_k \) and units on cells in \( P^*_k \), quotiented by the axioms of \( k \)-categories.

15.1.8 Proposition. Let \( P \) be an \( n \)-polygraph and let \( 0 < k < n \). Suppose that \( A \subseteq P^*_k \) is a subset of \( P^*_k \) such that

\begin{itemize}
  \item \( i_k(P_n) \subseteq A \),
  \item \( A \) contains all cells of the form \( 1^k_u \) for \( u \in P^*_k \),
  \item for each \( i \in \{0, \ldots, k-1\} \) and each pair \( u, v \in A \) of \( i \)-composable cells, \( A \) contains their \( i \)-composition \( u \circ_i v \).
\end{itemize}

Then \( A = P^*_k \).

Proof. Let \( C \) be the \( k \)-category whose \((k-1)\)-truncation is \( P^*_<k \) and such that \( C_k = A \), with source and target maps \( A \to P^*_k \) given by the restriction of \( s_{k-1}, t_{k-1} : P_k \to P^*_k \). By hypothesis, \( C \) is a sub-\( k \)-category of \( P^*_<k \). On the other hand, the inclusion \( i_k : P_k \to A \) determines a unique morphism \( f : P^*_<k \to C \) by Lemma 15.1.5. Now \( j \circ f : P^*_<k \to P^*_k \) is the identity on \( P^*_<k \), by the uniqueness property from Lemma 15.1.5. This implies that \( j_k \circ i_k : P^*_k \to P^*_k \) is the identity on \( P^*_k \), whence \( j_k \) is surjective. Therefore \( A = P^*_k \). \( \square \)

15.1.9 Structural induction. Proposition 15.1.8 allows reasoning by structural induction on the cells of freely generated \( \omega \)-categories. Precisely, in order to prove that a certain property \( A \) holds for all cells in \( P^*_k \), it suffices to check that

\begin{itemize}
  \item \( A \) holds for all units \( 1_v \) where \( v \in P^*_k \),
  \item \( A \) holds for all generating cells of the form \( i_k(a) \) for \( a \in P_k \).
\end{itemize}
whenever $A$ holds for two $i$-composable cells $u$ and $v$, then $A$ holds for $w = u *_{i} v$.

### 15.1.10 $\omega$-polygraphs

The category $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ of $\omega$-polygraphs (or simply polygraphs) is the projective limit of the following diagram in $\text{CAT}$:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\text{Pol}_0 & \xleftarrow{U_0^1} & \text{Pol}_1 & \xleftarrow{U_1^2} & \cdots & \xleftarrow{U_n^m} & \text{Pol}_n & \xleftarrow{U_n^{n+1}} & \text{Pol}_{n+1} & \cdots \\
\end{array}
$$

Thus, as in the case of globular sets and $\omega$-categories, we get a family of truncation functors $U_n : \text{Pol}_{\omega} \to \text{Pol}_n$. Also, keeping the above notations, for each $\omega$-polygraph $P$ and integer $n$, the $n$-polygraph $U_n(P)$ will be denoted by $P_{<n}$. Likewise, for each $n$, any morphism $f : P \to Q$ in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ gives rise by truncation to a morphism $f_{<n} : P_{<n} \to Q_{<n}$.

### 15.2 Three adjunctions

This section investigates some fundamental adjunctions between the categories $\text{Pol}_{\omega}, \text{Cat}_{\omega}$, and $\text{Glob}_{\omega}$. We have already examined the monadic adjunction between $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$ and $\text{Glob}_{\omega}$ (see Propositions 14.2.7 and 14.4.3). We now turn to two further important pairs of adjoint functors.

#### 15.2.1 For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we first define a functor $G_n : \text{Cat}_n \to \text{Pol}_n$ together with a natural transformation $\varepsilon : F_n G_n \to 1$.

Thus, let $C$ be an $n$-category. The $n$-polygraph $P = G_n(C)$, as well as $\varepsilon_C$, are defined dimensionwise as follows:

- The set $P_0 = (G_n(C))_0$ is just $C_0 = (F_n(P))_0$, and $(\varepsilon_C)_0$ is the identity.
- Suppose $P$ and $\varepsilon_C$ have been defined up to dimension $k < n$. The set $P_{k+1}$ of $(k+1)$-generators then consists in triples $p = (z, x, y)$ where $x, y$ are parallel $k$-cells in $P_k = (F_n G_n(C))_k$ and $z$ is a $(k+1)$-cell in $C_{k+1}$ of the form $z : \varepsilon_C(x) \to \varepsilon_C(y)$. The source and target maps $s_k, t_k : P_{k+1} \to P_k$ are given by $s_k(p) = x$ and $t_k(p) = y$, and $\varepsilon_C$ extends to $P_{k+1}$ by $\varepsilon_C(p) = z$.

Thus $P$ is now defined up to dimension $k+1$ and by applying Lemma 15.1.5, the map $\varepsilon_C$ extends to $P_{k+1}$, yielding a $(k+1)$-functor.

Likewise, $G_n$ is defined on morphisms. Functoriality of $G_n$ and naturality of $\varepsilon$ immediately follow from the construction.

#### 15.2.2 Lemma. For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the functor $G_n$ is right adjoint to $F_n$. 
Proof. It is sufficient to check that the natural transformation \( \varepsilon \), which becomes of course the counit of the adjunction, satisfies the following universal property: for any \( n \)-functor \( f : F_n(P) \to C \), where \( P \) is an \( n \)-polygraph and \( C \) an \( n \)-category, there is a unique morphism \( g : P \to G_n(C) \) in \( \textbf{Pol}_n \) such that the following triangle commutes:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F_nG_n(C) & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_C} & C \\
\downarrow{F_n(g)} & & \\
F_n(P) & \xrightarrow{f} & C
\end{array}
\]

Here again \( g \) is built by induction on all dimensions \( 0 \leq k \leq n \). For \( k = 0 \), we must have \( g_0 = f_0 \). Suppose now that \( g \) has been defined up to dimension \( k < n \), satisfying the commutation condition. Let \( p \in P_{k+1} \) be a \((k+1)\)-generator of \( P \), \( u = s_k(p) \), and \( v = t_k(p) \) in \( P_k^* \). The induction hypothesis and the definition of \( \varepsilon \) imply that \( g(p) = (f(p), u, v) \). Now Lemma 15.1.5 applies, and we may extend \( F_n(g) \) up to a \((k+1)\)-functor still satisfying the commutation condition. \( \square \)

15.2.3 Consider now the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
\text{Pol}_0 & \xleftarrow{U_0^1} & \text{Pol}_1 & \xleftarrow{U_1^2} & \cdots & \text{Pol}_n & \xleftarrow{U_n^{n+1}} & \text{Pol}_{n+1} & \xleftarrow{U_{n+1}^{n+2}} & \cdots \\
\text{Cat}_0 & \xleftarrow{U_0^1} & \text{Cat}_1 & \xleftarrow{U_1^2} & \cdots & \text{Cat}_n & \xleftarrow{U_n^{n+1}} & \text{Cat}_{n+1} & \xleftarrow{U_{n+1}^{n+2}} & \cdots
\end{array}
\]

where the squares involving \( F \) and the squares involving \( G \) commute. The projective limit of the top row is the category \( \textbf{Pol}_\omega \) and the projective limit of the bottom row is the category \( \textbf{Cat}_\omega \). Therefore we get a pair of functors \( F : \textbf{Pol}_\omega \to \textbf{Cat}_\omega \) and \( G : \textbf{Cat}_\omega \to \textbf{Pol}_\omega \) such that, for each \( n \), \( F_n \circ U_n = U_n \circ F \) and \( G_n \circ U_n = U_n \circ G \). Moreover \( F \) is left adjoint to \( G \). For any polygraph \( P \), \( F(P) \) is the freely generated \( \omega \)-category on \( P \) and will be denoted by \( P^* \).

15.2.4 Let us now define a pair of adjoint functors between categories \( \textbf{Pol}_\omega \) and \( \textbf{Glob}_\omega \). Consider first the functor \( N : \textbf{Pol}_\omega \to \textbf{Glob}_\omega \) which takes a polygraph \( P \) to a globular set \( X \) by keeping only “hereditary globular” generators. Precisely, let \( P \) be a polygraph, we define the globular set \( X = N(P) \) dimension-wise, such that for each \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), \( X_n \subseteq P_n \); recall that \( i_k : P_k \to P_k^* \) denotes the canonical insertion of \( k \)-generators into \( k \)-cells:

- For \( n = 0 \), \( X_0 = P_0 \).
There is a natural isomorphism

15.2.5 Lemma. natural inclusion of globular set

The previous construction is clearly functorial and defines the required functor $N$. Remark that $N$ admits a left adjoint $M : \text{Glob}_\omega \to \text{Pol}_\omega$ which takes the globular set $X$ to a polygraph $P$ such that $P_n = X_n$, in other words $M$ defines a natural inclusion of $\text{Glob}_\omega$ into $\text{Pol}_\omega$.

15.2.5 Lemma. There is a natural isomorphism $\phi : NG \to V$, that is, the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Cat}_\omega & \xrightarrow{G} & \text{Pol}_\omega \\
V \downarrow & & \downarrow N \\
\text{Glob}_\omega & & \\
\end{array}
\]

commutes up to a natural isomorphism.

Proof. Let $C$ be an $\omega$-category, and $X = NG(C)$. For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let $\phi_n^C : X_n \to C_n$ be the composition of the following maps

\[
X_n \xrightarrow{i_n} G(C)_n \xrightarrow{(\varepsilon C)_n} C_n.
\]

The family $(\phi_n^C)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ defines a globular morphism $\phi^C : NG(C) \to V(C)$, natural in $C$. Thus we get a natural transformation $\phi : NG \to V$.

Let us now define $\chi^C_n : C \to X_n$ by induction on $n$ such that $\phi_n^C \circ \chi^C_n = 1_{C_n}$:

- For $n = 0$, $X_0 = C_0$ and $\phi_0^C = 1_{C_0} = 1_{X_0}$, so that $\chi^C_0 : C_0 \to X_0$ is also $1_{C_0} = 1_{X_0}$.
- Suppose $n > 0$ and $\chi^C_k$ has been defined up to $k = n - 1$, and let $z \in C_n$. Let $u \in s_{n-1}(z)$ and $v = t_{n-1}(z)$ in $C_{n-1}$. By induction hypothesis, $\chi^C_{n-1}(u)$ and $\chi^C_{n-1}(v)$ belong to $X_{n-1}$. Let $x = i_{n-1} \chi^C_{n-1}(u)$, $y = i_{n-1} \chi^C_{n-1}(v)$ in $FG(C)_{n-1}$ and define $a = \chi^C_n(z) = (z, x, y)$. By construction $a \in X_n$ and $\phi_n^C(a) = z$. 

— Let $n > 0$ and suppose we have defined $X_k \subseteq P_k$ for all $k < n$, together with source and target maps building an $(n - 1)$-globular set. Let $X_n \subseteq P_n$ be the set of $n$-generators $a$ of $P$ such that $s_{n-1}(a)$ and $t_{n-1}(a)$ belong to $i_{n-1}(X_{n-1})$ and define source and target maps $s_n^X, t_n^X : X_n \to X_{n-1}$ as the unique maps such that $i_{n-1} s_{n-1}^X(a) = s_{n-1}(a)$ and $i_{n-1} t_{n-1}^X(a) = t_{n-1}(a)$ for each $a \in X_n$. This extends $X$ to an $n$-globular set, as shown in the following diagram:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X_n & \xrightarrow{i_n} & P_n \\
\downarrow s_n^X & & \downarrow t_n \\
X_{n-1} & \xrightarrow{i_{n-1}} & P_{n-1} \\
\end{array}
\]
It remains to prove that $\phi_n^C$ is injective. We reason again by induction on $n$.

- For $n = 0$, $\phi_0^C$ is an identity, hence injective.
- Suppose $n > 0$ and $\phi_{n-1}^C$ injective. Let $a_t = (z_t, x_t, y_t) \in X_n$ for $t = 0, 1$ such that $\phi_n^C(a_0) = \phi_n^C(a_1)$. Thus $z_0 = z_1$. Also

$$
\phi_{n-1}^C(s_{n-1}^X(a_0)) = s_{n-1}^X(\phi_n^C(a_0)) = s_{n-1}^X(\phi_n^C(a_1)) = \phi_{n-1}^C(s_{n-1}^X(a_1))
$$

and because $\phi_{n-1}^C$ is injective,

$$
s_{n-1}^X(a_0) = s_{n-1}^X(a_1).
$$

Now

$$
x_0 = s_{n-1}(a_0) = i_{n-1}s_{n-1}^X(a_0) = i_{n-1}s_{n-1}^X(a_1) = s_{n-1}(a_1) = x_1.
$$

Likewise $y_0 = y_1$, and we get $a_0 = a_1$. Hence $\phi_n^C$ is injective and we are done. □

15.3 $(n, p)$-polygraphs

In the same way as an $n$-polygraph generates an $n$-category, we may define, for each $n \geq p$, a notion of $(n, p)$-polygraph generating an $(n, p)$-category. The particular case where $n = 3$ and $p = 1$ has been already used to define coherent presentations of categories in Chapter 7. Remark that the construction of the left adjoint in Proposition 15.1.3 applies to the case where $\text{Cat}_n$ is replaced by $\text{Cat}_{n,p}$, as in the following diagram:
Here $\text{Cat}_{n,p}^*$ is defined as above by the pullback square of the obvious forgetful functors. We may now define the category $\text{Pol}_{n,p}$ of $(n, p)$-polygraphs, together with a functor $F'_n : \text{Pol}_{n,p} \to \text{Cat}_{n,p}$ taking an $(n, p)$-polygraph to the $(n, p)$-category it generates. The definition is by induction on $n \geq p$.

- For $n = p$, $\text{Pol}_{n,p}$ is just $\text{Pol}_{p,p}$, and $F'_n$ is $F_p$, as $\text{Cat}_{n,p}$ is just $\text{Cat}_{p,p}$.
- Given $\text{Pol}_{n,p}$ and $F'_n : \text{Pol}_{n,p} \to \text{Cat}_{n,p}$, the category $\text{Pol}_{n+1,p}$ is defined by the following pullback in $\text{CAT}$:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Pol}_{n+1,p} \\
\downarrow \downarrow \\
\text{Pol}_{n,p} \\
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\rightarrow \\
\rightarrow \\
\rightarrow \\
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Cat}_{n,p}^* \\
\downarrow \\
\text{Cat}_{n,p} \\
\end{array} \\

$$

whereas $F'_{n+1}$ is $L_{n+1}'$:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Pol}_{n+1,p} \\
\downarrow \downarrow \\
\text{Pol}_{n+1,p} \\
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\rightarrow \\
\rightarrow \\
\rightarrow \\
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Cat}_{n+1,p}^* \\
\downarrow \\
\text{Cat}_{n+1,p} \\
\end{array}
$$

Concretely, let $(P_k)_{0 \leq k \leq n}$ the sequence of $k$-dimensional generators of an $(n, p)$-polygraph $P$, and $C$ be the $(n, p)$-category generated by $P$, we shall denote $C_k$ by $P^*_k$ for $0 \leq k \leq p$ and by $P^+_k$ for $p < k \leq n$. Note that in the latter case, $P^+_k$ contains all composites and inverses of the generators in $P_k$.

As for $n$-polygraphs in §15.1.7, the data defining an $(n, p)$-polygraph $P$ may be displayed in the following diagram in $\text{Set}$:

Finally, as in the case of (plain) polygraphs, we may define a category $\text{Pol}_{\omega,p}$ of $(\omega, p)$-polygraphs as the projective limit of the system $(\text{Pol}_{n,p}, U_{n+1,n})_{n \geq p}$. 
Properties of the category of $n$-polygraphs

In this chapter, we establish the main properties of the category $\text{Pol}_n$ of $n$-polygraphs. We first show how to compute limits and colimits and prove that $\text{Pol}_n$ is complete and cocomplete for any $n \geq 0$. The behavior of the cartesian product deserves a special attention in that it does not correspond to the product of generators. The monomorphisms (resp. epimorphisms) in $\text{Pol}_n$ are then characterized as injective (resp. surjective) maps between generators. The linearization of polygraphic expressions plays a central role in proving these facts. Whereas $\text{Pol}_n$ is a presheaf category for $n \in \{0, 1, 2\}$, it already fails to be cartesian closed for $n \geq 3$, as proved in [265], the culprit for this defect being as usual the Eckmann-Hilton phenomenon. The categories $\text{Pol}_n$ are however locally presentable for all $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\omega\}$. We introduce the technical notion of context, in relation with $n$-dimensional rewriting, and use it to prove that if an $\omega$-category is freely generated by a polygraph then this polygraph is unique up to isomorphism. Finally, we show how to define rewriting properties of $n$-polygraphs and to prove coherence results by rewriting on $(n-1)$-categories presented by convergent $n$-polygraphs.

16.1 Limits and colimits

16.1.1 Terminal object. The category $\text{Pol}_\omega$ has a terminal object $1^\text{pol}$, defined as the image of the terminal $\omega$-category $1^\text{set}$ by the right adjoint functor $G : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Pol}_\omega$. Concretely, $(1^\text{pol})_0$ consists in a single 0-cell, whereas for each $n > 0$, the set $(1^\text{pol})_n$ of $n$-generators consists in all pairs $(u, v)$ of parallel cells in $(1^\text{pol})_{n-1}$. Thus $1^\text{pol}$ has exactly one 0-generator, one 1-generator, and infinitely many $n$-generators for each $n \geq 2$. A detailed description in the case $n = 2$ can be found in [338].
16.1.2 Products. Let $P, Q$ be a pair of polygraphs, and $\pi_P : P \to 1_{\text{pol}}$, $\pi_Q : Q \to 1_{\text{pol}}$ the canonical morphisms from $P, Q$ to the terminal object. We define a polygraph $R$, together with morphisms $p : R \to P$, $q : R \to Q$, by induction on the dimension.

- For $n = 0$, $R_0 = P_0 \times Q_0$ and $p_0 : R_0 \to P_0$, $q_0 : R_0 \to Q_0$ are the usual projection maps.
- Let $n > 0$ and suppose $R, p, q$ have been defined up to dimension $n - 1$. The set $R_n$ of $n$-generators consists of quadruples $c = (a, b, u, v) \in P_n \times Q_n \times R^*_n \times R^*_n$ such that

\[ \pi_P(a) = \pi_Q(b) \text{ and } u, v \text{ are parallel cells satisfying the equations } \]

\[ p^*_n u = s_n(a), q^*_n v = t_n(a) \text{ and } p^*_n v = t_n(b), q^*_n u = s_n(b). \]

The projection maps are defined by $p_n c = a$ and $q_n c = b$. The source and target maps $s_{n-1}, t_{n-1} : R_n \to R^*_n$ are defined by $s_{n-1}(r) = u$ and $t_{n-1}(r) = v$.

Now the following square is a pullback in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
R & \xrightarrow{p} & P \\
\downarrow{q} & & \downarrow{\pi_P} \\
Q & \xrightarrow{\pi_Q} & 1_{\text{pol}}
\end{array}
\]

In fact, let $S$ be a polygraph and $f : S \to P$, $g : S \to Q$ morphisms such that the following diagram commutes:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
S & \xrightarrow{f} & P \\
\downarrow{g} & & \downarrow{\pi_P} \\
Q & \xrightarrow{\pi_Q} & 1_{\text{pol}}
\end{array}
\] (16.1)

We show that there is a unique morphism $h : S \to R$ making the following diagram commute, for each $n \geq 0$:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
S \lessdot_n & \xrightarrow{h_{\lessdot n}} & R \lessdot_n & \xrightarrow{p_{\lessdot n}} & P \lessdot_n \\
\downarrow{g_{\lessdot n}} & & \downarrow{q_{\lessdot n}} & & \downarrow{\pi_P} \\
Q \lessdot_n & \xrightarrow{\pi_Q} & 1_{\text{pol}} \lessdot_n
\end{array}
\] (16.2)
Let us build $h$ and prove its uniqueness by induction on $n$.

- If $n = 0$, $R_0 = P_0 \times Q_0$, $h_0 : S_0 \to R_0$ takes $c \in S_0$ to $(f_0 c, g_0 c)$ and this choice is unique.

- Let $n \geq 0$ and suppose that $h$ has been defined up to dimension $n$ such that (16.2) commutes. We extend $h$ to dimension $n + 1$ as follows: given $c \in S_{n+1}$, we define $h_{n+1} c = (a, b, u, v)$ where

\begin{align}
a &= f_{n+1} c, \\
b &= g_{n+1} c, \\
u &= h_n^* s_n(c), \\
v &= h_n^* t_n(c).
\end{align}

The equations (16.3) to (16.6) ensure that $h_{n+1} c \in R_n$ and that the globular relations $s_n(h_{n+1} c) = h_n^* s_n(c)$ and $t_n(h_{n+1} c) = h_n^* t_n(c)$ hold, so that $h$ extends to a morphism up to dimension $n + 1$. Moreover, this extension now satisfies the required commutation conditions $f = ph$ and $g = qh$ up to dimension $n + 1$. Conversely, the commutation conditions imply (16.3) and (16.4), and the requirement that $h$ be a morphism implies (16.5) and (16.6). Hence, the above choice for $h_{n+1} c$ is unique and we are done.

Therefore $R$ is the cartesian product $P \times Q$ in $\text{Pol}_\omega$. It should be emphasized that generally, from $n = 2$ on, the map $(a, b, u, v) \mapsto (a, b)$ from $R_n$ to $P_n \times Q_n$ is not surjective, and from $n = 3$ on, not injective either. For example, if

\[P = \langle \ast, \ast_2 | a, b : \ast_1 \to \ast_2 | f : a \to b \rangle,\]

\[Q = \langle \ast, \ast_2, \ast_3 | a : \ast_1 \to \ast_2, b : \ast_2 \to \ast_3, c : \ast_1 \to \ast_3 | g : a \ast_0 b \to c \rangle\]

and $R = P \times Q$, then $R_2 = \emptyset$ and $P_2 \times Q_2 = \{(f, g)\}$, thus showing that $R_2 \to P_2 \times Q_2$ is not surjective. Another example of non-injectivity is given in 16.3.2 below. A similar proof shows that $\text{Pol}_\omega$ has all small products $\prod_{i \in I} P_i$.

16.1.3 Equalizers. Let $P, Q$ be polygraphs and $f, g : P \to Q$ be two morphisms in $\text{Pol}_\omega$. For each $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we define a subset of $P_n$ by

\[R_n = \{ a \in P_n | f(a) = g(a) \} .\]

As the inclusions $j_n : R_n \to P_n$ commute with the source and target maps, this defines a polygraph $R$ together with a morphism $j : R \to P$ in $\text{Pol}_\omega$. Now $j : R \to P$ is clearly an equalizer of the pair $(f, g)$ in $\text{Pol}_\omega$.

16.1.4 Coproducts. The coproducts in $\text{Pol}_\omega$ are built by taking the coproducts of the corresponding sets of $n$-generators in each dimension $n$. Thus, if $(P_i)_{i \in I}$ is a family of polygraphs, we have for each dimension $n$, $(\coprod_{i \in I} P_i)_n = \coprod_{i \in I} P_n^i$. **
Concretely, there is a binary relation on $Q_n$ defined by $b \sim_n b'$ if and only if there is an $a \in P_n$ such that $b = f_n(a)$ and $b' = g_n(a)$. If $\sim_n$ is the smallest equivalence relation on $Q_n$ containing $\sim_n$, then $R_n$ is the set $Q_n/\sim_n$ of equivalence classes of $\sim_n$ and $k_n$ is the canonical surjection.

We now define, by induction on $n$, a polygraph $R$ with $R_n$ as the set of $n$-generators, together with a morphism $k : Q \to R$ in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ whose $n$-dimensional component is the above $k_n$.

- For $n = 0$, we just take $R_0$ and $k_0$ as above, and there is nothing to prove.

- Let $n > 0$ and suppose that the polygraph $R$ has been constructed up to dimension $n - 1$, together with the morphism $k : Q \to R$ and that, for all $0 \leq i < n$, $k_i^*f_i^* = k_i^*g_i^*$. Taking $R_n$ as above, we have to define source and target maps $s_{n-1}, t_{n-1} : R_n \to R_{n-1}$. Consider the following diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P_n & \xrightarrow{f_n} & Q_n \\
\downarrow{s_{n-1}} & & \downarrow{s_{n-1}} \\
P_{n-1} & \xrightarrow{f_{n-1}} & Q_{n-1} \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P_n & \xrightarrow{g_n} & Q_n \\
\downarrow{s_{n-1}} & & \downarrow{s_{n-1}} \\
P_{n-1} & \xrightarrow{g_{n-1}} & Q_{n-1} \\
\end{array}
\]

in which all solid arrows are already given, and let $c \in R_n$. Let $b$ be a representative of $c$ in $Q_n$, that is, $c = k_n(b)$ and set $s_{n-1}(c) = k_{n-1}^*s_{n-1}(b) \in R_{n-1}$. We must show that $s_{n-1}(c)$ so defined does not depend on the choice of the representative $b$. Thus let $b' \in Q_n$ such that $k_n(b') = c$. By definition, $b \sim_n b'$. In order to show that $k_n^*s_{n-1}(b) = k_n^*s_{n-1}(b')$, it is sufficient to check it in the base case where $b \sim_n b'$. In this case, there is a generator $a \in P_n$ such that $f_n(a) = b$ and $g_n(a) = b'$. Therefore

\[
k_{n-1}^*s_{n-1}(b) = k_{n-1}^*s_{n-1}f_n(a) = k_{n-1}^*f_{n-1}s_{n-1}(a) = k_{n-1}^*g_{n-1}s_{n-1}(a) = k_{n-1}^*s_{n-1}g_n(a) = k_{n-1}^*s_{n-1}(b')
\]

so that the source map on $R_n$ is well-defined. Of course the target map $t_{n-1}$
16.2 Morphisms in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$

is defined accordingly. As for the globular relations, remark that, if $n \geq 2$, by induction hypothesis,

\[ t_{n-2}k_{n-1}k_n = t_{n-2}k_{n-1}^*s_{n-1} \]

\[ = k_{n-2}t_{n-2}s_{n-1} \]

\[ = k_{n-2}t_{n-2}t_{n-1} \]

\[ = t_{n-2}k_{n-1}^*t_{n-1} \]

\[ = t_{n-2}t_{n-1}k_n \]

and because $k_n$ is surjective, this implies $t_{n-2}s_{n-1} = t_{n-2}t_{n-1}$. Likewise $s_{n-2}s_{n-1} = s_{n-2}t_{n-1}$. Thus, the polygraph $R$ is now defined up to dimension $n$. By using Lemma 15.1.5, we finally extend $k$ to a morphism of polygraphs up to dimension $n$, so that $k_n f_n^* = k_n s_n^*$.

Having defined $k : Q \rightarrow R$, a similar induction process shows that $k$ is indeed a coequalizer of the pair $(f, g)$ in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$.

16.1.6 Proposition. The category $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ is complete and cocomplete.

Proof. The category $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ has all small products and equalizers of all pairs of morphisms, hence has all small limits (see [261, Chapter V, Theorem 1]). Dually, $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ has coproducts and coequalizers, hence has all small colimits. \qed

16.1.7 Remark. To each polygraph $P$ we may associate a set

\[ |P| = \bigsqcup_{k \in \mathbb{N}} P_k \]

consisting of all generators of $P$. This correspondence is the object part of a functor $|\cdot| : \text{Pol}_{\omega} \rightarrow \text{Set}$. In fact, a morphism $f : P \rightarrow Q$ in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ takes, for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$, the set $P_k$ to the set $Q_k$, whence a map $|f| : |P| \rightarrow |Q|$. Now, the above construction of the colimits in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ shows that this functor $|\cdot|$ preserves all small colimits. As a morphism $f$ of polygraphs is entirely determined by its components $f_n$, the functor $|\cdot|$ is faithful, making $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ a concrete category.

16.2 Morphisms in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$

We need a few technical preliminaries before characterizing monomorphisms and epimorphisms in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$. First, let $C$ be an $\omega$-category and $X \subseteq C_n$ a set of $n$-cells of $C$: we say that $X$ is closed under divisors if, for any $i$-composable $n$-cells $u, v \in C_n$ such that $u \ast_i v \in X$, then $u \in X$ and $v \in X$. We may then state the following crucial property of cellular extensions:
16.2.1 Lemma. Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and $f : (C, X) \to (D, Y)$ a morphism in $\text{Cat}_n^+$, where $f = (g, h)$, with $g : C \to D$ a morphism in $\text{Cat}_n$ and $h : X \to Y$ a source and target preserving map. Let $f^* : L_n(C, X) \to L_n(D, Y)$ be the induced morphism in $\text{Cat}_{n+1}$. Suppose that the maps $g_n : C_n \to D_n$ and $h : X \to Y$ are injective and that the image of $g_n$ is closed under divisors. Then $f^*_{n+1}$ is injective and its image is closed under divisors.

Proof. We restrict here to the general line of reasoning and refer to [255, Section 2.3] for a complete proof. Note also that [264] contains a thorough analysis of the shape of freely generated cells, essentially encompassing the present material. Thus, let $(C, X)$ and $(D, Y)$ as in the above statement. Let $C_{n+1}$ (resp. $D_{n+1}$) be the set of $(n+1)$-cells in $L_n(C, X)$ (resp. $L_n(D, Y)$). According to [279, Section 4.1], there are sets of well-typed formal expressions $E^C$ and $E^D$ endowed with binary relations $\sim^C$ and $\sim^D$ generating congruence relations $\simeq^C$ and $\simeq^D$ such that $C_{n+1} = E^C/\simeq^C$ and $D_{n+1} = E^D/\simeq^D$. Moreover, $f$ induces a map $\overline{f} : E^C \to E^D$ such that the following diagram commutes, the vertical maps being the canonical surjections:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
E^C & \xrightarrow{\overline{f}} & E^D \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
C_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{f^*_{n+1}} & D_{n+1}.
\end{array}
$$

Then structural induction on formal expressions shows that for each $a, b \in E^C$ such that $\overline{f}(a) \sim^D \overline{f}(b)$, then $a \sim^C b$. Thus, whenever $\overline{f}(a) \simeq^D \overline{f}(b)$, $a \simeq^C b$. Therefore $f^*_{n+1}$ is injective. Moreover, the image of $f^*_{n+1}$ is still closed under divisors. \hfill \Box

16.2.2 Proposition. Let $P, Q$ be polygraphs, $f : P \to Q$ be a morphism in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. If for all $k \leq n$, $f_k : P_k \to Q_k$ is injective, then $f_n^* : P_n^* \to Q_n^*$ is injective.

Proof. Suppose $f : P \to Q$ is a morphism in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ such that, for all $k \leq n$, the map $f_k : P_k \to Q_k$ is injective. Then, by applying Lemma 16.2.1 dimension-wise, we check the two following properties by induction on $k \in \{0, \ldots, n-1\}$.

- The maps $f_k^* : P_k^* \to Q_k^*$ and $f_{k+1} : P_{k+1} \to Q_{k+1}$ are injective.
- The image of $f_n^*$ is closed under divisors.

Therefore, by applying once more Lemma 16.2.1, $f_n^*$ is injective. \hfill \Box

Let $(C, X)$ be a cellular extension of an $n$-category $C$ by $X$ and $C[X]$ the freely generated $(n+1)$-category on this extension. As all categories $\text{Cat}_n$
16.2 Morphisms in $\text{Pol}_\omega$

canonically embed into $\text{Cat}_\omega$, we may view $C$ and $C[X]$ as $\omega$-categories, and consider the canonical $\omega$-functor $j : C \to C[X]$. Let us call an $\omega$-functor *injective* if its underlying globular map is a monomorphism in $\text{Glob}_\omega$, that is, injective in each dimension. Then the following result follows immediately as a particular case of Lemma 16.2.1.

**16.2.3 Proposition.** For any cellular extension $(C, X)$, the canonical $\omega$-functor $j : C \to C[X]$ is injective.

**16.2.4 Remark.** In fact, Proposition 16.2.3 holds for a more general interpretation of the notion of cellular extension, namely one when $C$ is any $\omega$-category and $X$ is a set of cells of any dimensions freely attached to $C$. We refer to [264, Section 4, p. 36] for a complete proof of this generalized statement. When translated in the present language, Makkai’s theorem states precisely the following: for any $\omega$-category $C$ and any set $X$, together with a family of morphisms $f_x : \partial O_{n_x} \to C, x \in X$, the morphism $j : C \to C[X]$ in the pushout square

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\bigsqcup_{x \in X} \partial O_{n_x} & \xrightarrow{(f_x)_x} C \\
\downarrow & \downarrow j \\
\bigsqcup_{x \in X} O_{n_x} & \longrightarrow C[X]
\end{array}
$$

is injective. The proof of Makkai goes along the same lines as the one of Lemma 16.2.1 and involves a precise analysis of the formal expressions denoting the cells of $C[X]$.

**16.2.5 Linearization.** To each pair $(X, n)$ such that $X$ is a set and $n \in \mathbb{N}$ we may associate an $\omega$-category $C(X, n)$ whose only non-trivial cells are in dimension $n$, where

- $C(X, n)_n = X$ if $n = 0$,
- $C(X, n)_n = \mathbb{N}[X]$, the free abelian monoid generated by $X$ if $n > 0$.

Note that $\mathbb{N}[X]$ consists of linear combinations of the form $u = \sum_{x \in X} n_x x$ where $n_x \in \mathbb{N}$ and $n_x = 0$ for all but a finite number of indices $x$. Moreover, for all $i < n$, the $i$-composition of such $n$-cells is given by $u \cdot v = u + v$. Remark that, except for $n = 1$, the category $C(X, n)$ is freely generated by a polygraph $P(X, n)$ whose generators are given by $P(X, n)_n = X$, $P(X, n)_0 = \{\ast\}$ if $n > 0$ and $P(X, n)_i = \emptyset$ otherwise, the source and target maps being uniquely determined by these data.

Let now $P$ be a polygraph and $n \in \mathbb{N}$. To any $n$-generator $a \in P_n$ and any $n$-cell $u \in P_n$ we may unambiguously attach a natural number $w_n(u)$, the
weight of $a$ in $u$, measuring the number of occurrences of $a$ in $u$. Consider indeed the $n$-polygraph $P_{\leq n}$ which coincides with $P$ up to dimension $n$, and let $X = P_n$; the above defined $\omega$-category $C(X, n)$ can be seen as an $n$-category. Now, by Lemma 15.1.5, the unique morphism in $\text{Cat}_{n-1}$ taking $(P_{\leq n-1})^\ast$ to the terminal object extends uniquely to a morphism $A : (P_{\leq n})^\ast \to C(X, n)$ whose restriction to $P_n$ is the identity $P_n \to X$. We may therefore define the natural numbers $\omega_a(u)$ by

$$\lambda_n(u) = \sum_{a \in P_n} w_a(u)a$$

for any $n$-cell $u \in P_n^\ast$. Note that $\lambda_n(u)$ may be seen as a multiset $\text{supp}^\ast(u)$ on $P_n$ mapping each generator $a \in P_n$ to $w_a(u)$.

**16.2.6 Support.** The above notion of weight leads to the technical notion of support. Let $P$ be a polygraph and $u$ an $n$-cell in $P_n^\ast$. We first define the set of $n$-generators actually occurring in $u$ by

$$\text{supp}_n(u) = \{a \in P_n \mid w_a(u) \neq 0\}.$$

Now the total support of $u$ is defined by induction on the dimension of $u$:

- For $n = 0$, $u \in P_0^\ast = P_0$ and $\text{supp}(u) = \{u\}$.
- For $n > 0$, $\text{supp}(u) = U \cup S \cup T \cup S' \cup T'$ where

  $$U = \text{supp}_n(u),$$
  $$S = \text{supp}(s_{n-1}(u)),$$
  $$T = \text{supp}(t_{n-1}(u)),$$
  $$S' = \bigcup_{a \in \text{supp}_n(u)} \text{supp}(s_{n-1}(a)),$$
  $$T' = \bigcup_{a \in \text{supp}_n(u)} \text{supp}(t_{n-1}(a)).$$

In other words, the total support of $u$ consists in all generators in $\bigcup_{0 \leq i < n} P_i$ needed to express $u$. Likewise, for any subset $A \subseteq \bigsqcup_{k \in \mathbb{N}} P_k$ of generators of $P$, we define the support of $A$ by $\text{supp}(A) = \bigcup_{a \in A} \text{supp}(a^\ast)$.

**16.2.7 Subpolygraph.** Let $P$ be a polygraph and $a \in P_n$ an $n$-generator. Let $a^\ast$ denote the corresponding $n$-cell in $P_n^\ast$. The subpolygraph of $P$ generated by $a$, denoted $Q = \langle a \rangle^P$, is defined as follows: for each $k \leq n$, the set of $k$-generators of $Q$ is $Q_k = P_k \cap \text{supp}(a^\ast)$, where $\text{supp}(a^\ast)$ is the total support of $a^\ast$ defined in §16.2.6, whereas the source and target maps $s_{k-1}, t_{k-1} : Q_k \to Q_{k-1}$ are obtained by restriction of $s_{k-1}, t_{k-1} : P_k \to P_{k-1}^\ast$ for $k > 0$. Of course $Q_k = \emptyset$ for $k > n$. Thus, we get a canonical morphism $k_a : \langle a \rangle^P \to P$ such that $Q_n = \{a\}$ and $k_a(a) = a$. More generally, for any subset $A \subseteq \bigsqcup_{k \in \mathbb{N}} P_k$ of generators of
16.2 Morphisms in $\text{Pol}_\omega$

$P$, the subpolygraph of $P$ generated by $A$ is the polygraph $Q = \langle A \rangle^P$ such that, for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$, $Q_k = P_k \cap \text{supp}(A)$, and built dimensionwise, together with a canonical morphism $k_A : \langle A \rangle^P \rightarrow P$ by using at each level the appropriate restriction to $Q$ of the source and target maps of $P$.

**16.2.9 Corollary.** A morphism $f : Q \rightarrow P$ in $\text{Pol}_\omega$ is a monomorphism if and only if $f_n : Q_n \rightarrow P_n$ is injective in each dimension $n$.

*Proof.* In one direction, notice that the functor $\text{Pol}_\omega \rightarrow \text{Set}^\mathbb{N}$ taking a polygraph $P$ to the sequence $(P_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is faithful by construction, hence reflects monomorphisms. Therefore, if $f_n$ is injective for all $n$, then $f$ is a monomorphism.

Conversely, suppose that $f : Q \rightarrow P$ is a monomorphism. Suppose also that there is a $k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $f_k$ is not injective, and let $n$ be the smallest such integer. By hypothesis, there are two distinct $n$-generators $a, a' \in Q_n$ such that $f_n(a) = f_n(a')$. Hence

$$f_{n-1}^*(s_{n-1}(a)) = s_{n-1}(f_n(a)) = s_{n-1}(f_n(a')) = f_{n-1}^*(s_{n-1}(a')).$$  

But as $f_{n-1}$ is injective, so is $f_{n-1}^*$ by Lemma 16.2.2. Hence $s_{n-1}(a) = s_{n-1}(a')$. Likewise $t_{n-1}(a) = t_{n-1}(a')$. As a consequence, there is a unique morphism $h : \langle a \rangle^Q \rightarrow \langle a' \rangle^Q$ taking $a$ to $a'$. Let $k = k_a$ and $k' = k_{a'}$. We now have a diagram

$$\langle a \rangle^Q \xrightarrow{k} Q \xrightarrow{f} P$$

such that $fk = fk'$ but $k \neq k'$. This contradicts the hypothesis, and we are done. □

**16.2.9 Corollary.** The functor $F : \text{Pol}_\omega \rightarrow \text{Cat}_\omega$ preserves monomorphisms.

*Proof.* Suppose that $f : Q \rightarrow P$ is a monomorphism in $\text{Pol}_\omega$. By Proposition 16.2.8, $f_n$ is injective in each dimension $n$, and by Lemma 16.2.2, so is $f_n^*$. Now the functor $C \mapsto (C_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ from $\text{Cat}_\omega$ to $\text{Set}^\mathbb{N}$ is faithful and reflects monomorphisms. Hence $f^* : Q^* \rightarrow P^*$ is a monomorphism. □

**16.2.10 Remark.** Proposition 16.2.8 shows that for each subset $A$ of generators of a polygraph $P$, the canonical morphism $k_A : \langle A \rangle^P \rightarrow P$ is a monomorphism. Conversely, any monomorphism $f : Q \rightarrow P$ in $\text{Pol}_\omega$ factorizes as $f = k_A \circ h$, where $A = \{ f(q) \mid q \in Q_k, k \in \mathbb{N} \}$ and $h : Q \rightarrow \langle A \rangle^P$ is an isomorphism.

**16.2.11 Proposition.** A morphism $f : P \rightarrow Q$ in $\text{Pol}_\omega$ is an epimorphism if and only if $f_n$ is surjective in each dimension $n$. 
Properties of the category of \( n \)-polygraphs

**Proof.** As above, the functor \( P \mapsto (P_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \) is faithful and reflects epimorphisms. Therefore if \( f_n \) is surjective in each dimension, then \( f \) is an epimorphism. Conversely, suppose that \( f : P \to Q \) is an epimorphism in \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \). Consider the abelianization functor \( \text{Ab} : \text{Cat}_{\omega} \to \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \) (see Chapter 22). By Proposition 22.1.2, \( \text{Ab} \) is a left adjoint. Recall that \( F : \text{Pol}_{\omega} \to \text{Cat}_{\omega} \) is also a left adjoint. Therefore the composition \( \text{Ab} \circ F : \text{Pol}_{\omega} \to \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \) is a left adjoint, and preserves epimorphisms. As a consequence, the map \( (\text{Ab}(f^*))_n : \mathbb{Z}[P_n] \to \mathbb{Z}[Q_n] \) is surjective for each \( n \), but \( (\text{Ab}(f^*))_n \) is nothing but the linearization of \( f_n \), hence \( f_n \) itself is surjective. \( \square \)

### 16.2.12 Proposition.

A morphism \( f : P \to Q \) in \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \) is an isomorphism if and only if, for each \( n \geq 0 \), it induces a bijection \( f_n : P_n \to Q_n \).

**Proof.** In one direction, if \( f \) is an isomorphism, so is \( |f| \) by functoriality, whence also all maps \( f_n \) for \( n \geq 0 \). Conversely, suppose \( f_n \) is a bijection in all dimensions \( n \). We define \( g : Q \to P \) inverse to \( f \) in \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \) by induction on the dimension.

- For \( n = 0 \), let \( g_0 : Q_0 \to P_0 \) be the inverse map \( (f_0)^{-1} \) of \( f_0 \).
- Let \( n \geq 0 \) and suppose \( g \) has been defined up to dimension \( n \) such that \( g_k \circ f_k = (1_P)_k \) and \( f_k \circ g_k = (1_Q)_k \) for all \( 0 \leq k \leq n \). Define

\[
g_{n+1} = (f_{n+1})^{-1} : Q_{n+1} \to P_{n+1}.
\]

Let \( a \in Q_{n+1} \). We have to check that \( s_n(g_{n+1}(a)) = f_n^*(s_n(a)) \). Now

\[
f_n^*(s_n(g_{n+1}(a))) = s_n(f_{n+1}g_{n+1}(a)) = s_n(a) = f_n^*(s_n(a)).
\]

By induction hypothesis, \( f_n^* \) is a bijection, whence the desired equality.

Likewise \( t_n(g_{n+1}(a)) = g_n^*(t_n(a)) \). Therefore, \( g \) is defined, and is inverse to \( f \) up to dimension \( n + 1 \), whence the result. \( \square \)

### 16.2.13 Remark.

As an immediate consequence of the above results, the isomorphisms in \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \) are exactly the morphisms which are monomorphisms and epimorphisms. Moreover the functor \( |\cdot| \) from Remark 16.1.7 preserves and reflects monomorphisms, epimorphisms and isomorphisms.

### 16.2.14 Subobject classifier.

The category \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \) has a subobject classifier, that is, an object \( \Omega \) together with a monomorphism \( \text{true} : I^{\text{Pol}} \to \Omega \) such that for every monomorphism \( f : P \to Q \) in \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \), there is a unique morphism...
\[\chi_f : Q \to \Omega\] making the following diagram a pullback square:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P & \xrightarrow{s_P} & \mathbf{1}^\text{pol} \\
f \downarrow & & \downarrow \text{true} \\
Q & \xrightarrow{\chi_f} & \Omega
\end{array}
\]  (16.7)

As usual, these conditions determine \(\Omega\) up to isomorphism. Let us now build \(\text{true} : \mathbf{1}^\text{pol} \to \Omega\) by induction on the dimension. To avoid overloaded notation, we denote \(\mathbf{1}^\text{pol}\) by \(T\) throughout the construction.

- For \(n = 0\), \(T_0\) is a singleton, whereas \(\Omega_0 = T_0 + T_0\) elements and \(\text{true}_0\) is the left inclusion \(T_0 \to T_0 + T_0\).
- Let \(n \geq 0\) and suppose \(\Omega\) and \(\text{true}\) have been defined up to dimension \(n\). Recall from §16.1.1 that the set of \((n+1)\)-generators of \(T\) is

\[T_{n+1} = \{(u, v) \mid u \in T_n^+, v \in T_n^+, s_{n-1}(u) = s_{n-1}(v), t_{n-1}(u) = t_{n-1}(v)\}\]

with source and target maps defined by \(s_n(u, v) = u\) and \(t_n(u, v) = v\). Consider now the set

\[S_{n+1} = \{(u, v) \mid u \in \Omega_n^+, v \in \Omega_n^+, s_{n-1}(u) = s_{n-1}(v), t_{n-1}(u) = t_{n-1}(v)\}\]

and the following two subsets of \(S_{n+1}\):

\[
S^0_{n+1} = \{(\text{true}_{n,u}^* u, \text{true}_{n,v}^* v) \mid (u, v) \in T_{n+1}\}, \\
S^1_{n+1} = S_{n+1} \setminus S^0_{n+1}.
\]

The set of \((n+1)\)-generators of \(\Omega\) is then

\[\Omega_{n+1} = S^0_{n+1} + S^0_{n+1} + S^1_{n+1}\]  (16.8)

and \(\text{true}_{n+1}\) sends \(T_{n+1}\) to the first copy of \(S^0_{n+1}\) by

\[\text{true}_{n+1}(u, v) = (\text{true}_{n,u}^* u, \text{true}_{n,v}^* v)\].

The source and target maps \(s_n, t_n : \Omega_{n+1} \to \Omega_n^+\) are naturally given by \(s_n(u, v) = u\) and \(t_n(u, v) = v\), making \(\text{true}\) a morphism of \((n+1)\)-polygraphs.

Suppose now that \(f : P \to Q\) is a monomorphism. We define a morphism \(\chi_f : Q \to \Omega\) by induction on the dimension.

- If \(n = 0\), \((\chi_f)_0 : Q_0 \to \Omega_0 = T_0 + T_0\) sends a 0-cells \(u\) of \(Q\) to the left component if and only if \(u \in f_0\).
- Suppose \(\chi_f\) has been defined up to dimension \(n\), and let \(a \in Q_{n+1}\), with \(s_n(a) = u\) and \(t_n(a) = v\). The pair \(c = ((\chi_f)_n(u), (\chi_f)_n(v))\) is by induction a pair of parallel \(n\)-cells of \(\Omega_n^+\) and three cases are possible:
Properties of the category of \( n \)-polygraphs

– If \( c \in S'_{n+1} \) and \( a \in \text{im } f_{n+1} \), \((\chi f)_{n+1}\) sends \( a \) to \( c \) in the first \( S'_{n+1} \) component of \((16.8)\).

– If \( c \in S'_{n+1} \) and \( a \notin \text{im } f_{n+1} \), \((\chi f)_{n+1}\) sends \( a \) to \( c \) in the second \( S'_{n+1} \) component of \((16.8)\).

– If \( c \in S'_{n+1} \), \((\chi f)_{n+1}\) sends \( a \) to \( c \) in the \( S'_{n+1} \) component of \((16.8)\).

This defines \( \chi f \) as a morphism of \((n+1)\)-polygraphs. We easily check that \( \chi f \) so defined is the unique morphism such that \((16.7)\) is a pullback square.

16.2.15 A counterexample. Let us end this review of morphisms in \( \text{Pol}_\omega \) by the following small observation. To each \( \omega \)-category \( C \) corresponds an \( \omega \)-groupoid \( b C \) in \( \text{Gpd}_\omega \) obtained by formally inverting all \( n \)-cells, \( n > 0 \), in \( C \).

The correspondence \( C \mapsto \tilde{C} \) is in fact the object part of the left adjoint to the inclusion \( \text{Gpd}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_\omega \) and the unit of the associated monad yields a morphism \( \eta_C : C \to \tilde{C} \). In case \( C = P^* \) is freely generated by a polygraph \( P \), one could expect \( \eta_C \) to be injective. However, this is proved wrong by the following counterexample. Let

\[
P = (\{* | x : * \to * | a, b : x \to 1_x, c : 1_x \to x \})
\]

and \( C = P^* \). Consider the 2-cells \( u, v \in C_2 \) given by \( u = a * 1_c * 1_b, v = b * 1_c * 1_a \) and define \( u' = \eta_C u, v' = \eta_C v \). Whereas \( u \neq v \) in \( C \), the presence of a strict inverse \( a^{-1} \) for \( a \) in \( \tilde{C} \) implies that \( u' = v' \), as

\[
\begin{align*}
u' &= a * 1_c * 1_b = a * 1_c (c * 1_a) * 1 (a^{-1} * 1_b) \\
&= a * 1 (a^{-1} * 1_b) * 1 (c * 1_a) = b * 1_c * 1_a = v'.
\end{align*}
\]

16.3 Is \( \text{Pol}_n \) a topos?

As the category of \( n \)-polygraphs is complete and cocomplete and has a subobject classifier, it is natural to ask if \( \text{Pol}_n \) is a topos. In fact, \( \text{Pol}_0 \) is the category of sets and \( \text{Pol}_1 \) is the category of graphs, hence both are presheaf categories and thus are toposes. As for \( n = 2 \), Carboni and Johnstone [76] (corrected in [77]) have proved that \( \text{Pol}_2 \) is also a presheaf category and thus a topos. However, from \( n = 3 \) on, \( \text{Pol}_n \) fails to be cartesian closed, as shown by Makkai and Zawadowski [265] (see also [264, Section 6, p. 57]), and therefore is not even an elementary topos. Let us finally mention that Batanin [30] defines a notion of \( T \)-computad for each monad \( T \) on globular sets and gives sufficient conditions on \( T \) for the category of \( T \)-computads to be a presheaf category. Of course, [265] implies that these conditions do not hold when \( T \) is the monad of strict \( \omega \)-categories on globular sets.
16.3 Is $\text{Pol}_n$ a topos?

16.3.1 The category $\text{Pol}_2$ is a presheaf category. The category $\text{Pol}_2$ is a category of presheaves over the small category whose objects are $p_0$, $p_1$ and $p_{m,n}$ for $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$, morphisms are generated by $s : p_0 \to p_1$, $t : p_0 \to p_1$ and $i_{m,n}^i : p_1 \to p_{m,n}$ for $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$ with $0 \leq i < m$, $0 \leq i < n$, for every indices such that the morphisms are defined. A presheaf category of presheaves over the small category whose objects are $\text{Pol}$.

Therefore $\mathcal{P} = \{ \ldots \}$ due to Cheng [84], based on an explicit counterexample: we shall describe Makkai and Zawadowski being quite intricate, we give here the simpler proof $\mathcal{P}$ of $\mathcal{P}$ is not cartesian closed. Now $\mathcal{P}$ does not preserve colimits, hence admits no right adjoint and $\mathcal{P}$ is not cartesian closed.

16.3.2 The category $\text{Pol}_3$ is not cartesian closed. The original argument by Makkai and Zawadowski being quite intricate, we give here the simpler proof due to Cheng [84], based on an explicit counterexample: we shall describe $3$-polygraphs $P, Q, R$ and $S$ such that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P & \xrightarrow{f_1} & Q \\
\downarrow{f_2} & & \downarrow{g} \\
& R & \end{array}
\]

is a coequalizer in $\text{Pol}_3$ not preserved by the functor $- \times S : \text{Pol}_3 \to \text{Pol}_3$. Therefore $- \times S$ does not preserve colimits, hence admits no right adjoint and $\text{Pol}_3$ is not cartesian closed. Now $P, Q, R, S$ are as follows:

- $P_0 = \{ \ast \}$, $P_1 = \emptyset$, $P_2 = \{a\}$ and $P_3 = \emptyset$ so that there is no choice for the source and target maps.
- $Q_0 = \{ \ast \}$, $Q_1 = \emptyset$, $Q_2 = \{b_1, b_2\}$ where $f_i a = b_i$ for $i \in \{1, 2\}$ and $Q_3 = \{b_3\}$ where $b_3 : b_1 \ast_1 b_2 \to 1_2(\ast)$.
- $R_0 = \{ \ast \}$, $R_1 = \emptyset$, $R_2 = \{c\}$ where $c = g b_1 = g b_2$ and $R_3 = \{d\}$ where $g b_1 = d$ and $d : c \ast_1 c \to 1_2(\ast)$.
- $S = Q$.
Properties of the category of $n$-polygraphs

Let $P' = P \times S$, $Q' = Q \times S$ and $R' = R \times S$. By the construction of products described in §16.1.2, $P'$, $Q'$ and $R'$ have a single 0-generator $\ast' = (\ast, \ast)$ and no 1-generator. As for generators in dimension 2 and 3,

- $P'_2$ has two elements $a'_i = (a, b_i, 1_1(\ast'), 1_1(\ast'))$ for $i \in \{1, 2\}$ and $P'_3 = \emptyset$,
- $Q'_3$ has four elements $b'_{ij} = (b_i, b_j, 1_1(\ast'), 1_1(\ast'))$ for $(i, j) \in \{1, 2\} \times \{1, 2\}$,
- $Q'_3$ has two elements
  
  $b'_{31} = (b_3, b_3, b'_{12} *_1 b'_{21}, 1_2(\ast'))$,
  
  $b'_{32} = (b_3, b_3, b'_{11} *_1 b'_{22}, 1_2(\ast'))$,
- $R'_2$ has two elements $c'_i = (c, b_i, 1_1(\ast'))$ for $i \in \{1, 2\}$,
- $R'_3$ has a single element $d' = (d, b_3, c'_1 *_1 c'_2, 1_2(\ast'))$.

Consider now the coequalizer diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
P' & \xrightarrow{f'_{1i}} & Q' & \xrightarrow{g'} & R'' \\
\downarrow{f'_{i}} & & \downarrow{g''} & & \\
\end{array}
$$

where $f'_{1i} = f_i \times 1_S$. As $P'_3 = \emptyset$ and $Q'_3$ has two elements, $R''_3$ also has two elements, whereas $R'_3$ only has one. Therefore $R'$ is not isomorphic to $R''$ and we are done. Note that the key of the above argument is the Eckmann-Hilton phenomenon, according to which $b_1 *_1 b_2 = b_2 *_1 b_1$: this in turn implies that $b'_{31}$ and $b'_{32}$ are defined in such a way that both projections of $b'_{12} *_1 b'_{21}$ and $b'_{11} *_1 b'_{22}$ match the actual source of $b_3$.

16.3.3 Presheaf subcategories of polygraphs. Although $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ is not a presheaf category, there are several interesting full subcategories of $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ which are presheaf categories, as shown in [177, 176]. The general principle is to restrict the shape of generators to sufficiently “regular” ones. Important examples are many-to-one polygraphs, where the target of each generator is a generator, or non-unital polygraphs, where the source and target of each generator cannot be identities. An alternative approach is taken in [170, 171, 169], where a category of regular polygraphs is defined as the presheaf category on a small category of certain globular shapes, then shown to be equivalent to a full subcategory of $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$.

16.4 Local presentability

This section closely follows [264, Section 5]. Appendix G recalls everything we need about locally presentable categories in the present section. Let us call a
polygraph \(P\) \textit{finite} when \(|P| = \bigsqcup_k P_k\) is a finite set. Given any polygraph \(Q\), we may then consider the set of finite subpolygraphs of \(Q\), in the sense of §16.2.7. Let \(I_Q\) be the subcategory of \(\textbf{Pol}_{\omega}\) whose objects are the finite subpolygraphs of \(Q\), the morphisms are the canonical inclusions \(P \to P'\) for all \(P, P'\) such that \(|P| \subseteq |P'|\) and \(D : I_Q \to \textbf{Pol}_{\omega}\) the corresponding inclusion functor. Let \(P, P'\) be objects in \(I_Q\), together with their canonical inclusion morphisms \(f : P \to Q\) and \(f' : P' \to Q\). Consider the finite subpolygraph \(P''\) of \(Q\) generated by \(|P| \cup |P'|\) and \(h : P'' \to Q\) the corresponding inclusion morphism. Clearly \(f\) and \(f'\) factor through \(f''\) as in the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P & \xrightarrow{f} & Q \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
P' & \xrightarrow{f'} & Q \\
\end{array}
\]

so that \(I_Q\) is a directed poset. Now, by taking the colimit of the sets \(|P|\) for \(P \in I_Q\) in \(\textbf{Set}\), we get

\[
\lim_{\longleftarrow} P \in I_Q |D(P)| = \bigcup_{P \in I_Q} |P| = |Q|
\]

but the functor \(|-|\) preserves small colimits, as remarked in Remark 16.1.7, so that

\[
| \lim_{\longleftarrow} P \in I_Q D(P) | = |Q|.
\]

Therefore the canonical map \(j : \lim_{\longleftarrow} P \in I_Q D(P) \to Q\) is such that \(|j|\) is an identity. By Remark 16.2.13, the functor \(|-|\) reflects isomorphisms, hence \(j\) is an isomorphism in \(\textbf{Pol}_{\omega}\). Thus we have proved the following statement:

\textbf{16.4.1 Proposition.} \textit{Any polygraph is a canonical colimit of its finite subpolygraphs.}

Let now \(P\) be a finite polygraph and \((Q^{(i)}, f_{ij})\) a filtered system in \(\textbf{Pol}_{\omega}\) indexed by a small category \(I\), with colimit \(Q = \lim_{\longleftarrow} Q^{(i)}\) and \(f_i : Q^{(i)} \to Q\) the canonical morphisms for \(i \in I\). Let \(f : P \to Q\) be a morphism in \(\textbf{Pol}_{\omega}\). Because the functor \(|-|\) preserves colimits and \(|P|\) is finite, there is an \(i \in I\) and a map \(h : |P| \to |Q^{(i)}|\) such that
Properties of the category of $n$-polygraphs

- $|f|$ factors as in the following diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
P \\
\downarrow^{|f|} \\
Q
\end{array}
\xymatrix{ 
|P| & |Q| \\
|h| & |f_i| & \ar_{|f|} |Q|}
\]

- for all $a \in |P|$, $b \in |Q^{(i)}|$ and $b' \in |Q^{(i)}|$ such that

\[|f_i|(b) = |f_i|(b') = |f|(a),\]

we have $b = b'$.

A double induction on the pair $(n, p)$, where $n$ is the highest dimension $k$ such that $P_k \neq \emptyset$ and $p$ is the cardinal of $P_n$, shows with the help of Lemma 15.1.5 that there is a morphism $g : P \to Q^{(i)}$ is $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ factoring $f$ as in the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{c}
P \\
\downarrow^{|f|} \\
Q
\end{array}
\xymatrix{ 
|P| & |Q| \\
|Q| & |Q^{(i)}| & \ar_{|f_i|} |Q^{(i)}|}
\]

Thus

\[\text{Pol}_{\omega}(P, \lim_i Q^{(i)}) \simeq \lim_i \text{Pol}_{\omega}(P, Q^{(i)})\]

and we have proved the following result:

**16.4.2 Proposition.** A finite polygraph is a finitely presentable object in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$.

One easily checks that the isomorphism classes of finite polygraphs form a set. As a consequence of Propositions 16.4.1 and 16.4.2 we get the following theorem:

**16.4.3 Theorem.** The category $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ is locally finitely presentable.

### 16.5 Contexts

We recall here very briefly the notion of context, based on the presentation of [279, Section 5, p. 191], and refer to this article for detailed proofs. Let $n \geq 1$, $P$ a polygraph and $x = (u, v)$ an ordered pair of parallel $(n - 1)$-cells in $P'$. We call here such a pair $x$ an $n$-type (a convenient alternative terminology for “$n$-sphere” as defined in §15.1.1). The polygraph $P$ may be extended to
a polygraph $P[x]$ by adjoining a new generator $x$ in dimension $n$, such that $s_{n-1}x = u$ and $t_{n-1}x = v$. We call the $n$-cell $x = x^*$ (where $x^*$ is short for $i_n(x)$) of $P[x]^*$ an $n$-indeterminate of type $x$ over $P$.

16.5.1 Definition. Let $n \geq 1$, $P$ a polygraph and $x$ an $n$-type of $P$. An $n$-cell $u \in P[x]^*$ is a context of type $x$ if $w_x(u) = 1$.

A context $u$ of type $x$ will be denoted $u = c[x]$, where $x = x^*$. An $n$-context $u = c[x]$ of type $x$ is thin whenever $w_u(u) = 0$ for all $n$-generators $a \in P[x]_n \setminus \{x\}$, that is, all generators in $\text{supp}(u)$ are of dimension $< n$ but $x$ itself, and $c[x]$ is trivial if $c[x] = x$. There is a well-defined operation of substitution in $n$-contexts: let $z$ be an $n$-cell of $P^*$ of type $x = (u, v)$, that is, such that $s_{n-1}z = u$ and $t_{n-1}z = v$, and $c[x]$ an $n$-context of type $x$ over $P$. From Lemma 15.1.5, we get a morphism

$$\text{sub}_z : P[x]^* \to P^*$$

in $\text{Cat}_\omega$ taking $x$ to $z$ and leaving other generators unchanged. Then the substitution of $x$ by $z$ in $c$, noted $c[z]$ may be defined as $\text{sub}_z(c[x])$.

Recall from [279] that thin $n$-contexts can always be expressed in the (non-unique) form:

$$c[x] = u_{n-1} *_{n-2} (\ldots (*_1 (u_0 *_0 x) *_0 v_1) *_1 \ldots) *_{n-2} v_{n-1}$$

(16.9)

where $u_i$ and $v_i$ are identities over $i$-dimensional cells. This remark leads to the following technical result:

16.5.2 Lemma. For each $n \geq 1$ there is a map $\partial$ taking each thin $n$-context $c[x]$ to an $(n-1)$-context $\partial c[x']$ of type $x' = (s_{n-2}x, t_{n-2}x)$ such that

- for each $n$-cell $z$ of type $x$, $s_{n-1}c[z] = \partial c[s_{n-1}z]$ and $t_{n-1}c[z] = \partial c[t_{n-1}z]$,
- if $\partial c[x']$ is trivial, then so is $c[x]$.

Proof. See [279, p. 193].

□

16.5.3 Remark. Conversely, let $c[y]$ be an $(n-1)$-context of type $y = (u, v)$, where $u, v$ are parallel $(n-2)$-cells, and $x$ be an $n$-indeterminate such that $s_{n-2}(x) = u$ and $t_{n-2}(x) = v$, there is a unique thin $n$-context $\tau[x]$ such that $\partial \tau(y) = c[y]$.

16.5.4 Composition. Let now $u = c[x]$ be an $n$-context of type $x$ over $P$, and $d[y]$ be an $n$-context of type $y = (s_{n-1}u, t_{n-1}u)$ over $P[x]$. The previously defined substitution process yields an $n$-context $d[c[x]]$ of type $x$ over $P$.

16.5.5 Remark. Let $u = c[x]$ be an $(n-1)$-context of type $x$, $d[y]$ be an
\((n - 1)\)-context of type \(y = (s_{n-2}u, t_{n-2}u)\), and \(e[x] = d[c[x]]\) the composed context as above. For each \(n\)-indeterminate \(x\) such that
\[
(s_{n-2}x, t_{n-2}x) = (s_{n-2}u, t_{n-2}u),
\]
the thin \(n\)-context defined in Remark 16.5.3 satisfies the equation
\[
\overline{\tau}[x] = \overline{d}[\tau[x]].
\]  
\section*{16.6 Basis uniqueness}

Let \(P\) be a polygraph and \(C = P^*\) the free \(\omega\)-category it generates. We shall prove that the generators of \(P\) are entirely determined by \(C\) (see also [264, Section 4.8.3]).

\subsection*{16.6.1 Definition}

Let \(P\) be a polygraph and \(n > 0\). An \(n\)-cell \(u \in P^*_n\) is \textit{irreducible} if it is not a unit and whenever \(u = v *_i w\), then either \(u = v\) and \(w = 1^u_{t_i(v)}\) or \(u = w\) and \(v = 1^u_{s_i(w)}\).

\subsection*{16.6.2 Lemma}

An \(n\)-cell \(u \in P^*_n\) is irreducible if and only if it is a generating cell of the form \(u = a^*\) for \(a \in P_n\).

\textit{Proof.} Suppose that \(u\) is irreducible. By structural induction on \(u\) (see §15.1.9), either \(u = 1^u_{s_i(w)}\), which contradicts the hypothesis, or \(u = a^*\) with \(a \in P^*_n\), in which case we get the result, or \(u = v *_i w\). By definition, \(u = v\) or \(u = w\), so that the induction hypothesis applies and \(u\) is a generating cell.

Conversely, suppose that \(u = a^*\) and \(u = v *_i w\). By computing the weights on both sides, we may suppose without loss of generality that \(w_a(v) = 1\) and \(w_a(w) = 0\). Then, there is a context \(c[x]\) of type \(x = (s_{n-1}a^*, t_{n-1}a^*)\) such that \(v = c[a^*]\). Let \(y = (s_{n-1}v, t_{n-1}v)\) and denote by \(d[y]\) the context \(y *_i w\) of
type y. By substitution, \( d[c[a^*]] = u = a^* \). By Lemma 16.5.6, both contexts \( c[x] \) and \( d[y] \) are trivial. In particular, \( y * w = y \). By repeated applications of Lemma 16.5.2, we see that \( s_k(w) \) must be a unit cell for all \( k > i \), which implies \( w = \text{l}_u(y) = \text{l}_v(w) \). Therefore \( u = v * w = v \) and we are done. \( \square \)

We may now state the main result of this section:

16.6.3 Proposition. Let \( P, Q \) two polygraphs such that there is an isomorphism \( f : P^* \rightarrow Q^* \) in \( \text{Cat}_{\omega} \). Then there is a morphism \( g : P \rightarrow Q \) in \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \) such that, for each \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), \( g_n : P_n \rightarrow Q_n \) is a bijection, and \( f = g^* \).

Proof. Let \( a \in P_n \) be an \( n \)-generator. By Lemma 16.6.2, \( a^* \) is irreducible, and as \( f : P^* \rightarrow Q^* \) is an isomorphism, so is \( f(a^*) \). Therefore, by Lemma 16.6.2 again, there is a \( b = g_n(a) \in Q_n \) such that \( f(a^*) = b^* \). This defines the required map \( g_n : P_n \rightarrow Q_n \). By construction, \( f = g^* \). \( \square \)

16.7 Rewriting properties of \( n \)-polygraphs

The theory of rewriting developed in Chapters 1, 4 and 10 extends to \( n \)-polygraphs in a seamless way. Throughout this section, we fix an \( n \)-polygraph \( P \), with \( n \geq 2 \). Recall from §15.1.7, that, for any \( k \leq n \), we denote by \( P_{\leq k} \) the \( k \)-polygraph obtained by truncating \( P \) to dimension \( k \). By definition, the set \( P_n \) of \( n \)-generators is a cellular extension of the category \( P_{\leq n-1}^* \) freely generated by the \( (n-1) \)-polygraph \( P_{\leq n-1} \) and we think of \( P \) as a presentation of the \( (n-1) \)-category

\[
\overline{P} = P_{\leq n-1}^* / P_n
\]
defined as the quotient \( (n-1) \)-category, in the sense of §15.1.6. In this setting, the elements of \( P_n \) are called rewriting rules of \( P \).

16.7.1 Rewriting step. Let \( x, y \) be two parallel \( (n-1) \)-cells in \( P_{\leq n-1}^* \). A rewriting step of \( P \) from \( x \) to \( y \) is an \( n \)-cell \( w = c[a] \) with source \( x \) and target \( y \) of the form \( w = c[a] \) where \( a \) is a rewriting rule of \( P \) and \( c[w] \) is a thin \( n \)-context of type \((s_{n-1}(a), t_{n-1}(a))\). From (16.9), each rewriting step can be expressed in a (non-unique) form as

\[
c[a] = u_{n-1} *_{n-2} (\ldots (u_1 *_{0} a *_{0} v_1) *_{1} \ldots) *_{n-2} v_{n-1}
\]

where \( u_i \) and \( v_i \) are identities over \( i \)-dimensional cells, for every \( 1 \leq i \leq n-1 \). We denote by \( P_n^{\text{steps}} \) the set of rewriting steps of the polygraph \( P \).
Properties of the category of $n$-polygraphs

16.7.2 Rewriting path. A rewriting path of $P$ is a sequence

$$\phi = w_1, \ldots, w_k \quad (16.11)$$

of rewriting steps of $P$ such that $t_{n-1}(w_i) = s_{n-1}(w_{i+1})$, for every $1 \leq i \leq k - 1$.

Therefore, a rewriting path $\phi$ of type (16.11) yields an $n$-cell of $P^*_n$

$$\bar{\phi} = w_1 *_{n-1} \ldots *_{n-1} w_k. \quad (16.12)$$

In the case where $k = 0$, the rewriting path $\phi$ is said to be empty, and the corresponding $n$-cell $\bar{\phi}$ is of the form $1_u$ for some $u \in P^*_{n-1}$. Note that for any rewriting path $\phi = w_1, \ldots, w_k$, the $(n-1)$-cells $x = s_{n-1}(w_1)$ and $y = t_{n-1}(w_k)$ are respectively the source and target of $\bar{\phi}$, so that there is no ambiguity in writing $\phi : x \to y$. As in §4.1.3, if $\phi : x \to y$ and $\psi : y \to z$ are rewriting paths, we denote their concatenation by $\phi * \psi$. In particular, the sequence (16.11) may be denoted

$$\phi = w_1 * \ldots * w_k. \quad (16.13)$$

The following result is now an easy consequence of Proposition 15.1.8.

16.7.3 Proposition. For each $n$-cell $z$ in $P^*_n$, there is a rewriting path $\phi$ of $P$ such that $z = \phi$.

16.7.4 Remark. In Proposition 16.7.3, the rewriting path $\phi$ is not uniquely determined by $z$. However, if $\phi = w_1 * \ldots * w_k$ and $\phi' = w'_1 * \ldots * w'_{k'}$, are two rewriting paths such that $\bar{\phi} = \bar{\phi}'$, then $k' = k$. Therefore, the length of a rewriting path $\phi$ only depends on $\bar{\phi}$. Moreover, given $\phi$ and $\phi'$ as above, there is a permutation $\sigma$ of $\{1, \ldots, k\}$ such that for each $i \in \{1, \ldots, k\}$, $w_i$ and $w'_{\sigma(i)}$ are thin contexts $w_i = c[a]$ and $w'_{\sigma(i)} = c'[a]$ over the same generator $a \in P_{n-1}$.

16.7.5 Rewriting properties. Let $P$ be an $n$-polygraph. Its two top dimensions build a 1-polygraph $(P^*_n, P^\text{steps}_n)$, i.e., an abstract rewriting system, whose 0-generators are the $(n-1)$-cells of $P^*_n$ and 1-generators are rewriting steps of $P$. We thus extend the rewriting notions defined on 1-polygraphs in Section 1.3 to $n$-polygraphs as follows. We say that the $n$-polygraph $P$ is

terminating / quasi-terminating / Church-Rosser /
confluent / locally confluent / decreasing
convergent / quasi-convergent

when the 1-polygraph $(P^*_n, P^\text{steps}_n)$ is. In particular, the following general result still applies here, see Lemma 1.3.21:

16.7.6 Proposition. A terminating polygraph $P$ is confluent if and only if it is locally confluent.
16.7.7 Classification of local branchings. A branching of $P$ is a pair $(\phi, \psi)$ of rewriting paths $\phi : x \to y$, $\psi : x \to z$ of $P$ with common source $x$. Such a branching is local if both $\phi$ and $\psi$ are of length 1, that is, are rewriting steps of $P$. A local branching $(\phi, \psi)$ is

- trivial if $\psi = \phi$,
- orthogonal if there are rewriting steps $w : u \to v$ and $w' : u' \to v'$ such that $\overline{\phi} = w *_{n-2} 1_{u'}$ and $\overline{\psi} = 1_u *_{n-2} w'$ (or $\overline{\phi} = 1_{u'} *_{n-2} w$ and $\overline{\psi} = w' *_{n-2} 1_u$),
- overlapping if it is neither trivial nor orthogonal.

16.7.8 Minimal branching. The notion of minimal branching extends in arbitrary dimension $n \geq 2$ as follows. There is a binary relation $\sqsubseteq$ on the set of local branchings defined by $(\phi, \psi) \sqsubseteq (\phi', \psi')$ if and only if there is an $(n-1)$-context $c[y]$ of type $(s_{n-2}(\overline{\phi}), t_{n-2}(\overline{\psi}))$ (which is the same as $(s_{n-2}(\overline{\psi}), t_{n-2}(\overline{\phi}))$) such that $\overline{\phi} = \overline{\psi} = \overline{c}[y]$, where $\overline{c}[x]$ is the thin $n$-context defined in Remark 16.5.3. The relation $\sqsubseteq$ is clearly reflexive. Antisymmetry follows from Lemma 16.5.6, whereas transitivity is a consequence of (16.10). Therefore $\sqsubseteq$ is a partial order and we may define a minimal branching as a minimal element of the set of local branchings with respect to this order.

16.7.9 Critical branching. A branching is critical when it is overlapping and minimal.

16.7.10 Lemma. Given $n \geq 2$, an $n$-polygraph is locally confluent if and only if all its critical branchings are confluent.

Proof. Same proof as for Lemma 4.3.7. □

16.8 Polygraphs with finite derivation type

The property of finite derivation type has been studied in Chapter 8 for 2-polygraphs and in Chapter 12 for 3-polygraphs. It can be extended to any $n$-polygraphs as follows. An $n$-polygraph $P$ has finite derivation type if it is finite and if the free $(n, n-1)$-category $P^\top$ admits a finite acyclic cellular extension, that is, a finite cellular extension generating all $n$-spheres of $P^\top$. An $(n-1)$-category has finite derivation type when it admits a presentation by an $n$-polygraph with finite derivation type. As in the case of 1- and 2-categories, given two presentations of the same $(n-1)$-category by finite $n$-polygraphs, both
are of finite derivation type or neither is. The proof of this result given in [161, Proposition 3.3.4] is similar to the proof in the case of 1- and 2-categories given in Theorem 8.1.2 and Theorem 12.1.4 respectively.

16.8.1 Proposition. Let $P$ and $Q$ be Tietze equivalent finite $n$-polygraphs. Then the polygraph $P$ has finite derivation type if and only if $Q$ has.

16.8.2 Squier’s coherence theorem. For $n \leq 3$, we have shown that, for a convergent $n$-polygraph $P$, the set of critical branchings generate a homotopy basis of the $(n, n - 1)$-category $P^T$, see Theorems 2.5.10, 7.3.5 and 12.1.7. The proofs of these results extends to higher-dimensional polygraphs as follows, see [161, Proposition 4.3.4].

16.8.3 Theorem. Let $P$ be a convergent $n$-polygraph, and $P_{n+1}$ be a cellular extension of the free $(n, n - 1)$-category $P^T$. If $P_{n+1}$ contains, for every critical branching $(\phi, \psi)$ of $P$, one $(n + 1)$-generator of the form

$\phi \quad u \quad \psi$

$\psi' \quad A \quad \psi''$

$\phi'$

where $\phi'$ and $\psi'$ are $n$-cells in $P^*_n$, then the $(n + 1, n - 1)$-polygraph $(P, P_{n+1})$ is coherent.

Following Theorem 16.8.3, for every $n \geq 1$, a finite convergent $n$-polygraph with a finite set of critical branchings has finite derivation type. A 1-category having a finite convergent presentation therefore has finite derivation type, see Theorem 8.2.1. Note, however, that this result fails to generalize to $n$-categories for $n \geq 2$ as shown with the following counterexample.

16.8.4 A counterexample. We have constructed in §12.2.8 a finite convergent 3-polygraph Pearl$_3$ which does not have finite derivation type. By shifting dimensions on the polygraph Pearl$_3$, we obtain an $n$-polygraph Pearl$_n$, for any $n \geq 3$. It has exactly the same cells and compositions in dimensions $n - 3$, $n - 2$, $n - 1$ and $n$ as Pearl$_3$ has in dimensions 0, 1, 2 and 3; on top of that, it has one cell in each dimension up to $n - 4$ and no other possible compositions, except with degenerate cells. By construction, the polygraph Pearl$_n$ is finite and convergent, yet it still fails to have finite derivation type. We have thus proved that, for every natural number $n \geq 2$, there exists an $n$-category which does not have finite derivation type and admits a presentation by a finite convergent $(n + 1)$-polygraph. We refer the reader to [161] for more details on this result.
A catalogue of $n$-polygraphs

We have already presented a wealth of low-dimensional examples of $n$-polygraphs in Parts I, II and III, and many more will be found in Appendix A and C. The present chapter concentrates on some useful families of $n$-polygraphs based on familiar shapes: cylinders, cubes and simplices, namely Street’s orientals defined in the seminal paper [334]. These families are crucial in the development of a homotopy theory of $\omega$-categories.

We shall explain two methods for generating the above families. The first one is based on a direct definition of the cylinder polygraph $O_1 \otimes P$ of a polygraph $P$. The second is based on Steiner’s theory of augmented directed complexes [330], which is a very powerful tool to build polygraphs using chain complexes. In particular, it allows to define a tensor product for polygraphs (or even $\omega$-categories) from which we can recover the cylinder polygraph, but also a join operation.

17.1 First examples of $n$-polygraphs

17.1.1 Monoids. Of particular importance is the 2-polygraph associated to a presentation of a monoid by generators and rewriting rules (see Chapter 4 and Appendix A). Recall that given $M$ a monoid presented by a set of generators $P_1$ and a set $P_2$ of rewriting rules of the form $\alpha : w \Rightarrow w'$ where $w, w' \in P_1^*$, we get a 2-polygraph $P = \langle P_0 \mid P_1 \mid P_2 \rangle$, where $P_0 = \{\star\}$. The source and target maps are defined by $s_0(a) = t_0(a) = \ast$ for each $a \in P_1$, and $s_1(\alpha) = w$, and $t_1(\alpha) = w'$.
A catalogue of $n$-polygraphs

$t_1(\alpha) = w'$ for each rewrite rule $\alpha : w \Rightarrow w'$.

Remark that in this case we recover $M$ as the quotient category $C/X$ where $C$ is the free category $P^\ast \leftarrow P^\ast 1$ and $X = P_2$.

17.1.2 Terminal polygraph. The functor $G : \text{Cat}_{\omega} \to \text{Pol}_{\omega}$ from 15.1.10 also provides many natural examples of polygraphs. In particular $1^\text{pol} = G(1^\text{cat})$ where $1^\text{cat}$ is the terminal $\omega$-category has infinitely many generators in all dimensions $k \geq 2$. It is in fact a terminal object in the category $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$, as immediately implied by the adjunction.

17.1.3 Globular sets. Each $n$-globular set $X$ may be seen as an $n$-polygraph. Precisely, for each $n \in \mathbb{N}$ there is a natural inclusion functor $\text{Glob}_n \to \text{Pol}_n$ taking the globular set $X$ to the polygraph $P$ whose set of $k$-generators is just $P_k = X_k$ for $0 \leq k \leq n$. For example, the $n$-globe $\mathbb{O}_n$ is a polygraph with exactly two generators in dimensions $0 \leq k < n$ and a unique generator in dimension $n$. Likewise, the $n$-spheres $\partial \mathbb{O}_n$ provide another example of a series of $n$-polygraphs.

17.2 Tensoring polygraphs by $\mathbb{O}_1$

17.2.1 Before we turn to more complex examples of polygraphs, we need to describe a useful general construction, namely the tensor product of a polygraph by the 1-globe $\mathbb{O}_1$. In order to check the coherence of the following construction, we shall rely on the existence and the properties of the functor $\Gamma : \text{Cat}_{\omega} \to \text{Cat}_{\omega}$ taking the $\omega$-category $C$ to the $\omega$-category $\Gamma C$ of “small cylinders internal to $C$”. We refer to Chapter 20 for a detailed account of this functor $\Gamma$. As for the present argument, we just need to know that $\Gamma$ comes equipped with natural transformations

$$\pi : \Gamma \to \text{lCat}_{\omega}$$

and maps $| - | : (\Gamma C)_n \to C_{n+1}$ taking an $n$-cylinder $u \in (\Gamma C)_n$ to its principal cell $|u| \in C_{n+1}$, such that, for any $n$-cylinder $u \in (\Gamma C)_n$, the source and target
17.2 Tensoring polygraphs by $\mathbb{O}_1$

of $|u|$ are given by

$$|u|: \Pi_C(u)\ast_{t_0(u)}\ast_1\cdots\ast_{t_{n-1}(u)}|s_{n-1}(u)|\ast_{s_{n-1}}\cdots\ast_{s_0}|s_0(u)|\ast_0\Pi_C(u).$$

Let us first introduce a few notations to be used throughout the construction.

- The 0-generators of $\mathbb{O}_1$ will be denoted by $0^-$ and $0^+$.
- The 1-generator of $\mathbb{O}_1$ will be denoted by $1$, so that $1:0^-\rightarrow 0^+$.
- For any set $A$ of symbols, we denote by $0^-\otimes A$ (resp. $0^+\otimes A$, $1\otimes A$) the set of all symbols of the form $0^-\otimes a$ (resp. $0^+\otimes a$, $1\otimes a$), where $a \in A$.
- Given a symbol $a$, we define the following formal expressions:
  
  \begin{align*}
  S_0(a) &= 0^-\otimes a, \\
  T_0(a) &= 0^+\otimes a, \\
  S_1(a) &= (0^-\otimes a)\ast_0 (1\otimes t_0(a)), \\
  T_1(a) &= (1\otimes s_0(a))\ast_0 (0^+\otimes a);
  \end{align*}

  and more generally, for each integer $i > 1$:

  \begin{align*}
  S_i(a) &= (0^-\otimes a)\ast_{s_{i-1}}(1\otimes t_i(a))\ast_{s_{i-1}}\cdots\ast_{s_1}(1\otimes s_0(a))\ast_0 (0^+\otimes a), \\
  T_i(a) &= (1\otimes s_{i-1}(a))\ast_{s_{i-1}}\cdots\ast_{s_1}(1\otimes s_0(a))\ast_0 (0^+\otimes a).
  \end{align*}

These expressions will eventually denote actual cells whenever the indeterminate $a$ is interpreted appropriately.

17.2.2 Let now $P$ be a polygraph. We shall build a new polygraph $Q = \mathbb{O}_1 \otimes P$ endowed with a morphism $h: P^* \rightarrow \Gamma Q^*$ giving rise to the following families of maps:

- morphisms $\text{top}, \text{bot} : P \rightarrow Q$ in $\text{Pol}_{\omega}$ respectively taking an $n$-cell $u \in P_n^*$ to $\text{top}(u) = 0^-\otimes u = \Pi_Q(h(u))$ and $\text{bot}(u) = 0^+\otimes u = \Pi_Q(h(u))$;
- maps $1 \otimes - : P_n^* \rightarrow Q_{n+1}^*$ defined as the composite

  \[ P_n^* \xrightarrow{h_n} \Gamma Q_n^* \xrightarrow{|-|} Q_{n+1}^* \]

  such that

  \[ 1 \otimes u : S_n(u) \rightarrow T_n(u) \quad (17.1) \]

  for any $n$-cell $u \in P_n^*$. 
We now define $Q$, $\text{bot}$, $\text{top}$ and $1 \otimes -$ by simultaneous induction on the dimension.

- For $n = 0$, the set of $0$-generators of $Q$ is defined by $Q_0 = 0^- \otimes P_0 \sqcup 0^+ \otimes P_0$ whereas $\text{top}_0$ and $\text{bot}_0$ are given by $\text{top}_0(a) = 0^- \otimes a$ and $\text{bot}_0(a) = 0^+ \otimes a$ for $a \in P_0$.

- The set of $1$-generators of $Q$ is defined by $Q_1 = 0^- \otimes P_1 \sqcup 0^+ \otimes P_1 \sqcup 1 \otimes P_0$, whereas $\text{top}_1, \text{bot}_1 : P_1 \to Q_1$ and $1 \otimes - : P_0 \to Q_1$ are given by the obvious canonical inclusions. The source and target maps $s^Q_0 : Q_0 \to Q_1$ and $t^Q_0 : Q_0 \to Q_1$ are as expected morphisms up to dimension $1$. As for $\text{top}_0$ and $\text{bot}_0$, we define $s^Q_0(1 \otimes a) = 0^- \otimes a$ and $t^Q_0(1 \otimes a) = 0^+ \otimes a$. Because $P^*_0 = P_0$ there is nothing more to verify here, and (17.1) holds.

- Suppose now $Q$ has been defined up to dimension $n$, as well as morphisms $\text{top}, \text{bot} : P \to Q$ in $\text{Pol}_{\text{cat}}$ up to dimension $n$, a morphism $h : P^* \to \Gamma Q^*$ in $\text{Cat}_{\text{cat}}$ up to dimension $n - 1$ and corresponding maps $1 \otimes - : P^*_k \to Q^*_{k+1}$ satisfying equations (17.1) for all $k \in \{0, ..., n - 1\}$. The set of $(n+1)$-generators of $Q$ is defined by $Q_{n+1} = 0^- \otimes P_{n+1} \sqcup 0^+ \otimes P_{n+1} \sqcup 1 \otimes P_n$ whereas $\text{top}_{n+1}, \text{bot}_{n+1} : P_{n+1} \to Q_{n+1}$ and $1 \otimes - : P_n \to Q_{n+1}$ are given by the obvious canonical inclusions. The source and target maps are defined as above for the generators of the form $0^- \otimes a$ and $0^+ \otimes a$, namely:

$$
\begin{align*}
    s^Q_n(0^- \otimes a) &= 0^- \otimes s^P_n(a), \\
    s^Q_n(0^+ \otimes a) &= 0^+ \otimes s^P_n(a), \\
    t^Q_n(0^- \otimes a) &= 0^- \otimes t^P_n(a), \\
    t^Q_n(0^+ \otimes a) &= 0^+ \otimes t^P_n(a).
\end{align*}
$$

As for generators of the form $1 \otimes a$, with $a \in P_n$, the induction hypothesis implies that $S_n(a)$ and $T_n(a)$ denote well-defined cells in $Q^*_n$ and moreover that these two cells are parallel. Hence, the $n$-source and $n$-target of $1 \otimes a$ may be defined by $s^Q_n(1 \otimes a) = S_n(a)$ and $t^Q_n(1 \otimes a) = T_n(a)$, whence $1 \otimes a : S_n(a) \to T_n(a)$. It follows that the polygraph $Q$ is now defined up to dimension $n + 1$, together with the morphisms $\text{top}, \text{bot} : P \to Q$, and that (17.1) holds for the $(n+1)$-generators of $P$. This implies that the morphism $h$ can be extended in dimension $n$ by a map $h_n : P_n \to (\Gamma Q^*)_n$ commuting to source and target maps. By the universal property of polygraphs (Lemma 15.1.5), $h$ extends as a morphism $P^* \to \Gamma Q^*$ up to dimension $n$, and by composing with the principal cell map $|-| : (\Gamma Q^*)_n \to Q^*_{n+1}$, we
get a map

\[ 1 \otimes - : P^*_n \to Q^*_{n+1} \]

satisfying (17.1) for all cells \( u \in P^*_n \). Thus, the induction is complete.

17.3 Families of polygraphs

17.3.1 Cylinders. Let \( n \geq 0 \). The free-standing \( n \)-cylinder is by definition the polygraph

\[ \text{Cyl}_n = \mathcal{O}_1 \otimes \mathcal{O}_n. \]

Now recall that the \( n \)-globe \( \mathcal{O}_n \) has \( 2n + 1 \) generators, namely the only \( n \)-generator \( \mathbf{n} \) together with the \( 2n \) generators of the form \( i^- = s_i(\mathbf{n}) \) and \( i^+ = t_i(\mathbf{n}) \) for \( i \in \{0, \ldots, n-1\} \). Thus, \( \text{Cyl}_0 \) is just \( \mathcal{O}_1 \), whereas for \( n > 0 \) the generators of \( \text{Cyl}_n \) are listed below.

- There are four 0-generators, namely \( 0^- \otimes 0^-, \ 0^- \otimes 0^+, \ 0^+ \otimes 0^-, \) and \( 0^+ \otimes 0^+. \)
- For \( 0 < i \leq n-1 \), there are six \( i \)-generators, namely \( 0^- \otimes i^-, \ 0^- \otimes i^+, \ 0^+ \otimes i^-, \ 0^+ \otimes i^+, \ 1 \otimes (i-1)^- \) and \( 1 \otimes (i-1)^+ \).
- There are four \( n \)-generators, namely \( 0^- \otimes \mathbf{n}, \ 0^- \otimes \mathbf{n}, \ 1 \otimes (n-1)^- \) and \( 0^+ \otimes (n-1)^+ \).
- There is only one \((n+1)\)-generator \( 1 \otimes \mathbf{n} \).

Therefore \( \text{Cyl}_n \) has exactly \( 6n + 3 \) generators. Moreover, the source and target of these generators are given by the formulas (17.1). Here are pictures of \( \text{Cyl}_0 \), \( \text{Cyl}_1 \) and \( \text{Cyl}_2 \):
### 17.3.2 Cubes

The tensor product construction above also leads to the definition of the polygraphic $n$-cubes. Precisely, this family $(\text{Cub}_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ of polygraphs is defined by

- $\text{Cub}_0 = \emptyset$,
- $\text{Cub}_{n+1} = \bigotimes \text{Cub}_n$.

It follows from the above construction that, for each $i \in \{0, ..., n\}$, the set of $i$-generators of $\text{Cub}_n$ has $\binom{n}{i} 2^{n-i}$ elements, and therefore the total number of generators in $\text{Cub}_n$ is

$$\sum_{i=0}^{n} \binom{n}{i} 2^{n-i} = 3^n.$$

A convenient way to encode these generators is by labeling them by words on the alphabet $\{-, 1, +\}$, the $i$-generators being those with exactly $i$ occurrences of the letter 1. For example, $\text{Cub}_2$ looks like

$$\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\{--\} \\
\{1-\} \\
\{++\}
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{c}
\{--\} \\
\{1-\} \\
\{++\}
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{c}
\{--\} \\
\{1-\} \\
\{++\}
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{c}
\{--\} \\
\{1-\} \\
\{++\}
\end{array}
\end{align*}$$

whereas $\text{Cub}_3$ looks like

$$\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\{---\} \\
\{1--\} \\
\{++\}
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{c}
\{---\} \\
\{1--\} \\
\{++\}
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{c}
\{---\} \\
\{1--\} \\
\{++\}
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{c}
\{---\} \\
\{1--\} \\
\{++\}
\end{array}
\end{align*}$$

where the 3-cell $[111]$ goes from the composition of the front faces

$$s_2[111] = ([11] \ast_0 [1++]) \ast_1 ([1-] \ast_0 [1+1]) \ast_1 ([11-] \ast_0 [++1])$$

to the composition of the back faces

$$t_2[111] = ([--1] \ast_0 [11+] ) \ast_1 ([1-1] \ast_0 [+11]) \ast_1 ([1--] \ast_0 [+1]).$$
17.3.3 Simplices. The correspondence \( P \mapsto \mathbb{O}_1 \otimes P \) from \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \) to \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \) is easily seen to be functorial. Now, for each polygraph \( P \), we can form the following pushout in \( \text{Cat}_{\omega} \):

\[
P^* \xrightarrow{\text{top}} (\mathbb{O}_1 \otimes P)^* \\
\downarrow \\
\text{1}_{\text{cat}} \\
\downarrow \\
C(P).
\]

This defines a functor \( P \mapsto C(P) \) from \( \text{Pol}_{\omega} \) to \( \text{Cat}_{\omega} \). Because \( \text{top} \) is a cofibration of \( \text{Cat}_{\omega} \) (see §19.2.1), \( 1_{\text{cat}} \to C(P) \) is also a cofibration and as \( 1_{\text{cat}} \) is cofibrant, so is \( C(P) \). By Theorem 21.1.6, there is a polygraph \( S(P) \) such that \( C(P) = S(P)^* \). It is now possible to define a family \((O_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\) of polygraphs by

- \( O_0 = \mathbb{O}_0 \),
- \( O_{n+1} = S(O_n) \).

It turns out that \( O_n \) is precisely the polygraphic \( n \)-th simplex, or \( n \)-th oriental, first introduced in [334]. For each \( 0 \leq i \leq n \) the set of \( i \)-generators ("\( i \)-faces") of \( O_n \) has \( \binom{n+1}{i+1} \) elements. The \( i \)-generators of \( O_n \) may be conveniently encoded by strictly increasing sequences of integers \( \langle n_0, \ldots, n_i \rangle \), where \( 0 \leq n_0 < n_1 < \ldots < n_i \leq n \). For example, \( O_2 \) and \( O_3 \) may be pictured as follows:

![Diagram of O2 and O3 polygraphs]

\( (0) \)

\( (0,1) \)
\( (0,2) \)
\( (1) \)
\( (1,2) \)
\( (2) \)

\( (0) \)

\( (0,1) \)
\( (0,2) \)
\( (0,3) \)
\( (1) \)
\( (1,2) \)
\( (1,3) \)
\( (2) \)
17.4 Construction of polygraphs via Steiner’s theory

We shall now present Steiner’s theory of augmented directed complexes [330] and use it to construct some polygraphs. Other similar formalisms include Street’s parity complexes [335, 336] and Johnson’s pasting schemes [206].

17.4.1 Augmented directed complexes. In this section, by “chain complex” we will always mean “chain complex of abelian groups in non-negative degree” (see §E.2.1). Recall that an augmented chain complex \((K, d, e)\) is a chain complex \((K, d)\) endowed with an augmentation \(e\), that is, with a map of abelian groups \(e: K_0 \to \mathbb{Z}\) such that \(ed_1 = 0\). A morphism from an augmented chain complex \((K, d, e_K)\) to a second augmented chain complex \((L, d_L, e_L)\) is a morphism of chain complex \(f\) from \((K, d_K)\) to \((L, d_L)\) such that \(e_Lf = e_K\).

An augmented directed complex is an augmented chain complex \((K, d, e)\) equipped with, for every \(n \geq 0\), a submonoid \(K_n^+\) of positive chains of the abelian group \(K_n\). A morphism \(f: K \to L\) between two augmented directed complexes consists of a morphism of the underlying augmented chain complexes that respects the positive chains in the sense that \(f(K_n^+) \subseteq L_n^+\) for every \(n \geq 0\). We will denote by \(ADC\) the resulting category.

17.4.2 From \(\omega\)-categories to augmented directed complexes. We define a functor \(\lambda: \text{Cat}_{\omega} \to \text{ADC}\) by sending an \(\omega\)-category \(C\) to the following augmented directed complex \(\lambda(C)\):

- For every \(n \geq 0\), the abelian group \((\lambda(C))_n\) is generated by elements \([x]\), for \(x\) an \(n\)-cell of \(C\), subject to the relations
  \[
  [x *_i y] = [x] + [y]
  \]
  for pairs of \(i\)-composable \(n\)-cells \(x\) and \(y\).

- For every \(n \geq 1\) and every \(n\)-cell \(x\) of \(C\), we set
  \[
  d_n([x]) = [r_{n-1}(x)] - [s_{n-1}(x)].
  \]

- If \(x\) is a 0-cell of \(C\), we set
  \[
  e([x]) = 1.
  \]

- Finally, for every \(n \geq 0\), the submonoid \((\lambda(C))^+_n\) is the submonoid of \((\lambda(C))_n\) generated by the elements \([x]\) for \(x \in C_n\).

The globular relations easily imply that \(d\) is indeed a differential so that \(\lambda(C)\) is indeed an augmented directed complex.

Given an \(\omega\)-functor \(f: C \to D\), the morphism of augmented directed
sequences $\lambda(f) : \lambda(C) \to \lambda(D)$ is defined on generators by

$$ (\lambda(f))(\{x\}) = \{f(x)\}. $$

### 17.4.3 From chain complexes to $\omega$-categories

We now define a functor $\mu : \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \to \text{Cat}_\omega$, where $\text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}$ denotes the category of chain complexes. Given a chain complex $K$, the associated $\omega$-category $\mu(K)$ is defined as follows:

- For $n \geq 0$, an $n$-cell of $\mu(K)$ consists of a table

$$ x = \begin{pmatrix} x^-_0 & \cdots & x^-_n \\ x^+_0 & \cdots & x^+_n \end{pmatrix}, $$

where

- $x_i^\varepsilon$, for $0 \leq i \leq n$ and $\varepsilon = \pm$, belongs to $K_i$,
- $d(x_i^\varepsilon) = x_{i-1}^\varepsilon - x_{i-1}^\varepsilon$ for $1 \leq i \leq n$ and $\varepsilon = \pm$.

- For $n \geq 1$, the source and target of such a cell $x$ are given by

$$ s(x) = \begin{pmatrix} x^-_0 & \cdots & x^-_{n-1} \\ x^+_0 & \cdots & x^+_{n-1} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad t(x) = \begin{pmatrix} x^-_0 & \cdots & x^+_{n-1} \\ x^+_0 & \cdots & x^+_{n-1} \end{pmatrix}. $$

- For $n \geq 0$, the unit cell of such a cell $x$ is given by

$$ 1_x = \begin{pmatrix} x^-_0 & \cdots & x^-_n & 0 \\ x^+_0 & \cdots & x^+_n & 0 \end{pmatrix}. $$

- Finally, if

$$ x = \begin{pmatrix} x^-_0 & \cdots & x^-_n \\ x^+_0 & \cdots & x^+_n \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad y = \begin{pmatrix} y^-_0 & \cdots & y^-_n \\ y^+_0 & \cdots & y^+_n \end{pmatrix}, $$

are two $n$-cells of $\mu(K)$ such that the $t_i(x) = s_i(y)$ for some $0 \leq i < n$, then

$$ x \cdot_i y = \begin{pmatrix} x^-_0 & \cdots & x^-_i & x^-_{i+1} + y^-_{i+1} & \cdots & x^-_n + y^-_n \\ y^+_0 & \cdots & y^+_i & x^+_i + y^+_{i+1} & \cdots & x^+_n + y^+_n \end{pmatrix}. $$

One checks that $\mu(K)$ is indeed an $\omega$-category.

If $f : K \to L$ is a morphism of chain complexes, then the action on $n$-cells of the $\omega$-functor $\mu(f)$ is defined by

$$ \begin{pmatrix} x^-_0 & \cdots & x^-_n \\ x^+_0 & \cdots & x^+_n \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} f(x^-_0) & \cdots & f(x^-_n) \\ f(x^+_0) & \cdots & f(x^+_n) \end{pmatrix}. $$
17.4.4 Remark. The construction $\mu$ of the previous paragraph actually lands into the category $\text{Cat}_\omega(\text{Ab})$ of $\omega$-categories internal to abelian groups, that is, of $\omega$-categories whose set of $n$-cells is endowed with a structure of abelian group, and whose operations (sources, target, units and compositions) are compatible with these structures of abelian groups on cells. More precisely, the functor $\mu$ naturally lift to a functor $\text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}} \rightarrow \text{Cat}_\omega(\text{Ab})$. A theorem of Bourn [54] states that this functor is an equivalence of categories. This is sometimes called the globular Dold-Kan correspondence.

17.4.5 From augmented directed complexes to $\omega$-categories. We now define a functor $\nu : \text{ADC} \rightarrow \text{Cat}_\omega$ as a subfunctor of the functor

$$\text{ADC} \xrightarrow{U} \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}} \xrightarrow{\mu} \text{Cat}_\omega,$$

where $U$ denotes the obvious forgetful functor. If $K$ is an augmented directed complex, an $n$-cell

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc} s_0(x) & \cdots & s_n(x) \\ t_0(x) & \cdots & t_n(x) \end{array} \right)$$

defined on $0 \leq i \leq n$ and $i = \pm$, is a positive chain (that is, is in $K^+$),

$$e(s_i^\pm) = 1 \text{ for } i = \pm.$$

One checks that the operations of the $\omega$-category $\mu(K)$ restricts to $\nu(K)$ and that if $f : K \rightarrow L$ is a morphism of augmented directed complexes, then the $\omega$-functor $\mu(f) : \mu(K) \rightarrow \mu(L)$ restricts to an $\omega$-functor $\nu(f) : \nu(K) \rightarrow \nu(L)$.

17.4.6 Proposition. The functors

$$\lambda : \text{Cat}_\omega \rightarrow \text{ADC} \quad \nu : \text{ADC} \rightarrow \text{Cat}_\omega$$

define a pair of adjoint functors.

Proof. We will only define the components of the adjunction morphisms and leave the verification to the reader. If $C$ is an $\omega$-category, the unit of the adjunction at $C$ is the $\omega$-functor $\eta_C : C \rightarrow \nu(\lambda(C))$ defined on $n$-cells by

$$x \mapsto \left( \begin{array}{ccc} [s_0(x)] & \cdots & [s_n(x)] \\ [t_0(x)] & \cdots & [t_n(x)] \end{array} \right).$$

If $K$ is an augmented chain complex, the counit of the adjunction $K$ is the morphism $\epsilon_K : \lambda(\nu(K)) \rightarrow K$ defined on generating $n$-chains by

$$\left( \begin{array}{ccc} s_0(x) & \cdots & s_n(x) \\ t_0(x) & \cdots & t_n(x) \end{array} \right) \mapsto x_n.$$
where \( x_n \) denotes the \( n \)-chain \( x_n^- = x_n^+ \).

### 17.4.7 Remark.
Similarly, the functors

\[
U: \text{Cat}_{\omega} \to \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \\
\mu: \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \to \text{Cat}_{\omega},
\]

where \( U: \text{ADC} \to \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \) denotes the forgetful functor, define a pair of adjoint functors.

### 17.4.8 Augmented directed complexes with basis.
A basis \( B \) of an augmented directed complex is a sequence of subsets \( B_n \subseteq K_n \), indexed by \( n \geq 0 \), such that

- \( B_n \) is a basis of the \( \mathbb{Z} \)-module \( K_n \),
- \( B_n \) generates \( K_n^+ \) as a submonoid of \( K_n \).

The data of such a basis gives, for every \( n \geq 0 \), an isomorphism of abelian groups between \( K_n \) and \( \mathbb{Z}(B_n) \) restricting to an isomorphism of monoids between \( K_n^+ \) and \( \mathbb{N}(B_n) \). The elements of \( B_n \) can be recovered as the minimal non-zero elements of \( K_n^+ \) for the order on \( K_n \) defined by \( x \leq y \) if \( y - x \in K_n^+ \). This shows that if such a basis exists it is unique.

### 17.4.9 Proposition.
Let \( P \) be a polygraph. Then, for each \( n \geq 0 \), the family \( (\{x\})_{x \in P_n} \) forms a basis of \( \lambda(P^+) \).

**Proof.** As any \( n \)-cell of \( P^+ \) can be expressed as a composition of units and \( n \)-generators (see Proposition 15.1.8), the set \( P_n \) generates the monoid \( \lambda(P^+)_n^+ \). Let us show that it is a \( \mathbb{Z} \)-basis of \( \lambda(P^+)_n \). We have to prove that the morphism \( \beta: \mathbb{Z}[P_n] \to \lambda(P^+)_n \) which, given \( x \) in \( P_n \), sends \( [x] \) in \( \mathbb{Z}[P_n] \) to \( [x] \) in \( \lambda(P^+)_n \) is an isomorphism. By 16.2.5, we have a map \( \gamma: P^+_n \to \mathbb{Z}[P_n] \) sending an \( n \)-generator \( x \) of \( P \) to \( [x] \) and compositions to sums. We thus get a morphism \( \tilde{\gamma}: \lambda(P^+)_n \to \mathbb{Z}[P_n] \). We claim that \( \tilde{\gamma} \) is an inverse of \( \beta \). As \( \mathbb{Z}[P_n] \) is generated by the \( [x] \), it suffices to check equality \( \tilde{\gamma} \circ \beta = 1 \) on these elements, which is true by definition. As \( \lambda(P^+)_n \) is generated by the \( [x] \), we similarly get the equality \( \beta \circ \tilde{\gamma} = 1 \). \( \square \)

### 17.4.10 Let \( K \) be an augmented directed complex with a basis \( B \). Let \( n \geq 0 \) and let \( x \) be an \( n \)-chain of \( K \). We can write

\[
x = \sum_{b \in B_n} n_b b,
\]

where the \( n_b \) are integers, in a unique way. The support \( \text{supp}(x) \) of \( x \) is the set of \( b \) such that \( n_b \) is non-null. The negative support \( \text{supp}^-(x) \) and positive
A catalogue of $n$-polygraphs

The support $\text{supp}^+(x)$ of $x$ are the sets

$$\text{supp}^-(x) = \{ b \mid n_b < 0 \} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{supp}^+(x) = \{ b \mid n_b > 0 \}.$$ 

We define

$$x^- = \sum_{b \in \text{supp}^-(x)} (-n_b)b \quad \text{and} \quad x^+ = \sum_{b \in \text{supp}^+(x)} n_bb.$$

We have

$$x = x^+ - x^-.$$ 

Actually, $x^-$ and $x^+$ are the only positive $n$-chains $y$ and $z$ with disjoint support such that $x = z - y$.

If now $n \geq 1$ and $x$ is still an $n$-chain, we define the positive $(n-1)$-chains $d^-(x)$ and $d^+(x)$ to be

$$d^-(x) = (d(x))^\varepsilon \quad \text{and} \quad d^+(x) = (d(x))^\varepsilon.$$

More generally, if $0 \leq i \leq n$, we define two positive $i$-chains $d^+_i(x)$ and $d^-_i(x)$ by

$$d^+_i(x) = (d^-)^{n-i}(x) \quad \text{and} \quad d^-_i(x) = (d^+)^{n-i}(x).$$

### 17.4.11 Unital augmented directed complexes

Let $K$ be an augmented directed complex with basis $B$. For every element of the basis $B$, we define a table

$$\langle x \rangle = \begin{pmatrix}
  d^+_0(x) & \cdots & d^+_n(x) \\
  d^-_0(x) & \cdots & d^-_n(x)
\end{pmatrix}.$$

This table defines an $n$-cell of $\nu(K)$ if and only if $e(d^+_i(x)) = 1$ for $\varepsilon = \pm$.

This motivates the following definition. An augmented directed complex with basis is said to be unital if for every $n \geq 0$ and every $n$-chain $x$ of the basis, we have $e(d^+_0(x)) = 1$ and $e(d^-_0(x)) = 1$. If $K$ is a unital augmented directed complex, the cells of the form $\langle x \rangle$, for $x$ in the basis of $K$, are called atoms.

### 17.4.12 Loop-free augmented directed complexes

Let $K$ be an augmented directed complex $K$ with basis $B$. We say that $K$ is loop-free if there exists a partial order on $\bigcup_{n \geq 0} B_n$ such that, for every $n \geq 1$, every $x$ in $B_n$ and every $0 \leq i < n$, any element of the support of $d^+_i(x)$ is smaller than any element of the support of $d^-_i(x)$.

Similarly, we say that $K$ is strongly loop-free if there exists a partial order $\preceq$ on $\bigcup_{n \geq 0} B_n$ such that, for every $n \geq 1$, every $x$ in $B_n$, every $y$ in the support of $d^-x$ and every $z$ in the support of $d^+x$, one has

$$y \preceq x \preceq z.$$
As the terminology suggests, one can show that a strongly loop-free augmented directed complex is loop-free.

**17.4.13 Remark.** The definition of “loop-free” given in the previous paragraph is not the one from [330] but the one used in [331]. The two definitions can be shown to be equivalent.

**17.4.14 Steiner complexes.** We will say that an augmented directed complex is a *Steiner complex* if it is unital and loop-free. Similarly, we will say that it is a *strong Steiner complex* if it is unital and strongly loop-free.

**17.4.15 Loop-free polygraphs.** Let $P$ be a polygraph. We say that $P$ is *loop-free* if there exists a partial order on the set $\bigsqcup_{n\geq 0} P_n$ such that, for every $n \geq 1$, every $x$ in $P_n$ and every $0 \leq i < n$, any element of the support of $s_i(x)$ is strictly smaller than any element of the support of $t_i(x)$.

Similarly, we will say that $P$ is *strongly loop-free* if there exists a partial order $\leq$ on $\bigsqcup_{n\geq 0} P_n$ such that, for every $n \geq 1$, every $x$ in $P_n$, every $0 \leq i < n$, every $y$ in the support of $s_i(x)$ and every $z$ in the support of $t_i(x)$, one has $y \leq x \leq z$.

We will say that an $\omega$-category is a *Steiner $\omega$-category* (resp. a *strong Steiner $\omega$-category*) if it is generated by loop-free polygraph (resp. by a strongly loop-free polygraph).

We can now state a reformulation of the main theorems of [330]:

**17.4.16 Theorem.** The adjunction

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Cat}_\omega \\
\downarrow \\
\text{ADC}
\end{array}
$$

restricts to an equivalence of categories between

- the full subcategory of $\text{Cat}_\omega$ spanned by Steiner’s $\omega$-categories (resp. by strong Steiner’s $\omega$-categories),
- the full subcategory of $\text{ADC}$ on Steiner complexes (resp. by strong Steiner complexes).

Moreover, if $K$ is a Steiner complex, the $\omega$-category $\nu(K)$ is freely generated in the sense of polygraphs by its atoms.

**17.4.17 Remark.** The description of the full subcategories of $\text{Cat}_\omega$ appearing in the previous theorem is different in [330]. Nevertheless, it is shown in [11] that they are equivalent.
We will now use Steiner’s theory to construct some polygraphs and in particular recover the ones defined in the previous section.

17.4.18 Orientals. Consider the functor
\[ c : \hat{\Delta} \rightarrow \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \]
sending a simplicial set (see §F.1.1) to its normalized chain complex (see §F.1.2). This functor naturally lifts to a functor
\[ c_{\text{ad}} : \hat{\Delta} \rightarrow \text{ADC} \]
Indeed, if \( X \) is a simplicial set, then the chain complex \( c(X) \) can be equipped with the following structure of augmented directed complex.
- The augmentation \( e : \mathbb{Z}[X_0] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \) sends \([x]\), for \( x \) a 0-simplex, to 1.
- The submonoid \( c(X)_n^+ \), for \( n \geq 0 \), is generated by canonical basis of \( c(X)_n \).
Steiner showed that the composite
\[ \Delta \hookrightarrow \hat{\Delta} \overset{c_{\text{ad}}}{\longrightarrow} \text{ADC}, \]
where the first functor denotes the Yoneda embedding, lands into strong Steiner complexes. In particular, by post-composing by \( v : \text{ADC} \rightarrow \text{Cat}_{\omega} \), we get a functor
\[ O : \Delta \rightarrow \text{Cat}_{\omega} \]
landing into \( \omega \)-categories generated by polygraphs. This functor is the so-called cosimplicial object of orientals. In particular, for \( n \geq 0 \), we recover the \( n \)-th oriental \( O_n \) as defined in §17.3.3.

More generally, it is shown in [14] that if the simplicial set \( X \) is a simplicial complex (this means, first, that the \((n+1)\)-faces of any \( n \)-simplex are distinct and, second, that for any set \( E \) of \( n+1 \) 0-simplices, there is at most one non-degenerate \( n \)-simplex whose set of 0-simplices is \( E \)), then \( c_{\text{ad}}(X) \) is a strong Steiner complex. Under this condition, we thus get an \( \omega \)-category \( v(c_{\text{ad}}(X)) \) generated by a polygraph, which deserves to be called the oriental associated to \( X \).

17.4.19 Globes. The \( n \)-category \( O_n \) is freely generated by a globular set. In particular, it is generated by a polygraph \( P \) whose generators are the cells of this globular set. If we denote by \( x \) the principal \( n \)-cell of \( O_n \), then
\[
\begin{align*}
    s_0(x) \preceq \cdots \preceq s_{n-1}(x) \preceq s_n(x) = x = t_n(x) \preceq t_{n-1}(x) \preceq \cdots \preceq t_0(x)
\end{align*}
\]
17.4 Construction of polygraphs via Steiner’s theory

is a total order on generators of $P$ showing that $P$ is strongly loop-free. This shows that $O_n$ is a strong Steiner $\omega$-category, so that we have

$$O_n \cong \nu(\lambda(O_n)).$$

Let us describe explicitly the augmented directed complex $\lambda(O_n)$.

- The chains are defined by

$$\lambda(O_n) = \begin{cases} 
\mathbb{Z}[\{s_i(x), t_i(x)\}] & \text{if } 0 \leq i < n, \\
\mathbb{Z}[\{x\}] & \text{if } i = n, \\
0 & \text{if } i > n.
\end{cases}$$

- If $0 < i < n$, then

$$d(s_i(x)) = t_{i-1}(x) - s_{i-1}(x) \quad \text{and} \quad d(t_i(x)) = t_{i-1}(x) - s_{i-1}(x),$$

and

$$d(x) = t_{n-1}(x) - s_{n-1}(x).$$

- The augmentation is defined by

$$e(s_0(x)) = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad e(t_0(x)) = 1.$$

- The monoids of positive chains are given by

$$\lambda(O_n)^+ = \begin{cases} 
\mathbb{N}[\{s_i(x), t_i(x)\}] & \text{if } 0 \leq i < n, \\
\mathbb{N}[\{x\}] & \text{if } i = n, \\
0 & \text{if } i > n.
\end{cases}$$

One can easily check that $\nu(\lambda(O_n))$ is indeed isomorphic to $O_n$ without invoking Steiner’s theorem.

17.4.20 Tensor product of augmented directed complexes. Let $K$ and $L$ be two augmented directed complexes. We define their tensor product $K \otimes L$ in the following way:

- For $n \geq 0$,

$$(K \otimes L)_n = \bigoplus_{i+j=n} K_i \otimes L_j.$$

- If $x$ is in $K_i$ and $y$ is in $K_j$ with $i + j > 0$, then

$$d(x \otimes y) = d(x) \otimes y + (-1)^j x \otimes d(y),$$

where by convention $d(z) = 0$ is $z$ is in $K_0$ or $L_0$. 


– If $x$ is in $K_0$ and $y$ is in $L_0$, then
\[ e(x \otimes y) = e(x)e(y). \]

– For $n \geq 0$, the submonoid $(K \otimes L)_n^+$ is generated by the chains of the form $x \otimes y$ with $x$ in $K_i^+$ and $y$ in $L_j^+$ with $i + j = n$.

This tensor product defines a (non-symmetric) monoidal structure on ADC which is biclosed in the sense that, for $X$ an object, the functors $X \otimes -$ and $- \otimes X$ both admit a right adjoint. The unit of this tensor product is $\lambda(C_0)$.

17.4.21 Proposition. The tensor product of two strong Steiner complexes is a strong Steiner complex.

Proof. This is [330, Example 3.10]. □

17.4.22 Tensor product of strong Steiner $\omega$-categories. Let $C$ and $D$ be two strong Steiner $\omega$-categories. We define their tensor product by
\[ C \otimes D = \nu(\lambda(C) \otimes \lambda(D)). \]

Steiner’s theory and the previous proposition imply that $C \otimes D$ is still a strong Steiner $\omega$-category. Moreover, if $C$ is generated by a polygraph $P$ and $D$ is generated by a polygraph $Q$, the $\omega$-category $C \otimes D$ is generated by a polygraph $P \otimes Q$ whose $n$-generators are given by the formula
\[ (P \otimes Q)_n = \bigsqcup_{i+j=n} P_i \times Q_j. \]

17.4.23 Theorem. There exists a unique (up to unique isomorphism) biclosed monoidal structure on $\text{Cat}_\omega$ that extends the monoidal structure given by the tensor product of Steiner $\omega$-categories.

Proof. This is stated in [330, Section 7]. A detailed proof can be found in [15, Appendix A] □

17.4.24 Remark. The tensor product given by the previous theorem is called the Gray tensor product. It was defined for 2-categories by Gray in [151]. It was first extended to $\omega$-categories by Al-Agl and Steiner [5]. Crans then gave alternate descriptions [97].

17.4.25 Proposition. The tensor product of two $\omega$-categories generated by polygraphs is generated by a polygraph.

Proof. See [168, Theorem 1.35] or [256, Proposition 5.1.2.7]. □

17.4.26 Remark. This proposition shows that it makes sense to talk of the tensor product of two polygraphs. In particular, identifying $\bigodot_1$ with its generating
polygraph, for any polygraph $P$, we get a polygraph $O_1 \otimes P$. One can show that this polygraph is the same as the one defined in Section 17.2.

### 17.4.27 Cylinders and cubes.

It follows from the previous remark than one has

$$(\text{Cyl}_n)^* \cong O_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes O_n \cong \nu(\lambda(O_1) \otimes \cdots \otimes \lambda(O_n))$$

and

$$(\text{Cub}_n)^* \cong O_1 \otimes \cdots \otimes O_1 \cong \nu(\lambda(O_1) \otimes \cdots \otimes \lambda(O_1)),$$

where $O_1$ and $\lambda(O_1)$ both appear $n$ times.

### 17.4.28 Join of augmented directed complexes.

Let $K$ and $L$ be two augmented directed complexes. We define their join $K \star L$ in the following way:

- For $n \geq 0$,
  $$(K \star L)_n = \bigoplus_{i \geq -1, j \geq -1} K_i \otimes L_j,$$
  where by convention $K_{-1} = \mathbb{Z}$ and $L_{-1} = \mathbb{Z}$.

- If $x$ is in $K_i$ and $y$ is in $K_j$ with $i + 1 + j > 0$, then
  $$d(x \otimes y) = d(x) \otimes y + (-1)^{i+1} x \otimes d(y),$$
  where by convention $d(z) = e(z)$ if $z$ is in $K_0$ or $L_0$, and $d(n) = 0$ for $n$ in $K_{-1}$ or $L_{-1}$.

- If $x$ is in $K_0$ and $y$ is in $L_0$, then
  $$e(x \otimes 1) = e(x) \quad \text{and} \quad e(1 \otimes y) = e(y).$$

- For $n \geq 0$, the submonoid $(K \star L)^*_n$ is generated by the chains of the form $x \otimes y$ with $x$ in $K^*_i$ and $y$ in $L^*_j$ with $i + 1 + j = n$.

The join defines a (non-symmetric) monoidal structure on $\text{ADC}$. The unit is the initial augmented directed complex, the null complex. This monoidal structure is not biclosed but only locally biclosed in some appropriate sense (see [15, paragraph 5.7]). This locally biclosedness is equivalent to the fact that the joint commutes with (non-empty) connected colimits in each variable.

### 17.4.29 Proposition. The join of two strong Steiner complexes is a strong Steiner complex.

**Proof.** This is [15, Corollary 6.21]. □
17.4.30 Join of strong Steiner $\omega$-categories. Let $C$ and $D$ be two strong Steiner $\omega$-categories. We define their join by

$$C \star D = \nu(\lambda(C) \star \lambda(D)).$$

Steiner’s theory and the previous proposition imply that $C \star D$ is still a strong Steiner $\omega$-category. Moreover, if $C$ is generated by a polygraph $P$ and $D$ is generated by a polygraph $Q$, the $\omega$-category $C \star D$ is generated by a polygraph $P \star Q$ whose $n$-generators are given by the formula

$$(P \star Q)_n = \prod_{\begin{array}{c} i \geq -1, j \geq -1 \\ i + j = n \end{array}} P_i \times Q_j,$$

where by convention $P_{-1}$ and $Q_{-1}$ are both singletons.

17.4.31 Theorem. There exists a unique (up to unique isomorphism) monoidal structure on $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$, called the join, that extends the monoidal structure given by the join of Steiner $\omega$-categories and whose monoidal product commutes with (non-empty) connected colimits in each variable.

Proof. This is [15, Theorem 6.29].

17.4.32 Proposition. The join of two $\omega$-categories generated by polygraphs is generated by a polygraph.

Proof. This is [12, Corollary 7.6].

17.4.33 Remark. This proposition shows that it makes sense to talk of the join of two polygraphs. In particular, identifying $O_0$ with its generating polygraph, for any polygraph $P$, we get a polygraph $O_0 \star P$. One can show that it is canonically isomorphic to the polygraph $S(P)$ defined in §17.3.3.

17.4.34 Orientals. It follows from the previous paragraph that one has

$$(O_0)^n \cong O_0 \star \cdots \star O_0 \cong \nu(\lambda(O_0) \star \cdots \star \lambda(O_0)),$$

where $O_0$ and $\lambda(O_0)$ both appear $n$ times. Note that the full cosimplicial object $O : \Delta \to \text{Cat}_{\omega}$ can be recovered from this definition of the orientals. Indeed, as $O_0$ is a terminal object in $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$, it is canonically endowed with a monoidal structure for the monoidal structure given by the join on $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$. By the universal property of the augmented simplicial category $\Delta_+$ (see [261, Chapter VII, Section 5, Proposition 1]), this monoidal structure induces a functor $\Delta_+ \to \text{Cat}_{\omega}$, whose restriction to $\Delta$ gives back the cosimplicial object of orientals.
For each $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\omega\}$, strict $n$-categories are the algebras of the monad $T = V_n F_n$ induced by the forgetful functor $V_n : \text{Cat}_n \to \text{Glob}_n$ and its left adjoint $F_n$, as shown in Chapter 14. However, the notion of strict $n$-category is sometimes too restrictive, whence the need for a notion of weak $n$-category. One proposal, due to Penon [296], defines weak $n$-categories as algebras of another monad $P$ on $\text{Glob}_n$, which in some sense “relaxes” the above monad $T$. In the same vein, Batanin [31] describes a general process consisting in replacing equalities by coherence cells, of which Penon’s construction is a typical instance. In [28], Batanin generalizes the notion of polygraph to a notion of $T$-polygraph (that he calls $T$-computad), where $T$ is any finitary monad on globular sets.

This chapter starts with our presentation of Batanin’s ideas, the main point being the fairly general adjunction result of §18.1.5. This immediately applies to $(n, p)$-polygraphs, as a straightforward generalization of $n$-polygraphs.

We then turn to two key examples of this general setting: the monad of weak $n$-categories (Section 18.2), which was the initial motivation for the general construction, and the monad associated to linear polygraphs (§18.3.1), of special interest in the present book.

\section{18.1 \textit{T}-polygraphs}

The definition of polygraphs presented in Chapter 15 strongly relies on Proposition 15.1.3, which asserts the existence of a left adjoint to a certain functor

$$W_n : \text{Cat}_{n+1} \to \text{Cat}_n^*.$$ 

This functor $W_n$ is in turn based on the monad of strict $\omega$-categories on globular sets. Following Batanin’s original idea [30], we shall briefly explain how this
construction adapts to an arbitrary finitary monad $T$ on globular sets, giving rise to the general notion of “$T$-polygraph”.

18.1.1 Globular algebras. Let $m \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\omega\}$ and $T_m$ be a finitary monad on $\text{Glob}_m$, that is, a monad whose underlying endofunctor preserves filtered colimits. Let $\text{Glob}_m^T$ denote the category of $T_m$-algebras. The category $\text{Glob}_m^T$ comes with a forgetful functor $V_m : \text{Glob}_m^T \to \text{Glob}_m$, right adjoint to a functor $E_m : \text{Glob}_m \to \text{Glob}_m^T$. Now for each $n < m$, there is a truncation functor

$$U_n^m : \text{Glob}_m \to \text{Glob}_n$$

right adjoint to the canonical inclusion

$$I_n^m : \text{Glob}_n \to \text{Glob}_m.$$ 

Therefore, we get a pair of adjoint functors $U_n^m V_m : \text{Glob}_m^T \to \text{Glob}_n$ and $E_m I_n^m : \text{Glob}_n \to \text{Glob}_m^T$ whose composition gives a monad $T_n = U_n^m V_m E_m I_n^m$ on $\text{Glob}_n$. Let again $\text{Glob}_n^T$ denote the category of $T_n$-algebras and $V_n$, $E_n$ the corresponding adjoint functors. There is then a unique comparison functor $K : \text{Glob}_m^T \to \text{Glob}_n^T$ making the following diagrams commute:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Glob}_n^T & \xrightarrow{V_n} & \text{Glob}_n \\
\downarrow K & & \downarrow U_n^m \\
\text{Glob}_m^T & \xrightarrow{V_m} & \text{Glob}_m \\
\end{array}
\quad \quad \quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Glob}_n^T & \xrightarrow{E_m} & \text{Glob}_m^T \\
\downarrow I_n^m & & \downarrow K \\
\text{Glob}_n & \xrightarrow{E_n} & \text{Glob}_n^T \\
\end{array}
\]

Thinking of $K$ as a truncation functor, we shall denote it from now on by the same letter $U_n^m$ as the corresponding truncation between globular sets.

18.1.2 Freely adjoining cells. Following the pattern of Chapter 15, we turn to the special case of the above situation where $m = n + 1$, and consider the category $\text{Glob}_n^{T^+}$ defined by the following pullback square in $\text{CAT}$:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Glob}_n^{T^+} & \to & \text{Glob}_{n+1} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow U_{n+1}^n \\
\text{Glob}_n & \xrightarrow{V_n} & \text{Glob}_n \\
\end{array}
\]

As the square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Glob}^{T}_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{V_{n+1}} & \text{Glob}_{n+1} \\
\downarrow U_{n+1} & & \downarrow U_{n+1} \\
\text{Glob}^{T}_{n} & \xrightarrow{V_{n}} & \text{Glob}_{n}
\end{array}
\]

commutes, there is a unique functor \( W_n : \text{Glob}^{T}_{n+1} \to \text{Glob}^{T+}_{n} \) such that the following diagram commutes:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Glob}^{T}_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{W_n} & \text{Glob}^{T+}_{n} \\
\downarrow U_{n+1} & & \downarrow U_{n+1} \\
\text{Glob}^{T}_{n} & \xrightarrow{V_{n}} & \text{Glob}_{n}
\end{array}
\]

As in the definition of “ordinary” polygraphs, the crucial step will be the construction of a left adjoint \( L_n \) for \( W_n \). Before proving this fact, we shall need a few preliminary results on pullbacks in \( \text{CAT} \).

18.1.3 Remark. Pullbacks in \( \text{CAT} \), sometimes called strict pullbacks, are generally badly behaved and do not preserve equivalences of categories. Therefore, given categories \( A, B, C \) and functors \( U : A \to C, V : B \to C \), one usually defines the pseudo-pullback

\[
P \xrightarrow{U} A \\
\downarrow \quad \downarrow U \\
B \xrightarrow{V} C
\]

by taking for objects of \( P \) the triples \((a, b, \phi)\) where \( a \) is an object of \( A \), \( b \) an object of \( B \) and \( \phi \) an isomorphism from \( Ua \) to \( Vb \). Note that the above square only commutes up to a canonical isomorphism. However, in case \( U \) is an isofibration, that is, if for any object \( a \) in \( A \) and any isomorphism \( g : Ua \to e \) in \( C \) there is an isomorphism \( f : a \to a' \) such that \( Uf = g \), it turns out that such a \( P \) is equivalent to the strict pullback (exercise!).

18.1.4 Definition of \( \text{Glob}^{T+}_{n} \). In the present setting, the truncation functor \( U_{n+1}^{T} : \text{Glob}_{n+1} \to \text{Glob}_{n} \) is in fact an isofibration, and we shall slightly depart
Generalized polygraphs

here from Batanin’s presentation by defining $\mathbf{Glob}_T^+$ as the strict pullback of $U_{n+1}^+$ and $V_n$. Thus, $\mathbf{Glob}_T^+$ has objects pairs $(X, A)$ where $X$ is an $(n + 1)$-globular set and $A$ a $T_n$-algebra such that $U_{n+1}^+X = V_nA$. Morphisms are defined accordingly.

18.1.5 Pullbacks of monadic functors. Let $U : A \to C$ and $V : B \to C$ be two functors, and consider their strict pullback in $\text{CAT}$:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
P \\ \downarrow^U \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \rightarrow \quad \downarrow^U \\ V \quad \rightarrow \quad C. \end{array}
\]

Suppose in addition that

- $V$ is strictly monadic, with left adjoint $E$, meaning that $B$ is isomorphic to the category of algebras of the associated monad $VE$,
- $A$ is cocomplete,
- $U$ is an isofibration,
- $U$ admits a left adjoint $I$ such that $UI = 1_C$ and for each object $c$, the unit $\eta_c : c \to UIc$ is $1_c$, whence also, for each object $a$ in $A$, $U(\varepsilon_a) = 1_a$,
- $U$ has a right adjoint.

Then the functor $\bar{V}$ is also monadic. We shall denote by $\eta'$ and $\varepsilon'$ the unit and counit of the adjunction between $V$ and $E$.

Before proving the statement, let us point out that the above hypotheses are immediately satisfied in case $V = V_n$ and $U = U_{n+1}^+$ as defined in 18.1.2.

As for the existence of a left adjoint for $\bar{V}$, let $a$ be an object of $A$ and define a pair $p = (a^+, b)$, where $a^+$ is an object of $A$ and $b$ an object of $B$ as follows: taking first $b = EUa$, in order for $p$ to be an object of $P$, we need to define $a^+$ such that $Ua^+ = Vb$. Consider first the following pushout square in $A$, which exists because of the cocompleteness assumption:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
IUa \\ \downarrow \eta_{IUa} \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \rightarrow \quad \downarrow \varepsilon_a \\ IVEUa \quad \rightarrow \quad a'. \end{array}
\]

(18.2)

Now $U$ being left adjoint, it preserves pushouts and moreover $U(\varepsilon_a) = 1_a$. Therefore, by applying $U$ to the above square, the bottom arrow becomes an isomorphism $\phi : Vb \to Ua'$. Now $U$ being an isofibration, we may chose an object $a^+$ and an isomorphism $\psi : a^+ \to a'$ such that $U\psi = \phi$. We therefore
get a pushout square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
IUa & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_a} & a \\
\downarrow_{I(\eta'_a)} & & \downarrow \\
IVEUa & \xrightarrow{a^+} & 
\end{array}
\] (18.3)

whose top and bottom arrows are taken to identities by \( U \). The construction \( \tilde{E} : a \mapsto (a^+, EUa) \) is clearly functorial.

It remains to show that \( \tilde{E} \) is in fact left adjoint to \( \tilde{V} \). Let us define two natural transformations

\[ \tilde{\eta} : 1_A \to \tilde{V} \tilde{E} \]

and

\[ \tilde{\varepsilon} : \tilde{E} \tilde{V} \to 1_P \]

as follows.

For an object \( a \) in \( A \), as \( \tilde{V} \tilde{E} a = a^+ \) we may define \( \tilde{\eta}_a \) as the right vertical arrow in the pushout square (18.3). This clearly defines a natural transformation from \( 1_A \) to \( \tilde{V} \tilde{E} \).

Let now \( p = (a, b) \) be an object of \( P \), that is, \( Ua = Vb \). By definition, \( \tilde{E} \tilde{V} p = (a^+, EVb) \) and we thus look for a morphism

\[ \tilde{\varepsilon}_p : (a^+, EVb) \to (a, b). \]

The second component is immediately given by the counit \( \varepsilon'_b : EVb \to b \). As for the first component, we need to build a morphism

\[ \iota_a : a^+ \to a \]

in \( A \). Note first that the following triangle

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
Um & \xrightarrow{\eta'_m} & Vm \\
\downarrow_{VUa} & & \downarrow_{V(e'_b)} \\
VUEa & \xrightarrow{Ua} & Ua 
\end{array}
\]

commutes because \( Ua = Vb \) and the triangular identity between \( \eta' \) and \( \varepsilon' \). By applying the functor \( I \) to the above triangle, we get the commutation of

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
IUa & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon'_a} & a \\
\downarrow_{I(\eta'_a)} & & \downarrow \\
IVEUa & \xrightarrow{a^+} & 
\end{array}
\]
therefore also the commutation of

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
IUa & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_a} & a \\
\downarrow{I(\eta_{\alpha})} & & \downarrow{1_{IUa}} \\
IVEUa & \xrightarrow{I(V(\varepsilon_{\alpha}'))} & IUa \\
& \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_a \circ V(\varepsilon_{\alpha}')} & a.
\end{array}
\]

As the outer square above commutes, the universal property of the pushout yields a unique morphism \( t_\alpha : a^+ \to a \) such that the following diagram commutes:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
IUa & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_a} & a \\
\downarrow{I(\eta_{\alpha})} & & \downarrow{\tilde{\eta}_a} \\
IVEUa & \xrightarrow{a^+} & a \\
& \xrightarrow{\varepsilon_a \circ V(\varepsilon_{\alpha}')} & 1_a \\
& & \downarrow{1_a} \\
& & a.
\end{array}
\] (18.4)

Now, by applying \( U \) to the above diagram, one gets \( U(t_\alpha) = V(\varepsilon_{\alpha}') \), whence \( \tilde{\varepsilon}_p \) is indeed a morphism in \( P \). The naturality of the construction is immediate. It remains to establish the triangular identities between \( \tilde{\eta} \) and \( \tilde{\varepsilon} \). Let first \( p = (a, b) \) be an object of \( P \), so that \( a = V p \). The commutation of the right triangle in (18.4) reads

\[
\tilde{V}(\tilde{\varepsilon}_p) \circ \tilde{\eta}_{Vp} = 1_{Vp}
\]

which gives the first identity. Finally, let \( a \) be an object of \( A \) and apply \( \tilde{E} \) to the right triangle in (18.4), one obtains

\[
\tilde{E}(t_\alpha) \circ \tilde{E}(\tilde{\eta}_a) = 1_{\tilde{E}a}
\]

and we have to show that

\[
\tilde{E}(t_\alpha) = \tilde{\varepsilon}_{\tilde{E}a}
\]

which reduces to the equality between both components:

\[
\tilde{U}\tilde{E}(t_\alpha) = \tilde{U}(\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\tilde{E}a}) \quad \text{and} \quad \tilde{V}\tilde{E}(t_\alpha) = \tilde{V}(\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\tilde{E}a}).
\]

The first one comes from the fact that \( \tilde{U}\tilde{E} = EU \) and by applying this last functor to the bottom triangle in (18.4), and the second from the definition of \( \tilde{E} \) and \( \tilde{\varepsilon} \) according to which \( \tilde{V}\tilde{E}(t_\alpha) = t_{a^+} = \tilde{V}(\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\tilde{E}a}) \). Therefore

\[
\tilde{\varepsilon}_{\tilde{E}a} \circ \tilde{E}(\tilde{\eta}_a) = 1_{\tilde{E}a}
\]

and the second triangular identity is proved. Thus \( \tilde{E} \) is left adjoint to \( \tilde{V} \).
The monadicity of $\bar{V}$ now follows from Beck’s criterion. Let $p = (a, b)$, $p' = (a', b')$ in $P$ and $u, v : p \to p'$ be a pair of parallel morphisms such that
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\bar{V} p \\
\uparrow \bar{V} u \\
\bar{V} p' \\
\downarrow \bar{V} v
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{\epsilon} a''
\]
(18.5)
is an absolute coequalizer in $A$. It follows that
\[
\begin{array}{c}
V b \\
\uparrow U \bar{V} u \\
V b' \\
\downarrow U \bar{V} v
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{U \epsilon} U a''
\]
(18.6)
is also an absolute coequalizer in $C$. As $V$ is strictly monadic, it creates such coequalizers. There is therefore a unique morphism $f : b' \to b''$ in $B$ such that $V f = U \epsilon$ and
\[
\begin{array}{c}
b \\
\uparrow U \bar{V} u \\
b' \\
\downarrow U \bar{V} v
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{f} b''
\]
is a coequalizer in $B$. Clearly $(a'', b'')$ is in $P$ and the morphism $(\epsilon, f) : (a', b') \to (a'', b'')$
is the coequalizer of $u$ and $v$ we are looking for.

The existence of a left adjoint for the functor $W_n$ of (18.1) is then a consequence of the following result in general category theory:

**18.1.6 Proposition.** Let $X : A \to B$ and $Y : B \to C$ be two functors and $Z = YX$, and suppose that
- $A$ is cocomplete,
- $Z$ has a left adjoint,
- $Y$ is monadic.

Then the functor $X$ admits a left adjoint.

**Proof.** This is essentially a simpler, less general version of Dubuc’s adjoint triangle theorem [117].

**□**

**18.1.7 Existence of the functor $L_n$.** This above statement immediately applies to the triangle

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Glob}_{n+1} \\
\downarrow W_n \\
\text{Glob}_n \\
\downarrow V_n \\
\text{Glob}_{n+1}
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{v_n} \text{Glob}_n
\xrightarrow{w_n} \text{Glob}_{n+1}.
\]
Generalized polygraphs

In fact, the cocompleteness of $\text{Glob}^T_{n+1}$ comes from the finitary assumption on the monad $T$, the functor $V_{n+1}$, being the forgetful functor from $(n+1)$-globular algebras to $(n+1)$-globular sets admits a left adjoint, and we have just shown that $V_n$ is monadic. Therefore $W_n$ admits a left adjoint $L_n$.

18.1.8 Definition of $T$-polygraphs. We may now define by induction on $n \geq 0$ a category $\text{Pol}^T_n$, together with a functor

$$F_n : \text{Pol}^T_n \rightarrow \text{Glob}^T_n,$$

following the pattern of Section 15.1.7.

- For $n = 0$, $\text{Pol}^T_0 = \text{Glob}^0 = \text{Set} = \text{Glob}^T_0$ and $F_0$ is the identity functor.
- Let $n \geq 0$ and suppose we have defined $F_n : \text{Pol}^T_n \rightarrow \text{Glob}^T_n$.

The category $\text{Pol}^T_{n+1}$ is then given by the following pullback square in $\text{CAT}$:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{Pol}^T_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{J_n} & \text{Glob}^T_{n+1} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Pol}^T_n & \xrightarrow{F_n} & \text{Glob}^T_n,
\end{array}$$

and the functor $F_{n+1}$ is the composite

$$L_nJ_n : \text{Pol}^T_{n+1} \rightarrow \text{Glob}^T_{n+1}$$

where $L_n$ is the above defined left adjoint to $W_n$.

If we start with a finitary monad $T$ on $\text{Glob}^\omega$, we get by construction a sequence of canonical functors in $\text{CAT}$

$$\text{Pol}^T_0 \leftarrow \text{Pol}^T_1 \leftarrow \text{Pol}^T_2 \leftarrow \cdots$$

whose projective limit $\text{Pol}^T_\omega$ is by definition the category of $\omega$-polygraphs with respect to the monad $T$.

Finally, for each $n \geq 0$, there is a functor

$$G_n : \text{Glob}^T_n \rightarrow \text{Pol}^T_n$$

and a natural transformation

$$\varepsilon : F_nG_n \rightarrow 1$$

such that $F_n$ is left adjoint to $G_n$ and $\varepsilon$ is the counit of this adjunction.

The construction of $G_n$ in the general case being essentially the same as the
one explained in Section 15.2 for the particular case where $\text{Glob}_n^T = \text{Cat}_n$, we shall only very briefly sketch the induction step yielding $G_{n+1}$ from $G_n$.

Thus, suppose we have defined $G_n$ as a right adjoint to $F_n$, with counit $\varepsilon$, and let $C$ be an object of $\text{Glob}_n^T$, with underlying $(n+1)$-globular set $X$. Let $C' = U_{n+1}^+(C)$. We define $G_{n+1}(C)$ as a pair $(P, D^+)$ where $P$ is in $\text{Pol}_n^T$ and $D^+$ in $\text{Glob}_n^{T+}$ by taking $P = G_n(C')$ and $D^+ = (D, Z)$, with $D = F_n(P)$ and $Z$ the $(n+1)$-globular set defined as follows. Up to dimension $n$, $Z$ coincides with the underlying $n$-globular set of $F_n(P)$, whereas $Z_{n+1}$ consists of triples $(z, x, y) \in X_{n+1} \times Z_n \times Z_n$ such that $z : \varepsilon^C_n(x) \rightarrow \varepsilon^C_n(y)$.

Now $\varepsilon^C : F_n G_n(C') \rightarrow C'$ extends to a natural transformation

$$\theta : D^+ \rightarrow W_n(C)$$

by sending the generator $(z, x, y)$ to $z$.

Thus, by adjunction, we get $\theta^* : L_n(D^+) \rightarrow C$, but $L_n(D^+)$ is precisely $F_{n+1} G_{n+1}(C)$, so that $\theta^*$ defines the counit $\varepsilon^C : F_{n+1} G_{n+1}(C) \rightarrow C$.

### 18.1.9 Basic examples.

Besides the basic case of strict $\omega$-categories, an immediate example of the above construction is given by $(n, p)$-polygraphs introduced in Section 15.3. We just remark here that, again, these polygraphs are particular instances of $T$-polygraphs, where the monad $T$ is the one induced by the forgetful functor

$$V : \text{Cat}_{n,p} \rightarrow \text{Glob}_n.$$

### 18.2 Polygraphs for weak $n$-categories

The general construction of Section 18.1 applies to Penon’s monad on $n$-globular sets, from [296]. This section basically follows Penon’s approach, but for a correction pointed out by Cheng and Makkai in [86]: whereas Penon works over reflexive globular sets, it turns out that the category of plain globular sets, that is our category $\text{Glob}_n$, yield more examples of weak $n$-categories. In particular, braided monoidal categories fit in the latter setting, but not in the former.

Given $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\omega\}$, we first consider the category $\text{Mag}_n$ of $n$-magmas, whose objects are $n$-globular sets endowed with the same family of binary composition operations as (strict) $n$-categories, satisfying the same “positional” conditions with respect to source and target maps, but without requiring identities, associativity and exchange. The morphisms of $\text{Mag}_n$ are the globular maps preserving all compositions. Of course any $n$-category is a particular $n$-magma. Let now
Generalized polygraphs

$M$ be an $n$-magma, and $C$ be an $n$-category seen as an $n$-magma, a morphism

$$f : M \to C$$

in $\text{Mag}_n$ is called a categorical stretching — “étirement catégorique” in Penon’s terminology, or “trivial fibration” in Batanin’s — if for any $k < n$ and any pair $(a, b)$ of parallel $k$-cells in $M$ such that $f(a) = f(b)$, there is a $(k + 1)$-cell $c$ in $M$ such that $f(c) = 1_k^{f(a)}$, and if moreover, in case $n \neq \omega$, $f_n$ is injective.

A trivialization of a categorical stretching $f$ is a map $[,]_f$ choosing a cell $c = [a, b]_f$ with $f(c) = 1_k^{f(a)}$ for each pair $(a, b)$ as above. There is now a category $Q$ whose objects are pairs $(f, [ , ]_f)$, where $f$ is a categorical stretching and $[,]_f$ a trivialization of $f$, and whose morphisms are commutative squares

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
M & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & M' \\
\downarrow f & & \downarrow f' \\
C & \xrightarrow{\nu} & C'
\end{array}
$$

in $\text{Mag}_n$ such that $\nu[a, b]_f = [va, vb]_{f'}$ for all parallel $k$-cells $a, b$, such that $f(a) = f(b)$. As each $n$-magma $M$ has an underlying $n$-globular set, the correspondence taking $f : M \to C$ to $M$ induces a forgetful functor

$$U : Q \to \text{Glob}_n.$$

Now, as shown in [296], this functor $U$ admits a left adjoint $F$, thus defining a monad $P = UF$ on $\text{Glob}_n$. The algebras of this monad $P$ are precisely the weak $n$-categories we were looking for.

Finally, this monad $P$ satisfies the hypotheses of Section 18.1, and therefore produces an appropriate notion of $P$-polygraphs.

### 18.3 Linear polygraphs

**18.3.1 Linear polygraphs as $T$-polygraphs.** In Chapter 6 we introduced the notion of one-dimensional linear polygraphs as rewriting systems for associative unital algebras over a field $k$. These are again special cases of the general construction 18.1, for a certain monad on $n$-globular sets we now briefly describe. Let $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\omega\}$ and $k$ be a field. We denote by $\text{Alg}$ the category of unital and associative $k$-algebras. The category $\text{Alg}_n$ of $n$-algebras is the category of $n$-categories internal to $\text{Alg}$. Consider the forgetful functor

$$U : \text{Alg}_n \to \text{Glob}_n.$$
18.3 Linear polygraphs

obtained by composing both functors $\text{Alg}_n \to \text{Cat}_n$ and $\text{Cat}_n \to \text{Glob}_n$. The categories $\text{Glob}_n$, $\text{Cat}_n$, $\text{Set}$ and $\text{Alg}$ are models of projective sketches $S$, $S'$, $T$ and $T'$ respectively, where $T$ is of course the trivial sketch on the terminal category. Moreover, there are inclusion morphisms of sketches $i : S \to S'$ and $j : T \to T'$, and both of them satisfy Lair's conditions of Theorem G.1.11. These induce a morphism

$$i \otimes j : S \otimes T \to S' \otimes T'$$

still satisfying Lair’s conditions (see [4, p. 18] about tensoring sketches). Now the models of $S' \otimes T'$ in $\text{Set}$ are also the models of $S'$ in $\text{Mod}(T') = \text{Alg}_n$, in other words

$$\text{Mod}(S' \otimes T') = \text{Alg}_n$$

whereas $S \otimes T \simeq S$. Therefore our functor $U$ is precisely the one induced by $i \otimes j$ on models:

$$U = \text{Mod}(i \otimes j) : \text{Mod}(S' \otimes T') \to \text{Mod}(S).$$

As a consequence of Theorem G.1.11, the functor $U$ is monadic. It is also easily seen to preserve filtered colimits, whence inducing a finitary monad $L$ on $\text{Glob}_n$. Thus the machinery of 18.1 applies, and produces the category of $L$-polygraphs, that is the linear polygraphs we wanted.

18.3.2 Bimodules. The description of $n$-algebras and linear $n$-polygraphs can be made more explicit by introducing the following notion of globular bimodules. For an algebra $A$, we denote by $\text{Bimod}(A)$ the category of bimodules over $A$ and their morphisms. We consider the category $\text{Glob}(\text{Bimod})$ of globular $A$-bimodules, that is, functors

$$X : \text{O} \to \text{Bimod}(A),$$

and their morphisms. Let us define the category $\text{Bimod}_G$ whose objects are pairs $(A, M)$ made of an algebra $A$ and a globular $A$-bimodule $M$, and whose morphisms from $(A, M)$ to $(B, N)$ are pairs $(F, G)$ made of a morphism $F : A \to B$ of algebras and a morphism $G : M \to N$ of bimodules, that is,

$$G(ama') = F(a)G(m)F(a')$$

holds for all $a$ and $a'$ in $A$ and $m$ in $M$.

The following result gives a characterization of the category of $\omega$-algebras.

18.3.3 Theorem ([160, Theorem 1.3.3]). The category $\text{Alg}_\omega$ is isomorphic to the full subcategory of $\text{Bimod}_G$ whose objects are the pairs $(A, M)$ such
Generalized polygraphs

that \(M_0\) is equal to \(A\), with its canonical \(A\)-bimodule structure, and that satisfy, for all \(n\)-cells \(a\) and \(b\) of \(M\), the relation

\[
as_0(b) + t_0(a)b - t_0(a)s_0(b) = s_0(a)b + at_0(b) - s_0(a)t_0(b).
\]

(18.7)

18.3.4 Explicit construction. The key step in the explicit inductive construction of \(T\)-polygraphs at level \(n\) is the concrete description of the left adjoint \(L_n\) to the forgetful functor \(W_n : \text{Glob}^T_{n+1} \to \text{Glob}^T_n\) of (18.1). In the present case of linear polygraphs, this forgetful functor is

\[W_n : \text{Alg}_{n+1} \to \text{Alg}_n^+\]

and its left adjoint \(L_n\) takes an extended \(n\)-algebra \((A, X)\) to the \((n+1)\)-algebra \(A[X]\) constructed as follows. First, we consider the \(A_0\)-bimodule

\[M = (A_0 \otimes k[X] \otimes A_0) \oplus A_n\]

obtained by the direct sum of the free \(A_0\)-bimodule with basis \(X\) and of a copy of \(A_n\), equipped with its canonical \(A_0\)-bimodule structure. Thus \(M\) contains linear combinations of elements \(axb\), for \(a\) and \(b\) in \(A_0\) and \(x\) in \(X\), and of an \(n\)-cell \(c\) of \(A\). We define the source, target and identity maps

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
M & \xrightarrow{s} & A_n \\
& \downarrow{t} & \downarrow{t} \\
& A_n & \\
\end{array}
\]

by

\[
s(axb) = as(x)b, \quad s(c) = c, \quad i(c) = c, \\
t(axb) = at(x)b, \quad t(c) = c,
\]

for all \(x\) in \(X\), \(a\) and \(b\) in \(A_0\), and \(c\) in \(A_{n-1}\). Then we define the \(A_0\)-bimodule \(A[X]_{n+1}\) as the quotient of \(M\) by the \(A_0\)-bimodule ideal generated by all the elements

\[
(as_0(b) + t_0(a)b - t_0(a)s_0(b)) - (s_0(a)b + at_0(b) - s_0(a)t_0(b)),
\]

where \(a\) and \(b\) range over \(A_0 \otimes kX \otimes A_0\). We prove that the source and target maps are compatible with the quotient, so that, by Theorem 18.3.3, the \(A_0\)-bimodule \(A[X]_{n+1}\) extends \(A\) into a uniquely defined \((n+1)\)-algebra \(A[X]\).
PART FIVE

HOMOTOPY THEORY OF POLYGRAPHS
Polygraphic resolutions

The purpose of this chapter is to introduce the notion of a polygraphic resolution of an \( \omega \)-category. This notion was introduced by Métayer [278] to define a homology theory for \( \omega \)-categories, that is now known as the polygraphic homology. It was then showed by himself and Lafont [236] that this homology recovers the classical homology of monoids for \( \omega \)-categories coming from monoids. It is now known by work of Lafont, Métayer and Worytkiewicz [237] that these polygraphic resolutions are resolutions in the sense of a model category structure on \( \text{Cat}_{\omega} \), the so-called folk model structure, that we will present in the next chapters.

Roughly speaking, a polygraphic resolution is a non-abelian version of a resolution of a module, in the sense of homological algebra. More precisely, if \( C \) is an \( \omega \)-category, a polygraphic resolution of \( C \) is a polygraph \( P \) endowed with an \( \omega \)-functor \( P^* \to C \) that is a trivial fibration, meaning in a nutshell that it is surjective with source and target fixed at all levels. Technically, we will define these trivial fibrations by a right lifting property with respect to inclusions of spheres into disks, in a very similar way as trivial fibrations of topological spaces are defined.

The chapter is organized as follows. In a first section, we introduce the notion of a weak factorization system in a general category. We explain the small object argument. In the second section, we define cofibrations and trivial cofibrations of \( \omega \)-categories as the classes appearing in the weak factorization system generated by the set \( I \) of inclusions of spheres into disks. We also introduce the class of relative polygraphs, which are cell complexes generated by \( I \), and we explain why polygraphs almost tautologically correspond to relative polygraphs of the form \( \emptyset \to C \). In the third section, we introduce the notion of a polygraphic resolution. We show that every \( \omega \)-category admits such a resolution and we give the example of the so-called canonical resolution. Finally, in a last section, we study uniqueness of these resolutions, showing that
there is always a map between two such resolutions and postponing to a later chapter the fact that two such maps are homotopic in some appropriate sense.

19.1 Weak factorization systems

The purpose of this section is to introduce some basic results on weak factorization systems, which will be applied in the next section to a factorization system giving rise to “polygraphic resolutions”. This factorization system has the additional property of being generated by morphisms between finitely presentable objects. This additional hypothesis will allow us to avoid the use of ordinals and cardinals.

In the section, we fix a category $C$. Our case of interest is $C = \text{Cat}_{\omega}$.

19.1.1 Lifting properties. Let $f : X \rightarrow Y$ and $g : Z \rightarrow T$ be two morphisms of $C$. One says that $f$ has the left lifting property with respect to $g$ or that $g$ has the right lifting property with respect to $f$ if for every commutative square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \\
\downarrow{f} & & \downarrow{g} \\
Y & \xrightarrow{\exists h} & T
\end{array}
\]

there exists a lift, that is, a morphism $h : Y \rightarrow Z$ making the two triangles commute. More generally, one says that $f$ has the left lifting property with respect to a class of maps $I$ if it has the left lifting property with respect to every morphism in $I$, and similarly for the right lifting property. We will denote by $l(I)$ and $r(I)$ the class of maps having the left or right lifting property with respect to a class $I$.

19.1.2 Stability properties of $l(I)$. Suppose $C$ is cocomplete and let $I$ be a class of morphisms of $C$. One checks that $l(I)$ contains the class of isomorphisms and is stable under

1. sums: if $(i_k : X_k \rightarrow Y_k)_{k \in K}$ is a (small) family of elements of $l(I)$, then the sum

\[
\bigsqcup_{k \in K} i_k : \bigsqcup_{k \in K} X_k \rightarrow \bigsqcup_{k \in K} Y_k
\]
19.1 Weak factorization systems

belongs to \( l(I) \),

2. pushouts: if

\[
\begin{array}{ccl}
X & \longrightarrow & Z \\
\downarrow^i \quad & & \downarrow^j \\
Y & \longrightarrow & T
\end{array}
\]

is a pushout square and \( i \) belongs to \( l(I) \), then so does \( j \).

3. countable compositions: if

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
X_0 & \xrightarrow{i_1} & X_1 & \xrightarrow{i_2} & \cdots & \xrightarrow{i_n} & X_n & \xrightarrow{i_{n+1}} & \cdots
\end{array}
\]

is a diagram of elements of \( l(I) \), then the morphism

\[
X_0 \rightarrow \lim_{n \geq 0} X_n
\]

belongs to \( l(I) \).

4. retracts: if

\[
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
X & \xrightarrow{1_X} & Z & \xrightarrow{1_Z} & X \\
\downarrow^i \quad & & \downarrow^j \\
Y & \longrightarrow & T & \longrightarrow & Y \\
\downarrow^{1_Y} \quad & & \downarrow^{1_Y}
\end{array}
\]

is a commutative diagram and \( j \) belongs to \( l(I) \), then so does \( i \).

19.1.3 Remark. More generally, under the same assumption and with the same notation as in the paragraph above, the class \( l(I) \) is stable under transfinite compositions (see [187, Definition 2.1.1]). Note that being stable by transfinite compositions and pushouts implies being stable by sums.

19.1.4 Weak factorization systems. A weak factorization system on \( C \) is a pair \((\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{R})\) of classes of morphisms of \( C \) satisfying the following conditions:

1. Every morphism \( f \) of \( C \) factors as \( f = pi \), where \( p \) is in \( \mathcal{R} \) and \( i \) is in \( \mathcal{L} \).

2. We have

\[
\mathcal{L} = l(\mathcal{R}) \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{R} = r(\mathcal{L}).
\]

Recall that an object \( A \) of a category is finitely presentable when the functor
402

Polygraphic resolutions

\( \mathcal{C}(A, -) : \mathcal{C} \to \textbf{Set} \) preserves filtered colimits. In practice, we are mostly interested in preservation of colimits of diagrams in \( \mathcal{C} \) of the form

\[
X_0 \longrightarrow X_1 \longrightarrow X_2 \longrightarrow \cdots
\]

In this case, the fact that the canonical arrow \( \lim_n C(A, X_n) \to C(A, \lim_n X_n) \) is an isomorphism means in particular that any morphism \( f : A \to \lim_n X_n \) factors through some \( X_n \). For instance, the finitely presentable sets are the finite sets.

**19.1.5 Proposition** (Small object argument: first version). Suppose \( \mathcal{C} \) is complete and let \( I \) be a set of morphisms of \( \mathcal{C} \) whose sources are finitely presentable objects. Then \( (lr(I), r(I)) \) is a weak factorization system on \( \mathcal{C} \).

*Proof.* The second condition of the definition of a weak factorization system follows from the general equality \( rlr(I) = r(I) \). Let us sketch a proof for the first one. Let \( f : X \to Y \) be a morphism of \( \mathcal{C} \). Let \( S \) be the set of commutative squares of the form

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A_s & \longrightarrow & X \\
\downarrow i_s & & \downarrow f \\
B_s & \longrightarrow & Y,
\end{array}
\]

where \( i_s \) is an element of \( I \). Summing all these squares, we get a commutative square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\coprod_{s \in S} A_s & \longrightarrow & X \\
\downarrow \coprod_{s \in S} i_s & & \downarrow f \\
\coprod_{s \in S} B_s & \longrightarrow & Y.
\end{array}
\]

Taking the pushout of the top left corner, we get a factorization of \( f \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\coprod_{s \in S} A_s & \longrightarrow & X \\
\downarrow \coprod_{s \in S} i_s & & \downarrow \beta_1 \\
\coprod_{s \in S} B_s & \longrightarrow & X_1 \\
\downarrow p_1 & & \downarrow f \\
& & Y.
\end{array}
\]

By §19.1.2, the morphism \( j_1 \) belongs to \( lr(I) \), but there is no reason for \( p_1 \) to belong to \( r(I) \): we thus apply the same procedure to \( p_1 \), obtaining a factorization
$p_1 = p_2 j_2$, where $j_2 : X_1 \to X_2$ belongs to $lr(I)$. Going on by induction, we get a sequence of morphisms

$$X \xrightarrow{j_1} X_1 \xrightarrow{j_2} \cdots \xrightarrow{j_n} X_n \xrightarrow{j_{n+1}} \cdots$$

belonging to $lr(I)$ and hence a morphism

$$j_\infty : X \longrightarrow X_\infty = \lim_{n} X_n$$

in $lr(I)$ giving rise to a factorization

$$f = p_\infty j_\infty,$$

where $p_\infty$ is the morphisms induced by the $p_n$’s. To conclude the proof, it suffices to show that $p_\infty$ belongs to $r(I)$. Consider a commutative square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{k} & X_\infty \\
\downarrow{i} & & \downarrow{p_\infty} \\
B & \xrightarrow{l} & Y,
\end{array}
\]

where $i$ is in $I$. Since by our additional assumption, the object $A$ is finitely presentable, the morphism $k$ factors through some $X_n$ and the diagram factors as

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{} & X_n & \xrightarrow{} & X_\infty \\
\downarrow{i} & & \downarrow{} & & \downarrow{p_\infty} \\
B & \xrightarrow{} & l & \xrightarrow{} & Y,
\end{array}
\]

where $X_n \to X_\infty$ is the canonical morphism. The composite from $X_n$ to $Y$ is $p_n$ and this diagram defines a square appearing in the definition of $X_{n+1}$. This means that there exists a lift

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
A & \xrightarrow{j_{n+1}} & X_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{} & X_\infty \\
\downarrow{i} & & \downarrow{=} & & \downarrow{p_\infty} \\
B & \xrightarrow{} & l & \xrightarrow{} & Y,
\end{array}
\]

thereby proving the result. \qed

19.1.6 Remark. The same conclusion holds with the weaker hypothesis that there exists a regular cardinal $\kappa$ such that the sources of the morphisms in $I$ are $\kappa$-presentable (see Section G.2), the above statement being the case $\kappa = \aleph_0$. This condition is automatic if $C$ is locally presentable. See also [184, Section 10.5]
for weaker assumptions for the small object argument. The proof of these more general results is basically the same except that one has to proceed by transfinite induction.

**19.1.7** \(I\)-cells. Suppose \(C\) is cocomplete and let \(I\) be a class of morphisms of \(C\). The class cell\(_\omega\)(\(I\)) of countable \(I\)-cellular extensions is the smallest class of morphisms of \(C\) containing \(I\) and stable under sums, pushouts and countable compositions. Every element of cell\(_\omega\)(\(I\)) can be obtained as a countable composition of pushouts of sums of elements of \(I\).

**19.1.8** Remark. When \(I\) is a set and the source of the elements of \(I\) are finitely presentable, by [270, Proposition A.6], the class cell\(_\omega\)(\(I\)) is equal to the more classical class cell\((I\)) of \(I\)-cellular extensions, which is defined as cell\(_\omega\)(\(I\)) but asking also for stability under transfinite compositions.

**19.1.9** Proposition (Small object argument: refined version). Suppose \(C\) is cocomplete and let \(I\) be a set of morphisms of \(C\) whose sources are finitely presentable. Then every morphism of \(C\) factors as \(f = pi\), where \(p\) is in \(r\)(\(I\)) and \(i\) is in cell\(_\omega\)(\(I\)). Moreover, every element of \(r\)(\(I\)) is a retract of an element of cell\(_\omega\)(\(I\)).

*Proof.* The first point was actually proven in the proof of Proposition 19.1.5. The second point follows from the following lemma, the so-called “retract lemma”. □

**19.1.10** Lemma (Retract lemma). Suppose we have a factorization \(f = pi\), in a category \(C\), where \(f\) has the left lifting property with respect to \(p\). Then \(f\) is a retract of \(i\).

*Proof.* Denote \(i : X \to Y\) and \(p : Y \to Z\). By hypothesis, there exists \(h : Z \to Y\) making the square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{i} & Y \\
\downarrow{f} & & \downarrow{p} \\
Z & \xrightarrow{h} & Z
\end{array}
\]

commute. The commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{i} & X \\
\downarrow{f} & & \downarrow{f} \\
Z & \xrightarrow{h} & Y \\
& \xrightarrow{i} & \xrightarrow{p} \to Z
\end{array}
\]

proves the result. □
19.2 Cofibrations and trivial fibrations

We will now apply the theory of weak factorization systems described in the previous section to the category $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$ and the set of inclusions of boundaries of globes. This will lead to a notion of cofibrations and trivial fibrations of $\omega$-categories.

19.2.1 Cofibrations, trivial fibrations and relative polygraphs. Recall that for every $n \geq 0$ we denote by $i_n : \partial O_n \to O_n$ the inclusion of the $(n-1)$-sphere into the $n$-globe. We set

$$I = \{i_n \mid n \geq 0\}.$$

From this set $I$, we obtain three classes of $\omega$-functors:

- the class $\text{lr}(I)$ of cofibrations,
- the class $\text{r}(I)$ of trivial fibrations,
- the class $\text{cell}_{\omega}(I)$ of relative polygraphs.

The category $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$ being locally presentable (see §14.4.1) and the spheres being finitely presentable $\omega$-categories, we can apply the small object argument (Propositions 19.1.5 and 19.1.9) and we obtain:

19.2.2 Proposition. The following assertions hold:

1. The pair $\left(\{\text{cofibrations}\}, \{\text{trivial fibrations}\}\right)$ is a weak factorization system on $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$.

2. Every $\omega$-functor $f$ factors as $f = pi$, where $i$ is a relative polygraph and $p$ is a trivial fibration.

3. The cofibrations are the retracts of relative polygraphs.

We will now describe more concretely trivial fibrations and relative polygraphs.

19.2.3 Trivial fibrations. By definition, an $\omega$-functor $f : C \to D$ is a trivial fibration if for every $n \geq 0$ it has the right lifting property with respect to
Polygraphic resolutions

The data of a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial \mathcal{O}_n & \longrightarrow & C \\
i_n & \downarrow & \downarrow f \\
\mathcal{O}_n & \longrightarrow & D
\end{array}
\]

is equivalent to the data of a pair \((x, y)\) of parallel \((n - 1)\)-cells of \(C\) and of an \(n\)-cell \(b : f(x) \to f(y)\) in \(D\). (To make sense of this when \(n = 0\), one has to consider that every \(\omega\)-category has a unique cell of dimension \(-1\).) A lift for such a square is given by an \(n\)-cell \(a : x \to y\) in \(C\) such that \(f(a) = b\).

In other words, \(f : C \to D\) is a trivial fibration if and only if the following conditions hold:

1. \(f\) is surjective on objects,
2. for every \(n \geq 0\), every pair \(x, y\) of parallel \(n\)-cells of \(C\) and every \((n+1)\)-cell \(b : f(x) \to f(y)\) in \(D\), there exists an \((n+1)\)-cell \(a : x \to y\) in \(C\) such that \(f(a) = b\).

19.2.4 Relative polygraphs. By definition, an \(\omega\)-functor \(f : C \to D\) is a relative polygraph if \(f\) can be obtained as a countable composition

\[
C = C_0 \xrightarrow{i_1} C_1 \xrightarrow{i_2} \cdots \xrightarrow{i_n} C_n \xrightarrow{i_{n+1}} \cdots,
\]

i.e., if \(f\) is the canonical morphism \(C_0 \to \lim_{\longrightarrow n} C_n\), where \(i_n\), for \(n \geq 1\), is part of a pushout square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\coprod_{k \geq 0} E_k \times \partial \mathcal{O}_k & \longrightarrow & C_{n-1} \\
\downarrow i_n & & \downarrow \\
\coprod_{k \geq 0} E_k \times \mathcal{O}_k & \longrightarrow & C_n
\end{array}
\]

the \(E_k\)'s being sets (depending on \(n\)). In other words, \(C_n\) is obtained from \(C_{n-1}\) by freely adding cells (of any dimension) and \(i_n : C_{n-1} \to C_n\) is the canonical \(\omega\)-functor. This means that \(D\) is obtained from \(C\) by adding cells (in any order) in several steps. Using the fact that the forgetful functor from \(\text{Cat}_m\) to \(\text{Cat}_n\), when \(m > n\), respects colimits (see §14.4.6) and in particular pushouts, one gets that the new cells can always be attached dimension by dimension. This means that can suppose that \(i_n\), for \(n \geq 1\), is part of a pushout square of the
simpler form
\[
\coprod_{F_n} \emptyset \rightarrow \emptyset_n \rightarrow C_{n-1}
\]
where \(F_n\) is any set. In other words, \(i_n\) is the canonical \(\omega\)-functor associated to the cellular extension \((C_{n-1}, F_n)\). In particular, we get:

**19.2.5 Proposition.** An \(\omega\)-category \(C\) is generated by a polygraph if and only if the unique functor from the initial \(\omega\)-category to \(C\) is a relative polygraph.

**19.2.6 Remark.** We will see in Chapter 21 that the previous proposition can be strengthened by saying that \(C\) is generated by a polygraph if and only if the unique \(\omega\)-functor from the initial \(\omega\)-category to \(C\) is a cofibration. In other words, the “cofibrant objects” are exactly the \(\omega\)-categories generated by polygraphs.

**19.2.7 Proposition.** Every cofibration is a monomorphism.

*Proof.* Cofibrations are retracts of countable compositions of canonical \(\omega\)-functors associated to cellular extensions. As retracts and countable compositions of monomorphic \(\omega\)-functors are monomorphisms, the result follows from the fact that the canonical \(\omega\)-functor associated to a cellular extension is a monomorphism (Proposition 16.2.3).

\[ \square \]

### 19.3 Polygraphic resolutions

Polygraphic resolutions are the \(\omega\)-categorical version of the free resolutions of homological algebra, see Section E.3.1. We will see shortly that every \(\omega\)-category admits a polygraphic resolution and that such a resolution is in some sense unique up to homotopy.

**19.3.1 Polygraphic resolutions.** A polygraphic resolution of an \(\omega\)-category \(C\) is a pair \((P, p)\), where \(P\) is a polygraph and \(p : P^* \rightarrow C\) is a trivial fibration.

**19.3.2 Proposition.** Every \(\omega\)-category admits a polygraphic resolution.

*Proof.* Let \(C\) be an \(\omega\)-category. Consider the unique \(\omega\)-functor \(\emptyset_C : \emptyset \rightarrow C\) from the initial \(\omega\)-category \(\emptyset\) to \(C\). By Proposition 19.2.2, this \(\omega\)-functor factors as \(p \circ \emptyset_{P^*}\), where \(P\) is a polygraph, \(\emptyset_{P^*} : \emptyset \rightarrow P^*\) is the unique such morphism and \(p\) is a trivial fibration, thereby proving the result.

\[ \square \]
408

Polygraphic resolutions

The previous proposition shows the existence of a polygraphic resolution for any \( \omega \)-category by abstract non-sense. Here is a canonical choice of such a resolution:

19.3.3 **The canonical resolution.** Let \( C \) be an \( \omega \)-category. The counit of the adjunction between the categories of polygraphs and \( \omega \)-categories gives an \( \omega \)-functor \( \varepsilon_C : G(C)^* \to C \), where \( G : \text{Cat}_{\omega} \to \text{Pol}_{\omega} \) denotes the functor described in §15.1.10. This \( \omega \)-functor is a trivial fibration, essentially by definition. Indeed, it is bijective on objects by definition and, if \( x \) and \( y \) are two parallel \( k \)-cells of \( G(C)^* \), for some \( k \geq 0 \), and \( z \) is a \( (k+1) \)-cell of \( G(C)^* \) from \( \varepsilon_C(x) \) to \( \varepsilon_C(y) \), then, by definition of \( G(C) \), there is a generating \( (k+1) \)-cell \( p = (z, x, y) \) in \( G(C) \) from \( x \) to \( y \) such that \( \varepsilon_C(p) = z \). This means that \( (G(C), \varepsilon_C) \) is a polygraphic resolution of \( C \). This polygraphic resolution is called the *canonical resolution* of \( C \). Note that it is functorial in \( C \).

19.4 **Uniqueness of polygraphic resolutions**

In this section, we prove that polygraphic resolutions are unique up to a non canonical homotopy in an appropriate sense.

19.4.1 **Proposition.** Let \( f : C \to D \) be an \( \omega \)-functor, let \( (P, p) \) and \( (Q, q) \) two polygraphic resolutions of \( C \) and \( D \), respectively. There exists a (non canonical) \( \omega \)-functor \( g : P^* \to Q^* \) making the square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P^* & \xrightarrow{g} & Q^* \\
p & & q \\
C & \xrightarrow{f} & D 
\end{array}
\]

commute.

**Proof.** Consider the commutative square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\emptyset & \xrightarrow{q} & Q^* \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow q \\
P^* & \xrightarrow{p} & C & \xrightarrow{f} & D 
\end{array}
\]

where the unlabeled arrows are the unique such \( \omega \)-functors. By Proposition 19.3.2, the \( \omega \)-functor \( \emptyset \to P^* \) is a cofibration. Since by definition, the \( \omega \)-functor \( q \) is a trivial fibration, the square admits a lift \( f \), thereby proving the result. \( \square \)
19.4.2 Remark. In the particular case where $C = D$ and $f$ is the identity $\omega$-functor, we get the existence of an $\omega$-functor

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
P^* & \xrightarrow{g} & Q^* \\
p & \searrow & q \\
& C & \\
\end{array}
$$

between any two polygraphic resolutions of $C$.

19.4.3 Remark. We will prove in Chapter 21, using the “folk model structure” on $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$, that the $\omega$-functor $g$ of the previous proposition is unique up to some appropriate notion of homotopy (see Proposition 21.2.9).
Towards the folk model structure: 
\(\omega\)-equivalences

In this chapter, we introduce all the notions and tools that will allow us to define and establish the existence, in the next chapter, of the folk model category structure on \(\textbf{Cat}_\omega\). We particularly focus on the concept of \(\omega\)-equivalences, that will be the weak equivalences of this model structure. Essentially all the material of this chapter is extracted from Lafont, Métayer and Worytkiewicz [237], although cylinders first appeared in work by Métayer [279].

The class of \(\omega\)-equivalences is the appropriate generalization to \(\omega\)-categories of the class of equivalences of ordinary categories. In particular, an \(\omega\)-equivalence between 1-categories is nothing but an equivalence of categories. To define this notion, we need to generalize the concept of an invertible cell (or isomorphism). This leads to the notion of a reversible cell, which is, in intuitive terms, a cell admitting an inverse up to cells admitting inverses, up to cells admitting inverses, etc. Another fundamental tool is the \(\omega\)-category \(\tilde{\Gamma}(C)\) of reversible cylinders in an \(\omega\)-category \(C\) that we will lead to a sensible notion of homotopy.

The first section is devoted to \(\omega\)-equivalences. We start by defining the notion of a reversible cell in an \(\omega\)-category. Following [237], we define it by coinduction. We then introduce the class of \(\omega\)-equivalences. We prove some basic stability properties of this class. We observe that trivial fibrations in the sense of the previous chapter are \(\omega\)-equivalences. In the second section, we introduce the \(\omega\)-category \(\Gamma(C)\) of cylinders in an \(\omega\)-category \(C\). The purpose of this \(\omega\)-category is to allow the definition of \(\omega\)-functors playing the role of homotopies. This leads to the definition of an oplax transformations, generalizing the 1-categorical natural transformations and the 2-categorical oplax transformations. The third section is about the sub-\(\omega\)-category \(\Gamma(C) \subseteq \Gamma(C)\) of reversible cylinders. This is a fundamental tool to establish properties of \(\omega\)-equivalences. We show that this \(\omega\)-category behaves as a homotopical path objects and we use its properties to show that the class of \(\omega\)-equivalences sat-
20.1 \(\omega\)-equivalences

The notion of an \(\omega\)-equivalence is the higher dimensional generalization of the notion of an equivalence of categories. In particular, \(\omega\)-equivalent \(\omega\)-categories can be considered as being close to be equal. The definition is a bit involved and requires the introduction of the auxiliary concept of a reversible cell.

20.1.1 Reversible cells. Given an \(\omega\)-category \(C\), the notion of a reversible cell of \(C\) is defined by coinduction in the following way. An \(n\)-cell \(u : x \to y\) of \(C\), for some \(n > 0\), is reversible if there exists an \(n\)-cell \(\overline{u} : y \to x\) in \(C\) and \((n + 1)\)-cells

\[\alpha : 1_x \to u \ast_{n-1} \overline{u}\]
\[\beta : \overline{u} \ast_{n-1} u \to 1_y\]

in \(C\) that are both reversible.

Concretely, this means that an \(n\)-cell \(u : x \to y\) of \(C\) is reversible if and only if it belongs to a set \(X\) of cells of \(C\) having the following property: for every \(n' > 0\) and every \(n'\)-cell \(u' : x' \to y'\) in \(X\), there exists an \(n'\)-cell \(\overline{u} : y' \to x'\) and \((n' + 1)\)-cells \(\alpha' : 1_{x'} \to u' \ast_{n'-1} \overline{u}\) and \(\beta' : \overline{u} \ast_{n'-1} u' \to 1_{y'}\) in \(X\).

20.1.2 Remark. Strictly speaking, coinduction allows to define algebraic structures. What we have really defined in the previous paragraph is a “reversibility structure”, where all the “there exists” are replaced by actual choices. This structure can somehow be flattened to a kind of tree. Then one can define a reversible cell as a cell that can be endowed with a reversibility structure.

We will often say that “we reason by coinduction”. This basically means that we are defining a “reversibility structure” according to its actual definition, producing choices of \(\overline{u}, \alpha\) and \(\beta\) as in the definition. In particular, if \(R\) is a set of cells of an \(\omega\)-category \(C\), “proving by coinduction” that cells of \(R\) are reversible will consist in producing, for every \(n\)-cell \(u\) of \(R\), a formula giving \(\overline{u}, \alpha\) and \(\beta\)
Towards the folk model structure

as in the definition of a reversible cell assuming that the \((n + 1)\)-cells of \(R\) are reversible.

20.1.3 Weak inverses. Let \(n \geq 0\). If an \(n\)-cell \(u : x \rightarrow y\) in some \(\omega\)-category is reversible, then any \(\overline{u} : y \rightarrow x\) as in the definition will be called a weak inverse of \(u\).

If \(C\) is a 1-category, a reversible 1-cell of \(C\) is the same thing as an isomorphism of \(C\) and a weak inverse is an inverse. This follows from the fact that units are reversible (see the next lemma). Similarly, if \(C\) is a 2-category, a 1-cell \(u : x \rightarrow y\) of \(C\) is reversible if and only if it is an equivalence, that is, if and only if there exists a 1-cell \(\overline{u} : y \rightarrow x\) and 2-cells \(\alpha : 1_x \rightarrow u \circ \overline{u}\) and \(\beta : \overline{u} \circ u \rightarrow 1_y\) that are isomorphisms.

20.1.4 Lemma. Let \(C\) be an \(\omega\)-category.

1. If \(x\) is a cell of \(C\), then \(1_x\) is reversible.
2. If \(u : x \rightarrow y\) is a reversible cell of \(C\), then any weak inverse \(\overline{u} : y \rightarrow x\) of \(u\) is reversible and has \(u\) as a weak inverse.
3. If \(u : x \rightarrow y\) and \(v : y \rightarrow z\) are two reversible \(n\)-cells of \(C\) for an \(n > 0\), then \(u \ast_{n-1} v\) is reversible.
4. More generally, if \(u\) and \(v\) are two reversible \(n\)-cells of \(C\) such that the composition \(u \ast_i v\) is defined for some \(0 \leq i < n\), then this composition is reversible.

Proof. We proceed by coinduction.

1. Let \(x\) be an \(n\)-cell of \(C\). Set \(u = \overline{u} = 1_x\). Then \(u \ast_n \overline{u} = \overline{u} \ast_n u = 1_{1_x}\) is reversible by coinduction, and so is \(1_x\) by definition.
2. This is immediate by the symmetry in the definition of a reversible cell.
3. By definition, there exist cells \(\overline{u} : y \rightarrow x\), \(\overline{v} : z \rightarrow y\) and reversible cells \(\alpha : 1_x \rightarrow u \ast_{n-1} \overline{u}\), \(\beta : \overline{u} \ast_{n-1} u \rightarrow 1_y\), \(\gamma : 1_y \rightarrow v \ast_{n-1} \overline{u}\), \(\delta : \overline{v} \ast_{n-1} v \rightarrow 1_z\).

We get cells
\[
\alpha \ast_n \left( u \ast_{n-1} \gamma \ast_{n-1} \overline{u} \right) : 1_x \rightarrow u \ast_{n-1} v \ast_{n-1} \overline{u} \ast_{n-1} \overline{v} \\
(\overline{v} \ast_{n-1} \beta \ast_{n-1} v) \ast_n \delta : \overline{v} \ast_{n-1} \overline{u} \ast_{n-1} u \ast_{n-1} v \rightarrow 1_z.
\]

By coinduction, it suffices to show that the cells \(\alpha \ast_n \left( u \ast_{n-1} \gamma \ast_{n-1} \overline{u} \right)\) and \((\overline{v} \ast_{n-1} \beta \ast_{n-1} v) \ast_n \delta\) are reversible. It thus suffices to show that the whiskering of a reversible cell by any cell is reversible. This can be shown by a new coinduction but also follows from the next proposition.

4. The case where \(i = n - 1\) is the previous assertion. If \(i < n - 1\), then, using the exchange law, this follows from the case \(i = n - 1\) and the case of a whiskering (see the proof of the previous assertion). \(\square\)
20.1 \( \omega \)-equivalences

20.1.5 Proposition. Let \( f : C \to D \) be an \( \omega \)-functor. If \( u \) is a reversible cell of \( C \), then \( f(u) \) is a reversible cell of \( D \).

Proof. Let \( u : x \to y \) be a reversible \( n \)-cell of \( C \). By definition, there exists a cell \( \overline{u} : y \to x \) and two reversible cells \( \alpha : 1_x \to u \ast_{n-1} \overline{u} \) and \( \beta : \overline{u} \ast_{n-1} u \to 1_x \). By coinduction, the cells \( f(\alpha) : 1_{f(x)} \to f(u) \ast_{n-1} f(\overline{u}) \) and \( f(\beta) : f(\overline{u}) \ast_{n-1} f(u) \to 1_{f(y)} \) are reversible. This means that \( f(u) \) is indeed reversible. \( \square \)

20.1.6 \( \omega \)-equivalent cells. Let \( n \geq 0 \). Two \( n \)-cells \( x \) and \( y \) of an \( \omega \)-category \( C \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent if there exists a reversible cell \( u : x \to y \) in \( C \). We denote this relation by \( x \sim y \).

We chose to define the notion of being \( \omega \)-equivalent in terms of the notion of a reversible cell but we could also have defined this notion directly using coinduction: two parallel \( n \)-cells \( x \) and \( y \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent if there exists \( (n+1) \)-cells \( u : x \to y \) and \( \overline{u} : y \to x \) such that \( 1_x \) and \( u \ast_{n} \overline{u} \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent, and \( \overline{u} \ast_{n} u \) and \( 1_y \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent.

If follows from §20.1.3 that \( \omega \)-equivalent objects in a 1-category are isomorphic objects and that \( \omega \)-equivalent objects in a 2-category are equivalent objects.

20.1.7 Proposition. Let \( C \) be an \( \omega \)-category. The relation “being \( \omega \)-equivalent” is a congruence relation on the set of cells of \( C \) in the sense that:

1. This relation is an equivalence relation.
2. This equivalence relation is compatible with compositions: if \( u \) and \( u' \), and \( v \) and \( v' \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent cells, then \( u \ast_{1} v \) is \( \omega \)-equivalent to \( u' \ast_{1} v' \) when these compositions make sense.

Proof. This is a direct consequence of Lemma 20.1.4. \( \square \)

20.1.8 Proposition. Let \( f : C \to D \) be an \( \omega \)-functor. If two cells \( x \) and \( y \) of \( C \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent, then so are \( f(x) \) and \( f(y) \).

Proof. This follows from Proposition 20.1.5 \( \square \)

20.1.9 We now turn to a result of paramount importance in the construction of the folk model structure, namely the “division Lemma” ([237, Lemma 4.6]). As the proof is quite intricate, it will be convenient to introduce the following terminology: for any property \( \mathcal{P} \) applying to \( n \)-cells, we say that there is a weakly unique \( n \)-cell satisfying \( \mathcal{P} \) whenever any two \( n \)-cells satisfying \( \mathcal{P} \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent.
20.1.10 Lemma (Division lemma). Any reversible 1-cell $u : x \to y$ satisfies the following left division property:

- For any 1-cell $w : x \to z$, there is a weakly unique 1-cell $v : y \to z$ such that $u \ast_0 v \sim w$.
- For any pair of parallel 1-cells $a, b : y \to z$ and any 2-cell $w : u \ast_0 a \to u \ast_0 b$, there is a weakly unique 2-cell $v : a \to b$ such that $u \ast_0 v \sim w$.
- More generally, for any $n > 0$, any pair of parallel $n$-cells $a, b$ such that $s_0(a) = s_0(b) = y, t_0(a) = t_0(b) = z$ and any $(n+1)$-cell $w : u \ast_0 a \to u \ast_0 b$, there is a weakly unique $(n+1)$-cell $v : a \to b$ such that $u \ast_0 v \sim w$.

Likewise, reversible 1-cells satisfy the corresponding right division property.

Proof. Let $u : x \to y$ be a reversible 1-cell. By definition there is a weak inverse $\overline{u} : y \to x$ together with a reversible 2-cell $\beta : \overline{u} \ast_0 u \to 1_x$, as well as a reversible 2-cell $\overline{\beta} : 1_y \to \overline{u} \ast_0 u$ such that $\beta \ast_1 \overline{\beta} \sim 1_{\overline{u} \ast_0 u}$.

- In the first case, define $v = \overline{u} \ast_0 w : y \to z$. Then $u \ast_0 v = u \ast_0 \overline{u} \ast_0 w \sim w$. Moreover, for any $v' : y \to z$ such that $u \ast_0 v' \sim w$, we get $\overline{u} \ast_0 u \ast_0 v' \sim \overline{u} \ast_0 w = v$, whence $v' \sim v$ and weak uniqueness holds. Likewise, the right division property holds in the first case.
- Let $a, b : y \to z$ be 1-cells and $w : u \ast_0 a \to u \ast_0 b$. Suppose there is a 2-cell $v : a \to b$ such that $u \ast_0 v \sim w$. Then, by applying exchange and compatibility of $\omega$-equivalence with compositions, one gets

$$\overline{\beta} \ast_0 a \ast_1 (\overline{\beta} \ast_0 w) \ast_1 (\beta \ast_0 b) \sim (\overline{\beta} \ast_0 a) \ast_1 (u \ast_0 v) \ast_1 (\beta \ast_0 b) \sim \overline{\beta} \ast_0 \beta \ast_0 v \sim v,$$

which implies weak uniqueness for $v$. As for existence, define

$$v = (\overline{\beta} \ast_0 a) \ast_1 (\overline{\beta} \ast_0 w) \ast_1 (\beta \ast_0 b).$$

By definition, $v : a \to b$. Consider now

$$v' = (\beta \ast_0 a) \ast_1 v \ast_1 (\overline{\beta} \ast_0 b).$$

Again, exchange and compatibility yield

$$v' \sim \overline{u} \ast_0 w$$

but also

$$v' \sim \overline{u} \ast_0 (u \ast_0 v).$$

By applying weak uniqueness to left division by $\overline{u}$, one gets $w \sim u \ast_0 v$, whence the result. Right division is proved accordingly in this case.
20.1 \(\omega\)-equivalences

The general case is proved by induction on \(n\). The case \(n = 1\) has been just proved above. Let now \(n > 1\) and suppose that the property of left and right division holds for any reversible 1-cell in any \(\omega\)-category \(C\) up to dimension \(n - 1\). Let \(a, b\) be parallel \(n\)-cells such that \(s_0(a) = s_0(b) = y, t_0(a) = t_0(b) = z\) and \(w : u \ast_0 a \to u \ast_0 b\) an \((n + 1)\)-cell in \(C\). Consider

\[ w' = (\overline{u} \ast_0 w) \ast_1 (\beta \ast_0 t_1(a)). \]

We have

\[ s_n(w') = (\beta \ast_0 s_1(a)) \ast_1 a \quad \text{and} \quad t_n(w') = (\beta \ast_0 s_1(a)) \ast_1 b. \]

Now \(\beta \ast_0 s_1(a)\) may be seen as a reversible 1-cell in the \(\omega\)-category \(C(y, z)\), so that the induction hypothesis applies and yields a weakly unique \((n + 1)\)-cell \(v : a \to b\) such that

\[ (\beta \ast_0 s_1(a)) \ast_1 v \sim w'. \quad (20.1) \]

One then shows that any \((n + 1)\)-cell \(v' : a \to b\) such that \(u \ast_0 v' \sim w\) satisfies the equation (20.1). Therefore, by induction, \(v' \sim v\) and weak uniqueness is proved. It remains to check that the above \((n + 1)\)-cell \(v\) satisfies \(u \ast_0 v \sim w\). Rewriting (20.1) using the exchange law, we get

\[ (\overline{u} \ast_0 u \ast_0 v) \ast_1 (\beta \ast_0 t_1(a)) \sim (\overline{u} \ast_0 w) \ast_1 (\beta \ast_0 t_1(a)). \]

By induction applied to the reversible 1-cell \(\beta \ast_0 t_1(a)\) of \(C(y, z)\), weak uniqueness for right division implies

\[ \overline{u} \ast_0 u \ast_0 v \sim \overline{u} \ast_0 w, \]

and finally, by weak uniqueness applied to \(\overline{u}, u \ast_0 v \sim w\), as required. \(\square\)

20.1.11 \(\omega\)-equivalesences. An \(\omega\)-functor \(f : C \to D\) is an \(\omega\)-equivalesence if the following conditions are satisfied:

1. For every object \(y\) of \(D\), there exists an object \(x\) of \(C\) such that \(f(x)\) is \(\omega\)-equivalescent to \(y\).
2. For every \(n \geq 0\), every pair of parallel \(n\)-cells \(x\) and \(y\) of \(C\) and every \((n + 1)\)-cells \(v : f(x) \to f(y)\), there exists an \((n + 1)\) -cells \(u : x \to y\) such that \(f(u)\) is \(\omega\)-equivalescent to \(v\).

If \(f : C \to D\) is a 1-functor between 1-categories, then \(f\) is an \(\omega\)-equivalesence if and only if it is a equivalence of categories. Similarly, if \(f : C \to D\) is a 2-functor, then \(f\) is an \(\omega\)-equivalesence if and only if \(f\) is a biequivalesence. Note that an \(\omega\)-equivalesence between two 2-categories is not the same thing as a biequivalesence as an \(\omega\)-equivalesence is required to be a strict 2-functor as opposed to a bifunctor.
20.1.12 Remark. In general, an $\omega$-equivalence does not admit an inverse, in any reasonable sense, that is a strict $\omega$-equivalence. Morally, it admits a weak $\omega$-functor as a weak inverse in some sense. For instance, the obvious $\omega$-functor from the “pseudo-2-triangle”

\[ \begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{f} & D \\ \alpha \downarrow & & \downarrow \gamma \\ B & \xrightarrow{g} & E \end{array} \]

where $\alpha$ is a reversible cell, to the commutative triangle, is easily seen to be an $\omega$-equivalence, but there is no $\omega$-equivalence from the commutative triangle to the pseudo-2-triangle.

20.1.13 Proposition. Trivial fibrations are $\omega$-equivalences.

Proof. This follows immediately from the characterization of trivial fibrations given at the end of §19.2.3 and the fact that identities are reversible cells. \(\square\)

An $\omega$-equivalence is injective up to $\omega$-equivalence of cells in the following sense:

20.1.14 Proposition. Let $f : C \to D$ be an $\omega$-equivalence and let $x$ and $y$ be two parallel cells of $C$. If $f(x)$ and $f(y)$ are $\omega$-equivalent, then $x$ and $y$ are $\omega$-equivalent.

Proof. By definition, there exists a cell $v : f(y) \to f(x)$ such that $1_{f(x)}$ and $f(u) *_{n-1} v$, and $v *_{n-1} f(u)$ and $1_{f(y)}$ are $\omega$-equivalent cells. Since $f$ is an $\omega$-equivalence, there exists a cell $\pi : y \to x$ such that $f(\pi)$ is $\omega$-equivalent to $v$. Using Proposition 20.1.7, we get that $f(1_x)$ and $f(u *_{n-1} \pi)$, and $f(\pi *_{n-1} u)$ and $f(1_y)$ are $\omega$-equivalent cells. The result thus follows by coinduction. \(\square\)

20.1.15 Proposition. The composition of two $\omega$-equivalences is an $\omega$-equivalence.

Proof. Let $f : C \to D$ and $g : D \to E$ be two $\omega$-equivalences. Let us prove that $gf : C \to E$ is an $\omega$-equivalence.

1. Let $z$ be an object of $E$. Since $g$ is an $\omega$-equivalence, there exists an object $y$ of $D$ such that $g(y)$ and $z$ are $\omega$-equivalent. Similarly, since $f$ is an $\omega$-equivalence, there exists an object $x$ of $C$ such that $f(x)$ and $y$ are $\omega$-equivalent. It follows from Proposition 20.1.5 that $g(f(x))$ and $g(y)$ are $\omega$-equivalent. Hence, by transitivity of the relation of $\omega$-equivalence, $gf(x)$ and $z$ are $\omega$-equivalent.
2. Let \( n \geq 0 \), let \( x \) and \( y \) be two parallel \( n \)-cells of \( C \) and let \( w : g f(x) \to g f(y) \) be an \((n+1)\)-cell of \( E \). Since \( g \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, there exists an \((n+1)\)-cell \( v : f(x) \to f(y) \) of \( D \) such that \( g(v) \) and \( w \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent. Similarly, since \( f \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, there exists an \((n + 1)\)-cell \( u : x \to y \) such that \( f(u) \) and \( v \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent. It follows from Proposition 20.1.8 that \( g f(u) \) and \( g(v) \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent, and hence that \( g f(u) \) and \( w \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent, thereby proving the result. \( \square \)

20.1.16 2-out-of-3 property. Recall that a class of maps \( \mathcal{W} \) in a category \( C \) is said to satisfy the 2-out-of-3 property if for any commutative triangle

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\
\downarrow{h} & & \downarrow{g} \\
Z & \xrightarrow{g} & \end{array}
\]

in \( C \), if two morphisms among \( f \), \( g \) and \( h \) are in \( \mathcal{W} \), then so is the third one. For instance, isomorphisms in a category satisfy the 2-out-of-3 property. More generally, any reasonable notion of “equivalence” in a category should satisfy this property.

The 2-out-of-3 property is made of three different properties, depending on which of two morphisms among \( f \), \( g \) and \( h \) are assumed to be in \( \mathcal{W} \). If \( \mathcal{W} \) is the class of \( \omega \)-equivalences, the previous proposition gives the case where these two morphisms are \( f \) and \( g \). The following proposition is the case where they are \( g \) and \( h \):

20.1.17 Proposition. Let \( f : C \to D \) and \( g : D \to E \) be two \( \omega \)-functors. If \( g \) and \( g f \) are \( \omega \)-equivalences, then so is \( f \).

Proof. Let us prove that \( f \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence.

1. Let \( y \) be an object of \( D \). Consider the object \( g(y) \) of \( E \). Since \( g f \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, there exists an object \( x \) of \( C \) such that \( g f(x) \) is \( \omega \)-equivalent to \( g(y) \). By Proposition 20.1.14, this implies that \( f(x) \) and \( y \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent.  

2. Let \( n \geq 0 \), let \( x \) and \( y \) be two parallel \( n \)-cells of \( C \) and let \( v : f(x) \to f(y) \) be an \((n+1)\)-cell of \( D \). Consider the \((n + 1)\)-cell \( g(v) : g f(x) \to g f(y) \) of \( E \). Since \( g f \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, there exists an \((n + 1)\)-cell \( u : x \to y \) such that \( g f(u) \) and \( g(v) \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent. By Proposition 20.1.14, this implies that \( f(u) \) and \( v \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent. \( \square \)

The remaining case of the 2-out-of-3 property is much harder to prove and requires the introduction of the \( \omega \)-category of cylinders, which is the topic of the next section.
We end the section by two easy stability conditions of the class of \( \omega \)-equivalences.

### 20.1.18 Proposition

_A retract of an \( \omega \)-equivalence is an \( \omega \)-equivalence._

**Proof.** Consider a commutative diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{f} & C' \\
\downarrow^i & & \downarrow^p \\
D & \xrightarrow{j} & D'
\end{array}
\]

where \( f' \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence. Let us prove that \( f \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence.

1. Let \( y \) be an object of \( D \). Since \( f \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, the exists a cell \( x' \) in \( C' \) such that \( f'(x') = y' \), where \( y' = f(y) \). We thus get an object \( x = p(x') \) in \( C \). As \( f(x) = f p(x') = q f'(x) \), the cell \( f(x) \) is \( \omega \)-equivalent to \( q y' = q j(y) = y \).

2. Let \( x \) and \( y \) be parallel cells of \( C \) and let \( v : f(x) \to f(y) \) be a cell of \( D \).

   Consider the cell \( v' = j(v) : j f(x) \to j f(y) \). We have \( v' : f' i(x) \to f' i(y) \) and, since \( f' \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, there exists a cell \( u' : i(x) \to i(y) \) such that \( f(u') \) is \( \omega \)-equivalent to \( v' \). Setting \( u = p f(u') \), we get as in the previous point that \( f(u) \) is \( \omega \)-equivalent to \( v \). \( \square \)

### 20.1.19 Proposition

_A filtered colimit of \( \omega \)-equivalences is an \( \omega \)-equivalence._

In particular, a countable composition (or more generally a transfinite composition) of \( \omega \)-equivalences is an \( \omega \)-equivalence.

**Proof.** Let \( I \) be a filtered category, let \( F, G : I \to \text{Cat}_\omega \) be two functors and let \( f : F \to G \) a natural transformation such that for every \( i \) in \( I \), \( f_i : F(i) \to G(i) \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence. Let us prove that \( f_\omega = \lim f : \lim F \to \lim G \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence. Recall (see Proposition 14.2.8) that the forgetful functor from \( \omega \)-categories to globular sets respects filtered colimits. This means that for every \( n \geq 0 \), the set of \( n \)-cells of \( \lim F \) is the colimit of the sets of \( n \)-cells of the \( F(i) \). If \( x \) is an \( n \)-cell of \( F(i) \), we will denote by \( [x] \) the corresponding \( n \)-cell of \( \lim F \).

1. Let \( [y] \) be an object of \( \lim G \) coming from an object \( y \) of \( G(i) \) for some \( i \) in \( I \).

   Since \( f_i : F(i) \to G(i) \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, there exists an object \( x \) of \( F(i) \) such that \( \alpha_l(x) \) is \( \omega \)-equivalence to \( y \). By definition, we have \( f_\omega([x]) = [y] \).
Moreover, since the canonical $\omega$-functor $G(i) \to \lim G$, as any $\omega$-functor, sends $\omega$-equivalent cells to $\omega$-equivalent cells, $[x]$ and $[y]$ are $\omega$-equivalent.

2. Let $n \geq 0$ and let $[x]$ and $[y]$ be two parallel $n$-cells of $\lim F$, where $x$ is an $n$-cell of $F(i)$ and $y$ is an $n$-cell of $F(j)$. Let $[u] : f_\omega([x]) \to f_\omega([y])$ be an $(n + 1)$-cell of $\lim G$, where $u$ is an $(n + 1)$-cell of $G(k)$. Using the fact that $I$ is filtered, one can suppose that $i = j = k$ and $u : f_i(x) \to f_i(y)$. Since $f_i$ is an $\omega$-equivalence, there exists $v : x \to y$ such that $f_i(u)$ is $\omega$-equivalent to $u$. This implies that $[u] : [x] \to [y]$ and that $f_\omega([u])$ is $\omega$-equivalent to $[v]$. □

\section{The $\omega$-category of cylinders}

In this section, we fix an $\omega$-category $C$.

\subsection{Cylinders}

For $n \geq 0$, an $n$-cylinder in $C$ is given by two $n$-cells $x$ and $y$ of $C$, and a sequence

$$a_0^-, a_0^+, \ldots, a_{n-1}^-, a_{n-1}^+, a_n^- = a_n^+$$

where $a_f^\varepsilon$, for $0 \leq f \leq n$ and $\varepsilon = \pm$, is a $(j+1)$-cell whose source and target are

$$a_f^- : s_f(x) \ast 0 a_0^+ \ast 1 \cdots \ast j-1 a_{f-1}^+ \to a_{j-1}^+ \ast 1 \cdots \ast 1 a_0^+ \ast 0 s_f(y),$$

$$a_f^+ : t_f(x) \ast 0 a_0^+ \ast 1 \cdots \ast j-1 a_{f-1}^+ \to a_{j-1}^+ \ast 1 \cdots \ast 1 a_0^- \ast 0 t_f(y).$$

Note that for $n = j$, we get

$$a_n : x \ast 0 a_0^+ \ast 1 \cdots \ast n-1 a_{n-1}^+ \to a_{n-1}^+ \ast n-1 \cdots \ast 1 a_0^- \ast 0 y.$$ 

We say that such a cylinder is a cylinder from $x$ to $y$ and we write $\alpha : x \prec \sim y$.

Here are pictures of a 0-cylinder, a 1-cylinder and a 2-cylinder in $C$:
20.2.2 Inductive definition of cylinders. Alternatively, the notion of an \( n \)-cylinder \( \alpha : x \curvearrowright y \), where \( x \) and \( y \) are \( n \)-cells of \( C \), can be defined inductively in the following way. A 0-cylinder \( \alpha : x \to y \) is a 1-cell \( \alpha_0 : x \to y \). For \( n > 0 \), an \( n \)-cylinder \( \alpha : x \curvearrowright y \) consists of two 1-cells

\[
\alpha^- : s_0(x) \to t_0(x) \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha^+ : t_0(x) \to t_0(y)
\]

and an \((n-1)\)-cylinder

\[
[\alpha] : [x *_0 \alpha^+_0] \curvearrowright [\alpha^- *_0 y]
\]

in the \( \omega \)-category \( C(s_0(x), t_0(y)) \), where \([x *_0 \alpha^+_0]\) and \([\alpha^- *_0 y]\) denote the \( n \)-cells \( x *_0 \alpha^+_0 \) and \( \alpha^- *_0 y \) of \( C \) seen as \((n-1)\)-cells of \( C(s_0(x), t_0(y)) \).

The equivalence between the two definitions easily follows by induction. This second definition is the one used [237]. Its main advantage is to allow inductive arguments on cylinders.

We will see that the cylinders in \( C \) organize themselves in an \( \omega \)-category. We now define the associated operations.

20.2.3 Source and target of a cylinder. Let \( x \) and \( y \) be two \( n \)-cells for some \( n > 0 \) and let \( \alpha : x \curvearrowright y \) be an \( n \)-cylinder. We define the source of this cylinder to be the \((n-1)\)-cylinder

\[
s_{n-1}(\alpha) : s_{n-1}(x) \curvearrowright s_{n-1}(y)
\]

given by the cells

\[
\alpha^-_0, \alpha^+_0, \ldots, \alpha^-_{n-2}, \alpha^+_{n-2}, \alpha^-_{n-1}.
\]

Similarly, the target of such a cylinder is the \((n-1)\)-cylinder

\[
t_{n-1}(\alpha) : t_{n-1}(x) \curvearrowright t_{n-1}(y)
\]

defined by the cells

\[
\alpha^-_0, \alpha^+_0, \ldots, \alpha^-_{n-2}, \alpha^+_{n-2}, \alpha^+_{n-1}.
\]

Geometrically, the source of a cylinder is the “back face” of this cylinder and the target is the “front face”. For instance, the source and target of a 2-cylinder

\[
x \downarrow \quad \alpha^+_0 \quad \alpha^-_0 \quad \alpha^+ \quad \alpha^- \quad y \downarrow
\]

\[
s_0(x) \quad s_1(x) \quad t_0(x) \quad s_0(y) \quad s_1(y) \quad t_0(y)
\]
20.2 The $\omega$-category of cylinders

are the 1-cylinders

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccc}
s_0(x) & \xrightarrow{s_0(t)} & t_0(x) \\
\alpha_0^- & \searrow & \alpha_0^+ \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
s_0(y) & \xrightarrow{s_0(t)} & t_0(y)
\end{array}
\quad \text{and} \quad
\begin{array}{ccc}
s_0(x) & \xrightarrow{s_0(t)} & t_0(x) \\
\alpha_0^- & \searrow & \alpha_0^+ \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
s_0(y) & \xrightarrow{s_0(t)} & t_0(y)
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

20.2.4 Unit of a cylinder. Let $\alpha : x \sim y$ be an $n$-cylinder in $C$. We define the unit of this cylinder to be the $(n + 1)$-cylinder

\[1_\alpha : 1_x \sim 1_y\]

defined by the cells

\[\alpha_0^-, \alpha_0^+, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1}^-, \alpha_{n-1}^+, \alpha_n, \alpha_n, 1_{\alpha_n}.\]

Geometrically, this cylinder is obtained by gluing two copies of $\alpha$ and putting a trivial cell in the middle. For instance, the unit of the 1-cylinder

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccc}
s_0(x) & \xrightarrow{t_0(x)} & t_0(x) \\
\alpha_0^- & \searrow & \alpha_0^+ \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
s_0(y) & \xrightarrow{t_0(y)} & t_0(y)
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

is the 2-cylinder

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccc}
s_0(x) & \xrightarrow{t_0(x)} & t_0(x) \\
\alpha_0^- & \searrow & \alpha_0^+ \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
s_0(y) & \xrightarrow{t_0(y)} & t_0(y)
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

20.2.5 Composition of cylinders. Let $\alpha : x \sim y$ and $\beta : z \sim t$ be two $n$-cylinders in $C$ for some $n > 0$. Let $0 \leq i < n$ and suppose that $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are composable in dimension $i$, that is, that we have

\[t_i(\alpha) : t_i(x) \sim t_i(y) = s_i(\beta) : s_i(x) \sim s_i(y).\]

We define the composition in dimension $i$ of these two $n$-cylinders to be the $n$-cylinder

\[\gamma = \alpha *_i \beta : x *_i z \sim y *_i t\]
defined by, for $j < i$,
\[ \begin{align*}
\gamma_j^N &= \alpha_j^N = \beta_j^N \\
\gamma_i^- &= \alpha_i^- \\
\gamma_i^+ &= \beta_i^+ \\
\gamma^+_{i+1} &= (s_{i+1}(x) \ast_0 \beta^N_{i+1} \ast_{i-1} \beta^N_{i-1} \ast_i \beta^N_{i+1}) \\
&\quad \ast_{i+1} (\alpha^N_{i+1} \ast_i \alpha_{i-1}^- \ast_{i-1} \ast_i \ast_0^N \ast_0^N s_{i+1}(t)) \\
\gamma^+_{i+1} &= (t_{i+1}(x) \ast_0 \beta^N_0 \ast_{i-1} \beta^N_{i-1} \ast_i \beta^N_{i+1}) \\
&\quad \ast_{i+1} (\alpha^N_{i+1} \ast_i \alpha_{i-1}^- \ast_{i-1} \ast_i \ast_0^N \ast_0^N t_{i+1}(t))
\end{align*} \]

if $i + 1 < n$, and
\[ \begin{align*}
\gamma_j^N &= (s_{i+1}(x) \ast_0 \beta^N_{i+1} \ast_{i-1} \beta^N_{i-1} \ast_i \beta^N_j) \ast_{i+1} (\alpha^N_j \ast_i \alpha_{i-1}^- \ast_{i-1} \ast_i \ast_0^N \ast_0^N t_{i+1}(t)) \\
\end{align*} \]
for $i + 1 < j \leq n$. In particular, for $j = n$, we have
\[ \begin{align*}
\gamma_n^N &= (s_{i+1}(x) \ast_0 \beta^N_0 \ast_{i-1} \beta^N_{i-1} \ast_i \beta^N_n) \ast_{i+1} (\alpha_n \ast_i \alpha_{i-1}^- \ast_{i-1} \ast_i \ast_0^N \ast_0^N t_{i+1}(t)).
\end{align*} \]

Here are some pictures of composable cylinders in low dimension:

20.2.6 The $\omega$-category of cylinders. We define the $\omega$-category $\Gamma(C)$ of cylinders in $C$ to be the $\omega$-category whose $n$-cells are $n$-cylinders in $C$ and whose sources, targets, units and compositions are given according to the formulas given in the previous paragraphs. Tedious calculations show that:

20.2.7 Theorem. If $C$ is an $\omega$-category, then $\Gamma(C)$ is indeed an $\omega$-category.

Proof. See [278, Appendix A].
20.2 The $\omega$-category of cylinders

20.2.8 The free-standing $n$-cylinder. Theorem 20.2.7 is a key ingredient in the construction $O_1 \otimes (-)$ presented in Section 17.2. In particular, we get for each $n \geq 0$ a polygraph $\text{Cyl}_n = O_1 \otimes O_n$. The associated $\omega$-category $\text{Cyl}_n^\omega$ is the free-standing $n$-cylinder, and by construction, for any $\omega$-category $C$, the set of $n$-cylinders in $C$ is just $\text{Cat}_\omega(\text{Cyl}_n^\omega, C)$.

20.2.9 Remark. The $\omega$-category $\Gamma(C)$ can be defined more conceptually using the Gray tensor product of $\omega$-categories. Indeed, the Gray tensor product is a biclosed monoidal structure on $\omega$-category. This means that we have functors

$\text{Hom}_{\text{oplax}} : \text{Cat}_\omega^{op} \times \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_\omega$ and $\text{Hom}_{\text{lax}} : \text{Cat}_\omega^{op} \times \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_\omega$

and isomorphisms

$\text{Cat}_\omega(C \otimes D, E) \cong \text{Cat}_\omega(C, \text{Hom}_{\text{oplax}}(D, E))$

and

$\text{Cat}_\omega(C \otimes D, E) \cong \text{Cat}_\omega(D, \text{Hom}_{\text{lax}}(C, E))$, natural in $C$, $D$ and $E$ in $\text{Cat}_\omega$. (See for instance [15, Appendix A] for definitions.) It can be shown that the $\omega$-category $\Gamma(C)$ is canonically isomorphic to $\text{Hom}_{\text{lax}}(O_1, C)$ (see [15, Section B.1]).

20.2.10 Functoriality of the cylinder $\omega$-category. Let $f : C \to D$ be an $\omega$-functor. If $\alpha : x \to y$ is an $n$-cylinder in $C$, we define an $n$-cylinder $f(\alpha) : f(x) \to f(y)$ in $D$ by applying $f$ to the components of $\alpha$, that is, by the cells

$f(\alpha_0^*)_0, f(\alpha_0^*)_1, \ldots, f(\alpha_n^*)_0, f(\alpha_n^*)_1$. One checks that this assignment defines an $\omega$-functor $\Gamma(f) : \Gamma(C) \to \Gamma(D)$. Moreover, this assignment is functorial in $f$. In other words, we have defined an endofunctor

$\Gamma : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_\omega$.

20.2.11 Projections. Let $\alpha : x \to y$ be a cylinder in $C$. We set

$\overline{\pi}(\alpha) = x$ and $\overline{\pi}(\alpha) = y$.

Geometrically, $\overline{\pi}(\alpha)$ and $\overline{\pi}(\alpha)$ are respectively the top face and the bottom face of the cylinder $\alpha$. The formulas defining the structure of the $\omega$-category $\Gamma(C)$ make transparent the fact that these assignments define $\omega$-functors

$\overline{\pi}_C, \overline{\pi}_C : \Gamma(C) \to C$. 
Moreover, these $\omega$-functors are natural in $C$ and we have defined natural transformations

$$\Pi, \pi : \Gamma \to 1_{\text{Cat}_\omega}.$$  

**20.2.12 Trivial cylinders.** Let $x$ be an $n$-cell of $C$. The *trivial cylinder* on $x$ is the $n$-cylinder $\iota(x) : x \leadsto x$ defined by the cells

$$1_{s_0(x)}, 1_{t_0(x)}, \ldots, 1_{s_{n-1}(x)}, 1_{t_{n-1}(x)}, 1_x.$$  

For instance, the trivial cylinder on a 2-cell

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{a} \\
\downarrow^x \\
\text{b}
\end{array}
\]

can be pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{a} \\
\downarrow^{s} \swarrow^{u} \searrow^{v} \downarrow^{t} \\
\downarrow^x \\
\text{b}
\end{array}
\]

One checks that this assignment defines an $\omega$-functor $\iota_C : C \to \Gamma(C)$ and this $\omega$-functor is natural in $C$. In other words, we have defined a natural transformation

$$\iota : 1_{\text{Cat}_\omega} \to \Gamma.$$  

**20.2.13 Oplax transformations.** If $C$ is an $\omega$-category, then the diagonal $\omega$-functor $C \to C \times C$ factors as

$$C \xrightarrow{\iota_C} \Gamma(C) \xrightarrow{(\Pi_C, \pi_C)} C \times C.$$  

As every factorization of the diagonal, this factorization induces some kind of notion of homotopies. These homotopies will be called *oplax transformations*. In other words, if $f, g : C \to D$ are two $\omega$-functors, an oplax transformation $\alpha$ from $f$ to $g$, denoted by $\alpha : f \Rightarrow g$, is an $\omega$-functor $\alpha : C \to \Gamma(D)$ making the
20.2.13 Algebraic description of oplax transformations. Let \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow g \) be an oplax transformation. If \( x \) is an \( n \)-cell of \( C \), we will denote by \( \alpha_x \) the principal cell of the \( n \)-cylinder \( \alpha(x) \). Thus, \( \alpha_x \) is an \((n + 1)\)-cell of \( D \). One can show that the cells \( \alpha_x \) of \( D \), where \( x \) varies among the cells of \( C \), fully determine \( \alpha \). Better, an oplax transformation can be fully defined in terms of these \( \alpha_x \).

More precisely, if \( f, g : C \to D \) are two \( \omega \)-functors, the data of an oplax transformation \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow g \) is equivalent to the data of, for every \( n \)-cell \( x \) of \( C \), an \((n + 1)\)-cell \( \alpha_x : f(x) \to g(x) \) such that the following relations are satisfied:

- for every cell \( x \) of \( C \), we have \( \alpha_{1x} = \alpha_x \).
- for every \( n > i \geq 0 \) and every pair of \( n \)-cells \( x \) and \( y \) such that \( x \star_i y \) is well-defined, we have

\[
\alpha_{x \star_i y} = (f(s_{i+1}(x))) \alpha_{f_0(y)} \star_1 \cdots \star_{i-1} \alpha_{f_{i-1}(y)} \star_i \alpha_y \star_{i+1} \alpha_{x \star_i y} = (g(t_{i+1}(y))) \alpha_{g_0(x)} \star_1 \cdots \star_{i-1} \alpha_{g_{i-1}(x)} \star_i \alpha_x \star_{i+1} \alpha_{y \star_i x}.
\]

20.2.14 Some operations on oplax transformations. Let \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow g \) be an \( \omega \)-functor. The \( \omega \)-functor \( \iota_C : C \to \Gamma(C) \) defines an oplax transformation from \( f \) to \( f \) that we will call the unit oplax transformation of \( f \) and that we will denote by \( 1_f : f \Rightarrow f \). If \( x \) is a cell of \( C \), we have

\[ (1_f)_x = 1_x. \]

If \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow f' \) is an oplax transformation between \( \omega \)-functors from \( C \) to \( D \) and \( g : D \to E \) is an \( \omega \)-functor, we define an oplax transformation \( g\alpha : gf \Rightarrow gf' \)
Towards the folk model structure

by the composition

$$C \xrightarrow{\alpha} \Gamma(D) \xrightarrow{\Gamma(g)} \Gamma(E).$$

If $x$ is a cell of $C$, we have

$$(ga)_x = g(\alpha_x).$$

Similarly, if $f : C \to D$ is an $\omega$-functor and $\alpha : g \Rightarrow g'$ is an oplax transformation between $\omega$-functors from $D$ to $E$, we define an oplax transformation $\alpha f : gf \Rightarrow g'f$ by the composition

$$C \xrightarrow{f} D \xrightarrow{\alpha} \Gamma(E)$$

and, for $x$ a cell of $C$, we have

$$(\alpha f)_x = \alpha f(x).$$

**20.2.16 Remark.** If $f, g, h : C \to D$ are three $\omega$-functors and $\alpha : f \Rightarrow g$ and $\beta : g \Rightarrow h$ are oplax transformations, one can define in a natural way a composite $\beta \circ \alpha : f \Rightarrow h$. We will only need the existence of this composition and therefore we do not give its precise definition. One can show that $\omega$-categories, $\omega$-functors and oplax transformations, with the operations defined in the previous paragraph and this operation $\circ$, form a sesquicategory (see §4.1.5 for a definition). However, this sesquicategory is not a 2-category. We refer the reader to [15, Appendix C] for more details.

### 20.3 The $\omega$-category of reversible cylinders

#### 20.3.1 Reversible cylinders

Let $C$ be an $\omega$-category. An $n$-cylinder $\alpha : x \rightsquigarrow y$ is said to be reversible if the cells

$$\alpha_0^-, \alpha_0^+, \ldots, \alpha_{n-1}^-, \alpha_{n-1}^+, \alpha_n$$

are reversible (see §20.1.1).

#### 20.3.2 The $\omega$-category of reversible cylinders

Let $C$ be an $\omega$-category and let $\widetilde{\Gamma}(C)_n$, for $n \geq 0$, be the set of reversible $n$-cylinders in $C$. By definition, we have an inclusion $\widetilde{\Gamma}(C)_n \subseteq \Gamma(C)_n$. One immediately checks that these $\widetilde{\Gamma}(C)_n$ define a subcategory $\widetilde{\Gamma}(C)$ of $\Gamma(C)$. Moreover, as the image of a reversible cell by an $\omega$-functor is reversible, the functor $\Gamma : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_\omega$ induces a functor

$$\widetilde{\Gamma} : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_\omega.$$
Since units are reversible cells, the trivial cylinder on a cell is reversible and the natural transformation \( \iota : 1_{\text{Cat}_{\omega}} \to \Gamma \) factors by a natural transformation

\[
\iota : 1_{\text{Cat}_{\omega}} \to \tilde{\Gamma}.
\]

Finally, by restriction, the natural transformations \( \overline{\pi}, \overline{\pi} : \Gamma \to 1_{\text{Cat}_{\omega}} \) define natural transformations

\[
\overline{\pi}, \overline{\pi} : \tilde{\Gamma} \to 1_{\text{Cat}_{\omega}}.
\]

**20.3.3 Reversible oplax transformations.** Let \( f, g : C \to D \) be two \( \omega \)-functors. We say that an oplax transformation \( \alpha : f \Rightarrow g \) is reversible if the \( \omega \)-functor \( \alpha : C \to \Gamma(D) \) factors through the inclusion \( \tilde{\Gamma}(D) \subseteq \Gamma(D) \). In other words, we have a factorization

\[
D \xrightarrow{\iota_D} \tilde{\Gamma}(D) \xrightarrow{(\pi_D, \Sigma_D)} D \times D
\]

of the diagonal of \( D \) and a reversible oplax transformation from \( f \) to \( g \) is an \( \omega \)-functor \( \alpha : C \to \tilde{\Gamma}(D) \) making the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & \tilde{\Gamma}(D) \\
| & \downarrow{\pi_D} & | \\
D & \xrightarrow{\Sigma_D} & D
\end{array}
\]

commute.

In the algebraic definition of an oplax transformation given in §20.2.14, an oplax transformation \( \alpha \) is reversible if and only if \( \alpha_x \) is reversible for every cell \( x \).

One immediately checks that the various operations on oplax transformations defined in §20.2.15 restrict to reversible oplax transformations. In other words, the unit oplax transformation of an \( \omega \)-functor is reversible and if we can compose horizontally a reversible oplax transformation and an \( \omega \)-functor (in both directions) we get a reversible oplax transformation.

We now introduce some terminology to state the “transport lemma” which is of crucial importance to prove the existence of the folk model structure.

**20.3.4 Incomplete cylinders.** Let \( C \) be an \( \omega \)-category. For \( n \geq 0 \), a *bottom-incomplete* \( n \)-cylinder in \( C \) consists of the same data as an \( n \)-cylinder \( \alpha : x \rightsquigarrow y \) except that \( y \) and \( \alpha_n \) are not given. More formally, it consists of an object \( x \) of \( C \) if \( n = 0 \) and, if \( n > 0 \), of an \( n \)-cell \( x \), two parallel \( (n-1) \)-cells \( y^- \) and \( y^+ \).
Towards the folk model structure

and a sequence

\[ a_0^-, a_0^+, \ldots, a_{n-1}^-, a_{n-1}^+ \]

where \( a_j^- \) is a \((j + 1)\)-cell whose source and target are

\[
\begin{align*}
\alpha_j^- & : s_j(x) *_0 a_0^+ *_1 \cdots *_{j-1} \alpha_{j-1}^- \rightarrow \alpha_{j-1}^- *_{j-1} \cdots *_1 a_0^- *_0 s_j(y^-), \\
\alpha_j^+ & : t_j(x) *_0 a_0^+ *_1 \cdots *_{j-1} \alpha_{j-1}^+ \rightarrow \alpha_{j-1}^- *_{j-1} \cdots *_1 a_0^- *_0 t_j(y^+).
\end{align*}
\]

Here are pictures of bottom-incomplete cylinders in dimension 0, 1 and 2:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
x \cdot \\
\alpha_0^- \\
y^- \\
\downarrow \\
\alpha_0^+ \\
y^+ \\
\downarrow \\
\alpha_0^+
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
s_0(x) \xrightarrow{x} t_0(x) \\
\alpha_0^- \\
y^- \\
\downarrow \\
\alpha_0^+ \\
y^+ \\
\downarrow \\
\alpha_0^+
\end{array}
\]

We say that such a bottom-incomplete n-cylinder is reversible if the cells

\[ a_0^-, a_0^+, \ldots, a_{n-2}^-, a_{n-2}^+, a_{n-1}^- \]

are reversible.

We define similarly the notion of a top-incomplete n-cylinder and of reversible top-incomplete n-cylinder.

20.3.5 Lemma (Transport lemma). Let \( C \) be an \( \omega \)-category.

1. Any reversible bottom-incomplete n-cylinder extends (non-uniquely) to a reversible n-cylinder.

2. Consider a reversible bottom-incomplete n-cylinder.

   a.b If \( \alpha : x \rightsquigarrow y \) and \( \alpha' : x \rightsquigarrow y' \) are two extensions as in 1, then \( y \) and \( y' \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent.

   b.b If \( \alpha : x \rightsquigarrow y \) is an extension as in 1 and \( y' \) is an n-cell \( \omega \)-equivalent to \( y \), then there exists an extension \( \alpha : x \rightsquigarrow y' \) as in 1.

Proof. The case \( n = 0 \) is obvious. For \( n = 1 \), consider the incomplete 1-cylinder defined by \((x, y^-, y^+, a_0^-, a_0^+)\) and let \( a_0^+ \) be a weak inverse of \( a_0^- \). The 1-cell

\[ y = a_0^- *_0 x *_0 a_0^+ \]

satisfies the relation \( x *_0 a_0^+ \sim a_0^- *_0 y \) where \( \sim \) denotes \( \omega \)-equivalence as defined in §20.1.6. This is witnessed by a reversible 2-cell \( \alpha_1 : x *_0 a_0^+ \rightarrow a_0^- *_0 y \), which gives the desired extension. Conditions 2(a) and 2(b) immediately follow from the remark that \( y \sim y' \) if and only if \( a_0^- *_0 y \sim a_0^- *_0 y' \).
Let us now suppose \( n > 1 \) and let
\[
(x, y^-, y^+, \alpha_0^+, \alpha_0^-, \ldots, \alpha_{n-2}^+, \alpha_{n-2}^-, \alpha_{n-1}^+)
\]
be a reversible bottom-incomplete \( n \)-cylinder. We have to prove that there is a weakly unique \( n \)-cell \( y \) such that
\[
x \circ_0 a_0^+ \cdot \cdots \cdot a_{n-1}^+ \alpha_{n-1}^- \cdot \cdots \cdot \alpha_1^- \circ_0 y,
\]
(20.2)
where \( y : y^- \to y^+ \). Let \( w = x \circ_0 a_0^+ \cdot \cdots \cdot a_{n-1}^+ \alpha_{n-1}^- \cdot \cdots \cdot \alpha_1^- \circ_0 y \) denote the left member of (20.2). We prove by induction on \( k \) such that \( 1 \leq k \leq n \) that there is a weakly unique \( n \)-cell \( v^k \) in \( C \) such that
\[
w \sim \alpha_{n-1}^- \circ_{n-1} \cdots \circ_1 \alpha_{n-k}^- \circ_{n-k} v^k.
\]
(20.3)
For \( k = 1 \), this equation reads
\[
w \sim \alpha_{n-1}^- \circ_{n-1} v^1.
\]
(20.4)
It can be seen as an equation on 1-cells in the \( \omega \)-category \( C' \) of \( (n-2) \)-cells of \( C \). Therefore the division lemma (Lemma 20.1.10) applies and yields a weakly unique 1-cell \( v^1 \) of \( C' \), which is also an \( n \)-cell of \( C \) satisfying (20.4). Let \( k \) such that \( 1 \leq k < n \) and suppose that (20.3) has a weakly unique solution \( v^k \). By applying again the division lemma, there is a weakly unique \( n \)-cell \( v^{k+1} \) solution of
\[
v^k \sim \alpha_{n-k-1}^- \circ_{n-k-1} v^{k+1}.
\]
(20.5)
Therefore, substituting \( v^k \) by the second member of (20.5) in (20.3) one gets
\[
w \sim \alpha_{n-1}^- \circ_{n-1} \cdots \circ_1 \alpha_{n-k}^- \circ_{n-k} \circ_{n-k} v^{k+1},
\]
which completes the induction. Now \( v^n = y \) provides a weakly unique solution of (20.2), as required. \( \square \)

20.3.6 Remark. A similar result holds for reversible top-incomplete cylinders.

20.3.7 Alternative description of the transport lemma. In practice, the transport lemma will be used in the following way. Let \( \alpha : x_0 \sim x_1 \), \( \beta : y_0 \sim y_1 \) be two parallel \( n \)-cylinders and let \( u : x_0 \to x_1 \) be an \( (n+1) \)-cell in an \( \omega \)-category \( C \). The data of \( \alpha \), \( \beta \) and \( u \) is equivalent to the data of a bottom-incomplete \( (n+1) \)-cylinder (informally, \( \alpha \), \( \beta \) and \( u \) corresponds respectively to the back face, the front face and the top face of the bottom-incomplete cylinder). Moreover, this bottom-incomplete cylinder is reversible if and only if the cylinders \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \) are reversible. In this case, an extension, as in the transport lemma, corresponds to an \( (n+1) \)-cell \( v : y_0 \to y_1 \) and a reversible \( (n+1) \)-cylinder \( \Lambda : u \sim v \), whose source and target cylinders are \( \alpha \) and \( \beta \).
Towards the folk model structure

We will often write \( \Lambda : u \rightsquigarrow v : \alpha \to \beta \) in such a situation. The existence and uniqueness properties of the second part of the transport lemma apply to \( v \).

20.3.8 Proposition. Let \( C \) be an \( \omega \)-category.

1. The projections \( \overline{\pi}_C, \overline{\pi}_C : \overline{\Gamma}(C) \to C \) are trivial fibrations.
2. The \( \omega \)-functor \( \iota_C : C \to \overline{\Gamma}(C) \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence.

Proof. 1. Let us prove the result for \( \overline{\pi} \), the other proof being analogous. The surjectivity on objects is clear. Let \( n \geq 0 \) and let \( \alpha : x \rightsquigarrow y \) and \( \beta : z \rightsquigarrow t \) be two parallel reversible \( n \)-cylinders. Suppose we have an \( n \)-cell between their images by the \( \omega \)-functor \( \overline{\pi} \), i.e., an \( n \)-cell \( u : x \to z \). We are precisely in the situation of the previous paragraph and the transport lemma gives a reversible \((n + 1)\)-cylinder \( \Lambda : \alpha \to \beta : u \rightsquigarrow v \), showing that \( \overline{\pi} \) is indeed a trivial fibration.

2. Since the composite

\[
C \xrightarrow{\iota_C} \overline{\Gamma}(C) \xrightarrow{\overline{\pi}_C} C
\]

is the identity and hence an \( \omega \)-equivalence, and that the trivial fibration \( \overline{\pi}_C \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence (see Proposition 20.1.13), it follows from one of the known cases of the 2-out-of-3 property (Proposition 20.1.17) that \( \iota_C \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence. \( \square \)

20.3.9 Mapping path space factorization. Let \( f : C \to D \) be an \( \omega \)-functor.

We define an \( \omega \)-category \( \overline{\Gamma}_f \) by the pullback square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\overline{\Gamma}_f & \xrightarrow{\pi_1} & \overline{\Gamma}(D) \\
\pi_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi \\
C & \xrightarrow{f} & D.
\end{array}
\]

Explicitly, an \( n \)-cell of \( \overline{\Gamma}_f \) is a pair \( (x, y : f(x) \rightsquigarrow y) \), where \( x \) and \( y \) are \( n \)-cells of \( C \) and \( D \), and \( y \) is a reversible \( n \)-cylinder. Note that since trivial fibrations are stable under pullback, by the previous proposition, the projection \( \pi_1 : \overline{\Gamma}_f \to C \) is a trivial fibration.

The \( \omega \)-functor \( f : C \to D \) factors as

\[
C \xrightarrow{i_f} \overline{\Gamma}_f \xrightarrow{p_f} D,
\]

where \( i_f \) is defined by

\[
i_f(x) = (x, t(f(x)) : f(x) \rightsquigarrow f(x))
\]
20.3 The $\omega$-category of reversible cylinders

and $p_f$ by

$$p_f(x, \alpha : f(x) \rightsquigarrow y) = y.$$  

As the triangle

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{i_f} & \tilde{\Gamma}_f \\
\downarrow{\text{lc}} & & \downarrow{\pi_1} \\
C & & 
\end{array}
$$

is commutative and $\pi_1$ is a trivial fibration, by one of the known case of the 2-out-of-3 property (Proposition 20.1.17), $i_f$ is an $\omega$-equivalence.

**20.3.10 Proposition.** An $\omega$-functor $f : C \to D$ is an $\omega$-equivalence if and only if the $p_f : e \Gamma_f \to D$ is a trivial fibration.

**Proof.** If $p_f$ is a trivial fibration and hence an $\omega$-equivalence, then, since $i_f$ is always an $\omega$-equivalence, so is $f = p_f i_f$.

Suppose conversely that $f$ is an $\omega$-equivalence.

1. Let $y$ be an object of $D$. As $f$ is an $\omega$-equivalence, there exists an object $x$ of $C$ and a reversible 1-cell $u : f(x) \rightsquigarrow y$. This 1-cell defines a reversible 0-cylinder $u : f(x) \rightsquigarrow y$ sent to $y$ by $p_f$.

2. Let $n > 0$ and let $(x, \alpha : f(x) \rightsquigarrow y)$ and $(x', \alpha' : f(x') \rightsquigarrow y')$ be two parallel $n$-cells of $\tilde{\Gamma}_f$. Suppose that we have a cell between their image by $p_f$, i.e., an $n$-cell $v : y \to y'$. By the transport lemma (Lemma 20.3.5), there exist an $(n+1)$-cell $v' : f(x) \to f(x')$ and an $(n + 1)$-cylinder $\Lambda : v' \rightsquigarrow v : \alpha \to \alpha'$. Since $f$ is an $\omega$-equivalence, there exists $u : x \to x'$ such that $f(u)$ is $\omega$-equivalent to $v'$. Using the transport lemma again, we get a reversible $(n+1)$-cylinder $\Lambda' : f(u) \rightsquigarrow v : \alpha \to \alpha'$. This means that $(u, \Lambda' : f(u) \rightsquigarrow v)$ is an $(n+1)$-cell of $\tilde{\Gamma}_f$ sent to $v$ by $p_f$, thereby proving the result. \qed

**20.3.11 Theorem.** The class of $\omega$-equivalences satisfies the 2-out-of-3 property.

**Proof.** The only remaining case is the following one (see Propositions 20.1.15 and 20.1.17 for the other ones). Let $f : C \to D$ and $g : D \to E$ be two $\omega$-functors. Suppose $f$ and $g f$ are $\omega$-equivalences. Let us prove that $g$ is an $\omega$-equivalence.

1. Let $z$ be an object of $E$. Since $g f$ is an $\omega$-equivalence, we get an object $x$ of $C$ such that $g f(x)$ and $z$ are $\omega$-equivalent and $y = f(x)$ shows that $g$ is surjective up to $\omega$-equivalence.
Towards the folk model structure

2. Let \( \gamma_0 \) and \( \gamma_1 \) be two parallel \( n \)-cells of \( D \) and let \( w : g(\gamma_0) \rightarrow g(\gamma_1) \) be an \( (n+1) \)-cell. By the previous proposition, since \( f \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, \( p_f : \bar{\Gamma}_f \rightarrow D \) is a trivial fibration. We can thus lift the pair of parallel cells \( \gamma_0, \gamma_1 \) to a pair of parallel cells

\[
(x_0, \alpha : f(x_0) \sim y_0) \quad \text{and} \quad (x_1, \beta : f(x_1) \sim y_1)
\]
of \( \bar{\Gamma}_f \). By applying \( g \), we get a pair of parallel cells

\[
(x_0, g(\alpha) : g(f(x_0)) \sim g(y_0)) \quad \text{and} \quad (x_1, g(\beta) : g(f(x_1)) \sim g(y_1))
\]
of \( \bar{\Gamma}_{gf} \). Since \( gf \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, by the previous proposition, the projection \( p_{gf} : \bar{\Gamma}_{gf} \rightarrow E \) is a trivial fibration. We can thus lift the cell \( w : g(\gamma_0) \rightarrow g(\gamma_1) \) to a cell

\[
(u : x_0 \rightarrow x_1, \Lambda : gf(u) \sim w : g(\alpha) \rightarrow g(\beta))
\]
of \( \bar{\Gamma}_{gf} \). Consider the bottom-incomplete cylinder defined by \( \alpha : f(x_0) \sim y_0 \), \( \beta : f(x_1) \sim y_1 \) and \( f(u) : f(x_0) \rightarrow f(x_1) \). By the transport lemma (Lemma 20.3.5), it can be extended and we get a cell \( v : y_0 \rightarrow y_1 \) and a cylinder \( \Lambda : f(u) \sim v : \alpha \rightarrow \beta \). Applying the uniqueness part of the transport lemma to the cylinders

\[
g(\Lambda) : g(f(u)) \sim g(v) : g(\alpha) \rightarrow g(\beta)
\]
and

\[
\Lambda : g(f(u)) \sim w : g(\alpha) \rightarrow g(\beta),
\]
we get that \( g(v) \) is \( \omega \)-equivalent to \( w \), thereby proving the result. \( \square \)

### 20.4 Coherent reversible cells and fibrations

#### 20.4.1 The free-standing reversible cell

We define an \( \omega \)-category \( R_1 \) generated by a polygraph in the following way. The \( \omega \)-category \( R_1 \) has two objects, 0 and 1. There are two generating 1-cells

\[
r : 0 \rightarrow 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{r} : 1 \rightarrow 0
\]
and four generating 2-cells

\[
r_- : 1_0 \rightarrow r * 0 \bar{r}, \quad \bar{r}_- : r * 0 \bar{r} \rightarrow 1_0, \quad r_+ : \bar{r} * 0 r \rightarrow 1_1, \quad \bar{r}_+ : 1_1 \rightarrow \bar{r} * 0 r.
\]

More generally, for \( j \geq 2 \), there are \( 2^j \) generating \( j \)-cells

\[
r_{l_1, \ldots, l_{j-1}} \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{r}_{l_1, \ldots, l_{j-1}},
\]
where for $1 \leq k \leq j - 1$, $l_k = \pm$. The source and target of the generators are given by

- $r_{l_1, \ldots, l_{j-2}}^*$: $1_{s_j-2} (r_{l_1, \ldots, l_{j-2}}) \to r_{l_1, \ldots, l_{j-2}} \cdot 1_{s_j-2}$,

- $r_{l_1, \ldots, l_{j-2}}^*$: $r_{l_1, \ldots, l_{j-2}} \cdot 1_{s_j-2} \to 1_{s_j-2}$,

- $r_{l_1, \ldots, l_{j-2}}^*$: $r_{l_1, \ldots, l_{j-2}} \cdot 1_{s_j-2} \to 1_{s_j-2}$.

This definition was made so that $R_1$ is, in some sense, freely generated by a reversible 1-cell $r$. In particular, $R_1$ comes with a canonical inclusion $\mathcal{O}_1 \hookrightarrow R_1$ corresponding to the 1-cell $r$ and, if $C$ is an $\omega$-category, a 1-cell $u$ of $C$ is reversible if and only if there exists a dotted arrow making the triangle commute. In particular, two objects $x$ and $y$ of $C$ are $\omega$-equivalent if and only if there exists a dotted arrow making the triangle commute.

Similarly, for every $n \geq 1$, one can define an $\omega$-category $R_n$, endowed with a canonical inclusion $\mathcal{O}_n \hookrightarrow R_n$ corresponding to an $n$-cell $r$, modeled on the definition of a reversible $n$-cell. This $\omega$-category has, by definition, the following properties: an $n$-cell $u$ of an $\omega$-category $C$ is reversible if and only if there exists a dotted arrow making the triangle commute; in particular, two parallel $(n-1)$-cells $x$ and $y$ of $C$ are $\omega$-equivalent.
Towards the folk model structure

if and only if there exists a dotted arrow making the triangle

\[
\partial \mathcal{O}_n \xrightarrow{(x,y)} C \\
R_n \xrightarrow{\_} C
\]

commute.

20.4.2 Incoherence. If \(x\) and \(y\) are two objects of a 2-category, it is well known that \(x\) and \(y\) are equivalent if and only if there exists an adjoint equivalence between \(x\) and \(y\). In other words, if there exists 1-cells \(u : x \to y, v : y \to x\) and 2-cells \(\eta : 1_x \to uv\) and \(\varepsilon : vu \to 1_y\) that are isomorphisms, then we can choose these cells such that the triangular identities

\[
(\eta * u)(u * \varepsilon) = 1_u \quad \text{and} \quad (v * \eta)(\varepsilon * v) = 1_v
\]

hold. A 4-tuple \((u,v,\eta,\varepsilon)\) as above is a witness of the fact that \(x\) and \(y\) are \(\omega\)-equivalent. We can think of this witness as incoherent if the triangular identities do not hold and as coherent if they hold.

Similarly, if \(x\) and \(y\) are two objects of an \(\omega\)-category \(C\), the data of an \(\omega\)-functor \(R_1 \to C\) making the triangle

\[
\partial \mathcal{O}_1 \xrightarrow{(x,y)} C \\
R_1 \xrightarrow{\_} C
\]

commute is witness of the fact that \(x\) and \(y\) are \(\omega\)-equivalent. This witness is incoherent as, for instance, it does not satisfy the triangular identities up to \(\omega\)-equivalence. Technically, this boils down to the fact that \(R_1\) is not contractible (see §22.4.1).

20.4.3 Coherence. Let \(n \geq 0\). Consider the \(\omega\)-functor

\[
\partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1} \to \mathcal{O}_n
\]

corresponding to the collapsing of the two non-trivial \(n\)-cells of \(\partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1}\). By Proposition 19.2.2, this \(\omega\)-functor factors (non-uniquely) as a cofibration followed by a trivial fibration. Let us fix such a factorization

\[
\partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1} \xrightarrow{J_{n+1}} J_n \xrightarrow{p} \mathcal{O}_n.
\]

Let \(x\) and \(y\) be two parallel \(n\)-cells of an \(\omega\)-category \(C\). The fact that \(p\) is
a trivial fibration makes it reasonable to think of a dotted arrow making the

triangle

\[ \partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1}^{(x,y)} \rightarrow C \]

\[ j \]

\[ J_{n+1} \]

commute as a coherent witness of the fact that \( x \) and \( y \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent.

**20.4.4 Remark.** As already mentioned, the \( \omega \)-category \( J_{n+1} \) introduced in
the previous paragraph is not uniquely defined. Some choices are wiser than
others. For instance, we can choose \( J_{n+1} \) so that its underlying \((n+1)\)-category
is obtained from \( \mathcal{O}_{n+1} \) by adding an \((n+1)\)-cell \( v : y \rightarrow x \) in the other
direction than the principal cell \( u : x \rightarrow y \) of \( \mathcal{O}_{n+1} \). We can even fix its
underlying \((n+2)\)-category by saying that it is generated by two \((n+2)\)-cells
\( \eta : 1_x \rightarrow u \ast_n v \) and \( \varepsilon : v \ast_n u \rightarrow 1_y \). We do not assume that these additional
properties hold in the remaining of the text. (We will use the existence of these
better choices in Section 21.3.)

The following proposition shows that, as in the case of 2-categories, there
exists coherent witnesses if and only if there exists incoherent witnesses.

**20.4.5 Proposition.** Let \( n \geq 0 \) and let \( x \) and \( y \) be two parallel \( n \)-cells of an
\( \omega \)-category \( C \). The following assertions are equivalent:

1. The cells \( x \) and \( y \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent.
2. There exists a dotted arrow making the triangle

\[ \partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1}^{(x,y)} \rightarrow C \]

\[ j \]

\[ R_{n+1} \]

commute.
3. There exists a dotted arrow making the triangle

\[ \partial \mathcal{O}_{n+1}^{(x,y)} \rightarrow C \]

\[ j \]

\[ J_{n+1} \]

commute.
Towards the folk model structure

4. There exists a factorization

$$\partial O_{n+1} \xrightarrow{k} K \xrightarrow{q} O_n$$

of the \(\omega\)-functor \(\partial O_{n+1} \to O_n\) of \$20.4.3\) with \(q\) a trivial fibration, and a dotted arrow making the triangle

$$\partial O_{n+1} \xrightarrow{(x,y)} C \xrightarrow{k} K$$

commute.

**Proof.** The equivalence between 1 and 2 is true by definition of \(R_{n+1}\).

By definition, 3 implies 4. The converse follows by considering the solid commutative square

$$\partial O_{n+1} \xrightarrow{k} K \xrightarrow{p} O_n$$

that admits a lift as \(f\) is a cofibration and \(q\) is a trivial fibration.

Let us prove that 4 implies 1. The \(\omega\)-functor \(k: \partial O_{n+1} \to K\) define a pair of parallel \(n\)-cells in \(K\). These two cells are sent to the principal cell of \(\partial O_n\) by \(q: K \to O_n\). Since this \(\omega\)-functor \(q\) is a trivial fibration, by Proposition 20.1.14, there exists a reversible \((n+1)\)-cell \(r\) in \(K\) between these two parallel \(n\)-cells. By commutativity of the triangle of the hypothesis, we have \(f(r): x \to y\), showing that \(x\) and \(y\) are \(\omega\)-equivalent.

To conclude the proof, let us prove that 1 implies 4. Consider the \(\omega\)-functor \(x: O_n \to C\) corresponding to the \(n\)-cell \(x\) and the associated \(\omega\)-category \(\Gamma_x\) (see \$20.3.9). We get a factorization

$$\partial O_{n+1} \xrightarrow{(k_1,k_2)} \Gamma_x \xrightarrow{\pi_1} O_n$$

of the \(\omega\)-functor \(\partial O_{n+1} \to O_n\) of the assertion by choosing two parallel \(n\)-cells \(k_1\) and \(k_2\) of \(\Gamma_x\) in the following way. Denote by \(p\) the principal cell of \(O_n\). We set \(k_1 = (p, i(x): x \rhd x)\). As for the cell \(k_2\), we choose a reversible \((n+1)\)-cell \(u: x \to y\). Using this \(u\), one easily defines a reversible cylinder \(\alpha_u: x \rhd y\) and we set \(k_2 = (p, \alpha_u: x \rhd y)\). This ends the definition of the
desired factorization. Moreover, by definition, the triangle
\[
\begin{array}{c}
\partial O_{n+1}^{(x,y)} \\
\downarrow \\
\Gamma_x \\
\end{array}
\xrightarrow{(k_1,k_2)}
\begin{array}{c}
P_x \\
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
C \\
\end{array}
\]
commutes, thereby proving the result. □

**20.4.6 Proposition.** Let \( f : C \to D \) be an \( \omega \)-functor. The following assertions are equivalent:

1. The \( \omega \)-functor \( f \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence.
2. For every \( n \geq 0 \), every commutative square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial O_n & \xrightarrow{i_n} & O_n & \xrightarrow{f} & C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
O_n & \xrightarrow{f} & D \\
\end{array}
\]

factors as

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial O_n & \xrightarrow{i_n} & O_n & \xrightarrow{f} & C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
O_n & \xrightarrow{i_n} & R_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{f} & D \\
\end{array}
\]

where the two \( \omega \)-functors \( O_n \to R_n \) are the two components of the inclusion \( \partial O_{n+1} \hookrightarrow O_{n+1} \hookrightarrow R_{n+1} \).

3. For every \( n \geq 0 \), every commutative square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial O_n & \xrightarrow{i_n} & O_n & \xrightarrow{f} & C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
O_n & \xrightarrow{f} & D \\
\end{array}
\]

factors as

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial O_n & \xrightarrow{i_n} & O_n & \xrightarrow{f} & C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
O_n & \xrightarrow{j_n} & J_{n+1} & \xrightarrow{f} & D \\
\end{array}
\]

where the two \( \omega \)-functors \( O_n \to J_n \) are the two components of the \( \omega \)-functor \( j : \partial O_{n+1} \to J_{n+1} \).
Towards the folk model structure

Proof. Using the defining property of $R_{n+1}$, the second assertion translates directly to the definition of an $\omega$-equivalence. Indeed, if $n = 0$, the data of a square as in the assertion boils down to the data of an object $y$ of $D$ and the data of a factorization boils down to the data of an object $x$ in $C$ and of an incoherent witness of the fact that $f(x)$ and $y$ are $\omega$-equivalent. Similarly, if $n > 0$, the data of the square boils down to the data of two $(n-1)$-cells $x$ and $x'$ of $C$ and an $(n+1)$-cell $v : f(x) \to f(x')$ in $D$, and the data of the factorization boils down to the data of an $(n+1)$-cell $u : x \to y$ of $C$ and an incoherent witness that $f(u)$ and $v$ are $\omega$-equivalent. The third assertion translates similarly replacing incoherent witnesses by coherent witnesses and the result follows from the previous proposition. □

20.4.7 We will denote by

$$j_n : O_n \to J_{n+1}$$

the composite

$$O_n \overset{\iota_1}{\leftarrow} \partial O_{n+1} \overset{j}{\to} J_{n+1},$$

where $\iota_1 : O_n \leftrightarrow \partial O_{n+1}$ denotes the $\omega$-functor corresponding to “source $n$-cell” of $\partial O_{n+1}$. Note that $j_n$ is defined as a composite of two cofibrations and is hence a cofibration. Moreover, it is an $\omega$-equivalence. Indeed, we have a commutative triangle

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
O_n & \overset{j_n}{\to} & J_{n+1} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow p \\
\iota_1 O_n & \Rightarrow & \partial O_{n+1}
\end{array}$$

where $p$ is trivial fibration and hence an $\omega$-equivalence, and this follows from the 2-out-of-3 property (and more precisely, the easy case of Proposition 20.1.17). We set

$$\mathcal{J} = \{ j_n \mid n \geq 0 \}.$$

An $\omega$-functor $f : C \to D$ is a fibration if it has the right lifting property with respect to $\mathcal{J}$. Concretely, this means that $f$ is a fibration if, for every $n \geq 0$, every $n$-cell $u$ of $C$, every $n$-cell $v$ of $D$, every coherent witness that $f(u)$ and $v$ are $\omega$-equivalent can be lifted to a coherent witness that $u$ and some $n$-cell $u'$ such that $f(u') = v$ are $\omega$-equivalent.

20.4.8 Theorem. An $\omega$-functor $f$ is a trivial fibration if and only if it is both an $\omega$-equivalence and a fibration.
Proof. As elements of \( \mathcal{F} \) are cofibrations, i.e., elements of \( lr(I) \), we have

\[ r(I) = rlr(I) \subseteq r(\mathcal{F}), \]

meaning that trivial fibrations are fibrations. As we already know that trivial fibrations are \( \omega \)-equivalence (Proposition 20.1.13), this establishes one implication.

Conversely, let \( f : C \to D \) be an \( \omega \)-functor being both an \( \omega \)-equivalence and a fibration. Fix \( n \geq 0 \) and consider a commutative square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial O_n & \longrightarrow & C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow f \\
O_n & \longrightarrow & D.
\end{array}
\]

As \( f \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, by Proposition 20.4.6 this square factors as

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\partial O_n & \longrightarrow & O_n \\
\downarrow i_n & & \downarrow f \\
O_n & \longrightarrow & J_{n+1} \\
\downarrow j_n & & \downarrow f \\
& & D.
\end{array}
\]

But as \( f \) is a fibration, the right square of the factorization admits a lift, showing that the initial square admits a lift and hence that \( f \) is a trivial fibration. \( \square \)

20.5 Immersions

20.5.1 An \( \omega \)-functor \( i : C \to D \) is an immersion if it admits a retraction \( r : D \to C \), so that we have \( ri = 1_C \), and a reversible oplax transformation \( \alpha : ir \Rightarrow 1_D \) such that \( \alpha * i = 1_I \) (see §20.2.15). Diagrammatically, we have the following commutative diagrams:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{i} & D & \xrightarrow{r} & C \\
\downarrow l_C & & \downarrow 1_C & & \downarrow l_C \\
D & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & \Gamma(D) & \xrightarrow{\pi_D} & D
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{i} & D \\
\downarrow l_D & & \downarrow l_D \\
D & \xrightarrow{\alpha} & \Gamma(D)
\end{array}
\]
The last square can also be written

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
    C & \xrightarrow{i} & D \\
    i_C \downarrow & & \downarrow \sigma \\
    \Gamma(C) & \xrightarrow{\Gamma(i)} & \Gamma(D).
\end{array}
\]

This notion of an immersion is an \(\omega\)-categorical version of the notion of a “strong deformation retracts” in topology.

**20.5.2 Proposition.** An \(\omega\)-functor \(f : C \to D\) is an immersion if and only if the commutative square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
    C & \xrightarrow{i_f} & \Gamma_f \\
    f \downarrow & & \downarrow p_f \\
    D & \xrightarrow{1_D} & D
\end{array}
\]

admits a lift.

**Proof.** By a definition, we have a pullback square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
    \Gamma_f & \xrightarrow{\pi_1} & \Gamma(D) \\
    \pi_2 \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi \\
    C & \xrightarrow{f} & D.
\end{array}
\]

This means that an \(\omega\)-functor \(h : D \to \Gamma_f\) corresponds to the data of an \(\omega\)-functor \(g : D \to C\) and an \(\omega\)-functor \(\alpha : D \to \Gamma(D)\) such that \(\pi \alpha = f g\), i.e., a reversible oplax transformation whose source is \(f g\). The commutativity of the right-lower triangle of

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
    C & \xrightarrow{i_f} & \Gamma_f \\
    f \downarrow & & \downarrow p_f \\
    D & \xrightarrow{1_D} & D
\end{array}
\]

using the equality \(p_f = \pi \pi_2\), means that \(\pi \alpha = 1_D\), i.e., that the target of \(\alpha\) is \(1_D\). Finally, the commutativity of the left-upper triangle, using the fact that \(i_f = (1_C, i_D f) : C \to C \times_D \Gamma(D)\), means that \((g, \alpha) f = (1_C, i_D f)\), i.e., that \(g f = 1_C\) and that \(\alpha * f = 1_f\), thereby proving the result. \(\square\)
20.5 Corollary. If an \( \omega \)-functor is both an \( \omega \)-equivalence and a cofibration, then it is an immersion.

Proof. If \( f : C \to D \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence, then, by Proposition 20.3.10, \( p_f : \Gamma_f \to D \) is a trivial fibration. In particular, if \( f \) is additionally a cofibration, then the square of the previous proposition admits a lift, showing that \( f \) is indeed an immersion. \( \square \)

20.5.4 Proposition. Immersions are \( \omega \)-equivalences.

Proof. Let \( i : C \to D \) be an immersion, and let \( r \) and \( \alpha \) be as in the definition of §20.5.1.

1. Let \( y \) be an object of \( D \). The reversible cell \( \alpha_y : ir(y) \to y \) shows that, for \( x = r(y), i(x) \) and \( y \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent.

2. Let \( x \) and \( x' \) be two parallel \( n \)-cells of \( D \) and let \( v : i(x) \to i(y) \) be an \( (n+1) \)-cell of \( D \). Consider the cell \( r(v) \). As \( rt = 1_C \), we have \( r(v) : x \to y \). Consider now the reversible cell \( \alpha_v \). A priori, its source and target are given by

\[
\alpha_v : ir(v) * \alpha_0(v) \cdots \alpha_n(v) \to \alpha_0(v) \cdots \alpha_n(v) * v.
\]

As the cells \( s_0(v), t_0(v), \ldots, s_n(v), t_n(v) \) are in the image of \( i \), it follows from the relation \( \alpha * i = 1_i \) that the cells \( \alpha_0(v), \alpha_0(v), \ldots, \alpha_n(v), \alpha_n(v) \) are units, so that we have \( \alpha_v : ir(v) \to v \). This shows that \( i(u) \), where \( u = r(v) \), and \( v \) are \( \omega \)-equivalent. \( \square \)

20.5.5 Proposition. The class of immersions is closed under pushouts.

Proof. Let \( i : C \to D \) be an immersion, and let \( r \) and \( \alpha \) be as in the definition of §20.5.1. Consider a pushout square

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{f} & C' \\
\downarrow i & & \downarrow r \\
D & \xrightarrow{g} & D'.
\end{array}
\]

Using the universal property of this square, we get a retraction \( r' \) of \( i' \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{f} & C' \\
\downarrow i & & \downarrow r' \\
D & \xrightarrow{g} & D'.
\end{array}
\]
Similarly, we get a reversible oplax transformation $\alpha'$:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{f} & C' \\
\downarrow i & & \downarrow i' & \downarrow \Gamma(C') \\
D & \xrightarrow{g} & D' & \xrightarrow{\Gamma(g)} \Gamma(D')
\end{array}
\]

Indeed, the outer diagram commutes as

\[
\Gamma(i')\mu_C f = \Gamma(i')\Gamma(f)\mu_C = \Gamma(g)\Gamma(i)\mu_C = \Gamma(g)\mu_C.
\]

Using the uniqueness part of the same universal property, one checks that $\pi\alpha = i' r'$ and $\pi\alpha = 1_{D'}$, i.e., that $\alpha : i' r' \Rightarrow 1_{D'}$. The fact that $\alpha' \star i' = 1$ is expressed in one of the commutative squares defining $\alpha'$. This proves that $i' : C' \rightarrow D'$ is indeed an immersion.

\[\square\]

20.5.6 Theorem. The class of $\omega$-functors that are both $\omega$-equivalences and cofibrations is closed under pushouts.

Proof. The class of cofibrations being closed under pushouts (see §19.1.2), all we have to show is that the pushout of an $\omega$-functor $f$ being both an $\omega$-equivalence and a cofibration is an $\omega$-equivalence. But by Corollary 20.5.3, such an $f$ is an immersion. Hence, by the previous proposition, a pushout of $f$ is still an immersion, and hence an $\omega$-equivalence by Proposition 20.5.4. $\square$

20.5.7 Corollary. Every element of $lr(J)$ is both an $\omega$-equivalence and a cofibration.

Proof. Denote by $W$ the class of $\omega$-equivalences and by $Cof$ the class of cofibrations. By Propositions 20.1.18 and 20.1.19, the class $W$ is closed under retracts and countable compositions. The same properties hold for the class $Cof = lr(I)$ (see §19.1.2). Using the previous proposition, we get that the class $W \cap Cof$ is closed under retracts, pushouts and countable compositions. It follows, using the small object argument (Proposition 19.1.9), that to show the inclusion $lr(J) \subseteq W \cap Cof$, it suffices to show the inclusion $J \subseteq W \cap Cof$. But we already noted in §20.4.7 that for every $n$, the $\omega$-functor $j_n : \mathcal{O}_n \rightarrow J_{n+1}$ is both an $\omega$-equivalence and a cofibration. $\square$

20.5.8 Remark. We will see in the proof of Theorem 21.1.2 that it follows
formally from what we proved so far that, conversely, an $\omega$-functor being both an $\omega$-equivalence and a cofibration is in $lr(J)$. 
21
The folk model structure

This chapter is about proving the existence of the so-called folk model category structure on $\text{Cat}_\omega$, following Lafont, Métayer and Worytkiewicz [237]. This model category structure is a generalization of a model category structure on $\text{Cat}$ whose weak equivalences are the equivalences of categories, a folklore result, whence the name. The analogous result for 2-categories was proved by Lack [229, 231].

The folk model category structure is a model category structure on $\text{Cat}_\omega$ whose weak equivalences are the $\omega$-equivalences and whose cofibrant resolutions are the polygraphic resolutions. It is the natural homotopical framework in which the notion of polygraphic resolutions lives. As a convincing evidence of this, we will see in the next chapter that Métayer’s polygraphic homology can be expressed as a derived functor with respect to the folk model category structure.

The chapter is organized as follows. The first section is devoted to the proof of the existence of the folk model category structure. The hard work was done in the previous chapter and we are basically just assembling various results. Our proof differs in one point from the original one: we avoid the use of Smith’s theorem. In the second section, we prove, still according to [237], that the $\omega$-category $\Gamma(C)$ of reversible cylinders in an $\omega$-category $C$ forms a path object for $C$ in the sense of the folk model category structure. We deduce from this fact that polygraphic resolutions are unique in a stronger sense that the one proved before. In the last section, we transfer the folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_\omega$ to the category of $(n, p)$-categories. We give explicit descriptions of the resulting structures for various special cases: $n$-categories with particular small values of $n$, $\omega$-groupoids and $(\omega, 1)$-categories.
21.1 The folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$

The purpose of this section is to prove the existence of the so-called “folk model structure” on $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$. We start by recalling the definition of a model category, see Appendix H for a more detailed presentation.

21.1.1 A model category is a category $M$ endowed with three classes of maps: the weak equivalences, the cofibrations and the fibrations; these data are required to satisfy the following axioms:

1. the category $M$ is finitely complete and finitely cocomplete,
2. the class of weak equivalences satisfies the 2-out-of-3 property,
3. the class of weak equivalences, cofibrations and fibrations are closed under retracts,
4. cofibrations have the left lifting property with respect to trivial fibrations (that is, maps that are both a fibration and a weak equivalence); trivial cofibrations (that is, maps that are both a cofibration and a weak equivalence) have the left lifting property with respect to fibrations,
5. every map of $M$ factors as a cofibration followed by a trivial fibration, and as a trivial cofibration followed by a fibration.

21.1.2 Theorem. The classes of $\omega$-equivalences (see §20.1.11), cofibrations (see §19.2.1) and fibrations (see §20.4.7) define a model structure on $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$ known as the “folk model structure”.

Proof. Let us denote by $W$ the class of weak equivalences, by $Cof$ the class of cofibrations and by $Fib$ the class of fibrations. By definition, we have

$$Cof = lr(I) \quad \text{and} \quad Fib = r(J)$$

(see §19.2.1 and §20.4.7). We showed that

1. $W$ satisfies the 2-out-of-3 property (Theorem 20.3.11) and is closed under retracts (Proposition 20.1.18),
2. $lr(J) \subseteq W \cap Cof$ (Corollary 20.5.7),
3. $W \cap Fib = r(I)$ (Theorem 20.4.8).

We will now see that these properties formally imply the theorem.

Let us first prove that the inclusion in 2 is actually an equality. Let $f$ be an $\omega$-functor in $W \cap Cof$. Applying the small object argument (Proposition 19.1.9) to $f$ and the set $J$ yields a factorization $f = pi$, where $p$ is in $Fib = r(J)$ and $i$ in $lr(J)$. By 2, $i$ is in $W$, and so is $p$ by 1. It follows from 3 that $p$ is in $r(I)$. As $f = pi$ is in $Cof = lr(I)$, it has the left lifting property with respect to $p$.
and, by the retract lemma (Lemma 19.1.10), $f$ is a retract of $i$. As $i$ is in $lr(J)$, so is $f$, thereby proving the desired equality.

Let us now check that we indeed have a model structure. The category $\text{Cat}_\omega$ is complete and cocomplete. We have already proved that the class of $\omega$-equivalences satisfies the 2-out-of-3 property and is closed under retracts. The fact that the classes of cofibrations and fibrations can defined by lifting conditions implies that they are closed under retracts as well. The equalities

$$\text{Cof} = lr(I), \quad \text{Fib} = r(J), \quad W \cap \text{Cof} = lr(J) \quad \text{and} \quad W \cap \text{Fib} = r(I)$$

show that the required lifting properties are fulfilled and, by applying the small object argument, that the required factorization properties are fulfilled as well. □

21.1.3 Remark. The folk model structure is what is called a “combinatorial model structure”: a model category $C$ is said to be combinatorial if, first, the category $C$ is locally presentable (see Appendix G) and, second, there exist sets (by opposition to classes) of morphisms $I$ and $J$ such that the class of cofibration is $lr(I)$ and the class of trivial cofibrations is $lr(J)$. The sets $I$ and $J$ (which are not unique) are then said to generate the model category $C$.

21.1.4 Let $C$ be a model category. An object $X$ of $C$ is said to be $\text{cofibrant}$ if the unique morphism from the initial object of $C$ to $X$ is a cofibration; similarly, $X$ is said to be $\text{fibrant}$ if the unique morphism from $X$ to the terminal object of $C$ is a fibration.

21.1.5 Proposition. Every $\omega$-category is fibrant in the folk model structure.

Proof. Let $C$ be an $\omega$-category. Consider a diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
D & \xrightarrow{f} & C \\
\downarrow{i} & & \\
E & \xrightarrow{fr} & \\
\end{array}
$$

where $i$ is a trivial cofibration. By Corollary 20.5.3, $i$ admits a retraction $r$ and the triangle

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
D & \xrightarrow{f} & C \\
\downarrow{i} & & \\
E & \xrightarrow{fr} & \\
\end{array}
$$

is commutative, thereby proving that $C$ is fibrant. □
21.1 The folk model structure on $\mathbf{Cat}_{\omega}$

21.1.6 Theorem. The cofibrant objects of the folk model structure are exactly the $\omega$-categories generated by polygraphs.

Proof. Let $C$ be a cofibrant $\omega$-category. By Proposition 19.2.2, the $\omega$-functor $\emptyset \to C$ is a retract of a relative polygraph $D \to E$. In particular, $\emptyset$ is a retract of $D$ and $C$ is a retract of $E$. This means that $D \simeq \emptyset$ and hence that $D$ is generated by a polygraph. This shows that $C$ is a retract of an $\omega$-category generated by a polygraph.

To conclude the proof, it suffices to show that a retract of an $\omega$-category generated by a polygraph is also generated by a polygraph. This immediately follows from [279, Theorem 7.1], stating that the full subcategory of $\mathbf{Cat}_{\omega}$ consisting of those $\omega$-categories that are generated by polygraphs is Cauchy-complete. We briefly describe the general idea of the argument, and refer to [279] for a complete proof. Thus, let $P$ be a polygraph and $h : P^* \to P^*$ be an idempotent morphism in $\mathbf{Cat}_{\omega}$. We have to build a polygraph $Q$, together with morphisms $r : P^* \to Q^*$ and $s : Q^* \to P^*$ such that $rs = 1_Q$ and $sr = h$.

The polygraph $Q$ and the maps $r$, $s$ are defined by simultaneous induction on the dimension. In dimension 0, $Q_0 = \{h(x) \mid x \in P_0^* = P_0\}$, the map $s$ is given by the obvious inclusion of $Q_0$ into $P_0$ and $r(x) = h(x)$ for all $x \in P_0$. Let now $n > 0$ and suppose we have defined $Q$, $r$ and $s$ up to dimension $n - 1$, satisfying the above equations. We must now define the set $Q_n$ of $n$-generators in $Q$, together with source and target maps $s_{n-1}, t_{n-1} : Q_n \to Q_{n-1}^*$. The crucial observation is that $h$ induces a partition of $P_n$ in three subsets:

$$P_n = P^0_n \sqcup P^1_n \sqcup P^2_n$$

where $P^0_n$ is the set of those $n$-generators whose image by $h$ is an identity, $P^1_n$ is the set of those generators $a \in P_n$ such that $h(a^*) = c[a^*]$ where $c[x]$ is a thin $n$-context (see Section 16.5), and $P^2_n$ is the set of remaining $n$-generators. We may now define

$$Q_n = \{h(a^*) \mid a \in P^1_n\}$$

which gives an obvious inclusion $i : Q_n \to P_n^*$. By induction hypothesis, the morphism $r$ is defined up to dimension $n - 1$, so that we can define

$$s_{n-1}, t_{n-1} : Q_n \to Q_{n-1}$$

by requiring the commutation of the following square

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
Q_n & \xrightarrow{s_{n-1}, t_{n-1}} & Q_{n-1}^* \\
\downarrow i & & \downarrow r \\
P_n^* & \xrightarrow{s_{n-1}, t_{n-1}} & P_{n-1}^*.
\end{array}$$
for source and target maps. Thus the \( \omega \)-category \( Q' \) is now defined up to
dimension \( n \) and one easily checks that \( i : Q_n \to P^n \) induces an extension of \( s \)
up to dimension \( n \) from \( Q' \) to \( P' \) satisfying \( hs = s \).

Finally, we must extend \( r \) up to dimension \( n \). The main difficulty is to find
where the generators belonging to \( S^2_n \) should be sent. Therefore, we first consider
an auxiliary subpolygraph \( R \) of \( P \), identical to \( P \) up to dimension \( n - 1 \), and
whose set of \( n \)-generators is just \( R_n = P^0_n \sqcup P^1_n \). The inclusion \( j : R \to P \)
now induces a morphism \( j^* \) of \( n \)-categories from \( R^* \to P^* \), and one shows
the existence of \( n \)-morphisms \( h' : R^* \to R^* \) and \( k : P^* \to R^* \) such that the
following square commutes:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
R^* & \xrightarrow{h'} & R^* \\
\downarrow{j^*} & & \downarrow{j^*} \\
P^* & \xrightarrow{h} & P^*
\end{array}
\]

The purpose of the previous step was precisely to get rid of \( S^2_n \). Now one builds
\( r' : R^* \to Q' \) and \( s' : Q' \to R^* \), extending \( r, s \) up to dimension \( n \) is such a
way that \( s'r' = h' \) and \( r's' = 1_{Q'} \). Note that the proof of this last equation relies
on the fine properties of contexts, as presented in Section 16.5. We obtain the
desired retraction \( r \) up to dimension \( n \) by taking \( r = r'k \). \( \square \)

21.1.7 Remark. The previous theorem easily implies that the folk model structure is not “cartesian” (meaning that the cartesian product functor is not a
Quillen bifunctor in the sense of [187, Definition 4.2.1]). Indeed, in a cartesian
model structure, the product of two cofibrant objects is cofibrant. But it is not
true that the product of two \( \omega \)-categories generated by a polygraph is generated
by a polygraph. For instance, the product \( \mathbb{O}_1 \times \mathbb{O}_1 \) is not generated by a
polygraph.

21.2 The path objects of cylinders

The goal of this section is to prove that, for every \( \omega \)-category \( C \), the \( \omega \)-cate-
gory \( \tilde{\Gamma}C \) (see §20.3.2), endowed with the maps

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{\iota_C} & \tilde{\Gamma}(C) \\
\downarrow{(\pi, \pi)} & & \downarrow{(\pi, \pi)} \\
C \times C
\end{array}
\]

is a path object for \( C \) in the folk model structure in the following sense:
21.2.1 Path objects. Let \( M \) be a model category and let \( X \) be an object of \( M \). A path object for \( X \) in \( M \) is an object \( P \) of \( M \), endowed with a factorization
\[
X \xrightarrow{r} P \xrightarrow{p} X \times X
\]
of the diagonal of \( X \), where \( r \) a weak equivalence of \( M \) and \( p \) a fibration of \( M \).

As we already know that \( t_C : C \to \tilde{\Gamma}(C) \) is an \( \omega \)-equivalence (Proposition 20.3.8), all we have to prove is that \((\pi, \pi) : \tilde{\Gamma}(C) \to C \times C\) is a fibration. To do so, we will use the following variation on the notion of an immersion:

21.2.2 Strong immersions. An \( \omega \)-functor \( i : C \to D \) is a strong immersion if it admits a retraction \( r : D \to C \) and reversible oplax transformations \( \alpha : ir \Rightarrow 1_D \) and \( \alpha' : 1_D \Rightarrow ir \) such that \( \alpha * i = 1_i \) and \( \alpha' * i = 1_i \).

21.2.3 Proposition. Let \( C \) be an \( \omega \)-category. Then the \( \omega \)-functor
\[
(\pi, \pi) : \tilde{\Gamma}(C) \to C \times C
\]
has the right lifting properties with respect to strong immersions.

Proof. Let \( i : D \to E \) be a strong immersion and let \( r, \alpha \) and \( \alpha' \) be as in §21.2.2. Consider a commutative square
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
D & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & \tilde{\Gamma}(C) \\
\downarrow{i} & & \downarrow{(\pi, \pi)} \\
E & \xrightarrow{(f, g)} & C \times C.
\end{array}
\]
In other words, we have two \( \omega \)-functors \( f, g : E \to C \) and a reversible oplax transformation \( \gamma : fi \Rightarrow gi \). A lift of such a square amounts to a reversible oplax transformation \( \delta : f \Rightarrow g \) such that \( \delta * i = \gamma \). One defines \( \delta \) as the composite
\[
f \xrightarrow{f * a'} f i r \xrightarrow{g * r} g i r \xrightarrow{g * a} g
\]
(see Remark 20.2.16). We have
\[
\delta * i = ((g * a)(g * r)(f * a')) * i
= (g * a * i)(g * ri)(f * a' * i)
= 1_{gi}(g * 1_D)1_{fi} = \gamma,
\]
thereby proving the result. \( \square \)

21.2.4 Proposition. For every \( n \geq 0 \), the \( \omega \)-functor \( j_n : \varnothing_n \to J_{n+1} \) of §20.4.3 is a strong immersion.
Proof. Let \( n \geq 0 \). By Corollary 20.5.3, every trivial cofibration is an immersion. This means that there exists a section \( r : J_{n+1} \rightarrow \emptyset_n \) and a reversible oplax transformation \( \alpha : ir \Rightarrow 1_D \). A dual proof shows that there exists a section \( r' : J_{n+1} \rightarrow \emptyset_n \) and a reversible oplax transformation \( \alpha' : 1_D \Rightarrow ir' \). (More formally, one can apply Corollary 20.5.3 to \((j_n)^o\), where \(-^o : \text{Cat}_\omega \rightarrow \text{Cat}_\omega\) denotes the duality of \( \text{Cat}_\omega \) consisting in reverting the orientation of \( n \)-cells for every \( n \geq 1 \).) To conclude the proof it suffices to check that \( r = r' \). Consider the reversible oplax transformation \( r \ast \alpha' : r \Rightarrow rir' = r' \). As in \( \emptyset_n \), the only reversible cells are the identities, this oplax transformation has to be the identity, showing that \( r = r' \). \( \square \)

21.2.5 Corollary. For every \( \omega \)-category \( C \), the \( \omega \)-functor

\[
(\varpi, \pi) : \Gamma(C) \rightarrow C \times C
\]

is a fibration.

Proof. This is an immediate consequence of the two previous propositions. \( \square \)

21.2.6 Remark. The same proof shows that \( (\varpi, \pi) : \Gamma(C) \rightarrow C \times C \) is also a fibration.

We thus have showed:

21.2.7 Theorem. For every \( \omega \)-category \( C \), the \( \omega \)-category \( \Gamma(C) \) (endowed with the \( \omega \)-functors described before) is a path object for \( C \) in the folk model structure.

21.2.8 Remark. Although this is not related to the goal of the section, let us mention that one can prove in a very similar way that for every \( \omega \)-functor \( f : C \rightarrow D \), the \( \omega \)-functor \( p_f : \Gamma_f \rightarrow D \) is a fibration. Indeed, one checks that it has the right lifting property with respect to (not necessarily strong) immersions and the assertion thus follows from Corollary 20.5.3.

21.2.9 Proposition. Let \( f : C \rightarrow D \) be an \( \omega \)-functor and let \( (P, p) \) and \( (Q, q) \) be polygraphic resolutions (see §19.3.1) of \( C \) and \( D \), respectively. If \( g, g' : P^o \rightarrow Q^o \) are two \( \omega \)-functors such that the two squares

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P^o & \xrightarrow{g} & Q^o \\
p \downarrow & & \downarrow q \\
C \xrightarrow{f} D
\end{array}
\]

commute, then there exists a reversible oplax transformation \( \alpha : g \Rightarrow g' \).
21.3 The folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_n$ and $\text{Cat}_{n,p}$

**Proof.** The fact that $\overline{\Gamma}(A)$ is a path object for any $\omega$-category $A$ implies that $u : A \to B$ is “right homotopic” to $v : A \to B$ in the sense of model categories if and only if there exists a reversible oplax transformation from $u$ to $v$. The result thus follows from general properties of cofibrant resolutions in model categories (see for instance [184, Proposition 8.1.25]). □

**21.2.10 Remark.** In particular, in the case where $C = D$ and $f$ is the identity $\omega$-functor, we get a diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P^* & \xrightarrow{g} & Q^* \\
\downarrow{\alpha} & & \downarrow{\beta} \\
P & \xleftarrow{\gamma} & Q \\
\end{array}
\]

from which one can deduce that the morphism given in Remark 19.4.2 between any two resolutions is unique up to a (non-canonical) reversible oplax transformation.

### 21.3 The folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_n$ and $\text{Cat}_{n,p}$

The purpose of this section is to transfer the folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_\omega$ to subcategories of $\text{Cat}_\omega$ such as the $\text{Cat}_n$ or more generally $\text{Cat}_{n,p}$. To do so, we will use the following classical transfer lemma:

**21.3.1 Lemma.** Let $(M, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{C}, \mathcal{F})$ be a combinatorial model category generated by $I$ and $J$. Let $C$ be a locally presentable category, and let $F : M \to C$, $G : C \to M$ be a pair of adjoint functors. Suppose that

\[ G(\text{lr}(F(J))) \subseteq \mathcal{W}, \]

where $\mathcal{W}$ denotes the class of weak equivalences of $M$. Then $F(I)$ and $F(J)$ generate a combinatorial model structure on $C$, whose class of weak equivalences is $G^{-1}(\mathcal{W})$ and whose class of fibrations is $G^{-1}(\mathcal{F})$.

**Proof.** See for instance [98, Theorem 3.3]. □

**21.3.2 Proposition.** Let $C$ be a reflective subcategory of $\text{Cat}_\omega$ closed under pushouts and filtered colimits. Suppose that, for every $\omega$-category $C$ in $C$, the $\omega$-category $\Gamma(C)$ is still in $C$. Then there exists a model structure on $C$ whose weak equivalences are the $\omega$-equivalences between objects of $C$ and whose
fibrations are the “folk” fibrations (i.e., the one defined in §20.4.7) between objects of $C$. This model structure is generated by $F(I)$ and $F(J)$, where $F : \text{Cat}_\omega \to C$ denotes the left adjoint of the inclusion functor.

**Proof.** As $C$ is a reflective subcategory closed under filtered colimits of a locally presentable category, the category $C$ is itself locally presentable. Let us check the hypothesis of the previous lemma: we have to show that $lr(F(J))$ is included in the class of $\omega$-equivalences. By the small object argument applied to $F(J)$ in $C$, elements of $lr(F(J))$ are transfinite compositions of pushouts of elements of $F(J)$, these colimits being taken in $C$. By hypothesis, the inclusion functors to $\text{Cat}_\omega$ preserves these colimits and they can be computed in $\text{Cat}_\omega$. By the following lemma, the elements of $F(J)$ are immersions. By Proposition 20.5.5, a pushout of such an immersion is an immersion, and hence is an $\omega$-equivalence by Proposition 20.5.4. As, by Proposition 20.1.19, $\omega$-equivalences are stable under transfinite compositions, this concludes the proof. □

**21.3.3 Lemma.** Under the hypothesis of the previous proposition, if $i$ is an immersion, so is $F(i)$.

**Proof.** Let $D$ be an $\omega$-category. By hypothesis, $\tilde{\Gamma}F(D)$ is in $C$. For $E$ an $\omega$-category, denote by $e_E : E \to F(E)$ the canonical $\omega$-functor. The universal property of $F$ gives a dotted arrow

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\tilde{\Gamma}(D) & \overset{\tilde{\Gamma}(e_D)}{\longrightarrow} & \tilde{\Gamma}F(D) \\
\text{e}_{\tilde{\Gamma}(D)} \downarrow & & \downarrow \tau_D \\
F\tilde{\Gamma}(D) & & \\
\end{array}
\]

making the triangle commute. If $f, g : C \to D$ are two $\omega$-functors and $\alpha : f \Rightarrow g$ is a reversible oplax transformation, then

\[
F(C) \xrightarrow{F(\alpha)} F\tilde{\Gamma}(D) \xrightarrow{\tau_D} \tilde{\Gamma}F(D)
\]

defines a reversible oplax transformation. By abuse of notation, we will denote it by $F(\alpha)$. One checks that we have $F(\alpha) : F(f) \Rightarrow F(g)$ as expected.

Let now $i : C \to D$ be an immersion and let $r$ and $\alpha$ be as in the definition of §20.5.1. By functoriality, $F(r)$ is a retraction of $F(i)$. The previous paragraph gives a reversible oplax transformation $F(\alpha) : F(i)F(r) \Rightarrow 1_{F(D)}$. One checks that $F(\alpha)*F(i) = 1_{F(i)}$, thereby proving the result. (We refer the reader to [237, Lemma 6.2] for a more detailed proof.) □

From now on, we fix $n$ to be either an integer or $\omega$, and $p \leq n$. 

---

---
21.3 The folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_n$ and $\text{Cat}_{n,p}$

21.3.4 Proposition. If $C$ is an $(n, p)$-category, then so is $\Gamma(C)$.

Proof. Let $k > n$ and let $\alpha : x \sim y$ be a $k$-cell of $\Gamma(C)$. Such a cell is a unit in $\Gamma(C)$ if and only if $x$, $y$ and $\alpha_k$ are units in $C$ and $\alpha_{k-1}^- = \alpha_{k-1}^+$. As $C$ is an $n$-category, the $k$-cells $x$, $y$, $\alpha_{k-1}^+$, $\alpha_{k-1}^-$ and the $(k + 1)$-cell $\alpha_k$ are units. As

$$ s_{k-1}(\alpha_{k-1}^-) = s_{k-1}(x)*_0 a_0^+ *_1 \cdots *_{k-2} a_{k-2}^+ $$

$$ = t_{k-1}(x) *_0 a_0^- *_1 \cdots *_{k-2} a_{k-2}^- = s_{k-1}(\alpha_{k-1}^-), $$

we have $\alpha_{k-1}^- = \alpha_{k-1}^+$, showing that $\alpha : x \sim y$ is indeed a unit.

Let now $k > p$ and let $\alpha : x \sim y$ be a $k$-cell of $\Gamma(C)$. As $C$ is an $(n, p)$-category, the $k$-cells $x$ and $y$ are invertible. We now define an inverse $\beta : y^{-1} \sim x^{-1}$ of $\alpha : x \sim y$ in $\Gamma(C)$ in the following way:

$$ \beta_l^+ = \alpha_l^- $$ for $l \leq k - 2$,

$$ \beta_{k-1}^- = \alpha_{k-1}^+$, \quad \beta_{k-1}^+ = \alpha_{k-1}^-$,

$$ \beta_k = (x^{-1} *_0 a_0^+ *_1 \cdots *_{k-2} a_{k-2}^+) $$

$$ \alpha_{k-1}^- *_{k-1} (a_{k-2}^- *_{k-2} \cdots *_{1} a_0^- *_0 y^{-1}), $$

the inverse of the $(k + 1)$-cells $\alpha_k$ existing by hypothesis. One checks that this indeed defines a revertible cylinder and that this cylinder is an inverse of $\alpha : x \sim y$. \hfill \Box

21.3.5 Theorem. There exists a model structure on $\text{Cat}_{n,p}$, known as “the folk model structure”, whose weak equivalences are the $\omega$-equivalences between $(n, p)$-categories and whose fibrations are the “folk” fibrations (i.e., the one defined in §20.4.7) between $(n, p)$-categories. This model structure is generated by $F(I)$ and $F(J)$, where $F : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_{n,p}$ denotes the left adjoint of the inclusion functor.

Proof. The result will be a consequence of Proposition 21.3.2 once we check that the hypotheses hold. The previous proposition gives us one of the hypotheses and we are left to check that the subcategory $\text{Cat}_{n,p}$ of $\text{Cat}_\omega$ is stable under pushout and filtered colimits. But it is actually stable under any colimits as the inclusion functor $\text{Cat}_{n,p} \hookrightarrow \text{Cat}_\omega$ admits a right adjoint, namely the functor taking an $\omega$-category $C$ to the $(n, p)$-category obtained from $C$ by throwing out $k$-cells for $k > n$, and non-invertible $l$-cells for $l > p$. \hfill \Box

Let us now describe more precisely this model structure in some specific cases.
21.3.6 The folk model structure on \( \text{Cat}_n \). The \( \omega \)-category \( \text{Cat}_n \), which is nothing but \( \text{Cat}_{n,n} \), is endowed with a folk model structure by the previous theorem. Its weak equivalences, fibrations and hence trivial fibrations are inherited from the folk model structure on \( \text{Cat}_\omega \). Let us describe its cofibrations. By the previous theorem, the class of cofibrations is \( \mathcal{L}(F(I)) \), where \( F : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Cat}_n \) denotes the left adjoint to the inclusion functor. For \( k \geq 0 \), we have

\[
F(O_k) = \begin{cases} 
O_k & \text{if } k \leq n, \\
O_n & \text{if } k > n,
\end{cases}
\]

and, similarly,

\[
F(\partial O_k) = \begin{cases} 
\partial O_k & \text{if } k \leq n + 1, \\
O_n & \text{if } k > n + 1.
\end{cases}
\]

This implies that

\[
F(i_k) = \begin{cases} 
i_k & \text{if } k \leq n, \\
\tilde{i}_{n+1} & \text{if } k \leq n + 1, \\
1_{O_n} & \text{if } k > n + 1,
\end{cases}
\]

where \( \tilde{i}_{n+1} : \partial O_{n+1} \to O_n \) corresponds to the collapsing of the two non-trivial \( n \)-cells of \( \partial O_{n+1} \). This shows that the class of cofibrations is generated by

\[ i_0, \ldots, i_n, i_{n+1}. \]

If \( C \) is an \( n \)-category, then the \( \omega \)-functor from the empty \( n \)-category to \( C \) is a cellular extension for these generators if and only if \( C \) is presented by an \( (n+1) \)-polygraph, that is, if and only if its underlying \( (n-1) \)-category is freely generated by a polygraph. In particular, any \( n \)-category admits such an \( n \)-category as a fibrant replacement in \( \text{Cat}_n \). Actually, one can show that an \( n \)-category is cofibrant if and only if it is presented by an \( (n+1) \)-polygraph.

Similarly, if one chooses carefully the \( J_{k+1} \) (see Remark 20.4.4), one gets that \( F(j_k) = 1_{O_n} \) if \( k \geq n \) so that trivial cofibrations of \( \text{Cat}_n \) are generated by

\[ \tilde{j}_1 = F(j_1), \ldots, \tilde{j}_{n-1} = F(j_{n-1}). \]

21.3.7 The folk model structure on \( \text{Cat}_0, \text{Cat}_1 \) and \( \text{Cat}_2 \). The weak equivalence of the folk model structure on \( \text{Set} = \text{Cat}_0 \) are the \( \omega \)-equivalences between sets, that is, the bijections. It follows from the discussion in the previous paragraph that its class of cofibrations is generated by

\[ \emptyset \to \{x\} \text{ and } \{x,y\} \to \{z\}. \]
This implies that any map is cofibration. In particular, every set is cofibrant. Similarly, its class of trivial cofibrations is generated by an empty set of generators, showing that any map is fibration.

The weak equivalences of the folk model structure on $\mathbf{Cat} = \mathbf{Cat}_1$ are the $\omega$-equivalences between categories, that is, the equivalences of categories. Its class of cofibrations is generated by the obvious functors of the form

$$\emptyset \leftrightarrow \cdot, \quad \{ \cdot \} \leftrightarrow \{ \cdot \circlearrowleft \cdot \}, \quad \{ \cdot \circlearrowleft \cdot \} \rightarrow \{ \cdot \rightarrow \cdot \}.$$ 

This implies that cofibrations are exactly the functors injective on objects. In particular, every category is cofibrant. Similarly, the class of trivial cofibrations is generated by $\mathbf{j}_1$. If one chooses $J_1$ according to Remark 20.4.4, one gets that $\mathbf{j}_1$ is the inclusion functor

$$\{ x \} \leftrightarrow \{ x \xrightarrow{\sim} y \},$$

where the symbol $\sim$ denotes an isomorphism. This means that an $\omega$-functor $f : C \to D$ is a fibration in $\mathbf{Cat}$ if and only if it is an iso-fibration, that is, if and only if for any object $x$ of $C$ and any isomorphism $v : f(x) \to y$ of $D$, there exists an isomorphism $u : x \to x'$ in $C$ such that $f(u) = v$. We have thus recovered the classical folk model structure on $\mathbf{Cat}$, as described for instance in [312].

Let us now move on to $\mathbf{Cat}_2$. The weak equivalences are the 2-equivalences of 2-categories. Its class of cofibrations is generated by the obvious 2-functors of the form

$$\emptyset \leftrightarrow \cdot, \quad \{ \cdot \} \leftrightarrow \{ \cdot \circlearrowleft \cdot \}, \quad \{ \cdot \circlearrowleft \cdot \} \rightarrow \{ \cdot \rightarrow \cdot \}.$$ 

and

$$\{ \cdot \cup \cdot \} \rightarrow \{ \cdot \cup \cdot \}.$$ 

Its class of trivial cofibrations is generated by

$$\{ x \} \leftrightarrow F(J_1) \quad \text{and} \quad \{ \cdot \circlearrowleft \cdot \} \leftrightarrow \{ \cdot \circlearrowleft \cdot \}.$$ 

Choosing $J_1$ according to Remark 20.4.4, one gets that $F(J_1)$ is the free-standing adjoint equivalence: it has two objects $x$ and $y$, two generating 1-cells $u : 0 \to 1$ and $v : 1 \to 0$, two generating 2-cells $\eta : 1_x \to uv$ and $\varepsilon : vu \to 1_y$ and these 2-cells satisfy the triangular identities: $(\eta \circ u)(u \circ \varepsilon) = 1_u$ and $(v \circ \eta)(\varepsilon \circ v) = 1_v$. We have thus recovered the folk model structure introduced by Lack in [229], with a correction in [231].
21.3.8 The folk model structure on $\mathbf{Gpd}_{\omega}$. The category $\mathbf{Gpd}_{\omega}$, which is nothing but $\mathbf{Cat}_{\omega,0}$, is endowed with a folk model structure. The weak equivalences are the $\omega$-equivalences between $\omega$-groupoids. They can be characterized as the $\omega$-functors inducing bijections on connected components and homotopy groups but we will not enter into that. Denote by $F : \mathbf{Cat}_{\omega} \to \mathbf{Gpd}_{\omega}$ the left adjoint to the inclusion functor. This functor sends an $\omega$-category $C$ to the $\omega$-groupoid obtained by formally inverting every cells of $C$. Set

$$\widetilde{O}_n = F(O_n).$$

The class of cofibrations of $\mathbf{Gpd}_{\omega}$ is generated by the inclusion

$$F(i_n) : \partial\widetilde{O}_n \hookrightarrow \widetilde{O}_n,$$

where $\partial\widetilde{O}_n$ denotes the underlying $(n-1)$-groupoid of $\widetilde{O}_n$. Less trivially, the class of trivial cofibrations is generated by the set $\widetilde{J}$ of $\omega$-functors

$$\widetilde{j}_n : \widetilde{O}_n \hookrightarrow \widetilde{O}_{n+1},$$

where $n \geq 1$, corresponding to the source of the principal cell of $\widetilde{O}_{n+1}$. (Note that these $\omega$-functors are not the $F(j_n)$.) To prove this, one can proceed as follows. First, one notes that these $\omega$-functors are trivial cofibrations, so that the class $\widetilde{J}$ is included in the class of trivial cofibration. Second, one checks that an $\omega$-equivalence between $\omega$-groupoids having the right lifting property with respect to the $\widetilde{j}_n$ is a trivial fibration. Third, one concludes using a similar argument as in the proof of Theorem 21.1.2. Let $f$ be a trivial cofibration in $\mathbf{Gpd}_{\omega}$. Using the small object argument, one can factor it as $f = pi$, where $i$ is in $lr(\widetilde{F})$ and $p$ is in $r(\widetilde{F})$. By the first point, $i$ is a trivial cofibration and so $p$ is a weak equivalence by the 2-out-of-3 property. This implies that $p$ is a trivial fibration by the second point. Thus, $f$ has the left lifting property with respect to $p$ and, by the retract lemma, $f$ is a retract of $i$, showing that $f$ is in $lr(\widetilde{F})$.

We refer the reader to [16] for more details on the folk model structure on $\mathbf{Gpd}_{\omega}$. In this paper, this model structure is called the Brown-Golasinski model structure as it coincides, through the equivalence of categories between $\omega$-groupoids and crossed complexes, with the model structure on crossed complexes introduced by Brown and Golasinski in [62].

21.3.9 The folk model structure on $\mathbf{Cat}_{\omega,1}$. The description of the folk model structure on $\mathbf{Cat}_{\omega,1}$ is very close to the one of $\mathbf{Gpd}_{\omega}$. Its weak equivalences are the $\omega$-equivalences between $(\omega, 1)$-categories. Setting

$$\widetilde{O}_n = F(O_n),$$
21.3 The folk model structure on $\bf{Cat}_n$ and $\bf{Cat}_{n, p}$

where $F : \bf{Cat}_\omega \to \bf{Cat}_{\omega, 1}$ denotes the left adjoint to the inclusion functor, the class of cofibrations of $\bf{Cat}_{\omega, 1}$ is generated by the inclusions

$$F(i_n) : \partial O_n \hookrightarrow O_n,$$

where $\partial O_n$ denotes the underlying $(n-1, 1)$-category of $O_n$. The class of trivial cofibrations can be shown to be generated by

$$\tilde{j}_1 = F(j_1) : \tilde{O}_0 \to F(J_1)$$

and by the

$$\tilde{j}_n : \tilde{O}_n \hookrightarrow \tilde{O}_{n+1},$$

for $n \geq 1$, corresponding to the source of the principal cell of $O_{n+1}$. 

22

Homology of $\omega$-categories

This chapter is about Métayer’s polygraphic homology of $\omega$-categories [278]. This homology theory was first defined in the following way: the polygraphic homology of an $\omega$-category is the homology of the abelianization of any of its polygraphic replacements. Métayer then showed with Lafont that for every monoid, considered as an $\omega$-category, its polygraphic homology coincides with its classical homology as a monoid [236]. This result was then generalized to 1-categories by Guetta [155].

In this chapter, we prove that the polygraphic homology is the left derived functor of a linearization functor from $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$ to the category $\text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}$ of chain complexes, where $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$ is endowed with $\omega$-equivalences and $\text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}$ with quasi-isomorphisms.

In the first section of the chapter, we define the abelianization functor and we prove that an oplax transformation induces a chain homotopy after abelianization. In the second section, we show that the abelianization functor is a left Quillen functor for the folk model category structure on $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$ and the projective structure on $\text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}$. We define polygraphic homology using this derived functor. The fact that polygraphic resolutions are cofibrant resolutions for the folk model category structure proves that this homology is indeed Métayer’s polygraphic homology. In the third section, we show that polygraphic homology generalizes monoid homology. The proof we present is based on a conceptual reinterpretation of Lafont and Métayer’s proof by Guetta. Finally, in the last section, we compute some examples of polygraphic homology.

In the whole chapter, we assume some familiarity with homological algebra, and in particular homology of monoids. We refer the reader to Appendix E for a quick introduction.
22.1 The abelianization functor

22.1.1 Abelianization of an \(\omega\)-category. We now define the abelianization functor

\[ \text{Ab} : \text{Cat}_{\omega} \to \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}, \]

where \(\text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}\) denotes the category of chain complexes of abelian groups in non-negative degree, see §E.2.1. Using the notation of Section 17.4, this functor is just the composite

\[ \text{Cat}_{\omega} \xrightarrow{\lambda} \text{ADC} \xrightarrow{U} \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}. \]

Nevertheless, we will give a direct definition.

Let \(C\) be an \(\omega\)-category. We define the chain complex \(\text{Ab}(C)\) in the following way. For every \(n \geq 0\), the group \(\text{Ab}(C)_n\) is generated by elements \([x]\), for every \(n\)-cell \(x\) of \(C\), subject to the relations \([x *_i y] = [x] + [y]\), for every pair of \(n\)-cells \(x\) and \(y\) such that \(x *_i y\) is defined. It follows that if \(z\) is an \(m\)-cell for \(m < n\), then \([1_z] = 0\), where \(1_z\) denotes the iterated identity in dimension \(n\). For \(n \geq 1\), we define \(d_n\) by

\[ d_n([x]) = [t_{n-1}(x)] - [s_{n-1}(x)], \]

where \(x\) is an \(n\)-cell of \(C\). The axioms of \(\omega\)-categories giving the sources and targets of compositions imply that these maps are well-defined and the globular relations that they define a chain complex.

If \(f : C \to D\) is an \(\omega\)-functor, then we define a chain map

\[ \text{Ab}(f) : \text{Ab}(C) \to \text{Ab}(D) \]

by setting

\[ \text{Ab}(f)_n([x]) = [f(x)] \]

for \(n \geq 0\) and \(x\) an \(n\)-cell of \(C\). One checks that this is well-defined, that \(\text{Ab}(f)\) is a chain map and that \(\text{Ab}\) is indeed a functor.

22.1.2 Proposition. The functor \(\text{Ab}\) is a left adjoint. In particular, it preserves colimits.

Proof. We saw in Remark 17.4.7 that \(\text{Ab}\), which is \(U\lambda\) with the notation of this remark, admits the functor \(\nu : \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \to \text{Cat}_{\omega}\) of §17.4.5 as a left adjoint. \(\square\)

22.1.3 Proposition. Let \(P\) be a polygraph. For every \(n \geq 0\), the abelian group \(\text{Ab}(P^*)_n\) is free with basis the elements of the form \([x]\), where \(x\) is in \(P_n\).

Proof. This is part of Proposition 17.4.9. \(\square\)
22.1.4 Proposition. Let $f, g : C \to D$ be two $\omega$-functors and let $\alpha : f \Rightarrow g$ be an oplax transformation. Then, setting

$$\text{Ab}(\alpha)_n([x]) = [\alpha_x]$$

for $n \geq 0$ and $x$ in $C_n$, we obtain a chain homotopy (see §E.2.4)

$$\text{Ab}(\alpha) : \text{Ab}(f) \Rightarrow \text{Ab}(g).$$

Proof. Let us first check that the map $\text{Ab}(\alpha)_n$ is well-defined. Let $x$ and $y$ be two $n$-cells such that $x s_i y$ is defined for some $i < n$. We have to check the equality $\text{Ab}(\alpha)_n([x s_i y]) = \text{Ab}(\alpha)_n([x]) + \text{Ab}(\alpha)_n([y])$, that is, $[\alpha_{x s_i y}] = [\alpha_x] + [\alpha_y]$. But this is exactly what we get by linearizing the formula

$$\alpha_{x s_i y} = (f(s_{i+1}(x)) \ast_0 \alpha_{h(y)} \ast_1 \cdots \ast_{i-1} \alpha_{h_{i-1}(y)} \ast_i \alpha_y) \ast_{i+1}$$

keeping in mind that, as we are linearizing in dimension $n + 1$, we have $[z] = 0$ for $z$ an $m$-cell with $m < n + 1$.

Let us now prove that $\text{Ab}(\alpha)$ is indeed a chain homotopy. If $x$ is 0-cell of $C$, we have $\alpha_x : f(x) \to g(x)$ and so $d_1[\alpha_x] = [g(x)] - [f(x)]$, showing that $d_1(\text{Ab}(\alpha)_0([x])) = \text{Ab}(g)_0([x]) - \text{Ab}(f)_0([x])$. Similarly, if $x$ is an $n$-cell of $C_n$ for $n > 0$, we have

$$\alpha_x : f(x) \ast_0 \alpha_{h_0(x)} \ast_1 \cdots \ast_{n-1} \alpha_{h_{n-1}(x)} \to \alpha_{s_{n-1}(x)} \ast_{n-1} \cdots \ast_1 \alpha_{s_0(x)} \ast_0 g(x)$$

and, by linearizing,

$$d_{n+1}[\alpha_x] = [\alpha_{s_{n-1}(x)}] + [g(x)] - [f(x)] - [\alpha_{h_{n-1}(x)}].$$

As

$$[\alpha_{h_{n-1}(x)}] - [\alpha_{s_{n-1}(x)}] = \text{Ab}(\alpha)_n([h_{n-1}(x)]) - \text{Ab}(\alpha)_n([s_{n-1}(x)])$$

$$= \text{Ab}(\alpha)_n([t_{n-1}(x)]) - \text{Ab}(\alpha)_n([s_{n-1}(x)])$$

$$= \text{Ab}(\alpha)_n(d_n[x]),$$

we get

$$d_{n+1}(\text{Ab}(\alpha)_n([x])) + \text{Ab}(\alpha)_{n-1}(d_n[x]) = \text{Ab}(g)_n([x]) - \text{Ab}(f)_n([x]),$$

thereby showing the result. \[\square\]

22.2 Deriving the abelianization functor

In this section, we will show that the abelianization functor

$$\text{Ab} : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Ch}_{\geq 0}$$
22.2 Deriving the abelianization functor

We start by some preliminaries on derived functors.

22.2.1 Homotopy category. A localizer (also called relative category) is a category $C$ endowed with a class $\mathcal{W}$ of morphisms called weak equivalences. The homotopy category of a localizer $(C, \mathcal{W})$ is the category $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ obtained from $C$ by formally inverting arrows in $\mathcal{W}$. We will also denote this category by $\text{Ho}(C)$, making implicit the class $\mathcal{W}$. There is a canonical functor $p : C \to \text{Ho}(C)$.

In particular, any model category $\mathcal{M}$ has an underlying localizer $(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{W})$ and thus a homotopy category $\text{Ho}(\mathcal{M})$.

22.2.2 Left derived functors. Let $(C, \mathcal{W}_C)$ and $(D, \mathcal{W}_D)$ be two localizers and let $F : C \to D$ be a functor. The (total) left derived functor of $F$, if it exists, is the universal pair consisting of a functor $L_F : \text{Ho}(C) \to \text{Ho}(D)$ and a natural transformation $\nu : F \to L_F$.

By abuse of language, one often refers to $L_F$ as the left derived functor of $F$.

One important use of model categories is to provide tools to prove the existence of derived functors. In particular, the so-called left Quillen functors can be left derived.

22.2.3 Left Quillen functors. Let $\mathcal{M}$ and $\mathcal{N}$ be two model categories. A left adjoint functor $F : \mathcal{M} \to \mathcal{N}$ is called a left Quillen functor if it sends cofibrations of $\mathcal{M}$ to cofibrations of $\mathcal{N}$ and trivial cofibrations of $\mathcal{M}$ to trivial cofibrations of $\mathcal{N}$.

Similarly, a right adjoint functor $G : \mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{M}$ is said to be a right Quillen functor if it sends fibrations to fibrations and trivial fibrations to trivial fibrations.

If $F : \mathcal{M} \to \mathcal{N}$ and $G : \mathcal{N} \to \mathcal{M}$ is a pair of adjoint functor, then $F$ is a left Quillen functor if and only if $G$ is a
right Quillen functor. The pair \( (F, G) \) is then called a Quillen pair or a Quillen adjunction.

22.2.4 Theorem (Quillen). A left Quillen functor \( F : \mathcal{M} \to \mathcal{N} \) admits a left derived functor \( \mathbb{L}F : \mathrm{Ho}(\mathcal{M}) \to \mathrm{Ho}(\mathcal{N}) \). Moreover, if \( X \) is an object of \( \mathcal{M} \), then \( \mathbb{L}F(p_M(X)) \) is canonically isomorphic to \( p_N(F(Q)) \), where \( (Q, Q \to X) \) is a cofibrant replacement, i.e., a cofibrant object \( Q \) endowed with a weak equivalence \( Q \to X \).

Similarly, a right Quillen functor admits a right derived functor that can be computed using fibrant replacement.

22.2.5 Remark. One actually only needs \( F \) to send trivial cofibrations between cofibrant objects to weak equivalences for the previous theorem to apply.

We will now apply Quillen’s result to the abelianization functor \( \mathrm{Ab} : \mathrm{Cat}_{\omega} \to \mathrm{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \).

We first introduce a model category structure on \( \mathrm{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \).

22.2.6 The projective model structure on chain complexes. The category of chain complexes \( \mathrm{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \) can be endowed with the so-called projective model structure (see [307, Chapter II, Section 4, page 11]):

– the weak equivalences are the quasi-isomorphisms (see §E.3.5),
– the cofibrations are the monomorphisms \( f \) such that, for every \( n \geq 0 \), the cokernel of \( f_n \) is projective,
– the fibrations are the morphisms \( f \) such that, for every \( n > 0 \), \( f_n \) is an epimorphism.

In particular, every chain complex is fibrant for this model structure and the cofibrant chain complexes are exactly the ones that are projective in every degree.

22.2.7 Theorem. The functor \( \mathrm{Ab} : \mathrm{Cat}_{\omega} \to \mathrm{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \) is a left Quillen functor, where \( \mathrm{Cat}_{\omega} \) is endowed with the folk model structure and \( \mathrm{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \) is endowed with the projective model structure.

Proof. We have to show that \( \mathrm{Ab} \) preserves cofibrations and trivial cofibrations. Since the cofibrations and trivial cofibrations of \( \mathrm{Cat}_{\omega} \) are generated by sets \( I \) and \( J \), it suffices to prove that these sets are sent to cofibrations and weak equivalences respectively.

Let \( i_n : \partial \mathcal{O}_n \to \mathcal{O}_n \) be an element of \( I \). Proposition 22.1.3 gives a concrete description of the morphism \( \mathrm{Ab}(i_n) : \mathrm{Ab}(\partial \mathcal{O}_n) \to \mathrm{Ab}(\mathcal{O}_n) \) for \( k \) such that \( 0 \leq k < n \), the morphism \( \mathrm{Ab}(i_n)_k \) can be identified with the identity of \( \mathbb{Z}^2 \).
for $k = n$, it can be identified with the unique morphism $0 \to \mathbb{Z}$ and, for $k > n$, with the identity of $0$. All these morphisms are monomorphisms of cokernel either $0$ or $\mathbb{Z}$. This means that $\text{Ab}(t_n)$ is a cofibration.

Let now $j_n : O_n \to J_{n+1}$ be an element of $\mathcal{J}$. By Corollary 20.5.3, this $\omega$-functor admits an inverse up to reversible oplax transformations. (Now that we have the folk model structure, this also follows from the so-called “Whitehead Theorem”, see for instance [184, Theorem 7.5.10], as $j_n$ is a weak equivalence between cofibrant and fibrant objects.) But since by Proposition 22.1.4, oplax transformations are sent to chain homotopies, the morphism $\text{Ab}(j_n)$ is a homotopy equivalence (see §E.3.5) and thus a quasi-isomorphisms, thereby proving the result. □

22.2.8 Polygraphic homology of $\omega$-categories. By the previous theorem, the functor

$$\text{Ab} : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}$$

can be derived to a functor

$$L\text{Ab} : \text{Ho}(\text{Cat}_\omega) \to \text{Ho}(\text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}).$$

In particular, for $n \geq 0$, by post-composing by the functor

$$H_n : \text{Ho}(\text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}) \to \text{Ab}$$

(induced by the $H_n : \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0} \to \text{Ab}$ functor of §E.2.2), we get a functor

$$H_n^{\text{Pol}} : \text{Ho}(\text{Cat}_\omega) \to \text{Ab}.$$

If $C$ is an $\omega$-category, by definition, the $n$-th polygraphic homology group of $C$ is the abelian group $H_n^{\text{Pol}}(C)$.

Concretely, by Theorem 22.2.4, the group $H_n^{\text{Pol}}(C)$ is computed in the following way:

$$H_n^{\text{Pol}}(C) = H_n(\text{Ab}(P^*)),$$

where $(P, P^* \to C)$ is any polygraphic resolution of $C$.

22.3 Comparison with homology of monoids

In the previous section, we defined the polygraphic homology of an $\omega$-category $C$. In this section, we will show, following [236], that when $M$ is a monoid, the polygraphic homology of $M$, seen as an $\omega$-category, coincides with the homology of the monoid $M$. A similar result holds for 1-categories, the homology
of 1-categories being defined using simplicial sets (see Section F.1), as proved in [155].

22.3.1 Theorem. Let $M$ be a monoid. The polygraphic homology of $M$ seen as an $\omega$-category coincides with the homology of the monoid $M$.

Proof. Let $p : P^* \to M$ be a polygraphic resolution of $M$, considered as a 1-category, such that $P^0$ consists of a unique element that we will denote by $. For instance, one could take the standard resolution. By definition, the polygraphic homology of $M$ is the homology of the abelianization of $P^*$. We will now associate to this polygraphic resolution a resolution by free left $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules of $\mathbb{Z}$ (endowed with the trivial action).

Denote by $e$ the unit element of $M$ and by $e \backslash M$ the coslice category. Explicitly, an object of $e \backslash M$ is an element of $M$, and if $m$ and $m'$ are two objects, a morphism from $m$ to $m'$ is an element $n$ of $M$ such that $nm = m'$. Denote by $e \backslash P^*$ the $\omega$-category defined by the pullback square

\[
e \backslash P^* \longrightarrow P^*
\]
\[
a \downarrow \quad \downarrow p
\]
\[
e \backslash M \longrightarrow M,
\]
where the bottom horizontal morphism is the forgetful functor. Let us describe the cells of this $\omega$-category. An object of $e \backslash P^*$ consists of an element $m$ of $M$ that we will denote by $(m, *)$. A 1-cell from an object $m$ to an object $m'$ consists of a 1-cell $x$ such that $p(x)m = m'$. A 1-cell is thus uniquely determined by a pair $(m, x)$, where $m$ is in $M$ and $x$ is a 1-cell of $P^*$. The source of such a 1-cell is $p(x)m$ and its target is $m'$. Similarly, an $i$-cell for $i > 1$ can be described as a pair $(m, x)$, where $m$ is in $M$ and $x$ is an $i$-cell of $P^*$. Its source is $(m, s_{i-1}(x))$ and its target $(m, t_{i-1}(x))$.

One can show that the $\omega$-category $e \backslash P^*$ is freely generated in the sense of polygraphs by its cells of the form $(m, a)$, where $m$ is in $M$ and $a$ is in $P_i$ for $i \geq 0$. This implies that the linearization of this $\omega$-category in degree $i$ is

\[
\text{Ab}(e \backslash P^*)_i \cong \mathbb{Z}[M \times P_i] \cong \mathbb{Z}M[P_i].
\]
In particular, it has a natural structure of left $\mathbb{Z}M$-module. If $x$ is a cell, setting $[x] = [(e, x)]$, we have $[(m, x)] = m[x]$. By definition, if $m$ is in $M$ and $x$ is an $i$-cell for $i > 0$, we have

\[
d_i(m[x]) = \begin{cases} m[*] - mp(x)[*] & \text{if } i = 1, \\
m[t_{i-1}(x)] - m[s_{i-1}(x)] & \text{if } i > 1, \end{cases}
\]
and the map $d_i$ is thus $\mathbb{Z}M$-linear. This shows that $\text{Ab}(e\setminus P^*)$ is a complex of free left $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules.

The unique $\omega$-functor from $e\setminus P^*$ to the terminal $\omega$-category induces a morphism of complexes $\text{Ab}(e\setminus P^*)$ to $\mathbb{Z}$. In other words, by sending $m[*]$ in $\text{Ab}(e\setminus P^*)_0$ to 1 in $\mathbb{Z}$, we get an augmented complex of left $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules

$$\mathbb{Z} \leftarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \leftarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \leftarrow \mathbb{Z}M[P_2] \leftarrow \cdots$$

We will see that this complex is exact. Assuming this, let us end the proof. As the complex is exact, we have built, as announced, a resolution of $\mathbb{Z}$ by free left $\mathbb{Z}M$-module. The homology of the monoid $M$ is thus the homology of the complex

$$\mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} \mathbb{Z}M[P_0] \leftarrow \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} \mathbb{Z}M[P_1] \leftarrow \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} \mathbb{Z}M[P_2] \leftarrow \cdots$$

which is canonically isomorphic to the complex

$$\mathbb{Z}[P_0] \leftarrow \mathbb{Z}[P_1] \leftarrow \mathbb{Z}[P_2] \leftarrow \cdots$$

which is nothing but $\text{Ab}(P^*)$. The homology of the monoid $M$ is thus the homology of $\text{Ab}(P^*)$, that is, the polygraphic homology of $M$.

To end the proof, it thus suffices to show that the augmented complex introduced at the beginning of the previous paragraph is exact. We have a unique $\omega$-functor $r : e\setminus P^* \to 1$, where $1$ denotes the terminal $\omega$-category. We have to show that $\text{Ab}(r)$ is a quasi-isomorphism. Consider the $\omega$-functor $e : 1 \to e\setminus P^*$ corresponding to the object $(e, *)$ of $e\setminus P^*$. The composition $pe$ is the identity of $1$. We will construct an oplax transformation $\alpha : pe \Rightarrow 1_{e\setminus P^*}$. Using Proposition 22.1.4, we will get that $\text{Ab}(r)$ is a homotopy equivalence and thus a quasi-isomorphism. Let us construct this oplax transformation $\alpha$. First, note that there exists an oplax transformation $\beta : qpe \Rightarrow q$, where $q : e\setminus P^* \to e\setminus M$ is the $\omega$-functor introduced at the beginning of the proof. (Note that $qpe$ is the constant $\omega$-functor of value $e$.) Indeed, as $e\setminus M$ admits $e$ as an initial object, we have a natural transformation $\gamma : e \Rightarrow 1_{e\setminus M}$, where $e$ denotes the constant endofunctor of $e\setminus M$ of value $e$. The oplax transformation $\beta$ is thus $\gamma \ast q$. Second, note that $q$ is a trivial fibration, as it is defined by pulling back the trivial fibration $p$. The existence of the transformation $\alpha$ thus follows from the following lemma that concludes the proof.

**22.3.2 Lemma.** Let $p : C \to D$ and $f, g : B \to C$ be three $\omega$-functors and let $\beta : pf \Rightarrow pg$ be an oplax transformation. If $p$ is a trivial fibration and $T$ is a cofibrant $\omega$-category, then there exists an oplax transformation $\alpha : f \Rightarrow g$ such that $\beta = p \ast \alpha$. 

□
Proof. The oplax transformation $\beta$ corresponds to an $\omega$-functor $B \to \Gamma(D)$. Consider the pullback square

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\Gamma(D) \times_{D \times D} C \times C & \longrightarrow & \Gamma(D) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow (\pi, \pi) \\
C \times C & \longrightarrow & D \times D,
\end{array}
$$

As the source of $\beta$ is $pf$ and its target is $pg$, we get an $\omega$-functor

$$(\beta, f \times g) : B \to \Gamma(D) \times_{D \times D} C \times C.$$

The naturality square

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\Gamma(C) & \longrightarrow & \Gamma(D) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow (\pi, \pi) \\
C \times C & \longrightarrow & D \times D
\end{array}
$$

induces an $\omega$-functor

$$q : \Gamma(C) \to \Gamma(D) \times_{D \times D} C \times C.$$

An oplax transformation $\alpha$ as in the statement exactly corresponds to a dotted arrow making the triangle

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\Gamma(C) & \longrightarrow & \Gamma(D) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow q \\
B & \longrightarrow & \Gamma(D) \times_{D \times D} C \times C
\end{array}
$$

commute. As $B$ is cofibrant, to get the result it suffices to show that $q$ is a trivial fibration.

Let us prove this:

1. An object of $\Gamma(D) \times_{D \times D} C \times C$ is given by two objects $x$ and $x'$ of $C$ and a 1-cell $v : p(x) \to p(x')$. As $p$ is a trivial fibration, there exists $u : x \to x'$ such that $p(u) = v$, showing that $q$ is surjective on objects.

2. Let $n \geq 1$ and let $\gamma : x \sim y$ and $\delta : z \sim t$ be two parallel $n$-cylinders of $C$. Suppose we have an $(n + 1)$-cell from $q(\gamma)$ to $q(\delta)$. This means that we have two $n$-cells $u : x \to z$ and $v : y \to t$ of $C$ and an $(n + 1)$-cylinder $\Gamma : p(\gamma) \to p(\delta) : p(u) \sim p(v)$. As $p$ is a trivial fibration, the $(n + 2)$-cell of the $(n + 1)$-cylinder $\Gamma$ can be lifted to $C$ yielding an $(n + 1)$-cylinder $\Lambda : \gamma \to \delta : u \sim v$ of $C$ such that $p(\Lambda) = \Gamma$. This shows that $q$ is a trivial fibration, thereby proving the lemma. \qed
22.4 Examples

22.4.1 Polygraphic homology of $R_1$. We will compute the polygraphic homology of the free-standing reversible cell $R_1$, introduced in §20.4.1. We will see that its homology is non trivial. This implies that $R_1$ is not weakly contractible.

Since $R_1$ is freely generated by a polygraph, its homology is the homology of its linearization $C = \text{Ab}(R_1)$. We have

$$C_0 = \mathbb{Z}[0, 1]$$

and

$$C_j = \mathbb{Z}[r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-1}, j}, \bar{r}_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-1}} \mid l_k = \pm, 1 \leq k < j],$$

with

$$d_1([r]) = [t_0(r)] - [s_0(r)] = [1] - [0],$$

and similarly,

$$d_1([\bar{r}]) = [0] - [1] = -d([r]),$$

$$d_j([r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-1}, -}]) = [s_{j-1}(r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-1}, -})] - [s_{j-1}(r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-1}, -})]$$

$$= [r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-2}, -} * s_{j-2}(r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-1}, -})]$$

$$= [r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-2}, -}] + [\bar{r}_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-1}}],$$

and similarly,

$$d_j([\bar{r}_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-1}, -}]) = -d_j([r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-2}, -}]),$$

$$d_j([r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-2}, +}]) = -d_j([r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-2}, -}]),$$

$$d_j([\bar{r}_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-2}, +}]) = d_j([r_{i_1, \ldots, i_{j-2}, -}]).$$

Let us compute the homology of this chain complex. One has

$$H_{\text{Pol}}^0(R_1) = \mathbb{Z}[0, 1]/\langle [1] - [0] \rangle \cong \mathbb{Z}.$$ 

A 1-chain $a[r] + b[\bar{r}]$ is a cycle if and only if

$$d_1(a[r] + b[\bar{r}]) = (a - b)[r] = 0,$$

that is, if and only if $a = b$. But $[r] + [\bar{r}]$ is a boundary. Hence

$$H_{\text{Pol}}^1(R_1) = 0.$$ 

Similarly, a 2-chain $a[r_-] + b[\bar{r}_-] + c[r_+] + d[\bar{r}_+]$ is a cycle if and only if one has $a - b - c + d = 0$. The abelian group of 2-cycles is thus isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}^3$. As for the abelian group of 2-boundaries, it is spanned by $[r_-] + [\bar{r}_-]$.
Homology of \(\omega\)-categories

and \([r_+] + [r_-]\). It is thus isomorphic to \(\mathbb{Z}^2\). Computing the quotient, one gets that

\[
H^\text{Pol}_2(R_1) \cong \mathbb{Z}.
\]

This already proves that \(R_1\) is not weakly contractible. More generally, for \(n \geq 2\), one checks that

\[
H^\text{Pol}_n(R_1) \cong \mathbb{Z}^{(2^{n-2} - 2^{n-1}) - 2^{n-2}} = \mathbb{Z}^{2n-2}.
\]

22.4.2 Thomason homology and the homology of \(K(\mathbb{N}, 2)\). In this chapter, we defined a homology theory for \(\omega\)-categories: the polygraphic homology. There is a second homology theory for \(\omega\)-categories, that we will call the Thomason homology, which can be morally defined in the following way. Let \(C\) be an \(\omega\)-category. Consider the weak \(\omega\)-groupoid obtained by weakly inverting all the cells of \(C\). This weak \(\omega\)-groupoid corresponds to a homotopy type and, morally, the Thomason homology of \(C\) is the homology of this homotopy type. One way to give a precise definition of this homology is to use Street nerve \(N : \text{Cat}_\omega \to \tilde{\Delta}\), introduced in [334], which extends the usual nerve functor (see §F.1.3) to \(\omega\)-categories. If \(C\) is an \(\omega\)-category, for every \(n \geq 0\), we set

\[
H^\text{Th}_n(C) = H_n(N\mathcal{C}).
\]

This is the Thomason homology of \(C\). When \(C\) is a category, we recover the classical homology of categories (generalizing the classical homology of monoids) recalled in Section F.1. The main result of [155] says that the polygraphic homology and the Thomason homology of a category agree. It is tempting to think that these two homologies always agree. This is not the case!

Here is a counter-example. Recall (see Section 14.3) that to any abelian monoid \(M\), one can associate a 2-category with only one object, one 1-cell (the identity of the unique object) and \(M\) as the set of 2-cells. Let us denote this 2-category by \(K(M, 2)\). By [10, Theorem 4.7], if \(M\) is an abelian group \(A\), then the Thomason homology of \(K(A, 2)\) is the homology of the corresponding Eilenberg–Mac Lane space, that is, of any CW-complex whose homotopy groups are trivial except the second one which is \(A\). In particular, by classical results, the Thomason homology of \(K(\mathbb{Z}, 2)\) is the homology of \(\mathbb{C}P^\infty\), the infinite-dimensional complex projective space, and is hence \(\mathbb{Z}\) in even degree and null in odd degree. Moreover, by [10, Theorem 4.9], the inclusion 2-functor \(K(\mathbb{N}, 2) \hookrightarrow K(\mathbb{Z}, 2)\) induces an isomorphism in homology. We thus have

\[
H^\text{Th}_n(K(\mathbb{N}, 2)) = \begin{cases} 
\mathbb{Z} & \text{if } n \text{ is even,} \\
0 & \text{if } n \text{ is odd.}
\end{cases}
\]
But $K(\mathbb{N}, 2)$ is freely generated by the unique 2-polygraph $P$ with

$$P_0 = \{\star\}, \quad P_1 = \emptyset, \quad P_2 = \{x\}.$$ 

Its polygraphic homology is hence the homology of its linearization

$$\mathbb{Z} \leftarrow 0 \leftarrow \mathbb{Z} \leftarrow 0 \leftarrow \cdots$$

and we have

$$H^{\text{Pol}}_n(K(\mathbb{N}, 2)) = \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z} & \text{if } n = 0 \text{ or } n = 2, \\ 0 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

In particular, $H^{\text{Pol}}_4(K(\mathbb{N}, 2)) \neq H^{\text{Th}}_4(K(\mathbb{N}, 2))$. 
Anick and Green constructed the first explicit free resolutions for algebras from a presentation of relations by non-commutative Gröbner bases [7, 8, 9, 152]. Their constructions provide resolutions to compute homological invariants, such as homology groups, Hilbert and Poincaré series of algebras presented by generators and relations given by a Gröbner basis. The chains of these resolutions are defined by iterated overlaps of the leading terms of the Gröbner basis and the differentials are constructed by noetherian induction. Similar methods for calculating free resolutions for monoids and algebras, inspired by string rewriting mechanisms, have been developed in numerous works [60, 154, 219, 221]. A purely polygraphic approach to the construction of these resolutions by rewriting has been developed in [163] using the notion of \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraphic resolution, where the mechanism for proving the acyclicity of the resolution relies on the construction of a normalization strategy extended in all dimensions. The construction of polygraphic resolutions by rewriting has also been applied to the case of associative algebras in [160] and shuffle operads in [269], introducing in each case a notion of polygraph adapted to the algebraic structure.

In this chapter, we show how to construct a polygraphic resolution of a category from a convergent presentation of that category, and how to deduce an abelian version of such a resolution. The notion of polygraphic resolution of an \(\omega\)-category was introduced in Section 19.3: it consists of a polygraph which is weakly equivalent to the category. We consider here a variant of this notion adapted to \((\omega, 1)\)-categories, related to the folk model structure on the category \(\text{Cat}_{\omega, 1}\) of \((\omega, 1)\)-categories. The chapter is organized as follows. In Section 23.1, we introduce the notion of contraction with respect to a unital section, which we often use to show that an \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraph is acyclic. In Section 23.2, we show how to compute a cofibrant replacement of a category in the category \(\text{Cat}_{\omega, 1}\) from one of its convergent presentation. This construction
extends to higher dimensions the one given in low dimensions in Chapter 7 in terms of coherent presentations. In Section 23.3, we explain how to deduce an abelian resolution from a resolution by an \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraph, thus again extending the constructions given in low dimensions in Chapter 9. We deduce from this resolution several homological and homotopical finiteness conditions for finite-convergence. In Section 23.4, we extend the results about finite derivation type presented in Chapter 8.

### 23.1 Polygraphic resolutions and contractions

In this section, we consider the folk model structure on \(\text{Cat}_{\omega, 1}\) constructed in Theorem 21.3.5 and described in §21.3.9, and the notion of oplax transformation between \(\omega\)-functors as defined in §20.2.14.

#### 23.1.1 Polygraphic resolution of an \((\omega, 1)\)-category

A polygraphic resolution of a category \(C\) in \(\text{Cat}_{\omega, 1}\) is a pair \((P, p)\) made of an \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraph \(P\) and a trivial fibration \(p : P^\top \to C\), where \(P^\top\) is the free \((\omega, 1)\)-category generated by \(P\). Expanding the definition, \(P\) is a polygraphic resolution of \(C\) if and only if it presents \(C\) and, for every \(n \geq 2\), the extension \(P_{n+1}^\top\) is acyclic.

#### 23.1.2 Unital sections and essential cells

Let \(P\) be an \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraph. For a 1-cell of the quotient category \(\overline{P}\), we denote by \(P^\top_u\) the corresponding fiber of the canonical projection \(\pi : P^\top \to \overline{P}\). By definition, \(P^\top_u\) is an \(\omega\)-groupoid, whose 0-cells are the representatives of \(u\) in \(P^\top\). To avoid confusion, we keep the dimensions of the \((\omega, 1)\)-category \(P^\top\) in the quotient \(\overline{P}\).

A unital section of \(P\) is a family

\[ \iota = (\iota_u : 1 \to P^\top_u)_{u \in \overline{P}} \]

of \(\omega\)-functors, satisfying \(\iota_{1_x} = 1_{1_x}\) for every 0-generator \(x\) of \(P\). Such a family of functors assigns to every 1-cell \(u\) of \(\overline{P}\) a representative 1-cell \(\iota_u\) in \(P^\top\), in such a way that identities are mapped to identities. A unital section of \(P\) is almost a functorial section of the canonical projection \(\pi : P^\top \to \overline{P}\), except that it is not defined in dimension 0 and no specific compatibility with the 0-composition is required.

Fix a unital section \(\iota\) of \(P\). If \(\phi\) is an \(n\)-cell of \(P^\top\), we will write \(\overline{\phi}\) for \(\pi \iota(\phi)\) when no confusion occurs. Note that \(\overline{\phi}\) is an identity if \(n \geq 2\). A 1-cell \(u\) of \(P^\top\) is
**Resolutions by \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraphs**

\(i\)-reduced if \(u = \bar{u}\) holds. A non-\(i\)-reduced 1-cell \(u\) of \(P^T\) is \(i\)-essential if \(u = av\), with \(a\) a 1-generator of \(P\) and \(v\) an \(i\)-reduced 1-cell of \(P^T\).

### 23.1.3 Contractions

Let \(P\) be an \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraph, and \(i\) be a unital section of \(P\). An \(i\)-contraction of \(P\) is a family

\[
\sigma \in \left\{ \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
P_u^T \\
\downarrow \sigma_u
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\right\}_{u \in \overline{P}}
\]

of oplax transformations such that \(\sigma_{\sigma_{\phi}} = 1_{\sigma_{\phi}}\) and \(\sigma_{u_{\phi}} = 1_{u_{\phi}}\) for every cell \(\phi\) in \(P^T\) and 1-cell \(u\) in \(P\), where \(\sigma_{\phi}\) is a short notation for \((i_{\overline{P}})^{\circ}\). An \(i\)-contraction is thus almost an oplax transformation from \(1_{P^T}\) to \(i\), but, like \(i\), it is not defined on 0-cells and no specific compatibility with the 0-composition is required.

Fix an \(i\)-contraction \(\sigma\) of \(P\). By definition of \(\sigma\), for all \(n \geq 1\) and \(n\)-cells \(\phi\) of \(P^T\), and \(1 \leq k < n\),

\[
s_k(\sigma_{\phi}) = \phi \ast_1 \sigma_{u1(\phi)} \ast_2 \cdots \ast_k \sigma_{u_k(\phi)} \quad \text{and} \quad t_k(\sigma_{\phi}) = \begin{cases} 
\sigma_{\phi} & \text{if } k = 1, \\
\sigma_{s_k(\phi)} & \text{otherwise.}
\end{cases}
\]

An \(n\)-cell \(\phi\) of \(P^T\) is \(i\)-reduced if it is an identity or in the image of \(\sigma\).

### 23.1.4 Sided contractions

We say that an \(i\)-contraction \(\sigma\) is right if, for all \(n \geq 1\) and \(n\)-cells \(\phi, \psi\) of \(P^T\) of respective 1-sources \(u\) and \(v\), it satisfies

\[
\sigma_{\phi \psi} = u \sigma_{\psi} \ast_1 \sigma_{\phi \psi}. \quad (23.1)
\]

Symmetrically, an \(i\)-contraction is left if, for all \(n \geq 1\) and \(n\)-cells \(\phi, \psi\) of \(P^T\) of respective 1-sources \(u\) and \(v\), it satisfies

\[
\sigma_{\phi \psi} = \sigma_{\phi v} \ast_1 \sigma_{\phi \psi}. \quad (23.2)
\]

In the sequel, we will consider right \(i\)-contractions, however the definitions and results admit a left version.

If \(\sigma\) is a right \(i\)-contraction of \(P\), and \(n \geq 1\), a non-\(i\)-reduced \(n\)-cell \(\phi\) of \(P^T\) is \(i\)-essential if there exist an \(n\)-cell \(\alpha\) of \(P\) and an \(i\)-reduced 1-cell \(u\) of \(P^T\) such that \(\phi = au\).

### 23.1.5 Lemma ([163, Corollary 3.3.5])

Let \(P\) be an \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraph, and \(i\) be a unital section of \(P\). A right \(i\)-contraction \(\sigma\) of \(P\) is uniquely and entirely determined by its values on the \(i\)-essential 1-cells of \(P^T\) and, for every \(n \geq 1\), on the \(i\)-essential \(n\)-cells of \(P^T\).
23.1 Polygraphic resolutions and contractions

Proof. If \( \sigma \) is a right \( \iota \)-contraction, then its values are prescribed on every cell of \( P^\tau \) that is not \( \iota \)-essential or \( \sigma \)-essential. Now, the values of \( \sigma \) on \( \iota \)-essential and \( \sigma \)-essential cells of \( P^\tau \) can be chosen freely (with correct source and target), provided that these values make \( \sigma \) compatible with all the defining relations of the structure of \( (\omega,1) \)-category, and in particular with exchange relations between the 0-composition and the other compositions. It turns out that (23.1) impose compatibility with these exchange relations. □

23.1.6 Theorem. Let \( P \) be an \( (\omega,1) \)-polygraph, and \( \iota \) be a unital section of \( P \). The canonical projection \( \pi : P^\tau \to \overline{P} \) is a trivial fibration in \( \text{Cat}_{\omega,1} \) if and only if \( P \) admits a right \( \iota \)-contraction.

Proof. Assume that \( \pi : P^\tau \to \overline{P} \) is a trivial fibration. Let us define a right \( \iota \)-contraction \( \sigma \) of \( P \) thanks to Lemma 23.1.5. If \( au \) is a \( \iota \)-essential \( 1 \)-cell of the free \( (\omega,1) \)-category \( P^\tau \), then \( \pi(au) = \pi(\overline{au}) \), so that, by definition of \( \overline{P} \), there exists a 1-cell

\[
\sigma_{au} : au \to \overline{au}
\]

in \( P^\tau \). Assume that \( \sigma \) is defined on the \( n \)-cells of \( P^\tau \), for \( n \geq 1 \), and let \( au \) be a \( \sigma \)-essential \( (n+1) \)-cell of \( P^\tau \). The \( n \)-cells \( s(\sigma_{au}) \) and \( t(\sigma_{au}) \) are parallel, so, by hypothesis, there exists an \( (n+1) \)-cell

\[
\sigma_{au} : s(\sigma_{au}) \to t(\sigma_{au})
\]

in \( P^\tau \).

Conversely, let \( \sigma \) be an \( \iota \)-contraction of \( P \), and \( \phi, \psi \) be parallel \( n \)-cells of \( P^\tau \), for \( n \geq 1 \). We have \( t(\sigma_{\phi}) = \sigma_{s(\phi)} = \sigma_{s(\psi)} = t(\sigma_{\psi}) \) by hypothesis, so that the \( (n+1) \)-cell \( \sigma_{\phi} *_{n} \sigma_{\psi} \) is well defined, with source \( s(\sigma_{\phi}) \) and target \( s(\sigma_{\psi}) \). The fact that \( t_k(\phi) = t_k(\psi) \) holds for every \( 0 \leq k < n \) implies that

\[
(\sigma_{\phi} *_{n} \sigma_{\psi})^{-1} *_{n-1} \sigma_{t_{n-1}(\phi)}^{-1} *_{n-2} \cdots *_{0} \sigma_{t_{0}(\phi)}^{-1}
\]

is a well-defined \( (n+1) \)-cell of \( P^\tau \), with source \( \phi \) and target \( \psi \), thus proving that \( P_{n+1} \) is acyclic. □

This theorem shows that to prove that an \( (\omega,1) \)-polygraph \( P \) is a polygraphic resolution of the category \( \overline{P} \), it suffices to provide it with a right \( \iota \)-contraction. In the next section, we show how to construct such a contraction from a convergent presentation of the category \( \overline{P} \).
23.2 Polygraphic resolutions from convergence

23.2.1 The cells of the Squier polygraphic resolution. Assume that $P$ is a 2-polygraph. Define $\text{Sq}(P)$ as the graded set $(\text{Sq}_n(P))_{n\geq 0}$ where

1. $\text{Sq}_0(P) = P_0$ and $\text{Sq}_1(P) = P_1$,
2. for $n \geq 2$, $\text{Sq}_n(P)$ is the set of tuples $(u_1, \ldots, u_n)$, written $u_1|\cdots|u_n$, of non-identity reduced 1-cells of $P^*$ such that

   - $u_1$ is a 1-generator of $P$,
   - for every $1 \leq i < n$, the 1-cell $u_iu_{i+1}$ is not reduced,
   - for every $1 \leq i < n$, every proper left-factor of $u_iu_{i+1}$ is reduced.

23.2.2 Interpretation in the reduced case. Assume that $P$ is a reduced 2-polygraph. Then $u_1|u_2$ is a 2-generator of $\text{Sq}(P)$ if and only if $u_1$ is a 1-generator of $P$ and $u_1u_2$ is the source of a 2-generator of $P$.

From the classification of critical branchings of a 2-polygraph given in §4.3.9, the critical branchings of the reduced polygraph $P$ are of the form

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  \alpha & | & u_2 \\
  | & / & | \\
  u_1 & \rightarrow & u_3 \\
\end{array}
\]

where $\alpha$ and $\beta$ are 2-generators of $P$, and $u_1u_2$, $u_2$ and $u_3$ are reduced non-identity 1-cells of $P^*$, with $u_1$ a 1-generator of $P$. Putting $u_2 = v_2w_2$ induces a one-to-one correspondence between the 3-cells $u_1|u_2|u_3$ of $\text{Sq}_3(P)$ and the critical branchings of $P$ whose source is $u_1u_2u_3$.

For $n \geq 3$, define the critical $n$-branchings of $P$ as the non-ordered families $(\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_n)$ of rewriting steps of $P$ with the same source, overlapping in a non-trivial and minimal way. Conducting a similar analysis as in §4.3.9 shows that the critical 3-branchings of $P$ fall in one of the two cases

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  \alpha & | & v_2 \\
  | & / & | \\
  u_1 & \rightarrow & u_4 \\
\end{array}
\]
or

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\alpha \downarrow u_1 \Rightarrow \downarrow v_2 \Rightarrow \downarrow v_3 \Rightarrow \downarrow v_4 \Rightarrow u_4 \\
\beta
\end{array}
\]  \hspace{1cm} (23.4)

where \( \alpha, \beta \) and \( \gamma \) are 2-generators of \( P \), and \( u_1, v_2, u_3 \) and \( u_4 \) in (23.3) or \( u_1, v_2, v_3, v_4 \) and \( u_4 \) in (23.4) are reduced non-identity 1-cells of \( P^* \), with \( u_1 \) a 1-generator of \( P \). Putting \( u_2 = v_2w_2x_2 \), in (23.3), or \( u_2 = v_2u_2 \) and \( u_3 = v_3w_3 \), in (23.4), induces a one-to-one correspondence between the 4-cells \( u_1u_2u_3u_4 \) of \( Sq(P) \) and the critical 3-branchings of \( P \). This observation generalizes to establish a bijection between the \((n+1)\)-cells of \( Sq(P) \) and the critical \( n \)-branchings of \( P \).

**23.2.3 Theorem.** Let \( P \) be a convergent 2-polygraph. There exists a unique structure of \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraph on \( Sq(P) \), and unique unital section \( \iota \) and right \( \iota \)-contraction \( \sigma \) of \( Sq(P) \), that satisfy \( \iota_u = \tilde{u} \), for every 1-cell \( u \) of \( P^* \), and

\[
\sigma(u_1|\cdots|u_n)_{u_{n+1}} = \begin{cases} 
\langle u_1 \rangle \cdots \langle u_{n+1} \rangle & \text{if } u_1 \cdots u_{n+1} \in Scr_{n+1}(P), \\
1 & \text{if } u_{n+1} u_{n+1} \text{ is reduced},
\end{cases}
\]

for all \( n \)-cell \( u_1|\cdots|u_n \) of \( Scr_n(P) \) with \( n \geq 1 \), and reduced 1-cell \( u_{n+1} \) of \( P^* \). Moreover, this structure makes \( Sq(P) \) a polygraphic resolution of the category \( \overline{P} \).

The polygraphic resolution \( Sq(P) \) thus constructed is called the **Squier polygraphic resolution** of the category \( \overline{P} \) with respect to the presentation \( P \).

**Proof.** If the condition (23.5) is satisfied, then the source and target maps of \( Sq(P) \) are imposed by the first case, and the definition of an \( \iota \)-contraction. Indeed, writing \( \widetilde{u} = u_1|\cdots|u_{n-1} \), we must have

\[
\sigma(u_1|\cdots|u_n) = \sigma(\widetilde{u}u_n) = \widetilde{u}u_n *_1 \sigma_{n_1}(\tilde{u})u_n *_2 \cdots *_{n-1} \sigma_{n_{n-1}}(\tilde{u})u_n
\]

and

\[
\tau(u_1|\cdots|u_n) = \tau(\sigma_{\tilde{u}u_n}) = \begin{cases} 
\widetilde{u_1u_2} & \text{if } n = 2, \\
\sigma_{\tilde{u}u_n} & \text{otherwise}.
\end{cases}
\]

Then we prove, using the definition of the source and target of an \( \iota \)-contraction, that these source and target maps satisfy the globular relations. Next, according to Lemma 23.1.5, it is necessary and sufficient to define \( \sigma \) on the \( \iota \)-essential and \( \sigma \)-essential cells of \( Sq(P)^T \).

The \( \iota \)-essential 1-cells are the 1-cells \( u_1u_2 \), where \( u_1 \) is a 1-cell of \( P \), \( u_2 \) is
a reduced 1-cell of \( P^* \), and \( u_1u_2 \) is not reduced. If \( u_1|u_2 \) is a 2-cell of \( \text{Sq}(P) \), then (23.5) imposes \( \sigma_{u_1u_2} = u_1|u_2 \). Otherwise, there exists a proper factorization \( u_2 = v_2u_2 \) such that \( u_1|v_2 \) is a 2-cell of \( \text{Sq}(P) \), and (23.5) reads

\[
\sigma_{(u_1|v_2)w_2} = 1_{(u_1|v_2)w_2}. 
\]

This last equality imposes that the source and target of \( \sigma_{(u_1|v_2)w_2} \) must be equal, giving the value of \( \sigma \) on \( u_1u_2 \):

\[
\sigma_{u_1u_2} = t((\sigma_{(u_1|v_2)w_2})) = s((\sigma_{(u_1|v_2)w_2})) = (u_1|v_2)w_2 \star \sigma_{a(u_2)w_2}.
\]

Now, fix \( n \geq 2 \). The \( \sigma \)-essential \( n \)-cells of \( \text{Sq}(P)^- \) are the \( u_{n+1} \)s, where \( u = u_1|\cdots|u_n \) is an \( n \)-cell of \( \text{Sq}(P) \), and \( u_{n+1} \) is a reduced 1-cell of \( P^* \). We distinguish three cases. First, if \( u_{n+1} \) is an \( (n+1) \)-cell of \( \text{Sq}(P) \), then (23.5) imposes \( \sigma_{w_{n+1}} = u_{n+1} \). Second, if \( u_nu_{n+1} \) is reduced, then (23.5) gives \( \sigma_{w_{n+1}} = 1_{w_{n+1}} \). Otherwise, there exists a proper factorization \( u_{n+1} = v_{n+1}u_{n+1} \) such that \( u_{n+1} \) is an \( (n+1) \)-cell of \( \text{Sq}(P) \). In that case, (23.5) implies that the source and the target of \( \sigma_{(u_{n+1})w_{n+1}} \) are equal. On the one hand, we have

\[
s(\sigma_{(u_{n+1})w_{n+1}}) = (u_{n+1}w_{n+1} \star 1_{(u_{n+1})w_{n+1}} \star 2 \cdots n \star \sigma_{t_n(u_{n+1})w_{n+1}}),
\]

and, on the other hand, we obtain

\[
t((\sigma_{(u_{n+1})w_{n+1}})) = \sigma_{s(\sigma_{(u_{n+1})w_{n+1}})} = \sigma_{s(\sigma_{w_{n+1}})}
\]

\[
= \sigma_{w_{n+1}} \star 1_{(u_{n+1})w_{n+1}} \star 2 \cdots n \star \sigma_{t_n(u_{n+1})w_{n+1}}.
\]

Using the compatibility of \( \sigma \) with the compositions \( \star_i \) for \( 1 \leq i \leq n \), we develop the latter expression, by induction on \( n \), to obtain a composite \((n+1)\)-cell containing \( \sigma_{w_{n+1}} \), \( \sigma_{t_n(w_{n+1})} \), \( u_{n+1} \), and lower dimensional invertible cells. Thus, we obtain a relation between two composite \((n+1)\)-cells that defines \( \sigma_{w_{n+1}} \) in terms of the other involved cells.

Finally, we apply Theorem 23.1.6 to conclude that \( \text{Sq}(P) \) is a polygraphic resolution of the category \( C \).

**23.2.4 Interpretation in the reduced case.** Assume that \( P \) is a reduced convergent 2-polygraph, and let us examine the first dimensions of \( \text{Sq}(P) \).

The 2-cells \( a|u \) of \( \text{Sq}_2(P) \), for \( a \) a 1-generator of \( P \) and \( u \) a reduced 1-cell of \( P^* \) such that \( au \) is not reduced, have the shape

\[
a|u : au \Rightarrow \tilde{a}u.
\]

The \( \iota \)-contraction \( \sigma \) is given, on a 1-cell \( au \) of \( P^* \) with \( a \in P_1 \) and \( u \) reduced, by

\[
\sigma_{au} = \begin{cases} 
a|u & \text{if } a|u \in \text{Sq}_2(P), \\
1_{au} & \text{if } au \text{ is reduced,} \\
(a|v)w \star 1_{\tilde{a}uw} & \text{if } u = vw \text{ with } a|v \in \text{Sq}_2(P).
\end{cases}
\]
23.3 Abelianization of polygraphic resolutions

On more general 1-cells, \( \sigma \) is defined by the fact that it is a right \( \iota \)-contraction, and the relation

\[
\sigma_{uv} = u \sigma_v \star_1 \sigma_{u0}.
\]

By construction, the 3-cells of \( \text{Sq}_3(P) \) have the shape

\[
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (a) {a};
  \node (b) [right of=a] {b};
  \node (c) [below of=a] {c};
  \node (d) [below of=b] {d};
  \draw (a) -- (b) node [midway, above] {\sigma_{a0}};
  \draw (a) -- (c) node [midway, left] {\sigma_{a0}};
  \draw (b) -- (d) node [midway, below] {\sigma_{c0}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\]

The \( \iota \)-contraction \( \sigma \) is defined on the 2-cells \( (a|u)v \) by (23.5). The simple cases are \( \sigma_{(a|u)v} = a|u|v \), if the latter belongs to \( \text{Sq}_3(P) \), and \( \sigma_{(a|u)v} = 1_{(a|u)v} \) if \( uv \) is reduced. The more complicated case is the definition of \( \sigma_{(a|u)v} \) when \( a|u|v \) belongs to \( \text{Sq}_3(P) \). In this situation, the relation \( \sigma_{(a|u)v} = 1_{(a|u)v} \) implies \( s(\sigma_{(a|u)v}) = t(\sigma_{(a|u)v}) \), which develops into

\[
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (a) {a};
  \node (b) [right of=a] {b};
  \node (c) [below of=a] {c};
  \node (d) [below of=b] {d};
  \draw (a) -- (b) node [midway, above] {\sigma_{a0}};
  \draw (a) -- (c) node [midway, left] {\sigma_{a0}};
  \draw (b) -- (d) node [midway, below] {\sigma_{c0}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\]

Finally, the 4-cells of \( \text{Sq}_4(P) \) have the same shape as this last defining equation, but in the case where \( uv \) is not reduced and with all proper left-factors reduced:

\[
\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (a) {a};
  \node (b) [right of=a] {b};
  \node (c) [below of=a] {c};
  \node (d) [below of=b] {d};
  \draw (a) -- (b) node [midway, above] {\sigma_{a0}};
  \draw (a) -- (c) node [midway, left] {\sigma_{a0}};
  \draw (b) -- (d) node [midway, below] {\sigma_{c0}};
\end{tikzpicture}
\]

23.3 Abelianization of polygraphic resolutions

In Section 22.3, we saw that the polygraphic homology of a monoid, seen as an \( \omega \)-category, coincides with its integral homology. In the same spirit, in this section we show how to deduce the homology of a small category with coefficients in natural systems from one of its resolutions in \( \text{Cat}_{\omega,1} \). In particular, we show
how to associate a resolution of natural systems to a polygraphic resolution of a category in $\text{Cat}_{\omega,1}$, and we illustrate this construction with examples of polygraphic resolutions calculated from convergent polygraphs.

### 23.3.1 Free natural systems

A natural system on a category $C$ is a functor from the category $FC$ of factorization of $C$ and with values in the category $\text{Ab}$, see §F.2.2 for details. For a family $X$ of 1-cells of $C$, we denote by $F_{C}[X]$ the free natural system on $C$ generated by $X$ and given by

$$F_{C}[X] = \bigoplus_{x \in X} FC(x, -).$$

Fix an $(\omega, 1)$-polygraph $P$ presenting $C$. We consider the free natural system $F_{C}[P_{0}]$ generated by the identity 1-cells $1_{x}$, for $x \in P_{0}$. If $u$ is a 1-cell of $C$, then $F_{C}[P_{0}]u$ is the free abelian group generated by the pairs $(v, w)$ of 1-cells of $C$ such that $t(v) = s(w) = x$ and $vw = u$.

We also consider, for every natural number $n \geqslant 1$, the free natural system $F_{C}[P_{n}]$ generated by one copy of the 1-cell $\overline{x}$ of $C$ for each $n$-generator $x$ of $P$.

If $u$ is a 1-cell of $C$, then $F_{C}[P_{n}]u$ is the free abelian group generated by the triples $(v, \alpha, w)$, denoted by $v[\alpha]w$, made of an $n$-generator $\alpha$ of $P$, and 1-cells $v$ and $w$ of $C$, such that the composite $v\alpha w$ is well defined in $C$ and equal to $u$.

The mapping of every 1-generator $x$ of $P$ to the element $[x]$ of $F_{C}[P_{1}]\pi$ is extended into a derivation of $P_{1}^{*}$ into $F_{C}[P_{1}]$ by putting

$$[1_{u}] = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad [uv] = [u][v] + [\overline{u}][v],$$

for all composable 1-cells $u$ and $v$ in $C$. Here, the natural system $F_{C}[P_{1}]$ on $C$ is seen as a natural system on $P_{1}^{*}$ by composition with the canonical projection $p : P_{1}^{*} \to \overline{P}$.

For $n > 1$, the mapping of every $n$-generator $\alpha$ of $P$ to the element $[\alpha]$ of $F_{C}[P_{n}]\pi$ is extended to associate to every $n$-cell $\phi$ of $P_{n}^{*}$ the element $[\phi]$ of $F_{C}[P_{n}]\pi$, defined by induction on the size of $\phi$ as follows:

$$[1_{\phi}] = 0, \quad [\phi^{-}] = -[\phi], \quad [\phi^{*k}\psi] = \begin{cases} [\phi][\overline{\psi}] + [\phi][\psi] & \text{if } k = 0, \\ [\phi] + [\psi] & \text{otherwise}. \end{cases}$$

### 23.3.2 Abelianization of polygraphic resolutions

Let $P$ be an $(\omega, 1)$-polygraph. We denote by $F_{\overline{P}}[P]$ the complex

$$\cdots \longrightarrow F_{\overline{P}}[P_{n}] \xrightarrow{d_{n}} F_{\overline{P}}[P_{n-1}] \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow F_{\overline{P}}[P_{0}] \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0$$

of natural systems on $\overline{P}$, whose boundary maps are defined as follows. The augmentation morphism $\varepsilon$ is defined, on every pair $(u, v)$ of composable 1-cells
Abelianization of polygraphic resolutions

For $n \geq 1$, the morphism $d_n$ of natural systems on $P$ is given, on the generator $[a]$ corresponding to an $n$-cell $\alpha$ of $P$, by

$$d_n[\alpha] = \begin{cases} (1, \alpha) - (\alpha, 1) & \text{if } n = 1, \\ [t(\alpha)] - [s(\alpha)] & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

By induction on the size of cells of $P^\top$, we prove, for every $n$-cell $\phi$ in $P^\top$, with $n \geq 1$, that

$$d_n[\phi] = \begin{cases} (1, \phi) - (\phi, 1) & \text{if } n = 1, \\ [t(\phi)] - [s(\phi)] & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

As a consequence, we have $\varepsilon d_1 = 0$ and $d_n d_{n+1} = 0$, for every $n \geq 1$, proving that $F_{P^\top}[P]$ is indeed a chain complex.

23.3.3 Theorem. If $P$ is a polygraphic resolution of a category $C$, then $F_C[P]$ is a resolution by free natural systems on $C$ of the constant natural system $\mathbb{Z}$.

Proof. Let $\iota$ be a unital section of $P$. By Theorem 23.1.6, $P$ admits a right $\iota$-contraction $\sigma$. Let us consider the following families of morphisms of $\mathbb{Z}$-modules, indexed by a 1-cell $w$ of $C$:

$$i_{-1} : \mathbb{Z} \to F_C[P_0]_w \quad i_n : F_C[P_n]_u \to F_C[P_{n+1}]_w$$

defined by

- $i_{-1}(1) = (w, 1),$
- $i_0(u, v) = u[\tilde{v}],$ for all 1-cells $u, v$ of $C$ such that $w = uv,$
- $i_n(a[\alpha]v) = u[\sigma_{\phi\alpha}],$ for all $n \geq 1$, $n$-generator $\alpha$ in $P$, and 1-cells $u, v$ of $C$ such that $w = u\alpha v.$

By induction on the size of the $n$-cells of the free $(\omega, 1)$-category $P^\top$, using the properties of a right $\iota$-contraction, we prove that

$$i_n(a[\phi]v) = u[\sigma_{\phi\alpha}]$$

holds for all $n \geq 1$, $n$-cell $\phi$ of $P^\top$, and 1-cells $u, v$ of $C$ such that the composite $u\phi v$ is well defined. We deduce that $(\sigma_n)_{n \geq 1}$ is a contracting homotopy for the complex $F_C[P].$ \qed
23.3.4 Homological syzygies. For \( n \geq 1 \), the kernel of the differential \( d_n \) defined in §23.3.2 is the natural system on \( \overline{P} \) defined pointwise by
\[
(h_n)_w = \ker \left( F_{\overline{P}}[P_n]|_w \xrightarrow{d_n} F_{\overline{P}}[P_{n-1}]|_w \right),
\]
for every 1-cell \( w \) in \( \overline{P} \). It is denoted by \( h_n(P) \), and its elements are called the homological \( n \)-syzygies of \( P \). As a consequence of Theorems 23.2.3 and 23.3.3, we obtain the following result.

23.3.5 Theorem. Let \( C \) be a category, and \( P \) a convergent presentation of \( C \). Then, for every \( n \geq 2 \), the natural system \( h_n(P) \) is generated by the elements
\[
d_n[u_1|\cdots|u_n] = [u_1|\cdots|u_{n-1}]\overline{b}_n + [\sigma_{\xi(u_1|\cdots|u_{n-1})}u_n] - [\sigma_{\xi'(u_1|\cdots|u_{n-1})}u_n]
\]
where \( u_1|\cdots|u_n \) ranges over the \( n \)-cells of \( \text{Sq}(P) \), and \( \sigma \) is the right \( \xi \)-contraction associated to \( \text{Sq}(P) \).

We now state a consequence of Theorems 23.2.3 and 23.3.3 for reduced presentations without critical 3-branchings. In §23.2.2 and §23.2.4 we give an interpretation of the \( n \)-generators of the resolution \( \text{Sq}(P) \) when \( P \) is a reduced convergent 2-polygraph. In particular, there is a one-to-one correspondence between the 2-generators of the resolution \( \text{Sq}(P) \) and the critical branchings on the one hand, and between the 3-generators and the critical 3-branchings on the other. Moreover, when \( P \) admits no critical 3-branchings, it also has no critical \( n \)-branchings for \( n \geq 3 \), and so \( h_n(P) \) is empty for \( n \geq 3 \). The result is thus as follows.

23.3.6 Corollary. Let \( C \) be a category, and \( P \) a reduced convergent presentation of \( C \) without critical 3-branchings. Then the sequence
\[
0 \longrightarrow F_C[\text{Sq}_2(P)] \xrightarrow{d_3} F_C[P_2] \xrightarrow{d_2} F_C[P_1] \xrightarrow{d_1} F_C[P_0] \xrightarrow{\epsilon} \mathbb{Z} \longrightarrow 0
\]
is a partial resolution of length 4 of the trivial natural system \( \mathbb{Z} \).

This result was proved by Squier for presentation of monoids by string rewriting systems using a direct method based on the characterization of critical 3-branchings [326, Theorem 3.2]. It is useful for proving examples of categories or monoids of finite type that do not admit a finite convergent presentation, as we did in Chapter 9.

23.3.7 Convergence and homology of categories. The construction given in this section allows us to calculate the homology of a category \( C \) from a presentation of this category by a convergent 2-polygraph \( P \). Indeed, by Theorem 23.2.3, \( \text{Sq}(P) \) is a polygraphic resolution of the category \( C \), and by
23.3 Abelianization of polygraphic resolutions

Theorem 23.3.3, $F_C[Sq(P)]$ is a resolution by free natural systems on $C$ of the constant natural system $\mathbb{Z}$. The homology of $C$ with coefficient in a contravariant natural system $D$ on $C$, as defined in §F.2.3, is thus given by

$$H_*(C, D) = \text{Tor}^{FC}(D, \mathbb{Z}) = H_*(D \otimes_{FC} Sq(P)).$$

23.3.8 Example: the reduced standard polygraphic resolution. Let $C$ be a category. To simplify the example, assume that, if a composite morphism $fg$ of $C$ is an identity, then so are $f$ and $g$. The reduced standard presentation of $C$ is the 2-polygraph $\overline{\text{Std}}_2(C)$ whose 0-generators are objects of $C$, with one 1-generator $\hat{f}$ for each non-identity morphism $f$ of $C$, and one 2-generator

$$f|g : \hat{f} \hat{g} \Rightarrow \hat{f} \hat{g}$$

for each pair $(f, g)$ of composable non-identity morphisms in $C$. Without the simplifying hypothesis on $C$, the target of $f|g$ is replaced by $1_x$ if $fg = 1_x$ in $C$.

The 2-polygraph $\overline{\text{Std}}_2(C)$ is reduced and convergent, and applying Theorem 23.2.3 extends it into a polygraphic resolution of $C$, denoted by $\text{Std}(C)$ and called the reduced standard polygraphic resolution of $C$. For $n \geq 2$, the $n$-generators of $\text{Std}(C)$ are the $f_1 \cdot \cdots \cdot f_n$, such that each $f_i$ is a non-identity morphism of $C$ and each $(f_i, f_{i+1})$ is composable.

The source and target of the 3-generators of $\text{Std}(C)$ are given by

$$\hat{f} \hat{g} \hat{h}$$

and a 4-generator $a|b|c|d$ has source

$$\hat{f} \hat{g} \hat{k}$$
and target

\[ \text{(with the arrows of 3-cells removed for clarity).} \]

For \( n \)-cells, \( n \geq 2 \), we prove, by induction on \( n \), that the source and target of \( n \)-generators are composites of the \( (n - 1) \)-cells

\[ d_i(f_1|\cdots|f_n) = \begin{cases} f_1(f_2|\cdots|f_n) & \text{if } i = 0, \\ f_1|\cdots|f_if_{i+1}|\cdots|f_n & \text{if } 1 \leq i \leq n-1, \\ (f_1|\cdots|f_{n-1})f_n & \text{if } i = n, \end{cases} \]

with \( k \)-cells, for \( 1 < k < n - 1 \). More precisely, the source of \( f_1|\cdots|f_n \) contains one copy of each \( d_i(f_1|\cdots|f_n) \) for \( n - i \) even, and its target, one copy of each \( d_i(f_1|\cdots|f_n) \) for \( n - i \) odd.

Theorem 23.3.3 applied to \( \overline{\text{Std}}(C) \) gives a free resolution

\[ \cdots \rightarrow F_C[\overline{\text{Std}}_n(C)] \xrightarrow{d_n} F_C[\overline{\text{Std}}_{n-1}(C)] \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow F_C[C_0] \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \mathbb{Z} \rightarrow 0 \]

with differential defined by

\[ d_n[f_1|\cdots|f_n] = (-1)^n f_1[f_2|\cdots|f_n] + \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} (-1)^{n-i} d_i(f_1|\cdots|f_n) + [f_1|\cdots|f_{n-1}]f_n. \]

23.3.9 The associative polygraphic resolution. Let \( A \) be the monoid with one non-trivial idempotent element, that is presented by the following 2-polygraph:

\[ A_{2} = \langle a_0 \mid a_1 \mid a_2 : a_1a_1 \Rightarrow a_1 \rangle. \]

This polygraph is reduced and convergent, see Example 4.3.12, with one critical \( n \)-branching for every \( n \geq 2 \). Thus, the reduced standard polygraphic resolution \( A_{2\omega} = \text{Sq}(A_2) \) of \( A \), given by Theorem 23.2.3, has one \( n \)-generator \( a_n \) for every \( n \geq 0 \), corresponding to the product \( a_1|\cdots|a_1 \) of \( n \) copies of \( a_1 \). The 3-generator \( a_3 \) of \( A_{2\omega} \) is given in classical notation and in string diagrams
respectively as follows:

\[ a_2a_1 *_1 a_2 \xrightarrow{a_1} a_1a_2 *_1 a_2 \]

The 4-generator \( a_4 \) of \( \text{As}_\omega \) is

which, contracting by one dimension, can also be pictured as Mac Lane’s pentagon, or Stasheff’s polytope \( K_4 \):
Finally, the 5-generator $a_5$ of $A_{s\omega}$ has the shape of Stasheff’s polytope $K_5$, its source being

and its target being given by a symmetric composite 4-cell, see [163, Section 6.1]. Theorem 23.3.3, applied to $A_{s\omega}$, yields a resolution

\[ \cdots \to F_A[\begin{array}{c} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{array}] \xrightarrow{d_4} F_A[\begin{array}{c} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{array}] \xrightarrow{d_3} F_A[\begin{array}{c} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{array}] \xrightarrow{d_2} F_A[\begin{array}{c} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{array}] \xrightarrow{d_1} F_A[\ast] \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \mathbb{Z} \to 0 \]

of $\mathbb{Z}$ by free natural systems on $A$. Computing this differential on each $n$-cell of $A_{s\omega}$ gives generators of the natural systems of homological $n$-syzygies of $A_{s\omega}$. For example, $h_2(As)$ is generated by

\[ d_3[\begin{array}{c} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{array}] = \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} = [\vdash \vdash]a - a[\vdash \vdash] \]

while $h_3(As)$ is generated by

\[ d_4[\begin{array}{c} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{array}] = \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} = a[\begin{array}{c} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{array}] - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix}a. \]

Similarly, $h_4(As)$ is generated by $d_5[a_5]$, which is equal, by definition, to

\[ \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} \vdash \vdash \\ \vdash \vdash \end{bmatrix} \]
and reduces to

\[ ds_5[a_3] = [ \xrightarrow{a} ] a - a [ \xrightarrow{a} ] . \]

**23.3.10 The category of monotone surjections.** We denote by \( \Delta_\mu \) the subcategory of the simplicial category whose objects are the natural numbers and whose morphisms from \( m \) to \( n \) are the monotone surjections from \( \{0, \ldots, m\} \) to \( \{0, \ldots, n\} \). This category, studied in [251], see also [261, Section 7.5, Exercise 3.(a)], admits a presentation by the 2-polygraph \( P \) with the natural numbers as 0-cells, with one 1-cell \( x^n_i : n + 1 \to n \) for all natural numbers \( 0 \leq i \leq n \), and one 2-cell

\[
\begin{align*}
&\xymatrix{ n + 2 & n + 1 & n \\
n + 2 & n + 1 & n \\
x^n_{i+1} & x^n_{i} & x^n_{i} }
\end{align*}
\]

for all natural numbers \( 0 \leq i \leq j \leq n + 1 \). The 1-cell \( x^n_i \) represents the map

\[ x^n_i(j) = \begin{cases} 
  j & \text{if } j \leq i, \\
  j - 1 & \text{if } j > i.
\end{cases} \]

This is a variant of the presentation constructed in \( \S4.5.6 \). Thereafter, we drop the exponents of the 1-cells and 2-cells of \( P \), simply writing \( x_i \) and \( x_i,j \).

The 2-polygraph \( P \) is convergent. Indeed, for termination, given a 1-cell \( u = x_{i_1} \ldots x_{i_k} \) of \( P^* \), we define the natural number \( \nu(u) \) as the number of pairs \((i_p, i_q)\) such that \( i_p \leq i_q \), with \( 1 \leq p < q \leq k \). In particular, we have \( \nu(x_i x_j) = 1 \) and \( \nu(x_{j+1} x_j) = 0 \) when \( i \leq j \), giving \( \nu(s(x_{i,j})) > \nu(t(x_{i,j})) \). Moreover, we have \( \nu(u w w') > \nu(v w w') \) when \( \nu(u) > \nu(v) \) holds. Thus, for every non-identity 2-cell \( a : u \Rightarrow v \) of \( P^* \), the strict inequality \( \nu(u) > \nu(v) \) is satisfied, giving termination. Moreover, the 2-polygraph \( P \) has one critical branching \((x_{i,j} x_k, x_{i,j,k})\) for all possible \( 0 \leq i \leq j \leq k \leq n + 2 \), which is confluent.

Theorem 23.2.3, applied to \( P \), gives a polygraphic resolution \( \text{Sq}(P) \) of \( \Delta_\mu \), whose 3-cells are given, in classical notation and in string diagrams (with \( x_i = i \))
and $x_{i,j} = \langle x_{i,j} \rangle$ respectively, by

The $(\omega, 1)$-polygraph $\text{Sq}(P)$ has one 4-cell $x_{i,j,k,l}$ for every possible indices $0 \leq i \leq j \leq k \leq l \leq n+3$, given in string diagrams and omitting the subscripts, by the following diagrams:

Then, Theorem 23.3.3 gives, in particular, generators for the natural systems of
23.4 Categories of finite homological type

In Chapter 8, we introduced the notion of a finite derivation type for categories. In this section, we show how to refine this notion in higher dimensions and how to relate it with finite homological type.

23.4.1 Higher-dimensional finite derivation type. Let \( C \) be a category and \( n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\} \). We say that \( C \) has finite \( n \)-derivation type, FDT\(_n\) for short, if it admits a polygraphic resolution \( P \) in \( \text{Cat}_{\omega,1} \) such that \( P_k \) is finite for every \( k \leq n \). In particular, \( C \) has FDT\(_1\) if it is finitely generated, FDT\(_2\) if it is finitely presented, and FDT\(_3\) if it has finite derivation type as defined in Section 8.1. By definition, FDT\(_\infty\) implies FDT\(_n\), and FDT\(_{n+1}\) implies FDT\(_n\), for every \( n \geq 0 \).

As an immediate consequence of Theorem 23.2.3, we deduce the following condition for finite convergence.

23.4.2 Theorem. A category with a finite convergent presentation has FDT\(_\infty\).

23.4.3 Categories of finite homological type. A category \( C \) is of homological type FP\(_n\) if the constant natural system Z on \( C \) is of homological type FP\(_n\), see §F.3 for a summary on the notion of finite homological type for categories.

As a consequence of Theorems 23.2.3 and 23.3.3, we obtain the following implications.

23.4.4 Theorem. Let \( C \) be a category, and \( n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\} \). If \( C \) has FDT\(_n\), then it is of homological type FP\(_n\). In particular, if \( C \) has a finite convergent presentation, then it is of homological type FP\(_\infty\).

This result generalizes [99, Theorem 3.2] and [233, Theorem 3] stating that, if a monoid has FDT, then it is FP\(_3\) (see also [306]). It also generalizes Squier’s homological theorem [326, Theorem 4.1], that says that a monoid admitting a
Resolutions by \((\omega, 1)\)-polygraphs

finite convergent presentation is \(FP_3\), and the extensions of Squier’s result in [219, 60, 154] that prove that such a monoid is \(FP_\infty\).

23.4.5 Example. The 2-polygraph \(A_n\) defined in §23.3.9 extends to a polygraphic resolution \(A_n\) having one \(n\)-generator for every \(n \geq 0\). Hence the polygraph \(A_n\) and the presented monoid have \(FDT_\infty\).

23.5 Homological syzygies and identities among relations

In this section we establish an isomorphism between the natural systems of homological 2-syzygies and identities among relations for a category presented by a 2-polygraph. This is an extension to category presentations of a Brown-Huebschmann theorem in group theory that states an isomorphism between the modules of identities among relations and homological 2-syzygies for group presentations [64].

In this section, \(P\) denotes a 2-polygraph. We aim to build an isomorphism between the natural system \(\Pi(P)\) of identities among relations of \(P\) defined in §8.3.2 and the natural system \(h_2(P)\) of its homological 2-syzygies defined in §23.3.4.

23.5.1 Lemma. Let \(P\) be a 2-polygraph. For every 2-loop \(\psi\) of \(P^T\), we have \([\psi] = 0\) in \(F_\pi(P_2)\) if and only if \([\psi] = 0\) holds in \(\Pi(P)\).

Proof. To prove that \([\psi] = 0\) implies \([\psi] = 0\), we check that the relations (8.2) and (8.3) defining \(\Pi(P)\) are also satisfied in \(F_\pi(P_2)\). The first relation is given by the definition of the map \([-\cdot]\). The second relation is checked as follows:

\[
[\psi *_1 \phi] = [\psi] + [\phi] = [\phi] + [\psi] = [\phi *_1 \psi].
\]

Conversely, let us consider a 2-loop \(\psi\) in \(P^T\) with source \(w\) such that \([\psi] = 0\). We decompose \(\psi\) into

\[
\psi = u_1 \alpha_1 v_1 *_1 ... *_1 u_p \alpha_p v_p,
\]

where \(\alpha_i\) is a 2-generator, \(u_i, v_i\) are 1-cells of \(P^T\), and \(\epsilon_i \in \{-, +\}\). Then we get

\[
0 = [\psi] = \epsilon_1 \overline{u}_1 [\alpha_1] \overline{v}_1 + ... + \epsilon_p \overline{u}_p [\alpha_p] \overline{v}_p.
\]

Since the natural system \(F_\pi(P_2)\) is freely generated by the elements \([\alpha]\) of \(F_\pi(P_2)\), for \(\alpha\) a 2-generator, this implies the existence of a self-inverse permutation \(\tau\) of \(\{1, \ldots, p\}\) such that the following relations are satisfied:

\[
\alpha_i = \alpha_{\tau(i)}, \quad \overline{u}_i = \overline{u}_{\tau(i)}, \quad \overline{v}_i = \overline{v}_{\tau(i)}, \quad \epsilon_i = -\epsilon_{\tau(i)}.
\]
Let us denote, for every \( 1 \leq i \leq p \), the source and target of \( \alpha^i \) by \( w_i \) and \( w'_i \) respectively. They satisfy \( \overline{w}_i = \overline{w}'_i \). We also fix a section \( \overline{w} \) and a left strategy \( \sigma \) for the 2-polygon \( P \), so that \( \overline{\alpha} = \overline{v} \) for all 1-cells \( u \) and \( v \) such that \( \overline{u} = \overline{v} \).

For every \( 1 \leq i \leq p \), we denote by \( \psi_i \) the following 2-cell of \( P^\top \):

\[
\psi_i = \sigma\overline{u}_iw_i v_i * 1 \ u_i \alpha^i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i .
\]

Using the facts that \( w = u_1w_1v_1 = u_pw'_p v_p \) and that \( u_iw'_iv_i = u_{i+1}w'_{i+1}v_{i+1} \) for every \( 1 \leq i < p \), we can write the 2-loop \( \psi \) as the following composite:

\[
\psi = \sigma\overline{w}_1 * 1 \ psi_1 \ldots * 1 \ psi_p * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w} .
\]

As a consequence, we get

\[
|\psi| = |\sigma\overline{w}_1 * 1 \ psi * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}| = |\psi_1| + \ldots + |\psi_p| .
\]

In order to conclude, we prove that the equality \(|\psi_{\sim(i)}| = -|\psi_i| \) holds, for every \( 1 \leq i \leq p \). Since \( \sigma \) is a left strategy, we have

\[
\sigma\overline{u}_iw_i v_i = \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i .
\]

and, using the fact that \( \overline{u}_i\overline{w}_i = \overline{w}_i \overline{w}_i \), we have

\[
\sigma\overline{u}_iw_i v_i = \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}_i w'_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i .
\]

This gives

\[
|\psi_i| = \left| \sigma\overline{w}_i \overline{w}_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i \right|
\]

\[
= \left| \sigma\overline{w}_i \overline{w}_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i \right|
\]

\[
= \left| \sigma\overline{w}_i \overline{w}_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}_i v_i \right| .
\]

Now, let us compute \(|\psi_{\sim(i)}| \). We already know that \( \alpha_{\sim(i)} = \alpha_i \) and \( \epsilon_{\sim(i)} = -\epsilon_i \).

As a consequence, we get \( w_{\sim(i)} = w'_i \) and \( w'_{\sim(i)} = w_i \). Moreover, we have \( \overline{u}_{\sim(i)} = \overline{u}_i \), so that we have:

\[
|\psi_{\sim(i)}| = \left| \sigma\overline{w}_i \overline{w}_i v_{\sim(i)} * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_{\sim(i)} * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}_i v_{\sim(i)} * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_{\sim(i)} \right|
\]

\[
= \left| \sigma\overline{w}_i \overline{w}_i * 1 \ \sigma\overline{w}_i v_{\sim(i)} * 1 \ \sigma\overline{u}_iw'_i v_{\sim(i)} \right| .
\]

This implies \(|\psi| = 0\), thus concluding the proof.

\[\square\]

23.5.2 Lemma. For every element \( a \) in \( h_2(P) \), there exists a 2-loop \( \psi \) in \( P^\top \) such that \( a = |\psi| \) holds.
Proof. Let \( w \) be the 1-cell of \( P \) such that \( a \) belongs to \( F_P[P_3]_w \) and let \( P_3 \) be an acyclic extension of the (2, 1)-category \( P^T \). Since \( d_2(a) = 0 \), by acyclicity of \( P_3 \) and Theorem 23.3.3, there exists \( b \) in \( F_P[P_3]_w \) such that \( a = d_3(b) \). By definition of \( F_P[P_3]_w \), we can write

\[
    b = \epsilon_1 u_1 [\alpha_1] v_1 + \ldots + \epsilon_p u_p [\alpha_p] v_p,
\]

with, for every \( 1 \leq i \leq p \), \( \alpha_i \in P_3 \), \( u_i, v_i \in P \) and \( \epsilon_i \in \{-, +\} \) such that \( u_i a_i v_i = w \) holds. We fix a section \( \bar{a} \) of \( P \) and we choose 2-cells

\[
    \phi_i : \bar{v} \Rightarrow \bar{u}_i t_1 (a^*_i) \bar{v}_i \quad \text{and} \quad \psi_i : \bar{u}_i t_1 (a^*_i) \bar{v}_i \Rightarrow \bar{w}.
\]

Let \( A \) be 3-cell of \( P_3^T \) defined by

\[
    A = \phi_1 * \bar{u}_1 a^*_1 \bar{v}_1 * \psi_1 \ldots * \phi_k * \bar{u}_k a^*_k \bar{v}_k * \psi_k.
\]

By definition of \( [\cdot] \) on 3-cells, we have

\[
    [A] = \sum_{i=1}^p \phi_i * \bar{u}_i a^*_i \bar{v}_i * \psi_i = \sum_{i=1}^p ([1_\phi_i] + \epsilon_i u_i [\alpha_i] v_i + [1_\psi_i]) = b.
\]

Finally, we get

\[
    a = d_3[A] = [s(A)] - [t(A)] = [s(A) * t(A)^{-}].
\]

Hence \( \psi = s(A) * t(A)^{-} \) is a 2-loop of \( P^T \) that satisfies \( a = [\psi] \). \( \square \)

When \( P \) is a convergent 2-polygraph, we have seen that the natural systems \( h_2(P) \) and \( \Pi(P) \) on \( P \) are generated by a family of generating confluenes of \( P \). The following result from [163, Theorem 5.6.5] states that, more generally, the natural systems \( h_2(P) \) and \( \Pi(P) \) are isomorphic, as proved by Brown-Huebschmann for presentations of groups in [64].

**23.5.3 Theorem.** Let \( P \) be a 2-polygraph. The natural systems \( \Pi(P) \) and \( h_2(P) \) are isomorphic.

**Proof.** We define a morphism of natural systems \( \Phi : \Pi(P) \to h_2(P) \) by setting \( \Phi[\phi] = [\bar{a} \phi \bar{v}] \) for every identity \( \phi \) of \( P \). This definition is correct, since the defining relations of \( \Pi(P) \) also hold in \( F_P[P_2] \), and thus in \( h_2(P) \). Moreover, \( \Phi \) is a morphism of natural systems, since we have

\[
    \Phi(a \Phi[\phi] \bar{v}) = \Phi([\bar{a} \phi \bar{v}]) = [\bar{a} \phi \bar{v}] = a \Phi[\phi] \bar{v} = a \Phi([\phi]) \bar{v},
\]

for every 2-loop \( \phi \) in \( P^T \) and 1-cells \( u, v \) in \( P \) such that \( \bar{a} \phi \bar{v} \) is defined.

Now, let us define a morphism of natural systems \( \Psi : h_2(P) \to \Pi(P) \). Let \( a \) be an element of \( h_2(P)_w \). By Lemma 23.5.2, there exists a 2-loop \( \psi : u \Rightarrow u \) in \( P^T \) such that \( a = [\psi] \) and \( w = \bar{u} \). We define \( \Psi(a) = [\psi] \). This definition does
not depend on the choice of $\phi$. Indeed, let us assume that $\phi : v \Rightarrow v$ is a 2-loop such that $a = [\phi]$. It follows that $\overline{v} = \overline{\alpha}$, and we can choose a 2-cell $\xi : u \Rightarrow v$ in $P^\top$. Then we have
\[
a = [\psi] = [\phi] = [\xi \ast_1 \phi \ast_1 \xi^{-}].
\]
As a consequence, we get
\[
[\psi \ast_1 \xi^{-} \ast_1 \phi^{-} \ast_1 \xi] = [\psi] - [\xi \ast_1 \phi \ast_1 \xi^{-}].
\]
Thus
\[
0 = [\psi \ast_1 \xi^{-} \ast_1 \phi^{-} \ast_1 \xi] = [\psi] - [\xi \ast_1 \phi \ast_1 \xi^{-}] = [\psi] - [\phi] .
\]
Finally, the relations $\Psi \Phi = 1_{\Pi(P)}$ and $\Phi \Psi = 1_{h_2(P)}$ are direct consequences of the definitions of $\Phi$ and $\Psi$.

The following result relates the low-dimensional finiteness properties seen in this chapter and in §8.3.5 for the property $FDT_{ab}$.

23.5.4 Theorem. Let $P$ be a finite 2-polygraph. The following conditions are equivalent.

1. The category $\overline{P}$ is of homological type $FP_3$.
2. The natural system $h_2(P)$ on $\overline{P}$ is finitely generated.
3. The natural system $\Pi(P)$ on $\overline{P}$ is finitely generated.
4. The category $\overline{P}$ has $FDT_{ab}$.

Proof. The equivalence between 1 and 2 comes from the definition of the property $FP_3$. The equivalence between 2 and 3 is a consequence of Theorem 23.5.3. The equivalence between 3 and 4 is given by Proposition 8.3.7.

Note that, following Theorem 23.4.4, the property $FDT_3$ implies $FP_3$. We expect the reverse implication to be false in general, which amounts to proving that $FDT_{ab}$ does not imply $FDT_3$, since $FP_3$ is equivalent to $FDT_{ab}$ for finitely presented categories. This question is still open.

23.5.5 Identities among relations for higher polygraphs. We conclude this chapter by mentioning some results on identities among relations for $n$-polygraphs for any $n \geq 0$. As in §8.3.5 for the case $n = 2$, we call an $(n, n - 1)$-category $C$ abelian if, for every $(n - 1)$-cell $u$ of $C$, the group $\text{Aut}_u^C$ of $n$-loops of $C$ with source $u$ is abelian. For $C$ an $(n, n - 1)$-category, its abelianization $C_{ab}$ is the quotient of $C$ by the cellular extension that contains one $n$-sphere $\phi \ast_{n-1} \psi \Rightarrow \psi \ast_{n-1} \phi$ for every $n$-loops $\phi$ and $\psi$ of $C$ with the same source.
Identities among relations for 2-polygraphs, as defined in §8.3.2, were extended to the structure of an \( n \)-polygraph \( P \) in [164] to form a natural system \( \Pi(P) \) on the \((n - 1)\)-category \( \overline{P} \). This definition is based on a generalization of a result proved by Baues and Jibladze, see [33] for the case \( n = 2 \), stating that an \((n, n - 1)\)-category is abelian if and only if it is linear, where \((n, n - 1)\)-categories correspond to a notion of “globular crossed module” for \( n \)-categories. When the polygraph \( P \) is convergent, the natural system \( \Pi(P) \) is generated by the generating confluences of \( P \) [164, Proposition 2.4.2].

A notion of abelian finite derivation type, \( \text{FDT}_{\text{ab}} \), for short, can also be defined for \( n \)-polygraphs. An \( n \)-polygraph \( P \) has \( \text{FDT}_{\text{ab}} \) when the abelian \((n, n - 1)\)-category \( P_{\text{ab}}^{\top} \) admits a finite acyclic cellular extension. As for case \( n = 2 \) in Proposition 8.3.7, we prove that an \( n \)-polygraph is \( \text{FDT}_{\text{ab}} \) if and only if the natural system \( \Pi(P) \) of identities among relations of \( P \) is finitely generated [163, Proposition 5.7.2].
APPENDIX
Appendix A
A catalogue of 2-polygraphs

In this section, we list some examples of presentations of monoids and categories by a 2-polygraph.

A.1 Presentations of monoids

The richest source of presentations of categories can be found in presentations of monoids (and groups), which are seen here as a particular instance of a category.

A.1.1 Monoid. A monoid \((M, \times, 1)\) is a set equipped with a binary operation \(\times\) which is associative and admits 1 as neutral element. A morphism between two monoids is a function between the underlying sets which preserves multiplication and neutral element.

The following lemma shows that one can always see a monoid as a particular case of a category with only one element, conventionally denoted \(\star\).

A.1.2 Lemma. The category Mon of monoids is isomorphic to the full subcategory of Cat whose objects are the categories with \(\star\) as only object.

Proof. To a monoid \((M, \times, 1)\) we can associate a category \(BM\), sometimes called the delooping of \(M\), with \(\star\) as only object, the elements \(a \in M\) as morphisms \(a : \star \rightarrow \star\), composition being given by \(b \circ a = a \times b\), with 1 as identity on \(\star\). This construction is easily extended as a functor which is an isomorphism of categories. \(\square\)

A presentation of a monoid consists of a 2-polygraph \(P\) whose set of 0-generators is reduced to one element \(P_0 = \{\ast\}\). A group being a monoid, presentations of groups provide many such examples [95]: we mostly restrict here to those
A catalogue of 2-polygraphs which are “really monoids”, meaning that the presence inverses does not play a crucial role in the presentation.

A.1.3 Notations. In a polygraph \( P = \langle \ast \mid P_1 \mid P_2 \rangle \), we generally omit mentioning the source and target of 1-generators since they are necessarily \( \ast \). Moreover, as far as we are concerned with the presented category, the names of the 2-generators, as well as their orientation, will not be relevant. The 2-polygraph

\[
\langle \ast \mid a : \ast \to \ast \mid \alpha : aa \Rightarrow 1 \rangle
\]

will thus often be simply noted

\[
\langle \ast \mid a \mid aa = 1 \rangle. \tag{A.1}
\]

Traditionally, the set \( P_0 \) is even omitted, i.e., the above presentation is noted \( \langle a \mid aa = 1 \rangle \), we will however refrain from doing so in order to avoid a possible confusion with a 1-polygraph. We sometimes write the indices at the bottom right of the presentation. For instance

\[
\langle \ast \mid a_i \mid a_j a_i = a_i a_j \rangle_{i, j \in \mathbb{N}}
\]

denotes a presentation with

\[
P_1 = \{ a_i \mid i \in \mathbb{N} \} \quad \text{and} \quad P_2 = \{ a_j a_i = a_i a_j \mid i, j \in \mathbb{N} \}.
\]

A.1.4 Natural numbers. The additive monoid \( \mathbb{N} \) of natural numbers admits the presentation

\[
\langle \ast \mid a \mid \rangle
\]

where \( a \) corresponds the natural number 1, and more generally \( a^n \) to \( n \in \mathbb{N} \).

A.1.5 Cyclic monoids. The additive monoid of booleans \( \mathbb{B} \) admits the presentation (A.1) above. More generally, given \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), the additive monoid \( \mathbb{N}/n\mathbb{N} \) admits the presentation

\[
\langle \ast \mid a^n = 1 \rangle.
\]

A.1.6 Booleans. The set \( \mathbb{B} \) of booleans respectively consists of the two elements \( \bot \) (standing for false) and \( \top \) (standing for true). We respectively write \( \land, \lor \) and \( \times \) for conjunction, disjunction and exclusive disjunction. The monoid \( (\mathbb{B}, \times, \bot) \) is isomorphic to \( \mathbb{N}/2\mathbb{N} \) and thus admits (A.1) as presentation. The monoids \( (\mathbb{B}, \lor, \bot) \) and \( (\mathbb{B}, \land, \top) \) are isomorphic and admit the presentation

\[
\langle \ast \mid a a = a \rangle.
\]
A.1 Presentations of monoids

A.1.7 Free monoids. Fix a set $X$. A word $u$ over $X$ is a finite sequence $u = a_1 \ldots a_n$ of elements $a_i$ of $X$. Given two words $u = a_1 \ldots a_m$ and $v = b_1 \ldots b_n$, their concatenation is the word $uv = a_1 \ldots a_m b_1 \ldots b_n$. The free monoid $X^*$ over $X$ can be described as the monoid of words over $X$, with concatenation as composition and empty word as unit. It admits the presentation

$$\langle *, | X | \rangle.$$

A.1.8 Free commutative monoids. Fix a set $X$. Recall from §1.4.1 that a multiset over $X$ is a function $\mu : X \rightarrow \mathbb{N}$, assigning a multiplicity to an element $a$ of $X$, the that every element $a$ of $X$ has a null multiplicity, excepting for a finite number. Given two multisets $\mu$ and $\nu$, we write $\mu \sqcup \nu$ for their pointwise sum. The constant function equal to 0 is called the empty multiset. The free commutative monoid over $X$ can be described as the monoid of multisets with $\sqcup$ as composition and empty multiset as unit. It admits the presentation

$$\langle *, | X | \mid ab = ba \rangle_{a,b \in X}.$$

For instance, the multiplicative monoid $\mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}$ is the free commutative monoid over the set $\mathbb{N}$, since an element of this monoid can be interpreted as the multiset of its prime factors. It admits the presentation

$$\langle *, | a_i | a_i a_j = a_j a_i \rangle_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}$$

where the 1-generator $a_i$ corresponds to the $i$-th prime number, i.e., $a_0 = 2$, $a_1 = 3$, $a_2 = 5$, etc.

A.1.9 Partially commutative monoids. Suppose given an alphabet $X$ and $I \subseteq X \times X$ a reflexive and symmetric relation, called independence. The monoid with presentation

$$\langle *, | X | \mid ab = ba \rangle_{(a,b) \in I}$$

is called a trace monoid, a partially commutative monoid or a heap monoid. This family of monoids was introduced by Cartier and Foata [79] in order to study combinatorial problems of rearrangements and also studied in computer science [273, 115, 124] for the following reason. The elements of $X$ can be interpreted as actions, and thus $X^*$ as the set of possible sequences of actions. Sometimes, the order in which two actions $a$ and $b$ are performed does not matter, for instance when $a$ and $b$ consist in reading or writing at disjoint positions in the memory in a computer program: in the end, executing $a$ then $b$, or $b$ then $a$, will lead to the same state. This kind of situation is naturally modeled by having $(a, b) \in I$ and occurs when considering concurrent processes.
A catalogue of 2-polygraphs

A.1.10 Baumslag–Solitar monoids. Given natural numbers $m$ and $n$, the Baumslag-Solitar monoid $BS(m, n)$ [35] is the monoid presented by

$$\langle * \mid a, b \mid ab^m = b^n a \rangle$$

which can be seen as a variant of the commutativity relation described above, $BS(1, 1)$ being the free commutative monoid on two generators. The enveloping groups of those monoids provide examples of non-Hopfian groups, e.g. $BS(2, 3)$.

A.1.11 Finite subsets. Given a set $I$, the set $P_{fin}(I)$ of finite subsets of $I$ is a monoid with union as multiplication and empty set as neutral element. It admits as presentation

$$\langle * \mid a_i \mid a_i a_j = a_j a_i, a_i a_i = a_i \rangle_{i,j \in I}.$$

It is thus the free idempotent commutative monoid on the set $I$.

A.1.12 Coproduct and product. The monoids $\mathbb{N} \sqcup \mathbb{N}$ and $\mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N}$ respectively admit the presentations

$$\langle * \mid a, b \mid \rangle \quad \text{and} \quad \langle * \mid a, b \mid ba = ab \rangle.$$

More generally, given 2-polygraphs $P$ and $Q$, respectively presenting monoids $M$ and $N$,

- their coproduct (or free product) $M + N$ is presented by

$$\langle * \mid P_1, Q_1 \mid P_2, Q_2 \rangle,$$

- their product $M \times N$ is presented by

$$\langle * \mid P_1, Q_1 \mid P_2, Q_2, R_2 \rangle$$

where

$$R_2 = \{ ba = ab \mid a \in P_1, b \in Q_1 \}.$$

These constructions are detailed and generalized in Chapter 3.

A.1.13 Bicyclic monoid. The bicyclic monoid is the monoid presented by

$$\langle * \mid a, b \mid ab = 1 \rangle.$$

If we read $a$ as an “opening bracket” and $b$ as a “closing bracket”, then the words in the equivalence class of 1 are precisely the well-bracketed words (also called Dyck words). From this property follow applications in combinatorics and computer science (e.g. this monoid is the syntactic monoid of the language of Dyck words).
A.1 Presentations of monoids

A.1.14 Integers. The additive group \( \mathbb{Z} \) admits, as a monoid, the presentation
\[
\langle \star \mid a, b \mid ab = 1, ba = 1 \rangle
\]
where \( a \) and \( b \) can respectively be interpreted as 1 and \(-1\).

A.1.15 Enveloping group. The forgetful functor \( \text{Grp} \to \text{Mon} \), from the category of groups to the category of monoids, admits a left adjoint, under which the image of a monoid is called the associated \textit{enveloping group}. For instance, the additive group \( \mathbb{Z} \) is the enveloping group of the additive monoid \( \mathbb{N} \). As such, the previous example is an instance of a more general construction: given a polygraph \( P \) presenting a monoid \( M \), its enveloping group \( G \) is presented as a monoid by
\[
\langle \star \mid P_1, P_1^- \mid P_2, R_2 \rangle
\]
where
\[
P_1^- = \{ a^- \mid a \in P_1 \} \quad \text{and} \quad R_2 = \{ aa^- = 1, a^- a = 1 \mid a \in P_1 \}.
\]
This construction is detailed and generalized in §3.2.1. By abuse of notation, given a word \( u = a_1 \ldots a_n \) in \( P_1^* \), we sometimes write \( u^- = a_n^- \ldots a_1^- \).

Two distinct monoids can generate isomorphic enveloping groups. For instance, consider the monoid presented by
\[
\langle \star \mid a, b \mid ab = bba, ba = aab \rangle.
\]
This monoid is not the trivial one since for instance the classes of 1, \( a \) and \( b \) contain only one element (there is no derivable relation involving those, the generating relations being between words of length 2 and 3). We can observe that the relation \( ab = bba \) is derivable since \( ab = bba = baab \), and similarly the relation \( ba = abba \) is also derivable. In the enveloping group, we thus have \( ba = baab^- a^- = abb^- a^- = 1 \), and similarly \( ab = 1 \). Therefore, \( 1 = ab = bba = b1 = b \) and similarly \( 1 = a \). The presented group is therefore the trivial one, which is also the enveloping group of the trivial monoid. Another example is given in §A.1.28.

A.1.16 Group presentation. As a variant of the previous construction, by a \textit{group presentation} one usually understands a pair
\[
\langle P_1 \mid P_2 \rangle
\]
where \( P_1 \) is a set and \( P_2 \subseteq (P_1 \cup P_1^-)^* \), which implicitly means the group presented by the 2-polygraph
\[
\langle \star \mid P_1, P_1^- \mid a^- a = 1, aa^- = 1, u = 1 \rangle_{a \in P_1, u \in P_2}.
\]
Here, we only consider relations of the form \( u = 1 \), since having a relation \( u = v \) is equivalent (by Tietze transformations) to having the relation \( u^{-1}v = 1 \).

A.1.17 Positive rational numbers. We have seen a presentation of the multiplicative monoid \( \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\} \) in §A.1.8. The multiplicative group \( \mathbb{Q}^+ \) of strictly positive rational numbers is its enveloping group and, from the construction of §A.1.15, we deduce that it admits the presentation

\[
\langle \star \mid a_i, a_i^{-1} \mid a_i a_j = a_j a_i, a_i a_i^{-1} = 1, a_i a_i^{-1} = 1 \rangle_{i,j \in \mathbb{N}}.
\]

A.1.18 Non-negative rational numbers. Let us detail an example of a presentation coming from [205, Section 5.7]. The additive monoid \( \mathbb{Q}^+ \) of non-negative rational numbers can be presented by the 2-polygraph

\[
P = \langle \star \mid a_i \mid (a_{i+1})^{i+1} = a_i \rangle_{i \in \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}}.
\]

Here, any pair of generators commute, i.e., the relations \( a_j a_i = a_i a_j \) are derivable since, supposing \( j > i \), we have

\[
a_j a_i = a_i^{(j-\ldots)(i+1)} a_i = a_i a_i^{(j-\ldots)(i+1)} = a_i a_j.
\]

The interpretation of a generator \( a_i \) in \( \mathbb{Q}^+ \) is \( f(x_i) = 1/i! \), which extends as a morphism of monoids \( f : P^* \to \mathbb{Q}^+ \). It is compatible with the relations since

\[
f((a_{i+1})^{i+1}) = \frac{i + 1}{(i+1)!} = \frac{1}{i!} = f(a_i)
\]

and thus induces a morphism \( f : \mathcal{P} \to \mathbb{Q}^+ \), which we prove to be an isomorphism. The function \( f \) is surjective since for \( (p, q) \in \mathbb{N} \times (\mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}) \), one has

\[
\frac{p}{q} = \frac{p}{q}(q-1)! = f\left(a_q^{p(q-1)!}\right).
\]

Let us show that it is injective. Suppose given two words \( u, v \in P_1^* \) such that \( f(u) = f(v) \). Since the generators commute, the words \( u \) and \( v \) are, up to equivalence, of the form

\[
u = a_1^{m_1} a_2^{m_2} \ldots a_k^{m_k} \quad \text{and} \quad v = a_1^{n_1} a_2^{n_2} \ldots a_k^{n_k}
\]

with \( k \in \mathbb{N} \) and \( m_i, n_i \in \mathbb{N} \) for \( 0 \leq i \leq k \). We can also suppose that \( m_k \neq 0 \), up to exchanging the roles of \( u \) and \( v \) and lowering \( k \). Suppose moreover that \( k > 1 \) (this hypothesis is not innocuous since it will lead to a contradiction). If \( n_k \geq k \), we can use the relation \( a_k^k = a_{k-1} \) to transform \( u \) into a word \( u' \) equivalent to \( u \) and satisfying \( 0 \leq m_k < k \). For this reason, we can also suppose, without loss
of generality, that $0 < m_k < k$ and $0 \leq n_k < k$. Up to exchanging the roles of $u$ and $v$, we can also suppose $m_k \geq n_k$. We have

$$0 = f(u) - f(u') = \frac{m_1 - n_1}{1!} + \frac{m_2 - n_2}{2!} + \ldots + \frac{m_k - n_k}{k!}$$

and therefore

$$0 = (k - 1)! (f(u) - f(u'))$$

$$= (k - 1)! \left( \frac{m_1 - n_1}{1!} + \frac{m_2 - n_2}{2!} + \ldots + \frac{m_{k-1} - n_{k-1}}{(k-1)!} \right) + \frac{m_k - n_k}{k}$$

with $m \in \mathbb{Z}$. Since $0 < m_k < k$, $0 \leq n_k < k$ and $m_k \geq n_k$, we have $0 < (m_k - n_k)/k < 1$, and thus a contradiction. Therefore, we have $k = 1$ and $m_k = f(u) = f(v) = n_k$, i.e., $u = v$. The morphism $f : P \to \mathbb{Q}^+$ is thus injective. From the results of §A.1.15, we can deduce the following presentation of the additive monoid $\mathbb{Q}$, which is its enveloping group:

$$\langle \star \mid a_i, b_i \mid a_i^{a_{i+1}} = a_i, a_ib_i = 1, b_ia_i = 1 \rangle _{i \in \mathbb{N} \setminus \{0\}}.$$

### A.1.19 Symmetric groups

The symmetric group $S_{n+1}$ is the group of bijections (or permutations) from the set $\{0, \ldots, n\}$ to itself, with multiplication given by composition and unit by identity. More geometrically, it can also be defined as the group of symmetries of an $n$-simplex. Considered as a monoid, it admits a presentation where the set of generators is $P_1 = \{a_0, \ldots, a_{n-1}\}$ and the relations are

- $a_ia_i = 1$, for $0 \leq i < n$,
- $a_ia_{i+1}a_i = a_{i+1}a_i a_{i+1}$, for $0 \leq i < n - 1$,
- $a_ia_j = a_ja_i$, for $0 \leq i < j < n$ with $j > i + 1$,

as found out by Moore [288]. Here, the generator $a_i$ should be interpreted as the transposition exchanging $i$ with $i + 1$, written $(i(i+1))$, whose graph can be pictured as

$$\begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
\vdots \\
\end{array}$$

The presentation is studied in details in §5.2.7.

The above presentation is based on the transpositions $(i(i+1))$ as generators $a_i$, but other choices of generators are possible and will give rise to other presentations [95, Section 6.2], for instance:

- the generators $a_i = (i\alpha)$, with $0 \leq i < n$, induce a presentation with relations
  $$a_i^2 = 1 \quad (a_ia_{i+1})^3 = 1 \quad (a_ia_{i+1}a_ia_j)^2 = 1$$
for $1 \leq i, j \leq n - 1$ with $j \neq i$ and $j \neq i + 1$, where $a_n = a_0$ by convention,

– the generators $a_0 = (1n)$ and $a_i = (0in)$ for $1 \leq i < n$ induce a presentation with relations

$$a_0^2 = 1 \quad a_j^3 = 1 \quad (a_ia_j)^2 = 1$$

for $0 \leq i < j < n$,

– the two generators $a = (01)$ and $b = (012 \ldots n)$ induce a presentation with relations

$$a^2 = 1 \quad b^{n+1} = 1 \quad (ba)^n = 1 \quad (ab^nab)^3 = 1 \quad (ab^{n+1-j}ab^j) = 1$$

for $1 \leq j < n - 1$.

A.1.20 Alternating groups. The alternating group $A_{n+1}$ is the subgroup of $S_{n+1}$ consisting of symmetries of even signature (recall that the signature of a symmetry is the parity of the number of transpositions used to express it). It admits a presentation with generators $P_1 = \{a_0, \ldots, a_{n-1}\}$ and relations

$$a_j^3 = 1 \quad (a_ia_j)^2 = 1$$

for $0 \leq i < j < n - 1$. Here, a generator $a_i$ should be interpreted as the permutation $(i(n-1)n)$, see [95, Section 6.3] for details.

A.1.21 Braid groups and monoids. We introduce notations for the spaces $I = [0,1]$, $X = \mathbb{R}^2$ and $Y = I \times X$. Suppose given $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and continuous functions

$$b_i : I \to Y$$

with $0 \leq i < n$, which are mutually disjoint (i.e., for $t \in I$, $b_i(t) = b_j(t)$ implies $i = j$) and with fixed endpoints (say, $b_i(0) = (0,i,0)$ and $b_i(1) = (1,i,0)$). This induces a subspace $\beta$ of $Y = I \times X$ defined as

$$\beta = \{(t,b_i(t)) \mid t \in I, 0 \leq i < n\}.$$ 

Such a subspace is called a (geometric) braid with $n$ strands. Graphically, a braid with 3 strands can be pictured as follows, where the first coordinate is pictured vertically:
Braids are considered up to endpoint-preserving isotopy: we identify two braids $\beta$ and $\beta'$ for which there exists a continuous function $h : I \rightarrow Y$ such that $h(0) = 1_Y$, $h(1)(\beta) = \beta'$ and, for every $t \in I$, the function $h(t)$ is an homeomorphism, whose restriction to $\{0\} \times X \cup \{1\} \times X \subseteq Y$ is the identity, such that $h(t)(\beta)$ is a braid. The set $B_n$ of braids with $n$ strands (up to isotopy) forms a group, where the composition is given by concatenation of strands, and the identity is given by the braid induced by constant functions $b_i(t) = (i, 0)$.

An alternative description can be given as follows. Given a topological space $X$ (typically, $X = \mathbb{R}^2$ in the following), the $n$-element configuration space is

$$C_nX = \{(x_1, \ldots, x_n) \mid x_i = x_j \text{ implies } i = j\}.$$

The $n$-element unlabeled configuration space $D_nX = C_nX / \Sigma_n$ is the quotient of $C_nX$ under the action of the symmetric group permuting the coordinates. The $n$-strand braid group can equivalently be defined as the fundamental group of this space: $B_n = \pi_1(D_n\mathbb{R}^2)$.

Before presenting the braid group, we first present a submonoid of this group. The (positive) braid monoid $B_{n+1}^+$ with $n+1$ strands, admits a presentation with $P_1 = \{a_0, \ldots, a_{n-1}\}$, where $a_i$ can be pictured as

- $a_0 = \begin{array}{} \_ & \_ & \_ & \_ \end{array}$
- $a_1 = \begin{array}{} \_ & \_ & \_ & \_ \end{array}$
- $a_2 = \begin{array}{} \_ & \_ & \_ & \_ \end{array}$

(with $i$ strands on the left), and the relations are

- $a_ia_{i+1}a_i = a_{i+1}a_ia_{i+1}$, for $0 \leq i < n - 1$,
- $a_ia_j = a_ja_i$, for $0 \leq i < i + 1 < j < n$.

For instance, with $n + 1 = 4$, the generators $a_0, a_1, a_2$ respectively correspond to the following braids with four strands:

- $a_0 = \begin{array}{} \_ & \_ & \_ & \_ \end{array}$
- $a_1 = \begin{array}{} \_ & \_ & \_ & \_ \end{array}$
- $a_2 = \begin{array}{} \_ & \_ & \_ & \_ \end{array}$

and the relations are

$$a_0a_1a_0 = a_1a_0a_1 \quad a_1a_2a_1 = a_2a_1a_2$$
A catalogue of 2-polygraphs

and

\[ a_0 a_2 = a_2 a_0 \]

We can expect that the full braid group can be recovered by moreover adding the other kind of crossings

\[ a_i^- = \begin{array}{c|c|c}
\cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\
\cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\
\cdots & \cdots & \cdots \\
\end{array} \]

which are inverse to the crossings \( a_i \). Indeed, the braid group \( B_{n+1} \) is the enveloping group of the monoid \( B^+_{n+1} \), from which a presentation can be constructed, see §A.1.15:

- generators are \( a_i, a_i^- \) for \( 0 \leq i < n \),
- relations are those of the braid monoid plus \( a_i a_i^- = 1 \) and \( a_i^- a_i = 1 \) for \( 0 \leq i < n \).

This presentation is due to Artin [17].

From the above presentation, we see that the symmetric group can be obtained from the braid group by identifying \( a_i \) with \( a_i^- \). There is thus a projection morphism \( B_n \to S_n \) and we write \( P_n \) for its kernel, which is called the pure braid group: the group \( P_n \) can be seen as the submonoid of \( B_n \) consisting of braids which become identities if we interpret them as symmetries, and we have an exact sequence

\[ 1 \to P_n \to B_n \to S_n \to 1. \]

This group can also more directly be described as the fundamental group of a configuration space: \( P_n = \pi_1(C_n) \). A presentation of \( P_n \) can be given with generators \( a_{ij} \) for \( 0 \leq i < j < n \), as well as their formal inverses \( a_{ij}^- \).

Considering \( P_n \) as a subgroup of \( B_n \), the generators \( a_{ij} \) can be expressed in terms of the generators of \( B_n \) as

\[ a_{ij} = a_i a_{i+1} \cdots a_{j-2} a_{j-1}^2 a_{j-2} \cdots a_{i+1} a_i^- . \]

Graphically,
The relations satisfied by those are

\[ a_{kl}a_{ij}a_{kl} = \begin{cases} 
  a_{ij} & \text{if } l < i \text{ or } j < k, \\
  a_{il}a_{ij} & \text{if } i < j = k < l, \\
  a_{ij}a_{ik}a_{ij} & \text{if } i < k < j = l, \\
  a_{il}a_{ik}a_{il}a_{ik}a_{ij} & \text{if } i < k < j < l.
\]  

A.1.22 Hyperoctahedral group. The hyperoctahedral group \( B_n \) (or \( C_n \)) is the group of symmetries of a cube of dimension \( n \). It admits a presentation with generators \( a_i \), with \( 0 \leq i < n \) and relations

\begin{align*}
- & a_0a_1a_0a_1 = a_1a_0a_1a_0, \\
- & a_ia_{i+1}a_i = a_{i+1}a_ia_{i+1} \text{ for } 0 < i < n - 1, \\
- & a_ia_j = a_ja_i \text{ for } 0 \leq i < i + 1 < j < n.
\end{align*}

This group can also be described as the group of signed symmetries, i.e., \( n \times n \) orthogonal matrices with integer entries, i.e., \( n \times n \) matrices with coefficients in \( \{-1, 0, 1\} \) containing exactly one non-null coefficient on each row and each column, see §C.11.4 for details.

A.1.23 Progressive ribbon group. Given \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), the monoid \( R_n^+ \) of positive progressive ribbons with \( n + 1 \) strands admits a presentation with generators \( a_i \), with \( 0 \leq i < n \), and \( b_i \), with \( 0 \leq i \leq n \), subject to the relations

\begin{align*}
- & a_ia_{i+1}a_i = a_{i+1}a_ia_{i+1} \text{ for } 0 \leq i < n - 1, \\
- & a_ia_j = a_ja_i \text{ for } 0 \leq i < i + 1 < j < n, \\
- & b_ia_i = a_ib_i \text{ for } 0 \leq i < n, \\
- & b_{i+1}a_i = a_ib_i \text{ for } 0 \leq i < n, \\
- & b_ia_j = a_jb_i \text{ for } 0 \leq i < n, 0 \leq j \leq n \text{ and } i \notin \{i, i+1\}.
\end{align*}

Graphically, an element of this monoid can be depicted as \( n \) ribbons in the space, the generators are respectively

\[ a_i = \begin{array}{cccc}
\cdot & \cdots & \times & \cdots \\
\cdot & \cdots & \cdot & \cdots
\end{array} \quad b_i = \begin{array}{cccc}
\cdot & \cdots & \cdot & \cdots \\
\cdot & \cdots & \cdot & \cdots
\end{array} \]

and the relations have natural graphical interpretations, which the reader is encouraged to draw. The group \( R_n \) of progressive ribbons is the enveloping group of \( R_n^+ \). Note that the relations satisfied by the generators \( a_i \) are precisely the relations of the braid group. In fact, there is an obvious action of the braid group \( B_n \) on the set \( [n] = \{0, \ldots, n - 1\} \) of braids and \( R_n \) can be obtained as the wreath product \( R_n = \mathbb{Z} \wr B_n \) of the additive group of integers with the braid
A catalogue of 2-polygraphs

The groups \( R_n \), as well as their presentation, are detailed in [208], as well as in §C.11.5.

**A.1.24 Dihedral groups.** The dihedral group \( D_n \) is the group of symmetries of a regular polygon with \( n \) vertices. It admits a presentation by the 2-polygraph with 1-generators \( r_0, \ldots, r_{n-1} \) and \( s_0, \ldots, s_{n-1} \), and relations

\[
\begin{align*}
    r_0 &= 1, \\
    r_i r_j &= r_{i+j}, \\
    r_i s_j &= s_{i+j}, \\
    s_i r_j &= s_{i-j}, \\
    s_i s_j &= r_{i-j}
\end{align*}
\]

for every indices \( 0 \leq i, j < n \), with addition and subtraction taken modulo \( n \).

Alternatively, it can be presented by the 2-polygraph

\[
\langle * | r, s \mid r^n = 1, s^2 = 1, rsrs = 1 \rangle
\]

(the relationship with previous generators is given by \( r = r_1, s = s_0, r_i = r^i \) and \( s_j = r^j s \)). In terms of symmetries of a polygon with \( n \) vertices, \( s \) corresponds to a symmetry and \( r \) a rotation of \( 2\pi/n \), and more generally \( s_i \) and \( r_i \) respectively correspond to a reflection along the \( i \)-th axis and a rotation of \( 2\pi/n \):

The case of \( D_3 \) is detailed in Example 5.1.4.

**A.1.25 Artin monoids and Coxeter groups.** Given a finite set \( S \) of generators, a *Coxeter matrix* \( M \) is a function which to every pair of elements \( (s, t) \in S \times S \) associates \( m_{st} \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\} \) such that \( m_{st} = m_{ts}, m_{ss} = 1 \) and \( m_{st} > 1 \) for every \( s, t \in S \) with \( s \neq t \). Such a matrix induces

- an *Artin monoid* with presentation

\[
\langle * | s \mid (st)^{m_{st}} = (ts)^{m_{ts}} \rangle_{s,t \in S}
\]

where \((st)^k \) denotes the alternating product of \( s \) and \( t \) of length \( k \) starting with \( k \) (e.g. \((st)^5 = ststs\)) and, by convention, there is no relation when \( m_{st} = \infty \) or \( m_{ts} = \infty \),

- an *Artin group*, which is the group freely generated by the above monoid, and

- a *Coxeter group* with presentation as a monoid

\[
\langle * | s \mid (st)^{m_{st}} = (ts)^{m_{ts}}, ss = 1 \rangle_{s,t \in S}
\]
or equivalently
\[ \langle * \mid s \mid (st)^{mrst} = 1 \rangle_{s,t \in S}. \]

Since the set \( S \) is finite, writing \( n \) for its cardinal, we can assume that it is of the form \( S = \{ i \in \mathbb{N} \mid 0 \leq i < n \} \), which is convenient in the following. A Coxeter matrix \( M \) is often pictured as a Dynkin diagram consisting of a labeled non-oriented simple graph with \( n \) vertices \( x_i \), with \( 0 \leq i < n \), with an edge between \( x_i \) and \( y_i \) labeled by \( m_{ij} \). By convention, the looping edges on vertices, as well as edges with label 2, are not drawn, and edges with label 3 are not labeled. Artin monoids are further detailed in §B.1.

For instance, the Coxeter matrix such that \( m_i(i+1) = 3 \), and \( m_{ij} = 2 \) for \( |i - j| > 2 \), can be represented by the diagram

The Artin monoid is the braid monoid with \( n + 1 \) strands (see §A.1.21) and the Coxeter group is the symmetric group on \( n + 1 \) elements (see §A.1.19). Similarly, the hyperoctahedral group \( B_n \) is the Coxeter group associated to

(with \( n \) vertices) and the dihedral group \( D_n \) is the Coxeter group associated to

(with \( n \) vertices). A detailed presentation of these groups can be found in several places such as [146].

A.1.26 Plactic, Chinese and Sylvester monoids. The plactic monoid \( P_n \) of rank \( n \) in type \( A \) was introduced by Knuth in [217] and further developed by Lascoux and Schützenberger [242]. It admits a presentation with \( \{ 1, \ldots, n \} \) as generators, and relations

\[ zxy = xzy, \text{ for } 1 \leq x \leq y < z \leq n, \quad yzx = yxz, \text{ for } 1 \leq x < y \leq z \leq n. \]

Its elements are in bijection with semistandard Young tableaux [217, 254], from which stem applications in representation theory [141, 250]. Plactic monoids are further detailed in §B.2.

Many variants of plactic monoids exist, such as the Chinese monoids. These monoids were introduced in [118] thought the following presentation, called Chinese presentation. The Chinese monoid of rank \( n > 0 \), denoted by \( Ch_n \), is
A catalogue of 2-polygraphs

the quotient of the free monoid \( \{1,\ldots,n\}^* \) by the congruence generated by the following relations:

\[
zyx = zxy = yzx \quad \text{for all} \quad 1 \leq x \leq y \leq z \leq n. \tag{A.2}
\]

The Sylvester monoids \( S\text{yl}_n \) [185] are also a variant, with the same generators and relations

\[
zxy = xzuy,
\]

for \( 1 \leq x \leq y < z \leq n \) and \( u \in \{1,\ldots,n\}^* \).

**A.1.27 Thompson group \( F \).** We write \( I \subseteq \mathbb{R} \) for the interval \( I = [0, 1] \). An element \( x \in I \) is called dyadic when it is of the form \( \frac{m}{2^n} \) for some \( m, n \in \mathbb{N} \). The Thompson group \( F \) [275, 75] has elements the homeomorphisms \( f : I \to I \) which

- are piecewise linear with slopes \( 2^n \) for some \( n \in \mathbb{Z} \),
- with a finite number of breakpoints,
- such that the coordinates of the breakpoints are dyadic.

The multiplication \( gf \) of two elements \( f : I \to I \) and \( g : I \to I \) is given by their composite \( g \circ f \). For instance, we have the three functions whose graphs are depicted below are elements of \( F \), respectively called \( x_0, x_1 \) and \( x_2 \):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Graph of } x_0 & : t \mapsto 2t, \quad 0 \leq t \leq \frac{1}{4} \\
\text{Graph of } x_1 & : t \mapsto t + \frac{1}{4}, \quad \frac{1}{4} \leq t \leq \frac{1}{2} \\
\text{Graph of } x_2 & : t \mapsto \frac{t^2 + 1}{2}, \quad \frac{1}{2} \leq t \leq 1
\end{align*}
\]

The explicit definition of \( x_0 \) is

\[
x_0(t) = \begin{cases} 
2t & \text{if } 0 \leq t \leq \frac{1}{4} \\
t + \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } \frac{1}{4} \leq t \leq \frac{1}{2} \\
\frac{t^2 + 1}{2} & \text{if } \frac{1}{2} \leq t \leq 1
\end{cases}
\]

and more generally, given \( i \in \mathbb{N} \), one can define a function \( x_i : I \to I \) in \( F \) by

\[
x_i(t) = \begin{cases} 
t & \text{if } 0 \leq t \leq t_i \\
x_0(2^i(t - t_i))/2^i + t_i & \text{if } t_i \leq t \leq 1
\end{cases}
\]

where \( t_i = 1 - \frac{1}{2^i} \) and \( i \neq 0 \). The group \( F \) is generated by the elements \( x_i \) and can be described as the enveloping group of the Thompson monoid \( F^* \), which
is presented by

\[ F^+ = \langle \star \mid x_i \mid x_{j+1}x_i = x_ix_j \rangle_{i<j \in \mathbb{N}}. \]

More explicitly, this means that, starting from the above presentation, we should add a formal inverse \( x_i^{-1} \) to each generator \( x_i \), as explained in §A.1.15. Insights on this presentation, as well as alternative descriptions of \( F \), are given in §C.9. Note that the generator \( x_2 \) is superfluous, since the relation \( x_2x_0 = x_0x_1 \) can be replaced by \( x_2 = x_0x_1x_0^{-1} \). More generally, given \( i \geq 2 \), one has \( x_i = x_0^{n-1}x_1(x_0^{-1})^{n-1} \), which shows that the group is generated by \( x_0 \) and \( x_1 \). Following this trail, the group \( F \) also admits the following finite presentation with only two generators and their inverses [75]:

\[ \langle \star \mid a, b, a^{-1}, b^{-1} \mid [ab^{-1}, a^{-1}ba], [ab^{-1}, a^{-1}ba], aa^{-1}, a^{-1}a, bb^{-1}, b^{-1}b \rangle \]

where \( a \) and \( b \) respectively correspond to \( x_0 \) and \( x_1 \) in the previous presentation, \([u, v]\) is a notation for the commutator \( uu^{-1}v^{-1} \), and we simply write \( u \) for a relation \( u = 1 \). The Thompson group \( F \) is \( \text{FP}_\infty \) [61].

Two other variants of the group \( F \) were introduced by Thompson [75]. The group \( T \) is a “cyclic variant” whose elements are piecewise linear functions \( f : S^1 \to S^1 \), where \( S^1 \) denotes the circle of unit perimeter. The group \( V \) is a “symmetric variant” consisting of functions \( f : S^1 \to S^1 \) which are right-continuous, bijective and piecewise-linear satisfying similar requirements as before. There are natural inclusion morphisms \( F \hookrightarrow T \hookrightarrow V \). Typical elements of \( T \) and \( V \) are

Both \( T \) and \( V \) also admit finite presentations. Generalizations of those groups were also introduced by using \( n \)-ary trees instead of binary ones [180], by using \( I^n \) instead of \( I \) for the domain of the endomorphisms [57], and by using braidings instead of symmetries [58].

A.1.28 Wirtinger monoids. A knot is an embedding \( \kappa : S^1 \to \mathbb{R}^3 \) of the circle into space. Suppose given a diagram representing such a knot on the plane, e.g.
A catalogue of 2-polygraphs

the trefoil knot:

We label the arcs (here by \( a, b, c \)) and orient them following a conventional orientation of \( S^1 \). This induces a presentation of a monoid, with arcs as generators, and a relation

\[
ab = ca
\]

for each crossing

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{b} \\
\text{c}
\end{array}
\]

(the orientation of \( b \) or \( c \) is not relevant). For instance, the monoid associated to the trefoil knot is

\[
\langle \ast \mid a, b, c \mid ab = ca, bc = ab, ca = bc \rangle.
\]

The enveloping group of the monoid is the fundamental group of the knot, i.e., the fundamental group of \( \mathbb{R}^3 \setminus \kappa(S^1) \), and the presentation is called the Wirtinger presentation. This group only depends on the knot, up to isotopy (not on the diagram used to construct it or its orientation for instance). As a side note, this group is also the enveloping group of the monoid

\[
\langle \ast \mid a, b \mid bab = aba \rangle
\]

which is not isomorphic to the above monoid.

Let us see an application of those presentations. Two knots are equivalent when their complements are isomorphic. Moreover, the fundamental group of the complement is an invariant of the equivalence classes. This shows that the trefoil is not isomorphic to the unknot: for instance, one has an abelian fundamental group whereas the other does not.

A1.29 Temperley-Lieb monoids. Given \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), the \( n \)-th Temperley-Lieb monoid is presented by the 2-polygraph with 1-generators \( d \) and \( u_i \), indexed by \( 0 \leq i < n \), together with relations, for \( 0 \leq i, j < n \):

- \( du_i = u_id \),
- \( u_iu_j = du_j \),
\[ u_i u_j u_k = u_i \text{ whenever } |j - i| = 1, \]
\[ u_j u_i = u_i u_j \text{ whenever } |j - i| > 1. \]

Given a ring \( R \) and a parameter \( \delta \in R \), the Temperley-Lieb algebra \( A_n(\delta) \) is the free \( R \)-algebra, generated by the \( u_i \) as above, satisfying the above relations with \( d = \delta \). More details can be found in [341, 207, 215, 1], as well as §C.10.7.

\section*{A.1.30 Brauer monoids.} Given \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), the \( n \)-th Brauer monoid [55, 227] is presented by the 2-polygraph with 1-generators \( a_i \) and \( u_i \), indexed by \( 0 \leq i < n \), subject to the 12 families of relations, indexed by \( 0 \leq i, j < n \),

- for \( 0 \leq i < n \),
  \[ a_i a_i = 1 \quad u_i u_i = 1 \quad a_i u_i = u_i \quad u_i a_i = u_i \]
- for \( |j - i| = 1 \),
  \[ a_i a_j a_i = a_j a_i a_j \quad u_i u_j u_i = u_i \quad a_i a_j a_i = a_j u_i a_j \quad u_i a_j u_i = u_i \]
- for \( |j - i| > 1 \),
  \[ a_j a_i = a_i a_j \quad u_j u_i = u_i u_j \quad u_j a_i = a_i u_j \]
- for \( 0 \leq i < n - 3 \),
  \[ a_i a_{i+1} u_{i+2} = a_{i+2} a_{i+1} u_{i+2} \]

In particular, the relations satisfied by the \( a_i \) are precisely those of the symmetric group, see §A.1.19, and the relations satisfied by the \( u_i \) are those of Temperley-Lieb monoids with \( d = 1 \), see §A.1.29. More details about Brauer algebras, as well as a graphical illustration of the relations can be found in §C.10.8.

\section*{A.1.31 Graphs.} Consider the monoid presented by

\[ \langle \star | s, t | ss = st = s, ts = tt = t \rangle. \]

A right action of this monoid on a set \( X \) is precisely a directed graph: the vertices are elements \( x \in X \) such that \( x \cdot s = x \cdot t = x \), and other elements \( y \in X \) are edges with source \( y \cdot s \) and target \( y \cdot t \).

\section*{A.1.32 Tseitin monoid.} The Tseitin monoid is the one whose set of 1-generators is \( \{ a, c, b, d, e \} \), subject to the relations

\[ ac = ca \quad bc = cb \quad eca = ce \quad cca = cca \]
\[ ad = da \quad bd = db \quad edb = de \]
The reason why it is interesting is that it admits a small presentation, and yet it was shown to have undecidable word problem by Tseitin [346] (see Section 4.2), meaning that, writing $P$ for the above 2-polygraph, there is no algorithm which, given any two 1-cells $u, v \in P^*_1$, answers whether $u \approx^P v$ holds or not. In fact, a 1-polygraph with only three relations exhibiting this property can be found [272].

A.2 Presentations of categories

An example of a presentation of a category which is not a monoid was already given in Example 2.3.12: the walking isomorphism category. There are possible variations on this construction of the "walking something", as we show below, although most interesting categorical constructions (e.g. adjunctions) are 2-categorical and will require using 3-polygraphs.

A.2.1 The walking retract. A retract in a category $C$ consists of a pair of morphisms $a : x \to y$ and $b : y \to x$ such that $b \circ a = 1_x$. In this case, $a$ is called a section and $b$ a retraction. The walking retract is the category presented by

$$\langle x, y \mid a : x \to y, b : y \to x \mid ab = 1_x \rangle.$$  

It can be described as the category

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{
\circlearrowright x \\
\circlearrowleft y
}
\end{array}
$$

with two objects $x, y$ and three non-trivial morphisms

$$a : x \to y \quad b : y \to x \quad c : y \to y$$

with non-trivial compositions

$$ab = 1_x \quad ac = a \quad ba = c \quad cc = c$$

A.2.2 Interval objects. Given an object $x$ in a category, a cylinder on $x$ is an object $y$ together with morphisms $s, t : x \to y$ and $p : y \to x$ such that $p \circ s = 1_x = p \circ t$. A typical example of cylinder object on a topological space $X$ is the space $X \times I$, where $I = [0, 1]$ is the standard interval, with $s(x) = (x, 0)$, $t(x) = (x, 1)$ and $p(x, a) = x$, see [211] for details. The theory of an object together with a cylinder is the category presented by

$$\langle x, y \mid s : x \to y, t : x \to y, p : y \to x \mid sp = 1_x, tp = 1_x \rangle.$$
Note that it is a variation on previous case, since it consists of two morphisms with a common retraction. Depending on the applications, the cylinder can be equipped with various extra morphisms such as

- **reversion**: a morphism $r : y \to y$ satisfying
  \[
  r \circ s = t \quad r \circ t = s \quad r \circ r = 1_x \quad s \circ r = s
  \]
typically, the endomorphism of $X \times I$ defined by $r(x, a) = (x, 1 - a)$,

- **concatenation**: morphisms $c^-, c^+ : y \to y$ satisfying the relations
  \[
  s \circ c^- = s \quad t \circ c^+ = t \quad p \circ c^- = p \quad p \circ c^+ = p
  \]
and moreover, in the presence of a reversion
  \[
  r \circ c^- = c^+ \circ r \quad r \circ c^+ = c^- \circ r
  \]
typically, on a topological cylinder $X \times I$, we define $c^-(x, a) = (x, 1 - a)$
and $c^+(x, a) = (x, a + 1)$.

### A.2.3 The walking factorization.

A factorization of a morphism $c : x \to z$ consists of a pair of morphisms $a : x \to y$ and $b : y \to z$ such that $c = b \circ a$. The **walking factorization** is the category presented by

\[
\langle x, y, z | a : x \to y, b : y \to z, c : x \to z | ab = c \rangle.
\]

It can be described as the category with \{0, 1, 2\} as objects, one morphism $i \to j$ whenever $i \leq j$ and no morphism $i \to j$ whenever $i > j$.

### A.2.4 The walking $n$-span.

Given a natural number $n$, consider the poset $S_n$ whose elements are

\[
S_n = \{x_0^-, x_0^+, x_1^-, x_1^+, \ldots, x_{n-1}^-, x_{n-1}^+, x_n\}
\]
ordered by $x_i^\alpha < x_j^\beta$ whenever $i < j$, for any $\alpha, \beta \in \{-, +\}$, and $x_n$ is the maximal element. For $n = 0, 1, 2, 3$, the Hasse diagram of the poset is

\[
\begin{align*}
x_0 & \searrow x_1 \\
x_0^- & \downarrow x_0^+ & x_1^- & \uparrow x_1^+ & x_2^- & \downarrow x_2^+ & x_3^- & \uparrow x_3^+
\end{align*}
\]

This poset can be seen as a category, still denoted $S_n$, with the above set of objects and an arrow $x \to y$ when $x \leq y$. Given a category $C$, a functor $S_n \to C$
(resp. $S_n^{op} \to C$) is called an $n$-cospan (resp. $n$-span) [29]. In particular, a 1-span is a span in the usual sense. A typical $n$-cospan in the category $\textbf{Top}$ is given by sending $x_i^n$ to the $i$-disk $D_i^1$, the inclusion $x_{i-1}^n \to x_i^n$ (resp. $x_{i-1}^n \to x_i^n$) corresponding to the inclusion of the $(i-1)$-disk into the lower (resp. upper) hemisphere of the sphere $S^{i-1}$ bounding the disk $D_i^1$. The category $S_n$ admits a presentation with

- 0-generators: $x_i^0, x_i^1, x_n$ for $0 \leq i < n$,
- 1-generators: $x_i^\alpha \to x_i^\beta$ and $x_{n-1}^\alpha \to x_n$ for $0 < i < n$ and $\alpha, \beta \in \{-, +\}$,
- 2-generators:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{
 x_{i-1}^\beta \ar[rr]^{\gamma} & & x_{i-1}^\beta' \\
x_{i-2}^\alpha \ar[ru] & & x_{n-1}^\beta' \ar[ru] \ar[ll]_{\delta}
}
\end{array}
\]

for $1 < i < n$ and $\alpha, \beta, \beta', \gamma \in \{-, +\}$.

**A.2.5 The globe category.** Given an integer $n \geq 0$, we write $\mathcal{O}^{(n)}$ for the category with $\{0, \ldots, n\}$ as objects and two non-trivial morphisms $\sigma^j_i, \tau^j_i : j \to i$ for every $j < i$, with composition given by $f \circ \sigma^j_i = \sigma^j_k$ and $f \circ \tau^j_i = \tau^j_k$ for every morphism $f : j \to k$. Writing $\sigma_i$ and $\tau_i$ for $\sigma^i_i$ and $\tau^i_i$, it can be pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
0 \xrightarrow{\sigma_0} 1 \xrightarrow{\sigma_1} \cdots \xrightarrow{\sigma_{n-1}} n.
\end{array}
\]

This category is called the category of globes of dimension $\leq n$ and a presheaf on $\mathcal{O}^{(n)}$ an $n$-globular set, see Section 14.1. The category $\mathcal{O}^{(n)}$ admits the presentation

\[
\langle 0, \ldots, n \mid \sigma_i, \tau_i : i \to i + 1 \mid \sigma_i \tau_i = \tau_i + 1, \sigma_i + 1 \tau_i = \tau_i + 1 \tau_i \rangle.
\]

**A.2.6 The augmented simplicial category.** The augmented simplicial category $\Delta_+$ is the category where an object is a natural number $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and a morphism $f : m \to n$ is a weakly monotone function $f : [m] \to [n]$, where $[n]$ denotes the set $\{0, \ldots, n-1\}$. A presentation of this category is detailed in §4.5.6.

**A.2.7 Presentations of monoidal categories.** Many categories of interest are actually monoidal categories. It is generally much easier to present them as
monoidal categories (as opposed to as a category) and then deduce a presentation of those as categories if one insists on having that, see §10.3.10. For instance, one can construct a presentation of the augmented simplicial category $\Delta_+$, see §10.3.2, and recover the presentation evoked in previous section, see Example 10.3.11.
Appendix B
Examples of coherent presentations of monoids

In this chapter, we present examples of coherent presentations of monoids, in the sense developed in Chapter 7. In particular, we focus on families of monoids which occur in algebra and whose coherent presentations are computed using the rewriting method that extends Squier’s and Knuth-Bendix’s completion procedures into a homotopical completion-reduction procedure as presented in Chapter 7. Theorem B.1.2 shows how coherent presentations of monoids can be used to make explicit the actions of monoids on small categories. We apply this construction to the case of Artin monoids in §B.1. In particular, we prove that the Zamolodchikov 3-generators extend the Artin presentation into a coherent presentation (Theorem B.1.9) and, as a byproduct, we give a constructive proof of a theorem of Deligne on the actions of an Artin monoid on a category. We also give coherent presentations of plactic and Chinese monoids in §B.2.

B.1 Artin monoids

We provide here coherent presentations of Artin monoids, already introduced in §A.1.25. We also explain that these provide an explicit description of actions of those monoids on categories. The construction is done in two stages. Given an Artin monoid $B^*(W)$ on a Coxeter group $W$, first we consider the coherent presentation $Gar_3(W)$ constructed on the Garside presentation of $B^*(W)$. Then we apply the homotopical completion-reduction on this coherent presentation by examining a family of generating triple confluences. We thus obtain a coherent presentation $Art_3(W)$ of $B^*(W)$ that extends the Artin presentation.

B.1.1 Action of monoids on categories. Let $M$ be a monoid seen as a 2-category with exactly one 0-cell $\ast$, with the elements of $M$ as 1-cells, 0-composition given by product in $M$ and with identity 2-cells only, see Lemma A.1.2. An
action $T$ of the monoid $M$ on a category is a pseudofunctor $T : M \to \text{Cat}$. More explicitly, such an action is specified by

- a category $C = T(\ast)$,
- an endofunctor $T(u) : C \to C$ for every element $u$ of $M$,
- a natural isomorphism $T_{u,v} : T(u)T(v) \Rightarrow T(uv)$ for every pair $(u, v)$ of elements of $M$ and a natural isomorphism $T_\ast : 1_C \Rightarrow T(1)$,

satisfying the following conditions:

- for every triple $(u, v, w)$ of elements of $M$, the following diagram commutes:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
T(u)vT(w) \\ T(uvw) \\
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
T(1)vT(w) \\ T(uvw) \\
\end{array}
\]

- for every element $u$ of $M$, the following two diagrams commute:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
T(u) \\ T(u)
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
T(1) \\ T(u)
\end{array}
\]

Such an action corresponds to a 2-representation of $M$ in $\text{Cat}$, as defined by Elgueta in [122]. We denote by $\text{Rep}_2(M, \text{Cat})$ the category of actions of $M$ on categories, equipped with suitable morphisms, as detailed in [145, Section 5.1]. The following result is proved in [145, Theorem 5.1.6]:

**B.1.2 Theorem.** Suppose given a monoid $M$ and a coherent presentation of $M$ by a $(3,1)$-polygraph $P$. We have an equivalence of categories

$$\text{Rep}_2(M, \text{Cat}) \cong \text{Cat}_2(\overline{P}, \text{Cat})$$

between actions of $M$ on categories and 2-functors from the $(2,1)$-category presented by $P$ to $\text{Cat}$.

Deligne already observed that this equivalence holds for Garside’s presentation of spherical Artin monoids [111, Theorem 1.5]. In the rest of this section, we present an application of Theorem B.1.2 to give an equational description of an action of an Artin monoid on a category using Zamolodchikov relations.

**B.1.3 Coxeter groups.** Recall from §A.1.25 that a Coxeter group is a group $W$ that admits a presentation with a finite set $S$ of generators and with one relation

$$(st)^{m_{st}} = 1$$

(B.1)
with $m_{st} \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\}$, for every $s$ and $t$ in $S$, with the following requirements and conventions:

- $m_{st} = \infty$ means that there is, in fact, no relation between $s$ and $t$.
- $m_{st} = 1$ if and only if $s = t$.

The last requirement implies that $s^2 = 1$ holds in $W$ for every $s$ in $S$. As a consequence, the group $W$ can also be seen as the monoid with the same presentation. As in §A.1.25, we denote by $(st)^n$ the element of length $n$ in the free monoid $S^*$, obtained by multiplication of alternating copies of $s$ and $t$:

$$(st)^0 = 1, \quad (st)^n+1 = s(ts)^n.$$  

When $s \neq t$ and $m_{st} < \infty$, we use this notation and the relations $s^2 = t^2 = 1$ to write (B.1) as a braid relation:

$$(st)^{m_{st}} = (ts)^{m_{st}}. \tag{B.2}$$

A reduced expression of an element $u$ of $W$ is a representative of minimal length of $u$ in the free monoid $S^*$, and we write $l(u)$ for the length of any of the reduced expressions of $u$, called the length of $u$. The Coxeter group $W$ is finite if and only if it admits an element of maximal length [56, Theorem 5.6]. In that case, this element is unique, called the longest element of $W$ and is denoted by $w_0(S)$. For $I \subseteq S$, the subgroup of $W$ spanned by the elements of $I$ is denoted by $W_I$. It is a Coxeter group with generating set $I$. If $W_I$ is finite, we denote by $w_0(I)$ its longest element.

We recall that the Artin monoid associated to $W$ is the monoid denoted by $B^+(W)$, generated by $S$ and subject to the braid relations (B.2). This presentation, seen as a 2-polygraph, is denoted by $\text{Art}_2(W)$ and called Artin’s presentation. This is the same as the one of $W$, except for the relations $s^2 = 1$.

### B.1.4 Length notation.

For every $u$ and $v$ in $W$, we have $l(uv) \leq l(u) + l(v)$ and we will use the following notations

$$u \underset{\Rightarrow}{\overset{\Leftarrow}{\sim}} v \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad l(uv) = l(u) + l(v),$$

$$u \times v \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad l(uv) < l(u) + l(v).$$

We generalize the notation for a greater number of elements of $W$. For example, in the case of three elements $u, v$ and $w$ of $W$, we write $u \sim v \sim w$ when both equalities $l(uv) = l(u) + l(v)$ and $l(vw) = l(v) + l(w)$ hold. This case splits in
the following two mutually exclusive subcases:

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{rcl}
\alpha_{u,v} & : u \to uv \\
\beta_{u,v,w} & : u \to uw \\
\gamma_{u,v} & : u \to uw \\
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
u \leq w & \iff (u \leq v \leq w) \\
& \iff (u \leq v) + (v \leq w) \\
& \iff (u \leq v) + (v \leq w) + (w \leq w) \\
& \iff (u \leq v) + (v \leq w) + (w \leq w) \\
\end{align*}
\]

B.1.5 Garside’s coherent presentation. Let \( W \) be a Coxeter group. We call \textit{Garside’s presentation of} \( B^+(W) \) the 2-polygraph \( \text{Gar}_2(W) \) whose 1-cells are the elements of \( W \setminus \{1\} \) and with one 2-cell

\[
\alpha_{u,v} : u \to uv
\]

whenever \( l(uv) = l(u) + l(v) \) holds. Here, we write \( uv \) for the product in \( W \) and \( uv \) for the product in the free monoid over \( W \). We denote by \( \text{Gar}_3(W) \) the extended presentation of \( B^+(W) \) obtained from \( \text{Gar}_2(W) \) by adjunction of one 3-cell

\[
\begin{align*}
u \leq w & \iff (u \leq v \leq w) \\
& \iff (u \leq v) + (v \leq w) \\
& \iff (u \leq v) + (v \leq w) + (w \leq w) \\
\end{align*}
\]

for every \( u, v \) and \( w \) of \( W \setminus \{1\} \) with \( u \leq v \).

B.1.6 Homotopical completion-reduction of Garside’s presentation. The coherent presentation \( \text{Gar}_3(W) \) can be computed by coherent completion-reduction of the 2-polygraph \( \text{Gar}_2(W) \), as we know explain, see [145].

Let \( < \) denote the strict order on the elements of the free monoid \( W^* \) that first compares their length as elements of \( W^* \), then the length of their components, starting from the right. The order relation \( \leq \) generated by \( < \) by adding reflexivity is a termination order on \( \text{Gar}_2(W) \): for every 2-cell \( \alpha_{u,v} \) of \( \text{Gar}_2(W) \), we have \( u|v > uv \). Hence the 2-polygraph \( \text{Gar}_2(W) \) terminates, so that its coherent completion is defined (see Section 7.5). By applying the coherence completion-reduction procedure (see §7.5.6), one can obtain a coherent extension of the Garside presentation \( \text{Gar}_2(W) \), as detailed in [145, Proposition 3.2.1]. The resulting \((3,1)\)-polygraph \( \text{KBS}(\text{Gar}_2(W)) \) has one 0-cell, one 1-cell for every element of \( W \setminus \{1\} \), the 2-cells

\[
\alpha_{u,v} : u \to uv \\
\beta_{u,w,v} : u \to uw
\]
for every \( u \) and \( v \) of \( W \setminus \{1\} \) with \( u \overset{\vee}{\rightarrow} v \) and every \( u, v \) and \( w \) of \( W \setminus \{1\} \) with \( u \overset{\vee}{\rightarrow} v \overset{\vee}{\rightarrow} w \), and the nine following families of 3-cells

These 3-cells are families indexed by all the possible elements of \( W \setminus \{1\} \), that can be deduced by the sources and targets of the 2-cells. For example, there is one 3-cell \( A_{u,v,w} \) for every elements \( u, v \) and \( w \) in \( W \setminus \{1\} \) with \( u \overset{\vee}{\rightarrow} v \overset{\vee}{\rightarrow} w \).
and one 3-cell $F_{u,v,w,x,y}$ for every elements $u, v, w, x$ and $y$ in $W \setminus \{1\}$ with $u < v < w < x$.

By considering a family of generating triple confluences, associated to some of the triple critical branchings of $\text{KBS}(\text{Gar}_2(W))$, one can reduce this family of 3-cells and obtain the following result [145, Theorem 6.4.3]:

**B.1.7 Theorem.** For every Coxeter group $W$, the Artin monoid $B^+(W)$ admits $\text{Gar}_3(W)$ as a coherent presentation.

The $(3,1)$-polygraph $\text{Gar}_3(W)$ is called Garside’s coherent presentation of the Artin monoid $B^+(W)$.

**B.1.8 Artin’s coherent presentation of Artin monoids.** Let $W$ be a Coxeter group with a totally ordered set $S$ of generators. The homotopical reduction method of §7.5.6 can be used on Garside’s coherent presentation $\text{Gar}_3(W)$ to contract it into a smaller coherent presentation associated to Artin’s presentation [145].

We consider the presentation of the Artin monoid $B^+(W)$ by the 2-polygraph $\text{Art}_2(W)$ with one 0-cell, the elements of $S$ as 1-cell and one 2-cell

$$\gamma_{s,t} : \langle ts \rangle^{m_{st}} \Rightarrow \langle st \rangle^{m_{st}},$$

for every $t > s$ in $S$ such that $m_{st}$ is finite. The following result extends the 2-polygraph $\text{Art}_2(W)$ into a coherent presentation of the Artin monoid $B^+(W)$, called the Artin coherent presentation of $B^+(W)$ [145, Theorem 4.1.1]. This coherent presentation is obtained using the homotopical reduction §7.5.4 on Garside’s coherent presentation $\text{Gar}_3(W)$.

**B.1.9 Theorem.** For every Coxeter group $W$, the Artin monoid $B^+(W)$ admits the coherent presentation $\text{Art}_3(W)$ made of Artin’s presentation $\text{Art}_2(W)$ and one 3-cell $Z_{r,s,t}$ for every elements $t > s > r$ of $S$ such that the subgroup $W_{\{r,s,t\}}$ is finite.

Artin’s coherent presentation has exactly one $k$-cell, $0 \leq k \leq 3$, for every subset $I$ of $S$ of rank $k$ such that the subgroup $W_I$ is finite. The shape of the 3-generators $Z_{r,s,t}$ of the polygraph $\text{Art}_3(W)$ are obtained by projection of the 3-generators of the polygraph $\text{Gar}_3(W)$ given in §B.1.6 and depend on the type of the Coxeter type of the parabolic subgroup $W_{\{r,s,t\}}$. According to the classification of finite Coxeter groups [53, Chapter VI, §4, Theorem 1], there
Coherent presentations of monoids

are five cases, shown below:

- type $A_3$:

According to this types, the 3-generators $Z_{r,s,t}$ have the following shapes
– type $B_3$:

– type $A_1 \times A_1 \times A_1$:
Coherent presentations of monoids

- type $H_3$:

- type $I_3(p) \times A_1$, $p \geq 3$:
B.1.10 Action of braid monoids on categories. Following Theorem B.1.2 that, up to equivalence, the actions of a monoid $M$ on categories are the same as the 2-functors from $\mathcal{P}$ to $\text{Cat}$, where $P$ is any coherent presentation of $M$. As an application of B.1.9, we establish the relationship between coherent presentations of Artin monoids and Deligne’s notion of an action on a category. In particular, Deligne’s Theorem [111, Theorem 1.5] is equivalent to Theorem B.1.7.

The extended presentation $\text{Gar}_3(W)$ is a coherent presentation of the Artin monoid $B^+(W)$. We thus get Deligne’s Theorem [111, Theorem 1.5], for any Artin monoid as a consequence of Theorems B.1.2 and B.1.7. Moreover, Theorem B.1.9 gives a similar result in terms of Artin’s coherent presentation $\text{Art}_3(W)$, formalizing [111, Paragraph 1.3] on the actions of $B^+_4$ on a category.

B.2 Plactic and Chinese monoids

We provide here coherent presentations of plactic and Chinese monoids whose presentations are recalled in §A.1.26. First, we recall a few points concerning the combinatorics of plactic monoids.

B.2.1 Rows, columns and tableaux. A row is a non-decreasing word $x_1 \ldots x_k$ in the free monoid $\{1, \ldots, n\}^*$, i.e., with $x_1 \leq x_2 \leq \ldots \leq x_k$. A column is a decreasing word $x_p \ldots x_1$ in $\{1, \ldots, n\}^*$, i.e., with $x_p > x_{p-1} > \ldots > x_1$. We denote by $\text{col}(n)$ the set of non-empty columns. A row $x_1 \ldots x_k$ dominates a row $y_1 \ldots y_l$, and we denote $x_1 \ldots x_k \triangleright y_1 \ldots y_l$, if $k \leq l$ and $x_i > y_i$, for $1 \leq i \leq k$. Any word $w$ in $\{1, \ldots, n\}^*$ has a unique decomposition as a product of rows of maximal length $u_1 \ldots u_k$, and it is called a tableau if $u_1 \triangleright u_2 \triangleright \ldots \triangleright u_k$.

B.2.2 Schensted’s algorithm. The Schensted algorithm computes for each $w$ in $\{1, \ldots, n\}^*$ a tableau, denoted by $P(w)$, called the Schensted tableau of $w$, and constructed from the following steps [320]. Given $u$ a tableau written as a product of rows of maximal length $u = u_1 \ldots u_k$ and $1 \leq y \leq n$, it computes the tableau $P(uy)$ as follows. If $u_ky$ is a row, the result is $u_1 \ldots u_{k-1}y$. If $u_ky$ is not a row, then suppose $u_k = x_1 \ldots x_l$ with $1 \leq x_i \leq n$ and let $j$ minimal such that $x_j > y$, then the result is $P(u_1 \ldots u_{k-1}x_j)v_k$, where $v_k = x_1 \ldots x_{j-1}x_jx_{j+1} \ldots x_l$. The tableau $P(w)$ is computed from the empty tableau and iteratively applying the Schensted algorithm. In this way, $P(w)$ is the row reading of the planar representation of the tableau computed by the Schensted algorithm.
B.2.3 Knuth’s 2-polygraph. Let us give an orientation to the Knuth relations set out in §A.1.26 with respect to the lexicographic order, thus forming a 2-polygraph, denoted by Knuth$_2(n)$, whose 1-generators are $1, \ldots, n$ and the 2-generators are

\[
\eta_{x,y,z} : zxy \Rightarrow zyx, \quad \text{for } 1 \leq x < y < z \leq n,
\]
\[
\varepsilon_{x,y,z} : yzx \Rightarrow yxz, \quad \text{for } 1 \leq x < y \leq z \leq n.
\]

The congruence on the free monoid $\{1, \ldots, n\}^*$ generated by this polygraph is called the plactic congruence of rank $n$ and the 2-polygraph Knuth$_2(n)$ is a presentation of the plactic monoid $P_n$, [217, Theorem 6].

B.2.4 Pre-column presentation. One adds to the presentation Knuth$_2(n)$ one superfluous generator $c_u$ for any $u$ in col$(n)$. We denote by Col$_1(n)$ the set of column generators $c_u$ for any $u$ in col$(n)$ and by

\[
\gamma_u : c_{x_p} \cdots c_{x_1} \Rightarrow c_u,
\]

the defining relation for the column generators $u = x_p \cdots x_1$ in col$(n)$ of length greater than 2. In the free monoid Col$_1(n)^*$, the Knuth relations can be written in the following form

\[
\eta_{x,y,z}^c : c_x c_y c_z \Rightarrow c_y c_x c_z, \quad \text{for } 1 \leq x < y < z \leq n,
\]
\[
\varepsilon_{x,y,z}^c : c_y c_z c_x \Rightarrow c_z c_y c_x, \quad \text{for } 1 \leq x < y \leq z \leq n.
\]

The 2-polygraph Knuth$_2^c(n)$ whose 1-generators are columns and 2-generators are the defining relations $\gamma_u$ for columns generators and the Knuth relations $\eta_{x,y,z}^c$ and $\varepsilon_{x,y,z}^c$ is a presentation of the monoid $P_n$. We define the 2-polygraph PreCol$_2(n)$ with column generators and the 2-cells are

\[
\alpha_{x,z,y}^c : c_x c_y c_z \Rightarrow c_z c_x c_y, \quad \text{for } 1 \leq x < y < z \leq n,
\]
\[
\alpha_{y,z,x}^c : c_y c_z c_x \Rightarrow c_y c_x c_z, \quad \text{for } 1 \leq x < y \leq z \leq n,
\]
\[
\alpha_{x,u}^c : c_x c_u \Rightarrow c_{xu}, \quad \text{for } xu \in \text{col}(n) \text{ and } 1 \leq x \leq n,
\]

where the 2-generators $\alpha_{x,z,y}^c$ and $\alpha_{y,z,x}^c$ correspond respectively to the Knuth relations $\eta_{x,y,z}^c$ and $\varepsilon_{x,y,z}^c$. The 2-polygraph PreCol$_2(n)$ is a presentation of the monoid $P_n$, then called the pre-column presentation.

B.2.5 Coherent column presentation. Given columns $u$ and $v$, if the planar representation of the Schensted tableau $P(uv)$ is not the tableau obtained as the concatenation of the two columns $u$ and $v$, we write $u \times v$. In this case, the tableau $P(uv)$ contains at most two columns [74, Lemma 3.1]. We write $u^x v$
(resp. \( u^{x_2}v \)) if the tableau \( P(uv) \) has one column (resp. two columns). When \( u \triangleright v \), we define a 2-generator

\[
\alpha_{u,v} : c_u c_v \Rightarrow c_w c_{w'}
\]

where \( w = uv \) and \( c_{w'} = 1 \), if \( u^{x_1}v \), and \( w \) and \( w' \) are respectively the left and right columns of the tableau \( P(uw) \), if \( u^{x_2}v \).

The 2-polygraph \( \text{Col}_2(n) \) whose set of 1-generators is \( \text{Col}_1(n) \) and the 2-generators are the \( \alpha_{u,v} \) is a finite convergent presentation of the monoid \( P_n \), called the column presentation [74]. Using the coherent completion procedure defined in §7.5.2, this polygraph is extended into the column coherent presentation \( \text{Col}_3(n) \) of the monoid \( P_n \), [173, Theorem 3.2.2]. Its 3-generators, given by the confluence diagrams of the critical branchings of the 2-polygraph \( \text{Col}_2(n) \), have the following hexagonal form:

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
C_u C_v C_t & C_x C_y C_t & C_y C_b C_b' & C_x C_b C_b' \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
C_x C_v C_t & C_y C_w C_{w'} & C_y C_d C_{b'} & C_x C_d C_{b'} \\
\end{array}
\]

for any columns \( u, v \) and \( t \) such that \( u \triangleright v \triangleright t \).

**B.2.6 Pre-column coherent presentation.** Using the homotopical reduction procedure (§7.5.6), the coherent presentation \( \text{Col}_3(n) \) can be reduced into a smaller coherent presentation of \( P_n \) as follows. Firstly, we apply a homotopical reduction on the (3, 1)-polygraph \( \text{Col}_3(n) \) with a collapsible part defined by some of the generating triple confluences of the 2-polygraph \( \text{Col}_2(n) \). In this way, we reduce the coherent presentation \( \text{Col}_3(n) \) of the monoid \( P_n \) into the coherent presentation \( \text{Col}_2(n) \) of \( P_n \), whose underlying 2-polygraph is \( \text{Col}_2(n) \) and the 3-cells \( X_{u,v,t} \) are those of \( \text{Col}_3(n) \), but with \( u \) is of length 1. Then we reduce the coherent presentation \( \text{Col}_3(n) \) into a coherent presentation \( \text{PreCol}_3(n) \) obtained from \( \text{PreCol}_2(n) \) by adjunction of the 3-cell \( R_1(C_{x,v,t}) \) where

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
C_x C_v C_t & C_x C_y C_t & C_x C_y C_t & C_x C_x C_t \\
\downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\
C_x C_v C_t & C_x C_w C_{w'} & C_x C_w C_{w'} & C_x C_x C_t \\
\end{array}
\]
with $x^1 v^2 t$, and the 3-cell $R_{13}(D_{x,v,t})$ where

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{ 
  c_x c_v c_t \ar[r]^-{\alpha_x a' c_t} & c_e c_v c_t \ar[r]^-{\alpha_v b c_t} & c_b c_t \ar[r]^-{\alpha_t c_t' e} & c_a c_t' \ar[r]^-{\alpha_t c_t' e} & c_d c_t' \\
  c_x c_w c_t \ar[r]^-{\alpha_x a' c_t} & c_x c_w c_t' \ar[r]^-{\alpha_v b c_t} & c_a c_w c_t' \ar[r]^-{\alpha_t c_t' e} & c_b c_w c_t' \ar[r]^-{\alpha_t c_t' e} & c_a c_w c_t' 
}
\end{array}
$$

with $x^2 v^2 t$ and where the homotopical reduction $R_{13}$ eliminates a collapsible part $\Gamma_3$ of $\text{Col}_3(n)$. In this way, we prove that the $(3,1)$-polygraph $\text{PreCol}_3(n)$ is a coherent presentation of the monoid $P_n$ [173, Theorem 4.3.4]. For instance, the coherent presentation $\text{Col}_3(2)$ has only one 3-cell

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{ 
  C_{21} C_{21} \ar[r]^-{\alpha_{21} c_{21}} & C_{21} C_{21} \ar[r]^-{\alpha_{21} c_{21}} & C_{21} C_{21} \ar[r]^-{\alpha_{21} c_{21}} & C_{21} C_{21} \\
  C_{21} C_{21} \ar[r]^-{\alpha_{21} c_{21}} & C_{21} C_{21} \ar[r]^-{\alpha_{21} c_{21}} & C_{21} C_{21} \ar[r]^-{\alpha_{21} c_{21}} & C_{21} C_{21} 
}
\end{array}
$$

In this case, the $(3,1)$-polygraphs $\text{PreCol}_3(2)$ and $\text{Col}_3(2)$ coincide.

**B.2.7 Knuth’s coherent presentation.** The coherent presentation $\text{PreCol}_3(n)$ can be reduced into a coherent presentation of the monoid $P_n$ whose underlying 2-polygraph is $\text{Knuth}_2(n)$. We define an extended presentation $\text{Knuth}_3(n)$ of the monoid $P_n$ obtained from $\text{Knuth}_2(n)$ by adjunction of the following set of 3-cells

$$
\left\{ R(C'_{x,v,t}) \begin{array}{c} x^1 v^2 t \\ x^2 v^2 t \end{array} \bigg| \bigg. \right\} \cup \{ R(D_{x,v,t}) \begin{array}{c} x^1 v^2 t \\ x^2 v^2 t \end{array} \bigg| \bigg. \right\}.
$$

where $R : \overline{\text{Col}_3(n)}^\top \rightarrow \text{Knuth}_2(n)^\top$ is a Tietze transformation, see [173, Section 4.4]. This gives a coherent presentation of the plactic monoid on the Knuth generators.

**B.2.8 Theorem** ([173, Theorem 4.4.7]). *For $n > 0$, the $(3,1)$-polygraph $\text{Knuth}_3(n)$ is a coherent presentation of the monoid $P_n$.***

**B.2.9 Example.** For instance, the Knuth coherent presentation of the monoid $P_2$ has generators $c_1$ and $c_2$ subject to the Knuth relations

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\eta_{1,1,2} : c_2 c_1 e_1 \Rightarrow c_1 c_2 e_1 \quad \text{and} \quad \varepsilon_{1,2,2} : c_2 c_1 e_1 \Rightarrow c_2 c_1 c_2 
\end{array}
$$

and the following 3-cell

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\xymatrix{ 
  c_2 c_1 c_2 \ar[r]^-{2\eta_{1,1,2}} & c_1 c_2 \ar[r]^-{\eta_{1,1,2}} & c_1 c_2 
}
\end{array}
$$
Note that the Knuth coherent presentation of the monoid $P_2$ corresponds to the coherent presentation that one can compute directly using the fact that the 2-polygraph $Knuth_2(2)$ is convergent.

**B.2.10 Chinese monoids.** Using the completion-reduction method, as applied previously for the plactic monoid, we calculate a coherent presentation of the Chinese monoid $Ch_n$ of rank $n > 0$ whose presentation is recalled in (A.2). We do not give here the details of this construction, developed in [174], but only present the method to obtain the form of the 3-generators of this coherent presentation.

Chinese relations (A.2) generate the Chinese congruence, denoted by $\sim_{Ch}$, and interpreted in [80] in terms of Chinese staircases. A Chinese staircase is a collection of boxes in right-justified rows, filled with non-negative integers, whose rows and columns are indexed with elements of $\{1, \ldots, n\}$ from top to bottom and from right to left respectively, and where the $i$-th row contains $i$ boxes, for $1 \leq i \leq n$. We denote by $R(t)$ the reading of a Chinese staircase $t$, row by row from right to left and from top to bottom. A Schensted-like insertion algorithm, denoted by $\hookrightarrow_r$, is introduced in [80], and consists in inserting an element of $\{1, \ldots, n\}$ into a Chinese staircase from the right. From a word $w = x_1x_2 \ldots x_k$, we associate a Chinese staircase $[w]$ obtained by insertion of $w$ in the empty staircase $\emptyset$ by application of $\hookrightarrow_r$ step by step from left to right:

$[w] := (\ldots ((\emptyset \hookrightarrow_r x_1) \hookrightarrow_r x_2) \hookrightarrow_r \ldots) \hookrightarrow_r x_k$.

Chinese staircases satisfy the cross-section property for the congruence $\sim_{Ch}$, that is, for all words $w$ and $w'$, $w \sim_{Ch} w'$ if and only if the insertion algorithm yields the same Chinese staircase: $[w] = [w']$, [80]. The elements of the monoid $Ch_n$ can thus be identified with the Chinese staircases, which also form a monoid, whose product is defined by setting $t \cdot t' := (t \hookrightarrow_r R(t'))$, for all Chinese staircases $t$ and $t'$.

We construct a finite convergent presentation $Chin_2(n)$ of the monoid $Ch_n$, whose 1-generators are columns on $\{1, \ldots, n\}$ of length at most 2 and square generators, as defined in [174, Section 4.1], and whose 2-generators are

$$\gamma_{u,v} : c_u c_v \Rightarrow c_e c_e'$$

for all columns $c_u$ and $c_v$ such that $c_u c_v$ does not form a Chinese staircase and $c_u \star_r c_v$ is equal to the Chinese staircase composed by the columns $c_e$ and $c_{e'}$. Note that the polygraph $Chin_2(n)$ is obtained from the relations (A.2) by applying Tietze transformations, defined in Section 5.1, which consist in adding column generators and associated relations.

By definition of the 2-generators, the source of each critical branching
Coherent presentations of monoids

of Chin\(_2(n)\) has the form \(c_\mu c_\nu c_\tau\), for columns \(c_\mu, c_\nu, c_\tau\) such that \(c_\mu c_\nu\) and \(c_\nu c_\tau\) are not Chinese staircases. Their confluence diagrams are then obtained by applying the 2-generators \(\gamma\), see [174, Theorem 5.6] for a detailed proof. Following Squier’s homotopical theorem, Theorem 7.3.5, the 2-polygraph Chin\(_2(n)\) extends into a coherent presentation Chin\(_3(n)\) of the monoid \(Ch_n\) by adjunction of 3-generators with the following decagonal form

\[
\begin{align*}
\gamma_{a,b} & : c_e c_{e'} c_t \longrightarrow c_e c_{e'} c_{b'} c_b \longrightarrow c_s c_s' c_t \longrightarrow c_s c_{s'} c_{t'} \longrightarrow c_{k} c_{k'} c_t' \longrightarrow c_t c_{t'} c_k' \longrightarrow c_t c_{t'} c_{k'}
\end{align*}
\]

for all column \(c_\mu, c_\nu, c_\tau\) such that \(c_\mu c_\nu\) and \(c_\nu c_\tau\) are not normal forms with respect to Chin\(_2(n)\), and where the \(\gamma\) denote either a 2-generator of Chin\(_2(n)\) or an identity. This proves the following result.

**B.2.11 Theorem.** For \(n > 0\), the \((3, 1)\)-polygraph Col\(_3(n)\) is a finite coherent convergent presentation of the Chinese monoid Chin\(_n\).
Appendix C
A catalogue of 3-polygraphs

In this chapter, we give some examples of presentations of 2-categories by 3-polygraphs. In many examples, the presented 2-categories are in fact monoidal categories and, actually, PROs. For those, we consider presentations by 3-polygraphs $P$ with only one 0-generator $*$ and one 1-generator $a$, so that we only need to provide the 2-generators (which we simply call generators) and 3-generators (which we call rules or relations). Moreover, we simply write $n$ instead of $a^n$ for a 1-cell in $P_1$. 

C.1 Braids and symmetries

C.1.1 Positive braids. The category $B^+$ of positive braids contains all positive braid groups $B^+_n$, see §A.1.21. It has natural numbers as objects, every positive braid $b \in B^+_n$ induces a morphism $n \rightarrow n$, for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and composition and identities are induced by multiplication and units of the monoids $B^+_n$. Otherwise said, if we consider the monoids $B^+_n$ as one-object categories (see §A.1.1), we have

$$B^+ = \bigsqcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} B^+_n.$$ 

The expected monoidal structure makes a PRO out of it. As such, it admits a presentation by a 3-polygraph with one 2-generator $\gamma : 2 \rightarrow 2$, called braiding and pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\gamma \\
\end{array}
\]
one 3-generator corresponding to the Yang-Baxter relation
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c}
\vspace{1em}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
\vspace{1em}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

(C.1)

**C.1.2 Braids.** The category \( \mathcal{B} \) of braids is defined similarly as
\[
\mathcal{B} = \bigsqcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} B_n
\]
where \( B_n \) is the \( n \)-th braid group, see §A.1.21, so that this category is a groupoid. It admits a presentation with two 2-generators \( \gamma, \gamma^{-1} : 2 \to 2 \),
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c}
\vspace{1em}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\vspace{1em}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]
and three relations: the Yang-Baxter relation (C.1), as well as
\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c}
\vspace{1em}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
\vspace{1em}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]
As an application, consider the ring \( R = \mathbb{Z}[t, t^{-1}] \) of Laurent polynomials in one variable \( t \). The category \( \text{Vect}_R \) of finitely generated free \( R \)-modules is monoidal with the usual tensor product. Writing \( P \) for the above presentation, we interpret a 1-cell \( n \) of \( P \) as \( R^n \), the 2-generators \( \gamma \) and \( \gamma^{-1} \) as the morphisms \( R^2 \to R^2 \) whose matrix representations are respectively
\[
[\gamma] = \begin{pmatrix} 1-t & t \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad [\gamma^{-1}] = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ t^{-1} & 1-t^{-1} \end{pmatrix}
\]
This interpretation can be checked to be compatible with the relations of the presentation and thus induces a monoidal functor \( f : \mathcal{B} \to \text{Vect}_R \), which is known as the Burau representation [70]. As a side note, this representation is not faithful [41] (i.e., there are distinct braids with the same image), but other are, such as Lawrence-Krammer representation [244, 42, 225].

**C.1.3 Permutations.** The category \( \mathcal{S} \) of permutations (or sometimes symmetries) is the monoidal category
\[
\mathcal{S} = \bigsqcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} S_n
\]
where \( S_n \) is the \( n \)-th symmetric group considered as a one-object category, see §A.1.19. Alternatively, the morphisms \( m \to n \) can be described as the
bijects \([m] \to [n]\) where \([n]\) is the set \([0, \ldots, n-1]\). A presentation for this category can be obtained from the presentation of \(B\) by adding the relation

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

In this case, the relation \(\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}\) can be derived, which is why we generally remove one of the two generators, and note the remaining one as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

which is often called \textit{transposition} in this context. The two relations of the presentation are thus

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

A notion of canonical form (which is in fact a normal form for the above rewriting system) was presented in §10.4.1: it consist of morphisms of the form

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

or

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

where the diagram on the left is the empty diagram, and \(\psi\) is a canonical form.

\textbf{C.1.4 Free braided and symmetric monoidal categories.} A \textit{braided strict monoidal category} \((C, \otimes, i, \gamma)\) is a strict monoidal category \((C, \otimes, i)\) equipped with an invertible natural transformation of components

\[
\gamma_{u,v} : v \otimes u \to u \otimes v
\]
called \textit{braiding}, which is compatible with the monoidal structure: for every objects \(u, v, w \in C\),

\[
\begin{align*}
\gamma_{u \otimes w, v} &= (\gamma_{v, u} \otimes \gamma_{w, u}) \circ (\gamma_{w,u} \otimes v), \\
\gamma_{u, v \otimes w} &= (\gamma_{v, u} \otimes \gamma_{w, u}) \circ (v \otimes \gamma_{u, w}), \\
\gamma_{i, i} &= 1_u, \\
\gamma_{u, i} &= 1_u.
\end{align*}
\]

A \textit{symmetric monoidal category} is a braided monoidal category in which the braiding moreover satisfies \(\gamma_{u, i} \circ \gamma_{u, v} = 1_{u \otimes v}\) for every object \(u, v \in C\), in which case it is called a \textit{symmetry}. A \textit{braided monoidal functor} \(f : C \to D\) between braided monoidal categories \(C\) and \(D\), with \(\gamma^C\) and \(\gamma^D\) as respective braiding, is a monoidal functor which preserves the braiding, i.e., \(f(\gamma^C_{u,v}) = \gamma^D_{fu,fv}\) for every objects \(u, v \in C\). A \textit{symmetric monoidal functor} is a braided monoidal functor between symmetric monoidal categories.
Given a monoidal category $\mathcal{C}$, there always exists a free braided monoidal category $\tilde{\mathcal{C}}$: it is a braided monoidal category equipped with a monoidal functor $\mathcal{C} \to \tilde{\mathcal{C}}$ such that, given a braided monoidal category $\mathcal{D}$, a monoidal functor $\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ extends uniquely as a braided monoidal functor $\tilde{\mathcal{C}} \to \mathcal{D}$. A similar statement holds for symmetric, instead of braided, monoidal categories. When $\mathcal{C}$ is presented by a 3-polygraph, $\tilde{\mathcal{C}}$ admits the following presentation.

**C.1.5 Theorem.** Suppose given a 3-polygraph $P$ presenting a monoidal category $\mathcal{P}$, i.e., $P_0 = \{\star\}$. The free braided monoidal category on $\mathcal{P}$ is presented by the 3-polygraph $Q$ such that

\[
\begin{align*}
Q_0 &= \{\star\} \\
Q_1 &= P_1 \\
Q_2 &= P_2 \sqcup \{\gamma_{a,b} : ba \Rightarrow ab, \gamma_{a,b}^- : ab \Rightarrow ba \mid a,b \in P_1\} \\
Q_3 &= P_3 \sqcup \{G_{a,b}, G'_{a,b}, L_{a,\alpha}, R_{a,\alpha} \mid a,b \in P_1, \alpha \in Q_2\}
\end{align*}
\]

with relations

\[
\begin{align*}
G_{a,b} : \gamma_{a,b} \ast \gamma_{a,b} &\Rightarrow 1_{ab} & G'_{a,b} : \gamma_{a,b} \ast \gamma_{a,b}^- \Rightarrow 1_{ab}
\end{align*}
\]

for $a,b \in P_1$ and, for $\alpha : u' \to u$, 

\[
\begin{align*}
L_{a,\alpha} : \alpha a \ast \gamma_{a,u} &\Rightarrow \gamma_{u',a} \ast \alpha a & R_{a,\alpha} : a \alpha \ast \gamma_{u,a} &\Rightarrow \gamma_{a,u'} \ast \alpha a
\end{align*}
\]

Above, $\gamma_{a,u} : ua \Rightarrow au$ is a notation for the morphism defined inductively on $u$ by 

\[
\begin{align*}
\gamma_{a,i} &= 1_a & \gamma_{a,b} &= \gamma_{a,b} & \gamma_{a,ba} &= b\gamma_{a,u} \ast \gamma_{a,b}u
\end{align*}
\]

and similarly, for $\gamma_{u,a} : au \Rightarrow ua$. Graphically, $\gamma_{a,b}$, $\gamma_{a,u}$ and $\gamma_{u,a}$ are respectively depicted as

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
 b \\
 a
\end{array}
\end{array} &\Rightarrow & \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
 \cdots \\
 \cdots
\end{array}
\end{array} &\Rightarrow & \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
 a \\
 \cdots
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

and the relations $L_{a,\alpha}$ and $R_{a,\alpha}$ are respectively

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
 \cdots \\
 a
\end{array}
\end{array} &\Rightarrow & \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
 \cdots \\
 \cdots
\end{array}
\end{array} &\Rightarrow & \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
 a \\
 \cdots
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
 \cdots \\
 a
\end{array}
\end{array} &\Rightarrow & \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
 \cdots \\
 \cdots
\end{array}
\end{array} &\Rightarrow & \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
 a \\
 \cdots
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

(The braiding on $Q$ is the one which is given on objects $a,b \in Q_1$ by $\gamma_{a,b}$. The free symmetric monoidal category is presented by the 3-polygraph obtained.)
from $\mathcal{Q}$ by removing the 2-generators $\gamma_{a,b}$ and the associated relations $G_{a,b}$ and $G'_{a,b}$, and adding the relations

$$I_{a,b} : \gamma_{b,a} \cdot \gamma_{a,b} \implies 1_{ab}$$

indexed $a, b \in P_1$ (see also §12.5.5).

In particular, we see that $B$ is the free braided monoidal category on the terminal category: there is only one 1-generator $a$, one invertible 2-generator $\gamma_{a,a}$, and the two relations $L_{a,\gamma_{a,a}}$ and $R_{a,\gamma_{a,a}}$ both correspond to the Yang-Baxter relation (C.1). Similarly, $S$ is the free symmetric monoidal category on the terminal category. It can also be shown that $B$ (resp. $S$) is the terminal braided (resp. symmetric) monoidal category.

In every presentation of a braided (resp. symmetric) monoidal category, the generators $\gamma_{a,b}$ are definable and the relations $L_{a,\gamma_{a,a}}$ and $R_{a,\gamma_{a,a}}$ (resp. and $I_{a,b}$) are derivable. Up to Tietze equivalence, we can thus suppose that every presentation of a braided (resp. symmetric) monoidal category is of the form given in the above theorem. For this reason, in a presentation $P$ with only one 1-generator, we often say that a 2-generator $\gamma : 2 \to 2$ is a symmetry when it is involutive (i.e., satisfies the equation on the right of (C.3)) and satisfies relations (C.4) for every 2-generator $\alpha$ (in particular, for $\alpha = \gamma$, the Yang-Baxter relation has to be satisfied).

### C.2 Monoids

Consider the category $F$ where an object is a natural number and a morphism $f : m \to n$ is a function $f : [m] \to [n]$. Alternatively, this category can be described as the skeleton of the full subcategory of Set on finite sets. It can be equipped with a tensor product similar to the one of the simplicial category, see §10.3.2, thus making it a PRO. This category contains interesting subcategories, with the same objects, closed under tensor product, with the following morphisms:

- the category $F_\eta$ of injective functions,
- the category $F_\mu$ of surjective functions,
- the category $S$ of bijections,
- the category $\Delta_\eta$ of non-decreasing functions,
- the category $\Delta_\mu$ of injective non-decreasing functions,
- the category $\Delta_\mu$ of surjective non-decreasing functions.

Details for this section can be found in [73, 235, 230].
C.2.1 Non-decreasing injections. The PRO $\Delta_\eta$ of injective non-decreasing functions admits a presentation with one generator $\eta : 0 \to 1$, called *unit* and pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\bullet \\
\end{array}
\]

and no relation. The generator is interpreted as the terminal function $0 \to 1$ and, for instance, the interpretation of the diagram on the left is the injective non-decreasing function $f : [4] \to [6]$ whose graph is depicted on the right:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
0 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\
1 & 1 & 2 & \searrow \\
0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5.
\end{array}
\]

The opposite PRO $\Delta_\eta^{\text{op}}$ can be described as the category whose morphisms are non-decreasing partial surjective functions.

C.2.2 Non-decreasing surjections. The PRO $\Delta_\mu$ of non-decreasing surjective functions (already encountered in §23.3.10) admits a presentation with one generator $\mu : 2 \to 1$, called *multiplication* and pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\triangledown \\
\end{array}
\]

and one relation

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\triangledown \\
\Rightarrow \\
\end{array}
\]

The generator can be interpreted as the terminal function $2 \to 1$, whose graph is

\[
\begin{array}{c}
0 & 1 \\
1 & \nearrow \\
0
\end{array}
\]

and, for instance, the interpretation of the diagram on the left is depicted on the right:

\[
\begin{array}{c}
0 & 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 9. \\
0 & 1 & 2
\end{array}
\]

This category is thus the theory for *semigroups*: a monoidal functor from $\Delta_\mu$ to $\textbf{Set}$ (with the monoidal structure induced by cartesian product) consists of a set equipped with an associative binary operation. The rewriting system is
C.2 Monoids

Convergent and normal forms can be described as the canonical form given by

\[
\begin{align*}
\bullet & \quad \text{or} \\
\quad \psi & \quad \text{or} \\
\psi \quad \ldots &
\end{align*}
\]

where \( \psi \) is a canonical form (the diagram on the left is the empty diagram).

C.2.3 Non-decreasing functions. The PRO \( \Delta^+ \) (the augmented simplicial category) can be presented with two generators \( \eta : 0 \to 1 \) and \( \mu : 2 \to 1 \), pictured as above, together with the rules of §C.2.1 and §C.2.2:

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (x) at (0,0) {$\psi$};
\node (y) at (0,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (x) -- (y);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\quad \Rightarrow \\
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (x) at (0,0) {$\psi$};
\node (y) at (0,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (x) -- (y);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

as well as the additional rules

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (x) at (0,0) {$\psi$};
\node (y) at (0,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\node (z) at (0.5,0) {$\psi$};
\draw (x) -- (y); \\
\node (w) at (0.5,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (z) -- (w);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\quad \Rightarrow \\
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (x) at (0,0) {$\psi$};
\node (y) at (0,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\node (z) at (0.5,0) {$\psi$};
\draw (x) -- (y); \\
\node (w) at (0.5,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (z) -- (w);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

These define a distributive law \( \ell \) between the two previous categories so that

\[
\Delta^+ = \Delta \mu \otimes \ell \Delta \eta.
\]

The rewriting system is convergent, see §10.3.2, and normal forms can be described as the following canonical forms:

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (x) at (0,0) {$\psi$};
\node (y) at (0,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (x) -- (y);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\quad \text{or} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (x) at (0,0) {$\psi$};
\node (y) at (0,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\node (z) at (0.5,0) {$\psi$};
\draw (x) -- (y); \\
\node (w) at (0.5,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (z) -- (w);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\quad \text{or} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (x) at (0,0) {$\psi$};
\node (y) at (0,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\node (z) at (0.5,0) {$\psi$};
\node (w) at (0.5,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (x) -- (y); \\
\node (v) at (1,0) {$\psi$};
\node (u) at (1,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (z) -- (w) -- (v) -- (u);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

where \( \psi \) is a canonical form; moreover, in the third case, we suppose that \( \psi \) is not of the form given of the fourth case.

An alternative notion of canonical form (which is not a normal form for a rewriting system, for similar reasons as in Example 10.3.8) is

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (x) at (0,0) {$\psi$};
\node (y) at (0,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (x) -- (y);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\quad \text{or} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\node (x) at (0,0) {$\psi$};
\node (y) at (0,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\node (z) at (0.5,0) {$\psi$};
\node (w) at (0.5,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (x) -- (y); \\
\node (v) at (1,0) {$\psi$};
\node (u) at (1,-0.5) {$\psi$};
\draw (z) -- (w) -- (v) -- (u);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

This means that morphisms in \( \Delta^+ \) can be shown to be in bijection with 2-cells of the above form. Note that, here, the canonical form of an identity does not only consists of wires.

From this presentation, one sees that \( \Delta^+ \) is the theory for monoids: the monoidal functors from \( \Delta^+ \) to a monoidal category \( C \) correspond to monoids \( C \) (see Example 10.1.5). We can also deduce that it is the free cocartesian category on the terminal category, see Section 13.4 and §C.2.10.

Writing \( P \) for the above polygraph, the morphisms from \( n \) to \( 1 \) in \( P^*_2 \), for
some $n \in \mathbb{N}$ can be ordered by $\phi \preceq \psi$ whenever there exists a rewriting path $\phi \Rightarrow \psi$. The resulting poset is a well-studied lattice called the $n$-th Tamari lattice [139].

**C.2.4 Injections.** The PRO $F_\eta$ admits a presentation with two generators

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\psi
\end{array}
\]

satisfying the relations for symmetries (§C.1.3) and non-decreasing injections (§C.2.1)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\psi
\end{array}
\]

as well as the compatibility relations

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\psi
\end{array}
\]

Those define a distributive law $\ell$ between $S$ and $\Delta_\eta$, so that

\[ F_\eta = S \otimes_\ell \Delta_\eta. \]

The resulting presentation is convergent with normal forms being given by

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\psi
\end{array}
\]

or

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\psi
\end{array}
\]

Note that the second (or the first) compatibility relation is redundant since we have

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\psi
\end{array}
\]

**C.2.5 All functions.** The PRO $F$ corresponds to commutative monoids. It admits a presentation with three generators

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\psi
\end{array}
\]

and relations which consist of those for monoids (§C.2.3)

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\phi \\
\psi
\end{array}
\]
C.2 Monoids

those for symmetries (§C.1.3)

compatibility relations

and the commutativity relation

This rewriting system is convergent. A notion of canonical form (which does not exactly coincide with normal forms for similar reasons as in Example 10.3.8) can be given by

This monoidal category is the theory for commutative monoids: a symmetric monoidal functor to a symmetric monoidal category $C$ correspond to commutative monoid in $C$. It can be obtained as a composite PROP $F = F_\mu \otimes F_\eta$ along the expected distributive law.

C.2.6 Partial functions. Consider the PRO $F_\varepsilon$ where a morphism $f : m \to n$ is a partial function $f : [m] \to [n]$. It admits a presentations with four generators

satisfying the relations of §C.2.5 together with
The resulting rewriting system is convergent and canonical forms can be given by

\[ \varphi \varphi \ldots \varphi \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
iota
\end{array} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{array}{c}
\vdots \\
iota
\end{array} \].

The category can be described as a composite PROP \( F_\varepsilon = F_\varepsilon^\text{op} \otimes \ell F \) along the expected distributive law, as well as the composite PRO \( F = \Delta_\eta^\text{op} \otimes \ell F \) along the expected distributive law. In the last case, the associated factorization system given by Proposition 3.3.4, is the usual factorization of a partial function \( f : X \to Y \) as a partial non-decreasing injection (given by the canonical partial function \( X \to \text{dom}(f) \) where \( \text{dom}(f) \subseteq X \) is the domain of \( f \)) followed by a total function (the restriction of \( f \) to its domain).

Similar presentations exists for other variants of the PRO (e.g. partial non-decreasing surjective functions). In particular, for the category of partial injective non-decreasing functions \( \Delta_{\eta\varepsilon} \), we obtain a decomposition as

\[ \Delta_{\eta\varepsilon} = \Delta_\eta^\text{op} \otimes \ell \Delta_\eta = \text{Cospan}(\Delta_\eta). \]

C.2.7 Symmetric monoids. The theory of symmetric monoids is obtained from the theory of commutative monoids of §C.2.5 by removing the commutativity relation (C.6): by Theorem C.1.5, this is the free symmetric monoidal category on \( \Delta_+ \), and therefore it is the PROP of monoids. The relations induce a distributive law \( \ell \) so that this PRO can be obtained as \( S \otimes \ell \Delta_+ \), see [230]. A direct description of this category can be given as the PRO where a morphism \( f : m \to n \) is a function \( f : \{m\} \to \{n\} \) together with total order on each of the sets \( f^{-1}(i) \) for \( 0 \leq i < n \), equipped with suitable composition [298].

C.2.8 Braided monoids. As a variant of the theory for commutative monoids, one can consider the one braided monoids. It admits a presentation with four generators

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\n
\n
\n
\n
\n
\end{array} \]

and the laws are similar to those of commutative monoids (§C.2.5) excepting that the transpositions satisfy the laws for braidings (§C.1.2) instead of symmetries (§C.1.3). As in §C.2.7, one could also considered the variant without the commutativity relation, i.e., the free braided monoidal category on \( \Delta_+ \), but in practice braided monoids are always understood commutative.

C.2.9 Comonoids. Dual categories are also interesting. For instance, \( \Delta_\eta^\text{op} \) is the theory representing comonoids and \( F_\text{op} \) cocommutative comonoids.
C.3 Distributive laws

C.3.1 Distributive laws between monads. A monad is a particular case of a monoid, as already mentioned in Example 10.1.5. Namely, a 2-functor from the 2-category $\Delta_+$ (which represents monoids, see §C.2.3) to the 2-category $\text{Cat}$ (of categories, functors and natural transformations) amounts to the data of

- a category $C$ (the image of $*$),
- a functor $T : C \to C$ (the image of $a$),
- natural transformations $\mu : T \circ T \Rightarrow T$ and $\eta : 1_C \Rightarrow T$ (the respective images of $\mu$ and $\eta$)

satisfying axioms so that $(T, \mu, \eta)$ is a monad on $C$ (see §3.3.12).

As a variant, a theory corresponding to pairs of monads on a same category can easily be constructed. The category $\Delta_+ \sqcup \Delta_+$, the coproduct of $\Delta_+$ with itself as monoidal categories admit a presentation with two 1-generators $a, b$ and four 2-generators

$$
\mu_a : aa \Rightarrow a \quad \eta_a : 1 \Rightarrow a \quad \mu_b : bb \Rightarrow b \quad \eta_b : 1 \Rightarrow b
$$

respectively pictured as

```
  a  a
a
```

such that the pair $(\mu_a, \eta_a)$ satisfies the laws of monoids, see §C.2.3, as well as the pair $(\mu_b, \eta_b)$.
More interestingly, the previous theory can be modified in order to present a pair of monads on a same category, together with a distributive law between them. We recall that a distributive law between two monads $T$ and $U$ consists of a natural transformation $\ell : T \circ U \Rightarrow U \circ T$ satisfying four suitable axioms, see §3.3.12 or [36]. This theory $\text{DLaw}$ can be obtained from the one for $\Delta, \uplus \Delta$, by adding a 2-generator $\lambda : ba \Rightarrow ab$, pictured as

$$\begin{array}{c}
    b \quad a \\
    \uparrow \quad \uparrow \\
    a \quad b
\end{array}$$

and the four relations

$$
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
$$

This presentation is convergent. It was shown by Beck [36] that a distributive law between monads $T$ and $U$ induces a structure of monad on the composite endofunctor $U \circ T$. This can be rephrased in the above setting as follows:

**C.3.2 Theorem.** In $\text{DLaw}$, the two following morphisms induce the structure of a monoid on $ab$:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
    a \quad b \\
    \quad \, \\
    a \quad b
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    a \quad b
\end{array}
$$

**Proof.** Associativity is shown by the following derivation

$$
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
$$

and left and right neutrality by

$$
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
\quad
\begin{array}{c}
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown \\
    \smallfrown
\end{array}
$$

which concludes the proof. □
For instance, on \textbf{Set}, the monad of rings can be obtained as $U \otimes T$ where $T$ is the monad of free monoids, $U$ and the monad of free abelian groups and $\ell : TU \Rightarrow UT$ is the usual distributive law, which sends the formal expression of the form $(a + b)(c + d)$ to $ac + ad + bc + bd$.

\subsection*{C.3.3 Iterated distributive laws.} It is useful to iterate this construction: given three monads $S, T, U$ on a category $C$ and distributive laws between $S$ and $T$, $S$ and $U$, and $T$ and $U$, we would like to have a monad structure on the composite $U \circ T \circ S$. This is the case where the distributive laws satisfy a suitable compatibility axiom \cite{83}. The theory \textbf{IDLaw} for \textit{iterated distributive laws} axiomatizes such a situation. It has three 1-generators $a, b$ and $c$, nine 2-generators

\begin{align*}
\mu_a : aa & \Rightarrow a \\
\mu_b : bb & \Rightarrow b \\
\mu_c : cc & \Rightarrow c \\
\ell_{ab} : ba & \Rightarrow ab \\
\eta_a : 1 & \Rightarrow a \\
\eta_b : 1 & \Rightarrow b \\
\eta_c : 1 & \Rightarrow c \\
\ell_{ac} : ca & \Rightarrow ac \\
\ell_{bc} : cb & \Rightarrow bc
\end{align*}

pictured as

\begin{figure}
\begin{center}
\includegraphics{diagram}
\end{center}
\end{figure}

satisfying relations expressing that $(a, \mu_a, \eta_a)$, $(b, \mu_b, \eta_b)$ and $(c, \mu_c, \eta_c)$ are monoids, $\ell_{ab}$, $\ell_{bc}$ and $\ell_{ac}$ are distributive laws, and the additional axiom

\begin{figure}
\begin{center}
\includegraphics{diagram2}
\end{center}
\end{figure}

reminiscent of the Yang-Baxter relation. This is illustrated in §C.5.3.

In order to compose four or more monads, one might at first think that we should need new axioms, but it is in fact enough to assume the above axioms for every triple of monads in order to compose an arbitrary number of those, see \cite{83} and §3.3.16.

\subsection*{C.3.4 Other distributive laws.} Variants of the notion of distributive law have been studied in the literature. For instance, the expected notion of distributive law between a monad and a comonad is studied in \cite{305}. A weaker notion of distributive law has also been studied by Street \cite{340}: here the two relations

\begin{figure}
\begin{center}
\includegraphics{diagram3}
\end{center}
\end{figure}
involving units have been replaced by the unique relation

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \quad \Rightarrow \\
\circ \quad \circ 
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

or, equivalently, the two relations

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \quad \Rightarrow \\
\circ \quad \circ 
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

**C.3.5 Linear non-linear terms.** A functor \( T : F \to \text{Set} \) is an abstract way to encode a collection of terms. Namely, for \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), the set \( Tn \) can be seen as the collection of terms \( t(x_0, \ldots, x_{n-1}) \) with \( n \) free variables, and given a morphism \( f : m \to n \), i.e., a function \( f : [m] \to [n] \), the function \( Tf : Tm \to Tn \) is the reindexing function, sending a term \( t(x_0, \ldots, x_{n-1}) \) to the term \( t(x_{f(0)}, \ldots, x_{f(n-1)}) \) obtained by replacing the variable \( x_i \) by \( x_{f(i)} \), see for instance [131]. Similarly, a functor \( T : S \to \text{Set} \) encodes a collection of “linear” terms: \( Tn \) consists of terms in which each \( x_i \), for \( 0 \leq i < n \), occurs exactly once and, for this reason, we can only permute variables, and not merge two of them or forget one of them.

Now suppose that we are interested in a “mixed” situation where a term can have both linear and non-linear variables. A linear variable can always be considered as a non-linear one, by forgetting about the fact that it should occur exactly once. Those are naturally modeled by the following theory [128, 194], with two 1-generators \( a \) and \( b \), six 2-generators

\[
\begin{align*}
\mu_a : & aa \Rightarrow a \\
\eta_a : & 1 \Rightarrow a \\
\gamma_{aa} : & aa \Rightarrow aa \\
\gamma_{ab} : & ba \Rightarrow ab \\
\gamma_{bb} : & bb \Rightarrow bb \\
\sigma : & b \Rightarrow a
\end{align*}
\]

pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

such that the axioms of symmetries hold for whichever typing of the wires, \((\mu_a, \eta_a, \gamma_{aa})\) satisfies the axioms of commutative monoids, and the axioms

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\circ \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

hold for whichever typing of the wires. The object \( a \) thus corresponds to a
non-linear variable (which can duplicated, erased and exchanged with other variables), the object $b$ to linear variable (which can only be exchanged with other variables), and the morphism $\sigma$ to the fact that we can consider a linear variable as a non-linear one.

### C.4 Bialgebras

#### C.4.1 Matrices.

Given a semiring $R$, we write $M_R$ for the category whose objects are natural numbers and a morphism $f : m \to n$ is an $n \times m$-matrix with coefficients in $R$, with usual composition and identities. This category is a PRO with the usual direct sum of matrices.

When $R$ is a ring, the category $M_R$ is equivalent to the category of finite dimensional $R$-modules and $R$-linear maps. When $k$ is a field, the category $M_k$ is equivalent to $\text{Vect}_k$, the category of vector spaces and $k$-linear maps. Writing $K$ for the semiring of small cardinals, with disjoint union as addition and cartesian product as product, the category $M_K$ is equivalent to the full subcategory of $\text{Span} (\text{Set})$ (the category of isomorphism classes of spans, see §3.3.14) on finite sets.

#### C.4.2 Multirelations.

Given two sets $X$ and $Y$, a multirelation from $X$ to $Y$ is a function $X \times Y \to \mathbb{N}$ such that the set

$$\{(x, y) \in X \times Y \mid f(x, y) \neq 0\}$$

is finite. Any relation $R \subseteq X \times Y$ is canonically seen as the multirelation $f$ such that $f(x, y) = 1$ if $(x, y) \in R$ and $f(x, y) = 0$ otherwise. Conversely, a multirelation can be thought of as a relation with multiplicities; given $(x, y) \in X \times Y$, $f(x, y)$ is called the multiplicity of the relation $(x, y)$. Given two multirelations $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Y \to Z$, their composite is given by

$$(g \circ f)(x, z) = \sum_{y \in Y} f(x, y) \times g(y, z)$$

(note that the sum only involves a finite number of non-zero terms) and the identity on a set $X$ is such that $1_X(x, x') = 0$ if $x \neq x'$ and $1_X(x, x) = 1$. We write $\text{MRel}$ for the category of sets and multirelations. This is a monoidal category when equipped with the tensor product induced by disjoint union. A morphism $f : X \to Y$ in this category can be seen as a span

$$X \xleftarrow{\varepsilon} R \xrightarrow{f} Y$$

(C.7)
A catalogue of 3-polygraphs

where $R$ is a finite set, such that the image under $f$ of $(x, y) \in X \times Y$ is the cardinal of the following set:

$$f(x, y) = |\{r \in R \mid x = s(r) \text{ and } y = t(r)\}|$$

making $\text{MRel}$ a subcategory of $\text{Span(Set)}$, the category of sets and isomorphism classes of spans of functions.

The full subcategory of $\text{MRel}$ on finite sets is equivalent to $\text{M}_\mathbb{N}$, the category of matrices with coefficients in $\mathbb{N}$. Namely, a morphism $f : m \to n$ is an $n \times m$-matrix with coefficients in $\mathbb{N}$, which corresponds to the multirelation from $[m]$ to $[n]$ such that the multiplicity of $(i, j) \in [m] \times [n]$ is $f(i, j)$. Note that the category $\text{M}_\mathbb{N}$ is isomorphic to $\text{Span(\mathcal{F})}$. This category can also be described as the PRO where a morphism $f : m \to n$ is a morphism of free finitely generated monoids $f : \mathbb{N}^m \to \mathbb{N}^n$, see [298].

C.4.3 Bialgebras. The PRO $\text{M}_\mathbb{N}$ admits a presentation with generators

$$\mu : 2 \Rightarrow 1 \quad \eta : 0 \Rightarrow 1 \quad \delta : 1 \Rightarrow 2 \quad \varepsilon : 1 \Rightarrow 0 \quad \gamma : 2 \Rightarrow 2$$

pictured as

and relations expressing that $\gamma$ is a symmetry (§C.1.4), $(\mu, \eta, \gamma)$ is a commutative monoid (§C.2.5), $(\delta, \varepsilon, \gamma)$ is a cocommutative comonoid (§C.2.9) and the compatibility relations

The interpretations of the generators are the following multirelations, represented as matrices

$$\mu = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ \end{pmatrix} \quad \delta = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \gamma = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

i.e., graphically,
A notion of canonical form is given by

up to some relations, for which normal forms can be given, see [282]. For instance, the multirelation $f : 3 \to 4$ whose graph is shown on the left (we link two points as many times as their multiplicity in the multirelation) is represented by the canonical form on the right:

This example should make more clear the correspondence between the category and its presentation, and details can be found in various places [298, 235, 230, 282]. This presentation can be obtained from the one of $F$ given in §C.2.5, using the methods of Section 10.5 for composing PROPs: we have $\text{Span}(F) = F^{\text{op}} \otimes F^{\text{op}}$ where the distributive law $\ell : F \otimes_S F^{\text{op}} \to F \otimes_S F^{\text{op}}$ is given by pullback, see [230].

This is the theory for an algebraic structure called a \textit{bicommutative bialgebra}, or \textit{bimonoid}. More generally, if we drop the requirement that the monoid and the comonoid structures should be commutative, we obtain the theory of \textit{bialgebras} (which are said to be commutative/cocommutative/bicommutative when the monoid/comonoid/both structures are commutative). Bialgebras are generally considered in the category $\textbf{Vect}_k$ of vector spaces over a fixed field $k$. For instance, given a monoid $(M, \cdot, 1)$, the vector space $kM$ generated by the set $M$ is canonically a cocommutative bialgebra: writing $e_a$ with $a \in M$ for a basis vector, the interpretations of the various morphisms are given by

$$
\mu : kM \otimes kM \to kM \quad \eta : 1 \to kM
$$

$$
e_a \otimes e_b \mapsto e_{a \cdot b} \quad 1 \mapsto e_1
$$

$$
\delta : kM \to kM \otimes kM \quad \epsilon : kM \to 1 \quad \gamma : kM \otimes kM \to kM \otimes kM
$$

$$
e_a \mapsto e_a \otimes e_a \quad e_1 \mapsto 1 \quad e_a \otimes e_b \mapsto e_b \otimes e_a
$$
C.4.4 Relations. Consider the category \( \text{Rel} \) whose objects are sets and where a morphism from \( X \) to \( Y \) is a relation from \( X \) to \( Y \), i.e., a subset \( R \subseteq X \times Y \). Explicitly, the composite of two relations \( R \subseteq X \times Y \) and \( S \subseteq Y \times Z \) is the relation \( S \circ R \subseteq X \times Z \) defined by

\[
S \circ R = \{(x, z) \in X \times Z | \exists y \in Y, (x, y) \in R \land (y, z) \in S\}.
\]

This category is monoidal with tensor product given on objects by disjoint union of sets. It may be described as a variant of category of \( \text{Span}(\text{Set}) \) where morphisms are isomorphism classes of spans of the form (C.7), such that \( s \) and \( t \) are jointly monic, i.e., two distinct \( x \) and \( y \) give rise to distinct pairs of images \((s(x), t(x))\) and \((s(y), t(y))\).

The full subcategory whose objects are finite sets is equivalent to the category \( \mathbb{M}_B \) of matrices over the semiring of booleans (with \( \lor \) as addition and \( \land \) as multiplication). It admits a presentation obtained from the theory of bicommutative bialgebras by further adding the relation

\[
\Rightarrow
\]

(C.8)

If we remember that the theory of bicommutative bialgebras is a presentation of the category \( \mathbb{M}_N \), of matrices with coefficients in \( \mathbb{N} \), adding the relation (C.8), amounts to quotient coefficients in \( \mathbb{N} \) in matrices by the relation \( 1 + 1 = 1 \). Otherwise said, we describe \( \mathbb{M}_B \) as the quotient of \( \mathbb{M}_N \) under the relation identifying two morphisms \( f, g : m \to n \) which have the same non-zero coefficients, i.e., when \( f(i, j) = 0 \) iff \( g(i, j) = 0 \) for every \((i, j) \in [m] \times [n]\). This is the theory for bialgebras which are called special, relational [193], or qualitative [282]. Note that the category of relations can be described as the following pushout in \( \text{MonCat} \) (the category of monoidal categories an strict monoidal functors):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathbb{F}_\eta \uplus \mathbb{F}_\eta^{op} & \longrightarrow & \text{Span}(\mathbb{F}_\eta) \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\text{Cospan}(\mathbb{F}_\eta) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{M}_B
\end{array}
\]

where the arrows are the canonical inclusions, from which the presentation of \( \mathbb{M}_B \) can be deduced, see [132] for details and generalizations of this situation.

C.4.5 Matrices over \( \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \). The category \( \mathbb{M}_{\mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}} \) of natural numbers and matrices with coefficients over the ring \( \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \) admits a presentation obtained from
the theory of bialgebras by adding the relation

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\downarrow \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

which amounts to quotient coefficients in \( \mathbb{N} \) by \( 1 + 1 = 0 \). This is the theory for bialgebras which are \textit{anti-separable} [235]. More generally, matrices over \( \mathbb{Z}/n\mathbb{Z} \) can be obtained by replacing the above relation by a relation of the form

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\downarrow \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

where the diagram on the left contains \( n - 1 \) morphisms \( \triangleleft \) and morphisms \( \triangleright \). An alternative confluent presentation is given in [235, Section 3.2] and shown to be terminating in [158, Section 7].

\section*{C.4.6 Matrices over \( \mathbb{Z} \), Hopf algebras.} The category \( \mathcal{M}_\mathbb{Z} \) of natural numbers and matrices over \( \mathbb{Z} \) admits a presentation obtained from the theory of bialgebras by adding a generator \( \sigma : 1 \rightarrow 1 \), called \textit{antipode}, pictured as

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

and interpreted as the \( 1 \times 1 \)-matrix \( (-1) \), together with the relations

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\downarrow \\
\downarrow \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

This is the theory for bicommutative Hopf algebras. We have seen in §C.4.3 that every monoid induces a bialgebra; when this monoid is a group \( G \), bialgebra \( \mathbb{k}G \) is canonically a Hopf algebra, the interpretation of the antipode being given by inverses:

\[
\begin{align*}
\sigma : \mathbb{k}G & \rightarrow \mathbb{k}G \\
e_a & \mapsto e_{-a}
\end{align*}
\]
**C.4.7 Matrices over an arbitrary semiring.** More generally, given a semiring $R$, the PRO $\text{M}_R$ admits a presentation containing the theory of matrices, plus a generator

for every $a \in R$, interpreted as the $1\times1$-matrix $(a)$, and relations

see [235]. This is the theory for bicommutative $R$-linear bialgebras. For instance the diagram on the left corresponds to the linear transformation $\mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ associated to the matrix depicted on the right:

Note that we recover the laws for Hopf algebras (§C.4.6) by setting

\[ \frac{1}{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}. \]

**C.4.8 Variants.** Other variants have been studied in the literature. We can mention presentation of invertible, orthogonal, special orthogonal, unitary, and special unitary matrices [235] and stochastic matrices [140].

## C.5 Coefficients

**C.5.1 The free monoidal category on a category.** Given a category $C$, the free monoidal category $C^\otimes$ it generates is the monoidal category whose monoid
of objects is $C^0_0$, the free monoid over the objects of $C$, the monoid of morphisms is $C^0_1$, the free monoid over the morphisms of $C$, with

$$f_1 \ldots f_n : a_1 \ldots a_n \rightarrow b_1 \ldots b_n$$

whenever $f_i : a_i \rightarrow b_i$ for $1 \leq i \leq n$, composition is given pointwise, i.e.,

$$(g_1 \ldots g_n) \circ (f_1 \ldots f_n) = (g_1 \circ f_1) \ldots (g_n \circ f_n)$$

with identities $1 \ldots 1$ and tensor product is given by composition in the free monoid, i.e., concatenation.

There is an obvious functor $C \rightarrow C^\otimes$, which is such that for every functor $C \rightarrow D$, where $D$ a monoidal category, there is a unique strict monoidal functor $C^\otimes \rightarrow D$ making the following diagram commute:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \rightarrow & D \\\n\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
C^\otimes & \rightarrow & D
\end{array}
$$

Given a presentation of a category $C$ by a 2-polygraph $P$, the monoidal category $C^\otimes$ admits a presentation by the 3-polygraph $Q$ with

$Q_0 = \{\ast\} \quad Q_1 = P_0 \quad Q_2 = P_1 \quad Q_3 = P_2$

sometimes referred to as the suspension of the 2-polygraph $P$.

**C.5.2 Monoid actions.** As a particular case, when $M$ is a monoid considered as a category with one object, an algebra for the theory $M^\otimes$ in a monoidal category $C$, consists of an action of $M$, i.e., an object $x$ of the monoidal category $C$ together with a morphism of monoids $M \rightarrow C(x, x)$.

For instance, given a monoid $(M, \times, 1)$, we can consider its standard presentation, see §2.3.14:

$$\{ \ast \mid a \alpha_{u,v} : uv \Rightarrow (u \times v) \}$$

the resulting presentation of the free monoidal category generated by $M$ has a presentation with a generator

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{[2]}
\end{array}$$

for every element $u \in M$, with relations

$$\begin{array}{c}
\text{[2]} \Rightarrow \text{[2]},
\end{array}$$

More generally, when a monoid $M$ admits a presentation by a 2-polygraph $P$, the free monoidal category generated by $M$ admits a presentation with 2-generators
A catalogue of 3-polygraphs

indexed by \( a \in P_1 \), together with a relation

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} & \implies & \begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} & \implies & \begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array}
\end{array}
\]

for every relation \( a_1 \ldots a_i \Rightarrow b_1 \ldots b_j \) in \( P_2 \).

**C.5.3 Thee free linear category.** Suppose given a monoid \( M \) and write \( R \) for the semiring it freely generates. As explained above, the monoid \( M \) freely generates a monoidal category, and we write here \( M^\circ \) for the free symmetric monoidal category generated by this monoidal category. We have seen in §C.4.3 that the PROP \( M \_R \) can be seen as a composite PROP \( F^{op} \otimes F \). More generally, the PROP \( M \_R \) can be seen as a composite PROP:

\[
M \_R = F^{op} \otimes M^\circ \otimes F.
\]

The tensor product above is an iterated distributive law, in the sense of §C.3.3: it is induced by three distributive laws

\[
\ell_1 : M^\circ \otimes F^{op} \to F^{op} \otimes F^\circ
\]

\[
\ell_2 : F \otimes F^{op} \to F^{op} \otimes F
\]

\[
\ell_3 : F \otimes M^\circ \to M^\circ \otimes F
\]

such that the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F \otimes F^{op} & \xrightarrow{\ell_1} & F^{op} \otimes F \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
F \otimes M^\circ & \xrightarrow{\ell_3} & M^\circ \otimes F
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
M^\circ \otimes F \otimes F^{op} & \xrightarrow{\ell_2} & F^{op} \otimes F \otimes F^\circ \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
F \otimes F \otimes F^{op} & \xrightarrow{\ell_1} & F^{op} \otimes F \otimes F^\circ
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
F \otimes F^{op} \otimes M^\circ & \xrightarrow{\ell_3} & M^\circ \otimes F \otimes F^{op} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
F \otimes F \otimes M^\circ & \xrightarrow{\ell_2} & M^\circ \otimes F \otimes F^{op}
\end{array}
\]

commutes. More generally, when the semiring \( R \) is not freely generated by a monoid, the PROP \( M \_R \) admits a description of the form

\[
M \_R = (F^{op} \otimes M^\circ \otimes F)/\sim
\]

meaning that it can be obtained from the above PROP by further quotienting by the congruence \( \sim \) generated by the two relations

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} & \implies & \begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} & \implies & \begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c} 1 \end{array} \implies \begin{array}{c} 0 \end{array}
\]

see [48] for details.
C.6 Frobenius algebras

In this section, we study Frobenius algebras, which are “dual” to bialgebras in a sense that will be made precise. The axioms were first discovered by Lawvere [246] (and rediscovered in [78]) and a nice introduction to the subject can be found in Kock’s book [224].

C.6.1 Presentation. The theory of Frobenius algebras is the PRO presented by four generators

\[ \mu : 2 \rightarrow 1 \quad \eta : 0 \rightarrow 1 \quad \delta : 1 \rightarrow 2 \quad \varepsilon : 1 \rightarrow 0 \]

respectively pictured as

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{such that (} \mu, \eta \text{) is a monoid, (} \delta, \varepsilon \text{) is a comonoid and the two following relations are satisfied}
\end{array}
\end{array} \]

\[ \Rightarrow \]

\[ \text{(C.9)} \]

The theory of commutative Frobenius algebras is obtained by taking the free symmetric algebra as described in §C.1.4 (i.e., adding a generator \( \gamma : 2 \rightarrow 2 \) pictured as usual, see (C.2), together with the axioms for symmetries (C.3), the compatibility relations between symmetry and the monoid structure (C.5), as well as the comonoid structure), and adding the commutativity relations

\[ \Rightarrow \]

\[ \text{(C.10)} \]

The theory of special or separable Frobenius algebras (commutative or not) can be obtained by further adding the relation

\[ \Rightarrow \]

\[ \text{(C.10)} \]

and the theory of extraspecial Frobenius algebras by further adding to the theory of special Frobenius algebras the relation

\[ \Rightarrow \]

Other variants can be found in §C.11.9.
A catalogue of 3-polygraphs

Note that these axiomatizations are not claimed to be minimal. For instance, associativity in presence of other axioms implies coassociativity:

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{\includegraphics[width=1in]{associativity}} \\
\end{array} \]

and the situation is similar for unitality and commutativity.

It is conjectured that the rewriting system for Frobenius algebras and its variants is terminating and can be completed into a finite convergent rewriting system \[135\]. Note that there are indexed critical pairs such as

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{\includegraphics[width=1in]{critical_pairs}} \\
\end{array} \]

but we expect to be able to handle those using the techniques of Section 10.4.

Even in the absence of a notion of normal form, we can introduce the following notion of canonical form for morphisms. We define a family of morphisms \( \phi_{m,g,n} \), indexed by \( m, g, n \in \mathbb{N} \), defined by

\[
\phi_{m,g,n} = \mu_m \ast (\delta \ast \mu) \ast (\delta \ast \mu) \ast \ldots \ast (\delta \ast \mu) \ast \delta_n
\]  

(C.11)

(the diagram is drawn horizontally to save space) where \( \mu_m : m \to 1 \) is a right comb of multiplications, defined inductively by

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\includegraphics[width=1in]{mu}} \\
\end{array}
\]

and dually \( \delta_n : 1 \to n \) is a right comb of comultiplications, and there are \( g \) occurrences of \( \delta \ast \mu \) in the middle: \( m \) and \( n \) are respectively the arity and coarity of the morphism and \( g \) is called its genus for reasons explained below. It can then be shown that, in the bicommutative case, any morphism rewrites
to a tensor product of such morphisms (up to composing with a symmetry). In the case of special Frobenius algebras, the normal forms are tensor products of morphism of the form $\phi_{m,0,n}$, and in the case of extraspecial Frobenius algebras the normal forms are the same excepting that $\phi_{0,0,0}$ is not allowed to occur.

**C.6.2 Frobenius algebras.** A Frobenius algebra is typically considered in the category $\text{Vect}_k$: it consists of a vector space $A$ which is both an algebra (i.e., equipped with associative and unital morphisms $\mu : A \otimes A \to A$ and $\eta : k \to A$), a coalgebra (i.e., equipped with coassociative and counital morphisms $\delta : A \to A \otimes A$ and $\varepsilon : A \to k$) satisfying the compatibility axioms (C.9).

There are many alternative characterizations of those [339, 224]. For instance, it can also be defined as an algebra $(A, \mu, \eta)$, equipped with a non-degenerate bilinear form $\sigma : A \otimes A \to A$ which is associative, in the sense that $\sigma \circ (\mu \otimes A) = \sigma \circ (A \otimes \mu)$, see §C.10.9 for details; or as an algebra $(A, \mu, \eta)$ equipped with a linear form $\varepsilon : A \to k$ such that $\varepsilon(ab) = 0$ for every $a \in A$ implies $b = 0$. Namely, one can transform the first into the second definition, and vice-versa, by defining $\varepsilon(a) = \sigma(1,a)$ and $\sigma = \varepsilon \circ \mu$.

**C.6.3 Frobenius as cospans.** The category presented by the theory of special Frobenius algebras is the category $\text{Cospan}(\Delta_+)$ of isomorphism classes of cospans of non-decreasing functions. Namely, it is composed of the presentation of $\Delta_+^{\text{op}}$ (comonoids), the presentation of $\Delta_+$ (monoids), and compatibility axioms can be obtained as pushouts in $\Delta_+$:

The diagram on the middle corresponds to the separability axiom (C.10), whereas the two other to the Frobenius axioms (C.9). The presentation can thus be deduced from the one of $\Delta_+$, by using the fact that $\text{Cospan}(\Delta_+) = \Delta_+ \otimes_{\text{op}} \Delta_+^{\text{op}}$ where the distributive law $\ell : \Delta_+^{\text{op}} \otimes \Delta_+ \to \Delta_+ \otimes \Delta_+^{\text{op}}$ is given by pushout. Similarly, the theory of special commutative Frobenius algebras presents the category $\text{Cospan}(F) = F \otimes_{\text{op}} F^{\text{op}}$ of isomorphism classes of cospans of functions. In this sense it is dual to the theory $\text{Span}(F)$ of commutative bialgebras described in §C.4.3 (by analogy, one could be tempted to consider $\text{Span}(\Delta_+)$ as a theory for non-commutative bialgebras, but this is not well-defined because $\Delta_+$ does not have all pullbacks).
C.6.4 Corelations. The theory of extraspecial commutative Frobenius algebras corresponds to the variant of the category \text{Cospan}(F) whose morphisms are jointly surjective cospans (considered up to isomorphism), i.e., cospans of the form \( X \rightarrow Y \leftarrow Z \) such that for every \( y \in Y \) there exists \( x \in X \) such that \( f(x) = y \) or there exists \( z \in Z \) such that \( g(z) = y \), see [96]. Dually to the case of relations, see §C.4.4, these morphisms can alternatively be described as follows. Given two sets \( X \) and \( Y \), a corelation \( f : X \to Y \) is a partition of \( X \sqcup Y \). Given two corelations \( f : X \to Y \) and \( g : Y \to Z \), their composite \( g \circ f : X \to Z \) is defined as the restriction to \( X \sqcup Z \) of the finest partition of \( X \sqcup Y \sqcup Z \) which is coarser than \( f \) (resp. \( g \)) when restricted to \( X \sqcup Y \) (resp. \( Y \sqcup Z \)). The identity corelation \( 1_X : X \to X \) is the diagonal corelation. We write \text{Corel} for the category of natural numbers and corelations: this category is isomorphic to the category of cospans described above. For instance, we have the following composition of corelations

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \rightarrow & Y \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\bullet & & \bullet \\
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{ccc}
Y & \rightarrow & Z \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\bullet & & \bullet \\
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{ccc}
X & \rightarrow & Z \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\bullet & & \bullet \\
\end{array}
\]

which corresponds to the following composition in the theory of extraspecial commutative Frobenius algebras

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\quad \\
\quad \\
\quad \\
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{ccc}
\quad \\
\quad \\
\quad \\
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{ccc}
\quad \\
\quad \\
\quad \\
\end{array}
\]

Any morphism \( f : m \to n \) in \text{Cospan}(F), which consists of a cospan

\[
m \rightarrow f_1 \leftarrow p \leftarrow f_2 \rightarrow n
\]

up to isomorphism, can be uniquely be written as

\[
f = f' *_{0} 0 *_{0} \ldots *_{0}
\]

where \( f' : m \to n \) is a corelation and the number of instances of \( \hat{j} \) indicates the number of elements of \( \{ p \} \) which are neither in the image of \( f_1 \) nor in the image of \( f_2 \), i.e., measures the deficiency of surjectivity of \( f \).
C.6 Frobenius algebras

C.6.5 2-cobordisms. We briefly recall the well-known description of the category presented by the theory of commutative Frobenius algebras in geometrical terms. A clear and detailed account of the situation can be found in [224]. Fix a natural number \( n \in \mathbb{N} \). Given a smooth oriented manifold with boundary \( \Sigma \), its boundary decomposes as \( \partial \Sigma = \partial^- \Sigma \sqcup \partial^+ \Sigma \), where the two components are determined according to the orientation, and we say that \( \Sigma \) is an \( n \)-cobordism from \( \partial^- \Sigma \) to \( \partial^+ \Sigma \). One can build a category \( \text{Cob}_n \) whose objects are oriented smooth \((n-1)\)-manifolds, morphisms are \( n \)-cobordisms, considered up to diffeomorphism, and composition is given by gluing (i.e., taking pushouts) along common boundaries. This category is symmetric monoidal, with tensor product given on objects and morphisms by disjoint union, and people usually consider topological quantum field theories, which are symmetric monoidal functors \( \text{Cob}_n \to \text{Vect}_k \).

Here, we will be interested in \( \text{Cob}_2 \): an object is a disjoint union of circles and a morphism consists of “trousers” between those, such as on the left below

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{The category } \text{Cob}_2 \text{ admits the theory of commutative Frobenius algebras as presentation. Namely, the generators are interpreted as} \\
\mu = & \quad \eta = \quad \delta = \quad e = \quad \gamma =
\end{align*}
\]

so that, for instance, the morphism on the left of (C.12) corresponds to the diagram on the right. Verifying that the relations are satisfied in \( \text{Cob}_2 \) is direct. Conversely, in order to show that they are sufficient, one can use the classical result that the connected morphisms (i.e., diffeomorphism classes of connected compact oriented surfaces with boundaries) are characterized by their number of inputs, outputs, and genus (roughly, the number of holes): these are thus in bijection with normal forms (C.11) since the interpretation of \( \phi_{m,g,n} \) is a cobordism of genus \( g \) with \( m \) inputs and \( n \) outputs.

Non-commutative Frobenius algebras admit a similar description by 2-dimensional thick tangles [243].
A catalogue of 3-polygraphs

C.7 Linear relations

Suppose fixed a field $k$. The category $\text{LinRel}_k$ has vector spaces over $k$ as objects, a morphism $f : X \to Y$ is a subspace of the vector space $X \oplus Y$, composition of $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Y \to Z$ is given by relational composition

$$g \circ f = \{x \oplus z \in X \oplus Z \mid \exists y \in Y, x \oplus y \in f \land y \oplus z \in g\}$$

and identity on $X$ is the diagonal in $X \oplus X$. A morphism $f : X \to Y$ in this category is a relation between the underlying sets $X$ and $Y$, which is closed under addition and multiplication by scalars, and thus called a linear relation. This category is typically used to provide semantics to networks such as those found in electric circuits [23] or control [22, 47].

It is shown in [22, 48] that this category admits a presentation with generators

$$\text{for } a \in k \text{ such that}$$

- $(\nabla, \eta, \Delta, \delta, \varepsilon)$ is a bicommutative linear bialgebra (§C.4.7),
- $(\nabla, \eta, \Delta, \delta, \varepsilon)$ is a bicommutative linear bialgebra (§C.4.7),
- $(\nabla, \eta, \Delta, \delta, \varepsilon)$ is a bicommutative extraspecial Frobenius algebra (§C.6.1),
- $(\nabla, \eta, \Delta, \delta, \varepsilon)$ is a bicommutative extraspecial Frobenius algebra (§C.6.1),

the following compatibility relations hold:

$$\text{(C.13)}$$

where $\frac{1}{2}$ is a notation for $\otimes$. The generators should be interpreted as the following linear relations:

meaning that the interpretation of $\bigtriangledown$ is the linear relation

$$\{(x \otimes y) \oplus (x + y) \mid x, y \in k\} \subseteq (k \otimes k) \oplus k$$

and so on. For instance, the two compatibility relations (C.13) can be read as the fact that the space of pairs $(x, y)$ such that $x + y = 0$ coincides with the space of pairs $(x, -x)$, with $x$ and $y$ ranging over $k$. This theory is sometimes
called the theory of interacting Hopf algebras over $\mathbb{k}$ and has applications to control theory.

In [48], it is shown that this category can be obtained as the following pushout in $\text{MonCat}$:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
\text{Vect}_k \sqcup \text{Vect}_k^\text{op} \longrightarrow \text{Span}(\text{Vect}_k) \\
\downarrow \\
\text{Cospan}(\text{Vect}_k) \longrightarrow \text{LinRel}_k
\end{array}
$$

from which the above presentation can be obtained. Another possible description is mentioned in §C.10.9.

C.8 Interchange

C.8.1 Interchange algebra. The theory of interchange algebras [234, 253] models algebraic structures with two multiplications satisfying the exchange law (which is sometimes also called the interchange law) holds. It can be presented by the 3-polygraph $P$ with generators

$$P_0 = \{\ast\} \quad P_1 = \{a\} \quad P_2 = \{\gamma : aa \Rightarrow aa, \mu : aa \Rightarrow a, \nu : aa \Rightarrow a\}$$

and relations expressing that $\gamma$ is a symmetry (§C.1.4) together with the relation

where the white (resp. gray) triangle corresponds to $\mu$ (resp. $\nu$). An interchange algebra is associative when both $\mu$ and $\nu$ are. It is unital when equipped with two morphisms $1 \Rightarrow a$ acting as a left and right unit for $\mu$ and $\nu$ respectively. For instance, an associative unital interchange algebra in the cartesian category $\text{Set}$ is precisely a 2-category with only one 0-cell and one 1-cell. By the Eckmann-Hilton argument [120], this is the same as a commutative monoid.

C.8.2 Iterated monoidal categories. A variant of interchange algebras with $n$ distinct monoid structures instead of two is the following one. An $n$-fold monoid is a set equipped with $n$-distinct products which are suitably compatible. More precisely, the corresponding theory can be presented by the 3-polygraph $P$ with generators $P_0 = \{\ast\}, P_1 = \{a\}$ and

$$P_2 = \{\gamma : aa \Rightarrow aa, \eta : 1 \Rightarrow a, \mu_0 : aa \Rightarrow a, \ldots, \mu_{n-1} : aa \Rightarrow a\}$$
such that for every $0 \leq i < j < n$, $\eta_i$, $\mu_i$ and $\mu_j$ satisfy the axioms of associative unital interchange algebras. Again, by the Eckmann-Hilton argument, this theory is equivalent to the one of commutative monoids. However, the theory of $n$-fold pseudomonoids (where equalities are replaced by coherent isomorphisms) is more interesting: its algebras in the cartesian 2-category $\text{Cat}$ are $n$-fold monoidal categories. This structure is the one one obtains by considering monoids in the category of monoids in the category of monoids in ...in the category $\text{Cat}$ with the monoidal structure induced by cartesian product, see [25].

C.8.3 Interchange bialgebra. An interchange bialgebra [253] is a PROP which is both an interchange algebra and an interchange coalgebra, with the following compatibility relations

\[
\begin{aligned}
&\text{\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{scope}[rotate=90,transform shape]
    \node (A) at (0,0) {$a$};
    \node (B) at (0,1) {$b$};
    \node (C) at (1,0) {$c$};
    \node (D) at (1,1) {$d$};
    \draw (A) to (B);
    \draw (A) to (C);
    \draw (B) to (D);
    \draw (C) to (D);
  \end{scope}
\end{tikzpicture}}
&\begin{tikzpicture}
  \begin{scope}[rotate=90,transform shape]
    \node (A) at (0,0) {$a$};
    \node (B) at (0,1) {$b$};
    \node (C) at (1,0) {$c$};
    \node (D) at (1,1) {$d$};
    \draw (A) to (B);
    \draw (A) to (C);
    \draw (B) to (D);
    \draw (C) to (D);
  \end{scope}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{aligned}
\]

The most studied variant of this notion is the one of interaction nets, which are detailed in §C.12.5.

C.9 Idempotent objects

An idempotent object in a monoidal category is an object $x$ equipped with an isomorphism $x \otimes x \to x$. The theory for idempotent objects is the PRO $T$, called the Thompson category, presented by the 3-polygraph $P$ with $P_0 = \{\ast\}$, $P_1 = \{a\}$, with 2-generators $\mu : aa \Rightarrow a$ and $\delta : a \Rightarrow aa$, depicted as

\[
\begin{aligned}
&\text{\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (A) at (0,0) {$a$};
  \node (B) at (0,1) {$a$};
  \draw (A) to (B);
\end{tikzpicture}}
&\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (A) at (0,0) {$a$};
  \node (B) at (0,1) {$a$};
  \draw (A) to (B);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{aligned}
\]

and subject to the relations

\[
\begin{aligned}
&\text{\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (A) at (0,0) {$a$};
  \node (B) at (0,1) {$a$};
  \draw (A) to (B);
\end{tikzpicture}}
&\begin{tikzpicture}
  \node (A) at (0,0) {$a$};
  \node (B) at (0,1) {$a$};
  \draw (A) to (B);
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{aligned}
\]

A morphism is a binary tree (resp. a cotree) when it has $a$ as target (resp. source) and is a composite of generators $\mu$ (resp. $\delta$) only. It is observed in [130] that the monoid of automorphisms $T(a,a)$ is isomorphic to the Thomson group $F$, already presented in §A.1.27. Namely, we can recover the generators of the
usual presentation as defined by induction on $i$ by

$$\begin{align*}
x_0 &= \quad \text{and} \quad x_{i+1} = \quad .
\end{align*}$$

More generally, any morphism $a \to a$ of $T$ decomposes as a cotree followed by a tree respectively encoding the dyadic partitions of the input and of the output of the corresponding morphism $I \to I$ in the Thompson group, by specifying when the interval should be split in two halves. For instance, the morphism on the left corresponds to the function on the right:

By post-composition, the elements of $F$ act on trees which are “large enough” (the action is partially defined). For instance, we have the following action of $x_0$:  

From this point of view, the generator $x_0$ can be pictured as

since it will “replace” a prefix of a tree as on the left with a prefix as on the right. Such a transformation is sometimes called an associative law and the group $F$ can be described as the group of those, with expected composition.
For instance, Mac Lane’s pentagon is

\[
\begin{array}{cccc}
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } & \text{ } \\
\end{array}
\]

Similarly, the Thompson group \( V \) can be recovered as the group of automorphisms on \( a \) in the free symmetric monoidal category on \( T \). This entails that \( V \) can be described as the group of automorphisms of the free Cantor algebra on a singleton [59]: we recall that a Cantor algebra is a set \( A \) equipped with a bijection \( \alpha : A \rightarrow A \times A \).

### C.10 Dualities

#### C.10.1 Adjunctions

An **adjunction** consists of two functors \( f : C \rightarrow D \) and \( g : D \rightarrow C \) together with natural transformations \( \eta : 1_C \Rightarrow fg \) and \( \varepsilon : gf \Rightarrow 1_D \) such that \( (\eta f) \ast (f \varepsilon) = 1_f \) and \( (g \eta) \ast (\varepsilon g) = 1_g \). In such a situation \( f \) is called a **left adjoint** to \( g \), and \( g \) a **right adjoint** to \( f \).

The theory of adjunctions is the 2-category \( \text{Adj} \) presented by the 3-polygraph \( P \) with generators

\[
P_0 = \{ c, d \} \quad P_1 = \{ f : c \rightarrow d, g : d \rightarrow c \}
\]

and

\[
P_2 = \{ \eta : 1_c \Rightarrow fg, \varepsilon : gf \Rightarrow 1_d \}
\]

pictured as

\[
\eta = \begin{array}{c}
g \circ f \\
\end{array} \quad \varepsilon = \begin{array}{c}
g \circ f \\
\end{array}
\]
and respectively called *unit* and *counit*, together with the two relations

\[
\begin{align*}
\eta : 1 & \rightarrow xx^* \\
n : x^*x & \rightarrow 1
\end{align*}
\]

often called *zigzag* or *triangle identities*. This presentation is convergent, the normal forms being the horizontal composites of \(\eta, e\) and identities. A 2-functor \(F : \textsf{Adj} \rightarrow \textsf{Cat}\) corresponds precisely to an adjunction in the usual sense.

The 2-category \(\textsf{Adj}\) is studied in [319]. In particular, if we consider the 2-category \(\textsf{Adj}(c, c)\), which is the full sub-2-category of \(\textsf{Adj}\) on the 0-cell \(c\), we have an isomorphism of 2-categories (or of monoidal categories)

\[\textsf{Adj}(c, c) \cong \Delta^+\]

Namely, the monoid of 1-cells is freely generated by \(fg : c \rightarrow c\) (thus isomorphic to \(\mathbb{N}\)), and one can define a structure of monoid on \(fg\) whose multiplication and unit are respectively \(feg\) and \(\eta\), from which the isomorphism can easily be deduced. For instance, the non-decreasing function pictured on the left, corresponds to the 2-cell on the right in the theory of monoids

\[
\begin{array}{c}
0 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\
\end{array}
\]

and to the following 2-cell in \(\textsf{Adj}(c, c)\):

\[
\begin{array}{c}
f & g & f & g & f & g \\
\end{array}
\]

Similarly, we have \(\textsf{Adj}(d, d) \cong \Delta^\text{op}\), and \(\textsf{Adj}(c, d)\) and \(\textsf{Adj}(d, c)\) are the subcategories of \(\Delta\), whose objects are non-zero natural numbers and morphisms are the last-element (resp. first-element) preserving functions. Note that \(\Delta^\text{op}\) is isomorphic to the subcategory of \(\Delta\), whose objects are non-zero natural numbers and morphisms are preserving both first and last element.

**C.10.2 Duality.** A *duality* in a monoidal category \(C\) is an adjunction in \(C\), considered as a 2-category. It consists of two objects \(x\) and \(x^*\) together with morphisms

\[
\eta_x : 1 \rightarrow xx^* \quad \epsilon_x : x^*x \rightarrow 1
\]

satisfying the zigzag relations (C.14). In this case \(x\) is called a *left dual* of \(x^*\), and \(x^*\) a *right dual* of \(x\). Two left (resp. right) duals of a given object are necessarily isomorphic. An object \(x\) is *self-dual* when it admits a right dual \(x^*\) which is isomorphic to \(x\).
A monoidal category is right-autonomous (resp. left-autonomous) when every object \( x \) admits a right dual \( x^* \) (resp. a left dual \( x^* \)). It is strictly so when duals are chosen so that \((xy)^* = y^*x^*, 1^* = 1, \eta_1 = 1 = \epsilon_1, \eta_{xy} = x\eta_y x^* \circ \eta_x \) and \( \epsilon_{xy} = \epsilon_y \circ y^* \epsilon_x y; \) without loss of generality, we consider that this is always the case in the following. It is autonomous (or rigid) when it is both left- and right-autonomous. A compact closed category is a symmetric monoidal category which is autonomous. For instance, the category \( \text{Vect}_k \) of \( k \)-vector spaces is compact closed, the dual \( x^* \) of a vector space \( x \) being its linear dual.

A coherence theorem for compact closed categories was shown by Kelly and Laplaza [216]. In particular, in a compact closed category, we have isomorphisms \( \ast x \cong x \), \( x^{**} \cong x \), which we will be considered as equalities in the following. Given a morphism \( f : x \to x \) of a compact closed category, the morphism

\[
\text{tr}(f) = \epsilon_{x^*} \circ f x^* \circ \eta_x
\]

is called its trace: there is a general axiomatization of trace in symmetric monoidal categories [210], which every compact closed category canonically possesses. In particular, the morphism \( \text{tr}(1_x) \) is often called the dimension of \( x \). The category is loop-free when every object \( x \) is 1-dimensional, i.e., \( \text{tr}(x) = 1 \).

A right-autonomous category is pivotal when equipped with a monoidal natural isomorphism \( x \cong x^{**} \), considered as an equality in the following. A nice survey of the flavors of categories with duals can be found in [324].

**C.10.3 The free compact category.** Suppose given a symmetric monoidal category \( C \) presented by a 3-polygraph \( P \). The free compact category on \( C \) admits a presentation by the 3-polygraph \( Q \) with generators

- \( Q_0 = P_0 = \{ * \} \)
- \( Q_1 = \{ a^n \mid a \in P_1 \text{ and } n \in \mathbb{Z} \} \)
- \( Q_2 = \{ f : u^0 \Rightarrow v^0 \mid f : u \Rightarrow v \in P_2 \} \cup \)
  \[ \{ \eta_{a^n} : 1 \Rightarrow a^n a^{n+1}, \epsilon_{a^n} : a^{n+1} a^n \Rightarrow 1 \mid a^n \in Q_1 \} \]

where, for \( u = a_1 \ldots a_k \), we write \( u^n \) for \( a_1^n \ldots a_k^n \). The generators \( \eta_{a^n} \) and \( \epsilon_{a^n} \) are respectively pictured

- \( \xymatrix{ a^n & a^{n+1} } \) and \( \xymatrix{ a^{n+1} & a^n } \).

The relations are those in \( P_3 \) together with the zigzag relations (C.14) satisfied by \( \eta_{a^n} \) and \( \epsilon_{a^n} \) for every \( a \in P_1 \) and integer \( n \).
Here, the object \(a^0\) corresponds to \(a\) in the original category and, for \(n \in \mathbb{N}\), \(a^n\) (resp. \(a^{-n}\)) corresponds to \(a^{\cdots \cdots \cdot} \) (resp. \(\cdots \cdots \cdot a\)), with \(\ast\) applied \(n\) times. Thanks to this presentation, one can for instance deduce that the canonical monoidal functor from a monoidal category into its free compact category is faithful [283].

**C.10.4 The free compact closed category.** Suppose given a symmetric monoidal category \(C\) presented by a 3-polygraph \(P\). The free compact closed category on \(C\) admits a presentation by the 3-polygraph \(Q\) with generators

\[
\begin{align*}
Q_0 &= P_0 = \{\ast\} \\
Q_1 &= \{a, a^\ast \mid a \in P_1\} \\
Q_2 &= \{f : u \Rightarrow v \mid f : u \Rightarrow v \in P_2\} \sqcup \{\eta_a : 1 \Rightarrow aa^\ast, \varepsilon_a : a^\ast a \Rightarrow 1 \mid a \in P_1\}
\end{align*}
\]

and relations being those in \(Q_3\) together with the zigzag relations for each \(\eta_a\) and \(\varepsilon_a\).

The theory for a pair of adjoint endofunctors can be obtained from the category \(\text{Adj}\) of §C.10.1 by identifying the two objects, and its presentation can be obtained from the one of \(\text{Adj}\) by identifying the 0-generators \(c\) and \(d\). The above results shows that this theory is the free compact closed category on the terminal category.

**C.10.5 The free “self-dual” compact closed category.** As a variant of the situation described in previous section, given a symmetric monoidal category \(C\) presented by a polygraph \(P\), we call the free self-dual compact closed category on \(C\), the category presented by the 3-polygraph \(Q\) with generators

\[
\begin{align*}
Q_0 &= P_0 = \{\ast\} \\
Q_1 &= P_1 \\
Q_2 &= \{f : u \Rightarrow v \mid f : u \Rightarrow v \in P_2\} \sqcup \{\eta_a : 1 \Rightarrow aa^\ast, \varepsilon_a : a^\ast a \Rightarrow 1 \mid a \in P_1\}
\end{align*}
\]

and relations being those in \(Q_3\) together with the zigzag relations for each \(\eta_a\) and \(\varepsilon_a\), and the relations

\[
\begin{align*}
\gamma_{a,a} \circ \eta_a &= \eta_a & \varepsilon_a \circ \gamma_{a,a} &= \varepsilon_a
\end{align*}
\]

for every 1-generator \(a \in P_1\). In the resulting category, only the generators are self-dual, for instance the dual of the 1-cell \(ab\) is \(ba\). The axiomatization of self-dual categories is quite subtle, see [323], and it is not clear that this
construction is an instance of those. However, it is quite useful in the following, so we use it without claiming a universal property.

**C.10.6 1-cobordisms.** The category of $n$-cobordisms was presented in §C.6.5. In this section we study the case $n = 1$ and give a presentation of the monoidal category $\text{Cob}_{1}$. Its objects are disjoint unions of oriented 0-dimensional manifolds, i.e., points together with an orientation $-$ or $+$, and it admits a presentation by the polygraph $P$ with $P_0 = \{\ast\}$, $P_1 = \{-, +\}$, 2-generators being

![polygraph diagram]

such that the four first generators equip the monoidal category with a symmetric structure, see §C.1.4, and the two last generators satisfy the axioms for dualities. In other words, $\text{Cob}_{1}$ is the free compact closed symmetric monoidal category on one object.

**C.10.7 The Temperley-Lieb category.** The Temperley-Lieb category $\text{TL}$, introduced and studied in [1], is the PRO generated by

![TL diagram]

subject to the relations

![TL relations diagram]

It is thus the free monoidal category containing a self-dual object, satisfying the last relation above. Note that this presentation is not terminating because of the loop

![loop diagram]

it can however be shown to be quasi-terminating [6], in the sense of §1.3.11. Given $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the monoid of endomorphisms $\text{TL}(n, n)$ is generated by

$$d = \begin{array}{c} \circ \circ \Rightarrow \\
\end{array}, \quad u_i = \begin{array}{c} \circ \circ \Rightarrow \\
\end{array}, \quad \text{and} \quad u_i = \begin{array}{c} \circ \circ \Rightarrow \\
\end{array}$$

with $0 \leq i \leq n - 2$, where $u_i$ is composed of the identity on $i$ on the left and on $n - i - 2$ on the right, subject to relations of §A.1.29, making it the $n$-th.
Temperley-Lieb monoid, see §A.1.29. For instance, with \( n = 4 \), we have the relations

\[
\begin{align*}
u_0 u_1 u_0 &= u_0 \\
u_1 u_1 &= du_1 \\
u_0 u_2 &= u_2 u_0
\end{align*}
\]

C.10.8 Chord diagrams. Consider the full subcategory \( C \) of \( Corel \) (see §C.6.4) whose morphisms are corelations \( X \to Y \leftarrow Z \) which are one to one, meaning that for every \( y \in Y \) the cardinal of \( f^{-1}(y) \cup g^{-1}(y) \) is precisely 2. A morphism can be represented by drawing a line between two elements of the source \( X \) or the target \( Z \) which are sent to the same element of \( Y \) by \( f \) or \( g \), as on the left below:

\begin{align*}
\begin{aligned}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{aligned}
\end{align*}

such diagrams are sometimes called chord diagrams or Brauer linkings [55]. The resulting PRO, which we call the Brauer category, has a presentation with generators

\begin{align*}
\begin{aligned}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{aligned}
\end{align*}

such that the last one is a symmetry (§C.1.4) and the relations

\begin{align*}
\begin{aligned}
\begin{tikzpicture}
\end{tikzpicture}
\end{aligned}
\end{align*}

hold, see [192]. The morphism corresponding to the diagram on the left of (C.15) is shown on the right. This category is the free loop-free self-dual compact closed symmetric monoidal category on an object, in sense of §C.10.5. Given \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), the monoid of endomorphisms on \( n \) is precisely the \( n \)-th Brauer monoid, as described in §A.1.30. In terms of the presentation of the monoid, the generators \( a_i \) and \( u_i \) are respectively interpreted as

\begin{align*}
a_i = \begin{vmatrix} \vdots \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} \vdots \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} \vdots \end{vmatrix} \\
u_i = \begin{vmatrix} \vdots \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} \vdots \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} \vdots \end{vmatrix}
\end{align*}
and for instance, we have the derivation of the following relations:

\[
\begin{align*}
&(a_0 a_1 a_0 = a_1 u_0 a_1) \\
&(u_0 a_1 u_0 = u_0) \\
&(a_0 a_1 u_0 u_2 = a_2 a_1 u_0 u_2)
\end{align*}
\]

A variant without loop-freeness can be obtained by dropping the last rule of (C.16). The resulting category corresponds to the subcategory of \(\text{Cosp}(\Delta_+)^t\) whose morphisms satisfy a similar condition as above.

\textbf{C.10.9 Frobenius algebras and dualities.} A Frobenius algebra is always canonically equipped with a notion of duality and can even be characterized in terms of this structure, see [224] for details.

\textbf{C.10.10 Proposition.} The following theories present the same category:

1. The theory of Frobenius algebras, generated by \(\triangledown, \Delta, \triangleleft\) and \(\Re\) such that
   - \((\triangledown, \Delta)\) is a monoid,
   - \((\triangledown, \Re)\) is a comonoid,
   - the Frobenius relations (C.9) hold between \(\Delta\) and \(\triangledown\).

2. The theory generated by \(\triangledown, \Delta, \Re, \triangleleft\) such that
   - \((\triangledown, \Delta)\) is a monoid,
   - the following relations hold:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\triangledown \Rightarrow \Delta \\
&\Delta \Rightarrow \triangledown
\end{align*}
\]

3. The theory generated by \(\triangledown, \Delta, \triangleleft, \Re\) such that
   - \((\triangledown, \Delta)\) is a monoid,
   - \((\triangleleft, \Re)\) is a duality,
   - the following relation holds:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\triangledown \Rightarrow \Delta \\
&\Delta \Rightarrow \Re\triangleleft
\end{align*}
\]

or equivalently the following relation holds:

\[
\begin{align*}
&\triangledown \Rightarrow \Re\triangleleft
\end{align*}
\]
Proof. The equivalence between theories can be derived using Tietze transformations. We sketch the equivalence between the first and last one. In the theory (1), we can define

$$\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{X}$$

and conversely, in the theory (3), we can define

$$\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{X}$$

In both cases, the required relations are derivable. □

Various extensions of this result are possible in order to take into account variations on the notion of Frobenius algebra (commutative, special, etc.).

Following the same ideas as previously, in the theory of interacting Hopf algebras (§C.7) a self-duality can be defined by

$$\mathcal{T} = \mathcal{X}$$

and the structure can be axiomatized as follows taking these as generators [22]:

C.10.11 Proposition. The following theories present the same category:

1. The theory of interacting Hopf algebras.
2. The theory generated by $\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{Y}, \mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{V}$ such that
   - $(\mathcal{T}, \mathcal{V}, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{X}, \mathcal{Y})$ is a bicommutative linear bialgebra,
   - $(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{Y})$ is a duality,
   - $(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{Y}, \mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{W})$ is a bicommutative extraspecial Frobenius algebra,
   - $(\mathcal{X}, \mathcal{Y}, \mathcal{Z}, \mathcal{W}, \mathcal{V})$ is a bicommutative extraspecial Frobenius algebra.

C.10.12 Tangles. A category of tangles can be defined as a variation of the category of braids, see §A.1.21 and C.1.1, intuitively by allowing wires to loop. Given natural numbers $m, n \in \mathbb{N}$, a tangle from $m$ to $n$ is an embedding

$$t : T \rightarrow X$$
where $T$ is a 1-manifold with boundary and $X = \mathbb{R}^2 \times [0, 1]$, such that the image of the boundary $\partial T$ of $T$ is of the form

$$t(\partial T) = \{(0, i, 0) \mid i \in \mathbb{N}, 0 \leq i < m\} \cup \{(0, i, 1) \mid i \in \mathbb{N}, 0 \leq i < n\}$$

where the natural number $m$ (resp. $n$) is called the source (resp. target) of the tangle. Graphically, a tangle from 4 to 2 can be pictured as

Tangles are considered up to endpoint-preserving isotopy: we identify two tangles $t : T \to X$ and $t' : T' \to X$ for which there exists a continuous map $h : [0, 1] \to X$ such that $h(0) = 1_X$, $h(1) \circ t = t'$ and, for every $t \in [0, 1]$, $h(t)$ is a homeomorphism such that $h(t)(\partial T) = h(0)(\partial T)$. We write $\text{Tang}$ for the PRO with tangles as morphisms with expected composition (corresponding to linking wires) and tensor product (corresponding to juxtaposition of diagrams).

The category $\text{Tang}$ is the free braided monoidal category on a self-dual object, which moreover satisfies the first Reidemeister move (C.17) below, see [137, 138]. Explicitly, this means that it admits a presentation with generators

subject to the relations

- first Reidemeister move:

- second Reidemeister move:
– third Reidemeister move (aka Yang-Baxter rule):

– zigzag relations:

– the naturality relations:

or equivalently, the sliding relations:

If we replace relation (C.17) by

(C.18)
we present the category of framed tangles or ribbons: in this category, morphisms correspond to pieces of ribbon (instead of wire), i.e., embeddings

\[ r : T \times [0, 1] \to X \]

where \( T \) is a 1-manifold with boundary, e.g.

considered up to endpoint-preserving isotopy. Note that the relation (C.17) is not satisfied since trying to strengthen the loop introduces a “twist” on the rope

and is thus not the identity ribbon. If we remove the relation (C.17) (without adding (C.18)), we present the category of tangles up to regular isotopy, a variant of isotopy which forces ribbons to always be flat against the plane, which prevents the identity (C.18) from holding:

A tangle from 0 to 0 is called a link, and a knot is a link \( t : T \to X \) such that \( T \) is the 1-sphere. The Reidemeister moves were originally introduced for those [309].

A variant of this category can be obtained by considering oriented tangles, see [137, 138, 214, 324]: the objects of this category are sequences of “-” and “+”, and morphisms are oriented tangles up to endpoint-preserving planar isotopy, e.g.
Of course, ribbon variants of this category can also be considered. The resulting categories are pivotal (instead of being self-dual).

**C.10.13 First-order logic.** The dependencies between quantifiers in proofs for first-order logic are characterized by the structure of free pivotal category on a bialgebra, see [282].

### C.11 Endomorphisms

**C.11.1 The theory of endomorphisms.** Consider the PRO whose morphisms are endomorphisms \( f : n \to n \) consisting of a list \((f_1, \ldots, f_n)\) of \( n \) natural numbers. The composite of two morphisms \( f : n \to n \) and \( g : n \to n \) is given by pointwise addition \((f_1 + g_1, \ldots, f_n + g_n)\), identities are lists \((0, \ldots, 0)\), and tensor product is given by concatenation of lists. This PRO admits a presentation with one generator

\[
\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
\uparrow
\end{array}
\]

and no relation, the generator being interpreted as the list \((1)\). An algebra for this theory in a monoidal category consists of an object \( x \) together with an endomorphism \( f : x \to x \) on \( x \). This is a particular case of a presentation of the free monoidal category generated by the monoid \( \mathbb{N} \), see §C.5.2: since \( \mathbb{N} \) is free on one generator, its action is entirely determined by an endomorphism (corresponding to the action of \( 1 \)).

**C.11.2 Actions of a set.** Suppose fixed a set \( L \). Previous situation can be generalized by considering the PRO where the morphisms are endomorphisms \( f : n \to n \) consisting of a list \((f_1, \ldots, f_n)\) of elements of \( L^* \), the free monoid over \( L \): composition is given by pointwise concatenation in \( L^* \) and tensor by concatenation of lists. It admits a presentation with generators

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
1 \\
\uparrow
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
2 \\
\uparrow
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

indexed by \( a \in L \) and no relation. This is the theory for an action of \( L \): it consists of an object \( x \) together with a family \( f_a : x \to x \) of endomorphisms of \( x \) indexed by \( a \in L \). Again, this is a particular case of a presentation of the free monoidal category generated by the monoid \( L^* \) (the free monoid on the set \( L \)). We recover the theory of §C.11.1 in the particular case where \( L \) is a singleton.
**C.11.3 Involutions.** The monoidal theory of involutions admits a presentation with one generator

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array}
\]

and relation

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array}
\]

It is the free monoidal category on the monoid \( \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z} \).

**C.11.4 The hyperoctahedral category.** The symmetric monoidal theory of involutions admits a presentation with two generators

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array}
\]

and relations

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \Rightarrow
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array}
\]

together with usual relations for symmetries, see §C.1.3.

Given \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), the monoid of endomorphisms on \( n \) is in fact a group called the hyperoctahedral group or signed symmetric group, and noted \( C_n \), see §A.1.22. It can be described as the group of signed permutations of a set with \( n \) elements, i.e., \((n \times n)\)-matrices where each column and each row contains one non-null coefficient which is either 1 or \(-1\), with usual multiplication and identities, the two generators being respectively interpreted as

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
-1 \\
0 \\
1
\end{pmatrix}
\quad \text{and} \quad
\begin{pmatrix}
0 & 1 \\
1 & 0
\end{pmatrix}.
\]

It can also be described as the wreath product

\[ C_n = S_2 \wr S_n \]

of symmetric groups. The presentation of \( C_n \) given in §A.1.22 can be recovered as the associated presentation of category (in the sense of §10.3.10), where the generators \( a_0 \) and \( a_i \) (with \( 0 < i < n \)) respectively correspond to

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array}
\]

For instance, the relation \( a_0 a_1 a_0 a_1 = a_1 a_0 a_1 a_0 \) corresponds to

\[
\begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c}
  \circ \\
  \circ
\end{array}
\]
In this category, every morphism factors uniquely as a symmetry (i.e., a matrix containing only 0 and 1) followed by a diagonal matrix. This provides a factorization system inducing a description of the category as $S \otimes_\ell N^\otimes$ where $N^\otimes$ is the free monoidal category over the monoid $N$, considered as a category, and $\ell$ is the distributive law induced by the factorization system. Of course, this category being self-dual, we also have a decomposition as $N^\otimes \otimes_\ell S$.

**C.11.5 Progressive ribbons.** The category $R$ is the subcategory of the category of ribbons up to endpoint-preserving isotopy described in §C.10.12, with the same objects, where

- we restrict to ribbons which are **progressive**, i.e., always “go down”, so that the ribbon on the left is valid but not the one on the right:

- we restrict to ribbons which always show the “same face” at the boundary, so that the ribbon on the left is valid, but not the one on the right:

For instance, we have the following morphism $3 \to 3$:

Note that the ribbons can be twisted. This category admits a presentation with generators

such that the two first generators are mutually inverse and the two last generators form a braiding (Theorem C.1.5). For instance the above morphism corresponds to the diagram

This category can be shown to be the free balanced category on an object [208]. We recall that a **balanced category** is a braided monoidal category equipped
with a natural family of isomorphisms \( \theta_u : u \rightarrow u \), called twists, such that \( \theta_i = i \) and the following diagram commutes for every pair of objects \( u \) and \( v \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\gamma_{u,v} & \xrightarrow{\theta_{u\otimes v}} & u \otimes v \\
\downarrow \theta_{u\otimes}\theta_v & & \downarrow \theta_{u\otimes\theta_v} \\
\gamma_{v,u} & \xleftarrow{\theta_{v\otimes u}} & u \otimes v \\
\end{array}
\]

Graphically,

Given \( n \in \mathbb{N} \), the group of endomorphisms of \( n \) is the group \( R_n \) of progressive ribbons with \( n \) strands described in §A.1.23:

\[
R = \bigsqcup_{n \in \mathbb{N}} R_n
\]

It can be obtained as the wreath product of the additive group of integers with the \( n \)-th braid group:

\[
R_n = \mathbb{Z} \wr C_n.
\]

C.11.6 The pearl necklace. The pearl necklace is the PRO, introduced in §12.2.8, presented by the 3-polygraph with three generators

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\implies \\
\end{array}
\]

subject to the four relations

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\implies \\
\implies \\
\implies \\
\implies \\
\end{array}
\]

This is the free monoidal category on a self-dual object together with an endomorphism, see also §C.10.5 and §C.11.1. This presentation was introduced and studied in [161] as a first example of a convergent finite presentation which does not have a finite derivation type, see §12.2.8.

C.11.7 Directed acyclic graphs. A directed acyclic graph, or DAG, is a graph

\[
G = G_0 \xrightarrow{\delta} G_1
\]

which is acyclic, i.e., every path from a vertex to itself is empty. Any \( n \in \mathbb{N} \) can canonically be seen as a DAG with the set \( [n] = \{0, \ldots, n-1\} \) as set of
vertices and no edge; we write \([n]\) for this graph. A vertex \(x \in G_0\) of a DAG \(G\) is minimal (resp maximal) when there is no edge with \(x\) as target (resp. as source). Given a set \(V \subseteq G_0\), the restriction of \(G\) to \(V\) is the subgraph of \(G\) with \(V\) as vertices, whose edges are the edges \(G\) such that both their source and their target belong to \(V\). Given a set \(V \subseteq G_0\), the graph obtained by hiding \(V\) in \(G\) is the graph obtained from \(G\) by adding a new edge \(x \rightarrow z\) for every vertex \(y \in V\) and pair of edges \(x \rightarrow y\) and \(y \rightarrow z\) in \(G\) and then restricting the resulting graph to \(G_0 \setminus V\).

We can build a PROP DAG of DAGs, where an object is a natural number and a morphism from \(m\) to \(n\) is a cospan

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbb{[}m\mathbb{]} \\
\downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
G
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbb{[}n\mathbb{]}
\end{array}
\]

where \(G\) is a finite graph, \(f\) and \(g\) are injective morphisms of graphs such that for every \(i \in [m]\) (resp. \(i \in [n]\)) the vertex \(f(i)\) (resp. \(g(i)\)) is a minimal (resp. maximal) vertex in \(G\), and the images of \(f\) and \(g\) are disjoint. A vertex of \(G\) is a source (resp. target, resp. internal) vertex when it is in the image of \(f\) (resp. in the image of \(g\), resp. neither in the image of \(f\) nor the image of \(g\)). We will picture by

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\bullet \\
\bullet \\
\bullet
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
x
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
y
\end{array}
\]

a morphism with \(x\) and \(y\) as internal vertices, 2 source vertices and 3 target vertices. The composite of two morphisms \(G : m \rightarrow n\) and \(H : n \rightarrow o\) is given by computing the pushout

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbb{[}m\mathbb{]} \\
\downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
G \times_n H
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbb{[}n\mathbb{]}
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\mathbb{[}o\mathbb{]}
\end{array}
\]

and then hiding \(h'(g([n]))\) in the resulting graph, with the expected cospan morphisms induced from \(h' \circ f\) and \(g' \circ i\). For instance, we have the following composition of morphisms:
A catalogue of 3-polygraphs

The identity on $n$ is the graph obtained from $[n] \sqcup [n]$ by adding, for every $i \in [n]$ a vertex from the first copy of $i$ to the second one, e.g. the identity on 3 is

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{----} \\
\end{array} \]

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{----} \\
\end{array} \]

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{----} \\
\end{array} \]

Tensor product is given on morphisms by disjoint union and symmetries are the expected ones. It is shown in [129] that this PROP admit a presentation with generators

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{----} \\
\end{array} \]

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{----} \\
\end{array} \]

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{----} \\
\end{array} \]

such that the five first generators satisfy the axioms for bicommutative bialgebras (§C.4.3) and the penultimate one is a symmetry (§C.1.4). In this language, the composition of the two above morphisms can be written

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{----} \\
\end{array} \] \hspace{1cm} \ast \hspace{1cm} \begin{array}{c}
\text{----} \\
\end{array} \]

\[ \begin{array}{c}
\text{----} \\
\end{array} \]

If we restrict the morphisms of the category $\text{DAG}$ to simple graphs, i.e., forbidding multiple edges with same source and same target, we can obtain a presentation of the resulting category by further adding the relation (C.8) of special bialgebras.

C.11.8 Posets. As a variant of previous situation, consider the PROP whose objects are integers and morphisms $m \to n$ are cospans

\[ [m] \xrightarrow{f} E \xleftarrow{g} [n] \]

of finite posets, where $[n]$ is the discrete poset with $n$ elements, and the morphisms are injective non-decreasing functions with disjoint images, such that the images of $f$ (resp. $g$) are minimal (resp. maximal) elements of the poset. Composition is obtained from the pushout by removing the elements which are identified in the interface, as in §C.11.7. This category admits the same pre-
sentation as the category of simple graphs, with the extra \textit{transitivity} relation

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\textbullet} \\
\Rightarrow \\
\text{\textbullet}
\end{array}
\]

see [284] for details.

\textbf{C.11.9 Frobenius.} We now consider a variant of the categories introduced previous section, as well as a generalization of the theory of special commutative Frobenius algebras, which is the category \textsf{Cospan}(F) as explained §C.6.3.

A formalization of “circuits” (such as electric circuits made of electronic components) was introduced and studied in [315] by considering the category \textsf{Circ}, which is the full subcategory of the category \textsf{Cospan}(\textsf{FinGraph}) whose objects are integers \(n \in \mathbb{N}\), seen as graphs with \([n]\) as vertices and no edge, morphisms being isomorphism classes of cospans of finite graphs. A morphism \(G : m \to n\) in this category is a graph \(G\) (considered up to isomorphism) together with two functions \(f : [m] \to G\) and \(g : [n] \to G\), composition is given by pushout and identities are cospans of the form \([n] \to [n] \leftarrow [n]\) with both morphisms being identities. The resulting category is a PROP which admits a presentation with generators

\[
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\textbullet} \\
\Rightarrow \\
\text{\textbullet}
\end{array} \\
\text{\textbullet} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\textbullet} \\
\Rightarrow \\
\text{\textbullet}
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c}
\text{\textbullet} \\
\Rightarrow \\
\text{\textbullet}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

such that the five first generators satisfy the axioms for special commutative Frobenius algebras (§C.6.1) and the penultimate one is a symmetry (§C.1.4).

Given a set \(L\) of labels (thought of as the possible components of our circuits), we can consider a variant of the previous category where the vertices of graphs are labeled in \(L\). It is shown to have a similar presentation as above, with the generator \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{\textbullet} \\
\Rightarrow \\
\text{\textbullet}
\end{array}\) being replaced by a family of generators \(\begin{array}{c}
\text{\textbullet} \\
\Rightarrow \\
\end{array}\), indexed by \(a \in L\).

From §C.11.2, we deduce that this is the theory for special Frobenius algebras equipped with an action of \(L\) [315, Proposition 3.2]. This category has found many applications to modeling networks [23, 21].

\textbf{C.12 Nets}

Some of the previous examples consist in categories whose morphisms are graphs of some sort (e.g. §C.11.7 or C.11.9). The kind of constructions performed there can be adapted in order to build freely generated monoidal categories as follows, by formalizing the networks occurring in string-diagrammatic
A catalogue of 3-polygraphs

representations of morphisms. Those networks will comprise nodes, which correspond to 2-generators, ports which represent the inputs and outputs of the generators and of the whole net, and wires which link ports together.

Throughout the section, we suppose fixed a signature 2-polygraph \( P \) with \( P_0 = \{ \star \} \). We recall that, given an element \( u = a_0 \ldots a_{n-1} \) of \( P^*_1 \), we write \(|u| = n\) for its length.

C.12.1 Definition. Following [234], a \( P \)-net consists of

– a finite set \( N \) of nodes,
– a labeling function \( \ell : N \to P_2 \),
– finite totally ordered sets \( X^- = \{ x^+_0, \ldots, x^-_m \} \) and \( X^+ = \{ x^+_0, \ldots, x^+_n \} \) of input and output ports,
– a labeling function \( \ell : X \to P_1 \), where

\[
X = X^- \sqcup X^+ \sqcup X^-_0 \sqcup X^+_0
\]

is the set of ports and

\[
X^-_i = \{ \ell(v)^- \mid v \in N, 0 \leq i < |s_1(\ell(v))| \}
\]

\[
X^+_j = \{ \ell(v)^+ \mid v \in N, 0 \leq j < |t_1(\ell(v))| \}
\]

are the sets of inner input and output ports respectively,

– a finite set \( W \) of wires,
– a labeling function \( \ell : W \to P_1 \),
– a boundary \( \partial w \subseteq X \) for every wire \( w \in W \),

such that

– for every node \( v \in N \) such that \( s_1(v) = a_1 \ldots a_p \) and \( t_1(v) = b_1 \ldots b_q \), we have \( \ell(v)^- = a_i \) and \( \ell(v)^+ = b_j \) for \( 0 \leq i < p \) and \( 0 \leq j < q \),
– for every \( w \in W \), \( \partial w \) contains 0 or 2 elements, and in the case \( \partial w = \{ x, y \} \) we have \( \ell(w) = \ell(x) = \ell(y) \),
– the sets \( \partial w \) form a partition of \( X \), i.e., \( X = \bigcup_{w \in W} \partial w \) and \( w \neq w' \) implies \( \partial w \cap \partial w' = \emptyset \).

The source (resp. target) of such a net is \( \ell(x^-_0) \ldots \ell(x^-_m) \) (resp. \( \ell(x^+_0) \ldots \ell(x^+_n) \)).

For instance, with \( P_1 = \{ a, b \} \) and \( P_2 = \{ \alpha : aaaa \Rightarrow a, \beta : ab \Rightarrow ab \} \), the
can be encoded as the net (figured on the right) with
\[ N = \{\mu, \nu\} \quad X^- = \{x, x'\} \quad X^+ = \{y\} \quad W = \{w_1, \ldots, w_7\} \]
lables being
\[ \ell(\mu) = a \quad \ell(\nu) = \beta \quad \ell(x) = a \quad \ell(x') = b \quad \ell(\mu^-_i) = a \quad \ell(w_1) = a \quad \ldots \]
and boundaries being
\[ \partial w_1 = \{\mu_0^-, \mu_1^+\} \quad \partial w_2 = \{\mu_2^-, x\} \quad \partial w_3 = \{\nu_1^-, x'\} \quad \ldots \quad \partial w_7 = \emptyset \]

As it can be observed for \( w_7 \) above, wires with empty boundary encode “loops”.

Nets are considered up to isomorphism, i.e., renaming of ports, wires and
nodes, preserving labels. Two nets can be composed by linking wires along
inner boundary ports and removing those ports; two nets can also be tensored
by juxtaposition. We write \( \text{Net}_P \) for the resulting monoidal category, with \( P^*_1 \)
as objects and nets as morphisms.

**C.12.2 Proposition.** The monoidal category \( \text{Net}_P \) is the free self-dual compact
closed category on \( P \), in the sense of §C.10.5.

Various other free constructions can be obtained by considering monoidal
subcategories obtained by restricting the notion of net.

**C.12.3 Traced categories.** The free traced category on \( P \), see [210], can be
obtained by forbidding wires to link two input ports, or two output ports. More
formally, we restrict the category \( \text{Net}_P \) to nets such that for every wire \( w \in W \),
its boundary \( \partial w \) is either empty or of the form \( \partial w = \{x, y\} \) with
\[ (x, y) \in (X^- \times X^-) \cup (X^+_+ \times X^-) \cup (X^+_+ \times X^+) \]
see [175] for details.
C.12.4 Free symmetric monoidal categories. Given a net, we define a relation $≺$ on nodes as the smallest transitive relation such that $\mu ≺ v$ whenever there exists a wire $w$ such that $\partial w = \{\mu^i, v^j\}$ for some indices $i$ and $j$, i.e., some output port of $\mu$ is linked to some input port of $v$. The free symmetric monoidal category on $P$ can obtained by considering the subcategory of $\text{Net}_P$ whose morphisms are nets such that the relation $≺$ is acyclic, the condition of §C.12.3 is satisfied, and $\partial w \neq \emptyset$ for every wire $w \in W$.

C.12.5 Interaction nets. The morphisms in $\text{Net}_P$ are called interaction nets whenever all the generators in $P_2$ are of the form $\alpha : a_1 \ldots a_n \Rightarrow b$, i.e., their target consists of only one generator. An interaction rule $A : \phi \Rightarrow \psi$ consists of a pair of parallel nets $\phi : u \Rightarrow v$ and $\psi : u \Rightarrow v$ which are of the form

\[
\text{\includegraphics{interaction-rule.png}}
\]

(in particular, $v$ is always an identity). These were introduced by Lafont [232, 234] in order to provide a distributed model of computation, where there is no global synchronization. Because of the shape of the rules, the corresponding rewriting system is confluent (as a rewriting system on nets) since there is no critical branching. The signature $P$ together with a set $P_3$ of interaction rules can be encoded as a 3-polygraph $Q$ obtained from the free self-dual compact closed symmetric monoidal category on $P$, as described in §C.10.5, by adding the elements of $P_3$ as 3-generators.

As a particular case, interaction combinators [234] are the following interaction nets. The sets of 0- and 1-generators are respectively $P_0 = \{\star\}$ and $P_1 = \{a\}$. The 2-generators are

\[
\text{\includegraphics{interaction-combinators.png}}
\]

respectively called constructor (noted $\gamma$), duplicator (noted $\delta$) and eraser (noted $\varepsilon$), and the interaction rules are

\[
\text{\includegraphics{interaction-rules.png}}
\]
as well as symmetric ones. Lafont’s original notation was

which suggests that they can also be formalized without resorting to the compact closure, at the cost of having to add two copies of each 2-generator (one going upward and one going downward). Interaction nets are “universal” in the sense that they can simulate any net [234, Theorem 1]. In particular, this implies that they are Turing-complete.

C.13 Simplicial and cubical categories

Given a category $C$, we write $\hat{C}$ for the category of presheaves on this category: the objects of $\hat{C}$ are functors $C^{\text{op}} \to \text{Set}$ and morphisms are natural transformations.

C.13.1 Simplicial categories. In §C.2, we have already described presentations of monoidal categories, whose associated presheaf categories are widely used in algebraic topology:

- for $\Delta_+$ presented in §C.2.3, $\hat{\Delta}_+$ is the category of augmented simplicial sets,
- for $\Delta_\eta$ presented in §C.2.1, $\hat{\Delta}_\eta$ is the category of augmented presimplicial or semisimplicial sets,
- for $F$ presented in §C.2.5, $\hat{F}$ is the category of augmented symmetric simplicial sets [148].

The non-augmented variants can be obtained by taking presheaves on the same categories with the object 0 removed. For each of those, from their presentation
as a monoidal category, we can deduce a presentation as a category by using the method of §10.3.10, and thus obtain an algebraic description of the associated presheaves.

For instance, from the presentation of the PRO \( \Delta_\eta \) given in §C.2.1, we can deduce the following presentation of it as a category:

\[
\left\{ n \left| \begin{array}{c}
\delta^n_0 : n \rightarrow n + 1 \\
\delta^n_0 \delta^{n+1}_i \Rightarrow \delta^n_0 \delta^{n+1}_j \\
\delta^n_0 \delta^{n+1}_j \Rightarrow \delta^n_0 \delta^{n+1}_i \\
\delta^n_0 \delta^{n+1}_i \\
\end{array} \right| \right\}_{0 \leq i < j \leq n}
\]

(see Example 10.3.11 for details). An augmented presimplicial set thus consists of a family of sets \( (X_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \) together with functions

\[ \partial^n_i : X_{n+1} \rightarrow X_n \]

with \( 0 \leq i \leq n \), satisfying relations dual to those of the above presentation. The description of non-augmented presimplicial sets is similar, excepting that we constrain \( n \) to be strictly positive (there is no \( X_0 \) nor \( \partial^0_0 \)). For those, an element of \( X_{n+1} \) can be interpreted geometrically as an \( n \)-simplex and the function \( \partial^n_i \) as the function associating to an \( n \)-simplex its \( i \)-th face, obtained by removing its \( i \)-th vertex; more generally, a simplicial set can be thought of as the result of gluing simplices. For instance, the space

\[
\begin{array}{c}
X_0 \xrightarrow{f_{01}} X_1 \\
| \quad \alpha_{012} \quad \beta \quad \gamma \\
X_2 \xleftarrow{f_{02}} X_3 \\
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{c}
X_2 \xrightarrow{f_{23}} X_3 \\
\quad \beta \quad \gamma \\
X_4 \xrightarrow{f_{45}} X_5 \\
\end{array}
\]

can be described by the simplicial set \( X \) with

\[
X_1 = \{ x_0, x_1, \ldots \} \quad X_2 = \{ f_{01}, f_{02}, \ldots \} \quad X_3 = \{ \alpha_{012}, \ldots, \beta, \gamma \} \quad X_4 = \{ A \}
\]

and \( X_n = \emptyset \) for \( n \geq 5 \), face maps being

\[ \partial^n_2(\beta) = f_{45} \quad \partial^n_1(\beta) = f_{35} \quad \partial^n_2(\beta) = f_{34} \]

and so on. A simplicial set \( X \) is moreover equipped with functions

\[ \sigma^n_i : X_n \rightarrow X_{n+1} \]

with \( 0 \leq i < n \), sending an \( n \)-simplex to the corresponding \( n+1 \)-simplex with degenerated \( i \)-th face. For instance, given a 1-simplex \( x_0 \rightarrow x_1 \), its images
C.13 Simplicial and cubical categories

under \( \sigma_0^3 \) and \( \sigma_1^3 \) are respectively

\[
\begin{align*}
\xymatrix{ & x_0 & f \ar[dr] & x_1 \ar[dl] & \\
x_0 & f \ar[rr] & & x_1 & f \ar[ll]}
\end{align*}
\]

Similarly, a symmetric augmented simplicial set \( X \) is equipped with functions

\[ \gamma_f^n : X_n \to X_n \]

indexed by bijections \( f : [n] \to [n] \) sending an \( n \)-simplex to the corresponding \( n \)-simplex with vertices renumbered according to \( f \).

C.13.2 Cubical categories. Developments similar to previous section can be performed using cubes instead of simplices. The precubical category is the PRO \( \Box \) generated by

\[ \eta^- : 0 \to 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \eta^+ : 1 \to 0 \]

respectively depicted as

\[
\begin{align*}
\begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\eta^-
\end{array}
\quad \quad \quad
\begin{array}{c}
\uparrow \\
\eta^+
\end{array}
\end{align*}
\]

with no relation. As a category, \( \Box \) can be presented by

\[
\left\{ n \begin{array}{c}
d^-_{n,i} : n \to n + 1, d^+_{n,i} : n \to n + 1 \\
d^\epsilon_{n,i,j} d^\epsilon'_{n+1,i,j} = d^\epsilon'_{n,i,j} d^\epsilon_{n+1,i,j+1}
\end{array} \right\}_{0 \leq i < j < n}
\]

with \( \epsilon, \epsilon' \in \{-, +\} \). A presheaf \( X \) on this category is called a precubical set: it consists of a family of sets \((X_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}\), whose elements can be interpreted as \( n \)-dimensional cubes, together with morphisms

\[ \partial^\epsilon_i : X_{n+1} \to X_n \]

with \( 0 \leq i < n \) and \( \epsilon \in \{-, +\} \), defined by

\[ \partial^\epsilon_i = 1_{n-i} \otimes \eta^\epsilon \otimes 1_{n-i-1} \]

and associating to each \((n+1)\)-cube its source (\( \epsilon = - \)) or target (\( \epsilon = + \)) face in the \( i \)-th direction. For instance, the space

\[
\begin{align*}
x_{011} & \xrightarrow{f_{11}} x_{111} \\
x_{010} & \xrightarrow{f_{10}} x_{110} \\
x_{001} & \xrightarrow{f_{01}} x_{101} \\
x_{000} & \xrightarrow{f_{00}} x_{100}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
x_{011} & \xrightarrow{f_{11}} x_{111} \\
x_{010} & \xrightarrow{f_{10}} x_{110} \\
x_{001} & \xrightarrow{f_{01}} x_{101} \\
x_{000} & \xrightarrow{f_{00}} x_{100}
\end{align*}
\]
corresponds to the precubical set with

\[ \begin{align*}
X_0 &= \{x_{000}, x_{001}, \ldots\} \\
X_1 &= \{f_{00}, f_{01}, \ldots\} \\
X_2 &= \{\alpha_{0,0}, \alpha_{1,1}, \ldots\} \\
X_3 &= \{A\}
\end{align*} \]

and \( X_n = \emptyset \) for \( n \geq 4 \). Face maps are given by

\[ \begin{align*}
\partial_0^\alpha (\beta) &= f_{1,1} \\
\partial_0^\beta (\beta) &= f_{2,1} \\
\partial_1^\beta (\beta) &= f_{0,1} \\
\partial_1^\gamma (\beta) &= f_{1,1}
\end{align*} \]

and so on.

Many variations on this category (and thus on associated presheaves) are possible and considered in the literature, see [149] for a panorama which is briefly recalled here. The cubical category \( \Box \) is the PRO generated by

\[ \begin{align*}
\circ & \quad \circ \\
\circ & \quad \circ
\end{align*} \]

subject to the relations

\[ \begin{align*}
\circ & \quad \circ \\
\circ & \quad \circ
\end{align*} \]  \qquad (C.19)

A cubical set \( X \) is a presheaf on this category and comes equipped with morphisms

\[ \sigma_i^n : X_n \to X_{n+1} \]

with \( 0 \leq i \leq n \), called degeneracies, sending an \( n \)-cube to the corresponding \((n+1)\)-cube degenerated in dimension \( i \). For instance, the images under \( \sigma_0 \) and \( \sigma_1 \) of the 1-cube \( x \to y \) are respectively

\[ \begin{align*}
\sigma_0^1 : x & \to y \\
\sigma_1^1 : x & \to y
\end{align*} \]

The symmetric cubical category \( \Box \gamma \) is the free symmetric monoidal category on the PRO \( \Box \), it is generated by

\[ \begin{align*}
\circ & \quad \circ \\
\circ & \quad \circ
\end{align*} \]

subject to the above relations (C.19) and those of symmetries (§C.1.3). A presheaf \( X \) on it is called a symmetric cubical set and is equipped with morphisms

\[ \gamma_f^n : X_n \to X_n \]

indexed by bijections \( f : [n] \to [n] \) sending an \( n \)-cube to the corresponding \( n \)-cube obtained by permuting the directions along \( f \). For instance the image
of the 2-cube on the left along the transposition $[2] \to [2]$ is the 2-cube on the right:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
x_{01} & \xrightarrow{f_1} & x_{11} \\
\phantom{x_{01}} & \searrow & \nearrow f_1 \\
x_{00} & \xrightarrow{f_0} & x_{10}
\end{array}
\quad \begin{array}{ccc}
x_{10} & \xrightarrow{f_1} & x_{11} \\
\phantom{x_{10}} & \searrow & \nearrow f_1 \\
x_{00} & \xrightarrow{f_0} & x_{01}
\end{array}
\] (C.20)

By definition, the \textit{cartesian cubical category} $\square$ is the free cartesian category on the PROP $\square$; it is generated by

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array}
\]

subject to the relations given in §C.2.10, which include (C.19). Note that this is the Lawvere theory for sets which are bipointed (i.e., equipped with two distinguished elements). A presheaf $X$ on this category is a symmetric cubical set equipped with morphisms

\[
\delta^n_i : X_{n+1} \to X_n
\]

with $0 \leq i < n$, which to an $(n+1)$-cube associate a diagonal $n$-cube (in directions $i$ and $i + 1$). For instance, the image under $\delta^n_0$ of the 2-cube on the left is a one cube as on the right

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
y_1 & \longrightarrow & z. \\
\phantom{y_1} & \searrow & \nearrow \\
x & \longrightarrow & y_0
\end{array}
\]

The \textit{cubical category with connections} $\square_c$ is the PRO generated by

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array}
\]

subject to relations (C.19), as well as

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array} & \equiv & \begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array} & \equiv & \begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array} & \equiv & \begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array} & \equiv & \begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \nearrow & \bullet \\
\Downarrow & & \Downarrow \\
\bullet & \searrow & \bullet
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

for $\eta, \varepsilon \in \{-, +\}$ with $\eta \neq \varepsilon$. A presheaf $X$ on this category is a \textit{cubical category with connections} and is equipped with morphisms

\[
\kappa^n_\varepsilon : X_n \to X_{n+1}
\]

called \textit{connections} which produce degenerated cubes, but in an other way than degeneracies. For instance, the images under $\kappa^n_-$ and $\kappa^n_+$ of the 1-cube $x \xrightarrow{f} y$
A catalogue of 3-polygraphs are shown on the left and those of the 2-cube (e.g., left of (C.20)) are shown on the right (omitting 2-cells for clarity):

A symmetric variant can be obtained by taking the free symmetric monoidal category (in practice, one moreover asks both monoid structures to be commutative). The 
\begin{align*}
\text{cubical category with reversions } \square_{\rho}
\end{align*}
is the PRO generated by

\begin{align*}
\phi & \hspace{1cm} \phi & \hspace{1cm} \phi
\end{align*}
satisfying the relations of $\square_{\kappa}$ together with

\begin{align*}
\text{A presheaf } X \text{ on this category is equipped with morphisms }
\rho^n_i : X_n \to X_n
\end{align*}

reversing cubes in the $i$-th direction. There is also a cartesian variant [91], where one usually requires axioms corresponding to the Lawvere theory of de Morgan algebras, i.e., bounded distributive lattices with an idempotent negation.

### C.14 Quantum processes

Let us briefly mention that presentations of PROPs are intensively used nowadays in the study of quantum processes, see [90] for an in-depth introduction. One of the most notable axiomatic approach is the ZX-calculus [89], aiming at modeling operations on qubits, which is a presented PROP together with a canonical interpretation in the category $\text{FdHilb}$ of finite-dimensional Hilbert spaces and linear maps, which is a PROP when equipped with the usual tensor product of vector spaces. The ZX-calculus is generated by

\begin{align*}
\alpha^m_n & \hspace{1cm} \beta^m_n
\end{align*}

where $\alpha^m_n$ (resp. $\beta^m_n$) have $m$ inputs and $n$ outputs, such that various axioms are satisfied, among which the fact that the first generator induces a symmetry and the second and the third a self-duality. The generating object of this PROP is interpreted as $\mathbb{C}^2$. Using the traditional notation, we write $|0\rangle, |1\rangle$ for the
standard basis (also called the $Z$-basis) of $\mathbb{C}^2$ and $|\rangle_-$, $|\rangle_+$ for the Bell basis (also called the $X$-basis) defined by $|\rangle_- = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|\rangle_0 - |\rangle_1)$ and $|\rangle_+ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}(|\rangle_0 + |\rangle_1)$.

We also write $\langle 0 |$ for the adjoint of $|\rangle_0$, etc. The interpretation of the generators is then given by

\[
\begin{align*}
&\begin{array}{c}
\text{(a)}
\end{array} = |\rangle_0 \otimes |\rangle_0 + |\rangle_1 \otimes |\rangle_1 \\
&\begin{array}{c}
\text{(b)}
\end{array} = \langle 0 | \otimes \langle 0 | + \langle 1 | \otimes \langle 1 |
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
&\begin{array}{c}
\text{(c)}
\end{array} = |\rangle_0 \otimes \langle 0 | e^{i\alpha} |\rangle_1 \otimes \langle 1 |
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
&\begin{array}{c}
\text{(d)}
\end{array} = |\rangle_+ \otimes \langle + | e^{i\alpha} |\rangle_- \otimes \langle - |
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
&\begin{array}{c}
\text{(e)}
\end{array} = |\rangle_0 \langle + | + |\rangle_1 \langle 1 |
\end{align*}
\]

The original axiomatization is not complete in general [104], meaning that the resulting functor to $\mathbf{FdHilb}$ is not faithful. However, the rules can be completed so that it is the case [291]: the proof is based on an alternative complete axiomatization called the $ZW$-calculus [167].
In this chapter, we provide an explicit description of the free $n$-category $P^*$ generated by an $n$-polygraph $P$. Variants of this construction can be found in [296, Deuxième partie], [264, Section 7] and [279, Section 4.1], but this section is mostly inspired of the work of Makkai [264], where the proofs of most assertions can be found, formulated in a slightly different language, see also [134, Section 2].

We first provide, in §D.1, a formal definition of the syntax of $n$-categories, i.e., a description of the morphisms in an $(n+1)$-category freely generated by an $n$-polygraph, allowing reasoning by induction on its terms to prove results on free categories. It turns out that this syntax for $n$-categories, which corresponds to the one introduced in Chapter 14 and used throughout the book, is very "redundant", in the sense that there are many ways to express a composite of cells which will give rise to the same result, and is sometimes not very practical for this reason. In §D.2, we provide an alternative syntax, which suffers less from these problems, by restricting compositions. Finally, in §D.3, we briefly mention the word problem for free $n$-categories.

D.1 A syntax for $n$-categories

D.1.1 A syntax for free $n$-categories. Suppose fixed an $n$-polygraph $P$. We define two sets of terms, as the smallest sets closed under certain operations.

- An expression is

$$x \text{ or } 1_f \text{ or } f *_{i} g$$

where $x$ is an element of $\bigsqcup_{0 \leq i \leq n} P_n$, $f$ and $g$ are expressions and $i$ is a
natural number (which can be supposed to satisfy $0 < i \leq n$ without loss of
generality).

- A type is either

\[ \star \quad \text{or} \quad f \rightarrow^T g \]

for some type $T$ and expressions $f$ and $g$.

The expressions should be thought of as formal composites of generators;
in particular, $f \star_{-i} g$ corresponds to two formal $n$-cells $f$ and $g$ composed in
dimension $n - i$ (thus the minus sign in the index) and types represent either
the set of objects ($\star$) or a particular hom-set.

**D.1.2 Type-theoretic syntax.** A judgment is an expression of one of the follow-
ing forms, with the following meanings:

- well-formed type:

\[ \vdash T \]

for some type $T$,

- well-typed term:

\[ \vdash f : T \]

for some term $f$ and type $T$,

- equivalent types:

\[ \vdash T \simeq U \]

for some types $T$ and $U$,

- equivalent terms:

\[ \vdash f \simeq g : T \]

for some terms $f$ and $g$ and type $T$.

An inference rule is of the form

\[ \vdash \Gamma_1 \quad \ldots \quad \vdash \Gamma_n \]

\[ \vdash \Gamma \]

where $\vdash \Gamma_i$ and $\vdash \Gamma$ are judgments respectively called the premises and the
conclusion of the inference rule. A judgment is derivable when it is the conclu-
sion of an inference rule whose premises are all derivable. An expression $f$ is
derivable, when the judgment $\vdash f : T$ is derivable for some type $T$, two terms
$f$ and $g$ are equivalent if $\vdash f \simeq g : T$ is derivable for some type $T$, and two
types $T$ and $U$ are equivalent when $\vdash T \simeq U$ is derivable.
We are going to describe a typing system $\text{CAT}^P$, i.e., a set of inference rules, on the above expressions and types. The notation $\text{CAT}^P$ suggests that it depends on $P$: as we have seen, the expressions and types depend on $P$, but the rules will be uniform. This will allow us to define an $n$-category $C^P$, where $C^P_i$ is the set of derivable expressions of dimension $i$ (defined below), compositions are given by $*_{-j}$ and identities by 1. The main property this construction satisfies is the following one.

D.1.3 Theorem. The $n$-category $C^P$ is isomorphic to $P^*.$

The result will be proved by induction on $n$: we thus suppose that the property is satisfied for strictly smaller values of $n$. In particular, given a cell $f \in P^*_i$ for $0 \leq i < n$, up to isomorphism, we can suppose that $P^*_i = C^P_{<i}$, and thus that $f$ is the equivalence class of an expression in $\text{CAT}^P_{<i}$. Clearly, a term in $\text{CAT}^P_{<i}$ is a valid derivation of $\text{CAT}^P$ and finally the equivalence relation in $\text{CAT}^P_{<i}$ coincides with the one of $\text{CAT}^P$ (by Lemma D.1.10). In particular, given a cell $x \in P^*_i$, we abusively write $s_{i}x$ and $t_{i}x$ for an expression representing the source and target of $x$ in $P^*_i$. This convention allows us to associate a type $T_x$ to each generator $x \in P_i$ by

\[
T_x = \begin{cases} 
* & \text{if } i = 0, \\
 s_{i-1}x \longrightarrow_{T_{s_{i-1}x}} t_{i-1}x & \text{otherwise.} 
\end{cases}
\]

D.1.4 Inference rules. Our typing system consists of the following inference rules:

- rules for types:

\[
\frac{}{\vdash \star} \quad \frac{\vdash f : T}{\vdash f \to g} \quad \frac{\vdash g : T}{\vdash f \to g}
\]

- rules for terms:

\[
\frac{\vdash f : T \quad \vdash T \cong T'}{\vdash f : T'} \\
\frac{\vdash x : T_x \quad \text{for } x \in \bigcup_i P_i}{\vdash f : T} \\
\frac{\vdash f : T}{\vdash 1_f : f \to f} \quad \frac{\vdash f : g \to g' \quad \vdash f' : g' \to g''}{\vdash f \cong f' : g \to g''}
\]
D.1 A syntax for \(n\)-categories

\[ \vdash f : g \rightarrow g' \quad \vdash f' : h \rightarrow h' \quad \vdash g *_{-i} h : U \quad \vdash g' *_{-i} h' : U \]

\[ \vdash f *_{-(i+1)} f' : g *_{-i} h \rightarrow g' *_{-i} h' \]

- equivalence on types:

\[ \vdash f \simeq f' : T \quad \vdash g \simeq g' : T \quad \vdash T \simeq T' \]

\[ \vdash (f \rightarrow_T g) \simeq (f' \rightarrow_T g') \]

- equivalence on terms:

\[ \vdash f : T \quad \vdash f \simeq g : T \]

\[ \vdash g \simeq h : T \]

\[ \vdash f \simeq h : T \]

\[ \vdash f \simeq f' : T \quad \vdash g \simeq g' : U \quad \vdash f *_{-i} g : V \]

\[ \vdash 1_f \simeq 1_{f'} : f \rightarrow_T f \]

\[ \vdash (f *_{-i} g) \simeq (f' *_{-i} g') : V \]

\[ \vdash 1_g *_{-i} f : T \quad \vdash f *_{-i} 1_g : T \]

\[ \vdash (f *_{-i} g) *_{-i} h \simeq f *_{-j} (g *_{-i} h) : T \]

\[ \vdash 1_{f *_{-i} g} : T \quad \vdash 1_{f *_{-i} g} \simeq 1_f *_{-i} 1_g : T \]

\[ \vdash (f *_{-j} f') *_{-i} (g *_{-j} g') : T \quad \vdash (f *_{-j} f') *_{-i} (g *_{-j} g') \simeq (f *_{-i} g) *_{-j} (f' *_{-i} g') : T \]

for \(i < j\)

D.1.5 Remark. Note that, in the last rule, the side condition \(i < j\) is important.

For instance, consider the 2-polygraph corresponding to the following diagram:

\[ \xymatrix{ x \ar[r]^b \ar[rrd]_{\alpha} & y \ar[r]^c & z \ar[r]_{\beta} & w } \]

The expression on the left is derivable, but the one on the right is not:

\[ (\alpha *_{-1} 1_d) *_{-2} (1_b *_{-1} \beta) \quad (\alpha *_{-2} 1_b) *_{-1} (1_d *_{-2} \beta). \]
D.1.6 Admissible rules. A rule is admissible in the system when, whenever the premises are derivable, the conclusion is also derivable (with the above rules).

D.1.7 Lemma. The following rules are admissible
\[
\begin{align*}
\vdash f \simeq g : T & \quad \vdash f : T \quad \vdash f : U \quad \vdash T \simeq U \quad \vdash f : U \\
\end{align*}
\]
In particular, the type of an expression is uniquely defined up to \(\simeq\), and two equivalent expressions have equivalent types.

This ensures that we can meaningfully consider terms and types up to equivalence, and moreover, by definition of the equivalence, we have:

D.1.8 Lemma. The relation \(\simeq\) is a congruence on expressions.

D.1.9 Dimension of cells. The dimension \(\dim(T)\) of a type \(T\) is the natural number defined by
\[
\dim(*) = 0 \quad \dim(f \rightarrow g) = \dim(T) + 1
\]
and the dimension of a derivable expression \(f\) is the dimension of \(T\) for some derivable judgment \(\vdash f : T\). It is easily shown that two equivalent types have the same dimension and, since by Lemma D.1.7 two equivalent expressions have equivalent types, two equivalent expressions have the same dimension, i.e., the dimension is well-defined on equivalence classes. A derivable expression of dimension \(k\) is sometimes called a \(k\)-expression.

D.1.10 Lemma. Any derivable expression involving a generator \(x \in P_i\) has dimension at least \(i\).

D.1.11 Construction of the free \(n\)-category. We define the category \(C^P\) as the category such that \(C_i^P\), for \(0 \leq i \leq n\), is the set of equivalence classes under \(\simeq\) of derivable expressions of dimension \(i\), composition of two \(i\)-cells \(f\) and \(g\) is defined by \(f \ast_i g = f \ast_{(n-i)} g\) and the identity on \(f\) is \(1_f\).

D.1.12 Lemma. The \(n\)-category \(C^P\) is well-defined.

D.1.13 Theorem. The \(n\)-category \(C^P\) is isomorphic to \(P^*\).

D.2 Alternative syntax for \(n\)-categories

D.2.1 Composition in maximal codimension. In an \(n\)-category \(C\), an \(i\)-cell \(x\) is \(k\)-composable with a \(j\)-cell \(y\), with \(0 \leq k < i \land j\), whenever \(t_kx = s_ky\).
In this case, we can extend the composition operation to cells which do not necessarily have the same dimension, and define their \( k \)-composite as

\[ x \star_k y = 1_{i \vee j}(x) \star_k 1_{i \vee j}(y) \]

which is a \((i \vee j)\)-cell. It is moreover useful to adopt the following convention. We write \( x \star y \) to mean that we compose \( x \) and \( y \) in the maximal possible dimension:

\[ x \star y = x \star_{(i \vee j) - 1} y. \]

We say that \( x \) and \( y \) are composable, when this composite is defined, i.e.,

\[ t_{(i \vee j) - 1} x = s_{(i \vee j) - 1} y. \]

Perhaps surprisingly, all the compositions can be recovered from those compositions in maximal codimension:

**D.2.2 Lemma.** Given cells \( x \) and \( y \) of respective dimensions \( i \) and \( j \), and \( 0 \leq k < i \vee j - 1 \), we have

\[ x \star_k y = (x \star_{k+1} y) \star_{k+1} (t_{k+1} x \star y) \]

\[ = (s_{k+1} x \star y) \star_{k+1} (x \star t_{k+1} y) \]

which allows to compute any composition by recurrence on \( k \).

**Proof.** We have

\[ x \star_k y = (x \star_{k+1} 1_{k+1} x) \star_k (1_{k+1} y \star_{k+1} y) \quad \text{identity is neutral} \]

\[ = (x \star_k s_{k+1} y) \star_{k+1} (t_{k+1} x \star_k y) \quad \text{exchange law} \]

\[ = (x \star s_{k+1} y) \star_{k+1} (t_{k+1} x \star y) \quad \text{definition of \( \star \)} \]

and similarly for the second equality. \( \Box \)

In fact, the whole structure of \( n \)-category can be axiomatized using this operation [264, Section 8], as follows. Given an \((i+1)\)-cell \( x \), we write \( sx \) and \( tx \) instead of \( s_i x \) and \( t_i x \) respectively.

**D.2.3 Proposition.** Given \( n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\omega\} \), an \( n \)-category \( C \) consists of an \( n \)-globular set equipped with composition and identity partial operations as follows. Two cells \( x \in C_i \) and \( y \in C_j \), with \( 0 \leq i, j \leq n \) are said to be composable when

\[ t_{(i \vee j) - 1}(x) = s_{(i \vee j) - 1}(y). \]

The operations are
Free n-categories

- compositions: for every composable cells \( x \in C_i \) and \( y \in C_j \), there is an \((i \lor j)\)-cell
  \[ x \ast y \]

- identities: for every \( x \in C_i \), with \( 0 \leq i < n \), there is an \((i+1)\)-cell
  \[ 1_x \]

and should satisfy

- sources and targets of compositions: for every composable cells \( x \in C_i \) and \( y \in C_j \), with \( 0 \leq i, j \leq n \),
  \[
s(x \ast y) = \begin{cases} sx \ast y & \text{if } i > j, \\ sx & \text{if } i = j, \\ x \ast sy & \text{if } i < j, \end{cases} \quad t(x \ast y) = \begin{cases} tx \ast y & \text{if } i > j, \\ ty & \text{if } i = j, \\ x \ast ty & \text{if } i < j. \end{cases}
  \]

- sources and targets of identities: for every \( x \in C_i \), with \( 0 \leq i < n \),
  \[ s(1_x) = x = t(1_x) \]

- associativity: for every \( x \in C_i \), \( y \in C_j \) and \( z \in C_k \) with \( x \) and \( y \) compatible, \( y \) and \( z \) compatible, and either \( i = j \leq k \) or \( i = k \leq j \) or \( j = k \leq i \),
  \[ (x \ast y) \ast z = x \ast (y \ast z) \]

- distributivity: for every \( x \in C_i \), \( y \in C_j \) and \( z \in C_k \)
  \[ x \ast (y \ast z) = (x \ast y) \ast (x \ast z) \]
  if \( i < j \) and \( i < k \), and \((y, z)\) are compatible, and
  \[ (x \ast y) \ast z = (x \ast z) \ast (y \ast z) \]
  if \( i > k \) and \( j > k \), and \((x, y)\), \((x, z)\) and \((y, z)\) are compatible.

- unitality: for every \( x \in C_i \) and \( y \in C_j \) with \( 0 \leq i, j \leq n \),
  \[ 1_x \ast y = \begin{cases} y & \text{if } i + 1 \leq j, \\ 1_{x, y} & \text{if } i + 1 > j, \end{cases} \quad x \ast 1_y = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } i \geq j + 1, \\ 1_{x, y} & \text{if } i < j + 1, \end{cases} \]

whenever \( 1_x \) and \( y \) (resp. \( x \) and \( 1_y \)) are composable and \( i < n \) (resp. \( j < n \)),

- commutativity: for every \( x \in C_i \) and \( y \in C_j \), with \( t_{k-1}x = s_{k-1}y \), where \( k = (i \land j) - 1 \) is supposed to satisfy \( k > 0 \),
  \[ (x \ast s_k(y)) \ast (t_k(x) \ast y) = (s_k(x) \ast y) \ast (x \ast t_k(y)). \]
D.3 The word problem for free $n$-categories

D.3.1 The word problem. Given an $n$-polygraph $P$, the word problem for $P$ consists in finding an algorithmic answer to the following decision problem:

Given two derivable expressions $f$ and $g$, do we have $f \equiv g$?

It was shown by Makkai [264, Section 10] that this problem is decidable. We provide here the main arguments of his construction, after recalling the required notions and tools.

D.3.2 Multisupport. Given two multisets $\mu$ and $\nu$ with common domain (see §1.4.1), we write

- $\mu + \nu$ for their pointwise sum (noted $\mu \sqcup \nu$ in §1.4.1),
- $\mu - \nu$ for their pointwise difference (we only use this operation in situations where $\mu(x) \geq \nu(x)$ for every element $x$ of the domain),
- $\mu \leq \nu$ whenever $\mu(x) \leq \nu(x)$ for every element $x$ of the domain.

The multisupport $\text{supp}\♯(f)$ of a derivable expression $f$ is the multiset on $\bigsqcup_{i \leq n} P_i$ consisting of all occurrences of generators in $f$. Formally, $\text{supp}\♯(f)$ is defined by induction on $f$ as

\[
\begin{align*}
\{x\} & \quad \text{if } f = x \text{ is a generator of type } \star, \\
\{x\} + \text{supp}\♯(g) + \text{supp}\♯(h) & \quad \text{if } f = x \text{ is a generator of type } f \rightarrow g, \\
\text{supp}\♯(g) & \quad \text{if } f = 1_g, \\
\text{supp}\♯(g) - \text{supp}\♯(t_{-i}(g)) + \text{supp}\♯(h) & \quad \text{if } f = g \ast_{-i} h.
\end{align*}
\]

This definition is invariant under equivalence of expressions:

D.3.3 Lemma. Given two derivable expressions $f$ and $g$ such that $f \equiv g$, we have $\text{supp}\♯(f) = \text{supp}\♯(g)$.

D.3.4 Composition in maximal codimension. We recall the convention introduced in §D.2.1. Given two derivable expressions $f$ and $g$, not necessarily of the same dimension, whose target and source coincide in dimension $k = (\dim(f) \land \dim(g)) - 1$, we write $f \ast g$ for their composite in dimension $k$, i.e., in their maximal codimension. Formally, we suppose that

\[ t_{-(\dim(f) - k)}(f) = s_{-(\dim(g) - k)}(g) \]

and define

\[ f \ast g = 1_f^{-(\dim(f))} \ast_{-(t-k)} 1_g^{-(\dim(g))} \]
which is a derivable expression of dimension \( l = \dim(f) \lor \dim(g) \). By convention, \( 1^0_f = f \) and \( 1^m_f = 1_{l_f} \), and similarly for \( g \).

**D.3.5 Atoms and molecules.** We mutually define notions of atom and molecule by recurrence on the dimension \( k \) as follows. Given \( k \leq n \),

- an atom of dimension \( k \) is a derivable expression of the form
  \[
  f_{k-1} \star (f_{k-2} \star \ldots (f_1 \star x \star g_1) \ldots) \star g_{k-2} \star g_{k-1}
  \]
  \[\text{(D.1)}\]
  where \( x \) is a generator of dimension \( k \) (the nucleus of the atom) and each \( f_i \) and \( g_i \) is a molecule of dimension \( i \),

- a molecule of dimension \( k \) is a derivable expression of the form
  \[ f_1 \star \ldots \star f_p \]
  where each \( f_i \) is an atom of dimension \( k \) (in the case \( p = 0 \), it should be an expression of the form \( 1_f \) with \( f \) an expression of dimension \( k - 1 \)).

In the following, we sometimes say \( k \)-atom (resp. \( k \)-molecule) for an atom (resp. molecule) of dimension \( k \). Clearly, every \( k \)-atom is a particular \( k \)-molecule.

Note that the notion of atom corresponds to the one of rewriting step (§16.7.1) and the notion of molecule to the one of rewriting path (§16.7.2).

Molecules provide canonical representatives of derivable expressions up to equivalence, in the sense that each equivalence class contains at least a molecule, see [264, Proposition 8.(12)] and Proposition 16.7.3:

**D.3.6 Proposition.** Every \( k \)-expression is equivalent to a \( k \)-molecule.

**D.3.7 Example.** In the polygraph \( P \) corresponding to the diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  x & \overset{a}{\rightarrow} & y \\
  \downarrow \alpha & & \downarrow \beta \\
  a' & \overset{b}{\rightarrow} & z
\end{array}
\]

the composite \( \alpha \star b \beta \) is equivalent to the molecules

\[
(1_x \star \alpha \star b) \star (a' \star \beta \star 1_z) \quad \text{and} \quad (a \star \beta \star 1_z) \star (1_x \star \alpha \star b').
\]

**D.3.8 Equivalence of molecules.** Two molecules are equivalent when one can be obtained from the other by applying the exchange relation on adjacent atoms. Formally, we define an equivalence relation \( \sim \) on \( k \)-molecules, as the smallest equivalence relation such that,

1. for every molecules \( f \) and \( h \), and atoms \( g \) and \( g' \), we have
   \[
   g = g' \quad \text{implies} \quad f \star g \star h = f \star g' \star h
   \]
whenever all composites are defined,
2. for every $k$-atoms $f : f' \xrightarrow{T} f''$ and $g : g' \xrightarrow{U} g''$, for every $k$-atoms $f_1, g_1, f_2, g_2$ such that

$$f_1 = f \ast g' \quad g_1 = f'' \ast g \quad f_2 = f \ast g'' \quad g_2 = f' \ast g,$$

and for every $k$-molecules $h$ and $h'$, we have

$$h \ast f_1 \ast g_1 \ast h' \sim h \ast g_2 \ast f_2 \ast h'.$$

Graphically,

It is shown, in [264, Section 9]:

**D.3.9 Proposition.** Given two $k$-molecules $f$ and $g$, we have $f \simeq g$ if and only if $f \sim g$.

**D.3.10 Contexts.** Given $k > 0$ and two molecules $h$ and $h'$ with common type $T$, with $\dim(h) = \dim(h') = k - 1$, a context of type $h \xrightarrow{T} h'$ is a $k$-expression in which a formal variable of type $h \xrightarrow{T} h'$ occurs exactly once.

Formally, we consider the polygraph $P'$ obtained from $P$, by adding a new generator $x$, i.e., $P'_k = P_k \cup \{x : h \xrightarrow{T} h'\}$ and $P'_i = P_i$ for $i \neq k$. A context $c$ is then a derivable expression in $\text{CAT}^{P'}$ such that $\text{supp}^k(c)(x) = 1$. The notion of context corresponds to the one already introduced in Section 16.5.

To every $(k+1)$-atom $f$ of the form (D.1), with top dimensional generator $x : h \xrightarrow{T} h'$ of dimension $k + 1$, one can associate the $k$-context

$$f_{k-1} \ast (f_{k-2} \ast (\ldots (f_1 \ast \underline{x} \ast g_1) \ldots) \ast g_{k-2}) \ast g_{k-1}$$

where $\underline{x}$ is a formal variable of dimension $k$ and of type $T$. We then say that $f$ can be obtained by substituting the variable $\underline{x}$ by the generator $x$ in $c$, what we write $f = c[x]$. 
D.3.11 Example. Consider a 3-atom $f_2 \ast (f_1 \ast x \ast g_1) \ast g_2$:

The associated context is $f_2 \ast (f_1 \ast x \ast g_1) \ast g_2$:

Equality on atoms can be characterized in the expected way, see [264, Section 10.(6)]:

D.3.12 Proposition. Given two $(k+1)$-atoms $f = c[x]$ and $g = d[y]$, we have $f \simeq g$ if and only if $x = y$ and $c \simeq d$.

D.3.13 Finiteness of equivalence classes. The main argument in order to show that the word problem is decidable is the observation that there is only a finite number of molecules with given generators of given multiplicities, see [264, Lemma 10.(10)]:

D.3.14 Proposition. Suppose given a multiset $\mu$ on $\bigcup_{i \in n} P_i$. There is a finite number of molecules $f$ such that $\text{supp}^5(f) \leq \mu$.

D.3.15 Decidability results. As expected, the proof of decidability of the word problem is performed by recurrence on the dimension $k$ of the two cells $f$ and $g$ we aim at comparing. The base case is immediate, so that we focus on the inductive case. By Proposition D.3.6, whose proof is constructive, we can suppose that $f$ and $g$ are $k$-molecules. In Proposition D.3.9, we have reduced the equivalence of the molecules $f$ to the existence of a sequence of molecules

$$f = f_1 \sim f_2 \sim \ldots \sim f_p = g \quad \text{(D.3)}$$

such that $f_{i+1}$ can be obtained from $f_i$ by exchanging adjacent atoms, which can be tested using equivalence of $k$-atoms for some decompositions. Moreover, in Proposition D.3.12, we have reduced the equivalence of two $k$-atoms to the equivalence of $(k-1)$-molecules (the associated contexts). In order to show our decidability result, it is therefore enough to show that
– the decompositions (D.2) in order to identify the possible exchange relations can be found in a finite search space,
– the sequence of molecules (D.3) can be found in a finite search space.

Both properties follow from the facts that the multisupport is preserved under equivalence (Lemma D.3.3) and there is only a finite number of molecules with given multisupport (Proposition D.3.14).

**D.3.16 Theorem.** *The word problem for polygraphs is decidable.*

As a consequence, it can be shown that

**D.3.17 Theorem.** *Whether an expression is derivable or not is decidable.*

An actual implementation was performed by Forest [134, 133].
Appendix E
Complexes and homology

In this chapter, we recall basic notions on modules, abelian resolutions and homology. We refer the reader to [260, 317, 241] for a deeper presentation and the proofs of the given results. Throughout the chapter, we fix a ring $R$, and we denote by $1_R$ the multiplicative identity in $R$.

### E.1 Modules over a ring

#### E.1.1 Modules over a ring.

A left-$R$-module consists of an abelian group $(V, +)$ together with a left scalar multiplication

$$
\cdot : R \times V \to V
$$

satisfying for all $r, s \in R$ and $x, y \in V$ the following four relations:

- $r \cdot (x + y) = r \cdot x + r \cdot y$,
- $(rs) \cdot x = r \cdot (s \cdot x)$,
- $(r + s) \cdot x = r \cdot x + s \cdot x$,
- $1_R \cdot x = x$.

In the following, we often write $rx$ instead of $r \cdot x$. We will say $R$-module, or module, for a left $R$-module. The notion of right $R$-module can be defined similarly, based on a right action $\cdot : G \times R \to G$, satisfying dual axioms. All the notions presented in this appendix are defined in a similar fashion for right $R$-modules since every right $R$-module is a left $R^{op}$-module, where $R^{op}$ is the opposite ring.

#### E.1.2 If $V$ and $W$ are two left-$R$-modules, a morphism of $R$-modules $f : V \to W$ is a morphism of abelian groups satisfying, for any $r \in R$ and $x \in V$,

$$
f(r \cdot x) = r \cdot f(x).
$$
The left-$\mathcal{R}$-modules and their morphisms form a category denoted by $\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{R}}$. We denote by $\text{Mod}_{\mathcal{R}}(V, W)$ the abelian group of morphisms from $V$ to $W$.

For a morphism $f : V \to W$, we will denote by $\text{ker} f := \{ x \in V \mid f(x) = 0 \}$, the kernel of $f$ and by $\text{im} f := \{ y \in W \mid y = f(x) \text{ for some } x \in V \}$, the image of $f$. We will denote by $\text{coker} f := W/\text{im} f$ the cokernel of $f$.

### E.1.3 Exact sequences

A pair of composable morphisms of modules $V' \xrightarrow{f} V \xrightarrow{g} V''$ is exact at $V$ if $\text{im} f = \ker g$. A sequence of morphisms of modules

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}} V_{n+1} \xrightarrow{d_n} V_n \xrightarrow{d_{n-1}} \cdots$$

is exact if each adjacent pair $(d_{i+1}, d_i)$ of morphisms is exact at $V_i$.

### E.1.4 Example

The sequences

$$0 \longrightarrow V \xrightarrow{f} V' \xrightarrow{g} V'' \longrightarrow 0$$

are exact if and only if the morphism $f$ is injective, surjective and bijective respectively. If the sequence $V' \xrightarrow{f} V \xrightarrow{g} V''$ is exact with $f$ surjective and $g$ injective, then $V$ is the zero module.

### E.1.5 Free modules

A $\mathcal{R}$-module $V$ is free if it is a direct sum of copies of $\mathcal{R}$. If $V = \bigoplus_{i \in I} R x_i$, with $R \cong R x_i$, the set $\{ x_i \mid i \in I \}$ is called a basis of $V$. It follows that each element $x$ in $V$ has a unique decomposition

$$x = \sum_{i \in I} \lambda_i x_i,$$

where $\lambda_i$ is in $\mathcal{R}$ and almost all $\lambda_i$ are zero. Given a set $X$, there exists a free $\mathcal{R}$-module having $X$ as a basis, which is usually denoted $\mathcal{R}[X]$.

### E.1.6 Lemma

Let $X = \{ x_i \mid i \in I \}$ be a basis of a free module $V$. For every module $W$ and every map $f : X \to W$, there is a unique morphism of $\mathcal{R}$-modules $\tilde{f} : V \to W$ extending $f$, i.e., making the following triangle commute:
where the morphism $X \to V$ is the canonical inclusion.

One shows that every $R$-module is a quotient of a free $R$-module. As a consequence, any $R$-module $V$ may be described by generators and relations in the following way. Given a free $R$-module $F$ with basis $X$ and a surjective morphism of $R$-modules $f : F \to V$, we say that $X$ is a set of generators of $V$ and the kernel $\ker f$ is called its submodule of relations.

E.1.7 Finitely generated modules. A $R$-module $V$ is finitely generated if there is a finite subset $X = \{x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n\}$ of $V$ such that for every element $x$ of $V$, there exist $r_1, r_2, \ldots, r_n$ in $R$ with $x = r_1x_1 + r_2x_2 + \ldots + r_nx_n$. Then the set $X$ is referred to as a generating set for $V$. The finite generators need not form a basis, since they need not be linearly independent over $R$. An $R$-module $V$ is finitely generated if and only if there is a surjective morphism:

$$R^n \to V$$

for some $n$. That is, $V$ is a quotient of a free module of finite rank.

E.1.8 Proposition. Let $F, V$ and $W$ be $R$-modules. If $F$ is free, $e : V \to W$ is a surjective morphism and $f : F \to W$ is any morphism, then there exists a morphism $f' : F \to V$ making the following triangle commute

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
F & \xrightarrow{f} & W \\
\downarrow{f'} & & \downarrow{e} \\
V & \xrightarrow{e} & 0
\end{array}
$$

As a consequence, for any free $R$-module, the functor

$$\text{Mod}_R(F, -) : \text{Mod}_R \to \text{Ab}$$

is exact, that is for any exact sequence

$$0 \to V' \to V \to V'' \to 0$$

of $R$-modules, the induced sequence

$$0 \to \text{Mod}_R(F, V') \to \text{Mod}_R(F, V) \to \text{Mod}_R(F, V'') \to 0$$

is exact.

E.1.9 Projective module. A projective module is a module which behaves as the free module $F$ in Proposition E.1.8. More explicitly, a $R$-module $P$ is projective if whenever $e : V \to W$ is a surjective morphism and $f : P \to W$
is any morphism, there exists a morphism \( \tilde{f} : P \to V \) making the following triangle commute:

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
P & \xrightarrow{f} & V \\
\downarrow{f} & & \downarrow{f} \\
W & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} & 0
\end{array}
\]

In particular, any free module is projective. The following result gives several ways to characterize projective modules.

E.1.10 Proposition. The following conditions are equivalent for a \( R \)-module \( P \):

1. \( P \) is projective,
2. if \( f : V \to P \) is a surjective morphism, then there exists \( h : P \to V \) such that \( fh = 1_P \),
3. if \( f : V \to P \) is a surjective morphism, then \( V \cong P \oplus \ker f \),
4. the functor \( \text{Mod}_R(P, -) : \text{Mod}_R \to \text{Ab} \) is exact,
5. \( P \) is a summand of a free module, that is there exists a free \( R \)-module \( F \) such that \( F \cong P \oplus Q \), for some \( R \)-module \( Q \).

Note that the \( R \)-module \( Q \) in (v) is necessarily projective.

E.2 Chain complexes

We recall in this section the notion of chain complex which is the fundamental object of study in homological algebra.

E.2.1 Chain complex. A chain complex in the category \( \text{Mod}_R \) is a sequence \((V_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}\) of \( R \)-modules, together with a sequence \((d_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}\) of morphisms

\[
\cdots \longrightarrow V_{n+1} \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}} V_n \xrightarrow{d_n} V_{n-1} \longrightarrow \cdots
\]

with the composite of adjacent morphisms being zero, that is \( d_n d_{n+1} = 0 \), for every \( n \) in \( \mathbb{Z} \). Such a complex is denoted \((V_*, d_*)\), or simply \( V_* \) or \( V \). We say that \( V_n \) is the module of the complex \( V_* \) in degree \( n \).

Given two chain complexes \((V_*, d_*)\) and \((V'_*, d'_*)\), a chain map

\[
f : (V_*, d_*) \to (V'_*, d'_*)
\]

is a family of morphisms of \( R \)-modules \((f_n : V_n \to V'_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}}\) making the
following diagrams commute

\[
\cdots \to V_{n+1} \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}} V_n \xrightarrow{d_n} V_{n-1} \to \cdots \\
\cdots \to V'_{n+1} \xrightarrow{d'_{n+1}} V'_n \xrightarrow{d'_n} V'_{n-1} \to \cdots
\]

Chains complexes of $R$-modules and chains maps form a category that we will denote by $\text{Ch}_R$.

A chain complex $V$ is positive if $V_n = 0$ for every $n < 0$. A positive complex looks like a sequence

\[
\cdots \to V_n \xrightarrow{d_n} V_{n-1} \to \cdots \\
\cdots \to V'_n \xrightarrow{d'_n} V'_{n-1} \to \cdots
\]

Positives chain complexes of $R$-modules form a full subcategory of $\text{Ch}_R$ denoted by $\text{Ch}_R^{\geq 0}$.

**E.2.2 Homology.** Let $V$ be a chain complex in $\text{Mod}_R$, and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. The morphisms $d_n$ are called boundary maps of $V$, and the elements of the module $V_n$ are called $n$-chains. We denote by $Z_n(V) = \ker d_n$ the module of $n$-cycles of $V$ and by $B_n(V) = \text{im} d_{n+1}$ the module of $n$-boundaries of $V$.

In the category $\text{Mod}_R$, the equation $d_n d_{n+1} = 0$ is equivalent to the condition $B_n(V) \subseteq Z_n(V)$, that is any $n$-boundary of $V$ is an $n$-cycle of $V$. The $n$-th homology module of $V$ is the $R$-module defined as the quotient

\[ H_n(V) = Z_n(V)/B_n(V). \]

An element of $H_n(V)$ is a coset $c + B_n(V)$, and called a $n$-th homology class of $V$.

Given a chain map $f : V \to V'$, and $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, we define a morphism of modules

\[ H_n(f) : H_n(V) \to H_n(V') \]

by setting $H_n(f) (c + B_n(V)) = f(c) + B_n(V')$. Then

\[ H_n : \text{Ch}_R \to \text{Mod}_R \]

is a functor called $n$-th homology functor. We refer to [317, Proposition 6.8] for a detailed proof.

**E.2.3 Acyclic complex.** A complex $(V, d)$ is an exact sequence if $H_n(V) = 0$ for every $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. This means that no $n$-cycles that are not $n$-boundaries. In this way, homology of the complex $V$ measures the deviation of $V$ from being an exact sequence. An exact sequence is also called an acyclic complex.
E.2 Chain complexes

E.2.4 Chain homotopy. Let \( f, g : V \to V' \) be two chain maps. We say that \( f \) and \( g \) are \textit{(chain) homotopic}, denoted by \( f \simeq g \), if there exists a family of morphisms \( (s_n : V_n \to V'_{n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \) such that the following relation holds for every \( n \in \mathbb{Z} \)

\[
    f_n - g_n = d'_{n+1} s_n + s_{n-1} d_n.
\]

A chain map \( f : V \to V' \) is \textit{null-homotopic} if \( f \simeq 0 \), where \( 0 \) is the zero chain map.

It is easy to see that chain homotopy defines an equivalence relation between chain maps. Moreover, two chain homotopic maps induce isomorphisms in homology as states by the following result.

Two complexes \( V \) and \( V' \) are of the \textit{same homotopy type}, or \textit{homotopic}, if there exist chain maps \( f : V \to V' \) and \( g : V' \to V \), such that \( g f \simeq 1_V \) and \( f g \simeq 1_{V'} \). In that case, the chain maps \( f \) and \( g \) are called \textit{homotopy equivalences}.

E.2.5 Proposition. Let \( f, g : V \to V' \) be two chain maps such that \( f \simeq g \), then for every \( n \in \mathbb{Z} \),

\[
    H_n(f) = H_n(g) : H_n(V) \to H_n(V').
\]

\textit{Proof.} Let \( (s_n : V_n \to V'_{n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \) be a homotopy between \( f \) and \( g \). Given \( x \in \ker d_n \), we have

\[
    (f_n - g_n)(x) = d'_{n+1} s_n(x) + s_{n-1} d_n(x) = d'_{n+1} s_n(x).
\]

Hence, \( f_n(x) - g_n(x) \in \ker d_{n+1} \) and \( f_n(x) = g_n(x) \) holds in \( H_n(V') \). \( \square \)

E.2.6 Contracting homotopy. A chain complex \( (V, d) \) has a \textit{contracting homotopy} if its identity \( 1_V = (1_{V_n} : V_n \to V_n)_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \) is null-homotopic. That is there is a family of morphisms \( (i_n : V_n \to V_{n+1})_{n \in \mathbb{Z}} \) such that the following condition holds for every \( n \in \mathbb{Z} \)

\[
    1_{V_n} = d_{n+1} i_n + i_{n-1} d_n. \quad (E.1)
\]
E.2.7 Proposition. A complex $V$ having a contracting homotopy is acyclic.

Proof. Prove that $H_n(V) = 0$ for every $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. Which is the amount of proving the inclusion $Z_n(V) \subseteq B_n(V)$. This is a direct consequence of relation (E.1). Indeed, for any $x$ in $Z_n(V)$, we have $x = d_{n+1}l_n(x)$. This proves the acyclicity of $V$. \hfill \Box

E.3 Resolutions

E.3.1 Resolutions. A resolution of an $R$-module $V$ is an exact sequence of $R$-modules

$$
\cdots \to V_n \xrightarrow{d_n} V_{n-1} \to \cdots \to V_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} V_0 \xrightarrow{\epsilon} V \to 0. \quad (E.2)
$$

From the definition, the morphism $\epsilon$ is surjective and, for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we have

$$
im d_1 = \ker \epsilon, \quad \text{and} \quad \im d_{n+1} = \ker d_n. \quad (E.3)
$$

Such a resolution is projective (resp. free) if all the modules $V_n$ are projective (resp. free). Given a natural number $n$, a partial resolution of length $n$ of $V$ is defined in a similar way but with a bounded sequence $(V_k)_{0 \leq k \leq n}$ of $R$-modules:

$$
V_n \xrightarrow{d_n} V_{n-1} \to \cdots \to V_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} V_0 \xrightarrow{\epsilon} V \to 0.
$$

Note that by Proposition E.2.7 a way to prove that a complex (E.2) is a resolution of $V$ is to construct a contracting homotopy

$$
\cdots \leftarrow V_{n+1} \xrightarrow{l_{n-1}} V_{n-1} \leftarrow \cdots \leftarrow V_1 \xleftarrow{i_0} V_0 \xleftarrow{i_{-1}} V
$$

such that $d_0i_{-1} = 1_V$.

E.3.2 Proposition. Every $R$-module $V$ has a free resolution.

Proof. We take $V_0 = R[V]$ to be the free $R$-module generated by $V$ and the morphism $\epsilon : V_0 \to V$ to be the morphism extending the identity on $V$ (whose existence is asserted in Lemma E.1.6). The morphism $\epsilon$ is clearly surjective, i.e., satisfies $\im \epsilon = V$.

We then define $V_1 = R[\ker \epsilon]$ to be the free module generated by $\ker \epsilon$ and $d_1$ to be the morphism extending the canonical inclusion $\ker \epsilon \to V_0$:

$$
\begin{array}{c}
R[\ker \epsilon] \\
\downarrow d_1 \\
\ker \epsilon \\
\end{array} \xrightarrow{\epsilon} V_0 \xrightarrow{\epsilon} V.
$$


Similarly, by recurrence, if \( V_n \) and \( d_n : V_n \to V_{n-1} \) are defined for \( n \geq 1 \), we set \( V_{n+1} = R[\ker d_n] \) and \( d_{n+1} : V_{n+1} \to V_n \) to be the extension of the inclusion \( \ker d_n \to V_n \). The relations (E.3) are easily seen to be satisfied. \( \square \)

**E.3.3 Theorem.** Let

\[
\cdots \to P_n \xrightarrow{d_n} P_{n-1} \to \cdots \to P_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} P_0
\]

be a projective complex and

\[
\cdots \to V_n \xrightarrow{d_n} V_{n-1} \to \cdots \to V_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} V_0
\]

be an acyclic complex. Then, for every morphism \( f : H_0(P_\ast) \to H_0(V_\ast) \), there exists a chain map \( \tilde{f} : P_\ast \to V_\ast \) inducing \( f \). Moreover, two chain maps inducing \( f \) are homotopic.

We refer to [182, Theorem 4.1] for a detailed proof of this result. In the same way as the proof of Proposition E.3.2, we prove that every \( R \)-module \( V \) has a projective resolution. Indeed, there exists a projective presentation of \( V : 0 \to V_1 \to P_0 \to V \to 0 \). Then there exists a projective presentation of \( V_1 : 0 \to V_2 \to P_1 \to V_1 \to 0 \), and so on. This gives us the following projective and acyclic complex \( P_\ast ; \)

\[
\cdots \to P_n \xrightarrow{d_n} P_{n-1} \to \cdots \to P_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} P_0
\]

where the morphism \( d_n \) is defined as the composite \( P_n \to V_n \to P_{n-1} \). As \( H_0(P_\ast) = V \), this is a resolution a resolution of \( V \).

From Theorem E.3.3 we deduce the following result, see [182, Theorem 4.3] for a detailed proof.

**E.3.4 Proposition.** Two projective resolutions of a module \( V \) are of the same homotopy type.

**E.3.5 Quasi-isomorphisms and homotopy equivalences.** Let \( V \) and \( V' \) be two chain complexes. A chain map \( f : V \to V' \) is a quasi-isomorphism if it induces an isomorphism in homology meaning that the induced map

\[
H(f) : H(V) \to H(V')
\]

is an isomorphism of graded modules.

A sufficient condition for a chain map \( f : V \to V' \) to be a quasi-isomorphism is to be a homotopy equivalence in the sense that it admits an inverse up to homotopy, that is, a chain map \( g : V' \to V \) such that \( gf \) and \( 1_V \) are homotopic, and \( fg \) and \( 1_{V'} \) are homotopic. The fact that a homotopy equivalence is a quasi-isomorphism follows from Proposition E.2.5.
E.3.6 Resolutions as quasi-isomorphisms. Note that a projective resolution (E.2) induces a chain map

\[ \cdots \rightarrow V_n \xrightarrow{d_n} V_{n-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow V_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} V_0 \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} 0 \]

between the chain complex \((V_n, d_n)\) of projective \(R\)-modules and the chain complex consisting of \(V\) in degree 0 and the \(R\)-module 0 in other degrees.

E.3.7 Schanuel’s lemma and finite homological type. Given two exact sequences of \(R\)-modules

\[
0 \rightarrow K_1 \rightarrow P_1 \rightarrow V \rightarrow 0, \\
0 \rightarrow K_2 \rightarrow P_2 \rightarrow V \rightarrow 0,
\]

where \(P_1\) and \(P_2\) are projective, Schanuel’s lemma states that there is an isomorphism:

\[ K_1 \oplus P_2 \cong K_2 \oplus P_1. \]

We refer the reader to [317] for a detailed proof and applications of this result. The following proposition is an important generalization of this result which is useful for defining the finite homology type of modules in §F.3.1.

E.3.8 Proposition (Generalized Schanuel’s Lemma). Given two exact sequences of \(R\)-modules

\[
0 \rightarrow K \rightarrow P_k \rightarrow P_{k-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow P_1 \rightarrow P_0 \rightarrow V \rightarrow 0, \\
0 \rightarrow L \rightarrow Q_k \rightarrow Q_{k-1} \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow Q_1 \rightarrow Q_0 \rightarrow V \rightarrow 0,
\]

where all the \(P_i\) and \(Q_i\) are projective, we write

\[
P_{\text{od}} := \bigoplus_{i \text{ odd}} P_i, \quad P_{\text{ev}} := \bigoplus_{i \text{ even}} P_i, \quad Q_{\text{od}} := \bigoplus_{i \text{ odd}} Q_i \quad \text{and} \quad Q_{\text{ev}} := \bigoplus_{i \text{ even}} Q_i.
\]

The following properties hold:

1. If \(k\) is even, then \(K \oplus Q_{\text{ev}} \oplus P_{\text{od}} \cong L \oplus Q_{\text{od}} \oplus P_{\text{even}}.\)
2. If \(k\) is odd then \(K \oplus Q_{\text{od}} \oplus P_{\text{ev}} \cong L \oplus Q_{\text{ev}} \oplus P_{\text{od}}.\)

Let us mention an important consequence of the Proposition E.3.8 which will be used to define the finite homological type in §F.3.
E.3.9 Corollary. Given two exact sequences of $R$-modules
\[
0 \to K \to P_k \to P_{k-1} \to \cdots \to P_1 \to P_0 \to V \to 0,
\]
\[
0 \to L \to Q_k \to Q_{k-1} \to \cdots \to Q_1 \to Q_0 \to V \to 0,
\]
where all the $P_i$ and $Q_i$ are finitely generated and projective, then the $R$-module $K$ is finitely generated if and only if $L$ is finitely generated.

E.4 Homology of monoids

In this section we recall the homology of a monoid with integral coefficients. In particular, the homology of monoids is used in Chapter 9 to define homological finiteness conditions for the existence of finite convergent presentations.

E.4.1 Tensor product of modules. Given a right $R$-module $C$ and a left $R$-module $D$, recall that their tensor product $C \otimes_R D$ is the group obtained as the quotient of the free abelian group over the set $C \times D$, whose elements are pairs noted $x \otimes y$ with $x \in C$ and $y \in D$, under the relations
\[
(x + x') \otimes y = x \otimes y + x' \otimes y,
\]
\[
(x \cdot r) \otimes y = x \otimes (r \cdot y),
\]
\[
x \otimes (y + y') = x \otimes y + x \otimes y',
\]
for $x, x' \in C$, $y, y' \in D$ and $r \in R$. This construction is functorial: given a right $R$-module $C$ and a morphism $f : D \to D'$ of left $R$-modules, there is an induced group morphism
\[
C \otimes_R f : C \otimes_R D \to C \otimes_R D'
\]
and this construction is compatible with composition and identities.

Given a monoid $M$, the trivial $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}$ is canonically a right module with the right action given by $n \cdot u = n$ for $n \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $u \in M$. In the following, we will mostly be interested in computing the tensor product of the trivial module $\mathbb{Z}$ with a free $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}[X]$ on a set $X$, in which case the result is
\[
\mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} \mathbb{Z}[X] = \mathbb{Z}[X]
\]
where $\mathbb{Z}[X]$ is the free abelian group over $X$ (which coincides with the free $\mathbb{Z}$-module).

E.4.2 Homology of monoids with integral coefficients. Let $M$ be a monoid. To a free resolution of the trivial $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}$ by left $\mathbb{Z}M$-modules
\[
\cdots \to F_{n+1} \xrightarrow{d_{n+1}} F_n \to \cdots \to F_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} F_0 \xrightarrow{e} \mathbb{Z},
\]
by tensoring with the trivial right \( \mathbb{Z} M \)-module \( \mathbb{Z} \), we associate the complex of \( \mathbb{Z} \)-modules:

\[
\cdots \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z} M} F_{n+1} \xrightarrow{\tilde{d}_{n+1}} \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z} M} F_n \rightarrow \cdots \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z} M} F_1 \xrightarrow{\tilde{d}_1} \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z} M} F_0,
\]

where \( \tilde{d}_k \) denotes the map \( 1_{\mathbb{Z}} \otimes d_k \), for all \( k \geq 1 \). Note that the \( \mathbb{Z} \)-module \( \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z} M} F_n \) is obtained from \( F_n \) by trivializing the action of \( M \), that is \( F_n \) quotiented by all relations \( u x = x \), for \( u \) in \( M \) and \( x \) in \( F_n \). In particular, if \( F_n = \mathbb{Z} M[X] \), then \( \mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z} M} F_n = \mathbb{Z}[X] \) is the free \( \mathbb{Z} \)-module on \( X \). We obtain a chain complex, because \( d_n d_{n+1} = 0 \) induces that \( \tilde{d}_n \tilde{d}_{n+1} = 0 \).

We define the \( n \)-th homology group of \( M \) with integral coefficient \( \mathbb{Z} \) as the following \( \mathbb{Z} \)-module:

\[
H_n(M, \mathbb{Z}) = \ker \tilde{d}_n / \text{im} \tilde{d}_{n+1},
\]

with the convention that \( \tilde{d}_0 = 0 \). By definition, for any monoid \( M \), we have \( H_0(M, \mathbb{Z}) \cong \mathbb{Z} \). Following results of the previous section, the homology do not depend on the choice of the resolution used to compute it.

**E.4.3 Proposition.** The groups \( H_n(M, \mathbb{Z}) \) does not depend on a particular choice of a free resolution, but only on the monoid \( M \).
Appendix F  
Homology of categories

F.1 Simplicial homology and nerve of a category

F.1.1 Simplicial sets. We will denote by $\Delta$ the simplicial category, that is, the full subcategory of the category of posets whose objects are the $[n] = \{0 < 1 < \cdots < n\}$ for $n \geq 0$. By definition, a simplicial set is a presheaf on $\Delta$, i.e., a functor $\Delta^{op} \to \text{Set}$. We will denote by $b\Delta$ the category of simplicial sets. If $X$ is a simplicial set, the set $X_n = X([n])$ is called the set of $n$-simplices of $X$.

F.1.2 Homology of a simplicial set. Let $n \geq 1$. For $i$ such that $0 \leq i \leq n$, denote by $\delta^i$ the unique injective order-preserving map $\delta^i_n : [n - 1] \to [n]$ not reaching $i$. If $X$ is a simplicial set, we will denote by $d^i_n : X_n \to X_{n-1}$ the map $X(\delta^i_n)$.

We define a functor $c : \overset{\sim}{\Delta} \to \text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z},>0}$ in the following way. If $X$ is a simplicial set, $c(X_n)$ is the free abelian group on $X_n$ and, if $x$ is an $n$-simplex of $X$ with $n > 0$, we set $d_n^i([x]) = \sum_{i=0}^{n} (-1)^i [d^i_n(x)]$.

A classical calculation shows that $c(X)$ is indeed a chain complex. If $f : X \to Y$ is a morphism of simplicial sets, the morphism $c(f) : c(X) \to c(Y)$ is defined by sending $[x]$, for $x$ an $n$-simplex of $X$, to $[f_n(x)]$, where $f_n$ denotes $f_{[n]}$. 

613
The homology of a simplicial set $X$ is the homology of the chain complex $c(X)$.

**F.1.3 The nerve functor.** As the category of posets embeds into the category $\text{Cat}$ of small categories, we get a functor $i : \Delta \to \text{Cat}$. This functor $i$ induces the so-called nerve functor

$$N : \text{Cat} \to \widehat{\Delta}$$

sending a category $C$ to the simplicial set $\text{Cat}(i(-), C)$. Explicitly, a 0-simplex of $N(C)$ is an object of $C$ and an $n$-simplex, for $n > 0$, is a chain of $n$ composable arrows in $C$.

**F.1.4 Homology of categories.** If $C$ is a category, the homology of $C$ is the homology of its nerve $N(C)$. In particular, if $M$ is a monoid (or even more particularly a group), by considering $M$ as a category with one object, we get a notion of homology of $M$.

**F.1.5 Theorem.** If $M$ is a monoid, then the homology of $M$ seen as a category with one object coincides with the homology $H_n(M, \mathbb{Z})$ of the monoid as defined in §E.4.

*Proof.* If $M$ is a monoid, then the complex $c(N(M))$ is canonically isomorphic to the complex $\mathbb{Z} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}M} B$, where $B$ is the bar resolution of $M$, see [260, Chapter X, Section 5], whence the result. \hfill $\square$

**F.2 Homology of categories with coefficients**

**F.2.1 Modules of a category.** A (left) module of a category $C$, or (left) $C$-module, is a functor from $C$ to the category $\text{Ab}$ of abelian groups [287]. The $C$-modules and the natural transformations between them form an abelian category with enough projectives denoted by $\text{Mod}(C)$.

We denote by $\mathcal{Z}C$ the free $\mathbb{Z}$-category on $C$ whose 0-cells are the ones of $C$ and for all 0-cells $p$ and $q$ of $C$, the hom-set $\mathcal{Z}C(p, q)$ is the free $\mathbb{Z}$-module on the hom-set $C(p, q)$. It follows immediately from the definitions that the category $\text{Mod}(C)$ is isomorphic to the category of additive functors from $\mathcal{Z}C$ to $\text{Ab}$.

Given a $C$-module $M$, if $x \in M(p)$ for some 0-cell $p$ of $C$, then we say that $x$ is an element of $M$. The left action on $M$ is defined for a 1-cell $f : p \to q$ and $x$ in $M(p)$, by $f \cdot x = M(f)(x)$. A family $X = (x_i)_{i \in I}$ of elements of $M$ is called a family of generators for $M$ if every element $x$ of $M(p)$ can be written...
as

\[ x = \sum_{i \in I} f_i \cdot x_i, \]

for 1-cells \( f_i : p_i \to p \) in \( \mathbb{Z}C \), where all but a finite number of \( f_i \) are zero. This amounts to say that the natural transformation

\[ \phi_X : \bigoplus_{i \in I} \mathbb{Z}C(p_i, -) \to M, \]

with \( x_i \in M(p_i) \) and which takes \( 1_{p_i} \) to \( x_i \) is an epimorphism in \( \text{Mod}(C) \). The family \( X \) is a basis for \( M \) if the natural transformation \( \phi_X \) is an isomorphism. A \( C \)-module \( M \) is free if it has a basis. It is finitely generated if it has a finite set of generators. A finitely generated module \( M \) is thus the cokernel of a morphism of finitely generated free modules:

\[
\bigoplus_{i \in I} \mathbb{Z}C(q_i, -) \longrightarrow \bigoplus_{j \in J} \mathbb{Z}C(p_j, -) \longrightarrow M \longrightarrow 0.
\]

**F.2.2 Natural systems.** Given a small category \( C \), the category of factorizations \([308, 34]\) is the category, denoted by \( F_C \), whose 0-cells are the 1-cells of \( C \) and whose 1-cells from \( w \) to \( w' \) are pairs \((u, v)\) of 1-cells of \( C \) such that the following diagram commutes in \( C \):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  w & \longrightarrow & w' \\
  \downarrow^{u} & & \downarrow^{v} \\
  \downarrow^{w} & & \downarrow^{w'} \\
\end{array}
\]

The triple \((u, w, v)\) is called a factorization of \( w' \). Composition in the category \( FC \) is defined by pasting, i.e., if \((u, v) : w \to w'\) and \((u', v') : w' \to w''\) are 1-cells of \( FC \), then the composite \((u', v')(u, v)\) is defined by the pair \((u' u, v v')\):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  w & \longrightarrow & w' \\
  \downarrow^{u} & & \downarrow^{u'} \\
  \downarrow^{w} & & \downarrow^{w'} \\
  \downarrow^{w} & & \downarrow^{w'} \\
\end{array}
\]

The identity of \( w \) is the pair \((1_{s(w)}, 1_{t(w)})\):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  w & \longrightarrow & w' \\
  \downarrow^{1_{s(w)}} & & \downarrow^{1_{t(w)}} \\
  \downarrow^{w} & & \downarrow^{w'} \\
\end{array}
\]

The triple \((u, w, v)\) is called a factorization of \( w' \). Composition in the category \( FC \) is defined by pasting, i.e., if \((u, v) : w \to w'\) and \((u', v') : w' \to w''\) are 1-cells of \( FC \), then the composite \((u', v')(u, v)\) is defined by the pair \((u' u, v v')\):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  w & \longrightarrow & w' \\
  \downarrow^{u} & & \downarrow^{u'} \\
  \downarrow^{w} & & \downarrow^{w'} \\
  \downarrow^{w} & & \downarrow^{w'} \\
\end{array}
\]

The identity of \( w \) is the pair \((1_{s(w)}, 1_{t(w)})\):

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
  w & \longrightarrow & w' \\
  \downarrow^{1_{s(w)}} & & \downarrow^{1_{t(w)}} \\
  \downarrow^{w} & & \downarrow^{w'} \\
\end{array}
\]
An FC-module $D$ is called a natural system of abelian groups on $C$. We will denote by $D_w$ the abelian group which is the image of $w$ by the functor $D$. If there is no confusion, we denote by $ua$ the image of an element $a$ of $D_w$ through the homomorphism of groups $D(u, v) : D_w \to D_{wu}$. The category $\text{Mod}(FC)$ is also denoted by $\text{Nat}(C, \text{Ab})$.

**F.2.3 Homology of categories with coefficients.** The cohomology of categories with values in natural systems was defined by Baues and Wirsching in [34], and by Wells in [352]. It generalizes Hochschild-Mitchell cohomology of categories with coefficients in bimodules [287], the cohomology with coefficient in left modules [308, 314], and the cohomology of the classifying space, see [34] for the correspondences.

Dually, we define the homology of a category $C$ with values in a contravariant natural system $D$ on $C$, that is an $(FC)^{op}$-module, as follows. We consider the nerve $N(C)$ of $C$ defined in §F.1.3, with boundary maps denoted by $d_i : N_n(C) \to N_{n-1}(C)$, for $0 \leq i \leq n$. For $s = (u_1, \ldots, u_n)$ in $N_n(C)$, we denote by $\tau$ the composite 1-cell $u_1 \cdots u_n$ of $C$. For $n$ in $\mathbb{N}$, the $n$-th chain group $C_n(C, D)$ is defined as the abelian group

$$C_n(C, D) = \bigoplus_{s \in N_n(C)} D_\tau.$$  

We denote by $\iota_s$ the embedding of $D_\tau \hookrightarrow C_n(C, D)$. We define a boundary map $d : C_n(C, D) \to C_{n-1}(C, D)$ on the component $D_\tau$ of $C_n(C, D)$ by setting

$$d\iota_s = \iota_{d_0(s)}u_1 + \sum_{i=1}^{n-1} (-1)^i\iota_{d_i(s)}u_i + (-1)^n\iota_{d_n(s)}u_n,$$

for $s = (u_1, \ldots, u_n)$ in $N_n(C)$ and where $u_i$ and $u_n$ denote the morphisms $D(u_1, 1)$ and $D(1, u_n)$ respectively. The homology of the category $C$ with coefficients in $D$ is defined as the homology of the complex $(C_n(C, D), d)$:

$$H_*(C, D) = H_*(C_n(C, D), d).$$

Denoting $\text{Tor}_*^{FC}(D, -)$ the left derived functor of the functor $D \otimes_{FC} -$, one can prove that there is an isomorphism

$$H_*(C, D) \cong \text{Tor}_*^{FC}(D, \mathbb{Z}).$$

natural in $D$. 

F.3 Categories of finite homological type

F.3.1 Modules of finite homological type. For \( n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{\infty\} \), a \( C \)-module \( M \) is of homological type \( \text{FP}_n \) (where \( \text{FP}_n \) stands for finitely \( n \)-presented) if it admits a partial resolution of length \( n \) by finitely generated projective \( C \)-modules:

\[
\cdots \longrightarrow P_n \longrightarrow P_{n-1} \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow P_0 \longrightarrow M \longrightarrow 0.
\]

By general homological arguments, see §E.3.7, we have the following characterization of the property \( \text{FP}_n \) which is a consequence of Corollary E.3.9.

F.3.2 Proposition. Let \( C \) be a category, \( M \) be a \( C \)-module, and \( n \) be a natural number. The following assertions are equivalent:

1. \( M \) is of homological type \( \text{FP}_n \),
2. \( M \) admits a partial resolution of length \( n \) by finitely generated free \( C \)-modules:

\[
F_n \longrightarrow F_{n-1} \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow F_0 \longrightarrow M,
\]
3. \( M \) is finitely generated and, for every natural number \( k < n \) and every projective finitely generated partial resolution of \( M \) of length \( k \)

\[
P_k \xrightarrow{d_k} P_{k-1} \longrightarrow \cdots \longrightarrow P_0 \longrightarrow M \longrightarrow 0,
\]

the \( C \)-module \( \ker d_k \) is finitely generated.

F.3.3 Categories of finite homological type. The property for a category \( C \) to be of homological type \( \text{FP}_n \) is defined according to a category of modules over one of the categories in the following diagram

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
FC & \xrightarrow{\partial} & C^{\text{op}} \times C \\
\downarrow p_1 & & \downarrow q_1 \\
C^{\text{op}} & \xrightarrow{q_2} & C^{\top}
\end{array}
\]

where \( \partial \) is the boundary map, \( p_1 \) and \( p_2 \) are the projections of the cartesian product, \( C^{\top} \) is the enveloping groupoid of \( C \), and \( q_1 \) and \( q_2 \) are the canonical inclusion morphisms. A category \( C \) is of homological type

- \( \text{FP}_n \) if the constant natural system \( Z \) is of type \( \text{FP}_n \),
- \( \text{hi-} \text{FP}_n \) if the \( C^{\text{op}} \times C \)-module \( ZC \) is of type \( \text{FP}_n \),
- \( \text{left-} \text{FP}_n \) if the constant \( C \)-module \( Z \) is of type \( \text{FP}_n \),
- \( \text{right-} \text{FP}_n \) if the constant \( C^{\text{op}} \)-module \( Z \) is of type \( \text{FP}_n \),
- \( \text{top-} \text{FP}_n \) if the constant \( C^{\top} \)-module \( Z \) is of type \( \text{FP}_n \).
Homology of categories

Using the fact that the property $\text{FP}_n$ is preserved by left Kan extensions [163, Lemma 5.1.4], these finiteness homological properties of categories are related by the following implications [163, Proposition 5.2.4]:

$$
\begin{align*}
\text{FP}_n & \iff \text{right-}\text{FP}_n \\
\text{right-}\text{FP}_n & \iff \text{bi-}\text{FP}_n \\
\text{bi-}\text{FP}_n & \iff \text{top-}\text{FP}_n \\
\text{top-}\text{FP}_n & \iff \text{left-}\text{FP}_n
\end{align*}
$$

If $C$ is a groupoid, all of these implications are equivalences [163, Proposition 5.2.6], but it is not the case in general. Indeed, Cohen constructed in [92] a right-$\text{FP}_\infty$ monoid which is not left-$\text{FP}_1$: thus, top-$\text{FP}_n$, left-$\text{FP}_n$ and right-$\text{FP}_n$ are not equivalent in general. Moreover, monoids with a finite convergent presentation are left-$\text{FP}_\infty$ and right-$\text{FP}_\infty$, see [8, 326, 219], but there exists a finitely presented monoid that is left-$\text{FP}_\infty$ and right-$\text{FP}_\infty$, but does not satisfy the homological finiteness condition FHT introduced by Pride and Wang [222]; since the properties FHT and bi-$\text{FP}_3$ are equivalent [223], it follows that left-$\text{FP}_n$ and right-$\text{FP}_n$ do not imply bi-$\text{FP}_n$ in general.

Finally, we note the following consequence of the definition.

**F.3.4 Proposition.** If a category $C$ is of homological type $\text{FP}_n$, for a natural number $n$, then the abelian group $H_k(C, \mathbb{Z})$ is finitely generated for every $0 \leq k \leq n$.

**F.3.5 Monoids of finite homological type.** The notion of finite homological type for categories applies to monoids seen as categories with one object. In particular, the proofs to show that a monoid is of homological type left-$\text{FP}_n$ in Chapter 9 are based on the following result, which is an immediate consequence of Proposition F.3.2.

**F.3.6 Proposition.** Let $n$ be a natural number. A monoid $M$ is of homological type left-$\text{FP}_n$ if and only if the trivial left $\mathbb{Z}M$-module $\mathbb{Z}$ is of homological type left-$\text{FP}_n$. 
Appendix G
Locally presentable categories

This appendix is a quick introduction to locally presentable categories. We refer the reader to the classical book [2] for a detailed presentation.

The notion of a locally presentable category is in some sense a formalization of what is an algebraic structure. When category theory is restricted to locally presentable categories, many things get simpler. In particular, there are characterizations of adjoint functors purely in terms of preservation of limits and colimits. Locally presentable categories also play an important role in the theory of model categories through the concept of combinatorial model categories.

There are many ways to define locally presentable categories. We start by the presentation in terms of sketches, which are somehow categories encoding the syntax of an algebraic structure. These sketches are used several times in the body of the book. We then give the intrinsic categorical characterization, defining on our way several notions that will be needed for the theory of model categories. Finally, we give the syntactic characterization.

G.1 Sketches

G.1.1 Cones. Let $C$ be a category. By a projective cone in $C$, we will mean a triple $(F, X, \alpha)$, where $F : D \to C$ is a functor from some small category $I$, $X$ is an object of $C$, and $\alpha : X \Rightarrow F$ is a natural transformation, where $X$ is considered as a constant functor. The diagram $F$ is then called the base of the cone and the object $X$ the tip of the cone. We say that $C$ is a projective limit cone if the morphism $X \to \operatorname{lim} F$ induced by $\alpha$ is an isomorphism.

The notion of inductive cone is defined similarly by reversing the direction of the natural transformation $\alpha$, that is, by considering a natural transformation
Locally presentable categories

\[ \alpha : F \Rightarrow X, \] and the notion of inductive limit cone by asking for the induced morphism \( \lim F \to X \) to be an isomorphism.

**G.1.2 Sketches.** A sketch is a triple \((S, P, I)\), where \( S \) is a small category, \( P \) a set of projective cones in \( S \) and \( I \) a set of inductive cones in \( S \). A sketch is projective (resp. injective) if \( I = \emptyset \) (resp. \( P = \emptyset \)). By abuse of notation, we will often refer to the sketch \((S, P, I)\) as \( S \) only, and we will talk of the projective cones of \( S \) (resp. of the inductive cones of \( S \)) for the elements of \( P \) (resp. of \( I \)).

A model of a sketch \( S \) in a category \( C \) consists of a functor \( F : S \to C \) sending every projective cone of \( S \) to a projective limit cone in \( C \) and every inductive cone of \( S \) to an inductive limit cone in \( C \). A morphism of models of a sketch \( S \) is just a natural transformation. We write \( \text{Mod}(S) \) for the category of models of a sketch \( S \) in the category of sets.

A morphism of sketches from a sketch \( S \) to a sketch \( S' \) is a functor \( f : S \to S' \) sending every projective cone of \( S \) to a projective cone of \( S' \) and every inductive cone of \( S \) to an inductive cone of \( S' \). If \( f \) is such a morphism, then precomposition by \( f \) induces a functor

\[ f^* : \text{Mod}(S') \to \text{Mod}(S). \]

**G.1.3 Sketchable categories.** We say that a category \( C \) is sketchable (resp. projectively sketchable) if there exists a sketch (resp. a projective sketch) \( S \) such that \( C \) is equivalent to \( \text{Mod}(S) \).

In this section, we will focus on projectively sketchable categories.

**G.1.4 Example.** The category of graphs is projectively sketchable. Indeed, this category is nothing but the category of functors from the category

\[ [0] \overset{s}{\leftarrow} [1] \]

to the category of sets, i.e., the category of models of a sketch without any projective or inductive cones. More generally, any diagram category is projectively sketchable.

**G.1.5 Example.** The category of monoids is projectively sketchable. Indeed, consider the category \( S \) with three objects

\[ [0], \quad [1], \quad [2], \quad [3] \]
and generated by the morphisms

G.1 Sketches

subject to the relations

$$p_1 q_{1,2} = q_1, \quad p_2 q_{1,2} = q_2, \quad p_2 q_{2,3} = q_2, \quad p_2 q_{2,3} = q_3,$$

$$p_1 (u, 1) = u, \quad p_2 (u, 1) = 1_{[1]}, \quad p_1 (1, u) = 1_{[1]}, \quad p_2 (u, 1) = u,$$

$$p_1 (m, 1) = m q_{1,2} \quad p_2 (m, 1) = q_3 \quad p_1 (1, m) = q_1, \quad p_2 (u, m) = m q_{2,3},$$

and

Endow $S$ with the three projective cones

the first one being indexed by the empty category. Then we claim that the data
of a model $F : S \to \textbf{Set}$ of the sketch $S$ in $\textbf{Set}$ is equivalent to the data of
a monoid of underlying set $M = F([1])$, multiplication $F(m)$ and unit given
by $F(u)$ (the value of $F([i])$, for $0 \leq i \leq 3$, being forced to be sent to $M^i$).

More generally, any Lawvere theory defines a sketch whose models are the
models of the starting Lawvere theory.
G.1.6 Example. The category $\text{Cat}$ of small categories is projectively sketchable. Consider the full subcategory $S \subseteq \Delta^{\text{op}}$ of the opposite category of the simplicial category (see §F.1.1) on the objects $[0], [1], [2]$ and $[3]$. If $[m] \hookrightarrow [n]$ is an inclusion of $\Delta$ whose image avoids exactly $i_0, \ldots, i_k$, the corresponding morphism in $\Delta^{\text{op}}$ will be denoted by $d_{i_0, \ldots, i_k} : [n] \to [m]$. With this notation, the commutative diagrams

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccc}
& [2] & \\
\downarrow & & \\
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{ccc}
& [0] & \\
\downarrow & & \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{cc}
& [3] & \\
\downarrow & & \\
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccc}
& [0] & \\
\downarrow & & \\
\end{array} \\
\begin{array}{ccc}
& [0] & \\
\downarrow & & \\
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}
\]

define two cones (which are actually limit cones) in $S$. One can show than the category of models of the sketch defined by $S$ and these two cones is equivalent to $\text{Cat}$.

G.1.7 Example. The category $\text{Cat}_\omega$ of small $\omega$-categories is projectively sketchable (see Proposition 14.2.4).

G.1.8 Theorem. If $f : S \to S'$ is a morphism of projective sketches, then the functor

$$f^* : \text{Mod}(S') \to \text{Mod}(S).$$

admits a left adjoint

$$f_! : \text{Mod}(S) \to \text{Mod}(S').$$

Proof. See for instance [26, Section 4, Theorem 4.1].

G.1.9 Example. There is an obvious inclusion from the sketch of graphs defined in Example G.1.4 into the sketch of categories defined in Example G.1.6. This morphism of sketches induces the forgetful functor from small categories to graphs. The previous theorem shows the well-known fact that this forgetful functor admits a left adjoint, sending a graph to the free category on this graph.

G.1.10 Proposition. A projectively sketchable category is complete and cocomplete.

Proof. The completeness of such a category can be checked directly (limits are computed as in presheaves). Proving the cocompleteness is more involved, see [2, Example 3.11.8 and Theorem 1.38].
We end the section by a very powerful criterion due to Lair to prove that a functor is monadic in terms of sketches.

**G.1.11 Theorem.** Let \( f : S \to S' \) be a morphism of projective sketches satisfying the two following conditions:

- the base of any cone of \( S' \) factors though \( f \),
- every object of \( S' \) not in the image of \( f \) is the tip of a cone of \( S' \).

Then the induced functor \( f^* : \text{Mod}(S') \to \text{Mod}(S) \) is monadic.

**Proof.** By Theorem G.1.8, the functor \( f^* \) admits a right adjoint and the result is thus a particular case of [239, Corollary 1]. \( \Box \)

### G.2 Locally presentable categories

Fix \( \kappa \) be a regular cardinal. Recall that the fact that \( \kappa \) is regular means that the category of sets of cardinal \( < \kappa \) is closed under colimits of cardinality \( < \kappa \).

**G.2.1 \( \kappa \)-filtered diagrams.** A small category \( I \) is said to be \( \kappa \)-small if the cardinal of its set of morphisms is strictly smaller than \( I \). An \( \aleph_0 \)-small category, \( \aleph_0 \) being the cardinal of countable sets, is called a finite category. A diagram \( F : I \to C \) is said to be \( \kappa \)-small if \( I \) is \( \kappa \)-small. A \( \kappa \)-filtered category is a category \( I \) such that for every \( \kappa \)-small diagram \( F : J \to I \), there exists an object \( i \) of \( I \) and cone \( F \Rightarrow i \). An \( \aleph_0 \)-filtered category is said to be filtered. A \( \kappa \)-filtered diagram is a diagram \( F : I \to C \) such that \( I \) is \( \kappa \)-filtered.

**G.2.2 \( \kappa \)-presentable objects.** An object \( X \) of a category \( C \) is said to be \( \kappa \)-presentable if the functor

\[
C(X, -) : C \to \text{Set}
\]

preserves \( \kappa \)-filtered colimits, that is, if for every \( \kappa \)-filtered diagram \( F : I \to C \) the canonical map

\[
\lim_{\longrightarrow} C(X, F_i) \to C(X, \lim_{i} F_i)
\]

is a bijection. An \( \aleph_0 \)-presentable object is called a finitely presentable object.

**G.2.3 Locally presentable categories.** A category \( C \) is said to be locally \( \kappa \)-presentable if it is cocomplete and if there exists a set \( S \) of \( \kappa \)-small objects of \( C \) such that every object of \( C \) can be obtained as a \( \kappa \)-filtered colimit of objects in \( S \). A locally \( \aleph_0 \)-presentable category is said to be locally finitely
Presentable. Essentially by definition, if a category $C$ is locally $\kappa$-presentable, then it is locally $\kappa'$-presentable for every regular cardinal $\kappa' > \kappa$. A category $C$ is locally presentable if it is locally $\kappa$-presentable for some regular cardinal $\kappa$.

**G.2.4 Theorem.** A category is locally presentable if and only if it is equivalent to the category of models of some projective sketch. More precisely, if $\kappa$ is a regular cardinal, a category is locally $\kappa$-presentable if and only if it is the category of model of some projective sketch whose cones are over $\kappa$-small diagrams.

*Proof.* See for instance [2, Corollary 1.52]. □

### G.3 Essentially algebraic theories

**G.3.1 Algebraic theory.** An algebraic theory $P$ consists of
- a set $P_0$ of sorts,
- a set $P_1$ of operations together with functions
  
  \[ s_0 : P_1 \rightarrow P_0^* \quad t_0 : P_1 \rightarrow P_0 \]
  
  associating to an operation its *arity* and *coarity*, where $P_0^*$ denotes the free monoid on $P_0$,
- a set $P_2 \subseteq P_1^* \times P_1^*$ of relations consisting of pairs of terms with the same arity and coarity.

An element $(u, v) \in P_1^* \times P_1^*$ is often written $u = v$. Note that this notion corresponds to the one of term rewriting system, as introduced in §13.1.12.

**G.3.2 Essentially algebraic theory.** An essentially algebraic theory consists of an algebraic theory $P$ together with a function

\[ d : P_1 \rightarrow \mathcal{P}(P_1^* \times P_1^*) \]

which to every operation in $a \in P_1$ associates a subset $d(a)$ of $P_1^* \times P_1^*$, called the *domain* of $a$, specifying the relations under which the operation is defined. An operation $a \in P_1$ is total when $d(a) = \emptyset$, and a term is total when it is composed of total operations only. An essentially algebraic theory is required to satisfy the following condition: for every operation $a \in P_1$ and relation $(u, v) \in d(a)$, the terms $u$ and $v$ are total.
G.3.3 Model of an essentially algebraic theory. A model $M$ of an essentially algebraic theory consists of

- a set $M_s$ for every sort $s \in P_0$,
- a partial function $M_a : M_{s_1} \times \ldots \times M_{s_k} \to M_s$

for every operation $a : s_1 \ldots s_k \to s$

such that $M_a(m_1, \ldots, m_k)$ is defined if and only if

$$M_u(m_1, \ldots, m_k) = M_v(m_1, \ldots, m_k)$$

for every $(u, v) \in d(a)$.

In the definition above, the interpretation $M_u$ for a term $u$ is defined by induction on $u$ from the interpretation of operations in the expected way.

G.3.4 Example. The essentially algebraic theory $P$ of categories has two sorts $s_0$ and $s_1$ in $P_0$, and four operations in $P_1$

- $s : s_1 \to s_0$
- $t : s_1 \to s_0$
- $c : s_1, s_1 \to s_1$
- $e : s_0 \to s_1$

with domains

$$d(s) = \emptyset \quad d(t) = \emptyset \quad d(c) = \{t(x_1) = s(x_2)\} \quad d(e) = \emptyset$$

and relations

$$s \circ e(x_1) = x_1 \quad s \circ c(x_1, x_2) = s(x_1) \quad c(e(x_1), x_2) = x_2$$

$$t \circ e(x_1) = x_1 \quad t \circ c(x_1, x_2) = t(x_2) \quad c(x_1, e(x_2)) = x_1$$

and

$$c(c(x_1, x_2), x_3) = c(x_1, c(x_2, x_3)).$$

Note that the terms $t(x_1)$ and $s(x_2)$ occurring in the domain of $c$ are total as required. The models of this theory are precisely the small categories.

G.3.5 Theorem. A category is locally finitely presentable if and only if it is equivalent to the category of models of an essentially algebraic theory.

Proof. See [2, Theorem 3.36].

G.3.6 Remark. The above result can be generalized to locally $\kappa$-presentable categories by considering theories $P$ with operations $a$ with an arity of the form $s_0(a) \in P_0^\kappa$ for some cardinal $\kappa_a < \kappa$ (we recover the above case when all the $\kappa_a$ are finite).
One of the goals of this book is to construct the so-called “folk” model category structure on the category of strict $\omega$-categories. This is achieved in Chapter 21. The notion of model category, introduced by Quillen [307], constitutes a very general framework in which to study the homotopical properties of a category endowed with a class of weak equivalences.

The Chapters 19 to 21 introduce along their way the main definitions of this theory. Nevertheless, for the convenience of the reader, we gather in this appendix these main definitions plus some complements. For more details, we refer the reader to the classical books [307, 184, 187] or to [313] for a recent panorama on the subject.

**H.1 Definition**

We start by some preliminary definitions.

**H.1.1 2-out-of-3 property.** A class of maps $\mathcal{W}$ in a category $\mathcal{C}$ is said to satisfy the 2-out-of-3 property if for any commutative triangle

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\
\downarrow{h} & & \downarrow{g} \\
Z & \xleftarrow{g} & Y
\end{array}
\]

in $\mathcal{C}$, if two morphisms among $f$, $g$ and $h$ are in $\mathcal{W}$, then so is the third one. For instance, isomorphisms in a category satisfy the 2-out-of-3 property. More generally, any reasonable notion of “equivalence” in a category should satisfy this property.
H.1.2 Retracts. Let $C$ be a category. We say that a morphism $f : X \to Y$ of $C$ is a retract of a morphism $g : Z \to T$ of $C$ if there exists a commutative diagram

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\
\downarrow{j} & & \downarrow{g} \\
Z & \xrightarrow{g} & T
\end{array}
$$

in $C$. We say that a class of morphisms of $C$ is closed under retracts if any retract of an element of the class belongs to the class.

H.1.3 Lifting properties. Let $f : X \to Y$ and $g : Z \to T$ be two morphisms of $C$. One says that $f$ has the left lifting property with respect to $g$ or that $g$ has the right lifting property with respect to $f$ if for every commutative square

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \\
\downarrow{j} & & \downarrow{g} \\
Y & \xrightarrow{g} & T
\end{array}
$$

there exists a lift, that is, a morphism $h : Y \to Z$ making the two triangles

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
X & \xrightarrow{f} & Z \\
\downarrow{j} & & \downarrow{g} \\
Y & \xrightarrow{g} & T
\end{array}
$$

commute. More generally, one says that $f$ has the left lifting property with respect to a class of maps $\mathcal{I}$ if it has the left lifting property with respect to every morphism in $\mathcal{I}$, and similarly for the right lifting property. We will denote by $l(\mathcal{I})$ and $r(\mathcal{I})$ the class of maps having the left or right lifting property with respect to a class $\mathcal{I}$.

We can now give the definition of a model category:

H.1.4 Model category. A model category is a category $\mathcal{M}$ endowed with three classes of maps: the weak equivalences, the cofibrations and the fibrations; these data are required to satisfy the following axioms:

1. the category $\mathcal{M}$ is finitely complete and finitely cocomplete,
2. the class of weak equivalences satisfies the 2-out-of-3 property,
3. the class of weak equivalences, cofibrations and fibrations are closed under retracts,
4. cofibrations have the left lifting property with respect to trivial fibrations (that is, maps that are both a fibration and a weak equivalence); trivial cofibrations (that is, maps that are both a cofibration and a weak equivalence) have the left lifting property with respect to fibrations,
5. every map of $\mathcal{M}$ factors as a cofibration followed by a trivial fibration, and as a trivial cofibration followed by a fibration.

H.1.5 Example. One of the motivating example of Quillen is the following model category structure on the category Top of topological spaces:

– the weak equivalences are the topological weak equivalences, that is, the maps $f : X \to Y$ which induce a bijection $\pi_0(f) : \pi_0(X) \to \pi_0(Y)$ on path components and isomorphisms $\pi_n(f, x) : \pi_n(X, x) \to \pi_n(Y, f(x))$ on homotopy groups for every $n \geq 1$ and every base point $x$ in $X$,

– the fibrations are the Serre fibrations, that is, the maps having the right lifting properties with respect to the inclusions

$$D^n \hookleftarrow D^n \times I$$
$$x \mapsto (x, 0)$$

of disks into cylinders, for $n \geq 1$,

– the cofibrations are the maps having the left lifting property with respect to maps that are both topological weak equivalences and Serre fibrations.

H.1.6 Example. Another motivating example of Quillen is the following model category structure on the category $\text{Ch}_{\mathbb{Z}, \geq 0}$ of chain complexes (see §E.2.1):

– the weak equivalences are the quasi-isomorphisms (see §E.3.5),

– the cofibrations are the monomorphisms $f$ such that, for every $n \geq 0$, the cokernel of $f_n$ is projective,

– the fibrations are the morphisms $f$ such that, for every $n > 0$, $f_n$ is an epimorphism.

H.1.7 Example. The category $\text{Cat}$ of small categories can be endowed with the so-called “folk” model category structure:

– the weak equivalences are the equivalences of categories,

– the cofibrations are the functors injective on objects,

– the fibrations are the iso-fibrations, that is, the functors $f : C \to D$ such that for every object $x$ of $C$ and any isomorphism $v : f(x) \to y$ of $D$, there exists an isomorphism $u : x \to x'$ in $C$ such that $f(u) = v$. 
H.1 Definition

H.1.8 Example. Chapters 19 to 21 are devoted to the construction of the “folk” model category structure on the category $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$ of strict $\omega$-categories, see Theorem 21.1.2.

H.1.9 Cofibrant and fibrant replacements. Let $M$ be a model category. An object $X$ of $M$ is said to be cofibrant if the unique morphism $\emptyset \to X$ from the initial object of $M$ to $X$ is a cofibration. Dually, one says that the object $X$ is fibrant if the unique morphism $X \to \ast$ from $X$ to the terminal object of $M$ is a fibration.

If $X$ is an object of $M$, a cofibrant replacement of $X$ is a cofibrant object $QX$ of $M$ endowed with a weak equivalence $QX \to X$. It follows immediately from the axioms of model categories that cofibrant replacements exist. Indeed, to produce one, it suffices to factor the morphism $\emptyset \to X$ as a cofibration followed by a trivial fibration. Dually, a fibrant replacement consists of a fibrant object $RX$ together with a weak equivalence $X \to RX$.

H.1.10 Combinatorial model categories. A model category $M$ is said to be combinatorial if

1. the underlying category of $M$ is locally presentable (see §G.2.3),
2. there exist sets $I$ and $J$ of morphisms of $M$ such that the class of cofibrations of $M$ is $lr(I)$ and the class of trivial cofibrations of $M$ is $lr(J)$.

Sets $I$ and $J$ as in the definition are called generating cofibrations and generating trivial cofibrations respectively.

H.1.11 Remark. To build a model category, one often starts with a class of weak equivalences and sets $I$ and $J$ of candidates to be generators. This is what we did in Chapters 19 to 21 to build the folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_{\omega}$.

H.1.12 Example. The model category structure on $\text{Ch}_{Z \geq 0}$ defined in Example H.1.6 can be proven to be combinatorial.

H.1.13 Example. The model category structure on $\text{Cat}$ defined in Example H.1.7 is combinatorial. The set $I$ can be taken to consist of the three functors

\[ \emptyset \leftrightarrow \cdot, \quad \{ \cdot \} \leftrightarrow \{ \cdot \to \cdot \}, \quad \{ \cdot \rightrightarrows \cdot \} \leftrightarrow \{ \cdot \to \cdot \}, \]

and the set $J$ to the functor

\[ \{x\} \leftrightarrow \{\xymatrix{ x \ar[r] & y }\}, \]

where the symbol $\sim$ denotes an isomorphism.
H.1.14 Example. The folk model structure on $\text{Cat}_\omega$ is combinatorial. A set of generating cofibrations is given by the inclusions of spheres into disks (this is the set $I$ of §19.2.1). It is harder to describe a set of generating trivial cofibrations, see the set $J$ of §20.4.7.

H.1.15 Remark. The model category structure on $\text{Top}$ described in Example H.1.5 is not combinatorial because $\text{Top}$ is not locally presentable. Nevertheless, there exists sets $I$ and $J$ as in the second point of the definition. For instance, one can take as $I$ the set of canonical inclusions of spheres into disks, and as $J$ the set of inclusions of disks into cylinders as in the definition of Serre fibrations. These sets $I$ and $J$ do not satisfy the assumptions of the statement of the “small object argument” we gave (see Proposition 19.1.9). Nevertheless, one can check that the argument still applies. One says that this model category structure is cofibrantly generated.

H.2 The homotopy category

H.2.1 Localization. A localizer (also called relative category) is a category $C$ endowed with a class $\mathcal{W}$ of morphisms called weak equivalences. The homotopy category of a localizer $(C, \mathcal{W})$ is the category $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ obtained from $C$ by formally inverting arrows in $\mathcal{W}$. More precisely, the category $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ is the universal category endowed with a functor $p : C \to C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ sending the elements of $\mathcal{W}$ to isomorphisms. Universal means that for any category $\mathcal{D}$ equipped with a functor $F : C \to \mathcal{D}$ sending the elements of $\mathcal{W}$ to isomorphisms, there is a unique functor $\tilde{F} : C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}] \to \mathcal{D}$ making the triangle

\[ C \xrightarrow{F} \mathcal{D} \xrightarrow{s} \mathcal{D} \]

\[ p \quad \tilde{\mathcal{D}} \]

\[ C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}] \]

commute. We will often denote the category $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ by $\text{Ho}(C)$, making implicit the class $\mathcal{W}$.

H.2.2 If $(C, \mathcal{W})$ is a localizer with $C$ a small category, then the category $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ can be described in the following way: the objects of $C[\mathcal{W}^{-1}]$ are the object of $C$ and its morphisms are sequences of zigzags of morphisms of $C$.

\[ f_1 \leftarrow f_2 \leftarrow f_3 \rightarrow f_4 \leftarrow \ldots \leftarrow f_n \]
with all the backward morphisms in \( W \), modded out by the smallest congruence such that
\[
\begin{align*}
\frac{f_1}{f_2} &= \frac{f_2 \circ f_1}{f_1 \circ f_2} \\
&= \frac{X \xrightarrow{1_X} X}{Y \xleftarrow{1_Y}} \quad X \xrightarrow{f} Y \xleftarrow{f} Y = 1_Y.
\end{align*}
\]

With appropriate set-theoretic foundations, one can adapt this construction to locally small categories, although the localization of a locally small category is not locally small in general.

**H.2.3 Homotopy category.** Any model category \( \mathcal{M} \) has an underlying localizer \((\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{W})\) and thus a homotopy category \( \text{Ho}(\mathcal{M}) \).

One of the goal of the theory of model categories is to get a good understanding of the homotopy category \( \text{Ho}(\mathcal{M}) \). In particular, it admits a simpler description in terms of homotopies.

**H.2.4 Homotopies.** Let \( \mathcal{M} \) a model category. A cylinder object for an object \( A \) of \( \mathcal{M} \) is a factorization

\[
\begin{align*}
A + A & \xrightarrow{(1_A, 1_A)} A \\
& \xrightarrow{i} A \\
& \xrightarrow{s} IA
\end{align*}
\]

of the codiagonal map \( A + A \to A \) as a cofibration \( i \) followed by a weak equivalence \( s \). The components of the map \( i \) are denoted \( i_0, i_1 : A \to IA \). Similarly, a path object for \( A \) is a factorization

\[
\begin{align*}
A & \xrightarrow{(1_A, 1_A)} A \times A \\
& \xrightarrow{r} A \\
& \xrightarrow{p} A^I
\end{align*}
\]

of the diagonal map \( A \to A \times A \) as a weak equivalence \( r \) followed by a fibration \( p \). The components of the map \( p \) are denoted \( p_0, p_1 : A^I \to A \).

Given morphisms \( f, g : A \to B \) of \( \mathcal{M} \), a left homotopy from \( f \) to \( g \) is a morphism \( h : IA \to B \), for some cylinder object \( IA \) of \( A \), such that \( hi_0 = f \) and \( hi_1 = g \). If such a homotopy exists, we say that \( f \) and \( g \) are left homotopic. Dually, a right homotopy from \( f \) to \( g \) is a morphism \( k : A \to B^I \), for some path object \( B^I \) of \( B \), such that \( p_0k = f \) and \( p_1k = g \). If such a homotopy exists, we say that \( f \) and \( g \) are right homotopic.
H.2.5 Proposition. Let $M$ be a model category. In the full subcategory $M_{cf}$ of $M$ whose objects are both cofibrant and fibrant,

1. the relation “being left homotopic” coincides with the relation “being right homotopic”,
2. the relation “being (left or right) homotopic” is a congruence.

H.2.6 Proposition. The homotopy category $\text{Ho}(M)$ of a model category $M$ is equivalent to the category $M_{cf}/\sim$ obtained from $M_{cf}$ by quotienting the morphisms by the relation “being (left or right) homotopic”.

In particular, the homotopy category of a model category is locally small.

H.3 Derived functors

H.3.1 Homotopical functors. Let $(C, \mathcal{W}_C)$ and $(D, \mathcal{W}_D)$ be two localizers. A functor $F : C \to D$ is said to be homotopical if it preserves weak equivalences, that is, if it sends the weak equivalences of $C$ to weak equivalences of $D$. In this case, by the universal property of the localization, the functor $F$ induces a functor

$$\overline{F} : \text{Ho}(C) \to \text{Ho}(D)$$

making the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
C & \xrightarrow{F} & D \\
\xrightarrow{p_C} & & \xrightarrow{p_D} \\
\text{Ho}(C) & \xrightarrow{\overline{F}} & \text{Ho}(D)
\end{array}$$

commute.

If $F : C \to D$ is not homotopical, there is in general no functor $\overline{F}$ making the above square commute. Nevertheless, one can seek for “best approximations” to this situation:

H.3.2 Derived functors. Let $(C, \mathcal{W}_C)$ and $(D, \mathcal{W}_D)$ be two localizers and let $F : C \to D$ be a functor. The (total) left derived functor of $F$, if it exists, is the universal pair consisting of a functor

$$\mathbb{L}F : \text{Ho}(C) \to \text{Ho}(D)$$
and a natural transformation

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{C} & \xrightarrow{F} & \mathcal{D} \\
\downarrow \lambda_F & \cong & \downarrow \rho_D \\
\text{Ho}(C) & \xrightarrow{L_F} & \text{Ho}(\mathcal{D}).
\end{array}
\]

This means that for every other functor \( G : \text{Ho}(C) \to \text{Ho}(\mathcal{D}) \) and natural transformation

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{C} & \xrightarrow{F} & \mathcal{D} \\
\downarrow \alpha & \cong & \downarrow \rho_D \\
\text{Ho}(C) & \xrightarrow{G} & \text{Ho}(\mathcal{D}),
\end{array}
\]

there exists a unique natural transformation \( \gamma : G \Rightarrow L_F \) such that \( \alpha \) factors as \( \alpha = \lambda \circ (\gamma \star p_C) \). By abuse of language, one often refers to \( L_F \) as the left derived functor of \( F \).

Similarly, the (total) right derived functor of \( F \), if it exists, is the universal functor \( R_F : \text{Ho}(C) \to \text{Ho}(\mathcal{D}) \) endowed with a natural transformation

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{C} & \xrightarrow{F} & \mathcal{D} \\
\downarrow \rho & \cong & \downarrow \rho_D \\
\text{Ho}(C) & \xrightarrow{R_F} & \text{Ho}(\mathcal{D}).
\end{array}
\]

**H.3.3 Remark.** If \( F \) is homotopical, then \( \overline{F} \) (endowed with the identity natural transformation) is both the left and the right derived functor of \( F \).

One important use of model categories is to provide tools to prove the existence of derived functors and to compute them.

**H.3.4 Theorem.** Let \( F : \mathcal{M} \to \mathcal{N} \) be a functor between model categories. Suppose that \( F \) sends trivial cofibrations between cofibrant objects to weak equivalences. Then \( F \) admits a left derived functor \( \mathbb{L}F : \text{Ho}(\mathcal{M}) \to \text{Ho}(\mathcal{N}) \). Moreover, if \( X \) is an object of \( \mathcal{M} \), then \( \mathbb{L}F(p_M(X)) \) is canonically isomorphic to \( p_N(F(QX)) \), where \( QX \) is a cofibrant replacement of \( X \).

Similarly, if \( F \) sends trivial fibrations between fibrant objects to weak equivalences, then \( F \) admits a right derived functor that can be computed using fibrant replacements.

**H.3.5 Quillen pairs.** Let \( \mathcal{M} \) and \( \mathcal{N} \) be two model categories and let

\[
F : \mathcal{M} \rightleftarrows \mathcal{N} : G
\]
be an adjunction. One says that \((F, G)\) is a Quillen pair or a Quillen adjunction
if \(F\) preserves cofibrations and trivial cofibrations. This is equivalent to asking
that \(G\) preserves fibrations and trivial fibrations. In this case, one also says
that \(F\) is a left Quillen functor and that \(G\) is a right Quillen functor. Using the
previous proposition, one can show that left Quillen functors admit left derived
functors and right Quillen functors admit right derived functors.

**H.3.6 Theorem.** If

\[ F : M \rightleftarrows N : G \]

is a Quillen pair, then

\[ \mathbb{L}F : \text{Ho}(M) \rightleftarrows \text{Ho}(N) : \mathbb{R}G \]

is an adjunction.

**H.3.7 Quillen equivalences.** Let

\[ F : M \rightleftarrows N : G \]

be a Quillen pair. One says that \((F, G)\) is a Quillen equivalence if the adjunction

\[ \mathbb{L}F : \text{Ho}(C) \rightleftarrows \text{Ho}(D) : \mathbb{R}G \]

is an adjoint equivalence.

**H.3.8 Proposition.** Let

\[ F : M \rightleftarrows N : G \]

be a Quillen pair. The following assertions are equivalent:

1. \((F, G)\) is a Quillen equivalence,
2. for every cofibrant object \(X\) of \(M\) and every fibrant object \(Y\) of \(N\), a
   morphism \(FX \to Y\) in \(N\) is a weak equivalence if and only if the adjoint
   morphism \(X \to GY\) in \(M\) is a weak equivalence.
References

References


References


References


References


References

References


References


References


References


References


**Index of notations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>□</td>
<td>cubical category, 585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\Delta)</td>
<td>simplicial category, 613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\Delta_+)</td>
<td>augmented simplicial category, 71, 514, 537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\Delta_\eta)</td>
<td>category of injective non-decreasing functions, 536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\Delta_\mu)</td>
<td>category of surjective non-decreasing functions, 536</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\lambda(C))</td>
<td>augmented directed complex associated to an (\omega)-category (C), 374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\mu(K))</td>
<td>(\omega)-category associated to a chain complex (K), 375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\nu(K))</td>
<td>(\omega)-category associated to an augmented directed complex, 376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A_n)</td>
<td>alternating group, 502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Ab})</td>
<td>category of abelian groups, 204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{ADC})</td>
<td>category of augmented directed complexes, 374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Alg})</td>
<td>category of algebras, 145, 394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Alg}_n)</td>
<td>category of (n)-algebras, 394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\mathbb{B})</td>
<td>booleans, 496</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\mathcal{B})</td>
<td>category of braids, 532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\mathcal{B}^+)</td>
<td>category of positive braids, 531</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B_n)</td>
<td>braid group, 502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B_n^+)</td>
<td>braid monoid, 502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Bimod}(A))</td>
<td>category of bimodules over an algebra (A), 395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C_n)</td>
<td>Chinese monoid, 507</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Ch_n)</td>
<td>Chinese monoid, 529</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Cart})</td>
<td>category of cartesian categories, 295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Cart}_2)</td>
<td>category of cartesian 2-categories, 313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{CAT})</td>
<td>category of possibly large categories, 335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Cat}_n)</td>
<td>category of (n)-categories, 320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Cat}_{n,p})</td>
<td>category of ((n, p))-categories, 333</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\text{Cat}_\omega)</td>
<td>category of (\omega)-categories, 320</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index of notations

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Cat}_n^\ast & \quad \text{category of } n\text{-categories with a cellular extension, 335} \\
\text{Ch}_R & \quad \text{category of chain complexes of } R\text{-modules, 606} \\
\text{Ch}_{R,\geq 0} & \quad \text{category of positive chain complexes of } R\text{-modules, 606} \\
\text{Circ} & \quad \text{category of circuits, 579} \\
\text{Corel} & \quad \text{category of corelations, 556} \\
\text{Cospan}(C) & \quad \text{category of cospans in a category } C, 74 \\
\text{Cub}_n & \quad \text{polygraphic } n\text{-cube, 372, 383} \\
\text{Cyl}_n & \quad \text{polygraphic } n\text{-cylinder, 371, 383} \\
D_n & \quad \text{dihedral group, 506} \\
F & \quad \text{category of functions, 296, 538} \\
\text{F}_\eta & \quad \text{category of injective functions, 538} \\
\text{F}_\varepsilon & \quad \text{category of partial functions, 539} \\
F(P) & \quad \text{free } \omega\text{-category on a polygraph } P, 337 \\
\text{FP}_n & \quad \text{homological type, 212} \\
G(C) & \quad \text{standard resolution of an } \omega\text{-category } C, 340 \\
\text{Glob}_n & \quad \text{category of } n\text{-globular sets, 318} \\
\text{Glob}_\omega & \quad \text{category of globular sets, 318} \\
\text{Gpd}_n & \quad \text{category of } n\text{-groupoids, 333} \\
\text{gVect} & \quad \text{category of graded vector spaces, 161} \\
\text{Law} & \quad \text{category of Lawvere theories, 296} \\
\text{LinRel}_k & \quad \text{category of linear relations, 558} \\
M_R & \quad \text{category of matrices with coefficients in } R, 545 \\
\text{Mag}_n & \quad \text{category of } n\text{-magmas, 393} \\
\text{Mod}(C) & \quad \text{category of modules over a category } C, 614 \\
\text{Mod}(S) & \quad \text{category of models of a sketch } S, 620 \\
\text{Mod}_R & \quad \text{category of } R\text{-modules, 603} \\
\text{Mon} & \quad \text{category of monoids, 495} \\
\text{Mon}(B) & \quad \text{category of monads in a bicategory } B, 73 \\
\text{MonCat} & \quad \text{category of monoidal categories, 309, 548} \\
\text{MRel} & \quad \text{category of multirelations, 545} \\
\mathbb{N} & \quad \text{natural numbers, 496} \\
N & \quad \text{nerve functor, 614} \\
\text{Nat}(C, \text{Ab}) & \quad \text{category of natural systems, 205, 616} \\
\bigcirc & \quad \text{category of globes, 318} \\
\bigcirc^{(n)} & \quad \text{category of globes of dimension } \leq n, 318, 514 \\
\bigcirc_n & \quad n\text{-globe (as a globular set), 319} \\
\bigcirc_n & \quad n\text{-globe (as an } \omega\text{-category), 326} \\
\bigcirc_n & \quad n\text{-th oriental, 373, 380} \\
\partial \bigcirc_n & \quad n\text{-sphere (as a globular set), 319} \\
\partial \bigcirc_n & \quad n\text{-sphere (as an } \omega\text{-category), 326}
\end{align*}
\]
### Index of notations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Ord</strong></td>
<td>2-category of posets, 258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>P</strong></td>
<td>powerset, 498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_n$</td>
<td>plactic monoid, 507, 526</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P^*$</td>
<td>$\omega$-category generated by a polygraph $P$, 341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P^n$</td>
<td>$(n, p)$-category generated by an $(n, p)$-polygraph, 344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{\text{steps}}$</td>
<td>set of rewriting steps of a polygraph $P$, 363</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{\leq 1}$</td>
<td>underlying 1-polygraph of a 2-polygraph, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$P_{\leq k}$</td>
<td>underlying $k$-polygraph of a polygraph, 338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pol</strong></td>
<td>category of polygraphs, 159, 323</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pol</strong></td>
<td>category of $n$-polygraphs, 337</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pol</strong></td>
<td>category of $(n, p)$-polygraphs, 343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pol</strong></td>
<td>category of $\omega$-polygraphs, 340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Rel</strong></td>
<td>category of relations, 548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>S</strong></td>
<td>category of permutations, 244, 532</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$S_n$</td>
<td>symmetric group, 501</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$S_k$</td>
<td>Squier monoid, 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Span(C)</strong></td>
<td>bicategory of spans in a category $C$, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Span(C)</strong></td>
<td>category of spans in a category $C$, 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sph(C)</strong></td>
<td>2-spheres in a 2-category $C$, 168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>supp(x)</strong></td>
<td>support of a cell $x$, 145, 352, 377</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tang</strong></td>
<td>category of tangles, 570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Top</strong></td>
<td>category of topological spaces, 628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$U_m$</td>
<td>truncation functor for $\omega$-categories, 324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$U_m$</td>
<td>truncation functor for $\omega$-polygraphs, 340</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$U_m^n$</td>
<td>truncation functor for $n$-categories, 324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V$</td>
<td>forgetful functor from $\omega$-categories to globular sets, 325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Vect</strong></td>
<td>category of vector spaces, 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$V_n$</td>
<td>forgetful functor from $n$-categories to $n$-globular sets, 325</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index of terminology

0-polygraph, 21
1-graph, 22
1-polygraph, 21
linear, 145
2-algebra, 189
2-category, 51, 85
2-functor, 52
2-graph, 50
2-groupoid, 59
2-loop, 205
2-out-of-3 property, 417, 626
2-polygraph
linear, 189
2-sphere, 168
(2, 0)-category, 59
(2, 1)-category, 57
3-PRO, 280
3-PROP, 280
3-category, 172
3-monoid, 280
3-polygraph, 228
(3, 1)-category, 173
(3, 1)-polygraph, 171
(4, 2)-polygraph, 267
n-category, 320
n-globular set, 319
n-groupoid, 333
n-polygraph, 337
(n, p)-category, 333
(n, p)-polygraph, 343
ω-category, 320
cofibration, 405
fibration, 438
join, 384
of cylinders, 422
reversible, 426
Steiner, 379
strong Steiner, 379
tensor product, 382
trivial fibration, 405
ω-equivalence, 415
of cells, 413
ω-functor, 321
ω-groupoid, 333
ω-polygraph, 340
(ω, 1)-polygraph
abelianization, 478
(ω, p)-category, 333
abelianization, 459
of an (ω, 1)-polygraph, 478
abstract rewriting system, 28
of a 2-polygraph, 86
of a 3-polygraph, 233
of a term rewriting system, 303
of an n-polygraph, 364
action
of a monoid
on a category, 516
on a commutative monoid, 100
acyclic
chain complex, 606
extension, 169
ADC (augmented directed complex), 374
adjunction, 562
Quillen, 462, 633
admissible rule, 594
algebra, 145
2-, 189
free, 145
Frobenius, 553
graded, 161
Hopf, 549

657
interchange, 559
of a 3-PRO, 280
Weyl, 149, 157
algebraic theory, 624
algorithm
Buchberger, 162
critical branching, 95
normal form, 35, 88
alternating group, 502
Artin
monoid, 506, 518
presentation, 518
coherent, 521
aspherical
3-PRO, 282
associative
algebra, 145
atom, 598
of an augmented directed complex, 378
augmented chain complex, 374
augmented directed complex, 374
atom, 378
basis, 377
loop-free, 378
strongly loop-free, 378
unital, 378
augmented simplicial category, 537, 583
autonomous category, 563
balanced category, 575
basis
augmented directed complex, 377
Gröbner, 160
PBW, 161
Baumslag–Solitar monoid, 498
bialgebra, 546
special, 548
bicategory, 56
bicongruent, 75
bicongruent, 498
bimodule, 77, 100
globular, 395
bimonoid, 546
Birkhoff theorem, 300
boolean, 496
bottom-incomplete n-cylinder, 427
braid
category, 531
group, 502
groupoid, 532
monoid, 118, 140
braided
monoid, 540
monoidal category, 291, 533
branching, 32, 87, 153, 234, 303
confluent, 87, 234
critical, 92, 304
local, 87, 234
minimal, 92
orthogonal, 91, 365
overlapping, 92, 365
Peiffer, 91
triple, 186
trivial, 91, 365
Brauer
category, 567
monoid, 511
Buchberger algorithm, 162
Brauer representation, 532
calculus of fractions, 111
canonical form, 104
canonical presentation, 49, 231
canonical resolution, 408
cartesian
category, 295
polygraph, 312
categorial stretching, 394
category
(2, 0) -, 59
(2, 1) -, 57
3 -, 172
(3, 1) -, 173
n -, 320
(n, p) -, 333
(ω -, 320
(ω, p) -, 333
autonomous, 563
balanced, 575
braided monoidal, 533
Brauer, 567
cartesian, 295
compact closed, 563
composite, 68
globe, 514
homology, 614
homotopy, 630
locally presentable, 623
monoidal, 56
strict, 55
of braids, 532
of contexts, 260
of factorizations, 204, 615
of matrices, 545
of permutations, 244, 532
of positive braids, 531
pivot, 563
rigid, 563
simplicial, 71, 105, 238, 243, 514, 613
sketchable, 620
Temperley-Lieb, 566
Thompson, 560
traced, 581
cell, 318
$\omega$-equivalence, 413
inverible, 332
reversible, 411
cellular extension, 59, 168, 334
for factorization systems, 404
of an algebra, 189
chain complex, 605
acyclic, 606
homotopy, 607
model structure, 462
chain homotopy, 607
Chinese monoid, 507, 529
chord diagram, 567
Church-Rosser property, 31
cobordism, 557
coequalizer, 64
cofibrant
2-category, 175
object, 446
replacement, 175, 629
cofibration, 445, 627
generating, 629
of $\omega$-categories, 405
trivial, 445, 627
coherence
for algebras over a 3-PRO, 282
coherent
2-polygraph, 59
$(3,1)$-polygraph, 173
$(4,2)$-polygraph, 268
completion, 184
completion-reduction, 187
confluence, 59
presentation, 173
of a cartesian category, 314
collapsible
generator, 181
part, 185
column
presentation, 526
column presentation
coherent, 527
combinatorial model category, 446, 629
combinatory logic, 298
comonoid, 307, 540
compact closed category, 563
completion, 132, 236, 305
coherent, 184
composable cells, 320, 594
concatenation, 41
cone
inductive, 619
limit, 619
projective, 619
configuration space, 503
confluence, 32, 154
coherent, 59, 176
congruence
on a 2-category, 168
on a cartesian 2-category, 314
on a category, 45
on a Lawvere theory, 297
on a set, 23
connection, 587
context, 83, 232, 260, 302, 361, 599
thin, 361
contracting homotopy, 607
contraction, 472
convergence, 34
coherent, 176
coproduct, 63
of monoids, 498
corelation, 556
cospan, 73
Coxeter group, 506, 517
critical
branching, 92, 304
$\nu$, 474
triple, 186
critical branching
algorithm, 95
cubes (as polygraphs), 372, 383
cubical category, 585
cyclic monoid, 496
cylinder, 512
bottom-incomplete, 427
in an $\omega$-category, 419
object, 631
reversible, 426
top-incomplete, 428
cylinders (as polygraphs), 371, 383
decidability
of equality, 35, 87, 120
Index of terminology

decreasing
diagram, 38
deglex order, 99
derivation, 100, 261
derived functor, 632
diagram, 53
diamond lemma, 163
dictionary order, 99
dihedral group, 506
dimension, 594
directed acyclic graph, 576
directed path, 41
distributive law, 67
   iterated, 75, 543
   of categories, 79
   of Lawvere theories, 299
   of monads, 73, 541
   of monoidal categories, 251
division lemma, 413
divisor, 349
dual, 563
duality, 563
Dyck word, 498
endomorphism, 573
enveloping
group, 499
equivalence
   Quillen, 634
   Tietze, 24, 122, 180, 229
essentially algebraic theory, 624
exact sequence, 603, 606
extended presentation, 173, 189
extension
   acyclic, 169
factorization, 513
factorization system, 77
   monoidal, 251
   strict, 66
   weak, 401
factorizations, 615
FDT (finite derivation type), 199, 268
FDT_n (finite n-derivation type), 487
FDT_\infty (finite \infty-derivation type), 487
FDT_{ab} (abelian finite derivation type), 206, 492
fibrant
   object, 446, 629
   fibration, 445, 627
   of \omega-categories, 438
   trivial, 405, 445, 627
   of \omega-categories, 405
filtered diagram, 623
finite
   1-polygraph, 22
   finite derivation type
   1-category, 199
   2-category, 268
   2-polygraph, 199
   3-polygraph, 268
   n-, 487
   n-category, 365
   n-polygraph, 365
   \infty-, 487
abelian, 206, 492
finite homological type, 617, 618
finitely
   generated module, 604
   presentable object, 401
folk model structure, 444
FP_n, 212, 487
free
   1-category, 41
   2-category, 53, 86
   (2, 0)-category, 59
   (2, 1)-category, 57
   (3, 1)-category, 173
   n-category, 594
   \omega-category, 341
algebra, 145
braided monoidal category, 534
cartesian (2, 1)-category, 313
cartesian category, 541
category, 49
commutative monoid, 497
compact category, 564
groupoid, 42, 65
Lawvere theory, 296
module, 211, 603
monoid, 497
monoidal category, 550
natural system, 478
PROP, 288
symmetric monoidal category, 582
free product, 498
Frobenius algebra, 553
functor
   \omega-, 321
derived, 632
homotopical, 632
left derived, 461
Quillen, 461, 633
truncation, 324
functorial interpretation, 257  
Garside presentation, 519  
generated  
  subcategory, 138  
  generator, 21, 22  
  $n$, 338  
collapsible, 181  
globe, 319, 326, 514  
category of, 318  
globular bimodule, 395  
globular set, 318

2-, 50  
n-, 319  
graded algebra, 161  

Gray tensor product, 382  
group, 298  
  alternating, 502  
  Artin, 506  
  braid, 502  
  Coxeter, 506, 517  
  dihedral, 506  
  enveloping, 499  
  hyperoctahedral, 505  
  of progressive ribbons, 505  
  symmetric, 136, 501  
  Thompson, 508, 560  
groupoid, 42  
  2-, 59  
n-, 333  
  $\omega$-, 333  

Groebner basis, 160  

homogeneous  
  algebra, 161  

homological  
  finiteness condition, 218  
  left-$FP_n$, 212  
  syzygy, 480  
  type $FP_n$, 487  

homology  
  group, 213  
  of a chain complex, 606  
  of categories, 614  
    with coefficients, 616  
  of monoids, 611  
  of simplicial sets, 613  
  polygraphic, 463  

homotopical  
  functor, 632  
  reduction, 185

homotopy, 631
  basis, 169
  category, 461, 630
  contracting, 607
  equivalence, 609
  relation, 169
Hopf algebra, 549
HSP theorem, 300
hyperoctahedral  
  category, 574  
  group, 505
icon, 59
idempotent, 560

identity among relations, 205

immersion
  of $\omega$-categories, 439
  strong, 449

indeterminate, 361
indexed polygraph, 250


inference rule, 591
  admissible, 594

initial category, 63

integer, 499

interaction
  combinator, 582
  net, 582

interchange
  algebra, 559
  bialgebra, 560

interval, 512

inverse, 332
  weak, 412

invertible cell, 332


isomorphism
  walking, 48, 103

iterated monoidal category, 559

join of $\omega$-category, 384
joinability, 31

judgment, 591

knot, 572

Knuth-Bendix completion, 132, 236, 305

labeling, 37

Lawvere theory, 296
  2-, 313

leading
  coefficient, 152
  monomial, 152

term, 152

left derived functor, 461

left lifting property, 400
left Quillen functor, 461
left-$\text{FP}_n$, 212
Lehner code, 248
lemma
diamond, 163
division, 413
Newman, 33
retract, 404
Schanuel, 610
transport, 428
length, 41, 83, 97
lexicographic
maximum measure, 37
order, 98
product, 98
lift, 400, 627
lifting property, 400, 627
linear
$1$-polygraph, 145
$2$-polygraph, 189
$n$-polygraph, 394
linear non-linear term, 544
link, 572
local branching, 87, 234
localization, 66, 630
localizer, 461, 630
locally decreasing
$1$-polygraph, 38
locally presentable category, 623
loop
$2$-, 205
loop-free
augmented directed complex, 378
polygraph, 379
matrix, 545
model
of a 1-polygraph, 47
of a 2-category, 229
of a Lawvere theory, 298
of an essentially algebraic theory, 625
model (of a sketch), 620
model category, 445, 627
combinatorial, 446, 629
model structure
folk, 444
on chain complexes, 462
projective, 462
module, 602
finitely generated, 604
free, 603
of a category, 614
projective, 604
tensor product, 611
trivial, 212
molecule, 598
monad, 73, 230, 541
finitary, 300
monoid, 46, 73, 230, 304, 495
3-, 280
action, 551
Artin, 506, 518
Baumslag–Solitar, 498
biclyclic, 75, 498
boolean, 496
braid, 140, 502
braided, 540
Brauer, 511
Chinese, 507, 529
coproduct, 498
cyclic, 496
free, 497
commutative, 497
homology, 611
of integers, 499
of natural numbers, 496
partially commutative, 497
plactic, 507, 525
powerset, 498
product, 498
ring, 211
Squier, 201
Sylvester, 507
symmetric, 540
Temperley-Lieb, 510
Thompson, 508
Tseitin, 511
Wirtinger, 509
monoidal category, 56, 284
braided, 291, 533
iterated, 559
strict, 55
symmetric, 286, 289, 533
monomial
$1$-polygraph, 150
order, 152
multirelation, 545
multiset, 36, 497, 597
multisupport, 597
natural number, 496
natural system, 204, 260, 615
free, 478
nerve, 614
Newman’s lemma, 33
coherent, 60
Nielsen transformation, 181
noetherian
1-polygraph, 29
category, 118
normal form, 28, 151
algorithm, 35, 88
normalization strategy, 215
normalizing
1-polygraph, 29
occurrence, 301
of a 2-generator, 232
oplax
transformation, 424
reversible, 427
order
deglex, 99
lexicographic, 98
monomial, 152
reduction, 96, 255, 305
rewrite, 152
termination, 97, 255
oriental, 373, 380
orthogonal branching, 91, 365
overlapping branching, 92, 365
parallel
1-cells, 43
2-cells, 126
3-cells, 268
n-cells, 318
morphisms, 96
partially commutative monoid, 497
path
non-directed, 42
object, 449
rewriting, 28
path object, 631
PBW basis, 161
pearl, 275
Peiffer branching, 91
perl, 576
permutation, 46, 244, 501, 532
pivotal category, 563
plactic
congruence, 526
monoid, 525
plactic monoid, 507
polygraph
0-, 21
1-, 21
2-, 44
3-, 228
(3, 1)-, 171
(4, 2)-, 267
n-, 337
(n, p)-, 343
ω-, 340
(ω, p)-, 344
cartesian, 312
Church-Rosser, 31
coherent, 59
congruent, 32
finite, 359
indexed, 250
labeled, 37
linear, 145, 394
locally decreasing, 38
loop-free, 379
monomial, 150
normalizing, 29
of bialgebras, 546
of braids, 532
of commutative monoids, 538
of Frobenius algebras, 553
of Hopf algebras, 549
of monoids, 229, 230, 258, 282, 537
of pearls, 275, 576
of permutations, 244, 259, 265, 273, 288,
532
reduced, 126
relative, 405, 406
strongly loop-free, 379
terminating, 29
polygraphic
homology, 463
resolution, 407
of an (∗, 1)-category, 471
Squier, 475
poset, 578
positive chains of an augmented directed
complex, 374
powerset, 498
presentable object, 623
presentation
Artin, 518
cohomogenous, 519
canonical, 49, 231
coherent, 173, 314
column, 526
cohomogenous, 527
extended, 173, 189
Garside, 519
minimal, 26
of a 2-category, 242
of a 2-category, 229
of a (3, 2)-PRO, 282
of a (3, 2)-PROP, 289
of a category, 45
of a group, 499
of a monoid, 46
of a PROP, 288
of a set, 23
of an algebra, 148
reduced, 159
residuated, 112
standard, 49, 104, 179, 231
coherent, 179, 196
reduced, 127
Wirtinger, 509
presimplicial
set, 583
PRO, 55
3-, 280
procedure
coherent
completion, 184
completion-reduction, 187
completion, 132, 236, 305
coherent, 184
product, 65
lexicographic, 98
of monoids, 498
profunctor, 78
progressive ribbon, 575
group, 505
projective
model structure, 462
module, 604
resolution, 212, 608
PROP, 287
3-, 280
pushout, 64
quasi-
convergence, 31
isomorphism, 609
normal form, 31
termination, 31
Quillen
adjunction, 462, 633
equivalence, 634
functor, 461, 633
left, 461
right, 461
pair, 462, 633
quotient
2-category, 169
\(n\)-category, 337
category, 45
reduced
2-polygraph, 126
presentation, 159
reducible, 83
reduction
function, 97
homotopical, 185
order, 96, 255, 305
Tietze, 128
regular cardinal, 623
Reidemeister-Fox Jacobian, 215
relation, 22, 548
linear, 558
relative
category, 461
polygraph, 405
relative polygraph, 406
residuated presentation, 112
residuation structure, 109
resolution, 212
canonical, 408
of a module, 608
polygraphic, 407
projective, 608
retract, 512, 627
lemma, 404
reversible
cell, 411
cylinder, 426
oplax transformation, 427
reversion, 588
rewriting
order, 152
path, 83, 364
length, 83
rule, 28, 82, 363
step, 28, 83, 150, 233, 303
system
abstract, 28
string, 82
terminating, 303
ribbon, 572
progressive, 575
right lifting property, 400
right Quillen functor, 461
Index of terminology

rigid category, 563
Schanuel’s lemma, 610
self-dual, 563
sesquicategory, 84
signature, 293
simplicial
category, 71, 105, 238, 243, 514, 537, 583, 613
set, 583, 613
homology, 613
size, 147, 232
sketch, 620
inductive, 620
projective, 620
small object argument, 402, 404
source, 318
of an $n$-cell, 318
span, 72
$n$-, 513
category of, 74
special bialgebra, 548
sphere, 319, 326
$\omega$-, 168
Squier
completion, 183, 270
monoid, 201
theorem, 178, 366
for 1-polygraphs, 62
for cartesian polygraphs, 314
for linear polygraphs, 194
homological, 218
standard
polygraphic resolution
reduced, 481
presentation, 49, 104, 179, 231
coherent, 179
reduced, 127
Steiner
$\omega$-category, 379
complex, 379
strong, 379
strict pullback, 387
string diagram, 53
empty, 55
string rewriting system, 82
strong Steiner
$\omega$-category, 379
complex, 379
strongly loop-free
augmented directed complex, 378
polygraph, 379
structure, 300
subcategory
generated, 138
subpolygraph, 352
substitution, 294, 361
support, 145, 352, 377
multiset, 597
of a 2-cell, 84
Sylvester monoid, 507
symmetric
category, 332
cubical category, 586
group, 46, 136, 501
monoid, 540
monoidal category, 286, 289, 533
symmetry, 287, 535
Tamari lattice, 537
tangle, 569
target
of an $n$-cell, 318
Temperley-Lieb
algebra, 510
category, 566
monoid, 510
tensor product
do modules, 611
tensor product of $\omega$-categories, 382
term, 294
rewriting system, 297
terminal category, 65
terminating
1-polygraph, 29
termination, 29, 303
order, 97, 255
theory
algebraic, 624
especially algebraic, 624
of groups, 298
of monoids, 304
thin context, 361
Thomason homology, 468
Thompson
category, 560
group, 508, 560
monoid, 508
Tietze
equivalence
of 1-polygraphs, 24
of 2-polygraphs, 122
of 3-polygraphs, 229
of (3, 1)-polygraphs, 180
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page References</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>expansion</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invariance</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reduction</td>
<td>26, 128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transformation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>backward</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of 1-polygraph</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of 2-polygraphs</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of (3, 1)-polygraphs</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of term rewriting systems</td>
<td>299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top-incomplete $n$-cylinder</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>topological quantum field theory</td>
<td>557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trace</td>
<td>563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traced category</td>
<td>581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transfer theorem</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transformation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nielsen</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oplax</td>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tietze</td>
<td>23, 122, 180, 299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transport lemma</td>
<td>428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>triple branching</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trivial branching</td>
<td>91, 365</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trivial cofibration</td>
<td>445, 627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trivial fibration</td>
<td>445, 627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>of $\omega$-categories</td>
<td>405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trivial module</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truncation functor</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tsetin monoid</td>
<td>511</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twist</td>
<td>575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>underlying</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-polygraph</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-polygraph</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$n$-polygraph</td>
<td>338</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unital augmented directed complex</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unital section</td>
<td>471</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>universality of convergent rewriting</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>variable</td>
<td>294</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak equivalence</td>
<td>445, 461, 627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak factorization system</td>
<td>401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>weak inverse</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well-bracketed word</td>
<td>498</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>well-founded</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-polygraph</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>induction</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weyl algebra</td>
<td>149, 157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>whisker</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wirtinger monoid</td>
<td>509</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>word problem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for 1-polygraphs</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for 2-polygraphs</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for $n$-polygraphs</td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Yang-Baxter relation, 287, 531
ZW-calculus, 588
ZX-calculus, 588